

ADOBE® INDESIGN® CS4



ADOBE INDESIGN CS4 PRODUCTS PROGRAMMING GUIDE



© 2008 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.

Adobe InDesign CS4 Products Programming Guide

If this guide is distributed with software that includes an end user agreement, this guide, as well as the software described in it, is furnished under license and may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of such license. Except as permitted by any such license, no part of this guide may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Adobe Systems Incorporated. Please note that the content in this guide is protected under copyright law even if it is not distributed with software that includes an end user license agreement.

The content of this guide is furnished for informational use only, is subject to change without notice, and should not be construed as a commitment by Adobe Systems Incorporated. Adobe Systems Incorporated assumes no responsibility or liability for any errors or inaccuracies that may appear in the informational content contained in this guide.

Please remember that existing artwork or images that you may want to include in your project may be protected under copyright law. The unauthorized incorporation of such material into your new work could be a violation of the rights of the copyright owner. Please be sure to obtain any permission required from the copyright owner.

Any references to company names in sample templates are for demonstration purposes only and are not intended to refer to any actual organization.

Adobe, the Adobe logo, Acrobat, Bridge, Creative Suite, Illustrator, InCopy, InDesign, Photoshop, and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries. Microsoft and Windows are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. Apple and Mac OS are trademarks of Apple Computer, Incorporated, registered in the United States and other countries. Java is a trademark of Sun Microsystems, Incorporated in the United States and other countries. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Adobe Systems Incorporated, 345 Park Avenue, San Jose, California 95110, USA. Notice to U.S. Government End Users. The Software and Documentation are "Commercial Items," as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. §2.101, consisting of "Commercial Computer Software" and "Commercial Computer Software Documentation," as such terms are used in 48 C.F.R. §12.212 or 48 C.F.R. §227.7202, as applicable. Consistent with 48 C.F.R. §12.212 or 48 C.F.R. §§227.7202-1 through 227.7202-4, as applicable, the Commercial Computer Software and Commercial Computer Software Documentation are being licensed to U.S. Government end users (a) only as Commercial Items and (b) with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein. Unpublished-rights reserved under the copyright laws of the United States. Adobe Systems Incorporated, 345 Park Avenue, San Jose, CA 95110-2704, USA. For U.S. Government End Users, Adobe agrees to comply with all applicable equal opportunity laws including, if appropriate, the provisions of Executive Order 11246, as amended, Section 402 of the Vietnam Era Veterans Readjustment Assistance Act of 1974 (38 USC 4212), and Section 503 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended, and the regulations at 41 CFR Parts 60-1 through 60-60, 60-250, and 60-741. The affirmative action clause and regulations contained in the preceding sentence shall be incorporated by reference.



Contents

Introduction	27
For experienced InDesign developers	27
For new InDesign developers	27
Persistent Data and Data Conversion	29
Concepts	29
Persistence	29
Databases.	29
Persistent objects.	30
Using persistent objects.	30
Implementing persistent objects	33
Streams	34
IPMStream methods	34
Implementing a new stream	35
Missing plug-ins	36
Warning levels.	36
Missing plug-in alert	38
Guidelines for handling a missing plug-in	38
Data handling for missing plug-ins.	39
Conversion of persistent data	40
When to convert persistent data	41
Converting data with the conversion manager	42
Converting data without the conversion manager	52
Resources.	53
PluginVersion resource, format numbers, and their macros	53
Setting up resources	54
Schemas.	54
SchemaList	56
DirectiveList	58
Advanced schema topics	59
Arrays of values	59
FieldArray	60
Conditional-field inclusion	60

Commands	63
Concepts	63
Command pattern	63
Databases and undoability	64
Models.	64
Commands.	68
Command parameters.	69
Command undoability.	70
Command processing and the CmdUtils class.	70
Command sequences	71
Command managers, databases, and undo support.	73
The command processor	76
Scheduled commands.	78
Snapshots and interface implementation types	79
Command history	80
Merging changes with an existing step in the command history	81
Undo and redo	81
Extension patterns involved in undo and redo	83
Notification within commands	83
Error handling	83
Protective shutdown.	84
Key client APIs.	84
Command facades and utilities	84
Command-processing APIs.	86
Extension patterns	86
Command	86
Error string service	88
Persistent interface	89
Persistent boss.	91
Snapshot interface	92
Inval handler	94
Snapshot view interface.	99

Notification 101

- Concepts101
 - Observer pattern101
 - Responder pattern102
- Observers.102
 - Subjects103
 - Observers.104
 - Message protocols104
 - Subject and observer types105
 - Regular and lazy notification.106
 - Observers and undo111
 - Relating observers to subjects.112
 - Document notification113
 - Observers and the model.113
- Responders.115
 - Signal manager116
 - Responder117
 - Responders and the model.117
 - Responders and global error state118
 - Ordering of responders118
 - Responders and undo119
- Key client APIs.119
- Extension patterns120
 - User-interface widget observer120
 - Model observer120
 - Selection observer122
 - Document observer122
 - Active context observer.122
 - Subject124
 - Responder124

Selection 125

- Concepts125
 - Selection125
 - Selection format and target125
 - Design patterns126
- Selection architecture127
- Abstract selection bosses and suites.130

- Concrete selection bosses131
 - Layout selection132
 - Table selection133
 - Text selection134
 - Galley text selection135
 - Story-editor text selection136
 - Note text selection137
 - XML selection138
 - Document defaults140
 - Application defaults141
- Integrator suites142
- CSB suites142
- Encapsulation143
- Suites and the user interface: an example143
- Responsibilities144
 - Basic client-code responsibilities144
 - Selection-observer responsibilities144
 - Custom-suite responsibilities144
- Custom suites145
- Selection extensions146
 - Caches146
 - Selection change notification146
 - Initialization147
 - Communication with Integrator suite147
- Selection observers147
- Selection-utility interface (ISelectionUtils)148

Layout Fundamentals 149

- Terminology149
- Concepts150
- Documents and the layout hierarchy152
 - Architecture152
 - Parent and child objects and IHierarchy155
- Spreads and pages157
- Layers161
 - Layers in a basic document162
 - Layer options165
 - Navigating spread content using ISpread166

Master spreads and master pages	168
Master spreads and master pages in a basic document	169
Master-page item overrides	172
Basing one master page on another	172
Page items	173
Frames and paths	173
Graphic page items	177
Text page items	177
Interactive page items	178
Groups	178
Abstract page items and kPageItemBoss	179
Guides and grids	180
Ruler guides	180
Margin and column guides	180
Document grid	181
Baseline grid	181
Snap	181
Layout-related preferences	182
Coordinate systems	183
Transformation matrices	183
Pasteboard coordinate space	184
Inner coordinate space and parent coordinate space	185
Spread coordinate space	188
Page coordinate space	189
Page-item coordinate space	190
Bounding box and IGeometry	190
Transformation and ITransform	191
Measurement units	192
Geometrical data types	194
The layout presentation and view	194
Layout presentation	194
Layout view	196
Current spread and active layer	197
Layout-presentation and layout-view coordinate spaces	198
Key client APIs	199
Extension patterns	202
New-page-item responder	202
Custom page item	203
Custom unit-of-measure service	203

Commands that manipulate page items204
 Page-item creation commands204
 Page-item update commands205
 Page-item deletion commands209

Graphics Fundamentals 211

Paths211
 Path concepts211
 Paths data model213
 Path operations215
 Graphic page items217
 Graphic page-item types217
 Graphic page-item settings219
 Graphic page-item data model223
 Graphic page-item examples226
 Graphics import238
 Export to graphics file format243
 Colors and swatches246
 Architecture246
 Swatches250
 Solid colors250
 Gradients251
 Swatch lists251
 Inks251
 Color management252
 ICC profiles253
 Color-management workflow253
 Data model for color management253
 Graphic attributes256
 Graphic-attribute data model256
 Representation of graphic attributes258
 Graphic styles258
 Graphic state259
 Mapping graphic attributes between domains260
 Rendering attributes261
 Color-rendering attributes261
 Gradient attributes262

Stroke effects . . . . .	.262
Path stroker. . . . .	.262
Path corners . . . . .	.263
Path-end strokers . . . . .	.263
Transparency effects. . . . .	.263
Concepts . . . . .	.263
Flattening. . . . .	.272
Transparency data model. . . . .	.272
Data model for drawing. . . . .	.276
Presentation views . . . . .	.276
Graphics context . . . . .	.277
Viewport . . . . .	.277
Dynamics of drawing . . . . .	.278
Drawing the layout. . . . .	.278
Drawing page items . . . . .	.281
Drawing in user-interface widget windows . . . . .	.283
Offscreen drawing . . . . .	.284
Client APIs . . . . .	.285
Path-related client APIs . . . . .	.285
Graphic page-item client APIs . . . . .	.286
Key color-related client APIs . . . . .	.287
Graphic-attribute client APIs . . . . .	.288
Extension patterns . . . . .	.289
Custom graphic attributes . . . . .	.289
Custom path-stroker effects . . . . .	.289
Custom corner effects . . . . .	.290
Custom path-end effects . . . . .	.290
Custom page-item adornments. . . . .	.291
Custom drawing-event handler . . . . .	.294
Swatch-list state. . . . .	.296
Initial state of swatch list and ink list . . . . .	.296
State of swatch list and ink list after adding a custom stop color . . . . .	.297
Swatch list and ink list after adding a gradient swatch. . . . .	.299
Swatch list and ink list after applying an unnamed color to an object. . . . .	.300
Color spaces . . . . .	.300
Catalog of graphic attributes . . . . .	.301
Mappings between attribute domains . . . . .	.306
Spread-drawing sequence . . . . .	.307

Controlling the settings in a graphics port 309
 Drawing sequence for a page item 310

Text Fundamentals 313

Concepts 313
 Text content 315
 Stories 315
 Text formatting 324
 Class associations 330
 Text presentation 331
 Text layout 331
 Text frame 331
 Frame list 333
 Threading and text frames 336
 Parcels 339
 Span 342
 Text frames and the wax 343
 Text-frame options 345
 Text-frame geometry 345
 Text Inset 346
 Text wrap 347
 Text on a path 350
 The wax 354
 Wax strand, wax line, and wax run 354
 Examples of the wax 355
 Text adornments 358
 Text composition 364
 Phases of text composition 366
 Damage 367
 Recomposition 369
 Wax strand 370
 Paragraph composers 371
 Shuffling 371
 Vertical justification 371
 Background composition 371
 Recomposition transactional model 372
 Recomposition notification 372
 Implementation notes for paragraph composers 372

Fonts 389
 Font-subsystem architecture 390
 Fonts within the document 392
 Composite fonts and international-font issues 395

Tables 397

Concepts 397
 Table structure 397
 Design and architecture 402
 Table model versus text model 402
 Table data model 404
 Cell data model 406
 Table attributes 407
 Table and cell styles 409
 Formatting tables, cells, and table text 413
 Essential APIs 414
 Table commands 414
 ITableSuite 414
 ITableStyleSuite and ITableStylesFacade 415
 ICellStyleSuite and ICellStylesFacade 415

Printing 417

Concepts 417
 Printing is simply drawing to the printer 417
 Control can be shared 417
 Inks and colors 417
 Overprinting 418
 Trapping 418
 Color management and proofing 418
 Preflight and packaging 418
 Exporting to EPS and PDF 419
 Printing data model 419
 Print settings 419
 Print preset styles 420
 Trap styles 420
 Utility APIs 420
 The print action sequence 421
 Common print interfaces 422

Print user interface 423

 Print dialog box 423

 Print Presets dialog box 435

 Extending the Print dialog box or the Print Presets selectable dialog box 435

Printing extension patterns 435

 Print-setup provider 435

 Print-insert-PostScript proc provider 436

 Print-data helper-strategy provider 437

 Draw-event handlers 438

Printing solutions 438

 Getting started 438

 Working with print-preset styles 439

 Working with trap styles 441

 Participating in the print process 443

Bosses that aggregate IPrintData 448

Print-action and supporting commands 448

Japanese page-mark files 449

Exporting to EPS and PDF 450

 Exporting to EPS 450

 Exporting to PDF 453

PDF Import and Export 455

PDF import 455

PDF export 459

 InDesign/InCopy document export 459

 InDesign book export 468

 Selected page-items export 469

PDF-style import and export 470

 Adding, deleting, and editing styles 471

Frequently asked questions 472

 How does the PDF export provider determine whether it should start the viewer after the export? 472

 How do I set the PDF clipboard setting as seen in the File Handling preferences? 472

 How do I control which layer of a document should be exported? 472

 How do I make the two-page spreads in my document export as two separate PDF pages? . 473

 Why does kPDFExportCmdBoss give me an assert after the command is processed (ASSERT 'db != nil' in PDFExportController.cpp)? 473

 How do I set up line ranges for output in InCopy Galley or Story mode? 473

 Is it possible to export only selected text from an InDesign document? 473

Implementing Preflight Rules	475
Introduction . . . . .	.475
About preflight in InDesign CS4 . . . . .	.475
About rules. . . . .	.475
Rule IDs . . . . .	.476
Rule service . . . . .	.476
IPreflightRuleService example . . . . .	.477
Rule bosses. . . . .	.478
IPreflightRuleVisitor interface . . . . .	.479
IPreflightRuleVisitor method examples . . . . .	.480
IPreflightRuleVisitor::GetClassesToVisit . . . . .	.480
IPreflightRuleVisitor::Visit . . . . .	.481
IPreflightRuleVisitor::AggregateResults . . . . .	.483
IPreflightRuleVisitor::UpdateRuleData . . . . .	.490
IPreflightRuleVisitor::ValidateRuleData . . . . .	.490
More on specific objects . . . . .	.491
Native, UID-based objects . . . . .	.491
Artwork . . . . .	.492
Text runs and ranges . . . . .	.494
Tables, rows, columns, and cells . . . . .	.495
 XML Fundamentals	 497
Introduction . . . . .	.497
XML-based workflow. . . . .	.497
Using XML with InDesign . . . . .	.498
Terminology . . . . .	.498
XML features at a glance . . . . .	.499
XML extension patterns . . . . .	.499
Tagging in tables and inline graphics . . . . .	.499
Throw away unmatched existing (right). . . . .	.499
Throw away unmatched incoming (left). . . . .	.500
Importing repeating elements. . . . .	.500
Importing CALS table . . . . .	.500
Support for DOM core level 2 . . . . .	.500
Support table- and cell-styles import . . . . .	.500
Support XML-rules processing. . . . .	.500
Snippets. . . . .	.500

The user interface for XML . . . . .	.501
Structure view . . . . .	.501
Tags in layout view and story view . . . . .	.501
Tags panel . . . . .	.502
Mapping between tags and styles . . . . .	.503
Validation window . . . . .	.504
Other. . . . .	.504
XML model . . . . .	.505
Native document model and logical structure. . . . .	.505
Elements and attributes . . . . .	.505
Content items . . . . .	.506
References to elements and content items . . . . .	.507
Document element and root element. . . . .	.508
Backing store. . . . .	.509
Persistence and the backing store . . . . .	.510
Importing XML . . . . .	.511
Import architecture. . . . .	.512
Importing a minimal XML file . . . . .	.515
Unplaced content versus placed content . . . . .	.518
XML template . . . . .	.519
Matching against an XML template . . . . .	.519
Importing repeating elements. . . . .	.519
Throwing away unmatched existing elements on import (delete unmatched right). . . . .	.520
Throwing away unmatched incoming elements on XML import . . . . .	.522
Attribute-style mapping . . . . .	.522
Creating links on XML import . . . . .	.523
Sparse import . . . . .	.523
Importing a CALS table as an InDesign table. . . . .	.524
Support table and cell styles when importing an InDesign table. . . . .	.524
Exporting XML. . . . .	.524
Export architecture . . . . .	.525
Document order . . . . .	.526
Tagged graphic placeholder, exported . . . . .	.527
Tagged text range, exported . . . . .	.528
Tags . . . . .	.529
Architecture . . . . .	.530
Tag-to-style mapping . . . . .	.531
Style-to-tag mapping . . . . .	.532

Elements and content . . . . .	.534
Tagged graphic placeholder . . . . .	.534
Tagged images . . . . .	.536
Tagged stories . . . . .	.537
Tagged text ranges . . . . .	.538
Tagged inline graphics . . . . .	.542
Tagged tables . . . . .	.543
DTD . . . . .	.545
Processing instructions and comments . . . . .	.547
Structural (container) elements . . . . .	.549
XML-related preferences . . . . .	.549
Workspace-level XML preferences . . . . .	.549
Service-level XML preferences . . . . .	.551
Key client API . . . . .	.552
XML suites . . . . .	.552
Command facades and utilities . . . . .	.553
Extension patterns . . . . .	.553
XML acquirer . . . . .	.553
XML transformer . . . . .	.554
XMI-import matchmaker . . . . .	.555
Post-import responder . . . . .	.555
Custom suite for the structure view . . . . .	.556
SAX-content handler . . . . .	.556
SAX DOM serializer handler . . . . .	.557
Custom-tag service . . . . .	.557
SAX-entity resolver . . . . .	.557
XML-export handler . . . . .	.558
Commands and notification . . . . .	.558
Backing store and notification of changes in logical structure . . . . .	.558
Entities supported . . . . .	.559
Assets from XSLT example . . . . .	.560
Limitations of the InDesign XML architecture . . . . .	.561

Scriptable Plug-in Fundamentals 563

- Terminology563
- Overview565
 - Scripting565
 - Benefits of making a plug-in scriptable565
 - Scripting and IDML566
 - Making a plug-in scriptable566
 - Tools for making a plug-in scriptable567
- Scripting architecture567
 - Scripting DOM.568
 - Versioning the scripting DOM569
 - Scripting plug-in570
 - Script interaction with the scripting DOM571
 - Scripting process overview572
 - Script managers573
 - Scriptable plug-ins573
 - Scripting resources574
 - Script providers574
 - Scriptable boss classes.574
- How to make your plug-in scriptable575
 - Prerequisites575
 - Defining IDs576
 - Adding a new property to an existing script object576
 - Adding a new event to an existing script object576
 - Adding a new script object to make preferences scriptable577
 - Adding a new singleton script object578
 - Adding a new script object to make a boss with a UID scriptable.578
 - Adding a new script object to make a boss with no UID scriptable.579
 - Adding a new script object to make a C++ object with no boss scriptable.580
 - Adding a new script object to make a panel scriptable581
 - Adding an error-string service582
 - Handling multiple concurrent requests582
 - Reviewing scripting resources583
 - Running versioned scripts586
 - Supporting IDML588
 - Maintaining IDML forward and backward compatibility589
 - Verifying your plug-in’s data is round-tripped through IDML590
 - Tips for debugging the scripting architecture591

Scripting resources . . . . .	.591
VersionedScriptElementInfo resource . . . . .	.592
Object element . . . . .	.593
Event element . . . . .	.595
Property element . . . . .	.597
Struct element . . . . .	.601
TypeDef element . . . . .	.602
Enum element . . . . .	.603
Enumerator element . . . . .	.604
Metadata element . . . . .	.604
Provider element . . . . .	.606
Suite element . . . . .	.609
ScriptElementIDs, ScriptIDs, names, descriptions, and GUIDs . . . . .	.610
ScriptID/name registration . . . . .	.612
Scripting data types . . . . .	.615
Script-object inheritance . . . . .	.619
Overloading an existing event or property . . . . .	.621
Versioning of scripting resources . . . . .	.621
Client-specific scripting resources . . . . .	.632
Elements that are not applicable to a particular object . . . . .	.638
Key scripting APIs . . . . .	.639
Scripting DOM reference . . . . .	.641
Scripting DOM versioning . . . . .	.641
Dumping the scripting DOM . . . . .	.642
Snippet Fundamentals . . . . .	.643
Conceptual overview . . . . .	.643
Snippets as self-contained assets . . . . .	.643
Snippet types . . . . .	.644
Features that depend on snippets . . . . .	.644
User interface for snippets . . . . .	.644
Drag and drop . . . . .	.644
Asset library . . . . .	.645
Export snippet from selection . . . . .	.645
Snippet model . . . . .	.645
INX, IDML, and snippets . . . . .	.645
Boss DOM overview . . . . .	.646
Scripting DOM overview . . . . .	.647
From boss DOM to scripting DOM . . . . .	.647

- Snippet types and policies648
- Export648
- Import650
- Snippet examples652
 - Filled-rectangle snippet652
 - Image-item snippet657
 - XML element snippet, tagged placeholder660
- Client API663
 - Suites663
 - Utilities663
- Extension patterns664
 - Adding persistent data to snippet files664
- Frequently asked questions664
 - What is a snippet, and how do I create one?664
 - What happens if I export a snippet of a placed image?664
 - What features are based on snippets?665
 - How accurately is data round-tripped through snippets?665
 - When do I have to care about snippets?665
 - Can I export spreads or pages as snippets?665
 - Should we generate snippet files from scratch?665
 - Can I import a snippet directly into a library?666
 - Can I import a snippet into the scrap database?666
 - Can we add our own new snippet types?666

Shared Application Resources667

- Introduction667
- Terminology667
- Architecture667
 - How it works668
 - ISnippetExport668
 - IAppPrefsExportDelegate669
 - ISnippetImport669
 - IAppPrefsImportOptions669
 - IAppPrefsImportDelegate670

Working with snippet APIs: frequently asked questions . . . . .	.670
How do I create streams for reading and writing snippets? . . . . .	.670
How do I limit my export to those items in the preference panel? . . . . .	.670
How do I export all text styles, object styles, XML tags, or swatches in the application workspace? . . . . .	.671
How do I import a snippet into the application? . . . . .	.671
How do I control whether existing objects like paragraph styles are replaced or deleted on import. . . . .	.671
How do I determine the correct ScriptID to use for a preference I'm trying to include or exclude? . . . . .	.671
How do I know which list element types will be exported by default? . . . . .	.671

User-Interface Fundamentals 673

Introduction . . . . .	.673
Key concepts. . . . .	.674
Design objectives for user-interface API. . . . .	.674
Idioms and naming conventions . . . . .	.674
Abstractions and re-use. . . . .	.675
Widgets versus platform controls. . . . .	.676
Commands, model plug-ins, and user-interface plug-ins . . . . .	.676
Suites and the user interface. . . . .	.677
Finding widgets in the API . . . . .	.678
Notifications about control events or changes . . . . .	.678
Sample user interface . . . . .	.679
Type binding. . . . .	.680
Factorization of the user-interface model . . . . .	.683
Architecture . . . . .	.683
Control views . . . . .	.684
Control data models . . . . .	.684
Event handlers. . . . .	.685
Attributes. . . . .	.685
Relevant design patterns . . . . .	.686
Observer pattern . . . . .	.686
How event handlers implement controllers . . . . .	.687
The role of MVC in the user-interface model . . . . .	.688
Chain of responsibility. . . . .	.689
Facade . . . . .	.689
Command . . . . .	.690
Widget-observer pattern . . . . .	.690
Persistence and widgets . . . . .	.691

Resource roadmap692

 Architecture692

 OpenDoc framework (ODF) resources693

 Top-level framework resources694

 Localizing framework resources694

 Resource compilers695

Customizing a widget696

Advanced event handling696

 Writing a proxy event handler696

 Watching events697

Key abstractions in the API697

Suppressed User Interface 699

Introduction699

Architecture699

XML-based implementation700

XML file format701

 SuppressedWidget702

 SuppressedAction702

 SuppressedMenu703

 SuppressedDragDrop703

 SuppressPlatformDialogControl704

SuppressedUI tool704

 SuppressedUI tool limitations706

Working with the ISuppressedUI API706

Other user-interface “suppression” mechanisms707

Using Adobe File Library 709

Introduction709

Terminology709

Adobe File Library architecture711

 Adobe File Library classes and utilities711

 Common file API713

 File API specific to InDesign714

 Debugging IDFile716

Porting guidelines716

 Creative Suite 2 porting concerns716

 Creative Suite 3 porting concerns716

Frequently asked questions717

- Why should I use Adobe file library?717
- Does Adobe file library support cross-platform path conversion?717
- Should I still use the ICoreFileName interface?717
- Why was the GetSysFile method renamed GetIDFile in SDKFileHelper?717
- How do I navigate between IDFile and IDPath?717
- What are the differences between a file and a directory?718
- What are the relationships between IDPath and IDFile?718
- Why should IDFile not be treated as PMString?718
- How do an invalid path and a nonexistent path differ?718
- Can I construct an AString from PMString?718
- How can I convert a relative path to an absolute path?719

Performance Tuning 721

- Use profiling tools721
 - Windows721
 - Mac OS721
- Commands.722
 - Commands should operate on lists of inputs722
 - Notify on the document subject instead of the page item object722
 - Mark commands that do not require undo support723
- Observers.723
 - Attach to documents, not page items723
 - Do work only when the command is done723
 - Do not update the user interface from an observer724
 - Watch for lazy notification whenever possible.724
- File input/output724
- Memory.724
 - Use memory caches for items accessed often724
 - Avoid allocating too much memory725
- Idle tasks725
 - Honor the RunTask flags.725
 - Do a small amount of work during each RunTask call725

Tools 727

- Key concepts.727
 - The toolbox and the layout view727
 - Tools728
 - Cursors728
 - Tool tips729
 - Trackers729
 - Tracker factory, tracking, and event handling729
 - Beyond the toolbox730
 - Drawing and sprites730
 - Documents, page items, and commands731
 - Line-tool use scenario731
 - Trackers with multiple behaviors734
 - Tool manager735
 - Toolbox utilities735
 - Tool type735
- Custom tools.736
 - Architecture736
 - Class diagram736
 - Partial implementation classes737
 - Default implementations737
 - ToolDef ODFRez type738
 - Icons and cursors738
 - InDesign trackers739
- Working with tools.740
 - Catching a mouse click or mouse drag on a document740
 - Implementing a custom tool.740
 - Displaying a Tool Options dialog box740
 - Finding the spread nearest the mouse position.740
 - Changing spreads.740
 - Performing a page-item hit test.740
 - Setting or getting the active tool741
 - Observing when the active tool changes741
 - Changing the toolbox appearance from normal to skinny741
 - Using default implementations for trackers741
 - Suppressing the application's default tracker for a custom toolbox741
- Tool-category information742
- Default implementations of tool-related interfaces745
- Tracker listings.746

Diagnostics	751
Introduction . . . . .	.751
Using the diagnostics plug-in . . . . .	.751
Diagnostics menu. . . . .	.752
Diagnostics > Command menu . . . . .	.752
Diagnostics > Document Structure menu . . . . .	.753
Diagnostics > INX DTD menu . . . . .	.754
Diagnostics > Object Model menu . . . . .	.755
Diagnostics > Scripting DOM menu . . . . .	.756
Running the Diagnostics plug-in in indesign/incopy with a script . . . . .	.756
Running the Diagnostics plug-in in InDesign Server on Windows with a script . . . . .	.757
Running the Diagnostics plug-in in InDesign Server on Mac OS with a script . . . . .	.757
Frequently asked questions . . . . .	.758
Where is the Diagnostics panel?. . . . .	.758
What is trace? . . . . .	.758
Why don't I get trace messages? . . . . .	.758
 InCopy: Getting Started	 759
About InCopy . . . . .	.759
Developing for InCopy. . . . .	.759
Using the combined InDesign/InCopy SDK . . . . .	.759
The InCopy API . . . . .	.760
Compiler settings. . . . .	.760
Resources. . . . .	.760
Synchronization of design and architecture . . . . .	.760
File relationships . . . . .	.761
Stories . . . . .	.762
Page geometry . . . . .	.762
Metadata . . . . .	.762
The document model . . . . .	.763
User-interface differences. . . . .	.763
Checking the feature set . . . . .	.763
Workflow . . . . .	.764
Design and architecture. . . . .	.764
InCopyBridge plug-in . . . . .	.766
InCopyBridge . . . . .	.766
InCopyBridgeUI . . . . .	.767

InCopy: Notes 769

- Concepts769
 - End-user requirements769
 - Capabilities771
 - Data model for notes.773
 - Essential APIs.779
 - Useful commands and associated notification protocols783
- Working with notes786
 - Adding a note at the current insertion-point position786
 - Inserting text into a note787
 - Converting text to a new note.787
 - Converting note content to text.787
 - Navigating among notes788
 - Splitting a note788
 - Expanding and collapsing notes788
 - Selecting a note.789
 - Getting kNoteDataBoss, given a text index whose position is anchored to note789
 - Deleting notes.790
 - Changing notes-palette content to reflect particular note data.790
 - Checking note spelling790
 - Observing a note that is being modified790
 - Using notes in InDesign790

InCopy: Track Changes 791

- Concepts791
 - User interface for Track Changes feature791
- Data model for Track Changes.794
 - Redline strand794
 - Tracking text insertion and deletion795
 - Example: Track Changes in action.799
 - Track Changes preferences809
- Key client APIs.809
 - Track Changes utilities809
 - Suite interfaces809
 - RedlineIterator.811
 - kDeletedTextBoss.812

- Useful commands and associated notification protocols814
 - kSetRedlineTrackingCmdBoss814
 - kSetTrackChangesPrefsCmdBoss814
 - kActivateRedlineCmdBoss816
 - kDeactivateRedlineCmdBoss.816
 - kRejectAllRedlineCmdBoss816
 - kRejectRangeRedlineCmdBoss817
 - kRejectRedlineCmdBoss.817
 - kAcceptAllRedlineCmdBoss818
 - kAcceptRangeRedlineCmdBoss819
 - kAcceptRedlineCmdBoss819
 - kMoveRedlineChangeCmdBoss820
 - kRedlinePreserveDeletionCmdBoss821
- Working with Track Changes.821
 - Navigating tracked changes821
 - Accepting and rejecting tracked changes821
 - Understanding multiple change records in one location822
 - Avoid insignificant tracked changes822
 - Undoing accepted deleted text822
 - Determining whether a location in a story is in deleted text.822
 - Determining whether a primary story-thread location is at a deleted-text anchor822
 - Getting kDeletedTextBoss, given a text index having deleted text823
 - Removing deleted text823
 - Moving a change record from one story to another823
 - Maintaining kRedlineStrandBoss text-run information823

InCopy: Assignments 825

- Concepts825
- Assignment workflow826
- Assignment-export options826
- Assignment827
- Assignment data model.829
 - Assignment hierarchy829
 - Object structure of an assignment830
 - Moving assignment content832
 - Assignment files and links834
- Assignment files834
 - Comparing assignment files to InDesign and InCopy files835
 - Assignment-file format835

The assignment API838

- IAssignmentMgr.838
- IAssignedDocument838
- IAssignment838
- IAssignedStory.838
- IAssignmentSelectionSuite839
- IAssignmentUtils839
- IAssignmentUIUtils839
- IAssignmentPreferences.839
- Common commands.839

Glossary 841

Introduction

This guide provides detailed information on the Adobe® InDesign® CS4 plug-in architecture. This C++-based SDK can be used for creating plug-ins compatible with the CS4 versions of InDesign, InDesign Server, and Adobe InCopy®.

This guide contains the most detailed information on plug-in development for InDesign products. It is not designed to be a starting point. It picks up where *Learning Adobe InDesign CS4 Plug-in Development* leaves off, and it is more commonly used to understand particular subjects deeply.

For experienced InDesign developers

If you are an experienced InDesign plug-in developer, we recommend starting with *Adobe InDesign CS4 Porting Guide*.

For new InDesign developers

If you are new to InDesign development, we recommend approaching the documentation as follows:

1. *Getting Started With the Adobe InDesign CS4 Products SDK* provides an overview of the SDK, as well as a tutorial that takes you through the tools and steps to build your first plug-in.
2. *Learning Adobe InDesign CS4 Plug-in Development* introduces the most common programming constructs for InDesign development. This includes an introduction to the InDesign object model and basic information on user-interface options, scripting, localization, and best practices for structuring your plug-in.
3. The SDK itself includes several sample projects. All samples are described in the “Samples” section of the API reference. This is a great opportunity to find sample code that does something similar to what you want to do, and study it.
4. *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions* provides step-by-step instructions (or “recipes”) for accomplishing various tasks. If your particular task is covered by the Solutions guide, reading it can save you a lot of time.
5. This manual provides the most complete, in-depth information on plug-in development for InDesign CS4 products.



Introduction

For new InDesign developers

Persistent Data and Data Conversion

This chapter describes how an application stores and refers to persistent data as objects and streams. The chapter also provides background information and implementation guidelines related to data conversion.

This chapter has the following objectives:

- Describe how Adobe InDesign® stores data.
- Explain how an object is made persistent.
- Show how to refer to a persistent object.
- Define a stream and explain how to create a new stream.
- Identify when data conversion is used.
- Describe the types of conversion providers.
- Show how conversion providers are defined.
- Describe schemas and their use.

For common procedures and troubleshooting related to converting persistent data, see the “Versioning Persistent Data” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Concepts

Persistence

A *persistent* object can be removed from main memory and returned again, unchanged. A persistent object can be part of a document (like a spread or page item) or part of the application (like a dialog box, menu item, or default setting). Persistent objects can be stored in a database, to last beyond the end of a session. Non-persistent objects last only until memory is freed, when the destructor for the object is called. Only persistent objects are stored in databases.

Databases

The application uses lightweight databases to store persistent objects. The host creates a database for each document created. The host also creates a database for the clipboard storage space, the object model information (the InDesign SavedData or Adobe InCopy® SavedData file), and the workspace information (the InDesign Defaults or InCopy Defaults file).

Each document is contained in its own database. Each persistent object in the database has a UID, a ClassID, and a stream of persistent data.

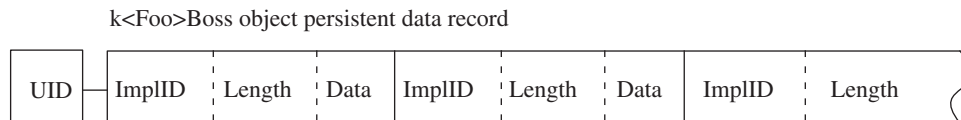
The stream with the persistent object data contains a series of records that correspond to the persistent object. The object's UID is stored with the object, as a key for the record. The vari-

able-length records have one segment for each persistent interface. Every segment has the same structure:

```
ImplementationID tag
int32 length
<data>
```

Figure 1 is a conceptual diagram of this structure. The figure is a conceptual diagram of the database contents, and does not represent the actual contents of any database. The format and content of the data are determined by the implementation of the interface. See “Reading and writing persistent data” on page 34.

FIGURE 1 Conceptual diagram of an object’s data



For each object, the ClassID value is stored in the table, and the ImplementationID values are stored in the stream, but the InterfaceID value is not stored with either. Adding an existing implementation (i.e., an implementation supplied by the SDK) to an existing class can cause problems if another software developer adds the same implementation to the class: one of the two plug-ins will fail on start-up. To avoid this collision, create a new implementation for any persistent interface to be added to a class, using ImplementationAlias. For an example, see <SDK>/source/sdksamples/dynamicpanel/DynPn.fr.

Persistent objects

This section discusses how persistent objects are created, deleted, and manipulated.

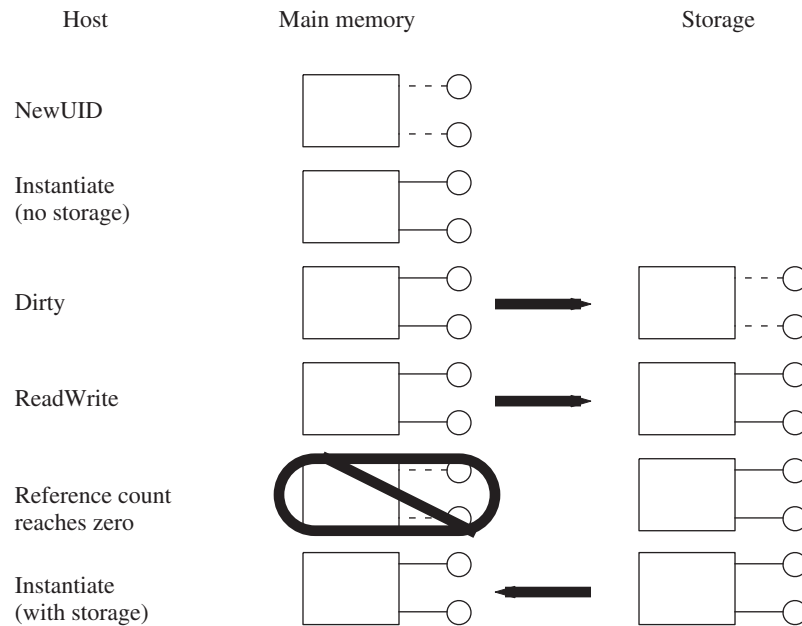
The application stores persistent objects in a database, and each object has a unique identifier within the database. The methods for creating, instantiating, and using a persistent object are different from the methods for non-persistent objects.

Using persistent objects

When a persistent object is created, its record exists in memory. Certain events, like a user’s request to save a document, trigger the writing of the record to storage. (See Figure 2) A count is maintained of the number of references to each persistent object. Any object with a reference count greater than zero remains active in memory. If the reference count for a persistent object reaches zero, the object may be asked to write itself to its database and be moved to the instance cache, which makes the object a candidate for deletion from memory. Events that require access to the object, like drawing or manipulating it, trigger the host to read the object back

into memory. Because individual objects can be saved and loaded, the host does not have to load the entire document into memory at once.

FIGURE 2 *Creating and storing persistent objects*



Creating a persistent object

Creating a new instance of a persistent object differs from creating a non-persistent object, because it requires a unique identifier to associate the object with its record in the database. For the `CreateObject` and `CreateObject2` methods used to create persistent objects, see `<SDK>/source/public/includes/CreateObject.h`.

For examples of the creation of persistent objects, see the `CreateWidgetForNode` method in `<SDK>/source/sdksamples/paneltreeview/PnlTrvTVWidgetMgr.cpp` or the `StartupSomePalette` method in `<SDK>/source/sdksamples/dynamicpanel/DynPnPanelManager.cpp`.

You also can call `IDataBase::NewUID` method to create a new UID in the database. It adds an entry to the database relating the UID to the class of the object being created; however, the object is not instantiated yet, and no other information about it exists in the database.

Instantiating a persistent object

Before you instantiate a new object, use the `InterfacePtr` template to retrieve one of the object's interfaces. Pass the returned `InterfacePtr` to the `IDataBase::Instantiate` method, which calls the database to instantiate the object.

There is only one object in memory for any UID and database. This method checks whether the object already is in memory and, if so, returns a reference to that object. If the object is

marked as changed, it is written to the database. For more information, see [“Reading and writing persistent data” on page 34](#). If the object is not in memory, the method checks for previously stored data in the database. If data is found, the method instantiates the object from this data. Otherwise, the method instantiates the object from the object’s constructor. Each implementation has a constructor, so the boss and all its implementations are instantiated.

An object is stored to the database only if it is changed, making the default object data invalid. A single object could exist and be used in several user sessions without ever being written to the database. A persistent object whose data is not stored in the database is constructed from the object’s constructor.

Whether it instantiates a new object or returns a reference to an object previously instantiated, `IDatabase::Instantiate` increments the reference count on the object and returns an `IPMUnknown*` to the requested interface, if the interface is available.

Using commands and wrappers

There are commands for creating new objects of many of the existing classes (e.g., `kNewDocCmdBoss`, `kNewPageItemCmdBoss`, `kNewStoryCmdBoss`, and `kNewUIDCmdBoss`). When you need to create an object, first look for a suite interface, utility interface, or facade interface to make creating your object safe and easy. If no such interface exists, use a command if one is available, rather than creating the object with general functions.

Using a command to create an object protects the database. Commands are transaction based; if you use a command when the application already is in an error state, the command performs a protective shut-down, which quits the application rather than permitting a potentially corrupting change to be made to the document. Commands also provide notification for changes to the model, allowing observers to be updated when the change is made, including changes made with undo and redo operations.

When you implement a new type of persistent object, also implement a command to create objects of that type, using methods outlined in [“Implementing persistent objects” on page 33](#).

Types of references to objects

There are four types of reference to a persistent object: `UID`, `UIDRef`, `InterfacePtr`, and `UIDList`. Each type of reference serves a different purpose. Understanding these reference types makes working with persistent objects easier.

- `UID` is the type used for a unique identifier within the scope of a database. The `UID` value by itself is not sufficient to identify the object outside the scope of the database. Like a record number, a `UID` value has meaning only within a given database. `UID` values are useful for storing, passing, and otherwise referring to boss objects, because `UID` values have no run-time dependencies, and there is an instance cache ensuring fast access to the instantiated objects. `kInvalidUID` is a value used to identify a `UID` that does not point at a valid object. Any time a `UID` is retrieved and needs to be tested to see if it points at a valid object, the `UID` should be compared to `kInvalidUID`.
- A `UIDRef` object contains two pieces of information: a pointer to a database and the `UID` of an object within this database. A `UIDRef` is useful for referring to objects, because it identifies both the database and the object. Using a `UIDRef` object is a common means of referring to a persistent object, especially when the persistent object is to be passed around or

stored, since a UIDRef does not require the referenced object to be instantiated. A UIDRef object cannot itself be persistent data, because it has a run-time dependency, the database pointer. An empty or invalid UIDRef object has kInvalidUID as its UID and a nil pointer as its database pointer.

- A *InterfacePtr* object contains a pointer to an interface (on any type of boss object) and identify an instantiated object in main memory. While an InterfacePtr object on the boss is necessary for working with the boss, it should not be used to track a reference to a persistent object, because this forces the object to stay in memory. In many cases, a nil pointer returned from InterfacePtr does not indicate an error state but simply means the requested interface does not exist on the specified boss.
- A *UIDList* object contains a list of UIDs and a single pointer to a database. This means all objects identified by a UIDList must be within the same database. A UIDList is a class object and should be used any time a list of objects is needed for a selection or a command.

Destroying an object

There are commands for deleting persistent objects. Use the command rather than calling the DeleteUID method directly, to be sure of cleaning up all references to the object or item references contained in the object.

When you implement a command to delete a persistent object, after you remove the references to the object, use DeleteUID to delete the object from the database, as follows:

```
IDataBase::DBResultCode dbResult = database->DeleteUID(uid);
```

Implementing persistent objects

To make a boss object persistent, add the IPMPersist interface. Any boss with this interface is persistent and, when an object of the boss is created, it is assigned a UID. Even though the object has a UID, and the UID has an entry in the (ClassID, UID) pairings in a database, the object does not automatically store data. It is up to the interface to store the data it needs. To implement this, add the ReadWrite method to the interface (see [“Reading and writing persistent data” on page 34](#)), and make sure the PreDirty method is called before information is changed (see [“Marking changed data” on page 34](#)).

NOTE: If you add an interface to an existing persistent boss, the interface also may be made persistent. If so, you must obey the following implementation rules for it.

Adding the IPMPersist interface to a boss

All instances of IPMPersist must use the kPMPersistImpl implementation. For an example, see the kPstLstDataBoss boss class definition in <SDK>/source/sdksamples/persistentlist/PstLst.fr

Creating an interface factory for a persistent interface

For a persistent implementation, use the CREATE_PERSIST_PMINTERFACE macro.

Reading and writing persistent data

To store data, your interface must support the `ReadWrite` method. This method does the actual reading and writing of persistent data in the database. The method takes a stream argument containing the data to be transferred. Read and write stream methods are generalized, so one `ReadWrite` method handles transfers in both directions. For example, `XferBool` reads a boolean value for a read stream and writes a boolean value for a write stream. For an example, see the `BPIDataPersist::ReadWrite` method in `<SDK>/source/sdksamples/basicpersistinterface/BPIDataPersist.cpp`.

Marking changed data

When data changes for a persistent object that resides in memory, there is a difference between the current version of the object and the object as it exists in the database's storage. When this happens, the object in memory is said to be *dirty*, meaning it does not match the version in storage. Before a persistent object is modified, you must call the `PreDirty` method to mark the object as being changed, so it is written to the database. For an example, see the `BPIDataPersist::Set` method in `<SDK>/source/sdksamples/basicpersistinterface/BPIDataPersist.cpp`.

The `PreDirty` method called from within `BPIDataPersist::Set` is implementation-independent, so you can rely on the version provided by `HELPER_METHODS` macros defined in `HelperInterface.h` (`DECLARE_HELPER_METHODS`, `DEFINE_HELPER_METHODS`, and `HELPER_METHODS_INIT`).

Streams

This section discusses how streams are used to move information into and out of a document.

Streams are used by persistent objects to store their information to a database. Streams also are used by the host application, to move data like placed images, information copied to the clipboard, and objects stored in the database. `IPMStream` is the public interface to streams. Implementations of `IPMStream` typically use the `IXferBytes` interface to move data.

Stream utility methods (in `StreamUtil.h`) are helpers for creating all the common types of streams used to move information within or between InDesign databases. The stream utility methods and general read, write, and copy methods are needed any time you work with a stream.

IPMStream methods

`IPMStream` is a generalized class for both reading and writing streams. Any particular stream implementation is either a reading stream or a writing stream, and the type of stream can be determined with the `IPMStream::IsReading` and `IPMStream::IsWriting` methods.

Any persistent implementation has a `ReadWrite` method, which uses a set of data-transferring methods on the stream to read and write its data. (See [“Reading and writing persistent data” on page 34](#).) The `IPMStream` methods starting with the `Xfer` prefix are used for transferring the

data type identified in the method name. For example, `XferByte` transfers a byte, `XferInt16` transfers a 16-bit integer, `XferBool` transfers a boolean value, and so on. All transferring methods are overloaded, so they can take a single item or an array of items. (The `XferByte(uchar, int32)` version typically is used for buffers.) Streams also handle byte swapping, if required. If swapping is not set (`SetSwapping(bool16)`), the default is to not do byte-order swapping.

Additional `IPMStream` methods, `XferObject` and `XferReference`, transfer boss objects and references to objects. `XferObject` transfers an owned object, and `XferReference` transfers a reference to an object not owned by the object using the stream. To decide which method to use, think about what should happen to the object if the owning object were deleted. If the object should still be available (as, for example, the color a page item refers to), use `XferReference`. If the item is owned by the object and should be deleted with the owner (as, for example, the page a document refers to), use `XferObject`.

Implementing a new stream

If you must read from or write to a location the host application does not recognize, you must create a new type of stream. For example, you might need to create a new stream type to import and export files stored on an FTP site or in a database.

Stream boss

The first step in implementing a new stream is to define the boss. Typically, a stream boss contains `IPMStream` and any interface required to identify the type of information in the stream, the target or source of the stream, or both. [Example 1](#) creates a pointer-based read-stream boss:

EXAMPLE 1 *kExtLinkPointerStreamWriteBoss, a pointer based stream boss*

```
Class
{
    kExtLinkPointerStreamWriteBoss,
    kInvalidClass,
    {
        IID_IPMSTREAM, kExtLinkPointerStreamWriteImpl,
        IID_IPOINTERSTREAMDATA, kPointerStreamDataImpl,
    }
};
```

`IPMStream` is the only interface all stream bosses have in common. In [Example 1](#), the `IPointerStreamData` controls a stream that writes out to memory; it contains a buffer and a length.

[Example 2](#) is another example.

EXAMPLE 2 *kFileStreamReadBoss, a stream commonly used in importing*

```
Class
{
    kFileStreamReadBoss,
    kInvalidClass,
    {
        IID_IPMSTREAM, kFileStreamReadLazyImpl,
        IID_IFILESTREAMDATA, kFileStreamDataImpl,
    }
};
```

IPMStream interface and the IXferBytes class

When implementing your own stream, take advantage of the default implementations of IPMStream, CStreamRead, and CStreamWrite. These default implementations use an abstract base class, IXferBytes, to do the actual reading and writing. To implement a stream for a new data source, you must create an IXferBytes subclass that can read and write to that data source.

Missing plug-ins

This section discusses how to open a document that contains data saved by a plug-in that is no longer available.

Plug-ins you create can add data to the document. When your plug-in is present and loaded, it can open and interpret the data; however, if the user removes the plug-in and then opens the document, or gives the document to someone who does not have the plug-in, the plug-in is not available to interpret the data.

You have two ways to handle such situations:

- Control what warning is shown when the document is opened without the plug-in.
- Implement code to update the data the next time the document is opened with the plug-in.

The rest of this section describes these options.

Warning levels

The application can give a warning when it opens a document that contains data created by a plug-in that is not available. There are three warning levels: critical, default, and ignore. By setting the warning level, the plug-in can specify the relative importance of its data. Data created by the plug-in has the “default” warning level unless you override the setting and identify the data as more important (critical) or less important (ignored). This importance settings can be modified by adding resources to the plug-in’s boss definition file:

- CriticalTags — A “critical” warning tells the user the document contains data from missing plug-ins and strongly advises the user not to open the document. If the user continues the

open operation, the application opens an untitled document that is a copy of the original, to preserve the original document. Use this level when the data is visible in the document or contributes objects owned by another object in the database, like text attributes, owned by the text model.

- **DefaultTags** — A “default” warning tells the user the document contains data from missing plug-ins and asks whether to continue the open operation. If the user continues the open operation, the application opens the original document. Use this level when the data is self-contained and invisible to the user, but the user might encounter missing function that would have been provided by the plug-in.
- **IgnoreTags** — An “ignore” warning provides no warning message at all; the application proceeds with the open operation as if there were no missing plug-ins. Use this level when the data is invisible to the user and completely self-contained. In this case, the user does not need to know the plug-in was involved in the construction of this document. If the plug-in stored data in the document, but that data is used only by this plug-in and does not reference objects supplied by other plug-ins, the user sees no difference in the document when the plug-in is missing. For example, the plug-in might store preferences information in every document for its own use.

You can set these warnings to use `ClassID` (when the plug-in creates new bosses) or `ImplementationID` (when the plug-in adds interfaces to existing bosses) values as triggers. Use `kImplementationIDSpace` to specify a list of `ImplementationID` values, and `kClassIDSpace` for `ClassID` values. You can put any number of IDs in the list, but all the IDs must be of the same type. Use a second resource to mark IDs of another type. [Example 3](#) and [Example 4](#) set the warning level to ignore data stored by the `PersistentList` plug-in in the SDK by adding two resources to `PstLst.fr`:

EXAMPLE 3 Marking implementation IDs as ignored

```
resource IgnoreTags(1)
{
    kImplementationIDSpace,
    {
        kPstLstDataPersistImpl,
        kPstLstUIDListImpl,
    }
};
```

EXAMPLE 4 Marking boss classes as ignored

```
resource IgnoreTags(2)
{
    kClassIDSpace,
    {
        kPstLstDataBoss,
    }
};
```

You do not need to mark any IDs that do not appear in the document (for example, data that was written out to saved data) or implementations that are not persistent.

You do not need to mark IDs if you want the default behavior.

Missing plug-in alert

This alert is activated when a document is opened and contains data from one or more missing plug-ins that cannot be ignored. The document contains a list of the plug-ins that added data to it. Each piece of data added has an importance attached to it; this may be critical, default, or ignorable. Data marked as ignorable does not cause the alert to be activated. Data marked as critical or default causes the alert to be activated. In the case of critical data, the alert works more strongly; this is the only difference between critical and default data.

The alert tells the user data is missing, presents a list of missing plug-ins, and allows the user to continue or cancel the open operation. Each missing plug-in has the chance to add a string to the alert that specifies additional useful information (e.g., a URL for purchasing or downloading the plug-in). The alert is modeled on the missing-font alert.

The “Don’t Warn Again For These Plug-ins” option is de-selected by default. If this option is selected, the alert is not activated the next time a document is opened and any subset of the listed plug-ins is missing (and no other plug-ins are missing). This allows users accustomed to seeing (and ignoring) alerts concerning specific plug-ins to automatically bypass the alert, while still getting warned about data from any plug-ins newly found to be missing. The alert is activated again if a document is opened that uses other missing plug-ins. The alert is activated again if the “Don’t Warn Again For These Plug-ins” option is de-selected.

Guidelines for handling a missing plug-in

If a plug-in creates persistent data in a document, these guidelines ensure the document behaves gracefully if a user tries to open it when the plug-in is missing or if the document is edited by a user who did not have the plug-in:

If your plug-in does not store data in documents, you do not need to take any special precautions.

If the data stored by your plug-in does not reference other data in the document and does not appear visually in the document, mark the data as ignorable.

If editing the document without your plug-in could corrupt the document, mark the data as critical. You can specify a string that is displayed when the plug-in is missing and the user opens a document that contains data added by the plug-in. See the `ExtraPluginInfo` resource, which may provide information like the URL of a site from which the missing plug-in can be obtained. See an example of the use of this resource in `<SDK>/source/sdksamples/transparencyeffect/TranFx.fr`.

If there are checks your plug-in can do to restore the data’s integrity on opening a document edited without the plug-in, supply a `FixUpData` method. For an example, see `<SDK>/source/sdksamples/persistentlist/PstLstPlugIn.cpp`.

If you want your plug-in to handle the storage of its own data, use the application-supplied mechanism that treats the plug-in’s data like a black box. (See [“Black-box data storage”](#) on page 39.)

Data handling for missing plug-ins

If a document contains data placed there by a plug-in that is not available, the user can choose to open the document anyway. If the data is completely self-contained, there may be no problem; however, if the plug-in's data depends on anything else in the document, undesirable things can happen.

Missing data not copied

InDesign maintains most data in a centrally managed model in which the core-content manager keeps track of what information is added to the document, handles conversion of the data, and provides a convenient mechanism for instantiating objects based on the data. This approach does not allow the data to be copied when the plug-in is missing, however, because the content manager would not be able to provide these services for the missing plug-in's copied data, and that potentially can leave the document in an invalid state. With the exception of those objects that hold onto only ClassID values, InDesign blocks copying data associated with missing plug-ins.

This means no attribute is copied if the plug-in that supplies the attribute is missing. This applies to all attributes: text, graphics, table, cjk, etc. Furthermore, if a plug-in attached a data interface to an existing attribute, and the plug-in is missing, the attribute is copied but the add-in data interface is not. This is consistent with how InDesign handles UID-based objects.

Likewise, if a data interface is added to an XML element, the data interface is not copied if the plug-in that supplied it is missing.

There are several features based on an object from a required plug-in holding a ClassID from an optional plug-in, including adornments, text composer, pair-kern algorithm, section numbers, and unit defaults. In these cases, the consequences of losing track of the plug-in that supplied the data is much less severe. Conversion of these ClassIDs is quite unusual and could be handled if necessary by issuing new ClassIDs. Error handling in the user interface when the plug-in is missing is much more graceful.

Black-box data storage

A second, simpler data-model storage mechanism was added for software developers requiring that data (like text attributes) is copied with the text, and for developers who want to attach data to other ID objects, such that it gets copied even when the source plug-in is missing. This mechanism is black-box data storage.

In the simplest case, the black box is just a new persistent interface that sits on the object. A plug-in can store data in the box or fetch data out of the box. The data is keyed by a ClassID, which is supplied by the plug-in. Multiple plug-ins can store their data in the same black box, and each plug-in gets its own, unique, streamed access to its data. The black box just keeps track of the key, the length of the data, and the data stream. The software developer is responsible for handling everything else—conversion, swapping, etc. Users do not get a missing plug-in alert for data placed in a black box.

Any UID-based object could have a black box. In addition, attributes and small bosses (used for XML elements) also can have black boxes.

The following objects support black boxes:

- *kDocBoss* — The root object of the document does not get copied.
- *kPageItemBoss* — This includes all page item objects, including spreads, master pages, splines, frames, images, and text frames.
- *Attributes* — This includes text, graphic, table, cjk, etc. (i.e., everything that appears in an *AttributeBossList*).

For more information on the black-box mechanism, see *IBlackBoxCommands*, *IBlackBoxCmdData*, and *IBlackBoxData* in the API reference documentation.

FixUpData

Suppose a hyperlink attribute is linked to another frame, and the user can double-click the link to go to the frame. A plug-in supplies an observer, so if the frame is deleted, the link is severed. Now suppose you give the document containing the hyperlinks to someone who does not have the hyperlink plug-in. This person edits the document, deletes the frame, saves the document, then returns the document to you. The document is now corrupted, because your plug-in was unable to delete the associated link, which now points to an undefined frame.

To restore the integrity of a document in this case, the plug-in can override the *IPlugIn::FixUpData* method. This method is called when the document is opened, if the plug-in was used to store data in the document and the document was edited and saved without the plug-in. In this case, the hyperlinks plug-in could override *FixUpData* to scan all its objects, checking whether the linked frame UIDs were deleted; when the document is opened with the plug-in, the method correctly severs the links.

Conversion of persistent data

This section describes types of conversion providers and the advantages of each type.

Converting persistent data from an old document to a new one is complex, because each plug-in can store data independently in the document. When the host opens a document created with an older version of the application or an older version of any plug-in used in the document, you must convert and update the older data to match the new format.

Versioning persistent data is the process of converting persistent data in a database from one format to another. The data in different formats usually resides in different databases; for example, data in a database (document) from a previous version of InDesign versus that in a database (document) from a newer version of InDesign. Just as each plug-in having a persistent data implementation is responsible for the order of reading and writing its own data (thus implicitly defining a data format), each plug-in also is responsible for converting its own data from one format to another. Whether data in a database requires conversion usually is determined when the database is opened.

There are two approaches to converting persistent data:

- You can use the host's conversion manager to manage the conversion process. This approach is the most common. See [“Converting data with the conversion manager” on page 42](#).
- The plug-in that owns the data can manage when and how data is converted, using version information or other data embedded with the object data. See [“Converting data without the conversion manager” on page 52](#).

When to convert persistent data

As a plug-in developer, you want to ensure your users can open documents with persistent data from an older version of your plug-in. To do this, your plug-in must provide data conversion function. The best time to consider your data-conversion strategy is when you realize your plug-in will store some data to a database. You need to implement data-conversion utilities in the following cases:

- You change the order of IPMStream::Xfer* calls in the ReadWrite method.
- You change a persistent object's definition.
- You re-number (change the value of) an ImplementationID or ClassID identifier.
- You remove a plug-in and data from the removed plug-in might be in a document a user wants to open.

In any of these cases, the conversion manager needs to be notified how to convert the persistent data for use by the loaded plug-in.

Specifying how the persistent data format changed is somewhat different from adding persistent data to or removing it from a document. Besides telling the conversion manager to add or delete any obsolete data, the conversion provider has to be able to tell the conversion manager about every implementation in the plug-in that was ever removed, to keep the content manager up to date about the various persistent data formats.

NOTE: To provide a document for use with an earlier version of InDesign, use the InDesign Interchange file format.

At the very least, the resources required to support data conversion can help you keep a log of how your persistent data format has changed. Such a log can be useful.

Sample conversion scenario

Consider a plug-in with two released versions, 1 and 2, which use the same data format; in this case, both versions of the plug-in have the same format version number, 1. The new release of the plug-in, version 3, stores additional data, such as a time stamp. You must update the format version number to match the current plug-in version number; so, for plug-in version 3, the format version also would be 3. Because you changed the format version number, you must create a converter that converts from version 1 to version 3. See [Table 1](#).

TABLE 1 Version changes example

Plug-in version	Format change	Format version
1	N/A (new plug-in)	1.0
2	No	1.1
3	Yes	3
4	Yes	4

For a fourth version of the plug-in, you again change the format, allowing a date stamp to be signed. Change the plug-in and format version numbers to 4, and add an additional converter to convert from version 3 to version 4. Conversions from version 1 to version 4 are done by the conversion manager, which chains the converters together; the first converts from format version 1 to format version 3, and the second converts from format version 3 to format version 4).

Converting data with the conversion manager

Each document contains header information about the content, which includes a list of all plug-ins that wrote data to the document and the version number of the plug-in last used to write that data. When a document is opened, the application checks whether any plug-ins are missing or out of date. If a plug-in is missing, it might provide an alert embedded in the document. (See [“Missing plug-ins” on page 36.](#))

If a plug-in is out of date, data written by the old plug-in must be updated to match the format required by the loaded plug-in. A plug-in can register a conversion service to do the update. The InDesign conversion manager (IConversionMgr) determines which conversions are required for opening the document and calls the appropriate plug-in to do the conversion.

When the persistent data for any plug-in changes, this is a document format change. Any of the following can change the document format:

- *Changes to the ReadWrite method* — If the ReadWrite method is used to stream data to the document, changing the ReadWrite method might change the document format; however, an implementation might have a ReadWrite method that works with some other database or other data source, not with the document itself. For example, a widget has a ReadWrite method used for streaming to and from resources and to and from the SavedData file. Changes to a method that does not work with the document database do not require any special conversion.
- *Changes to an object’s definition* — If you add an implementation to (or remove an implementation from) the definition of a persistent boss in the framework resource (.fr) file, you change how the object is streamed. If you add a new implementation, an old version of the object will stream, but it will not contain the data normally appearing for the implementation you added. This is fine if the data can be initialized adequately from the implementation’s constructor; otherwise, you may need to add a converter. If you change the implementation of an interface from one ImplementationID to another, you must convert the data. If you remove an ImplementationID from a class, you should add a converter to

strip the old data from the object; otherwise, the obsolete data is carried around with the object indefinitely.

- *Re-numbering an ImplementationID or ClassID* — If an ImplementationID or ClassID changes, you must register a converter so occurrences of the ImplementationID or ClassID in old documents can be updated. In practice, re-numbering a ClassID or ImplementationID is a source of many bugs and typically leads to corrupt documents, so we strongly recommend you not re-number an ImplementationID or ClassID.

When you make a format change, you must do two things to maintain backward compatibility:

- Update the version number of the plug-in whose data format you changed.
- Provide a converter that can convert between the previous format and the new format.

Updating version numbers

Each plug-in has a plug-in version resource of type PluginVersion. The PluginVersion resource appears in the boss definition file. The first entry of this resource describes the application's build number; on the release build, this entry is the final-release version number. The second entry of the resource is the plug-in's ID, followed by three sets of version numbers, followed by an array of feature-set IDs. If any of the IDs in this list matches the current feature-set ID, the plug-in is loaded. To see an example, open any example .fr file in the SDK.

Each version number has a major number and a minor number. The first version number is the version of the plug-in, which gets updated for every release of the plug-in. The second version number is the version of the application with which the plug-in expects to run. This ensures the user does not drop a plug-in compiled for one version of the application into an installation of another version of the application. The last number is the format version number, which indicates the version of the plug-in that last changed the file format; this is the version number written into the document, and it is the number the conversion manager checks to see whether conversion is required.

The format version number does not always match the plug-in's version number. The format version number does not generally change as often as the plug-in version number. The plug-in version number changes for every release of a plug-in, but the format version number changes only if the format for the data the plug-in stores in the document has changed and the conversion manager is required to convert the data.

Adding a converter

Converters can be implemented as conversion services. InDesign supports two types of service-provider-based data conversion:

- *Schema-based provider* — Schema-based converters are configured through resources, are easier to use than code-based converters, and cover most format-change needs. Use this type of converter unless it cannot handle the special needs of your plug-in.
- *Code-based provider* — If your implementation uses a special data-compression algorithm or other storage optimizations, involves data of variable length, or uses virtual object store (VOS) objects, schema-based converters cannot handle the necessary data format conversions. In this case, you must implement your own custom conversion provider.

A conversion service is responsible for all conversions done by the plug-in. A converter might at first handle only a single conversion, from the first format to the second. Later, if you change the format again, you can add another conversion to the converter, to convert from the second format to the third.

Suppose you market a plug-in that supplies a date stamp. You had released two versions (version 1.0 and version 2.0) of the plug-in without changing the persistent data created by the plug-in; so both releases have the same format version number (1.0). For the third released version of the plug-in, you add a time stamp. You must update the format version number to match the current plug-in version number; i.e., for plug-in version 3.0, the format version also must be 3.0.

Suppose for the fourth released version of the plug-in (version 4.0), you again change the format, allowing a date stamp to be signed. You then change the format version number to 4.0 and add an additional converter, capable of converting from format version 3.0 to format version 4.0. Conversions from format version 1.0 to format version 4.0 can be done by the conversion manager, which chains the two converters together, using the first converter to convert from format version 1.0 to format version 3.0, and using the second converter to convert format version 3.0 to format version 4.0.)

Adding a converter (either schema-based or code-based) to your plug-in means adding a new boss with two interfaces, `IK2ServiceProvider` and `IConversionProvider`. The `IK2ServiceProvider` implementation, `kConversionServiceImpl`, is provided by the application. You need to supply the `IConversionProvider` implementation. Here is a sample boss:

```
/**
 * This boss provides a conversion service to the conversion manager
 * to use the schema-based implementation.
 */
Class
{
    kMyConversionProviderBoss,
    kInvalidClass,
    {
        IID_IConversionProvider, kMySchemaBasedConversionImpl,
        IID_IK2ServiceProvider, kConversionServiceImpl,
    }
},
```

Most of the work is done in the conversion provider supplied with the SDK.

The default implementation of `IConversionMgr` calls `IConversionProvider::CountConversions` and `IConversionProvider::GetNthConversion` to determine which conversions are supported by the converter. When you implement a new converter, `CountConversions` returns 1, and `GetNthConversion` returns `fromVersion` set to the version number before your change and `toVersion` set to the version number having your change in it. `VersionID` is a data type in the Public library; it consists of the `PluginID` value, the major format version number, and the minor format version number.

For a new converter, `fromVersion` should be `VersionID(yourPluginID, kOldPersistMajorVersionNumber, kOldPersistMinorVersionNumber)`. The `toVersion` should be the new format version number.

Your new conversion is added as conversion index 0. For a new converter, it looks like this:

```
int32 TextConversionProvider::CountConversions() const
{
    return 1;
}

void TextConversionProvider::GetNthConversion(
    int32 i, VersionID* fromVersion, VersionID* toVersion) const
{
    *fromVersion = VersionID(kTextPluginID, kOldPersistMajorVersionNumber,
kOldPersistMinorVersionNumber);
    *toVersion = VersionID(kTextPluginID, kNewPersistMajorVersionNumber,
kNewPersistMinorVersionNumber);
}
```

When adding another change after a changed version already exists, the change numbers should chain together so the conversion manager can do changes across multiple formats. So, if your plug-in used three formats—starting with version 1, then changed in version 3, and changed again in version 4—your plug-in should register one converter that handles the conversion from format version 1 to format version 3 and another converter that handles the conversion from format version 3 to format version 4. If necessary, the conversion manager can chain them together to convert a document from version 1 to version 4. The methods would look like this:

```
const int32 kFirstFormatVersion = 1;
const int32 kSecondFormatVersion = 3;
const int32 kThirdFormatVersion = 4;

const int32 kFirstChange = 0;
const int32 kNewChange = 1;

int32 TextConversionProvider::CountConversions() const
{
    return 2;
}

void TextConversionProvider::GetNthConversion(
    int32 i, VersionID* fromVersion, VersionID* toVersion) const
{
    if (i == kFirstChange)
    {
        *fromVersion = VersionID(kTextPluginID, kMajorVersionNumber,
kFirstPersistMinorVersionNumber);
        *toVersion = VersionID(kTextPluginID, kMajorVersionNumber,
kSecondPersistMinorVersionNumber);
    }
    else if (i == kNewChange)
    {
        *fromVersion = VersionID(kTextPluginID, kMajorVersionNumber,
kSecondPersistMinorVersionNumber);
        *toVersion = VersionID(kTextPluginID, kMajorVersionNumber,
kThirdPersistMinorVersionNumber);
    }
}
```

Next, tell the conversion manager which information you changed. The default implementation of `IConversionMgr` calls `IConversionProvider::ShouldConvertImplementation` with each implementation in the document supplied by the plug-in. Depending on the data status of the implementation, the plug-in must return `kMustConvert` when the content must be modified, `kMustRemove` when the data is obsolete and must be removed, `kMustStrip` when the content must be stripped, or `kNothingToConvert` for all other cases.

Using `kTextFrameImpl` as an example, define a method for `IConversionProvider::ShouldConvertImplementation`, returning `kMustConvert` when the tag is `kTextFrameImpl` and `kNothingToConvert` in all other cases. The plug-in should do this when the conversion manager is converting that plug-in's data and not performing another conversion, so check the conversion index and make sure it is the one that you added. It might look like the following:

```
IConversionProvider::ConversionStatus
TextConversionProvider::ShouldConvertImplementation(
    ImplementationID tag, ClassID context, int32 conversionIndex) const
{
    IConversionProvider::ConversionStatus status =
    IConversionProvider::kNothingToConvert;

    switch (conversionIndex)
    {
    case 0:
        if (tag == kTextFrameImpl)
            status = IConversionProvider::kMustConvert;
        break;
    default:
        break;
    }

    return status;
}
```

Next, implement `ConvertTag` to do the actual conversion. Suppose the `TextFrame ReadWrite` method writes an integer value and a real value, and you are adding a boolean. The `ConvertTag` implementation might look like the following, which illustrates what most converters look like:

```
ImplementationID TextConversionProvider::ConvertTag(
    ImplementationID tag, ClassID forClass, int32 conversionIndex, int32 inLength,
    IPMStream* inStream, IPMStream* outStream, IterationStatus whichIteration)
{
    ImplementationID outTag = tag;
    switch (conversionIndex)
    {
    case 0:
        if (tag == kTextFrameImpl)
        {
            if (inLength > 0)
            {
                int32 passThruInt; inStream->XferInt32(passThruInt);
                outStream->XferInt32(passThruInt);
                int32 passThruReal; inStream->XferInt32(passThruReal);
                outStream->XferInt32(passThruReal); // Adding new field bool16 smartQuotes =
                kTrue;
                outStream->XferInt32(smartQuotes);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```

}
} break;
default:
break;
} return outTag;
}

```

If the converter needs to convert a class, it implements `ShouldConvertClass` and `ConvertClass`. This is necessary only if the class is being deleted or is a container for some other data. (See [“Containers and embedded data” on page 48.](#))

Removing classes or implementations

If you remove a `ClassID` or an `ImplementationID` from a version of your plug-in, the identifier also must be removed from documents as they are converted. The conversion manager removes an identifier for you if you implement your converter to return invalid status. For example, to remove a tag, implement `ConvertTag` as follows:

```

ImplementationID TextConversionProvider::ConvertTag(
    ImplementationID tag, ClassID forClass, int32 conversionIndex, int32 inLength,
    IPMStream* inStream, IPMStream* outStream, IterationStatus whichIteration)
{
    ImplementationID outTag = tag;
    switch (conversionIndex)
    {
    case 0:
        if (tag == kTagToRemove)
            outTag = kInvalidImpl;
        break;
    default:
        break;
    }
    return outTag;
}

```

Deleting a class is similar: implement `ConvertClass` to return `kInvalidClass`.

Changing an implementation in one class

Suppose a boss is defined with an `IBoolData` interface, implemented as `kPersistBoolTrue`, meaning it defaults to true. Suppose you change this to `kPersistBoolFalse`. When you read an old document with the new boss, you want it to use the new implementation. You would then write a converter to take the data stored as `kPersistBoolTrue` and switch it to be stored as `kPersistBoolFalse`. When you first access the boss, it has the old value. If you do not make a converter, the boss will not read the old data, because there is no interface in the new boss using the `kPersistBoolTrue` `ImplementationID`. Instead, the boss looks for `kPersistBoolFalse` but does not find it, because the old boss did not have it; therefore, the value is false, because it is the default value instead of the old value.

To change the `ImplementationID` of the data in the document, make a conversion method to catch the old `ImplementationID` and change it to the new one. Do this only for your boss; do not change other bosses using `kPersistBoolTrue`. Your method might look like this:

```
ImplementationID TextConversionProvider::ConvertTag(
    ImplementationID tag, ClassID forClass, int32 conversionIndex, int32 inLength,
    IPMStream* inStream, IPMStream* outStream, IterationStatus whichIteration)
{
    ImplementationID outTag = tag;
    switch (conversionIndex)
    {
        case 0:
            if (tag == kPersistBoolTrue && forClass == kMyBoss)
                outTag = kPersistBoolFalse;
            bool16 theBool;
            inStream->XferBool(theBool);
            outStream->XferBool(theBool);
            break;
        default:
            break;
    }
    return outTag;
}
```

forClass is the boss in which the data was found. The conversion should be done only if forClass is the one you want changed.

Also implement ShouldConvertImplementation. forClass is either the class in which the data was found or kInvalidClass if any class should match. The implementation of ShouldConvertImplementation looks like this:

```
IConversionProvider::ConversionStatus
TextConversionProvider::ShouldConvertImplementation (
    ImplementationID tag, ClassID forClass, int32 conversionIndex) const
{
    IConversionProvider::ConversionStatus status =
        IConversionProvider::kNothingToConvert;

    switch (conversionIndex){
        case 0:
            if (tag == kTextFrameImpl &&
                (forClass == kMyBoss || forClass == kInvalidClass))
                status = IConversionProvider::kMustConvert;
            break;
        default:
            break;
    }
    return status;
}
```

Containers and embedded data

InDesign does not have many instances of containers. One example is in the text attribute code. A text style is a UID-based boss object containing an implementation, TextAttributeList, that contains a list of attribute bosses (Bold, Point Size, Leading, and so on). These attribute bosses are not UID-based bosses; instead, TextAttributeList streams the ClassID for a boss, followed by the boss's data, then streams the next boss in the list. TextAttributeList, therefore, must call the stream's content tracker to notify the content manager that a new class was added to the document.

The following example illustrates why this is important.

Suppose a new Red-Line plug-in adds an attribute to the style and the text does not compose correctly if the Red-Line plug-in is removed. Red-Line can list the attribute as critical, so the host provides a strongly worded warning when the user tries to open the document without the Red-Line plug-in. However, if `TextAttributeList` does not register the attribute boss with the content manager, the application never knows the attribute is in the document and cannot warn the user. Suppose the Red-Line plug-in is updated, and the attribute boss in particular is updated to store its data differently. The Red-Line plug-in registers a converter handling the format change. If the host does not know the attribute appears in the document, the Red-Line converter is never called to perform the conversion. The document appears to open correctly, but it crashes on the attribute's `ReadWrite` method the first time the style is read.

For the Red-Line attribute to be converted, `TextAttributeList` must register a converter. If the content manager was notified when the attribute was streamed, the conversion manager knows the attribute needs to be converted. It even knows the attribute was streamed by `TextAttributeList`. But the conversion manager has no way of knowing where the attribute is inside the data streamed by `TextAttributeList`; therefore, `TextAttributeList` should register a converter that calls back to the conversion manager to convert each piece of embedded data. Otherwise, the embedded data is not converted.

Content manager

The host has a content manager that tracks what data is stored in the document, which plug-in stored it, and the format version number of the plug-in last used to write the data.

Think of this as a table attached to the root of the document: every `ImplementationID` part of the document appears in the table. This table also includes all `ClassID` values in the document. [Table 2](#) and [Table 3](#) are an example.

TABLE 2 *Version information*

ImplementationID	PluginID	Format version number (only minor number)
kSpreadImpl	kSpreadPluginID	0
kSpreadLayerImpl	kLayerPluginID	0
kTextAttrAlignJustImpl	kTextAttrPluginID	1
kCMSProfileListImpl	kColorMgmtPluginID	3
...		

TABLE 3 Class IDs in the document

ClassID	Plug-in ID	Format version number (only minor number)
kSpreadBoss	kSpreadPluginID	1
kSpreadLayerBoss	kLayerPluginID	1
kTextAttrAlignBodyBoss	kTextAttrPluginID	3
kDocBoss	kDocFrameworkPluginID	1

When an object is streamed to a document, the document receives the ClassID of the object and the data streamed by each of the object's ReadWrite methods. The data written by a ReadWrite method is marked with the ImplementationID of the ReadWrite implementation; this way, when the data is read later, the system knows which C++ class to instantiate to read the data. IContentMgr maintains an overall list of the ClassID and ImplementationID values used in the document. When a new ClassID or ImplementationID is added to the document, IContentMgr checks which plug-in supplied the ClassID or ImplementationID, notes the plug-in ID and the format version number, and adds the new entry to the table.

The plug-in supplying a ClassID is the one supplying the class definition. Only the plug-in supplying the original class definitions is considered; add-in classes do not count. The plug-in supplying an ImplementationID is the one that registered a factory for the ImplementationID.

This data is used to detect missing plug-ins and manage document conversion. When the user opens a document containing data supplied by a missing plug-in, the host alerts the user that the document contains data from a missing plug-in. The host detects missing plug-ins by looking in the content manager to see which plug-ins supplied data to the document and checking this list against the list of loaded plug-ins to see whether any are missing.

This data also is used for document conversion. When the user opens a document, the default implementation of IConversionMgr checks the format version number of the plug-ins supplying data to the document and compares it with the format version number of loaded plug-ins. Any mismatch means a conversion is required before the document can be opened. If there is a format version change without a supplied data converter, the document will not open.

Conversion manager

When a document is opened, the conversion manager is called to check whether any data in the document requires conversion. If the data requires conversion and a converter is available, the document is converted and opens as an untitled document. If a converter cannot be found, the host displays an alert message that warns the user the document cannot be opened because it cannot be converted.

This initial check, implemented in IConversionMgr::GetStatus, happens very early in the process of trying to open the document, before any objects in the document are accessed (i.e., before any of their ReadWrite methods are called). This is critical, because a ReadWrite method will not succeed if the object needs to be converted. The conversion manager accesses the content manager (converting it if necessary), and uses the content manager to find out what

plug-ins supplied data to the document. If any plug-ins used in the document have different formats than the formats of the loaded plug-ins, conversion is necessary. Next, the conversion manager sees whether there is a converter to convert from the format in the document to the format associated with the loaded plug-in. If such a converter is available, conversion is possible; the document may be closed and opened again as an untitled document.

If the `GetStatus` method returns with a result indicating conversion is not necessary, the open operation proceeds without calling the conversion manager again. If the `GetStatus` method returns with a result indicating conversion is necessary but impossible, the open operation is aborted. If the `GetStatus` method returns with a result indicating conversion is required and a converter is available, the conversion manager's `ConvertDocument` method is called to perform the conversion.

The first thing `ConvertDocument` does is compile a list of the classes and implementations in the document that must be converted. A plug-in may have many different implementations that wrote data to the document, but only one of these implementations might require conversion. The conversion manager uses the content manager to iterate over classes and implementations supplied by the plug-in, and the conversion manager calls the converter to find out which classes and implementations require conversion. Each class or implementation in the document that the converter says must be converted is added to the list of classes or list of implementations to be converted. Other data written by the plug-in is ignored by the converter; it is not converted.

The next step is to iterate over the UIDs in the document. For each UID, the conversion manager gets the class of the UID. If the class is on the list of classes to be converted, the conversion manager calls a converter for the class. If, as is more common, the class contains an implementation needing to be converted, the conversion manager opens an input stream on the UID and iterates through the implementations in the UID. If any implementation in the UID requires conversion, an output stream is opened on the UID. Any implementation not requiring conversion is copied to the output stream. If an implementation requires conversion, its converter is called. The converter gets passed the input stream and the output stream. The converter reads from the input stream in the old format and writes to the output stream in the new format.

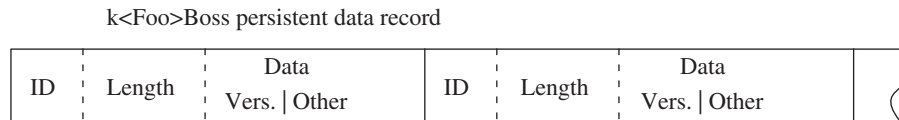
After the UID iteration is completed, the content manager is called to update the format numbers for all plug-ins that were outdated, to show their data was converted and is up to date. After this, it is safe for `ReadWrite` methods to be called on objects in the document.

If any converter requires access to another object to do its conversion, it is called in the last phase of conversion. For example, suppose there was one document-wide preference setting for whether text in frames has smart quotes turned on, but you want to make this a per-frame setting. The text frame must store a new flag that indicates whether smart quotes are on or off. The converter adds a new flag in the first phase of conversion, but the converter cannot set the correct value for the flag until the preferences are converted. So, the converter needs to be called once again, after the first phase is complete and it is safe to instantiate the preferences, to get the value of the document-wide smart-quotes setting so the converter can set the frame's new smart-quotes setting accordingly.

Converting data without the conversion manager

To perform format conversion without the conversion manager, the persistent data itself must identify the version of the plug-in that originally wrote the information. To use this method, add a version number to the implementation classes, and implement the `ReadWrite` method to write the version number first whenever the method writes data, as shown in [Figure 3](#). This method has the advantage of forward compatibility.

FIGURE 3 Persistent data with version number



For example, suppose the first version of your plug-in stores two-byte values, `fOne` and `fTwo`, and uses a byte value to store the data's version number. The `ReadWrite` method for this implementation would be something like [Example 5](#):

EXAMPLE 5 *ReadWrite method supporting multiple versions (version 1 of the plug-in)*

```

FooStuff::ReadWrite(IPMStream* stream, ImplementationID implementation)
{
    stream->XferByte(0x01);
    stream->XferByte(fOne);
    stream->XferByte(fTwo);
}
    
```

The second version of this plug-in modifies the data format by adding a 16-bit integer value, `fThree`. In this version, your `ReadWrite` method must be able to read data in either format, but it always must write data back in the new format. See [Example 6](#):

EXAMPLE 6 *ReadWrite method supporting multiple versions (version 2 of the plug-in)*

```

FooStuff::ReadWrite(IPMStream* stream, ImplementationID implementation)
{
    uchar version = 0x02; //Always *write* version 2 data
    stream->XferByte(version);
    if (version == 0x01)
    {
        stream->XferByte(fOne);
        stream->XferByte(fTwo);
    }
    else
    {
        stream->XferByte(fOne);
        stream->XferByte(fTwo);
        stream->XferInt16(fThree);
    }
}
    
```


This code both reads and writes all data for this implementation. It could check whether the stream is a reading or writing stream and perform only the needed operation, but the dual-purpose code actually is simpler and accomplishes the same thing. If the stream is a `ReadStream`, the version is initialized as `0x02` but immediately replaced by the contents of the first byte in the stream, and the rest of the stream is processed according to the version number found. If this plug-in encounters data claiming a version number greater than 2, only the data it understands (processed by the `else` clause) is read. This method allows the version 2 plug-in to work with data from both earlier and later versions. Each new version of the plug-in using this method must preserve the portion of the stream previous versions created and add new information only to the end.

When using this approach, the plug-in's data version number must not change between versions of the plug-in, but only when a data converter is being supplied to convert the data from one version to another.

Resources

This section explains the fundamental elements and ODFRez resources you need when incorporating a converter in your plug-in.

PluginVersion resource, format numbers, and their macros

`PluginVersion` is a resource included in every InDesign and InCopy plug-in. Part of the resource is the declaration of a persistent data format number, like the following:

```
kSDKDefPersistMajorVersionNumber, kSDKDefPersistMinorVersionNumber,
```

For an example, see the resource definition in `<SDK>/source/sdksamples/basicdialog/BscDlg.fr`.

Each plug-in specifies a different format number. These format numbers are stored in documents, so when a document is opened, the content manager can determine whether data conversion is needed. This determination is made by comparing the format numbers stored in the document for each plug-in with the format numbers declared by loaded plug-ins. If the format numbers are different, the conversion manager is called upon to do a data conversion.

Format number values must meet the following criteria:

- Be greater than or equal to zero.
- *Increase* with each format change.
- Increment if the data format of any persistent class in a plug-in changes.

NOTE: If multiple persistent classes in a plug-in change their data formats at the same time, the data-format version number needs to increment only once. How much you increment data format version numbers is up to you.

Format-number values are just numbers; however, you might find it easier to use `#define` macros for format numbers instead of using their values directly.

Table 4 lists format-number macros and their values from previous InDesign SDKs. See `<SDK>/source/sdksamples/common/SDKDef.h`.

TABLE 4 Format number macros from prior InDesign SDKs

Version	Macro: Major	Macro: Minor	Tuple
1.0	kSDKDef_10_PersistMajorVersionNumber	kSDKDef_10_PersistMinorVersionNumber	{0, 307}
1.5	kSDKDef_15_PersistMajorVersionNumber	kSDKDef_15_PersistMinorVersionNumber	{1, 0}
1.0J	kSDKDef_1J_PersistMajorVersionNumber	kSDKDef_1J_PersistMinorVersionNumber	{2, 1}
2.0 / 2.0J	kSDKDef_20_PersistMajorVersionNumber	kSDKDef_20_PersistMinorVersionNumber	{4, 1}
CS / CS Japanese (3.0 / 3.0J)	kSDKDef_30_PersistMajorVersionNumber	kSDKDef_30_PersistMinorVersionNumber	{5, 1}

Setting up resources

With the first format change for a plug-in, you must add a converter (either schema-based or code-based) to your plug-in (only one converter per plug-in). See [“Adding a converter” on page 43](#).

Schemas

The schema resource defines which formats of which implementations the converter should handle. The schema resource is defined in your `.fr` file and compiled using the ODFRC (Open Document Framework Resource Compiler). See [Example 7](#) and `<SDK>/public/includes/Schema.fh`.

EXAMPLE 7 Schema resource

```
resource Schema(uniqueResourceID)
{
    ImplementationID,
    { schemaFormatMajorNumber, schemaFormatMinorNumber },
    { // [0..n] SchemaFields go here (see SchemaFields.fh) }
};
```

Examples

When you define a schema resource, you explicitly state which format number of which implementation it defines. It knows which plug-in contains the implementation, because it is defined implicitly to be the plug-in that contains the schema resource. In other words, all schemas defined in plug-in A are for implementations provided by plug-in A. The schema-based converter uses the information in this resource (or the SchemaList resource) to determine how to map persistent data from one format to another.

In [Example 8](#), (1) identifies the schema resource ID. The value does not matter, as long as it is unique among all schema resources compiled into the plug-in. The first item in the schema specifies the implementation ID, and the second item specifies the format number as a tuple {1, 0}. Next comes the schema field list. Curly brackets ({ }) delimit the list, and commas separate the individual fields. Each field has a type, name, and default value. It is *extremely important* each field name is unique and these values are not re-used when a field is deleted. Field names must be unique among the schemas that describe different formats of the same implementation, because this is what allows data mapping between different format numbers.

NOTE: Although it is not done in the example below, we recommend you use #define macros for each field name, to enhance readability.

EXAMPLE 8 Schema resource from <SDK>/sdksamples/snapshot/Snap.fr

```
resource Schema(1)
{
    kSnapPrefsDataPersistImpl, // ImplementationID
    {RezLong(1), RezLong(0)}, // format number
    {
        {PMString {0x0001, ""}}, // dialog default file name
        {ClassID {0x0002, 0}}, // format class ID, fFormatClassID
        {Real {0x0003, 1.0}}, // fScale
        {Real {0x0004, 72.0}}, // fResolution
        {Real {0x0005, 72.0}}, // fMinimumResolution
        {Real {0x0006, 0.0}}, // fBleed
        {Bool16 {0x0007, 0}}, // fDrawArea
        {Bool16 {0x0008, 0}}, // fFullResolutionGraphics
        {Bool16 {0x0009, 0}}, // fDrawGray
        {Bool16 {0x000a, 0}}, // fAddAlpha
        {Int32 {0x000b, 512}}, // fDrawingFlags, set default to IShape::kPrinting == 512
        {Bool16 {0x000c, 0}}, // fIndexedColour
    }
};
```

In [Example 9](#) (based on the preceding Snap.fr example), there is a new schema resource ID (2). Inside the schema, the following changes occurred:

- The implementation ID has not changed, but the format number is specified as a tuple {1, 1}.
- schemaFormatMinorNumber changed from 0 to 1.
- In the schema field list, the fifth field (0x0005, fMinimumResolution) was deleted. During conversion, the fifth field (Real) is stripped from the existing data.
- The seventh field changed its type. It uses the same name but is now of type Bool8. This requires an implicit conversion. (For a table of valid and invalid type conversions, see the “Versioning Persistent Data” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.)
- A new field (0x000d, fMaximumResolution) was added. On conversion, an element of type Int32 (with a value of 3) is appended to the end of the existing data.

EXAMPLE 9 Hypothetical schema resource

```
resource Schema(2)
{
    kSnapPrefsDataPersistImpl, // implementation ID
    {RezLong(1), RezLong(1)}, // format number
    {
        PMString {0x0001, ""}, // dialog default file name
        {ClassID {0x0002, 0}}, // format class ID, fFormatClassID
        {Real {0x0003, 1.0}}, // fScale
        {Real {0x0004, 72.0}}, // fResolution
        {Real {0x0006, 0.0}}, // fBleed
        {Bool16 {0x0007, 0}}, // fDrawArea
        {Bool16 {0x0008, 0}}, // fFullResolutionGraphics
        {Bool16 {0x0009, 0}}, // fDrawGray
        {Bool16 {0x000a, 0}}, // fAddAlpha
        {Int32 {0x000b, 512}}, // fDrawingFlags, set default IShape::kPrinting == 512
        {Bool16 {0x000c, 0}}, // fIndexedColour
        {Int32 {0x000d, 3}}, // minimum resolution enum
    }
};
```

Default values

Default values in a schema are used only when the associated field is added to the data stream by conversion. For example, if an implementation originally contained only one int32 value but now also needs a bool16 value, the first schema lists only the int32 and the second schema lists both the int32 and the bool16. When the conversion runs, the schema converter writes a bool16 into the output stream, using the value specified as the default. Because the int32 already existed, the default value specified by the schema is not used.

Suppose you have an implementation with two int32 values. In your constructor, you give them values of 11 and 52. The schema should reflect this. If you later decide 53 is a better default value for the second one, change the schema to match. In this case, however, you do not need a new schema.

SchemaList

The SchemaList resource allows you to specify several schemas in one resource, for convenience. [Example 10](#) shows the two previous schema resources combined in one SchemaList.

Even if initially you have only one Schema inside your SchemaList, it is a good idea to create this resource because, over the course of development, this SchemaList resource acts as a persistent data format log.

EXAMPLE 10 Hypothetical SchemaList resource

```
resource SchemaList(uniqueResourceID)
{{
  Schema // schemaTypeIdentifier
  {
    kSnapPrefsDataPersistImpl,
    {RezLong(1), RezLong(0)},
    {
      {PMString {0x0001, ""}},
      {ClassID {0x0002, 0}},
      {Real {0x0003, 1.0}},
      {Real {0x0004, 72.0}},
      {Real {0x0005, 72.0}},
      {Real {0x0006, 0.0}},
      {Bool16 {0x0007, 0}},
      {Bool16 {0x0008, 0}},
      {Bool16 {0x0009, 0}},
      {Bool16 {0x000a, 0}},
      {Int32 {0x000b, 512}},
      {Bool16 {0x000c, 0}},
    }
  }
};

Schema // schemaTypeIdentifier
{
  kSnapPrefsDataPersistImpl,
  {RezLong(1), RezLong(1)},
  {
    {PMString {0x0001, ""}},
    {ClassID {0x0002, 0}},
    {Real {0x0003, 1.0}},
    {Real {0x0004, 72.0}},
    {Real {0x0006, 0.0}},
    {Bool8 {0x0007, 0}},
    {Bool16 {0x0008, 0}},
    {Bool16 {0x0009, 0}},
    {Bool16 {0x000a, 0}},
    {Int32 {0x000b, 512}},
    {Bool16 {0x000c, 0}},
    {Int32 {0x000d, 3}},
  }
};
}}
```

The possible types for `schemaTypeIdentifier` (see [Example 10](#)) are listed below. See `Schema.fh` for their definitions.

- *ClassSchema* — Schema for classes in the current plug-in.
- *OtherClassSchema* — Like *ClassSchema*, but you can specify it for another plug-in by an additional `PluginID` field.
- *ImplementationSchema* — Schema for implementations in the current plug-in.

- *Schema* — Another name for `ImplementationSchema`, because this is the most common type.
- *OtherImplementationSchema* — Like `ImplementationSchema`, but you can specify it for another plug-in by an additional `PluginID` field.

DirectiveList

To instruct the schema-based converter to add or remove implementations or an entire boss, specify a `DirectiveList` resource to your resource file, as shown in [Example 11](#). (The `DirectiveList` resource formerly was known as `BossDirective`.) The `DirectiveList` resource is defined in your `.fr` file and compiled using `ODFRC`.

EXAMPLE 11 DirectiveList syntax

```
resource DirectiveList (uniqueResourceID)
{
  { // [0..n] Directives go here }
};
```

A `DirectiveList` resource is required each time you do any of the following:

- Add a new boss or remove an existing one.
- Add an implementation to a boss or remove one from a boss.
- Change the ID of a boss or implementation.

The `DirectiveList` resource serves several purposes:

- Helps the conversion manager delete unnecessary data from a document when a boss or implementation is removed.
- Keeps the content manager up to date regarding a document’s contents.
- Allows the conversion manager to do its job correctly, even when a boss or implementation moves to a different plug-in.

The possible list of directives is in [Table 5](#).

TABLE 5 Possible list of directives

Directive	Description
<code>IgnorePlugin</code>	Mark a plug-in as ignorable.
<code>MoveClass</code>	Moves a boss class from one plug-in to another.
<code>MoveClassToPlugin</code>	A boss was moved from one plug-in to another.
<code>MoveImplementation</code>	Moves an implementation from one plug-in to another.
<code>MoveImplementationToPlugin</code>	An implementation was moved from one plug-in to another.
<code>RemoveAllImplementation</code>	Removes an implementation from all boss classes.
<code>RemoveAllOtherImplementation</code>	Removes an implementation from all boss classes.

Directive	Description
RemoveClass	Removes a boss class from a plug-in.
RemoveImplementation	Removes an implementation from a boss class.
RemoveOtherClass	Removes a boss class from another plug-in.
RemoveOtherImplementation	Removes an implementation from a boss class.
RemovePlugin	Removes an entire plug-in.
ReNumberPlugin	Re-numbers an entire plug-in.
ReplaceAllImplementation	Replaces one implementation with another in all plug-ins.
ReplaceClass	Replaces one boss class with another.
ReplaceImplementation	Replaces one implementation with another in a specific plug-in.

NOTE: See Schema.fh. Fields vary by type of directive.

Advanced schema topics

Arrays of values

Suppose an implementation contains three boolean flags followed by four uint32 values. The schema could contain seven separate fields, or it could define two array fields, as in [Example 12](#):

EXAMPLE 12 Schema resource with array fields

```
#define kBarOptions 1
#define kBarValues 2
resource Schema(2)
{
  kBarImpl,
  {1, 0},
  {
    {Bool16Array{kBarOptions, {kTrue, kFalse, kTrue}}},
    {Uint32Array{kBarValues, {0, 0, 0, 0}}}
  }
};
```

The number of default values statically determines the number of elements in each array. Note that the set of default values is enclosed in braces.

FieldArray

If the quantity of array elements is dynamic or an array consists of structures rather than single elements, use a `FieldArray`, which is a type of field, like `Bool16`, `Uint32Array`, or any of the other types in `Schema.fh`.

In the following example, the `Bar` implementation differs slightly from the previous example. Instead of having three flags followed by four values, it has a value associated with each flag, and the number of (flag, value) pairs is dynamic:

EXAMPLE 13

```
#define kBarPairs 1
#define kBarOption 2
#define kBarValue 3
resource Schema(3)
{
  kBarImpl,
  {1, 0},
  {
    {FieldArray{kBarPairs, {Uint16{0}}, {{Bool16{kBarOption, kFalse}},
    {Uint32{kBarValue, 0}}}}}
  }
};
```

The syntax looks slightly complicated because of ODFRC limitations, but it is fairly straightforward. The schema contains only one field; its type is `FieldArray`, and its name is `kBarPairs`.

Following the field's name is its iteration count. Because this is an attribute of the `FieldArray`, it has a type but not a name. It also has a default value, which usually is zero. The counter might be a signed or unsigned integer that is 8, 16, or 32 bits wide.

NOTE: The iteration count immediately precedes the iterated values. (If your implementation's persistent data requires the count be elsewhere, you must write your own conversion provider.)

Following the iteration count is the list of iterated fields. Each has a type, name, and default value, like any other field. The default value is not used unless the iteration count has a nonzero default. In the preceding example, the output stream would simply be “0.” If the default iteration count were 2, the output would be “2, kFalse, 0, kFalse, 0.”

`FieldArrays` can be nested up to three levels deep.

Conditional-field inclusion

An important variant of the `FieldArray` type is the `FieldIf` type. Use this construct to include a block of fields zero times if a condition is not met or once if the condition is met. The conditional value can be of type `Bool8`, `Bool16`, `ClassID`, or `ImplementationID`. If the conditional value is of type `ClassID` or `ImplementationID`, the fields are included if the ID is valid.

[Example 14](#) is a slight variant of [Example 13](#):

EXAMPLE 14

```
resource Schema(4)
{
  kBarImpl,
  {1, 0},
  {
    {FieldIf{kBarPairs, {Bool16{kFalse}}, {{Bool16{kBarOption, kFalse}},
    {Uint32{kBarValue, 0}}}}}
  }
};
```

In this case, `kBarOption` and `kBarValue` are included zero or one times, depending on the `Bool16` value.

`FieldIf` constructs can be nested up to three levels deep.

Commands

This chapter describes InDesign’s command architecture. It also outlines how to find and use the commands provided by the InDesign API, how to implement new commands of your own, and other extension patterns associated with commands.

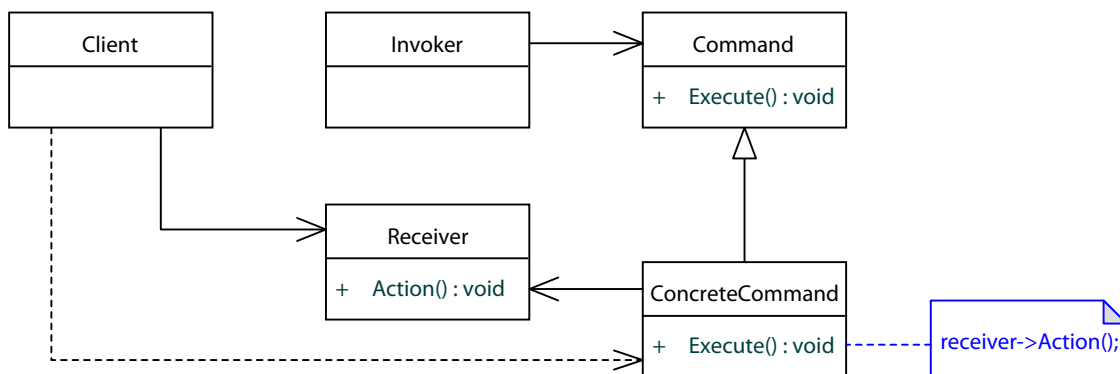
Concepts

This section introduces the generic command pattern, databases that provide persistence to the application’s objects, and models that represent the application’s objects in memory.

Command pattern

The intent of the command pattern is as follows: “Encapsulate a request as an object, thereby letting you parameterize clients with different requests, queue or log requests and support undoable operations.” (This is described in Gamma, Helm, Johnson, and Vlissides, *Design Patterns*, Addison-Wesley, 1995.) The structure of this pattern is shown in [Figure 4](#).

FIGURE 4 Command Pattern Structure



This pattern decouples the object that invokes an operation from the object that implements it. The client wants an operation to be performed, the receiver knows how to perform the operation, and the two are decoupled by this pattern. The command declares an interface for executing an operation. The client does not send messages directly to the receiver; rather, the client creates a concrete command object and sets its receiver. The concrete command implements execute by calling the corresponding operation on the receiver. The invoker asks the command to carry out the request, which causes the receiver to perform the operation.

Within the InDesign API, an implementation of the command pattern is used in situations where preventing data corruption is paramount and users must be able to undo or redo changes. See [“Commands” on page 68](#).

Databases and undoability

A persistent object has its state maintained outside the application runtime. It can be removed from main memory and returned again, unchanged. The application maintains persistent objects in a *database*. A database on disk is an opaque binary file in the operating system's file system. This database file stores the serialized state of a collection of objects. The set of objects stored in a particular database is collectively known as a *model*. For example, an InDesign document file like *Untitled-1.indd* is a database file that represents the state of an instance of a document model. See “Models” on page 64.

Objects are stored in a database in the following format:

- Objects that persist are stored as a tree of objects, each of which is associated with and persisted by a database.
- Each persistent object has a identifier, the UID, that identifies it uniquely *within its database*.
- Each persistent object (except the root object) is owned and referred to by another object, the parent. A persistent object also can be referenced by other objects, though this does not indicate any form of ownership.

The class that represents a database is `IDataBase`.

For more detail, see the “Persistent Data and Data Conversion” chapter.

Databases must be consistent and stable. Some databases also need to support *undoability*—the ability for a user to undo or redo changes. For example, the ability to undo changes made to a document is required; however, there is no requirement to undo changes made to the database that persists the user interface state.

Table 6 shows the databases that exist and their support for undoability. If a database supports undoability, that support cannot be turned off. All changes to objects that persist in the database must be undo-able. Turning off undo support is not allowed, because it would disable error handling and increase the risk of document corruption.

NOTE: *To change objects that persist in a database that supports undo, we recommend using commands. If, however, you need to change data without showing something in the Edit > Undo menu, you can bypass commands and wrap your changes in calls to `CmdUtils::BeginAutoUndoSequence` and `CmdUtils::EndAutoUndoSequence`.*

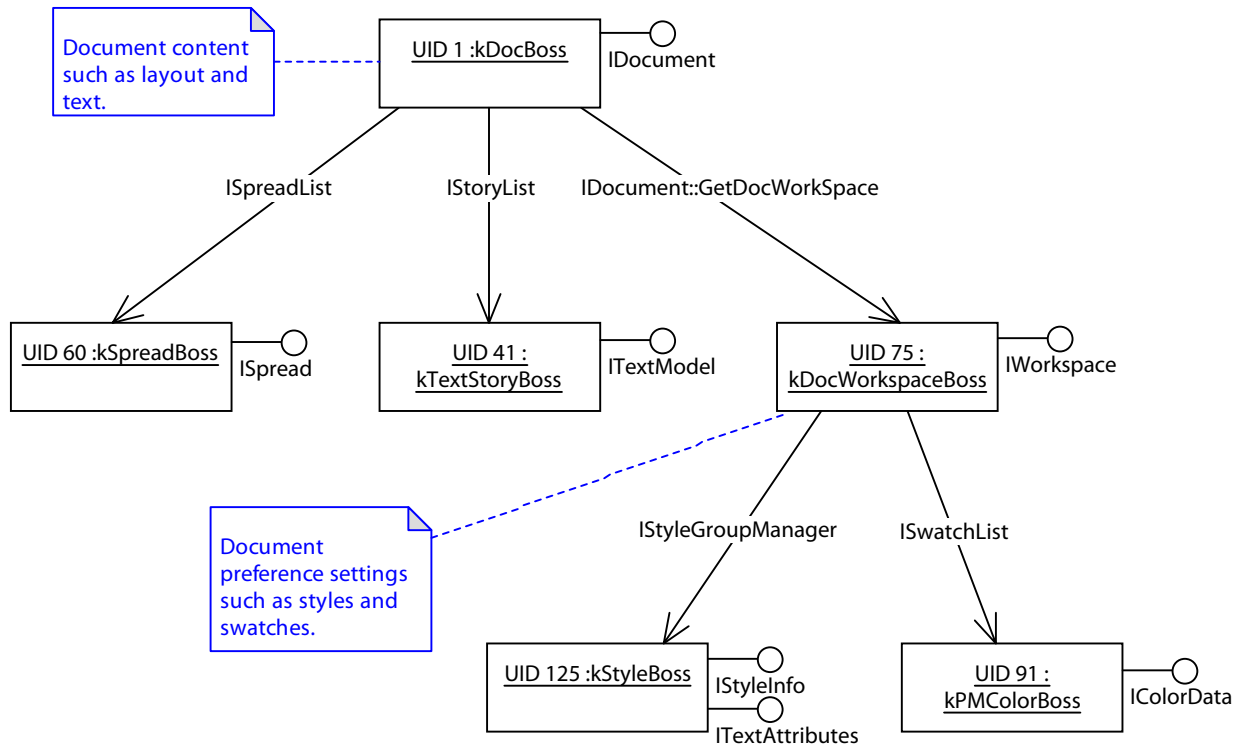
Models

A model is a collection of objects backed by a database for persistent storage. A model is a tree-structured graph of objects. The ownership relationships between objects in a model defines this tree structure. Ownership relationships are just parent-child relationships within the tree.

Document model

Documents are represented by the *document model*. Figure 5 shows an example.

FIGURE 5 Objects in a document model (instance diagram)



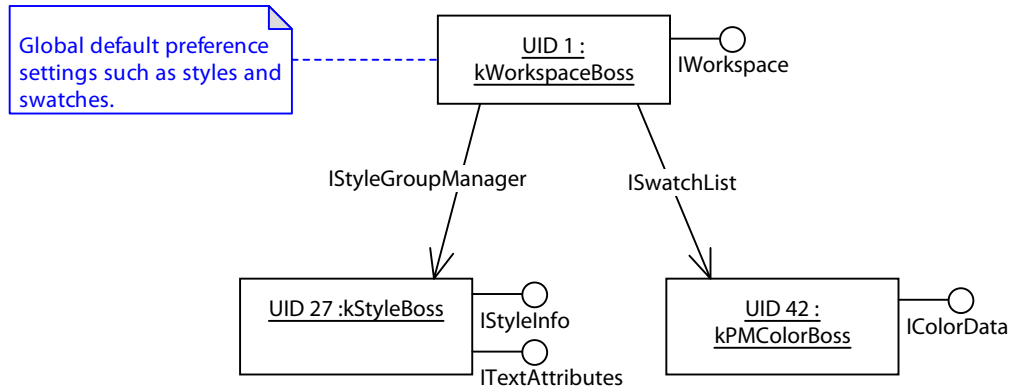
The document (kDocBoss) is the root object in the document model. It owns a collection of spreads (kSpreadBoss), stories (kTextStoryBoss), a *workspace* (kDocWorkspaceBoss), and so on. These objects may own further objects specific to their domain. The document's workspace owns objects like styles and swatches, which can be used throughout the document.

The database file that provides persistence for a document model is an end-user document file; for example, a file *Untitled-1.indd* saved from InDesign.

Defaults model

Global preference settings are represented by the *defaults model*. Figure 6 shows an example.

FIGURE 6 Objects in the defaults model (instance diagram)



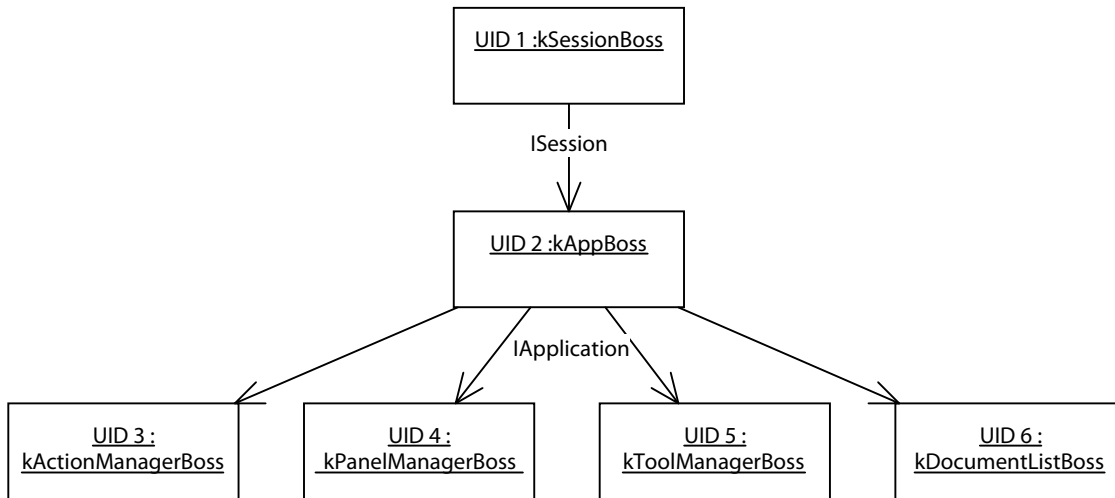
The workspace (kWorkspaceBoss) is the root object in a defaults model. It owns the objects that represent default preference settings like styles, swatches and so on. The defaults model is global and is accessed from the session (kSessionBoss) via the ISession interface. When a new document is created, preference settings can be copied from the defaults model into the document's workspace (kDocWorkspaceBoss).

The database file that provides persistence for this model is an application defaults file. For example, the file named *InDesign Defaults* is the database file used by InDesign to persist the defaults model.

Session model

A session of an application is represented by the session model. [Figure 7](#) shows an example.

FIGURE 7 Objects in the session model (instance diagram)



The session (kSessionBoss) is the root object in the session model. This model owns application-related objects that must persist from session to session. For instance, user interface objects are found here, together with other objects that store the application's type system (the boss classes provided by all registered plug-ins).

The database file that persists objects in this model is the application's saved data file. For example, the file named *InDesign SavedData* is the database file used by InDesign to persist the session model.

NOTE: Objects in the session model can be modified by calling mutator methods on their interfaces directly. *There is no need to modify them using commands.* The database that persists this model does not support undo.

Books, asset libraries, and other models

Several other features in an application have their own dedicated model, together with a database that provides that model with persistence. Prominent examples are books, asset libraries, and the scrap. See [Table 6](#) for the level of undo support provided by their databases.

Commands

This section describes how commands are used in the application. It includes sections on the `CmdUtils` class, which is fundamental to the processing of commands, and how to use command sequences to group multiple commands into one logical unit.

Within the application, the most prevalent use of commands by client code is to modify persistent objects in the document model or defaults model. For example, plug-ins use commands to create frames in a document or modify the default text style.

Commands encapsulate the changes made to persistent objects into a database transaction. Encapsulating changes in this way helps prevent corruption. Furthermore, any change to the state of persistent objects that needs to support undo *must* be made using a command.

Commands change persistent objects by doing the following:

- Calling mutator methods on interfaces that exist on persistent objects.
- Processing other commands (that call mutator methods on interfaces that exist on persistent objects).
- Calling utilities that process commands (that call mutator methods on interfaces that exist on persistent objects).
- A mixture of the above.

A command is *processed* by the application; this means an instance of the command is passed to the application to be executed. A command can change persistent data within only one database each time it is processed. The processing of a command moves the database from one consistent state to another.

When a command is used to modify objects that persist in a database that supports undo, that command can manifest on the undo and redo menu items, and the database automatically reverts the state of affected objects on undo and restore the changed state on redo.

NOTE: Before InDesign CS4, commands were directly responsible for reverting or restoring the changes they made to persistent objects on undo and redo. The application has taken over this responsibility.

The InDesign API provides commands for plug-ins to use. See [“Command processing and the `CmdUtils` class” on page 70](#) and [“Key client APIs” on page 84](#).

Plug-ins also can introduce new commands using the *command* extension pattern. See [“Command” on page 86](#). This is required when a plug-in adds custom persistent data to a document, defaults, or other objects that persist in a database that supports undo. The extension patterns named *persistent interface* and *persistent boss* are ways in which custom persistent data can be added to a database. See [“Persistent interface” on page 89](#) and [“Persistent boss” on page 91](#).

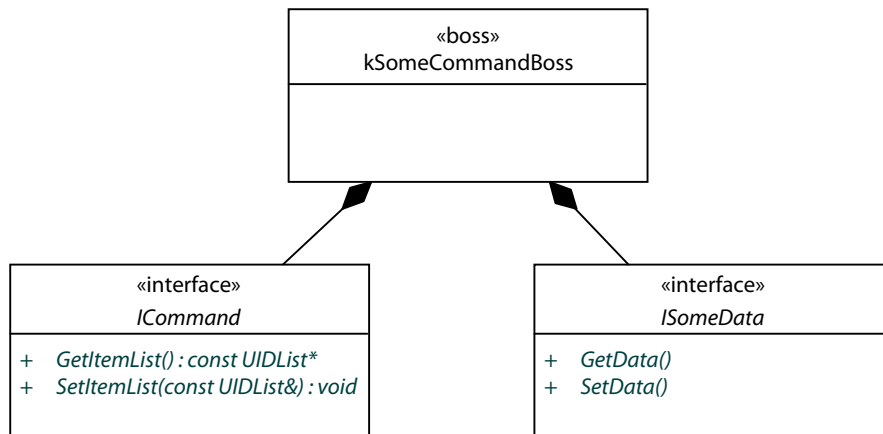
Command parameters

Commands implement the *protocol* used to modify objects that persist in a database that supports undo. A client initiates this protocol by instantiating a command and passing it off to the application for processing. The client also is responsible for initializing the state of the command, including the setting of parameters. In general, the command pattern supports two mechanisms for parameter passing:

1. The UIDList in the ICommand interface (the “item list”), which identifies a set of persistent objects; see ICommand::SetItemList. On input, this might identify the set of page items on which the command operates. For example, a page item move command (kMoveAbsoluteCmdBoss) would use this to identify the set of items to be moved. On output, the item list might identify the set of object manipulated by a command. For example, a page item create command (kNewPageItemCmdBoss) would provide the UIDs of the objects created as a result of the command being processed. The use of the command’s item list is specific to each command; a command is not required to use the item list.
2. Data-carrying interfaces on the command’s boss class. For example, the command used to apply a particular text style aggregates an IBoolData interface to define whether character styles should be overridden, and an IRangeData interface to indicate the range of text that should be updated by the command.

These two approaches for passing parameters are shown in [Figure 8](#). There is a command boss class showing two aggregated interfaces, ICommand and a data-carrying interface (ISomeData). Parameters can be passed through the item list in ICommand, the data-carrying interface, or both.

FIGURE 8 *Passing parameters to commands*



Command undoability

Each command has a property called `undoability` (see `ICommand::Undoability`), which determines whether the command name can appear in undo and redo menu items (i.e., whether the changes made by the command can be undone or redone in a distinct step).

- An `undoability` of `kRegularUndo` is used by commands whose changes need to appear as a separate named step in undo and redo menu items. This is the default behavior.
- An `undoability` of `kAutoUndo` is used by commands whose changes do not appear as a separate named step; for example, commands whose changes should be undone or redone with an existing step.

Changes made to objects that persist in a database that supports undo must be undoable. To achieve this, the various extension patterns involved, such as commands and persistent interfaces, must be implemented following the rules described in this chapter. The database then automatically reverts the state of affected objects on undo and restores the changed state on redo. *The undoability of a command (`kRegularUndo` / `kAutoUndo`) has no effect on this behavior.* It affects only whether the command appears as a distinct step in undo and redo menu items.

Command processing and the `CmdUtils` class

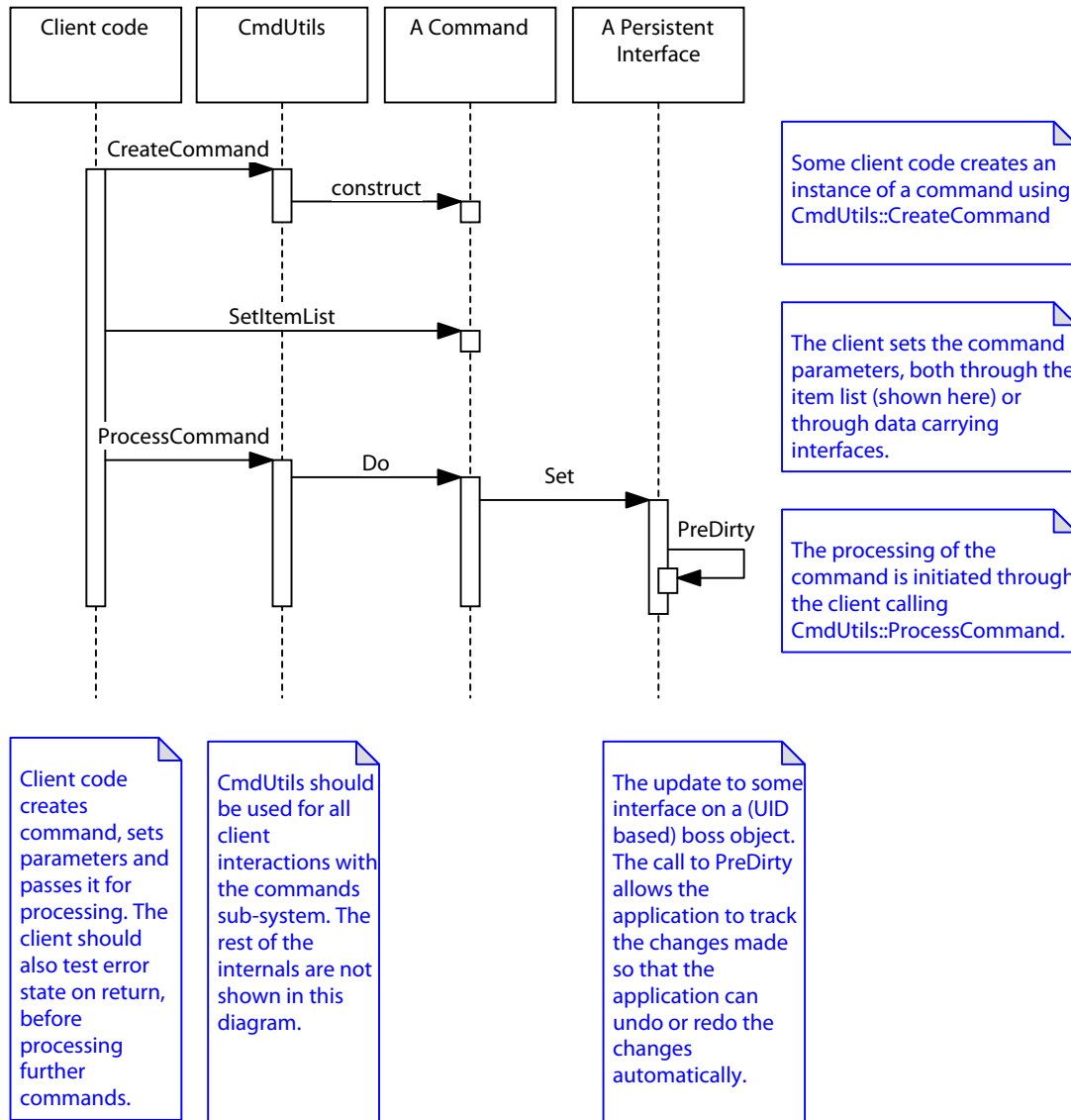
Client code uses commands when changing objects that persist state in any database that supports undo. For example, commands are used to change objects in the document model or the defaults model. The level of support for undo of each database is given in [Table 6](#).

To change the objects, client code creates instances of one or more commands and submits these instances to the application for execution. For example, to create frames in a document, a plug-in either creates commands to be processed and passes them to the application or calls a helper class that encapsulates both the creation and request for processing. The helper classes provided by the InDesign API are introduced in [“Command facades and utilities” on page 84](#).

Client code that must create commands uses the `CmdUtils` class. `CmdUtils::CreateCommand` creates an instance of a specific command. The client code parameterizes the command, using the command’s item list and data interfaces. The client code submits the command to the application for execution, by calling `CmdUtils::ProcessCommand`. Client code can group the commands it processes into command sequences, using methods and classes provided by `CmdUtils`. Guidance on processing commands and command sequences is in [“Command-processing APIs” on page 86](#) and the “Commands” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

The sequence of calls involved in processing a command is shown in [Figure 9](#). The client code creates the command, populates the item list and other data interfaces, then passes the command off for processing.

FIGURE 9 Client processing a command



Command sequences

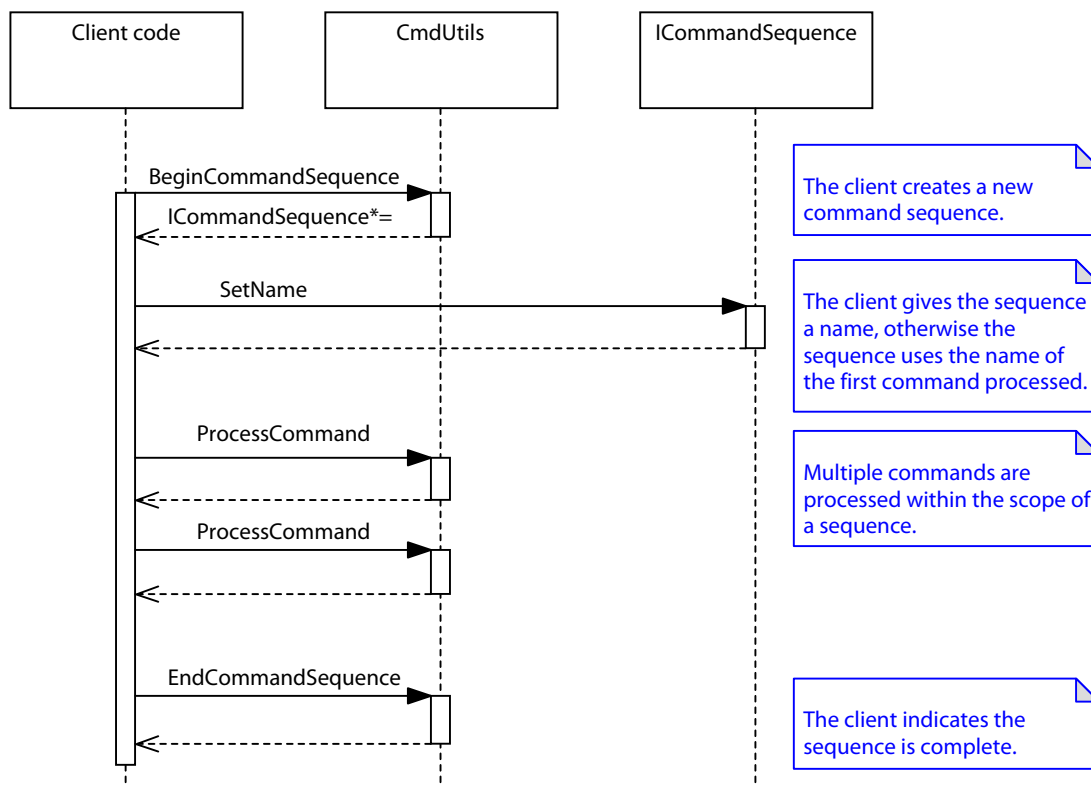
A command sequence (see `ICommandSequence`) groups a set of commands into a single undoable step that changes the model from one consistent state into another. The command sequence manifests on the undo and redo menu items as a single item.

Command sequences can be *nested*. For example, say you begin a sequence in one method, then call a second method that begins a second sequence. The second sequence is said to be nested within the first. When sequences are nested, only one sequence—the outermost one—appears on undo and redo menu items.

Command sequences assimilate all commands are processed within their scope, whether the command is processed directly from within the sequence or indirectly through subcommands (commands processed by a command). See the “Commands” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions* for how to write code that uses command sequences.

A typical scenario for a command sequence is shown in [Figure 10](#). Between the `BeginCommandSequence` and `EndCommandSequence` calls, all commands processed act as a single set of changes; only one element will appear on undo and redo menu items.

FIGURE 10 Calls made for a command sequence



A command sequence can change persistent objects in more than one database. (A command, on the other hand, can change objects only in one database each time it is processed.) Operations that change objects in two or more documents can be implemented using a command sequence. Such a set of modifications manifests in undo and redo menu items for all affected documents.

A command sequence has limited support for error handling: the sequence either succeeds entirely or fails. An abortable command sequence (see `IAbortableCmdSeq`) allows more sophisticated error handling, to allow for fail/retry semantics. Abortable command sequences incur a significant performance overhead and should be used only where absolutely necessary. Guidance on using these types of sequence is in the “Commands” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Command managers, databases, and undo support

This section describes how command managers relate to the application’s databases.

The application object model realizes a tree-structured graph of boss objects. Within this tree are several distinct models, notably the session model, the defaults model, and one or more document models (see “Models” on page 64). Each model has a distinct database that provides persistence for its objects (see “Databases and undoability” on page 64). Each database has an associated boss, called a *command manager*. When commands are used to change objects in a model, the command manager is responsible for executing the commands.

Figure 11 shows that the application object model has several distinct databases that provide persistence for its objects. The diagram shows some of the objects in an InDesign session (with two open documents) and the databases with which these objects are associated. Each UID-based object refers to its associated database through its `IPMPersist` interface. The defaults model, represented by an instance of `kWorkspaceBoss`, persists in the InDesign Defaults database file. Each document model, represented by an instance of `kDocBoss`, persists in an InDesign document database file. The session model, represented by the instance of `kSessionBoss` and the child objects that do not belong to any other model, persists in the InDesign SavedData database file.

Each database has an associated *command manager* (see objects in Figure 11 that have an `ICommandMgr` interface). The command manager is responsible for managing database transactions and executing the commands that change the objects that persist in the database. *If an object has an `ICommandMgr` interface, it is the root object of its associated database.* This is shown in Figure 11. Key objects that are command managers are listed in Table 6; for the complete list, see `ICommandMgr` in the *API Reference*.

NOTE: The class that represents a database is `IDataBase`. This class is an abstract C++ class, but it is *not* an `IPMUnknown` interface.

FIGURE 11 Models and databases in an indesign session (object diagram)

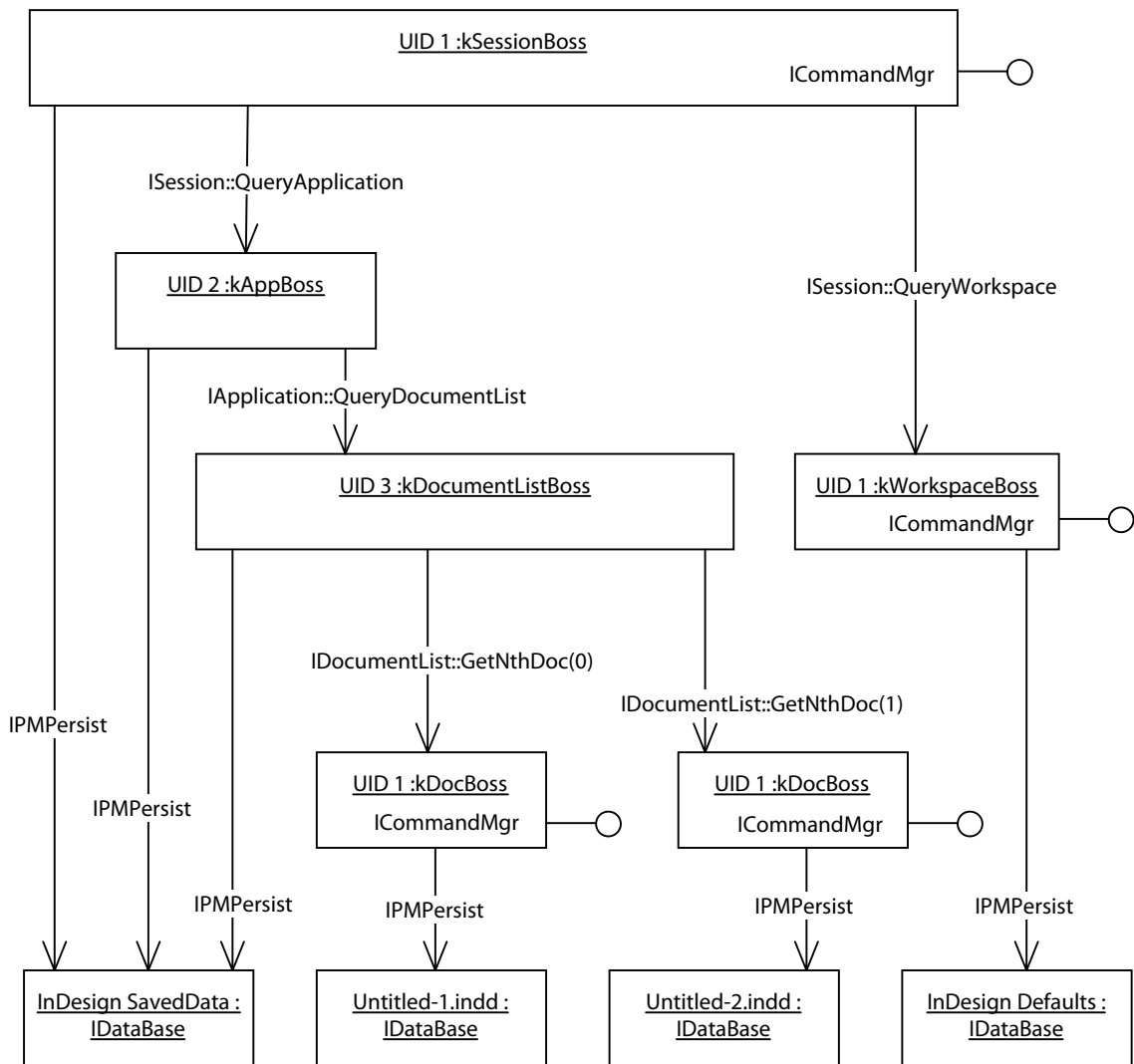


TABLE 6 Frequently Used Databases and their Support for Undoability

Command manager / root boss class	Database	Undo support	Example filename and use
kSessionBoss	Application SavedData	None	InDesign SavedData User interface objects like tools, menus, panels, dialogs, controls, and string translations. Objects that define the application object model, like plug-ins and boss classes.
kWorkspaceBoss	Application Defaults	Full	InDesign Defaults Default resources like swatches, fonts, and styles inherited by new documents.
kDocBoss	InDesign Document	Full	Your.indd Document content like spreads, pages, page items, and text.
kBookBoss	InDesign Book	Partial	Your.indb A collection of InDesign documents and associated resources.
kCatalogBoss	InDesign Asset Library	Partial	Your.indl A collection of page items.
Clipboard/scrap	Application ClipboardScrap	Partial	

Each database has a level of support for undo *which is fixed when the database is created* and can be one of the following:

- *Full* — The database fully supports undoable operations. The changes made by a transaction can be reversed automatically on undo and restored on redo. Undo and redo menu items are fully supported.
- *Partial* — The database can undo only the most recent operation. If an error occurs, the database is rolled back to its state before the transaction began; however, once a transaction is committed, it is irreversible. There is no support for undo and redo menu items.
- *None* — The database does not support undoable operations. There is no support for error handling, abortable command sequences, or undo and redo menu items.

NOTE: Undo support varies by product. In InDesign and InCopy, full undo support is provided for documents and defaults. In InDesign Server, only partial undo support is provided for these databases; the server has no concept of user undo and redo.

Objects that persist in a database with full or partial support for undo must be modified using commands. For example, a plug-in must process commands to change document content such as spreads, pages, or page items.

Objects that persist in a database without support for undo can be modified by calling mutator methods on persistent interfaces directly. Commands are not required. For example, a plug-in can call interfaces on user interface objects, such as widgets, that set state directly.

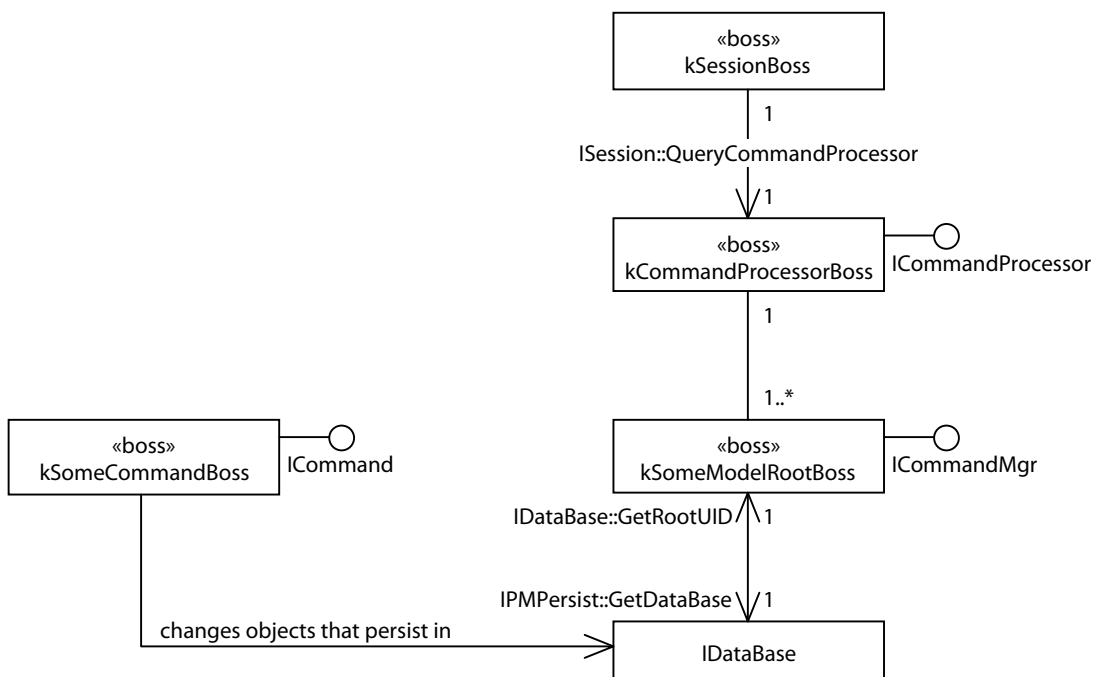
The command processor

This section describes how a command is passed through the application until it is processed.

The session (see the `ISession` interface) has a singleton instance of the command processor (see `kCommandProcessorBoss` and the `ICommandProcessor` interface). The command processor is the core application component to which all commands are submitted via `CmdUtils`.

The command processor's structure is shown in [Figure 12](#). A command targets one or more objects for change, and these objects persist in a particular database. Normally, client code creates a command instance and sets this target by passing parameters to the command (see ["Command parameters" on page 69](#)). The client code submits the command instance for processing using `CmdUtils`. [Figure 13](#) shows the internal collaboration between the objects involved.

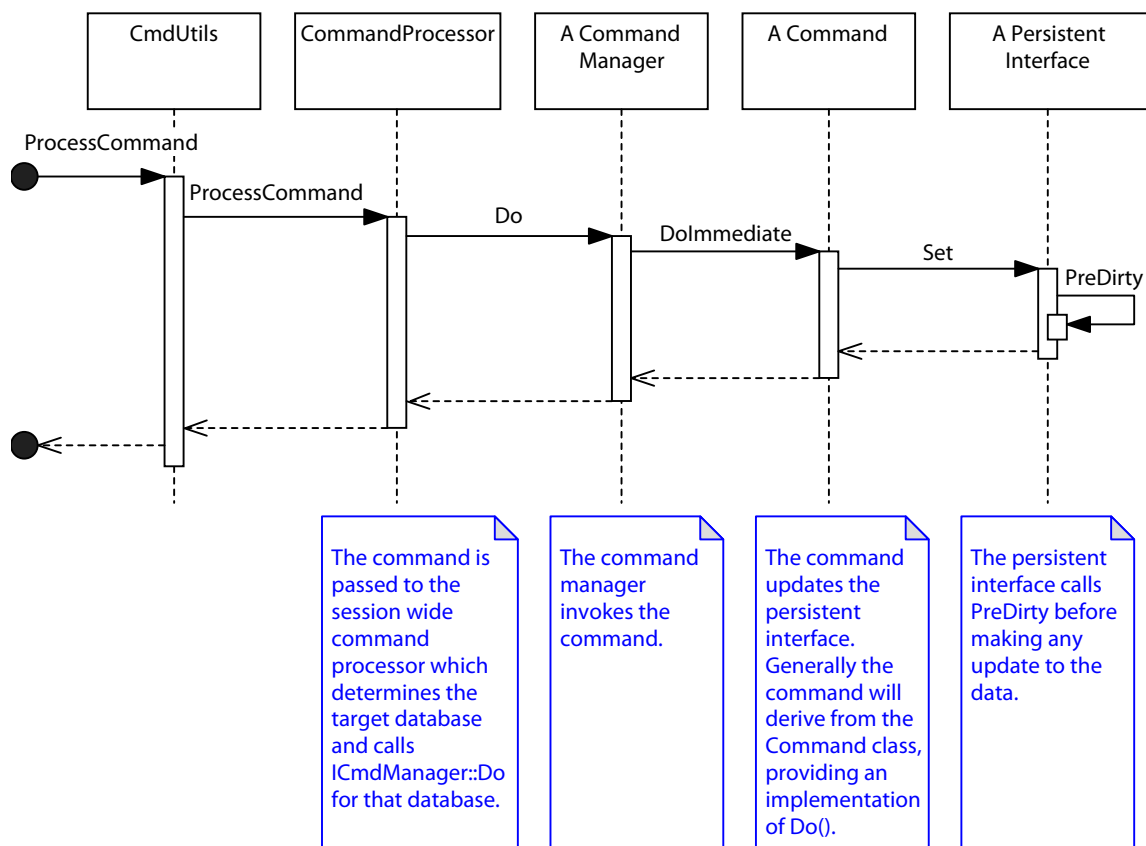
FIGURE 12 Command processor (class diagram)



The command processor examines the command and determines which database contains the objects the command changes. Each database has an associated command manager boss (see `ICommandMgr` interface), shown in [Figure 12](#) as the boss class named `kSomeModelRootBoss`. For example, the root of the document model is `kDocBoss`, and `kDocBoss` is a command manager. The command processor calls the associated command manager to execute the command.

Figure 13 shows the internal processing of a command. The call to process a command is passed to the session-wide command processor. This determines which database is targeted by the command, and the command is passed to the command manager for the specified database. The command manager processes the command, and the command updates an interface on a persistent (UID based) boss object. On completion, control returns to the client that initiated the process.

FIGURE 13 Internals of command processing (sequence diagram)



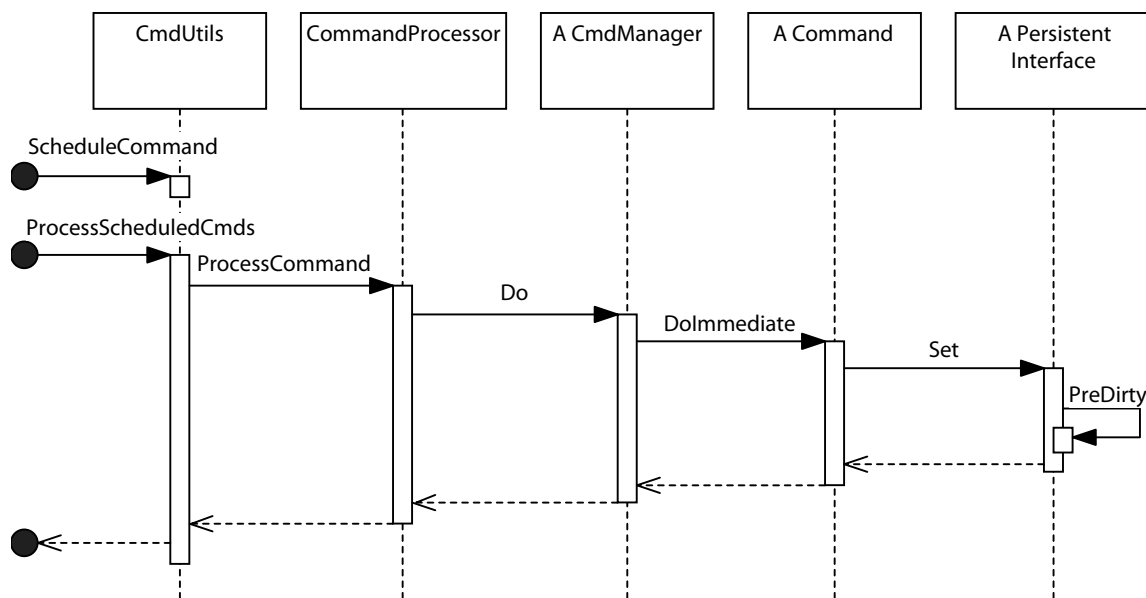
NOTE: Third party plug-ins should not interact directly with the command processor or command manager interfaces. `CmdUtils` provides all methods needed by third parties for processing commands.

Scheduled commands

Commands can be scheduled for later processing, using `CmdUtils::ScheduleCommand`. The command is placed in a queue and processed when the application is idle as part of the main event loop, before idle tasks are processed. The sequence of calls involved in processing a scheduled command is shown in [Figure 14](#). Compare this with the more normal case of immediately processing a command, shown in [Figure 13](#). In [Figure 14](#), the scheduled command is passed to the command processor (through the `CmdUtils::ScheduleCommand` call). At some later time, after all other processing is complete and control is returned to the main application event loop, all scheduled commands are processed.

Guidance on using scheduled commands is in the “Commands” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

FIGURE 14 Processing a scheduled command



Some client code schedules the command. The command is processed as part of the main event loop after all other processing has completed, and before idle tasks are processed.

Processing of a scheduled command is identical to that of a non-scheduled command. The only difference is with a non-scheduled command, client code is responsible for the initiation, upon completion, control returns to the client. With a scheduled command the event loop initiates processing, upon completion control returns to the main event loop. If a scheduled command returns an error, it is reported to the user, the error condition is cleared and processing resumes.

Snapshots and interface implementation types

A snapshot is a copy of the state of an interface at a particular time. Undo and redo are achieved automatically by the application, which keeps snapshots of the interfaces changed within an undoable transaction. The snapshots are kept in the command history (see [“Command history” on page 80](#)) of the database with which the interface is associated.

The way in which an IPMUnknown interface is implemented determines whether its data is persistent and/or needs a snapshot to support undo or redo:

- Regular interfaces store transient data that is not maintained on undo or redo. They are declared to the object model using `CREATE_PMINTERFACE`, and their state is lost if they are removed from memory. Data in a regular interface is not persistent, and no snapshot is taken.
- Persistent interfaces are declared to the object model using the `CREATE_PERSIST_PMINTERFACE` macro. They serialize their state to their associated database via the `ReadWrite` method and can be removed from memory and returned again unchanged. Persistent interfaces that are part of a database that supports undo also are called to serialize their state (again via their `ReadWrite` method) to a snapshot. This mechanism is required to support undo and redo. See [“Persistent interface” on page 89](#).
- Snapshot interfaces store transient data that must be maintained on undo and redo. They are declared to the object model using the `CREATE_SNAPSHOT_PMINTERFACE` macro, and they serialize their state in a snapshot via the `SnapshotReadWrite` method. Snapshot interfaces are aggregated on a boss that persists in a database that supports undo; however, their data is *not* persistent. Data maintained by a snapshot interface is lost whenever the associated database is closed or when the command history for the database is cleared. See [“Snapshot interface” on page 92](#).
- Snapshot view interfaces are similar to snapshot interfaces, which also store transient data that must be maintained on undo and redo. The distinction is that a snapshot view interface depends on model objects that persist in another database. A snapshot view interface is part of a user interface object and must explicitly identify the database containing the model of interest. Also, the database on which a snapshot view interface depends can change. For example, a widget that tracks some state in the front document must change the database on which its snapshot view interface depends when the front document changes. Snapshot view interfaces are declared to the object model using the `CREATE_VIEW_PMINTERFACE` macro. See [“Snapshot view interface” on page 99](#).
- It also is possible to create a hybrid interface to allow the data that persists in the database to differ from the data of which a snapshot is taken for undo and redo. This can be used by complex data structures, like collections that need to optimize performance. Such an interface is declared to the object model using the `CREATE_PERSIST_SNAPSHOT_PMINTERFACE` macro. Data is serialized to the database via the `ReadWrite` method and to the snapshot via the `SnapshotReadWrite` method. For example, consider this approach if you have a collection of some sort and want to serialize only those objects that changed relative to the snapshot (rather than the entire collection).

Command history

Consider a database to be the state of the persistent object model. For example, a document database is the state of the document object model (kDocBoss and all its dependents) at a particular time. Persistent interfaces (on dependent objects) are called to serialize their state to the database when necessary, via their `ReadWrite` method.

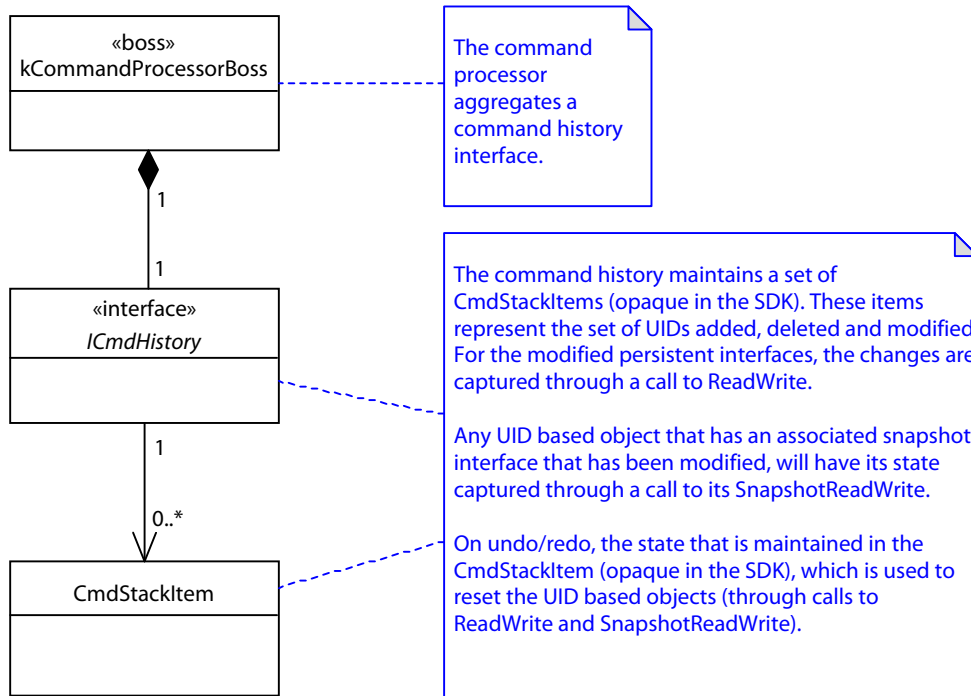
The command history (`ICmdHistory`) provides a history of the undoable operations that were performed on each database. It records the state changes made by a particular command or command sequence, for the purposes of undo and redo. The name of the first command or command sequence processed to perform an operation on the model appears as a named step in the command history. These steps manifest as undo and redo menu items. The command history is used to automatically revert the state of affected objects on undo and to restore the changed state on redo.

The database and its command history are related but distinct states.

To maintain the command history, the database monitors which of its objects change when commands are processed. It tracks the UIDs that are deleted, created, or un-deleted. It tracks persistent interfaces, snapshot interfaces and snapshot view interfaces that are modified, and it takes snapshots of them. This information is kept in the command history as a set of `CmdStackItem` objects. (`CmdStackItem` is opaque on the SDK; third parties cannot access its data.) When undo is invoked, the application automatically reverts the database state to its previous revision, using this information. When redo is invoked, the application automatically restores the database state to its next revision.

See [Figure 15](#). The command processor (`kCommandProcessorBoss`) aggregates the command history (interface `ICmdHistory`), which is responsible for maintaining the state changes made by a particular command or command sequence (which manifests on the undo and redo menu). This state, represented as `CmdStackItems`, is used to move the model to previous and next states on undo and redo. The `CmdStackItem` encapsulates all data required for an undo and redo that occurred while processing a command or command sequence.

FIGURE 15 Command history



Merging changes with an existing step in the command history

Sometimes it is desirable to extend the scope of an existing step shown in the undo/redo menu to include functionality that occurs *after* the step finished. This can be done using either of the following:

- A command with undoability of `kAutoUndo`.
- A command sequence with undoability of `kAutoUndo`.

Undo and redo

To enable a user to undo or redo a change, the objects changed must:

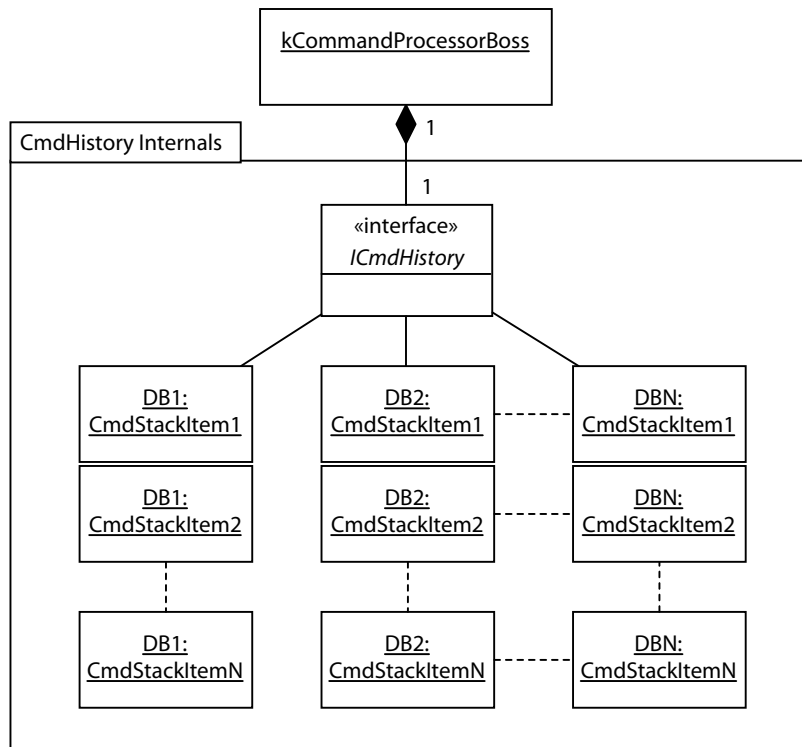
- Persist in a database that supports undo (see [Table 6](#)).
- Be modified by processing commands.

The application maintains the state required for undo/redo of changes made to persistent objects, as commands are processed. Each database that supports undo has a command history in which the necessary information is recorded, as described in “[Command history](#)” on [page 80](#). Each persistent interface on a UID-based boss object has its `ReadWrite` method called to add the state to the command history (for undo and redo) and to the database (to persist its

state). On undo, the ReadWrite method is called to reset the state back to that from before the action, and on Redo, the ReadWrite method is called again to set the state back to that from the initial action. The sequence of calls to a persistent interface is shown in Figure 17. Snapshot interfaces are called on their SnapshotReadWrite method using a similar approach; see Figure 18.

The command processor records in the command history the set of undoable operations it has performed (see the ICmdHistory interface on kCommandProcessorBoss). The steps in the command history appear in undo and redo menu items and are modelled internally using CmdStackItems. (These are internal only. Discussion is provided here to give some notion of how the command processor works.) This is shown in Figure 16.

FIGURE 16 Command history internals (instance diagram)



The command history maintains a stack of CmdStackItem objects for each database that supports undo; see Figure 16. A CmdStackItem (opaque in the SDK) represents the set of changes made by the sequence or command that manifests on the undo/redo menu. It contains data gathered during a database transaction for the purposes of undo and redo. On undo/redo, the “current” CmdStackItem is used to revert the state of the model. The CmdStackItem encapsulates all data required for an undo/redo that occurred while processing a command or command sequence. This includes all changes to persistent interface and snapshot interface data that were pre-dirtied. The CmdStackItem also maintains any inval handler cookies (see “Inval handler” on page 94) created as part of the sequence.

Each step has a name of either a command or a command sequence that performed the operation. On undo, the application automatically reverts the database to its state before the operation was performed. On redo, the application automatically restores the database to its state after the operation was performed.

Extension patterns involved in undo and redo

The following extension patterns are called at undo or redo:

- Persistent interfaces; see [“Persistent interface” on page 89](#).
- Snapshot interfaces; see [“Snapshot interface” on page 92](#) (introduced in InDesign CS4).
- Snapshot view interfaces; see [“Snapshot view interface” on page 99](#) (introduced in InDesign CS4).
- Inval cookies; see [“Inval handler” on page 94](#) (introduced in InDesign CS4).
- Observers, via their LazyUpdate method (introduced in InDesign CS4); see the “Notification” chapter.

Notification within commands

A command can initiate notification, so observers interested in changes to the objects it modifies are notified. See the “Notification” chapter.

Commands also can be processed within observers and responders. Take care with commands that modify the model in this way. See the “Notification” chapter for further discussion of model changes within the context of notification.

If you are implementing your own command, see [“Command” on page 86](#) for additional information on notification in the command extension pattern.

Error handling

In response to a user gesture or another event, the application calls a plug-in to carry out an action. For example, the user creates a text frame. In this case, the plug-in creates and processes the commands that perform the action. On detecting an error, a plug-in normally sets the global error code (see `ErrorUtils`) to something other than `kSuccess` and returns. When control returns to the application, the global error code is checked. If it is set, the database is reverted to the state it had before the modifications began. Extension patterns that participated in the transaction being rolled back are called as follows:

1. Persistent interfaces, snapshot interfaces, and snapshot view interfaces modified by the transaction are called to revert their state. See [“Persistent interface” on page 89](#), [“Snapshot interface” on page 92](#), and [“Snapshot view interface” on page 99](#).
2. Inval cookies created during the transaction are called to undo. See [“Inval handler” on page 94](#)).

When the application returns to its main event loop, it informs the user through an alert, using the string associated with the error code that is set (see [“Error string service” on page 88](#)). The global error code is then cleared, and the application continues.

Plug-in code that processes commands or command sequences must check for errors. `CmdUtils::ProcessCommand` returns an error code that should be checked for `kSuccess` before continuing. Alternatively, you can check the global error code using `ErrorUtils`. Details are in the “Commands” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*. If a plug-in tries to process a command while the global error code is set, protective shutdown occurs to protect the integrity of the document or defaults databases (see [“Protective shutdown” on page 84](#)).

Command implementation code also must check for errors. If a command encounters an error condition within the scope of its `Command::Do` method, it should set the global error code using `ErrorUtils` and return. Details on error handling is in the command extension pattern; see [“Command” on page 86](#).

Plug-in code that requires more sophisticated error handling, to allow for fail/retry semantics, must use an abortable command sequence. For information on using abortable command sequences, see the “Commands” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Protective shutdown

Protective shutdown is a mechanism that helps prevent document corruption. Any attempt to process a command when the global error code is set (to something other than `kSuccess`) causes a protective shutdown. The application creates a log file describing the problem it encountered and then exits.

Key client APIs

This section summarizes the APIs a plug-in can use to interact with commands.

Command facades and utilities

There are many command-related boss classes named `k<whatever>CmdBoss`, but in many cases you do not need to instantiate these commands, as there are command facades and utilities in the API that encapsulate parameterizing and processing these commands.

Interfaces like those in [Table 7](#) are examples of command facades and utilities. These encapsulate processing of many commands required by plug-in code. These interfaces are aggregated

on `kUtilsBoss`; the smart pointer class `Utils` makes it straightforward to acquire and call methods on these interfaces. You can call their methods by writing code that follows this pattern:

```
Utils<IDocumentCommands>() ->MethodName(...)
```

TABLE 7 Useful command facades and utilities

API	Used for manipulating...
<code>IDocumentCommands</code>	Documents.
<code>IPathUtils</code>	Frames and splines. See the “Layout Fundamentals” chapter for other APIs that help with layout.
<code>IGraphicAttributeUtils</code>	Graphic attributes. See the “Graphics Fundamentals” chapter for other APIs that help with graphics.
<code>ITextModelCmds</code>	Text. See the “Text Fundamentals” chapter for other APIs that help with text.
<code>ITableCommands</code>	Tables. See the “Tables” chapter for other APIs that help with tables.
<code>IXMLUtils</code>	XML. See the “XML Fundamentals” chapter for other APIs that help with XML.
<code>kUtilsBoss</code>	See <code>kUtilsBoss</code> in the <i>API Reference</i> for a complete list of command facades and utilities.

These utility classes abstract over low-level commands. Before using commands, always look for such a utility to see if there is a method that serves your purpose on one of these interfaces. By doing so, you avoid the increased chance of confusion and error that comes with processing commands. Your use case may require you to process some commands, if the utilities do not provide all of the functionality you require.

As used in the application, command “facade” and “utility” are just different names for the same thing, a class that reduces and simplifies the amount of client code you need to write to change objects in the model. They decouple client code from command creation, initialization, and processing.

When implementing custom commands, it is advisable to provide your own command facade or utility. If you want to share your class with other plug-ins, implement it as an add-in interface on `kUtilsBoss`; for example, see `XDocBkFacade`. If the class is used only by one plug-in, a C++ class is sufficient; for example, see `BPIHelper`.

Command-processing APIs

The classes used when writing client code to process commands are listed in [Table 8](#).

TABLE 8 *Useful classes for processing commands*

API	Description
CmdUtils	Provides methods that create, process, or schedule commands and manage command sequences.
PersistUtils	Provides methods like GetDataBase, GetUID, and GetUIDRef, which are used to identify the objects to be operated on by a command.
ErrorUtils	Provides access to the global error code.

NOTE: You must use CmdUtils to process commands. Do not use the ICommandProcessor or ICommandMgr interfaces for this. Misuse of these interfaces can easily cause document corruption.

For information on finding and processing the commands provided by the API, see the “Commands” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Extension patterns

This section summarizes the mechanisms a plug-in can use to extend the command subsystem.

Command

Description

Suppose:

- You added a new persistent boss to a document or a persistent interface to an object in a document, and you need to set custom data in these objects.
- The API does not provide a command that sets the model data you need to change.
- You want do some processing, and you concluded that a command provides the best pattern in which to encapsulate it.

Architecture

To implement a command, follow these steps:

- Define a new boss class in your plug-in that aggregates IID_ICOMMAND. If you require input parameters over and above the command’s item list, aggregate further data interfaces to the boss through which the parameters can be passed.
- Provide an implementation of ICommand using Command as a base class.

- Add client code that processes your new command. See the “Commands” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.
- For more guidance, see the Command page in the *API Reference* and “Best Practice” below.

Best practices

- The Do method contains the code that modifies the model. The model is changed by calling mutator methods on model interfaces, processing commands, processing commands in a command sequence, or calling utilities that process commands for you.
- If you encounter an error condition within your Do method, set the global error code (`ErrorUtils::PMSetGlobalErrorCode`) and return. The application is responsible for reverting the model back to its state before the Do method was called and informing the user of the error.
- If you need more sophisticated flow control that allows for fail/retry semantics, use an abortable command sequence (see `IAbortableCmdSeq`).
- *The Do method can change objects in only one database each time it is called.* To change objects in more than one database in one undoable step, use a command sequence (`ICommandSequence`).
- Normally, the database containing the objects to be changed is passed using the command’s item list. Alternatively, a command can target a predetermined database, by calling `Command::SetTarget` in its constructor. It also can override `Command::SetUpTarget` and determine the database containing the objects to be changed when the command is processed.
- Normally, the `DoNotify` method contains the code that initiates notification, should you require it. Initiate notification by calling `ISubject::ModelChange` (not `ISubject::Change`). Calling `ISubject::ModelChange` when model objects are changed broadcasts regular and lazy notification (see the “Notification” chapter). The application calls `DoNotify` after the Do method of the command is called; however, notification need not be restricted to this method.
- Notification can be performed for each object that was modified using the `ISubject` interface of affected objects. Notification also can be performed centrally. For example, many commands that modify the document model notify change using the `ISubject` interface of the document (`kDocBoss`). Sometimes commands use both these approaches. The benefit of using a centralized approach is that an observer needs to attach to only one subject to receive the notification.
- If you need to pre-notify observers before the model is changed, call your `DoNotify` method from your Do method before making any changes to the model.
- Notification can result in the processing of further commands, which can result in global error code being set. If further commands are processed, application shutdown occurs. If multiple subjects are notified by a command, the global error code should be tested between notifications. If the error code is set, the `DoNotify` method should return without calling further subjects, or it should consume the error and reset the global error code.
- The undoability of a command should be fixed at command construction (see `ICommand::GetUndoability`). Its default value is `kRegularUndo`. If a different undoability is

required, it should be set in the command's constructor. See `ICommand::Undoability` in the *API Reference*.

- A command must have a name (see `Command::CreateName`), if it has an undoability of `kRegularUndo` and it returns `kTrue` for `IsNameRequired`. Such commands can appear in undo and redo menu items. The name must have a translation, so it can be displayed in undo and redo menu items in a localized form. Commands with an undoability of `kRegularUndo` that override `IsNameRequired` to return `kFalse` must pick up their name from a subcommand. Some commands create and process other commands (subcommands) to make their changes and want to pick up the name of the first subcommand called within their scope instead of providing their own name.
- Commands with undoability of `kAutoUndo` do not need a name, because their changes merge with an existing step in the undo and redo menu items.
- The destructor of a command normally is empty. Do not change the model within the destructor.

See also

- For documentation on commands: `Command` and `ICommand` in the *API Reference*.
- For documentation on notification: `ISubject` and `IObserver` in the *API Reference*.
- If you need error codes set by your command to map onto strings that describe the error condition: [“Error string service” on page 88](#).
- For sample code: `kBPISetDataCmdBoss`, `BPISetDataCmd`, and `BPIHelper` from the `BasicPersistInterface` plug-in.

Error string service

Description

Suppose error conditions can occur in your plug-in, and you need to inform the user of these errors.

Architecture

Sometimes, error conditions can occur in your plug-in, often within commands or command sequences. When control is returned to the application by your plug-in, and the global error code is set to something other than `kSuccess`, the user is informed and the model is reverted back to the last consistent state. An error string service provides the ability to map error codes onto error strings. To handle this, follow these steps:

- You Provide an error string service. This service allows `ODFRez` resources in your plug-in to map error codes onto strings that describe the error. Detailed documentation on how to define the error codes, resources, and implementations involved is the *API Reference* for `IErrorStringService`.
- On detecting the error condition, call `ErrorUtils::PMSetGlobalErrorCode` to set your error and return control to the application. The application informs the user of the error.

See also

For sample code: `BPIErrorStringService` from the `BasicPersistInterface` plug-in.

Persistent interface

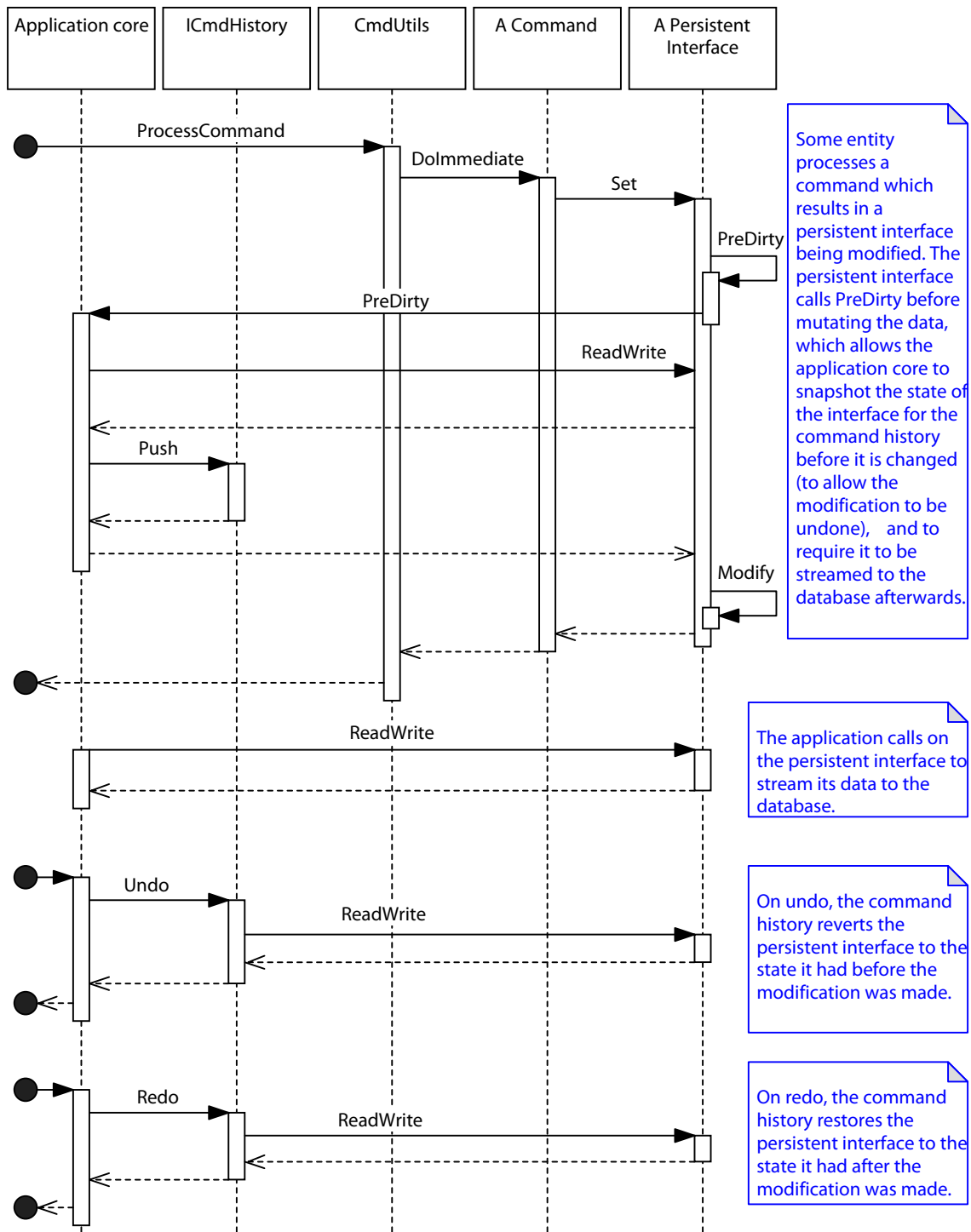
Description

Suppose you need to add custom data to an existing object in the model and have that persist. For example, you want frames in a document to have a set of custom properties that you control.

Architecture

The state of a persistent interface that is associated with a database that supports undo is captured by the application before it is changed; its state is reverted on undo and restored on redo. The state is saved in the command history (see “[Command history](#)” on page 80) for undo and redo, and in the database for persistence. [Figure 17](#) shows the typical sequence of calls made to modify persistent interface, and when that modification subsequently is undone or redone.

FIGURE 17 Sequence of calls to a persistent interface



To implement a persistent interface, follow these steps:

1. Aggregate your interface on the boss class in the model to which you want to add custom data that persists. Use an add-in interface (an ODFRez AddIn statement) if you are adding the interface to an existing boss class. To define a new type of persistent boss, see [“Persistent boss” on page 91](#).
2. Provide an abstract interface that uses IPMUnknown as a base class.
3. Provide an implementation of this abstract interface.
4. Use CREATE_PERSIST_PMINTERFACE to make your implementation class available to the application (instead of CREATE_PMINTERFACE).
5. Define a ReadWrite method for your implementation class. It gets called to serialize your data when needed.
6. Call PreDirty within mutator methods *before* changing member variables that need to be serialized. This gives the application the ability to recognize that this interface is about to change.
7. Call mutator methods to update the state of your interface. The application calls your Read-Write method to serialize your data when needed.

NOTE: If your interface persists in a document, you must consider what should happen when users who do not have your plug-in open documents that contain your plug-in’s data. See the section on missing plug-ins in the “Persistent Data and Data Conversion” chapter.

See also

- [“Command” on page 86](#).
- For sample code: IBPIData, BPIDataPersist and BPISetDataCmd from the BasicPersistInterface plug-in.
- For documentation on persistence: the “Persistent Data and Data Conversion” chapter.

Persistent boss

Description

Suppose you need to add a new type of persistent object to the model. For example, you need to add a list of custom style objects to defaults.

Architecture

To implement a persistent boss that has a UID, follow these steps:

1. Define a new boss class.
2. Aggregate IID_IPMPERSIST, and use the kPMPersistImpl implementation provided by the API.

3. Add persistent interfaces to the boss to store your custom data. See [“Persistent interface” on page 89](#).
4. Choose a boss class to own the instances of your new persistent boss. Add a persistent interface into the boss class you have chosen that stores the UIDs of the new persistent boss. For example, to add custom styles to defaults, add this interface into `kWorkspaceBoss`.

NOTE: If your boss persists within a database that supports undo, such as a document or defaults, *you must create, modify, and delete the persistent boss using commands*. Implement a create command to allocate a new UID for each new instance of the persistent boss, and store this UID in an interface on boss that owns it. The delete command deletes all child UIDs owned by the persistent boss, removes all references to the persistent boss from the model, then deletes the UID.

See also

- For sample code: `kPstLstDataBoss` and `PstLstUIDList` from the `PersistentList` plug-in.
- For documentation on persistence: the “Persistent Data and Data Conversion” chapter.
- [“Command” on page 86](#).

Snapshot interface

Description

Suppose you have an object containing transient data, which depends on model objects that persist in a database that supports undo, and:

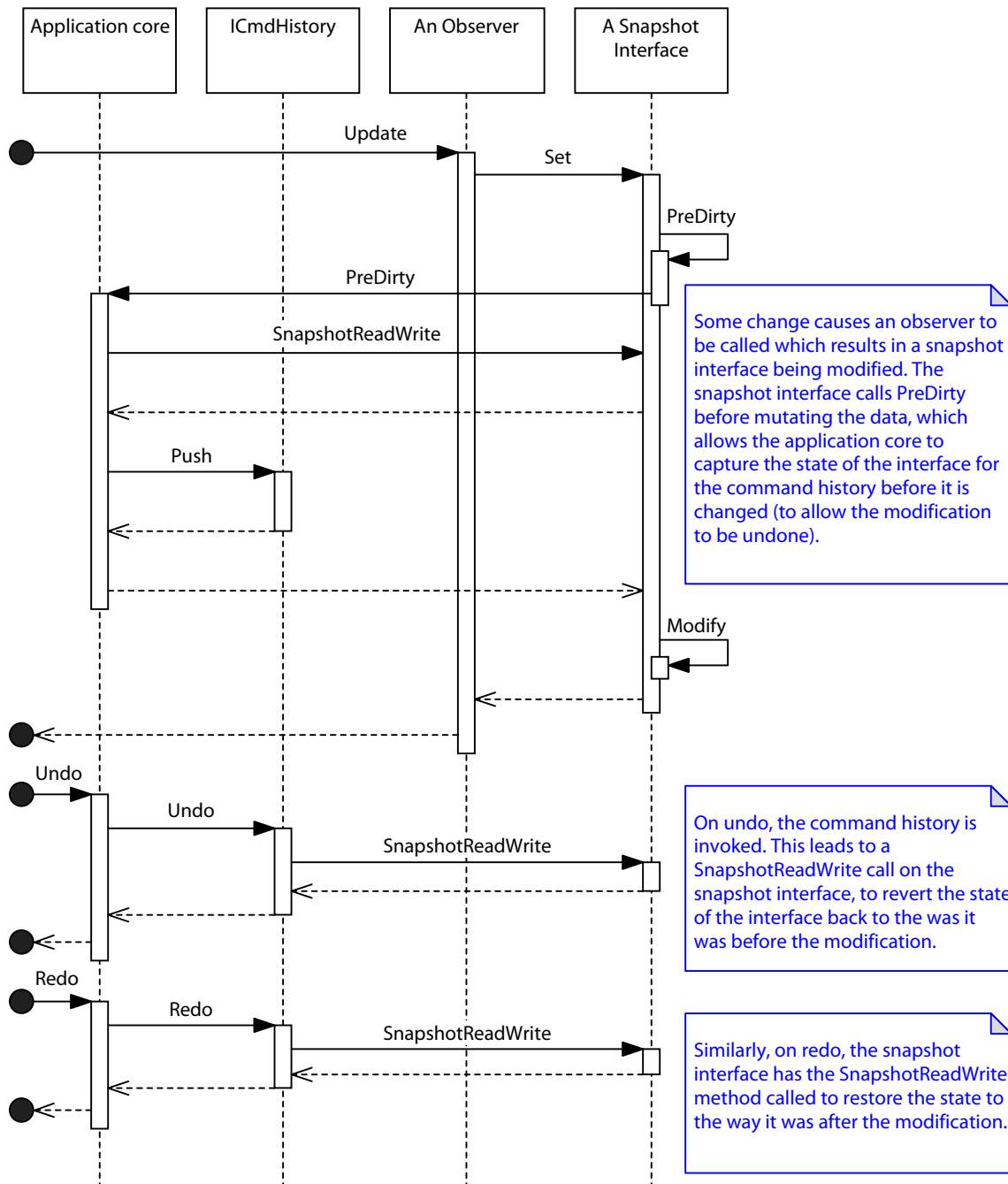
- Your object needs to be updated when the model objects are modified initially and on any subsequent undo or redo.
- You cannot use lazy notification to update your object, because it must be kept up to date with changes to the model *at all times*.
- Your object must be updated on undo or redo, before observers get called.

For example, the text state (see the `ITextState` interface) caches the text attributes that are applied to the “text caret”; the next text insertion uses these attributes. This cache is implemented as a snapshot interface and maintained on undo and redo.

Architecture

The state of an snapshot interface is captured by the application before it is changed; its state is reverted on undo and restored on redo. The state is saved in the command history (see [“Command history” on page 80](#)) for undo and redo. [Figure 18](#) shows a typical sequence of calls for a snapshot interface when it is modified, and when that modification is subsequently undone or redone.

FIGURE 18 Sequence of calls for a snapshot interface



Often, an observer or responder is used to modify a snapshot interface, as shown in Figure 18. Before changing any data, the snapshot interface implementation calls PreDirty, indicating to the application that the SnapshotReadWrite method should be called to capture the state of the interface (this state is associated with the CmdStackItem for the current sequence)). On undo

or redo, the SnapshotReadWrite method is invoked with the data associated with that particular sequence on the undo/redo menu.

To implement a snapshot interface, follow these steps:

1. Add your interface to a persistent boss class that is part of the model on whose state your interface depends. Check that this class aggregates IPMPersist, since the boss must have a UID to support a snapshot interface. For example, if your object depends on objects in a document, you might choose kDocBoss.
2. Provide an abstract interface that uses IPMUnknown as a base class.
3. Provide an implementation of this abstract interface.
4. Use CREATE_SNAPSHOT_PMINTERFACE to make your implementation class available to the application (instead of CREATE_PMINTERFACE).
5. Define a SnapshotReadWrite method for your implementation class. It gets called to serialize snapshots of your data when needed.
6. Call PreDirty within mutator methods *before* changing member variables you serialize in SnapshotReadWrite.
7. When the model objects you depend on are changed, call mutator methods to modify the state of your interface. You might need to track the change to the object using regular notification. The application takes a snapshot of your interface, reverts the state on undo, and restores it on redo.

NOTE: Even though this extension pattern is very similar in its implementation to a persistent interface, its effect is very different. The information in your snapshot interface is transient and not saved persistently with a document, defaults, or whatever other model it is associated.

See also

- For sample code: LnkWtchCache in the LinkWatcher plug-in and GTTxtEdtSnapshotInterface in the GoToLastTextEdit plug-in.
- The “Notification” chapter.

Inval handler

Description

Suppose you have an object that depends on model objects that persist in a database that supports undo, and:

- Your object must be updated at undo and at redo when the model objects it depends on change.
- You cannot use lazy notification (see the “Notification” chapter) to update your object, because you need it to be kept up to date with changes to the model *at all times*.

- You cannot use a snapshot interface (see “[Snapshot interface](#)” on page 92) because you need to do more than restore the state of an object within the application.
- You need to program behavior that runs at undo and redo.

NOTE: This extension pattern is very rare. This is an advanced pattern and should be used only if absolutely necessary.

For example, an observer might watch a subject that can be deleted from the model. Typically, such observers are attached to the subject when it is created and detached just before it gets deleted. If an object is created, the observer is attached. If there is an undo at this point, the observer should be detached; a subsequent redo should result in the observer being re-attached. Similarly, if an object is deleted, the observer is detached. At this point, an undo should result in the observer being attached; a subsequent redo should result in the observer being detached.

Consider an observer that attaches to a spread (see `kSpreadBoss`). When a spread is created, the observer gets attached to the new spread. If the creation of the spread is undone, this observer must be detached before the undo takes place. If the creation of the spread is redone, the observer must be re-attached after the redo takes place. The `inval` handler extension pattern allows for this. The `GoToLastTextExit` plug-in provides sample code that shows how to use an `inval` handler to manage the attachment and detachment of an observer that watches stories in a document.

Architecture

`Inval` handlers allow plug-in code to be called at undo and redo. There are two parts to the mechanism:

- An `inval` handler (see `IInvalHandler`) that registers interest in a database that supports undo.
- An `inval` cookie that gets called on undo and redo. The `inval` cookie is created by the `inval` handler at the end of a transaction that contained changes in which the plug-in was interested.

`Inval` handlers are used in situations where a plug-in needs to achieve more than the restoration of the state (through persistent interfaces and snapshot interfaces), and the lazy notification broadcast occurs too late to meet this need. The plug-in has code that must be called immediately at undo or redo.

To implement an `inval` handler, follow these steps:

- Provide an implementation of an `inval` handler (see the `IInvalHandler` class in the *API Reference* for details. See `GTTxtEdtInvalHandler` for sample code).
- Provide an implementation of an `inval` cookie (see the `IInvalCookie` class in the *API Reference* for details. See `GTTxtEdtInvalCookie` for sample code).
- Create an instance of the `inval` handler, and call `DBUtils::AttachInvalHandler` to associate this instance with the database that persists the objects in which you are interested. The scope of this association can be defined by the lifetime of the database or the enabling of particular functionality. For example, an `inval` handler might be attached to a database when a document is opened.

- Once an inval handler is attached to a database, call `DBUtils::StartCollectingInvals` to indicate the inval handler is interested in participating in undo and redo. This usually occurs on some event (through an observer or some other means). The `StartCollectingInvals` call informs the database that the inval handler should be called at the end of the current transaction. If an undoable transaction is ongoing, the inval handler is said to be “collecting invals.”
- The plug-in code records the semantics of the change. Where this is recorded is implementation-dependent: it could be in the state associated with the inval handler (recommended), an inval handler cookie, or elsewhere.
- Further changes of interest can occur within the same transaction. The plug-in code should record the semantics of the changes; for example, by adding state to a list within the inval handler.
- At the completion of the transaction, the `IInvalHandler::EndCollectingInvals` method is called. The inval handler can return an instance of an inval cookie representing the change(s) of interest that occurred. This inval cookie is kept in the command history for this database transaction. The inval handler is now said to be “not collecting invals.”
- The inval cookie is called on undo and redo of the transaction.
- When the lifetime of an inval handler is over, call `DBUtils::DetachInvalHandler` to detach the inval handler from the database. For example, an inval handler might be detached from a document database when a document is closed.

[Figure 19](#) shows the lifetime of a typical inval handler. [Figure 20](#) shows the typical sequence of calls made to an inval cookie on undo. On undo, any inval cookies that were previously associated with the `CmdStackItem` are called. The inval cookie setting the error state aborts the undo (the model is reset to the state from before the undo).

FIGURE 19 Typical inval handler calls (sequence diagram)

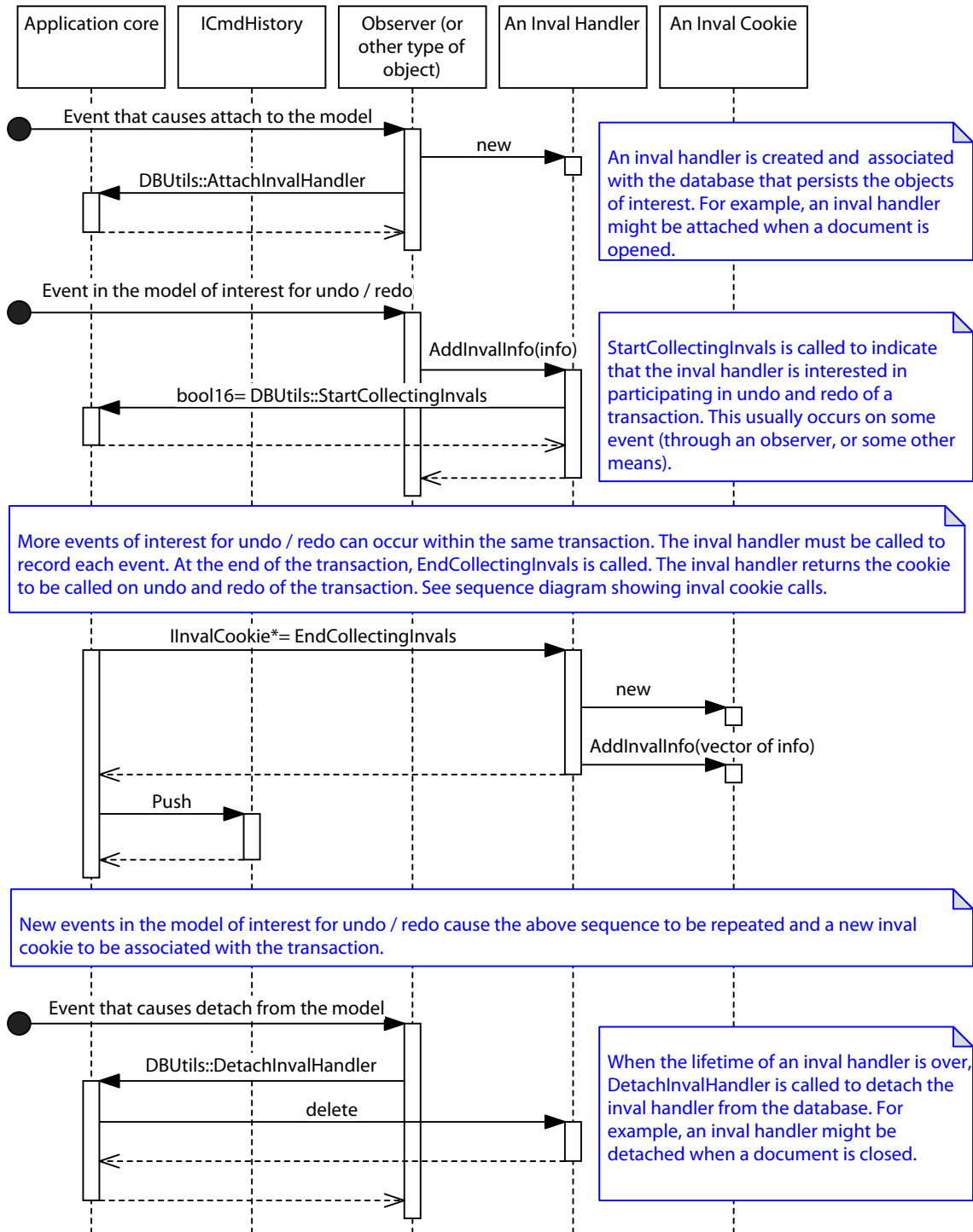
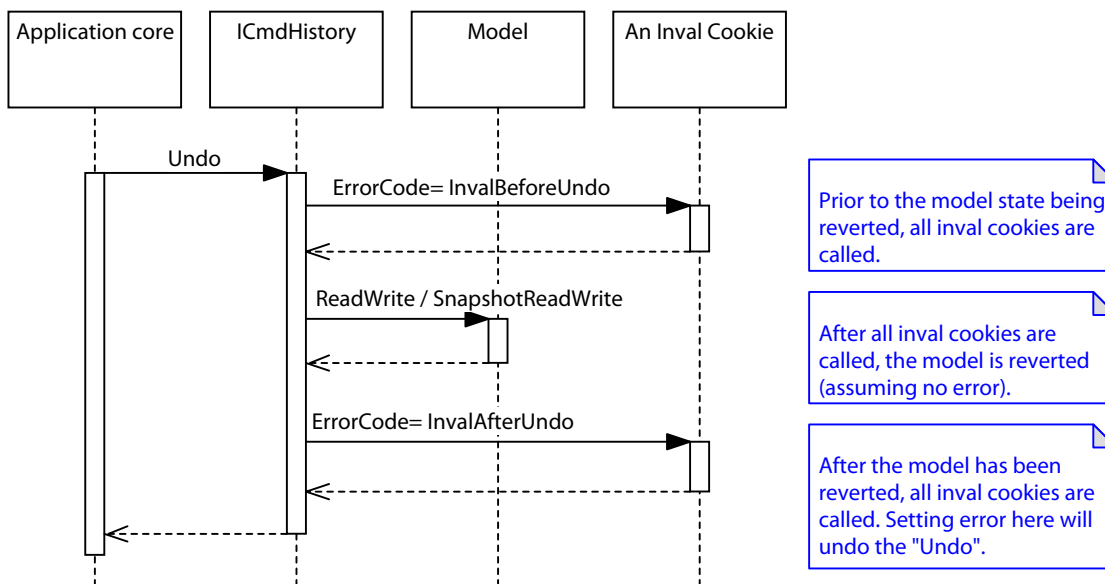


FIGURE 20 Inval cookie calls on undo



There are times where the lifetime of an inval handler does not match that of the command history. Inval handlers can be attached and detached at any time, asynchronously with anything else happening in the model. This means there are entries in the command history that do not have corresponding inval cookies for a particular inval handler. In this situation, the inval handler's BeforeRevert_InvalAll and AfterRevert_InvalAll methods are used to provide the opportunity to rebuild the required state directly.

There are times when an inval cookie instance can be asked to merge another instance. This causes the IInvalCookie::Merge method to be called, to merge cookies that were returned by each call to IInvalHandler::EndCollectingInvals within one undoable transaction. For example, this can happen at the end of an abortable command sequence.

See also

- IInvalHandler, IInvalCookie, DBUtils::AttachInvalHandler, DBUtils::StartCollectingInvals, and DBUtils::DetachInvalHandler in the *API Reference*.
- For sample code: GTTextEditInvalHandler in the GoToLastTextEdit plug-in.
- For documentation on how to detect change in other objects using observers and responders: the “Notification” chapter.

Snapshot view interface

Description

Suppose you have a user interface object like a widget, which has data that depends on model objects that persist in a database that supports undo, and:

- Your data needs to be updated when the model objects it depends on are modified or when modifications are undone or redone.
- You cannot use lazy notification to update your data, because it must be kept up to date with changes to the model *at all times*.

NOTE: Use of this pattern is *extremely* rare in the application codebase. For example, it is used by interface `ILayoutControlData` on the layout widget. The data in this interface is depended on by many other objects and always must be kept in tight synchronzation with the database. This is an advanced pattern and should be used only if absolutely necessary.

Architecture

A snapshot is taken of the state of a snapshot view interface, before it is changed, reverted on undo, and restored on redo. It is very similar to a snapshot interface (see [“Snapshot interface” on page 92](#)). The distinction is that the database with which a snapshot interface is associated is fixed and implicitly defined by the persistent boss on which it is aggregated. A snapshot view interface, on the other hand, is part of a user interface object and must explicitly identify the database containing the model objects on which it depends. Also, it is not one specific database. For example, a widget that tracks some state in the front document must change the database on which its snapshot view interface depends, when the front document changes.

To implement a snapshot view interface, follow the steps described under `CViewInterface` in the *API Reference*.

See also

The `CViewInterface` template class in the *API Reference*.

Notification

Notification patterns inform interested parties of certain changes. This chapter describes the prevalent notification patterns used by products in the InDesign family.

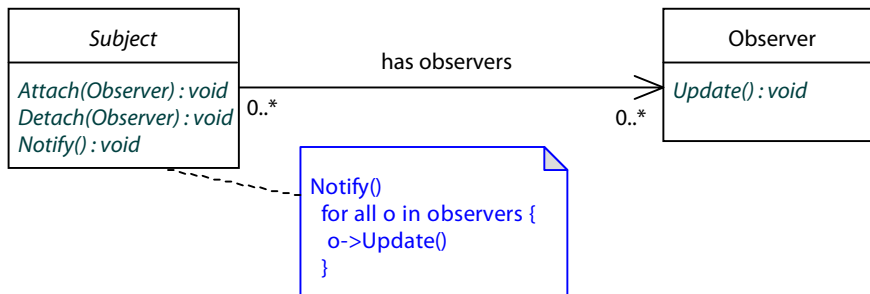
Concepts

Notification is a mechanism by which an interested object can be made aware of changes in other components or subsystems. This section focusses on two prevalent notification patterns, the *observer* and the *responder*.

Observer pattern

The observer pattern is described in [*Design Patterns*] by Gamma et al. The intent of the pattern is to “Define a one to many dependency between objects so that when one object changes state, all its dependents are notified and updated automatically.” Figure 21 shows the structure.

FIGURE 21 Abstract representation of the observer pattern



The pattern consists of a subject and one or more observers. A *subject* is an object that needs to inform other objects that are interested in changes to the subject’s state. An *observer* is an object that needs to keep its state consistent with the state of a subject. A subject can have an association with multiple observers. An observer can observe multiple subjects.

The association between observers and subjects is managed through Attach and Detach calls. Any change to the subject is declared through a call to the Notify method, which in turn calls Update on any associated observers.

The subject supports three operations:

- *Attach* — Associates a specific observer with a subject.
- *Detach* — Detaches a specific observer from a subject.
- *Notify* — Notifies all associated observers of some change to the subject.

The observer supports one operation:

- *Update* — Keeps the observer's state consistent with the subject's state.

Typically, when a client wants to be notified of changes in a subject, it calls *Attach*, passing an observer that will be the recipient of update messages.

Any update to the subject that could be of interest to observers results in a call to the subject's *Notify* method. The subject, in turn, iterates through all attached observers, calling their *Update* operations.

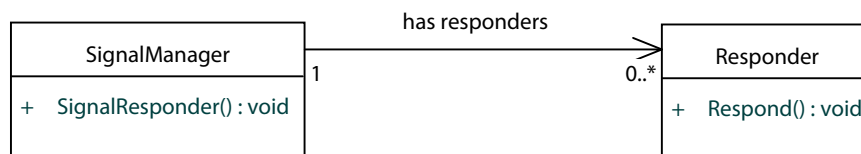
At any point, a client can remove the observer from the subject, using *Detach*. The observer no longer receives update events from that subject.

For more information, see “[Observers](#)” on page 102.

Responder pattern

With the observer pattern, notification is provided when an object is modified. The responder pattern provides notification on an *event*. Notification consists of a *signal* sent from one party to a *responder* that can react to the event. The application predefines a set of events and corresponding signals in which responders can register interest. For example, signals are associated with document events like create, open, save, and close. A responder that registers interest in the document open event is called each time a document is opened. [Figure 22](#) shows the structure.

FIGURE 22 Responder pattern

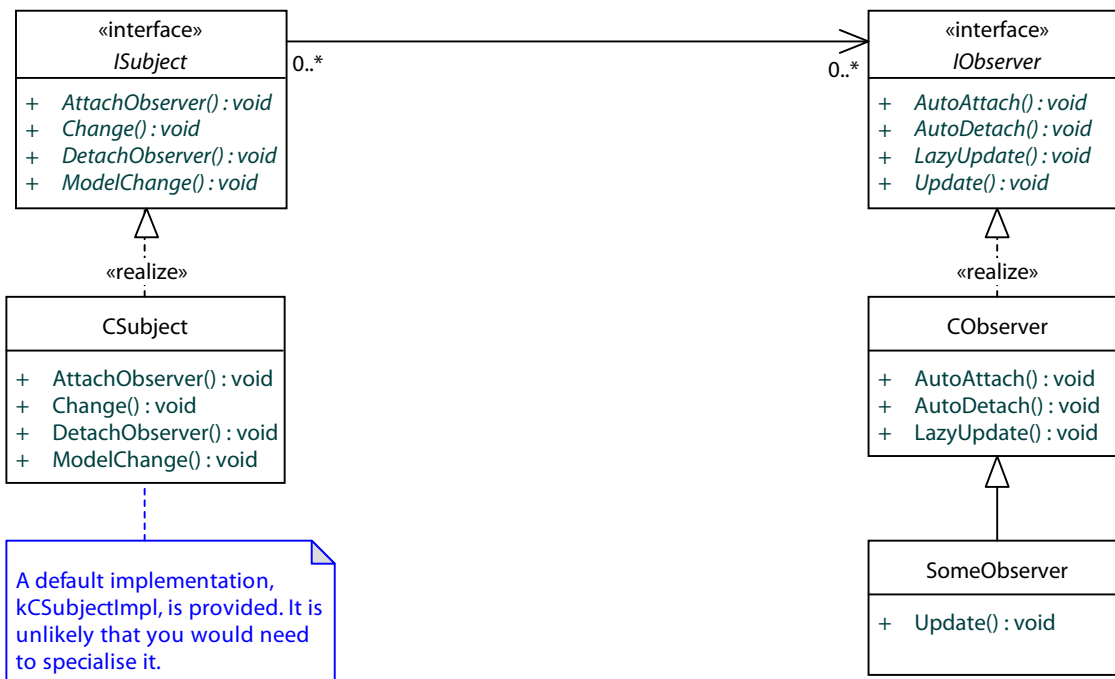


The pattern consists of a *signal manager* and responders. The signal manager is the object responsible for notifying responders of some event. A responder is an object that is called as a result of that event. A responder registers its interest in a particular event using the *service provider* extension pattern. A responder is a service provider, although this is not shown explicitly in [Figure 22](#). For more information, see “[Responders](#)” on page 115.

Observers

This section describes the implementation of the observer pattern (see “[Observer pattern](#)” on [page 101](#)) within the application. The implementation consists of two interfaces, a subject (see the *ISubject* interface) and an observer (see the *IObserver* interface), as shown in [Figure 23](#).

FIGURE 23 Subject and observer interfaces (class diagram)



Subjects

A subject is an object potentially of interest to other objects. Within the application, any object that maintains state of interest to other objects is a candidate for being a subject. An object with an `ISubject` interface is a subject. The interface supports the following key operations:

- `AttachObserver` — Associates a particular observer with the subject.
- `DetachObserver` — Detached a particular observer from the subject.
- `Change` — Notifies observers of a change to the subject. Observers get called on their `IObserver::Update` method. See “[Regular and lazy notification](#)” on page 106.
- `ModelChange` — Notifies observers of a change to a subject. Observers get called on their `IObserver::Update` method and/or their `IObserver::LazyUpdate` method. See “[Regular and lazy notification](#)” on page 106.

Change manager

Subjects within the application defer the functionality required to track the subject and observer dependencies to the *change manager* (the `IChangeManager` signature interface). The `ISubject` interface forms a facade over the change manager. It is unlikely third-party developers need to interact with the change manager directly. It is not considered further here.

Observers

An observer is an object interested in changes to a subject. Any object within the application object model can be an observer by aggregating the `IObserver` interface. The interface supports the following key operations:

- `AutoAttach` and `AutoDetach` — Provided when the observer knows the subject with which it should be associated. A client would then delegate the association of subject and observer to the observer. See [“Relating observers to subjects” on page 112](#) for a description of how to associate an observer with a subject.
- `Update` and `LazyUpdate` — Receives notification when a subject changes. An observer can get called via its `Update` or `LazyUpdate` method, depending on how it chooses to receive notifications from the subject. See [“Regular and lazy notification” on page 106](#).

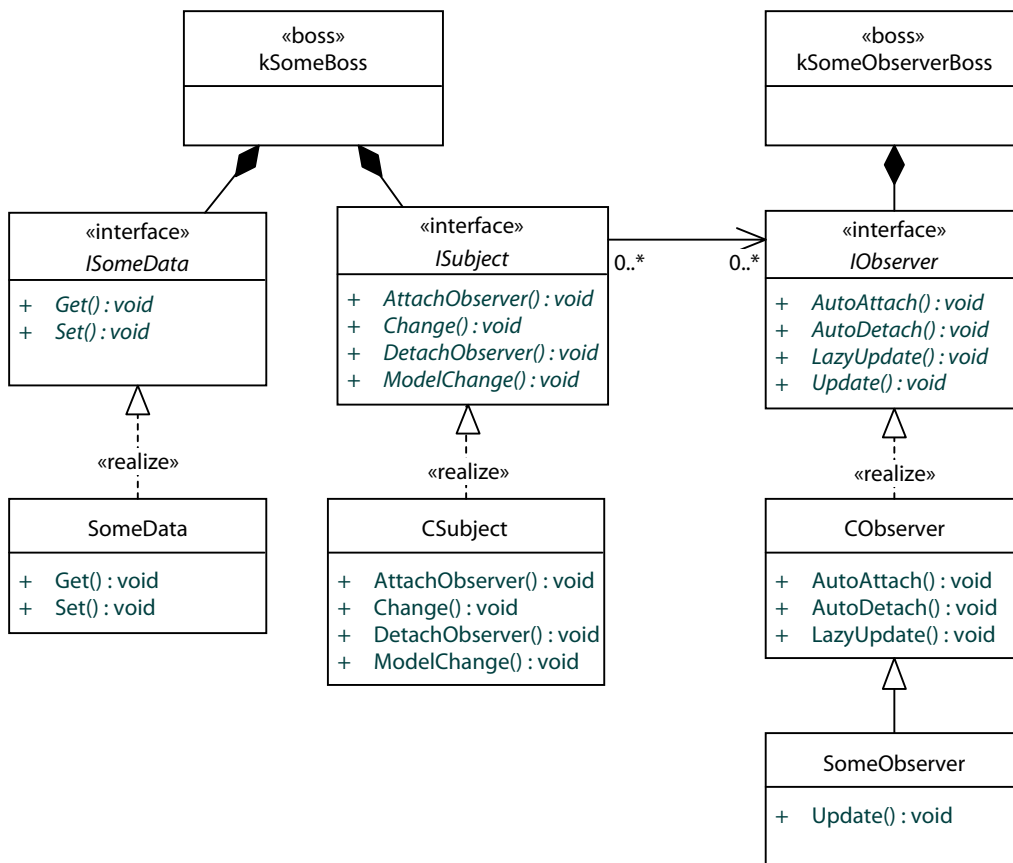
Message protocols

Normally, an observer attaching to a subject indicates a *protocol* of interest. This protocol (identified by type `PMIID`) allows the observer to be called only for a subset of the total set of messages being broadcast by the subject. Generally, the protocol is synonymous with a data interface on the subject. Observers interested in changes to a specific data interface on the subject attach using the `PMIID` of the data interface.

[Figure 24](#) shows a subject, `kSomeSubjectBoss`, that aggregates a data interface, `ISomeData`. The observer, `kSomeObserverBoss`, is interested in changes to this data interface. The observer attaches to the subject, specifying `IID_ISOMEDATA` as the protocol of interest. This corresponds to the `PMIID` of the data interface. After the data interface is modified, the `ISubject::ModelChange` or `ISubject::Change` method is called to broadcast notification. Observers are called via their `Update` or `LazyUpdate` methods, with a message protocol of `IID_ISOMEDATA`.

The object that actually modifies the data interface and calls the `ISubject` interface to broadcast notification is not shown in [Figure 24](#). If the subject object is part of a document or defaults, the object that calls the mutator method on the data interface normally is a command (see the “Commands” chapter). The command calls `ISubject::ModelChange` if it performs notification. If the subject object is a user interface object, mutator methods on the data interface itself normally call `ISubject::Change` to broadcast notification.

FIGURE 24 A subject and an observer boss class (class diagram)



Subject and observer types

Within the application, subjects are split into distinct “types.” The type of object a subject is determines the method on `ISubject` that is called to perform notification. The types of subject are as follows:

- *Model* — An object that is part of the document model (see `kDocBoss`), the defaults model (see `kWorkspaceBoss`), or another model that supports undo. The `ISubject::ModelChange` method is used to broadcast notification when model objects change.
- *User interface* — An object that is part of the user interface; for example a checkbox or button. This is distinct from an element in the user interface that is interested in *model data*. The `ISubject::Change` method is used to broadcast notification when user interface objects change.

Within the application, observers are split into distinct “types.” The type of subject object an observer is watching determines the type of observer. The types of observers are as follows:

- *Model* — An observer attached to objects that persist in a document (see `kDocBoss`), defaults (see `kWorkspaceBoss`), or another model that supports undo. Notification of model observers is done through a call to `ISubject::ModelChange`.
- *User interface* — An observer attached to a user interface object; for example a checkbox or button.
- *Selection* — An observer watching an artifact of the current application selection.
- *Context* — An observer watching some context, such as the active document.
- *Hybrid* — An observer watching multiple types of subjects. A particular observer may attach to any set of objects; however we do not consider what requirements observers that attach to multiple types of subjects might have.

Regular and lazy notification

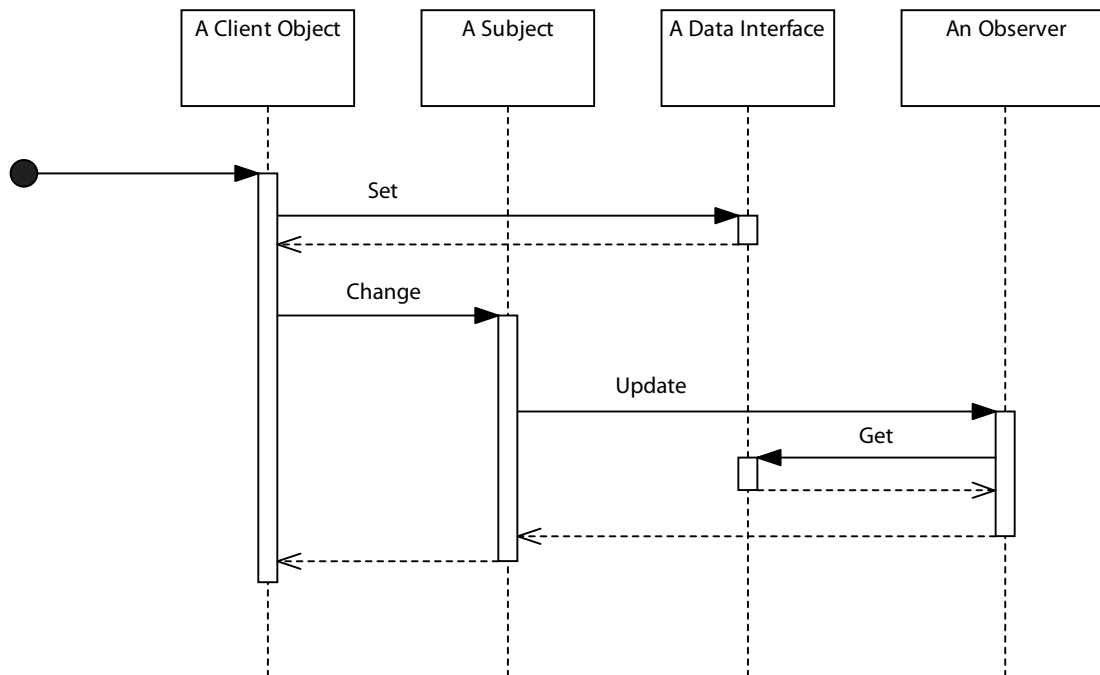
The application supports two types of notification, regular and lazy. If an observer needs to be called as soon as a subject broadcasts the change message, it should request *regular notification*. If the observer can afford to wait until idle time before being notified that a change of interest occurred, it can register for *lazy notification*. When an observer attaches to a subject, it defines whether it wants to attach for regular notification, lazy notification, or both.

Regular notification

Regular notification is passed to an observer via the `IObserver::Update` method.

With regular notification, an observer is called within the scope of the call to a subject's `ISubject::Change` (or `ISubject::ModelChange`) method. [Figure 25](#) shows the typical sequence of calls made when a subject notifies an observer using regular notification.

FIGURE 25 Regular notification



A client object is called and modifies some data interface, then broadcasts notification about the changes it makes. It mutates the state of a data interface and then calls `ISubject::ModelChange`. Observers get called via `IObserver::Update` and can retrieve the state of the data interface. The subject and the data interface are most often on the same boss object, but not always.

If a change is undone or redone, the observer is not notified. That is, the `Update` message is *not* re-broadcast. See [Figure 27](#) for the sequence of calls made on undo.

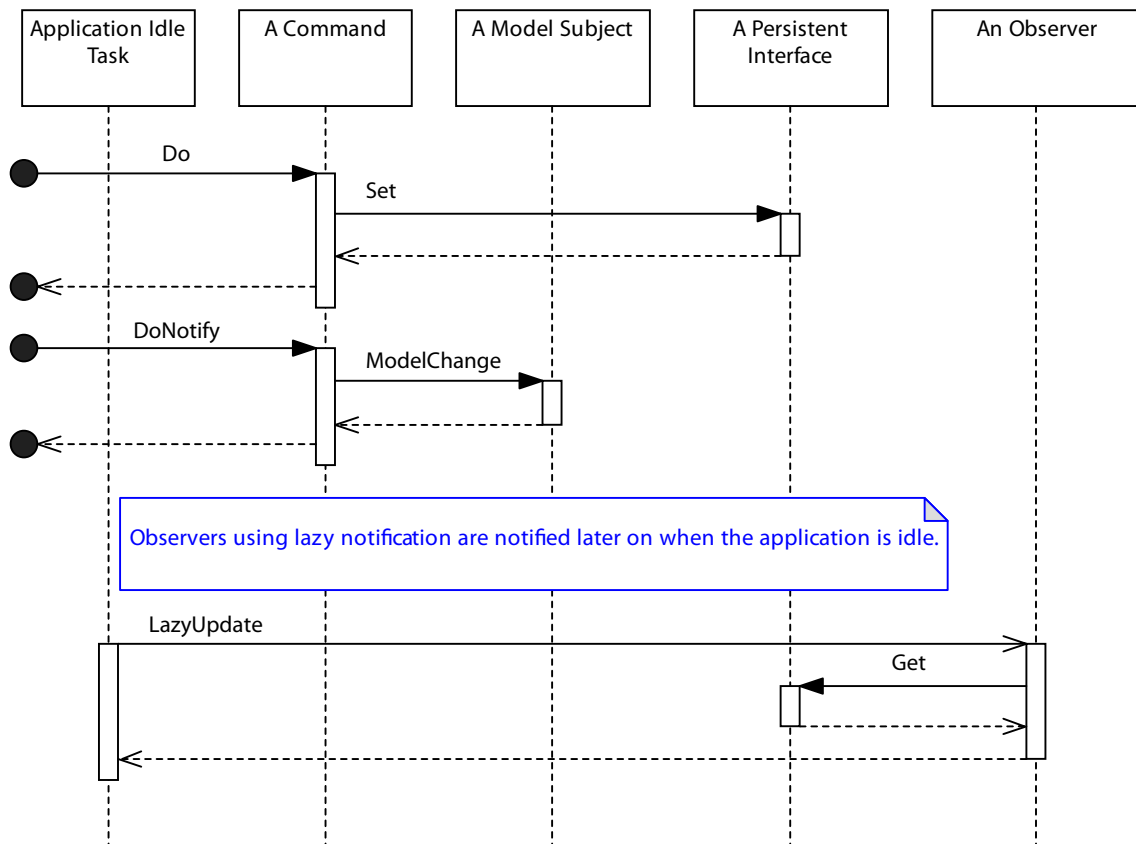
Lazy notification

Lazy notification is passed to observers via the `IObserver::LazyUpdate` method. Lazy notification is available only to observers of subject objects associated with persistent databases supporting undo.

Lazy notification is used when observers do not need to be in tight synchronization with changes being made to the subject objects they observe. Rather than participating in each change that occurs on a subject object, observers using lazy notification are notified after all updates are made and the application is idle.

When the state of an object in the model is changed (for instance, by a command), and notification is required, the notification *always* is broadcast by calling `ISubject::ModelChange`. The `ISubject::ModelChange` method queues a message to be broadcast later. Once the application is idle, observers get called with this message via the `IObserver::LazyUpdate` method, as shown in [Figure 26](#).

FIGURE 26 Lazy notification



NOTE: The approach above holds for subject objects in the document model, the defaults model, or, in general, any subject object that persists in a database that supports undo. Only subject objects which persist in a database that supports undo can use lazy notification.

Regardless of the number of changes made to the persistent interface, only one LazyUpdate call is made per sequence for a given message protocol.

An implication of this is that ordering of lazy notification with respect to other lazy notification messages cannot be guaranteed. Lazy notification can be thought of as a message indicating a change was applied to an object some time in the past. The observer is responsible for determining the nature of the change.

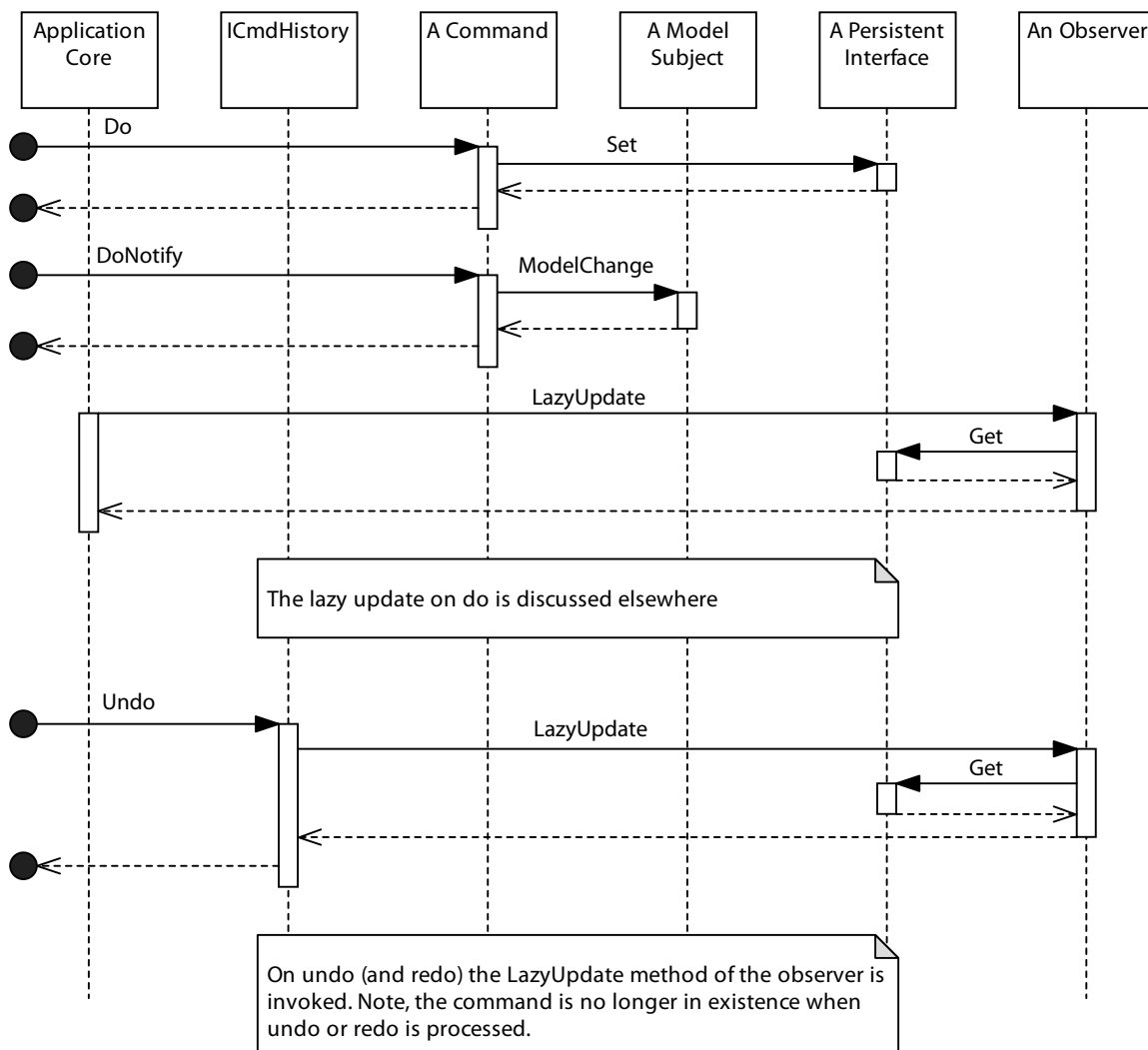
An observer that registers for lazy notification is not guaranteed to receive all messages. For example, suppose an observer is attached to a page item and is watching for the page item to move. If a sequence moves the page item and then deletes it, a lazy update message for the move is *not* sent to the observer. If a subject object is deleted, any lazy notification messages being queued for that object are purged.

We recommend any model observer used to keep some user interface component synchronized with the model should use lazy notification. This eliminates any unnecessary refresh of

user interface data. An example use of lazy notification is a user interface panel that reports information about the set of text frames in a document. The user interface panel is associated with a model observer watching for textual changes or the addition or removal of text frames. These operations result in the panel being updated. There is no real requirement for the panel to be updated in real time as these changes are made; the panel should be updated when the text updates are complete (and the application is idle). Lazy notification enables this by sending a single `IObserver::LazyUpdate` message to the observer when the move is complete.

If a change is undone or redone, the observer is notified; that is, the `LazyUpdate` message is re-broadcast. The sequence of calls made to an observer's `LazyUpdate` method on undo is shown in [Figure 27](#).

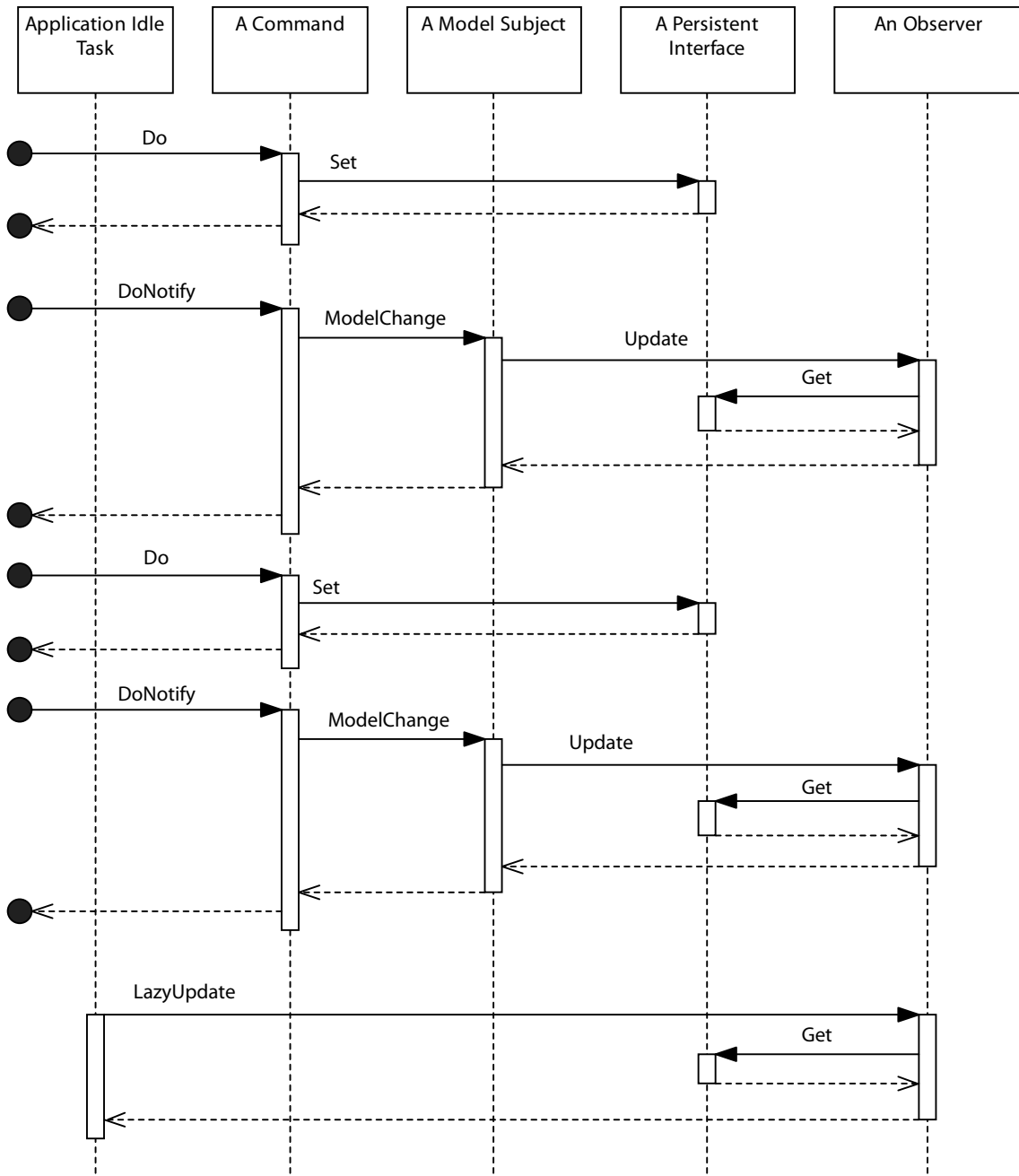
FIGURE 27 Sequence of calls made to an observer on undo



Both notifications

An observer can register for both regular and lazy notification. Figure 28 shows the sequence of calls this might involve.

FIGURE 28 Regular and lazy notification



While every `ISubject::ModelChange` message sent to the subject is propagated to the observer via `IObserver::Update`, only one `IObserver::LazyUpdate` call is made, regardless of the number of changes made in a single transaction. For example, if multiple updates are made on an object, the update messages being transmitted using a single protocol identifier, and the lazy update method is called only once.

On undo or redo, only the `LazyUpdate` messages are re-broadcast.

Registering for both notifications allows an observer to have the rich context of the `Update` message and have to re-build their view of the model only on rarer undo/redo events.

Lazy notification data

With regular notification, the observer (`IObserver::Update`) method is passed a context about what caused the change (usually, the command that initiated the notification). With lazy notification (`IObserver::LazyUpdate`), the observer gets notified only that something changed. The observer must be capable (for instance, by examining the model) of deducing or otherwise rebuilding the set of information it requires. In some cases, the time this takes causes performance issues; therefore, the API provides lazy notification data as an optimization.

Lazy notification data objects are data-carrying (C++) objects created by the message originator. For example, a command that deletes a document page object (`kPageBoss`) might create a lazy notification data object and populate it with the UID of the deleted page. Generally, this lazy notification data object is passed to observers via `IObserver::LazyUpdate`. There are situations where the lazy notification data objects associated with a change are purged (for example, in low memory condition), and the observer is called with a nil-pointer; therefore it is important that observers be designed to deal with this.

The lazy notification data objects used within the application are not documented in the public API.

NOTE: Use of lazy notification data objects is not pervasive in the application. They exist only as an optimization, and the types of data they consist of varies. We recommend you avoid using them if possible and refresh the observer's state entirely when `IObserver::LazyUpdate` is called.

Observers and undo

Only observers registered for lazy notification are signalled when an object they are associated with is modified through an undo or redo action. For each undo or redo, the observer receives one call (per message protocol), regardless of the number of changes made to the subject object.

If the observer performs model modifications using commands (see [“Model modifications” on page 114](#)), on undo or redo these are automatically undone or re-done as required. For observers watching the model to update some aspect of the user interface, lazy notification should give the required update. If there are more exotic requirements for notification on undo and redo, two other patterns exist: see the Snapshot interface and Inval Handler extension patterns in the “Commands” chapter.

Relating observers to subjects

This section discusses how observers are attached to particular subjects.

Determining the subject

Before being able to attach and detach observers, an understanding of both the subject to attach to and the protocol to listen along is required. The sample code provided as part of the SDK has examples for many key events of interest. Similarly, *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions* has advice on detecting when events occur for domains like layout, text, XML, and so on.

If neither of these resources provide the answer, the debug version of the application can be used. Under the test menu is an item called Test > Spy. It can be configured to log all executing commands, along with the subjects that are notified, the protocol used for notification, and the change that occurs. Perform the action of interest, and Spy provides the information required to observe the action.

Attaching and detaching subjects

In most situations, an observer understands the subjects in which it is interested and how to attach to them. Such an observer attaches to the subjects in the `IObserver::AutoAttach` call and detaches in `IObserver::AutoDetach`. For example, an observer on a panel can discover the widgets it contains (see the `IPanelControlData` interface) and attach to their subject interface.

NOTE: The `IObserver::AutoAttach` and `IObserver::AutoDetach` methods still need to be called by another object.

There are other situations where the observer does not know the subject(s) with which it should be associated. Given a subject and an observer, a client object can directly attach or detach the observer using `ISubject::AttachObserver` and `ISubject::DetachObserver` calls.

Using a responder to attach and detach an observer

Sometimes, an observer is required based on an action within the application. Responders (see [“Responders” on page 115](#)) are called on different application events and can be used to manage the association between an observer and a subject. For example, a responder can be called when documents are created, opened, or closed. On create or open, the responder can attach an observer to the document. On close, the responder can detach the observer.

Using an observer to attach and detach another observer

Sometimes, an observer attaches and detaches a second observer based on notification received by the first observer. This pattern commonly is seen in user interface objects that view objects in the front most document. The active context (see `kActiveContextBoss`, the `IActiveContext` interface, and the `IID_IACTIVECONTEXT` protocol) is the subject that is updated when the user chooses the document on which to work. The user interface object has a first observer that watches the active context. This observer attaches and detaches a second observer to the subjects of interest in the front-most document.

Observing a subject that can be deleted

Sometimes, a client object needs to observe a subject created as part of an undoable action. To do this, a pattern involving two observers and an inval handler can be used (inval handlers are described in the “Commands” chapter). The first observer watches for create events for the subject and attaches the second observer to the newly created subject. To ensure this second observer gets detached if the create action is undone, the first observer also must set up an inval handler. The inval handler provides a mechanism to detach the observer on undo and reattach it on redo.

Observing a subject that can be deleted as part of an undoable action is similar. On undo, the observer must be reattached; on redo, it must be detached. Again, this requires the use of an inval handler.

Document notification

The application supports a large object model. Any object is a candidate for becoming a subject (and thousands of subjects exist). Management of observers interested in the set of messages broadcast from a subject can be difficult, if many instances of a subject can exist. For example, consider objects in the page item hierarchy (which can be deleted and recreated, undone and redone, as a consequence of user actions). It is difficult and undesirable to maintain an observer on each page item. To solve this problem, as well as the actual subject object broadcasting the change message, the document’s subject also broadcasts the change. This means any observer associated with the ISubject interface on the document (kDocBoss) subject is notified, without the overhead of managing the association with finer-grained objects within the document.

Notification of changes to page items are broadcast on the document subject using IPageItemUtils::NotifyDocumentObservers. Some other types of object use the ISubject interface of the document (see kDocBoss) directly to notify of a change.

Observers and the model

This section details some considerations around the use of model observers within the application.

Observers “watch” model data for two primary reasons:

1. To update a user interface element to reflect the state of the model. (This type of observer is distinct from user interface observers, which watch for changes in user interface elements like checkboxes.)
2. To provide a point where existing functionality can be *extended*. For example, an observer can be used to set custom data in a story object (kTextStoryBoss), on story creation. There are side effects for both the error state and model modifications that should be considered when using observers to extend the model.

Error state

Model observers that extend functionality can set the global error state either directly (using `ErrorUtils::PMSetGlobalErrorCode`) or indirectly (through processing of commands). Generally, observers are notified during the processing of a command or sequence of commands. If the application tries to process a command when the global error state indicates anything but success (`kSuccess`), a protective shutdown is invoked to protect the integrity of open documents.

An observer setting the global error state either aborts the current change (that is, the current change is undone) or causes the shutdown of the application. The behavior is determined on a per-use basis and can be complicated by the use of commands in different scenarios. For example, the creation of a text story object (`kTextStoryBoss`) can occur through the type text tool or from an import and place operation. The type text tool is straightforward, and an observer setting global error state causes the change to be undone. For import and place, however, the story creation occurs as part of a longer sequence of commands. A similar observer setting global error state causes an application shutdown as further commands are processed.

Unless it is explicitly suggested that it is appropriate to set error state in an observer of a particular subject change, an observer should not set error state. Also, an observer that uses objects that potentially set error state (such as commands) should test for and consume any errors, taking appropriate remedial action.

Model modifications

A common pattern involves calling commands within an observer to make further modifications to the model. This can lead to problems. If the observer is notified as part of a sequence of commands, and the commands that are due to be processed after the current notification phase ends make any assumptions about the state of the model, instability and document corruption can result.

For example, consider a sequence of two commands. The first inserts text into a text story object (`kTextStoryBoss`). The second changes the color of the newly inserted text to blue. Pseudo-code for this sequence is in [Example 15](#)

EXAMPLE 15 Pseudo-code showing dependencies between commands

```
void MyTextUtils::AddNote(string str, ITextModel* story, TextIndex position)
{
    int32 stringLen = str.Length();
    BeginSequence("AddNote");
    MyTextUtils::AddToStory(story, position, str, stringLen);
    MyTextUtils::SetTextColor(story, position, stringLen, BLUE);
    EndSequence("AddNote");
}
```

At some point, a third party decides to extend the text functionality by writing a macro expander, the purpose of which is to expand known acronyms as text is entered into stories. The third party uses an observer that is notified when text is added to a story. If the observer modifies the model, specifically changing the number of characters entered into the story, it breaks the sequence in [Example 15](#). The `stringLen` value is no longer valid.

If there is no risk of side effects from the model change within an observer (for example, the observer modifies custom data, not the core application data on the object), it is safe to proceed with the change. If there is a need to perform further modifications on the core application data, consider factoring the change to execute as a separate task (possibly on application idle).

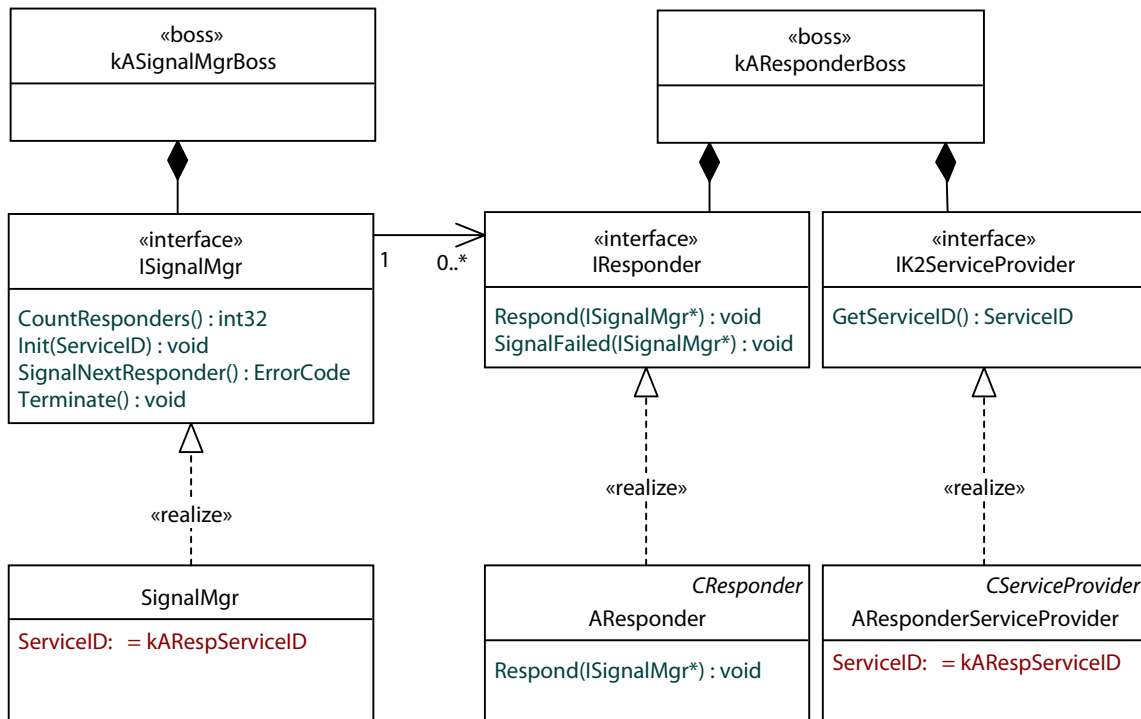
In [Example 15](#), the observer might mark some custom, persistent data in the story, indicating it needs to be processed, and schedule a custom command. The custom command examines the story, determines whether the macro expansion operation is still valid, and updates the story if required. No assumptions can be made about what might occur between marking the story in the observer and the follow-on processing (for example, the document could close, further updates could occur, or the application could terminate).

Commands that delete objects generally pre-notify, so subject observers get an opportunity to tidy up associated objects before the object is deleted. Observers called in this context should ensure the command state is `CommandState::kNotDone`.

Responders

This section describes the implementation of the responder pattern (see [“Responder pattern” on page 102](#)) within the application. The responder pattern provides notification that a specific event has occurred. For example, a responder can be called when a document is created, opened, or closed. [Figure 29](#) shows the general structure.

FIGURE 29 Pattern used for responders



The components to the responder pattern shown in [Figure 29](#) are as follows:

- *Signal manager* (signature interface `ISignalMgr`) — The entity responsible for notifying responders of an event.
- *Service provider* (interface `IK2ServiceProvider`) — The entity that identifies the object as a responder and indicates the events of interest.
- *Responder* (signature interface `IResponder`) — The entity invoked as a result of some event.

Signal manager

A signal manager is an object that controls the calling of responders. A boss class that has an `ISignalMgr` interface is a signal manager. A signal manager is called by some other object that wants responders to be notified when an event of interest has occurred. The object that calls a signal manager is often a command (see interface `ICommand`). For example, the command that opens a document calls the signal manager to notify responders which have registered an interest in this event.

Responders are service providers. Each event for which a responder can be notified has a corresponding `ServiceID`. The application predefines a set of events and corresponding `ServiceIDs` in which responders can register interest. For example, the open document event has a `ServiceID` of `kOpenDocSignalResponderService`. See the “Notification” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

When a particular event occurs the signal manager is called to signal all responders that have registered interest. The signal manager uses the service registry (not shown in [Figure 29](#)) to find the responders that need to be called for the event.

If a responder sets the global error state, the signal manager is responsible for calling previously signalled responders indicating there was an error condition (allowing the responder to take whatever action might be necessary) and the action is aborted.

Responder

A responder is a boss class that supports two specific interfaces, the service provider interface (IK2ServiceProvider) that identifies the events the responder is interested in, and the responder interface (signature interface IResponder) that is called for a particular event.

Responder registration

Each event for which a responder can be called has a corresponding ServiceID. A responder registers for one or more of these events by returning the ServiceIDs for the events of interest via its IK2ServiceProvider implementation. See the “Notification” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions* for details on the predefined events the application makes available. For sample code, see the DocWchServiceProvider class in the DocWatch plug-in.

Responder implementation

The responder is called via IResponder::Respond on an event of interest. The Respond method performs whatever functionality is required and returns.

If the global error state is set (ErrorUtils::PMSetGlobalErrorCode) by a responder, any previously signalled responders have their IResponder::SignalFailed method called to indicate failure. The SignalFailed method performs the function needed to recover. For example, if the Respond method attached an observer to an object, the SignalFailed method detaches that observer.

Both methods receive a pointer to a signal manager interface, so they can find out information about the event. Typically, the Respond and SignalFailed methods query the signal manager interface for other contextual interfaces. For example, the document signal manager (see kDocumentSignalMgrBoss) provides context in the IDocumentSignalData data interface. Responders that register for document signals like kAfterOpenDocSignalResponderService use this data interface to access the document being opened.

The Respond and SignalFailed methods often call the service manager using the ISignalMgr::GetServiceID method, to verify the ID of the service that occurred. This allows one responder implementation to be handle more than one type of event

For sample code, see the DocWchResponder class in the DocWatch plug-in.

Responders and the model

Responder implementations can perform follow-on modifications to the model. For example, a responder called as the result of a command modifying the model can make further changes to the model by calling other commands.

Take care that these modifications do not interfere with the model data on which the signal is based. For example, if a responder signalled on a create story signal (`kNewStorySignalResponderService`) deletes or otherwise modifies the created story, commands, observers, and responders that might follow the errant responder could make assumptions about the state of the story. Avoid direct modifications that interfere with the data on which a responder is based. If such a change is required, consider using the responder to set an associated, independent state that can be used by an idle task (or similar) to perform the actual modification on the model. This technique guarantees the model is in a consistent state before modifications are made.

NOTE: A responder should check the global error state is `kSuccess` (`ErrorUtils::PMGetGlobalErrorCode`), before modifying the model.

Responders and global error state

Responders are designed to accommodate error; however, in practice, how a particular signal service deals with error state is implementation dependent.

NOTE: *If you set global error state in the `IResponder::Respond` method, thoroughly test all areas in the domain in which you are working.*

If a responder sets global error state, the signal manager calls all previously signalled responders via `IResponder::SignalFailed` and aborts the action. The ability to clean up a failed action is implementation and context dependent. For example, the creation of a text story object (`kTextStoryBoss`) can occur as a result of using the type text tool or importing a file. In the case of importing a file, the responder is called from a much deeper stack than in the case of using the type text tool. The implementation in the latter case does not handle aborting the import from a responder.

Another implication of the `IResponder::SignalFailed` method being called on error is the method must be able to consume and take remedial action for any errors caused within the method. There is nothing the application core can do if an `IResponder::SignalFailed` method itself fails; the condition is indeterminate.

Ordering of responders

No guarantees can be made about the order in which responders are called to react to an event. If a client requires a particular responder to be called before another, the implementation of the second responder should call `ISignalMgr::SignalResponder` (identifying the first responder) at the start of its `respond` method. Even though the signal manager's iteration of the responders has been short-circuited by calling one of the responders directly, no responder is called more than once.

Responders and undo

Responders for the predefined events made available by the application are *not* called at undo or redo of an operation.

If a responder processes commands to make follow-on changes to the model, these changes are undone automatically as part of an undo operation; the client code need to manage this. The same is true for redo of an operation.

If a responder is being used to attach an observer to a newly created model object, that observer must be detached on undo and reattached on redo. Similarly, if a responder is being used to detach an observer from a model object about to be deleted, that observer must be reattached on undo and detached on redo. To achieve this, the undo or redo actions need to be tracked using an *inval handler*. See the “Commands” chapter for a description of the inval handler extension pattern.

If the responder is being used for a non-model based activity (for example, keeping a log of specific operations), and the undo or redo actions need to be tracked, an inval handler again is required.

Key client APIs

Table 9 shows key client APIs for observers and responders

TABLE 9 Key client APIs for observers and responders

API		Note
Observers	IObserver	Client code mainly calls AutoAttach and AutoDetach to have an observer attach or detach automatically to or from the subject(s) of interest.
	ISubject	Client code mainly calls AttachObserver and DetachObserver methods to attach or detach an observer.
Responders	ISignalManager	If you are extending the application and need to signal new types of events to responders you will call the signal manager to perform the notification. Often this notification is performed by a custom command that you provide. Signal managers in the application use the default implementation, kSignalMgrImpl, provided by the API. This default implementation provides all functionality for the signal manager, it is unlikely that a third party developer would need to further specialize it.

Extension patterns

This section describes the mechanisms a plug-in can use to receive notification.

User-interface widget observer

Description

This observer is attached to the subject object for a user interface artifact and called on a user interface event, such as selection of a checkbox or activation of a button.

Architecture

To implement a user interface observer, follow these steps:

- Subclass the widget type you are creating (for example, `kDialogBoss` for dialogs), as described in the “User Interfaces” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.
- Provide an implementation for `IObserver`. The `AutoAttach` and `AutoDetach` methods should attach the observer to any sub-widgets (for example, all buttons on a dialog). Partial implementations exist; for example `CDialogObserver` for dialogs and `CWidgetObserver` for widgets.
- User interface widget observers register for regular notification. Implement the `IObserver::Update` method to react to the user interface state change.

See also

- The “User-Interface Fundamentals” chapter.
- The “User Interfaces” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.
- For sample code: `PictureIcon/PicIcoRollOverButtonObserver` and `WListBoxComposite/WLBCmpListBoxObserver`.

Model observer

Description

A model observer provides an extension point for when a persistent object supported by an application database supporting undo is updated.

Architecture

To implement a model observer, follow these steps:

- Determine the subject that is to be observed, the protocol to listen on, and the change of interest. See the “Notification” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.
- Determine which boss class in the object model will aggregate the observer. Commonly, the boss class that represents the object being observed is a good candidate (for example, aggregating the observer on the document if you are interested in changes to the document). If

the observer relates to multiple subjects (for example, attaching to all open documents), place the observer somewhere accessible from client code.

- Provide the implementation of `IObserver`, deriving from the `CObserver` partial implementation.
- Determine whether it is appropriate to implement the `AutoAttach` and `AutoDetach` methods. Generally, these methods can be used if the subject object to be observed is known within the scope of the observer (for example, if the subject is on the same boss object as the observer). If the `AutoAttach` and `AutoDetach` methods are implemented, client code still needs to call them to create the dependency between subject and observer. If these methods are not provided, client code needs to manage the dependency between subject and observer directly (through the `ISubject::AttachObserver` and `ISubject::DetachObserver` calls).
- Determine whether the subject object is maintained in a database that supports undo. If so, lazy notification is available.
- If lazy notification is available, determine the type of notification required. If the subject object represents a UID-based object from a database that supports undo/redo, lazy notification is available. If the observer does not need to track every change to an object within a sequence of changes (for example, the observer is used to keep information in a user interface panel up to date, and the panel needs to be updated just once, after all changes are applied), lazy notification can be used. If the observer needs to be aware of all changes to the object as they occur, use regular notification. When attaching the observer to the subject (either in the `AutoAttach`/`AutoDetach` methods or through client code), specify the notification type.
- If lazy notification is not available, register for regular notification.
- Provide implementations of the `IObserver::Update` and/or `IObserver::LazyUpdate` methods, as required.

See also

- [“Relating observers to subjects” on page 112](#)
- [“Determining the subject” on page 112](#)
- [“Regular and lazy notification” on page 106](#)
- For sample code showing a model observer using lazy notification: `CustomDataLink / CusDtLnkUITreeObserver`, `LinkWatcher / LnkWtchActiveContextObserver`, `PanelTreeView / PnlTrvTreeObserver`.
- For sample code showing a model observer using regular notification: `CustomDataLink/ CusDtLnkDocObserver`, `GoToLastTextEdit/GTTxtEdtNewDeleteStoryObserver`, `Link-Watcher/LnkWtchCacheManager`, and `PersistentList/PstLstDocObserver`.

Selection observer

Description

Selection observers provide an opportunity for client code to be called when there is a change in the active selection. For details, see the “Selection Observers” section in the “Selection” chapter.

See also

- “Selection Observers” section in the “Selection” chapter.
- For sample code: `TableAttributes/TblAttSelectionObserver`, `StrokeWeightMutator/StrMutSelectionObserver`, `BasicPersistInterface/BPISelectionObserver`, and `Persistent List/PstLstUISelectionObserver`.

Document observer

Description

As well as notifying a change on a subject, often the notification is repeated on the document for a subject. This allows observers to watch for a change of interest on a document (rather than attach/detach from every object within the document). For example, an observer interested in page items being moved around the layout does not need to attach to each page item (and detach if the page item is deleted, re-attaching if it is un-deleted, and so on), but attaches to the document instead.

A document observer is a special example of a model observer, using the document object (`kDocBoss`) as the subject.

See also

- [“Model observer” on page 120](#)
- For sample code: `CustomDataLink/CusDtLnkDocObserver`, `LinkWatcher LnkWtchCacheManager`, and `PersistentList/PstLstDocObserver`.

Active context observer

Description

A *context observer* is an observer that watches the active context.

Architecture

The active context object (`kActiveContextBoss`) is session wide and available from the session object (`kSessionBoss`) through the `ISession::GetActiveContext` call. An active context observer is an observer attached to the subject interface on the active context object. Active context notifications always are broadcast on the `IID_IACTIVECONTEXT` protocol. Only regular notification is available. The change context provided is another IID, indicating the type of

contextual change that occurred. The common contextual changes of interest are shown in [Table 10](#).

TABLE 10 *Types of context changes*

changedBy	Note
IID_IDOCUMENT	The active document changed.
IID_ICONTROLVIEW	The active layout view changed (for example, when the document has multiple layout views open).
IID_ISPREAD	The current spread changed.
IID_ISELECTIONMANAGER	The type of selection changed.

To implement a context observer, follow these steps:

- Aggregate an observer on a boss class accessible from client code.
- Provide implementations of `IObserver::AutoAttach` and `IObserver::AutoDetach` (attaching to the `ISubject` interface on the `kActiveContextBoss` accessible from the `GetExecutionContextSession()->GetActiveContext()` call).
- Provide an implementation of the `IObserver::Update` method. The protocol ID is `IID_IACTIVECONTEXT`.

[Example 16](#) shows how to detect when the active document has changed.

EXAMPLE 16 *How to detect the active document has changed*

```
void MyObs::Update(const ClassID& theChange, ISubject* iSubj, const PMMID&
    protocol, void* changedBy)
{
    if (protocol == IID_IACTIVECONTEXT){
        InterfacePtr<IActiveContext> context(iSubj, UseDefaultIID());
        IActiveContext::ContextInfo* info=
            (IActiveContext::ContextInfo*) changedBy;
        if(info->Key() == IID_IDOCUMENT){
            HandleDocumentChange(context);
        }
    }
}
```

See also

- For sample code: `LinkWatcher/LnkWtchActiveContextObserver`.

Subject

Description

If there is a need for a boss class to be observable, it needs to be a subject.

Architecture

To turn a boss class into a subject, follow these steps:

- Aggregate the ISubject interface onto the boss class.
- Provide the implementation for the interface. Generally, re-using the API-supplied implementation (kCSubjectImpl) is sufficient, and there should be no need for further specialization of this interface.

See also

- For sample code: PersistentList/kPstLstDataBoss.

Responder

Description

A responder provides notification of an event, such as document open.

Architecture

To implement a responder, follow these steps:

- Determine the event of interest (as described in the “Notification” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*).
- Aggregate the service provider interface (IK2ServiceProvider) on a boss class. Either re-use an existing implementation (see the “Notification” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*), or provide an implementation that defines the set of ServiceIDs for the events of interest.
- Aggregate the responder (IResponder) on the same boss class.
- Provide an implementation for the responder, derived from the CResponder partial implementation.

See also

- The “Notification” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*
- For sample code: DocWatch/DocWchResponder, CustomDataLink/CusDtLnkDocResponder, and BasicPersistInterface/BPIDefaultResponder.

Selection

This chapter describes the InDesign/InCopy selection architecture. The selection architecture is based on the concept of suites—abstract interfaces that allow client code to interact with an abstract selection. A suite remains neutral to the underlying format of the objects that are selected.

Concepts

Selection

A selection is whatever is chosen or picked out. For instance, when a user selects a range of text with the Text tool, the user chooses a range of characters. In this case, the selection is a choice of characters from the text model. Highlighting in the user interface is incidental feedback that helps the user make the intended selection. Usually, making a choice using selection is a precursor to modifying the properties of the model underlying the selection. Selection primarily is about targeting objects on which to perform some action, and the selection subsystem exists to mediate changes to those objects.

Selection format and target

It is necessary to distinguish between the format of a selection and its content, the selection target. A selection format describes the model format of a selectable object, like the layout (frames), text, table cells, or XML structure. Each of these has a distinct arrangement of objects that represents its model. A selection target specifies a set of selected objects of a given selection format, like particular frames or a specific range of text.

The principal goal of the selection subsystem is to hide all details about formats and targets from client code. Client code needs ask only, “Can this client code do this operation to the selection?” If yes, the client code can try to change the properties of the selection target. This encapsulation is achieved by means of the facade pattern discussed in [“Design patterns” on page 126](#).

InDesign 2.0 included support for a handful of selection formats, including layout objects (frames), text, table cells, and XML-structure items. InCopy CS added support for other selection formats, like notes. See [Table 11](#).

TABLE 11 Selection formats and their targets

Selection format	When obtained	Selection target
Application defaults	No documents are open.	Global preferences
Document defaults	Document is open with nothing selected.	Document preferences
Galley text	Insertion position is in text, or text range is chosen in Galley view.	Range of characters in a text model (ITextTarget)
Layout	One or more page items are chosen in a layout view.	Layout objects (see ILayoutTarget)
Note	Insertion position or text range is chosen in a note view.	Range of characters in note text (ITextTarget)
Story editor text	Insertion position is in text, or text range is chosen in a story-editor view.	Range of characters in a text model (ITextTarget)
Table (table cells)	One or more table cells are chosen in a layout view.	Table cells in a table model (ITableTarget)
Text	Insertion position is in text, or text range is chosen in a layout view.	Range of characters in a text model (ITextTarget)
XML structure	One or more nodes are chosen in an XML-structure view.	Elements/attributes in the XML structure (IXMLNodeTarget)

Design patterns

A key task for a plug-in developer is writing model code that extends some aspect of the document model. For instance, if your principal requirement is adding private data to the layout model (see the BasicPersistInterface sample plug-in), the data added extends the layout model and persists with document contents. The command pattern, used in the application API to support undo and preserve document integrity, requires you to write further code to change your model. The API already uses the facade pattern, like ITableCommands and IXMLElementCommands, to hide the complexity of parameterizing and processing low-level commands.

The selection architecture is an instance of the facade pattern, in that it makes client code easier to write by defining a high-level interface on top of the selection subsystem. The selection architecture shields client code from requiring detailed knowledge of what was selected in the selection subsystem. A facade also makes software maintenance easier, because a facade weakens the coupling between a subsystem and its clients. This weak coupling allows the subsystem components to be varied without necessarily affecting its clients.

Selection architecture

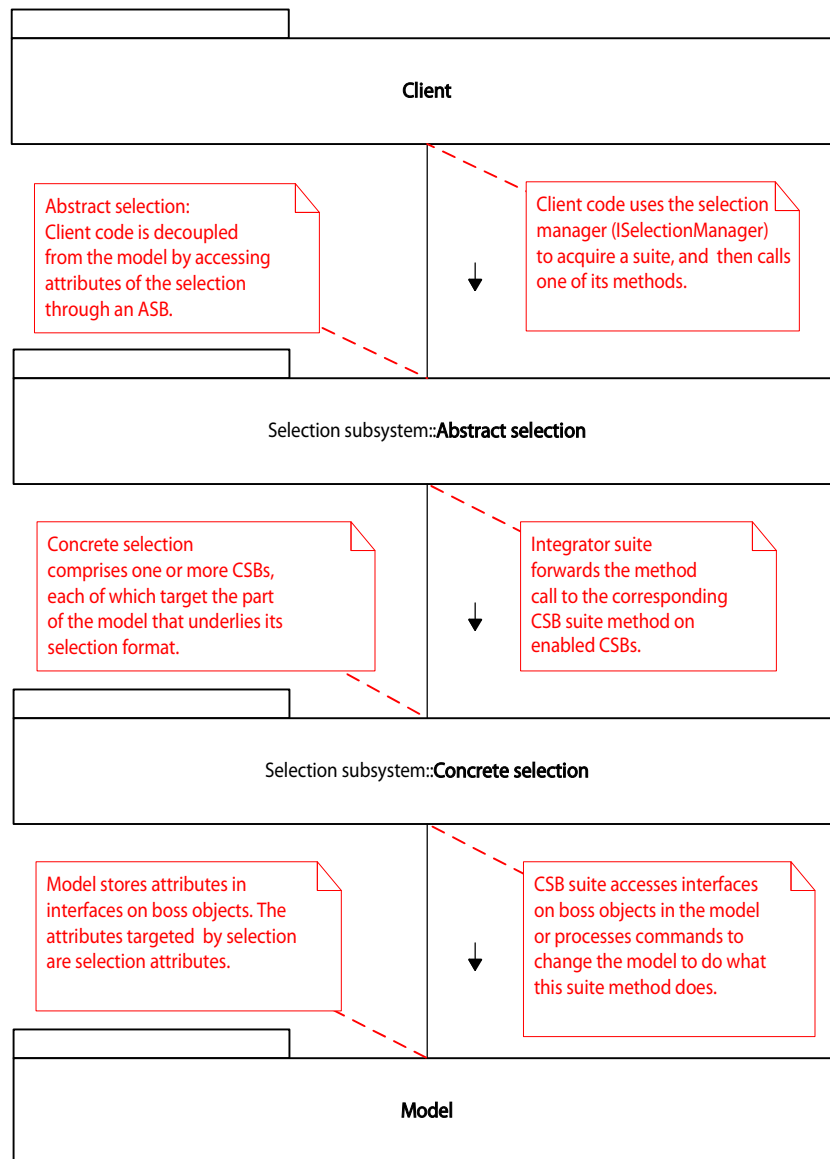
The most important objective of the selection architecture is to ensure that new selection formats can be added easily.

To support new selection formats without rewriting large parts of the application, client code must be de-coupled from the selection format. Client code must not need to know the selection's subject identifier, meaning client code must not need to know which objects are selected or any boss object associations in the underlying model (for example, the architecture of a text frame). Client code also must not need to know any commands that manipulate the objects.

To achieve this goal, the selection architecture makes extensive use of suites that are neutral to selection format. A suite provides a high-level, model-independent API that encapsulates the details of the boss classes, interfaces, and commands in the underlying model. Clients interact with suites instead of directly with the selected objects. In programming terms, a suite is a layer of abstraction that sits on top of the selection and provides a narrow API through which client code communicates its intent with respect to the portion of the model selected. In design-pattern terms, a suite represents a facade that makes it easier to write client code. Writing code that sits on the model-manipulation side requires an understanding of the selection architecture and the model.

[Figure 30](#) shows the layers of encapsulation in the selection architecture. Client code communicates through suites on an *abstract selection boss (ASB)* class. In turn, these suites communicate with *concrete selection boss (CSB)* suites on one or more CSB classes. The CSB suites deal with the selection format of only their CSB, and they know how to access and change objects only in the part of the model the CSB manipulates.

FIGURE 30 Layers of encapsulation

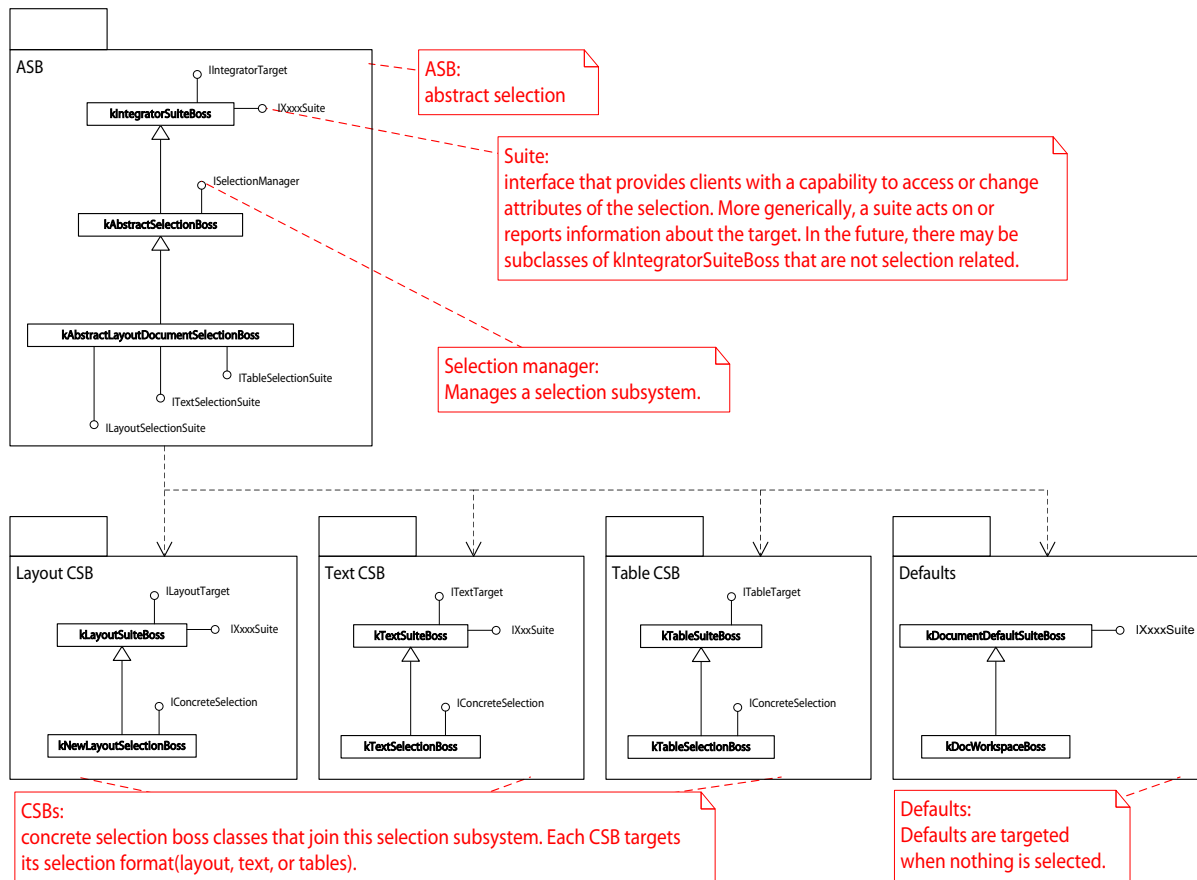


A window can have one or more views that can support selection. Each view that uses selection instantiates a selection subsystem. In general, client code can remain unaware of what selection subsystem is in operation. While software developers need to be concerned about selection formats if they are writing code that manipulates the model, there is less need to be concerned about selection subsystems. For more information about selection subsystems, see “[Selection architecture](#)” on page 127.

To write code that uses selection to choose attributes of the model to be displayed or changed, it is important to understand the structure that owns the selection format. To illustrate this, a schematic diagram of the selection subsystem used by the layout view (kLayoutWidgetBoss) to

edit design documents is shown in [Figure 31](#). It presents the static structure and highlights important boss classes and interfaces.

FIGURE 31 Selection subsystem used by layout view



The ASB provides the suites called by client code. In [Figure 31](#), interface `IXxxxSuite` illustrates such a capability. The suite implementation on the ASB is an integrator suite; its responsibilities are described in detail in [“Integrator suites” on page 142](#). For now, think of these suites as forwarding any calls they receive to corresponding suites on the CSBs. Further implementations of `IXxxxSuite` are provided on each CSB that supports the capability. These implementations are CSB suites; their role is discussed further in [“CSB suites” on page 142](#)

In [Figure 31](#), you can see that `IXxxxSuite` is implemented on the layout CSB and the text CSB. This means layout and text selections have its capability. Also, when nothing is selected, client code still has the capability represented by `IXxxxSuite`, because the ASB then targets defaults and finds an implementation of the suite on `kDocumentDefaultSuiteBoss`. For more information on how to use suites to manage preferences, see [“Selection architecture” on page 127](#). Table selections do not have the capability represented by `IXxxxSuite`, because there is no implementation of the suite on the table CSB.

`ISelectionManager` is the signature interface that identifies a boss class as an ASB. To obtain a suite, client code queries an `ISelectionManager` interface for the suite of interest. If the suite is available, its interface is returned; otherwise, `nil` is returned. The ASB is not a normal boss class; all suite interfaces are aggregated on the ASB, but an interface pointer is returned to client code only when an active CSB (or the default CSB) that supports the suite exists. The ASB uses a special implementation of `IPMUnknown` to control whether a query for an interface returns the interface or `nil`.

Suite implementations get added to suite boss classes. The following suite boss classes are in [Figure 31](#):

- `kDocumentDefaultSuiteBoss` for defaults
- `kIntegratorSuiteBoss` for the ASB
- `kLayoutSuiteBoss` for the layout CSB
- `kTableSuiteBoss` for the table CSB
- `kTextSuiteBoss` for the text CSB

A suite boss class has a target (like `IIntegratorTarget` or `ILayoutTarget`) and a collection of suite implementations. [Figure 31](#) shows how the selection extends the suite boss classes. Other boss classes extend the suite boss classes in different ways. For example, scripting uses the suite boss `kTextSuiteBoss` to manipulate text content.

Each box in [Figure 31](#) is a self-contained, portable unit. This is one reason why the selection architecture is not coupled to a view, and CSBs do not have pointers to their ASB. This design allows re-use of suite boss classes by other features in the future. A catalogue of suite boss classes is provided in [Table 22](#), in “Suite boss classes” on page 145.

Each selection format has a CSB that extends its suite boss class. `IConcreteSelection` is the signature interface that identifies a boss class as a CSB. Only those CSBs that join the selection subsystem used by the layout view are shown in the [Figure 31](#). Other CSBs exist and are used by other subsystems. For a complete list of all CSBs, see the API reference documentation for `IConcreteSelection`. To understand more about the responsibilities of a CSB, see “Concrete selection bosses” on page 131.

Also, the ASB supports a set of interfaces that allows the selection content to be set programmatically. `ISelectionManager` provides the ability to select/deselect all objects. Each selection format provides an interface to allow the selection target to be varied. In [Figure 31](#), for example, `ILayoutSelectionSuite` allows page items to be selected, and `ITextSelectionSuite` allows text to be selected.

Abstract selection bosses and suites

The selection architecture isolates client code from model code by means of an ASB. The ASB provides suite interfaces, which are collections of capabilities, as well as other interfaces needed for managing the selection. The main point to understand about the ASB is that it implements the facade for the selection subsystem. Client code interacts with the facade (a suite on the

ASB). Writing client code to take advantage of the selection architecture is straightforward; you need to understand only the facade. To write model code and code to change your model or the existing document model, however, it is important to understand how to interact fully within the selection subsystem, and this is less straightforward.

The client code in [Example 17](#) uses a parameter to determine the selection manager (ISelectionManager) to use by calling IActiveContext::GetContextSelection. The client code then queries for the suite of interest, IFooSuite. If the suite is available, the client checks to see if the capability it wants is enabled by calling IFooSuite::CanDoSomething. If so, the client uses the capability on the selection by calling IFooSuite::DoSomething. If someone were to create a new selection format and add support for IFooSuite, this client code would work. It does not need to know any details of how IFooSuite is implemented on any specific selection format.

EXAMPLE 17 Client code using the selection architecture

```
void FooActionComponent::DoAction(IActiveContext* ac, ActionID actionID...)
{
    ...
    InterfacePtr<IFooSuite> iFooSuite(ac->GetContextSelection(), UseDefaultIID());
    if (iFooSuite != nil && iFooSuite->CanDoSomething()) {
        iFooSuite->DoSomething();
    }
    ...
}
```

In most cases, either client code is passed a parameter that identifies the selection manager to query for a suite, or the selection manager is implied by the kind of code being written.

Concrete selection bosses

A CDB is a boss class that encapsulates a selection format. It supports the manipulation and observation of the selected objects in the part of the model where the objects are located.

This section describes the available selection formats and their associated CSB. The key properties of each CSB are tabulated. [Table 12](#) describes the label for each field.

TABLE 12 CSB description legend

Label	Specifies
CSB	The boss class that represents this concrete selection.
CSB name	The name of the CSB that represents this concrete selection.
Description	A general description of this concrete selection.

Label	Specifies
Selection attribute extensibility	Indicates whether this concrete selection can be extended to notify of changes to new selection attributes introduced by third-party software developers. Each CSB is responsible for defining the mechanism used to call selection extensions when selection attributes change. Some CSBs allow the mechanism to be extended. See “Selection extensions” on page 146 and “Selection observers” on page 147 .
Selection format	The format of the objects this concrete selection makes selectable.
Selection suite	The interface that can specify the set of objects selected for this concrete selection.
Suite boss class	The boss class to which suites get added that extend the attributes that can be manipulated by this concrete selection. A list of all suites supported by the CSB is in the documentation for this boss class. Custom suites get added to the suite boss class.
Target	The interface that identifies the set of objects selected for this concrete selection.

Layout selection

Layout selections—made with the Selection tool or programmatically—are represented by the layout CSB. For examples of the suites available, see `IGeometrySuite`, `ITransformSuite`, and `IGraphicAttributeSuite`. For a complete list of available suites, see the API reference documentation for `kLayoutSuiteBoss`. Also see [Figure 32](#) and [Table 13](#).

FIGURE 32 *Layout selection containing a page item*

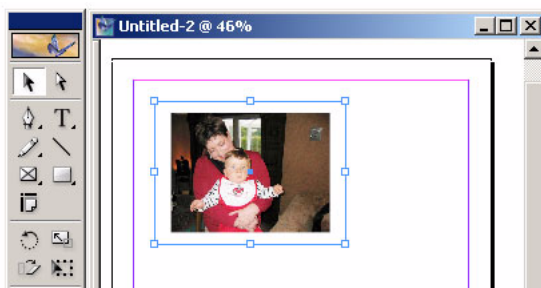


TABLE 13 *Layout-selection CSB*

CSB Name	Layout CSB
Selection format	Layout objects like frames and other kinds of page items.
CSB	<code>kNewLayoutSelectionBoss</code> .

Suite boss class	kLayoutSuiteBoss.
Target	ILayoutTarget.
Selection suite	ILayoutSelectionSuite.
Selection attribute extensibility	Extensible. The CSB has a shared observer attached to the document's subject (kDocBoss). Selection extensions define CreateObserverProtocolCollection to extend the protocols that are attached. Selection extensions define SelectionAttributeChanged to handle change broadcasts.

Table selection

Table selections—made with the Type tool or programmatically—are represented by the table CSB. For an example of a suite, see ITableSuite. For a complete list of available suites, see the API reference documentation for kTableSuiteBoss. Also see [Figure 33](#) and [Table 14](#).

FIGURE 33 Table selection containing table cells

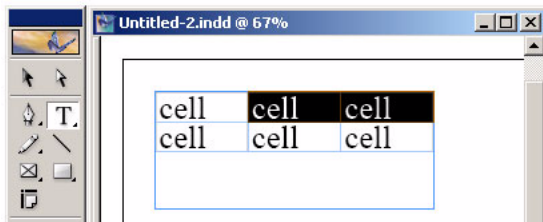


TABLE 14 Table-selection CSB

CSB Name	Table CSB
Selection format	Table cells.
CSB	kTableSelectionBoss.
Suite boss class	kTableSuiteBoss.
Target	ITableTarget.
Selection suite	ITableSelectionSuite.
Selection attribute extensibility	Extensible. The CSB has a cell focus (ICellFocus) that monitors table-attribute changes in the selection. Changes to custom table attributes also are detected by this CSB. Also, the CSB has a shared observer attached to the document's subject (kDocBoss). Selection extensions define CreateObserverProtocolCollection to extend the protocols that are attached. Selection extensions define SelectionAttributeChanged to handle change broadcasts.

Text selection

Text selections in the Layout view—made with the Type tool or programmatically—are represented by the text CSB. Text selection take one of two principal forms, a selected range of characters in a story (TextRange) or an insertion point within a story (represented by a TextRange with zero span). Although it may not seem intuitive that an insertion point is considered a text selection, it is considered a selection from the viewpoint of selection management.

NOTE: Other views use other CSBs to represent text selection.

For examples of the suites available, see ITextEditSuite and ITextAttributeSuite. For a complete list of available suites, see the API reference documentation for kTextSuiteBoss. Also see [Figure 34](#), [Figure 35](#), and [Table 15](#).

FIGURE 34 Text selection containing a tange of characters

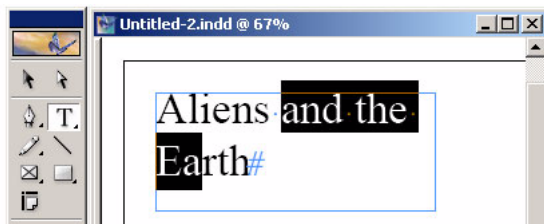


FIGURE 35 Text selection containing an insertion point

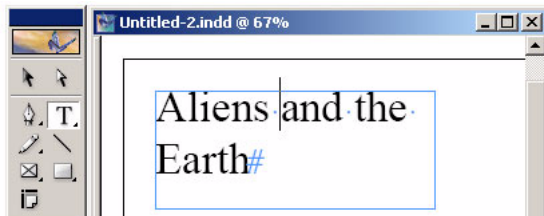


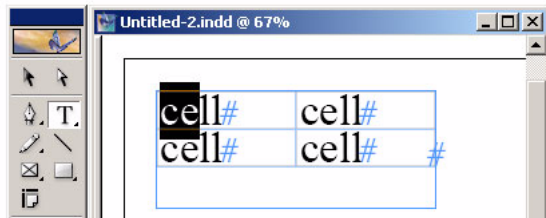
TABLE 15 Text-selection CSB

CSB name	Text CSB.
Selection format	Text.
CSB	kTextSelectionBoss.
Suite boss class	kTextSuiteBoss.
Target	ITextTarget.
Selection suite	ITextSelectionSuite.

Selection attribute extensibility	Extensible. The CSB has a text focus (ITextFocus) on kTextSelectionFocusBoss that monitors text-attribute changes; this picks up changes to custom text attributes. Also, the CSB has a shared observer attached to the document's subject (kDocBoss). Selection extensions define CreateObserverProtocolCollection to extend the protocols that are attached. Selection extensions define SelectionAttributeChanged to handle change broadcasts.
-----------------------------------	---

Figure 36 shows a text selection in a table cell. Although the selection is inside a table, this is a text selection and *not* a table selection. The selected text is indicated by the ITextTarget target interface. The table implied by this selection is indicated by ITableTarget, a secondary targeting interface provided by text selection.

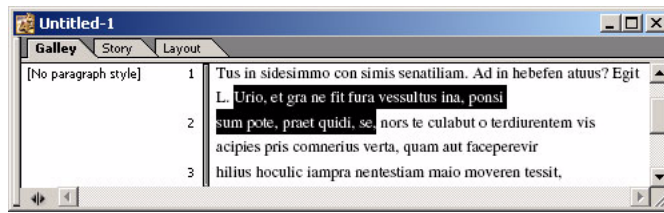
FIGURE 36 Text selection in a table cell



Galley text selection

Text selections in the galley view—made with the Type tool or programmatically—are represented by the galley-text CSB. The galley-text CSB represents text selection made in a galley view window.

Text selection uses many subsystems. For the most part, client code can remain unaware of what subsystem is in operation, but suite developers need to know, because the CSB that supports text selection in the galley view is different than the one that supports it in the layout view. If you do not add your suite to the appropriate suite boss class, your suite might not be available when you want it. In most cases, the same suite implementation can be re-used. For an example of a suite that is available, see ITextEditSuite. For a complete list of available suites, see the API reference documentation for kGalleyTextSuiteBoss. Also see Figure 37 and Table 16.

FIGURE 37 Galley text selection containing a range of characters**TABLE 16** Galley text-selection CSB

CSB name	Galley text CSB.
Selection format	Galley text.
CSB	kGalleyTextSelectionBoss.
Suite boss class	kGalleyTextSuiteBoss.
Target	ITextTarget.
Selection suite	ITextSelectionSuite.
Selection attribute extensibility	Limited extensibility. The CSB has a text focus (ITextFocus) on kTextSelectionFocusBoss, which monitors text-attribute changes. Changes to custom text attributes are picked up by this.

Story-editor text selection

The story editor is available in InDesign and InCopy.

Text selections by the story editor are similar to galley text selection. The story-editor CSB extends the galley-text CSB, and both share the same suite boss class, kGalleyTextSuiteBoss. For an example of a suite that is available, see ITextEditSuite. For a complete list of available suites, see the API reference documentation for kGalleyTextSuiteBoss. Also see [Figure 38](#), [Figure 39](#), and [Table 17](#).

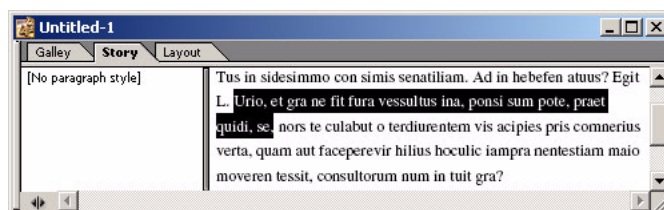
FIGURE 38 Story-editor text selection in InCopy

FIGURE 39 Story-editor text selection in InDesign

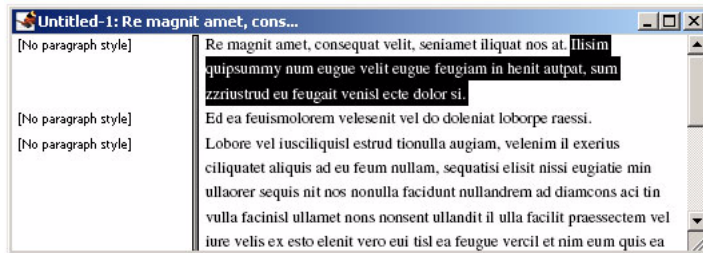


TABLE 17 Story-editor text-selection CSB

CSB name	Story-editor text CSB.
Selection format	Story editor text.
CSB	kStoryEditorSelectionBoss.
Suite boss class	kGalleyTextSuiteBoss.
Target	ITextTarget.
Selection suite	ITextSelectionSuite.
Selection attribute extensibility	Limited extensibility. The CSB has a text focus (ITextFocus) on kTextSelectionFocusBoss, which monitors text attribute changes. Changes to custom text attributes are also picked up by this.

Note text selection

When text is selected in a note, the CSB involved is not the same as the one used for normal text selection. The note-text CSB represents text selection made in a note. For an example of a suite that is available, see INoteSuite. For the complete list of available suites, see the API reference documentation for kNoteTextSuiteBoss. Also see [Figure 40](#) and [Table 18](#).

FIGURE 40 Note selection

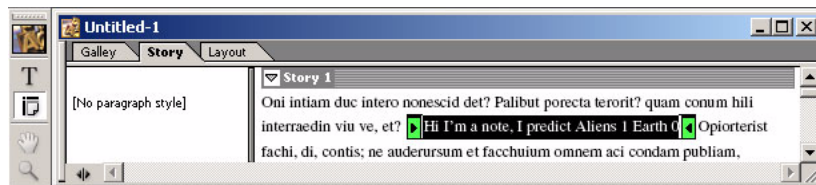


TABLE 18 Note text-selection CSB

CSB name	Note text CSB.
----------	----------------

Selection format	Note text.
CSB	kNoteTextSelectionBoss.
Suite boss class	kNoteTextSuiteBoss.
Target	ITextTarget.
Selection suite	ITextSelectionSuite.
Selection attribute extensibility	Limited extensibility. The CSB has a text focus (ITextFocus) on kTextSelectionFocusBoss, which monitors text attribute changes. Changes to custom text attributes are also picked up by this.

XML selection

XML selections in the structure view (the left panel of [Figure 41](#))—made with the Selection tool or programmatically—are represented by the XML CSB. There is a selection subsystem associated with the XML structure view that is distinct from the selection subsystem associated with the layout view, even though both views are displayed in the same window. Do not confuse XML selection with the XML tags shown in the layout view (the right panel of [Figure 41](#)). For examples of suites that are available, see IXMLStructureSuite and IXMLTagSuite. For a complete list of available suites, see the documentation for kXMLStructureSuiteBoss. Also see [Figure 41](#) and [Table 19](#).

FIGURE 41 XML node selections in XML-structure view

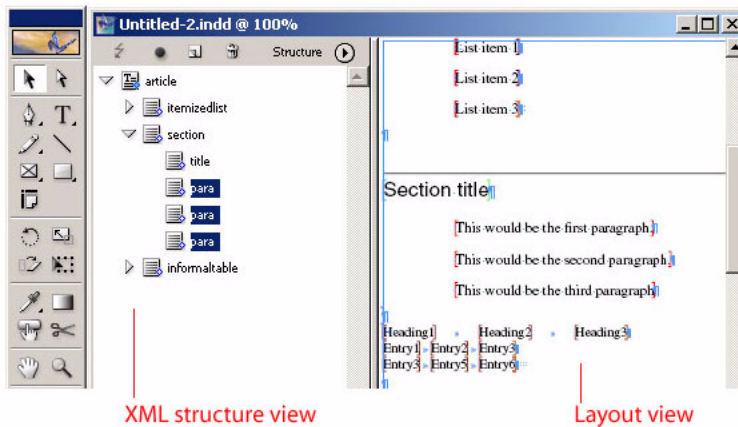


TABLE 19 XML-selection CSB

CSB name	XML CSB
Selection format	XML node (element, attribute, or both)
CSB	kXMLStructureSelectionBoss



Suite boss class	kXMLStructureSuiteBoss
Target	IXMLNodeTarget
Selection suite	IXMLNodeSelectionSuite
Selection attribute extensibility	Not extensible.

Document defaults

When a document is open but nothing is selected, the document workspace (kDocWorkspaceBoss) becomes the selection subsystem’s target. For more information, see “[Selection architecture](#)” on page 127. Also see [Figure 42](#) and [Table 20](#).

FIGURE 42 Document defaults: open document with no selection

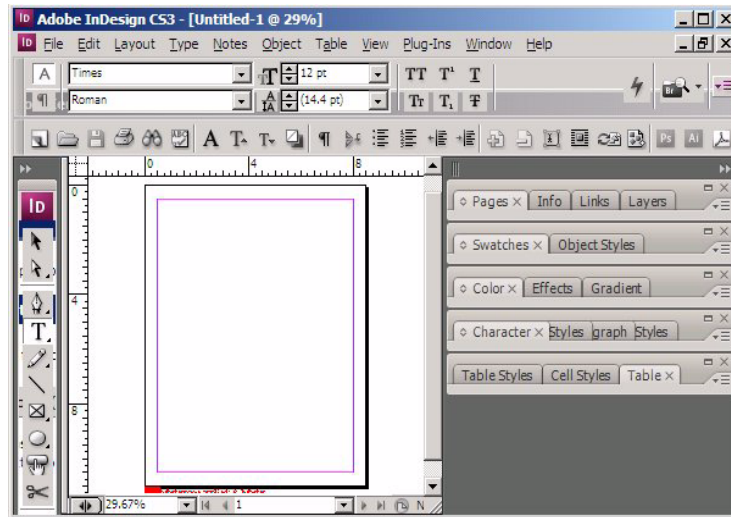


TABLE 20 Document-defaults CSB

CSB name	Defaults.
Selection format	Preferences maintained as data interfaces on kDocWorkspaceBoss.
CSB	kDocWorkspaceBoss. (Strictly speaking, this is not a CSB, because it does not aggregate IConcreteSelection; however, kDocWorkspaceBoss often is referred to as the defaults CSB.)
Suite boss class	kDocumentDefaultSuiteBoss.
Target	NA
Selection suite	NA
Selection attribute extensibility	Extensible. The CSB has a shared observer attached to the document workspace’s subject (kDocWorkspaceBoss). Selection extensions define CreateObserverProtocolCollection to extend the protocols that are attached. Selection extensions define SelectionAttributeChanged to handle change broadcasts.

Application defaults

When no document is open, a special selection subsystem (the workspace selection, `kAbstractWorkspaceSelectionBoss`) is activated. It targets application-wide defaults on `kWorkspaceBoss`. For more information, see “[Selection architecture](#)” on [page 127](#). Also see [Figure 43](#) and [Table 21](#).

FIGURE 43 Application defaults: no document open

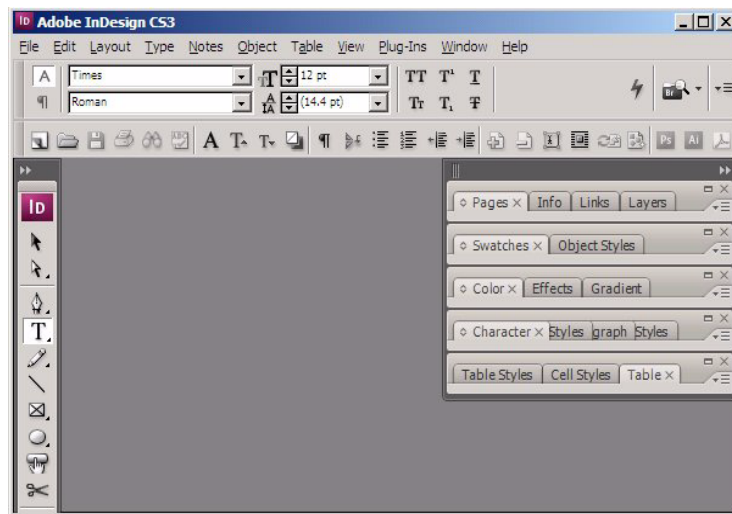


TABLE 21 Application-defaults CSB

CSB name	Defaults.
Selection format	Preferences maintained as data interfaces on <code>kWorkspaceBoss</code> .
CSB	<code>kWorkspaceBoss</code> . (Strictly speaking, <code>kWorkspaceBoss</code> is not a CSB, because it does not aggregate <code>IConcreteSelection</code> ; however, <code>kWorkspaceBoss</code> often is referred to as the defaults CSB.)
Suite boss class	<code>kApplicationDefaultSuiteBoss</code> .
Target	NA
Selection suite	NA
Selection attribute extensibility	Extensible. The CSB has a shared observer attached to the session workspace’s subject (<code>kWorkspaceBoss</code>). Selection extensions define <code>CreateObserverProtocolCollection</code> to extend the protocols that are attached. Selection extensions define <code>SelectionAttributeChanged</code> to handle change broadcasts.

Integrator suites

An integrator suite is an implementation of a suite that was added to `kIntegratorSuiteBoss`, which is part of an ASB. Consequently, an integrator suite sometimes is known as an ASB suite. All communication between client code and the selection is performed using the integrator suite. A properly designed suite API is neutral to selection format, meaning there are no references to a specific selection format. This is essential to avoid tight coupling between the client code and the model.

The purpose of an integrator suite is to iterate over the concrete-selection formats supported by the suite or, more formally, to integrate over the integrator target (represented by `IIntegratorTarget`). Although it may seem that “iterator” may be a more appropriate name, “integrator” is correct in this context, because it means “to join together.” In the mathematical sense, “integrate” also can refer to summation, and the integrator suite performs a summation over the capabilities of individual selection-format-specific suites.

The implementation of an integrator suite is very stereotypical; it delegates any call to CSB suites on CSBs that are active (i.e., on CSBs that have a selection). Integrator-suite implementations should be based on templates provided by the SDK. The templates reduce the amount of code you need to write.

An example of an integrator suite is the `kTableSuiteIntegratorImpl` implementation of `ITableSuite` on `kIntegratorSuiteBoss`. Both text (`kTextSuiteBoss`) and table selections (`kTableSuiteBoss`) provide support for `ITableSuite`. The client code is shielded from the selection format that is providing the implementation. Integrator suite calls are forwarded to the selection-format-specific implementations on the CSB suites.

CSB suites

A CSB suite is a suite implementation on a CSB. CSB suites receive calls forwarded from integrator suites when they are called by client code.

CSB suites exist to do model-specific work, like navigating relationships between objects in the model and processing of commands. When you manipulate the model from within a CSB suite, you interact with objects in a specific selection format (e.g., by means of target interfaces like `ITextTarget` or `ILayoutTarget`). There are several CSBs that extend suite-boss classes; for example, `kTextSelectionBoss` subclasses `kTextSuiteBoss`. For a complete list of CSBs, see the API reference documentation for the `IConcreteSelection` interface, from which you can examine the documentation page for each CSB to see which suite boss it extends.

Encapsulation

A key concept in the selection architecture is that client code should be insulated from code that accesses and modifies the model (both the document and associated data). Code that works in terms of UID, UIDRef, or UIDList values that relate to stories (kTextStoryBoss objects) or layout objects (for example, something that exposes an IGraphicFrameData interface) interacts with a portion of the document model.

A selection of objects that is represented, for example, as a UIDList (as would have been the case in the old selection architecture) is tightly coupled to the model. Such tight coupling makes it very difficult to add new selection formats, because client code already has detailed knowledge about what is in a selection. Also, with such tight coupling, you cannot change the way in which the model is represented without breaking client code, because the client code has detailed model knowledge.

To add new selection formats, the client code needs to be de-coupled from the selection formats. This means client code should be neutral with respect to selection format when dealing with the selection. The client code communicates by means of ASB suites. These suites, in turn, communicate with CSB suites. The CSB suites deal only with the model format of their CSB; they do not even know about the ASB. This is necessary because an alternative use for suites is scripting, which most likely does not have an analog to the ASB.

Suites and the user interface: an example

In the StrokeWeightMutator sample plug-in, the stroke-weight drop-down widget is enabled when the stroke weight of whatever is selected can be changed. These steps are followed:

1. The widget looks for the API's stroke attribute suite (IStrokeAttributeSuite).
2. If the suite is available, a CSB (the one with something selected or the defaults, if nothing is selected) has an implementation of the suite.
3. The widget asks the integrator suite on the ASB whether the stroke-weight attribute is available, by calling IStrokeAttributeSuite::GetStrokeWeightCount.
4. The integrator-suite implementation on the ASB forwards the call to the CSB-suite implementations.
5. The CSB implementation accesses the model for the selection format it supports and returns the answer.
6. The widget then calls IStrokeAttributeSuite::GetStrokeWeight to retrieve the value if applicable.

When the widget handles a user click to change the stroke weight, the widget calls IStrokeAttributeSuite::ApplyStrokeWeight on the integrator suite to dispatch to the CSB suites, which change the value stored in the model. The widget synchronizes what it displays with any

changes to the selection using a selection observer. It is sent a message when the stroke weights displayed in the widget need to be refreshed. (See [“Selection observers” on page 147.](#))

Responsibilities

Basic client-code responsibilities

If you are writing client code that modifies the properties of an abstract selection and can use a pre-existing suite, your responsibilities are minor. Query the selection manager (ISelectionManager) that represents the abstract selection for the suite you want (like ITextAttributeSuite to change properties of text in a selection) and, if you get the suite, use it. Look for a code fragment showing these responsibilities for the ITextMiscellanySuite suite.

You must understand how to query the abstract selection for a particular capability. To understand what suites are provided by the API, see the API reference documentation and examine the boss classes that aggregate ITextMiscellanySuite, to see the selection formats that support this particular capability.

Selection-observer responsibilities

If you are writing code that needs to update when the selection changes, implement a selection observer (see [“Selection observers” on page 147.](#)) If there is a pre-existing suite that informs your client code of the changes you are interested in, your selection observer looks for messages from this suite. For example, ITextAttributeSuite notifies clients when a text-attribute change happens to the selection. Otherwise, implement a custom suite to inform client code about the changes of interest (see [“Custom suites” on page 145.](#))

Custom-suite responsibilities

If you have any client code that depends on the state of the selection, write a custom suite to access that state. For example, the BasicMenu sample implements a custom suite because it has menu items that need to know whether a page item is selected. A suite is required because the client code needs to access a selection target interface to determine whether a page item is selected.

If you are writing code that changes the existing document model (for example, you are implementing or processing commands that change this model), and you want to use selection to target the objects, you must create a suite.

If you are writing code that extends the document model (for example, you are adding a custom data interface to the layout model, like BasicPersistInterface), and you want to use selection to target the manipulation of this data, you must create a suite.

The model also extends to default preferences; changes to the application’s default preferences and the document default preferences can be mediated by the selection subsystem.

Custom suites

When writing a custom suite that you want to make available to client code in one or more selection formats, provide two implementations, one relating to abstract selections and another to concrete selections. The former (see “[Integrator suites](#)” on page 142) is added to the `kIntegratorSuiteBoss` suite boss class, and the latter (see “[CSB suites](#)” on page 142) is added to the selection-format-specific suite boss classes. For details about the selection formats that can be of interest to client code, see “[Concrete selection bosses](#)” on page 131. [Table 22](#) lists suite boss classes.

TABLE 22 Suite boss classes

Suite boss class	Selection format	Rationale
<code>kApplicationDefaultSuiteBoss</code>	Application defaults	If you want your suite to be available to client code when no documents are open, add the suite to this boss class.
<code>kDocumentDefaultSuiteBoss</code>	Document defaults	If you want your suite to be available to client code when a document is open but nothing is selected, add the suite to this boss class.
<code>kGalleyTextSuiteBoss</code>	Text in InCopy Galley or Story Editor views (<code>ITextTarget</code>)	If you want your suite to be available to client code during galley- or story-editor-view text selections, add the suite to this boss class.
<code>kIntegratorSuiteBoss</code>	Abstract (<code>IIntegratorTarget</code>)	Required for any custom suite.
<code>kLayoutSuiteBoss</code>	Layout (<code>ILayoutTarget</code>)	If you want your suite to be available to client code during layout selections, add the suite to this boss class.
<code>kNoteTextSuiteBoss</code>	Text in InCopy Note (<code>ITextTarget</code>)	If you want your suite to be available to client code during note selections, add the suite to this boss class.
<code>kSelectionInterfaceAlwaysActiveBoss</code>		If you want your suite to be available to client code regardless of the kind of concrete selection that exists, add the suite to this boss class.
<code>kStoryEditorSuiteBoss</code>	Text in Story Editor view (<code>ITextTarget</code>)	(Not supported.) If you want the story editor suite to be different from that for InCopy Galley view, add the suite to this boss class.
<code>kTableSuiteBoss</code>	Tables (<code>ITableTarget</code>)	If you want your suite to be available to client code during table selections, add the suite to this boss class.

Suite boss class	Selection format	Rationale
kTextSuiteBoss	Text (ITextTarget)	If you want your suite to be available to client code during text selections, add the suite to this boss class.
kXMLStructureSuiteBoss	XML structure, (IXMLNodeTarget)	If you want your suite to be available to client code during XML selections, add the suite to this boss class.

Selection extensions

A selection extension (ISelectionExtension) is a bridge between a suite implementation with an unknown interface and the selection architecture. A suite that requires advanced function registers a selection extension with the selection subsystem. The selection subsystem then communicates with the extension, which in turn forwards a message to the suite implementation. If your suite requires one or more of the services described in this section, you must implement a selection extension.

Caches

A suite may need to cache data to improve performance. You can add caches to suite implementations. In general, caches are added to CSB suite implementations. Cache validation should be delayed as long as possible. Rather than updating the cache every time a model change occurs, declare a Boolean cacheValid flag. When the model changes, set the flag to kFalse. Before accessing the cache, rebuild it if it is invalid. Thus, if your suite provides data to a user-interface panel and that panel is not visible, your suite does not needlessly consume CPU cycles recalculating cache values the user does not need.

Furthermore, caches should be enabled only on CSB boss classes, not suite boss classes. Because the scripting architecture extends suite boss classes, no caching should be done on them. If you are implementing a custom suite that needs a cache, add your cache interface only to the CSB. IConcreteSelection is the signature interface that identifies a boss class as a CSB. Your custom suite implementation can then perform a run-time check to see if your cache interface is available. If not, it can handle this situation gracefully and carry on without using the cache.

Selection change notification

The design of some suites requires notification of selection changes. A selection extension allows your suite to be called by a CSB whenever the selection changes. A selection extension allows you to control whether clients of your suite—in the form of selection observers—get notified. (See section [“Selection observers”](#) on page 147.)

There are two kinds of selection change events:

- An object is added to or removed from the selection (that is, the selection changes); for example, a user Shift-clicks to add a frame to the selection.
- An attribute of an object in the selection changes (that is, a selection attribute changes); for example, the stroke color of selected frames changes.

A suite that has a cache must mark its cache as invalid when notified the selection has changed. A suite needs to invalidate its cache when notified that a selection attribute changed only if the specific selection-attribute change affects this suite's cache. Many selection-attribute changes may not affect a particular cache.

NOTE: Selection-attribute change notification is not supported on all CSBs. For information on each CSB, see [“Concrete selection bosses” on page 131](#).

Initialization

Some suites need to perform an action on start-up or shut-down of a selection subsystem. Any such initialization is done by implementing a selection extension. Do not confuse this kind of start-up and shut-down with application services, like `IStartupShutdownService`, which are called for the application session. Selection subsystems get created and destroyed as the views that own them open and close.

Communication with Integrator suite

Rarely, a CSB implementation needs to communicate with its integrator. Because there is no pointer on the CSB back to the integrator, a messaging system was created: `IConcreteSelection::BroadcastToIntegratorSuite`.

Selection observers

As described in [“Selection change notification” on page 146](#), there are two kinds of selection change event: selection-changed event and selection-attribute-changed event. A selection observer (`ActiveSelectionObserver`) is the abstraction that allows client code to be called when a selection-changed event occurs. For more information, see the `SelectionObserver.h` header file.

Suites that need to communicate extra data to selection observers during the selection-changed event implement a selection extension. Suites that need to include information about a selection-attribute-changed event also implement a selection extension. (See [“Selection extensions” on page 146](#).)

When a selection-changed event occurs, a selection observer's `ActiveSelectionObserver::HandleSelectionChanged` member method is called. On receiving this call, an observer can take action. For example, the observer can update some data displayed in a user-interface widget.

Optionally, before taking action, the observer can examine the message parameter (*ISelectionMessage*) and look for extra data placed there by a suite.

When a selection-attribute-changed event occurs, a selection observer's *ActiveSelectionObserver::HandleSelectionAttributeChanged* member method is called. On receiving this call, an observer must call *ISelectionMessage::WasSuiteAffected* before taking action. There are many kinds of selection attributes, and they can be given meaning only by the CSB suite. It examines the broadcast from the selection format that changed (originating from a command notification that the model was updated), then passes a model-independent message about the change to selection observers. A selection observer may be called when *any* attribute of the selected objects changes, so a selection observer can receive messages that do not affect it. The selection observer must filter these calls, so it does not needlessly take action and waste CPU cycles. For sample code, see *BasicPersistInterface*.

Selection-utility interface (*ISelectionUtils*)

A utility interface for selection (*ISelectionUtils*) is provided on *kUtilsBoss*. For detailed information on the member methods, see the API reference documentation for *ISelectionUtils*.

Some member methods provided by *ISelectionUtils* allow you to access the active selection. *Most client code does not need to depend on the active selection*, because client code normally is given access to the selection manager to use. If you want the active selection, *ISelectionUtils::GetActiveSelection* returns the selection manager from the active context. There also are other member methods, like *QueryActiveLayoutSelectionSuite* and *QueryActiveTextSelectionSuite*, that depend on the active selection manager; these should be used only by client code that needs to work with the active selection.

Layout Fundamentals

This chapter describes the features and supporting architecture of the layout subsystem, as well as how a client can use these features and the layout-related extension patterns in the InDesign API.

For use cases related to layout, see the “Layout” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Terminology

See the “Glossary” for definitions of terms. [Table 23](#) lists terms used in this chapter and sections that relate to them.

TABLE 23 Terminology

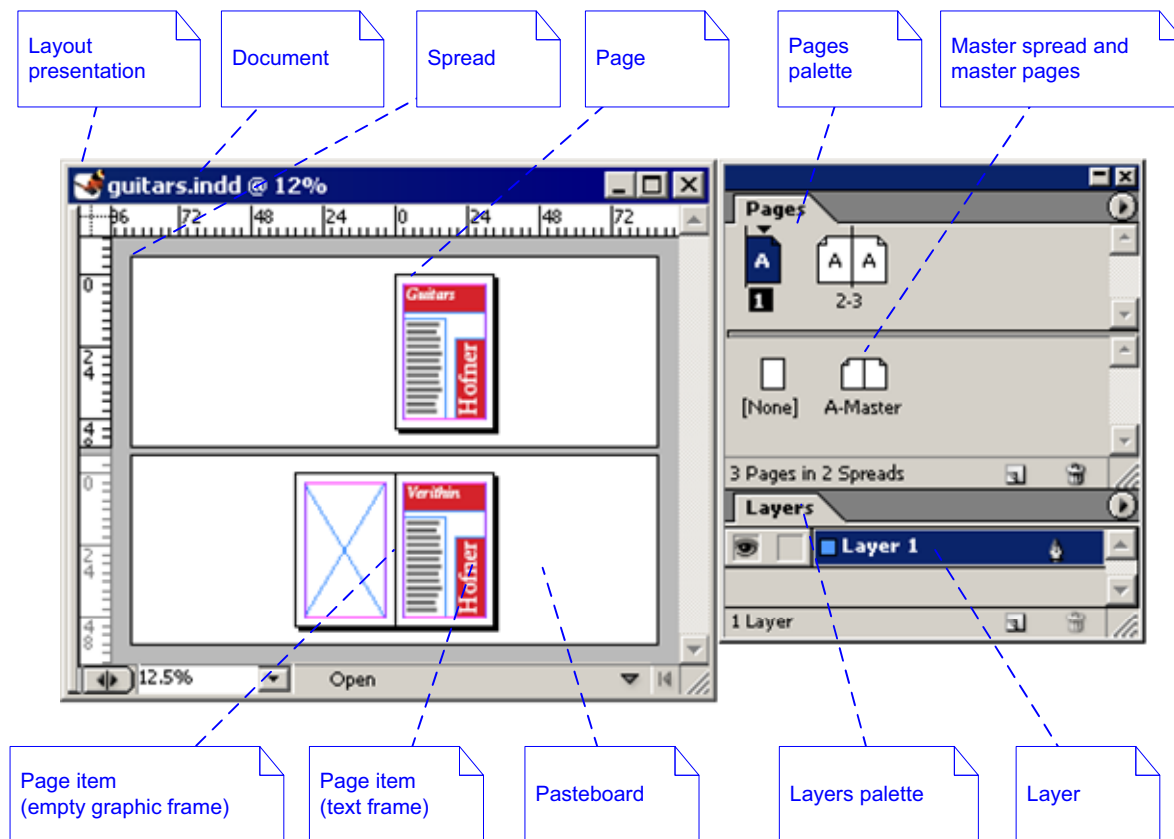
Term	See ...
Bounding box	“Bounding box and IGeometry” on page 190
Child	“Parent and child objects and IHierarchy” on page 155
Content page item	“Page items” on page 173
Current spread	“Current spread and active layer” on page 197
Document	“Documents and the layout hierarchy” on page 152 and “Spreads and pages” on page 157
Document layer	“Layers” on page 161
Frame	“Frames and paths” on page 173
Front document	“The layout presentation and view” on page 194
Front view	“The layout presentation and view” on page 194
Geometric page item	“Coordinate systems” on page 183
Graphic frame	“Frames and paths” on page 173
Graphic page item	“Graphic page items” on page 177
Group	“Groups” on page 178
Guide	“Guides and grids” on page 180
Layer	“Documents and the layout hierarchy” on page 152 and “Layers” on page 161
Layout hierarchy	“Spreads and pages” on page 157
Layout view	“Layout view” on page 196

Term	See ...
Layout presentation	“The layout presentation and view” on page 194
Master page, Master spread	“Documents and the layout hierarchy” on page 152 and “Master spreads and master pages” on page 168
Page	“Documents and the layout hierarchy” on page 152 and “Master spreads and master pages” on page 168
Page item	“Documents and the layout hierarchy” on page 152 and “Page items” on page 173
Pages layer	“Spreads and pages” on page 157
Parent	“Parent and child objects and IHierarchy” on page 155
Path	“Frames and paths” on page 173
Publication	“Spreads and pages” on page 157
Spread	“Documents and the layout hierarchy” on page 152 and “Spreads and pages” on page 157
Spread layer	“Layers” on page 161
Text frame	“Frames and paths” on page 173
Text page item	“Text page items” on page 177
Transformation matrix	“Transformation matrices” on page 183

Concepts

[Figure 44](#) shows a facing-pages publication with three pages arranged over two spreads. The document is presented for edit in the layout presentation. The Pages panel is used to edit the spreads and pages, including the master spreads and master pages. The Layers panel is used to edit the layers.

FIGURE 44 Layout concepts



Some basic terms are given below. A full layout-related glossary is in “Terminology” on page 149.

- *Document* — An InDesign document, unless otherwise stated.
- *Layer* — The abstraction that controls whether objects in a document are displayed and printed and whether they can be edited. A layer can be shown or hidden, locked or unlocked, arranged in front-to-back drawing order, etc. A page item is assigned to a layer. If a layer is shown, its associated page items are drawn; if a layer is hidden, its associated page items are not drawn. Layers affect an entire document: if you alter a layer, the change applies across all spreads.
- *Layers panel* — The user interface for creating, deleting, and arranging layers.
- *Layout presentation* — The user-interface window in which the layout of a document is presented for viewing and editing. The layout presentation contains the layout view and other widgets that control the presentation of the document within the view.
- *Master page* — A page that provides background content for another page. When a page is based on a master page, the page items that lie on the master page also appear on the page. A master page eliminates the need for repetitive page formatting and typically contains page numbers, headers and footers, and background pictures.

- *Master spread* — A special kind of spread that contains a set of master pages.
- *Page* — The object in a spread on which page items are arranged.
- *Page item* — Represents content the user creates and edits on a spread, like a path, a group, or a frame and its content.
- *Pages panel* — The user interface for creating, deleting, and arranging pages and masters.
- *Spread* — The primary container for layout data. A spread contains a set of pages on which page items that represent pictures, text, and other content are arranged. The pages can be kept together to form an island spread, a layout that spans more than one page.

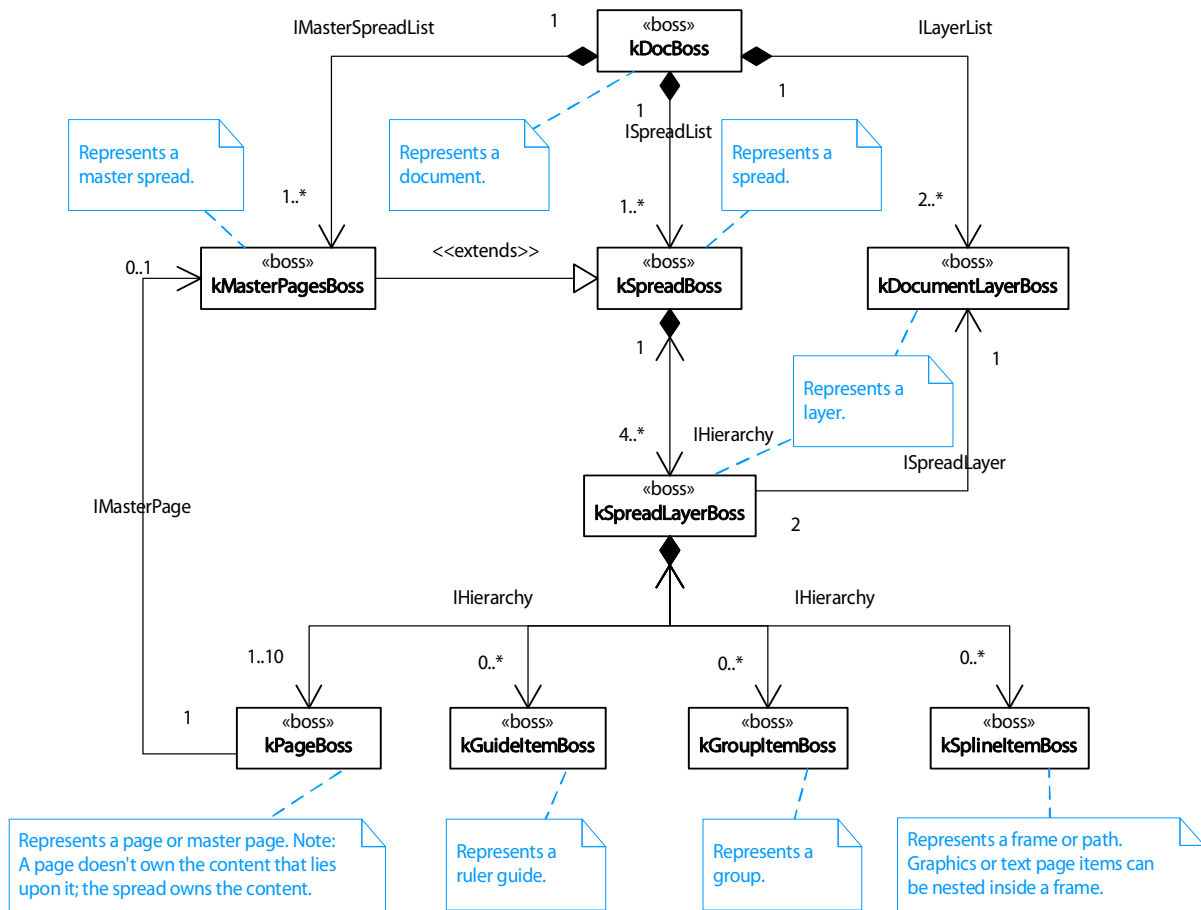
Documents and the layout hierarchy

This section introduces the data model on which the layout subsystem is based. The boss classes and interfaces that represent spreads, pages, and page items in a document are described in general.

Architecture

This section shows how the items introduced in “[Concepts](#)” on page 150 are represented by boss classes and interfaces in a document. [Figure 45](#) shows the overall arrangement.

FIGURE 45 Layout-hierarchy class diagram



A document (`kDocBoss`) comprises one or more spreads (`kSpreadBoss`) and master spreads (`kMasterPagesBoss`). The `ISpreadList` interface lists the spreads. The `IMasterSpreadList` interface lists the master spreads. Each spread contains one or more pages (`kPageBoss`), ruler guides (`kGuideItemBoss`), frames (`kSplineItemBoss`), paths (`kSplineItemBoss`), or groups (`kGroupItemBoss`). These objects are arranged in a spread in a tree represented by the interface `IHierarchy`. Frames and groups have additional page items nested within them. The objects in a layout are layered, and this layering is reflected within each spread. A layer is represented by a document layer (`kDocumentLayerBoss`) that has two corresponding spread layers (`kSpreadLayerBoss`) in each spread. The document layers are listed by the `ILayerList` interface; the spread layers are the immediate children of a spread on the `IHierarchy` interface. A spread (`kSpreadBoss`) contains $2n$ spread layers as children, where n is the number of document layers. All the immediate children of a spread must be spread layers (`kSpreadLayerBoss`).

Figure 45 showed a document has at least two layers:

- The pages layer — Pages (`kPageBoss`) always are associated with the pages layer. The pages layer is represented by the document layer (`kDocumentLayerBoss`) found at index 0 in the `ILayerList` interface. It has two corresponding spread layers (`kSpreadLayerBoss`) in each

spread. The spread layer that owns the spread’s pages (kPageBoss) is found at child index 0 in the spread’s hierarchy (IHierarchy); the other spread layer, which is always empty, is found at child index 1.

- A layer for content.

The remaining layers—and there always is at least one other layer in the ILayerList interface—are the layers to which guides (kGuideItemBoss), frames (kSplineItemBoss), paths (kSplineItemBoss), and groups (kGroupItemBoss) can be assigned. Each of these layers is represented by a document layer that has two corresponding spread layers. When a page item is assigned to belong to a particular layer, the object becomes owned by the corresponding spread layer through IHierarchy. Changes to document layers are document-wide, meaning changes to document layers affect all spreads, including master spreads in the document. For more information about layers, see “Spreads and pages” on page 157 and “Layers” on page 161.

Figure 45 also shows that master spreads (kMasterPagesBoss) have the same organization as spreads. A master spread (kMasterPagesBoss) contains master pages (kPageBoss), which provide background content for other pages. Master spreads form their own hierarchy, and each page connects to its master by the interface IMasterPage. For more information, see “Master spreads and master pages” on page 168.

The key interfaces involved in the layout data model are summarized in Table 24. For more information, see the API reference documentation for these interfaces.

TABLE 24 Key interfaces in the layout data model

Interface	Note
IDocumentLayer	Signature interface for a document layer (kDocumentLayerBoss). Stores a document layer’s properties. Has an associated content-spread layer and guide-spread layer.
IHierarchy	Connects boss objects in a tree that represents a layout hierarchy. Provides a mechanism to find parent and child objects and interfaces. See “Parent and child objects and IHierarchy” on page 155.
ILayerList	List of document layers (kDocumentLayerBoss) in a document. A layer is represented by a kDocumentLayerBoss object that has two associated kSpreadLayerBoss objects in each spread.
IMasterPage	Stores the master spread (kMasterPagesBoss) associated with a page (kPageBoss) and the index of the master page within the master spread on which this page is based.
IMasterSpread	Signature interface for a master spread (kMasterPagesBoss). Stores the name of a master spread and contains the incremental information that defines a master spread. This information is beyond what is contained in a spread.
IMasterSpreadList	List of the master spreads (kMasterPagesBoss) in a document.

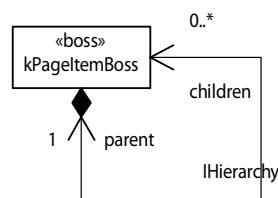
Interface	Note
ISpread	Signature interface for a spread (kSpreadBoss). Contains useful methods for discovering the page items that lie on a page or spread and for navigating between document layers (kDocumentLayerBoss) and spread layers (kSpreadLayerBoss). A document is laid out as a set of spreads in which each spread contains one or more pages and other page items.
ISpreadLayer	Signature interface for a spread layer (kSpreadLayerBoss). A spread layer is the container for the page items in a layer through the IHierarchy interface on the kSpreadLayerBoss. The ISpreadLayer interface maintains a relationship back to the corresponding document layer boss (kDocumentLayerBoss).
ISpreadList	List of the spreads (kSpreadBoss) in a document.

The SnpInspectLayoutModel code snippet can inspect the layout hierarchy. Run the snippet in SnippetRunner to create a textual report for a document. See SnpInspectLayoutModel for sample code that examines the layout hierarchy in various ways.

Parent and child objects and IHierarchy

A page item can contain other page items. The containing object is the parent; the contained objects are the children. Child index order defines z-order, the order in which objects draw; the child with index 0 draws first (behind), and the child with index n-1 draws last (in front). This association between page items is implemented by the IHierarchy interface, as shown in Figure 46.

FIGURE 46 Page Item parent-child composition (class diagram)

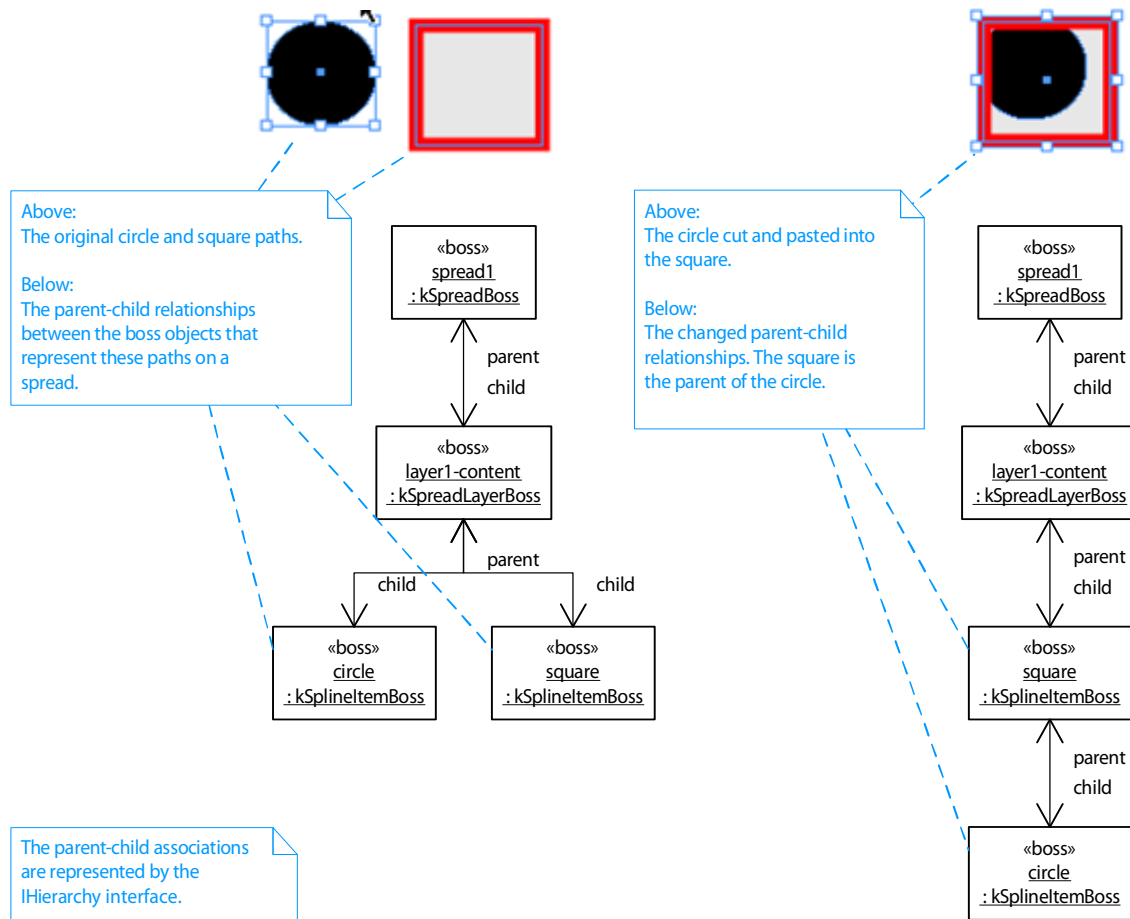


kPageItemBoss is the abstract base class for objects that participate in the layout hierarchy. IHierarchy is a required interface. Subclasses of kPageItemBoss include spreads (kSpreadBoss), spread layers (kSpreadLayerBoss), and frames (kSplineItemBoss). To see all subclasses, see the API reference documentation for kPageItemBoss. Each subclass of kPageItemBoss may have different constraints on the number and type (boss class) of children it can contain.

The child objects contained within the parent are said to be nested. Figure 47 shows an example. The object diagram is an example of how the internal representation changes when a circle is nested inside a square using cut and paste. The parent-child association between boss objects in a layout is realized by the IHierarchy interface. When the circle is cut, the association with its

initial parent, the spread layer, is broken. When the circle is pasted, it is associated with its new parent, the square. The square becomes a frame, because it now contains the circle. The drawing of the circle is then clipped to its frame.

FIGURE 47 Change in parent-child relationships when a circle is nested in a square



The low-level commands used to edit the hierarchy programmatically are `kAddToHierarchyCmdBoss` and `kRemoveFromHierarchyCmdBoss`. A utility interface, `IHierarchyUtils`, provides a facade that processes these commands. For more information, see the API reference documentation.

The boss objects in the hierarchy illustrated above can be visited using a recursive function, as shown in [Example 18](#):

EXAMPLE 18 Recursive function that visits each child boss object in a hierarchy

```
void VisitChildren(IHierarchy* parent)
{
    int32 childCount = parent->GetChildCount();
    for (int32 childIndex = 0; childIndex < childCount; childIndex++)
    {
        InterfacePtr<IHierarchy> child(parent->QueryChild(childIndex));
#ifdef DEBUG
        // Trace the boss class name of the child.
        DebugClassUtilsBuffer className;
        DebugClassUtils::GetIDName(&className, ::GetClass(child));
        TRACEFLOW("LayoutFundamentals", "%s\n", className);
#endif
        // Add code to examine other interfaces on the boss object.
        VisitChildren(child);
    }
}
```

Spreads and pages

A spread is the primary container for layout data. A spread contains a set of pages on which the page items that represent pictures, text, or content of another format are arranged. A spread owns all the objects it contains, including its pages, ruler guides, frames, paths, groups, and any nested content. The objects in a spread are organized into layers, so the user can control whether the objects assigned to a layer should be displayed or editable. See [Figure 48](#) for the user's perspective. The publication shown is a facing-pages document with one spread, one page, and one layer.

FIGURE 48 User's perspective of a sample spread and page

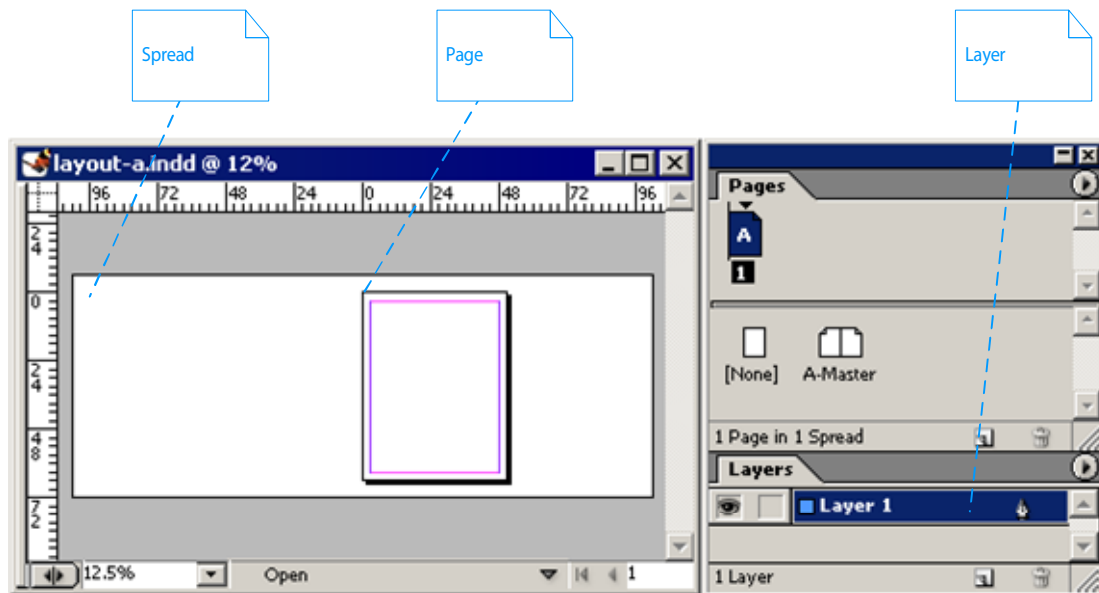
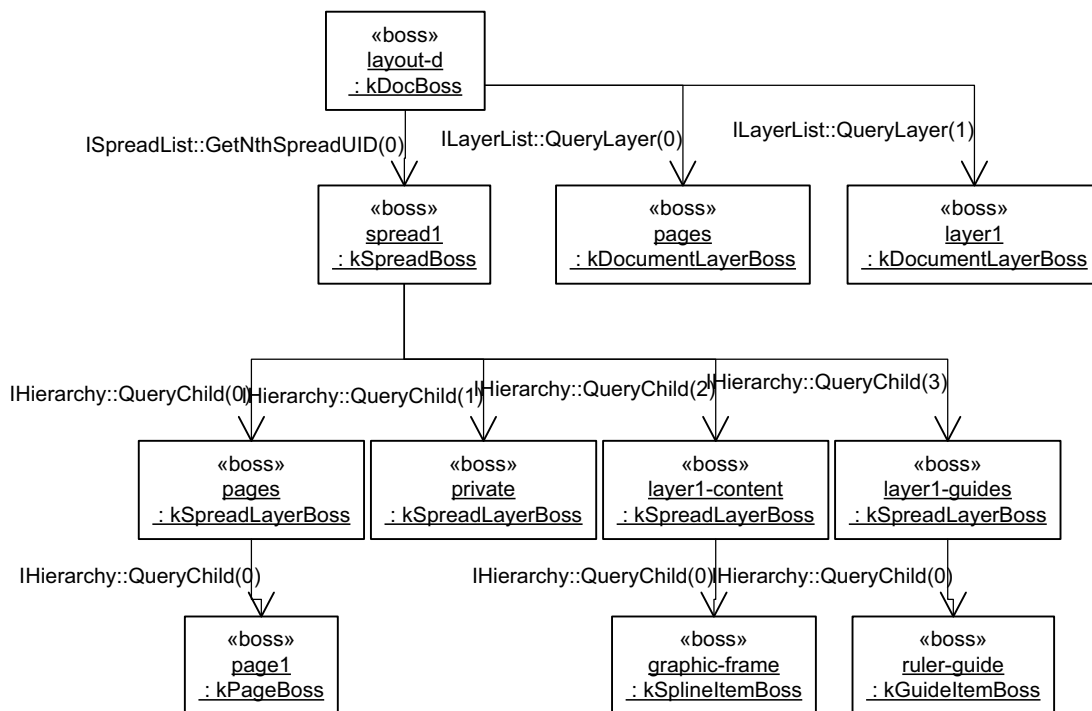
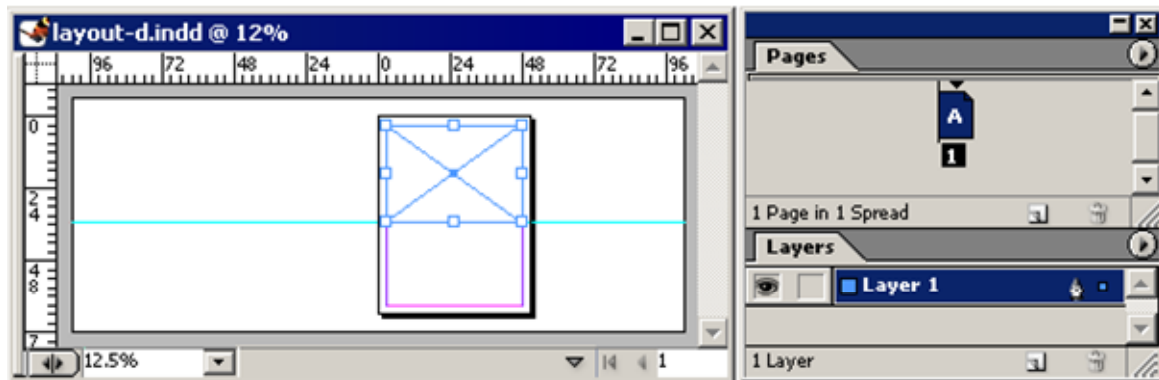


Figure 49 is an object diagram showing the layout-related boss objects that exist in a publication containing a ruler guide and graphic frame on a page. The sample document (`kDocBoss`) contains a spread (`kSpreadBoss`), page (`kPageBoss`), graphic frame (`kSplineItemBoss`), and ruler guide (`kGuideItemBoss`). The content of the spread is layered on spread layers (`kSpreadLayerBoss`) that map onto corresponding document layers (`kDocumentLayerBoss`). There are two document layers (`kDocumentLayerBoss`), the pages layer and layer 1. The page, graphic frame, and ruler guide are arranged on spread layers (`kSpreadLayerBoss`) under the spread's `IHierarchy` interface.

FIGURE 49 Document containing a frame and ruler guide on a page



A layer is represented by a `kDocumentLayerBoss` object with two corresponding `kSpreadLayerBoss` objects in each spread.

The pages layer is the layer to which pages (`kPageBoss`) are assigned. In [Figure 49](#), the pages layer is represented by the `kDocumentLayerBoss` object named “pages” and the `kSpreadLayerBoss` objects named “pages” and “private.” The pages document layer (`kDocumentLayerBoss`) always is at index 0 in the layer list (`ILayerList`). The first child on the spread’s hierarchy always is the associated page’s spread layer and contains the spread’s pages (`kPageBoss`). The second child of the spread is a private spread layer that always is empty. Pages are drawn behind all other objects, because they always are stored on the spread’s hierarchy at child index 0. Note the pages layer is not shown in the Layers panel.

In [Figure 49](#), Layer 1 is represented by the `kDocumentLayerBoss` object `layer1`. It has two corresponding spread layers (`kSpreadLayerBoss`) on the spread's hierarchy, one for content (`layer1-content`, which stores the graphic frame (`kSplineItemBoss`)) and one for ruler guides (`layer1-guides`, which stores the ruler guide). The order of these spread layers can vary, depending on whether guides are being drawn behind or in front of content. [Figure 49](#) illustrates the order when guides are drawn in front of content.

NOTE: Child index order in `IHierarchy` defines z-order, the order in which objects on those spread layers (`kSpreadLayerBoss`) draw. The child with index 0 draws first (behind); the child with index `n-1`, last (in front).

The code shown in [Example 19](#) visits each child boss object of the spread shown in [Figure 49](#). (For the implementation of `VisitChildren`, see [Example 18](#).) All boss objects on the spread's hierarchy are visited by the code in [Example 19](#), including spread layer and page boss objects.

EXAMPLE 19 *Code that iterates spreads and visits their children using `IHierarchy`*

```
void VisitSpreadChildren(UIDRef& documentUIDRef)
{
    InterfacePtr<IDocument> document(documentUIDRef, UseDefaultIID());
    InterfacePtr<ISpreadList> spreadList(document, UseDefaultIID());
    IDatabase* database = documentUIDRef.GetDataBase();
    int32 spreadCount = spreadList->GetSpreadCount();
    for ( int32 spreadIndex = 0; spreadIndex < spreadCount; spreadIndex++ )
    {
        UIDRef spreadUIDRef(database, spreadList->GetNthSpreadUID(spreadIndex));
        InterfacePtr<IHierarchy> spreadHierarchy(spreadUIDRef, UseDefaultIID());
        VisitChildren(spreadHierarchy);
    }
}
```

In contrast, the code shown in [Example 20](#) filters the objects by the pages on which they lie. The method `ISpread::GetItemsOnPage` calculates which items lie on a page. Since pages do not own the items that lie on them (spreads own the items), the calculation of which items lie on a page is geometrical, comparing the intersection of the bounding box of each item with the bounding box of the page. (For details, see `ISpread::GetItemsOnPage`.) If this code is run on the spread shown in [Figure 49](#), the only object that appears in the list `itemsOnPage` is the graphic frame. The ruler guide is not returned as an item, because it is a pasteboard-ruler guide; if the ruler guide were a page-ruler guide, the code in [Example 20](#) would list it.

EXAMPLE 20 Code that iterates spreads and filters items by the page on which they lie using *ISpread*

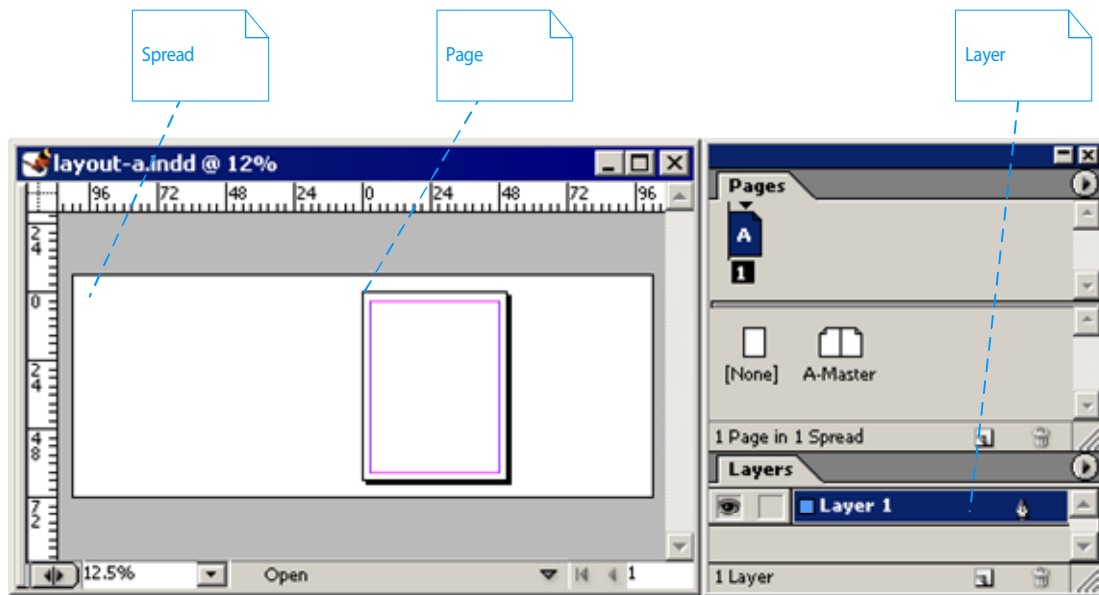
```
void FilterItemsByPage(UIDRef& documentUIDRef)
{
    InterfacePtr<IDocument> document(documentUIDRef, UseDefaultIID());
    InterfacePtr<ISpreadList> spreadList(document, UseDefaultIID());
    IDataBase* database = documentUIDRef.GetDataBase();
    int32 spreadCount = spreadList->GetSpreadCount();
    for ( int32 spreadIndex = 0; spreadIndex < spreadCount; spreadIndex++ )
    {
        UIDRef spreadUIDRef(database, spreadList->GetNthSpreadUID(spreadIndex));
        InterfacePtr<ISpread> spread(spreadUIDRef, UseDefaultIID());
        for (int32 pageIndex = 0; pageIndex < spread->GetNumPages(); pageIndex++)
        {
            UIDList itemsOnPage(database);
            const bool16 bIncludePage = kFalse;
            const bool16 bIncludePasteboard = kFalse;
            spread->GetItemsOnPage(pageIndex, &itemsOnPage, bIncludePage,
                bIncludePasteboard);
            // Add code to manipulate itemsOnPage.
        }
    }
}
```

The `SnInspectLayoutModel` code snippet can inspect the spreads in a document and their associated hierarchy. Run the snippet in `SnippetRunner` to create a textual report. For sample code, see `SnInspectLayoutModel::ReportDocumentByHierarchy`.

Layers

Layers are presented to the user and edited with the Layers panel. Layers can be shown or hidden, locked or unlocked. By re-arranging the order of layers, the user can control the front-to-back order in which page items assigned to those layers draw. The user also can change the layer to which a selected page item is assigned, by dragging and dropping in the Layers panel.

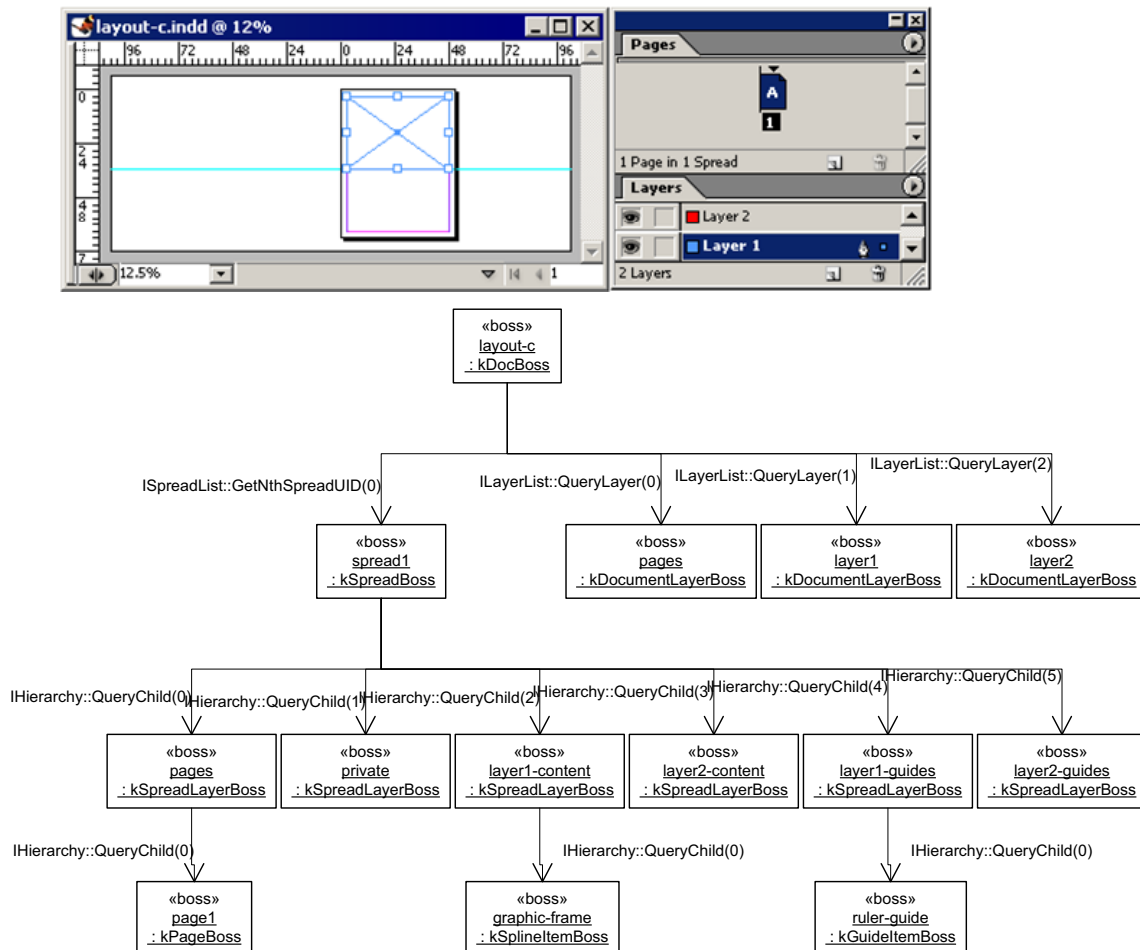
[Figure 50](#) shows the user's perspective of a layer. The document shown is a facing-pages document with one spread, one page, and one layer.

FIGURE 50 User's perspective of a layer

Layers in a basic document

Figure 51 is an object diagram showing the layout hierarchy that results when a new layer is added to the document in Figure 49. The diagram shows a document (`kDocBoss`) containing one spread (`kSpreadBoss`), one page (`kPageBoss`) and three layers. Each layer is represented by one `kDocumentLayerBoss` object that has two corresponding `kSpreadLayerBoss` objects in each spread. The pages layer that stores the page (`kPageBoss`) is represented by the `kDocumentLayerBoss` object named “pages” and the `kSpreadLayerBoss` objects named “pages” and “private.” Layer 1 is represented by the objects `layer1`, `layer1-content`, and `layer1-guides`. Layer 2 is represented by the objects `layer2`, `layer2-content`, and `layer2-guides`. A graphic frame (`kSplinelItemBoss`) and a ruler guide (`kGuideItemBoss`) are assigned to Layer 1. Layer 2 is empty.

FIGURE 51 Document with two layers



When a new layer is added, three new objects are created:

- A new document layer is added to the layer list (ILayerList). This is the kDocumentLayerBoss object layer2.
- Two corresponding spread layers are added to the spread. One new spread layer is added to contain paths, frames, or groups; the other new spread layer is added to contain ruler guides. These are the kSpreadLayerBoss objects layer2-content and layer2-guides.

Figure 51 shows that when a document layer is created, two corresponding spread layers are added to each spread. When a document layer is deleted, its corresponding spread layers are removed from each spread. Document-layer edits are document-wide; i.e., they affect all spreads in a document.

Content-spread layers are stored contiguously in the spread's hierarchy (IHierarchy). Guide-spread layers also are stored contiguously. For example, the layer1-content and layer2-content objects in Figure 51 are contiguous content-spread layers, and layer1-guides and layer2-guides are contiguous guide-spread layers.

The order of content-spread layers and guide-spread layers as child objects of the spread's hierarchy (IHierarchy) varies, depending on whether guides are being drawn in front or in back of content. Ruler guides are kept in a distinct spread layer, to allow them to be drawn in front of or behind other content, or even to turn them off completely, as determined by a preference setting. (See “[Guides and grids](#)” on page 180.) [Figure 51](#) shows the order when guides are drawn in front of content. The corresponding index order is as follows:

```
index[0] pages spread layer
index[1] private spread layer
index[2] layer1-content spread layer
index[3] layer2-content spread layer
index[4] layer1-guides spread layer
index[5] layer2-guides spread layer
```

If guides are drawn behind other content, the index order of spread layers in the spread's hierarchy (IHierarchy) is as follows:

```
index[0] pages spread layer
index[1] private spread layer
index[2] layer1-guides spread layer
index[3] layer2-guides spread layer
index[4] layer1-content spread layer
index[5] layer2-content spread layer
```

NOTE: Child-index order in IHierarchy defines z-order, the order in which objects on those spread layers (kSpreadLayerBoss) draw. The child with index 0 draws first (behind); the child with index n-1, last (in front).

The spread's ISpread interface has methods that return the spread layer associated with a given document layer. (See “[Navigating spread content using ISpread](#)” on page 166.) The associations are calculated using the following algorithm.

The indices of the pages-spread layer and private-spread layer are fixed:

- Pages-spread layer IHierarchy child index = 0.
- Private-spread layer IHierarchy child index = 1.

Variable definitions:

- i = index of document layer (kDocumentLayerBoss) in ILayerList whose associated spread layer (kSpreadlayerBoss) is wanted.
- c = number of document layers in ILayerList.

If guides are displayed in front of content, the following calculations are used:

- Content-spread layer IHierarchy child index = $i + 1$.
- Guide-spread layer IHierarchy child index = $i + c$.

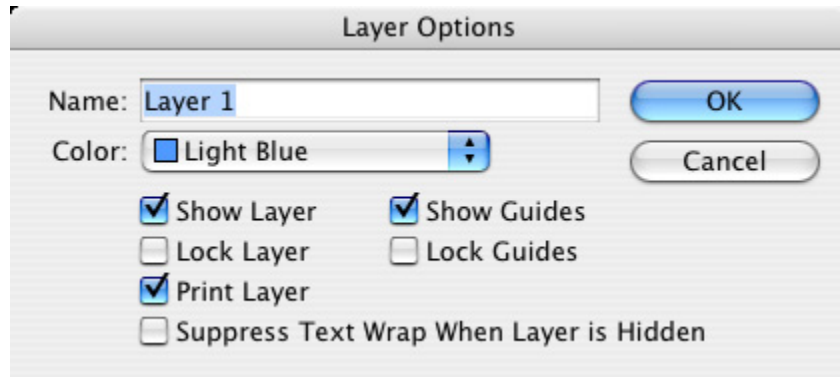
If guides are displayed behind content, the following calculations are used:

- Content-spread layer IHierarchy child index = $i + c$.
- Guide-spread layer IHierarchy child index = $i + 1$.

Layer options

There are layer options that can be controlled via the Layers Options dialog. User can double click on a layer name in the Layers palette to bring up the Layer Options dialog, as shown in [Figure 52](#).

FIGURE 52 Layer Options dialog



The attributes in the Layer Options dialog are managed by the `IDocumentLayer` interface, which is aggregated on the `kDocumentLayerBoss`. [Table 25](#) lists some of the commands that can be used to modify layer options.

TABLE 25 Layer Options-related commands

Command	Note
<code>kChangeLayerNameCmdBoss</code>	Changes the name of the layer.
<code>kIgnoreHiddenTextWrapCmdBoss</code>	Sets text-wrap options for a document layer.
<code>kLockGuideLayerCmdBoss</code>	Locks or unlocks a guide layer. A “locked” layer means nothing in that layer (only guides) can be selected.
<code>kLockLayerCmdBoss</code>	Locks or unlocks a layer. A “locked” layer means nothing in that layer can be selected. Layers are unlocked by default.
<code>kPrintLayerCmdBoss</code>	Sets the printability of the layer. A non-printable layer does not print or export.
<code>kSetLayerColorCmdBoss</code>	Changes the layer color.
<code>kShowGuideLayerCmdBoss</code>	Sets the guide visibility of the layer. An “invisible” layer is not displayed on the screen.
<code>kShowLayerCmdBoss</code>	Sets the visibility of the layer. An “invisible” layer is not displayed on the screen.

Use the commands in [Table 25](#) whenever possible to modify layer options.

The `SnpprintDocument.cpp` SDK snippet allows the user to select which layer to print. It uses `kPrintLayerCmdBoss` to set the printability for each layer. For more information, see the snippet source code.

NOTE: A similar set of attributes also exists in the `ISpreadLayer`. [“Layers in a basic document” on page 162](#) explains the relationship between `IDocumentLayer` and `ISpreadLayer` in a document. The `ISpreadLayer` interface primarily provides “getter” methods that forward the request for information to the corresponding `IDocumentLayer` interface

Navigating spread content using `ISpread`

[“Layers in a basic document” on page 162](#) shows the content of a spread is stored on its `IHierarchy` interface. Locating content using `IHierarchy` can be laborious. Alternately, the `ISpread` interface makes it easy to examine the content of a spread, as shown in the object diagram in [Figure 53](#).

FIGURE 53 Spread layer navigation using ISpread

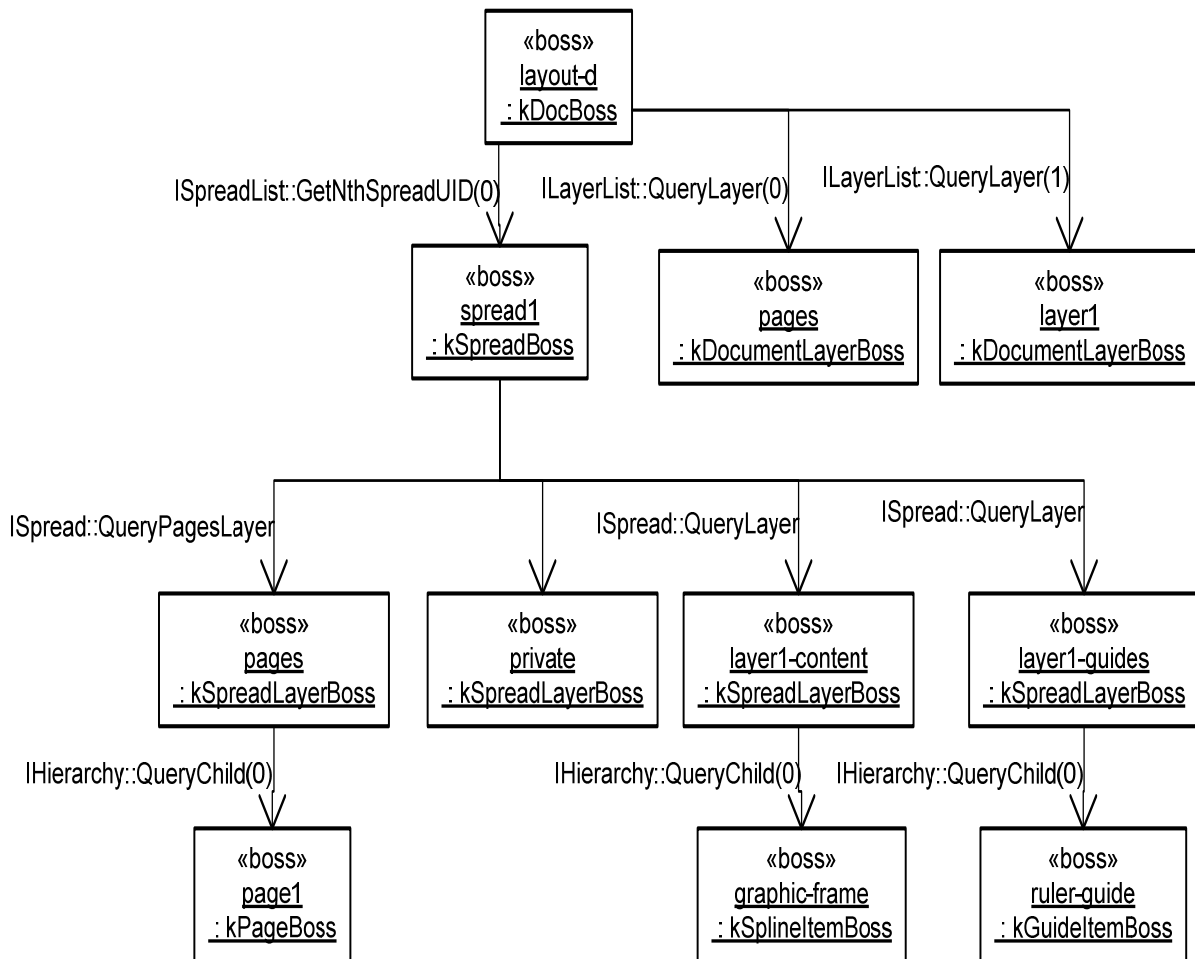
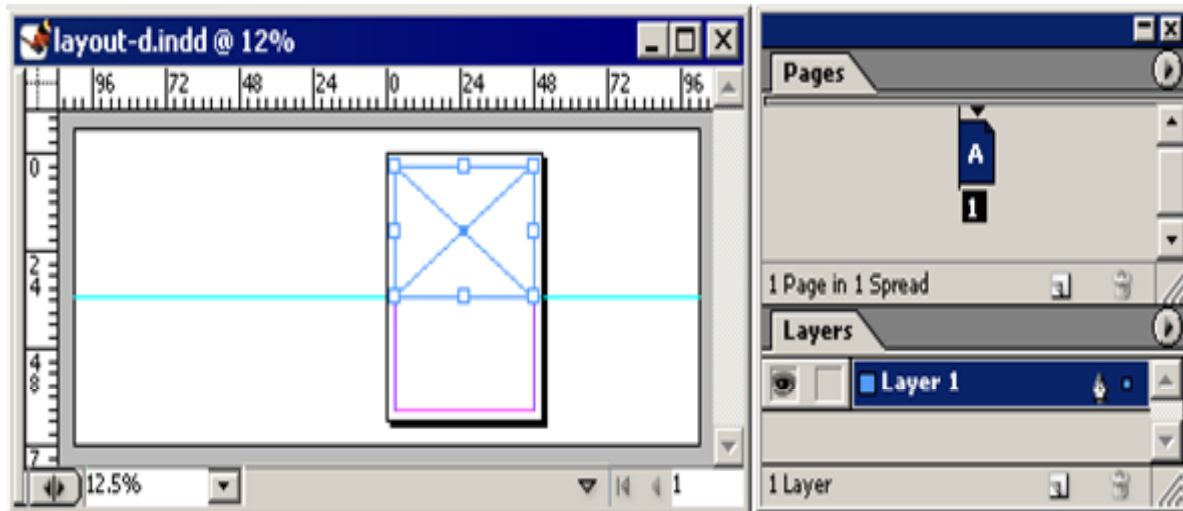


Figure 53 shows you can use the ISpread interface on a spread (kSpreadBoss) to find the guide or content spread layer associated with a document layer. (For more information, see ISpread::QueryLayer.) You also can discover which page items lie on a given page. (For more information, see ISpread::GetItemsOnPage.)

Using ISpread to discover the content of a spread is much easier than using IHierarchy.

When run on the document shown in Figure 53, the code in Example 21 visits the content of spread layer layer1-content if parameter wantGuideLayer is kFalse. The code visits the content of spread layer layer1-guides if parameter wantGuideLayer is kTrue.

EXAMPLE 21 Code that iterates over spreads in a document, then iterates over document layers to visit items on the spread layer associated with each document layer

```
void FilterItemsByLayer (UIDRef& documentUIDRef, bool16 wantGuideLayer)
{
    InterfacePtr<IDocument> document (documentUIDRef, UseDefaultIID());
    InterfacePtr<ISpreadList> spreadList (document, UseDefaultIID());
    InterfacePtr<ILayerList> layerList (document, UseDefaultIID());
    IDatabase* database = documentUIDRef.GetDataBase();
    int32 spreadCount = spreadList->GetSpreadCount();
    for ( int32 spreadIndex = 0; spreadIndex < spreadCount; spreadIndex++ )
    {
        UIDRef spreadUIDRef (database, spreadList->GetNthSpreadUID (spreadIndex));
        InterfacePtr<ISpread> spread (spreadUIDRef, UseDefaultIID());
        int32 layerCount = layerList->GetCount();
        // Skip the pages layer (layer 0).
        for (int32 layerIndex = 1; layerIndex < layerCount; layerIndex++)
        {
            IDocumentLayer* documentLayer = layerList->QueryLayer (layerIndex);
            int32 pPos;
            // Visit the content spread layer associated with the document layer
            // if wantGuideLayer is kFalse, the guide spread layer otherwise.
            InterfacePtr<ISpreadLayer> contentSpreadLayer
            (
                spread->QueryLayer (documentLayer, &pPos, wantGuideLayer)
            );
            InterfacePtr<IHierarchy> hierarchy (contentSpreadLayer, UseDefaultIID());
            VisitChildren (hierarchy);
        }
    }
}
```

NOTE: For an implementation of VisitChildren, see Example 18.

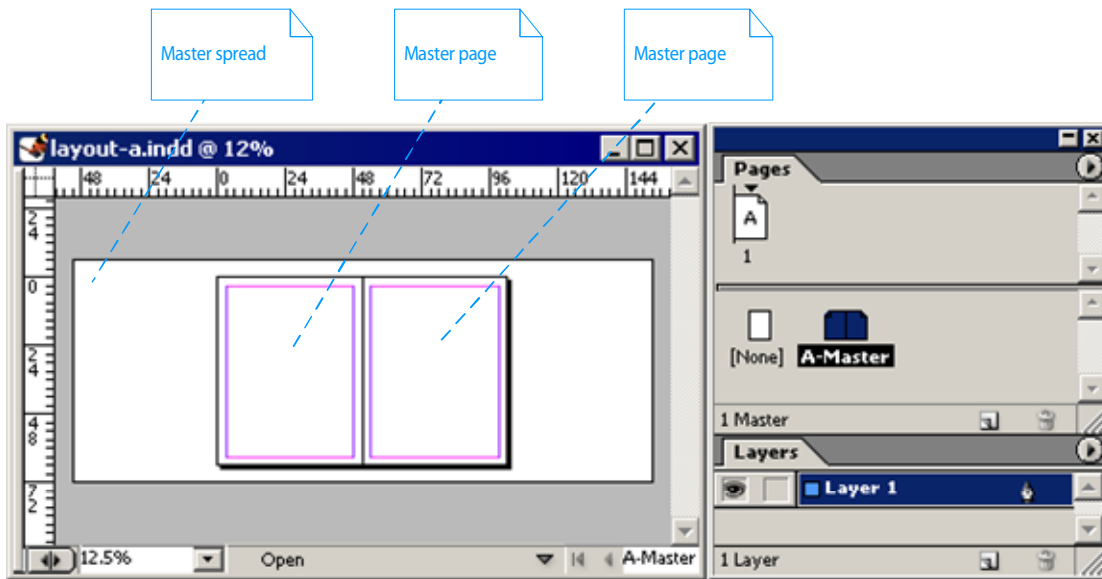
Master spreads and master pages

A master spread is a special kind of spread that contains master pages. A master page is a page designed to contain background content for another page. When a page is based on a master page, the page items that lie on the master page also appear on the page. A master page elimi-

notes the need for repetitive page formatting and typically contains page numbers, headers and footers, and background pictures. The layout presentation is used to edit the content of master spreads. The Pages panel is used to arrange the pages in a master spread and assign a master page to a page.

See [Figure 54](#) for the user's perspective on master spreads and master pages. The publication shown is a facing-pages document with a master spread containing two master pages.

FIGURE 54 User's perspective of master spreads and master pages

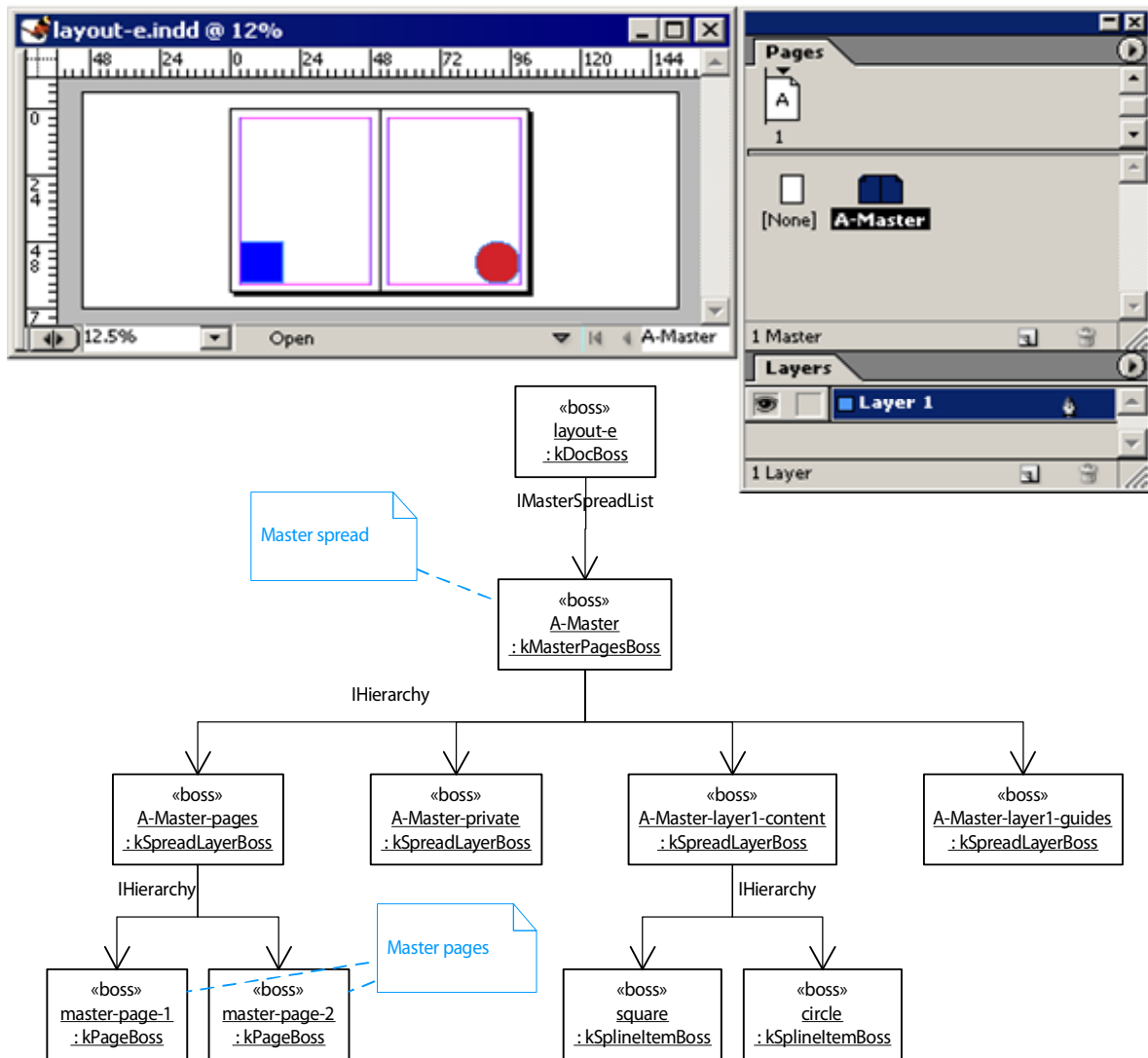


Master spreads and master pages in a basic document

A master spread (`kMasterPagesBoss`) is a special kind of spread; it extends the spread boss class (`kSpreadBoss`). The content of a master spread is organized the same way as a spread: each has a hierarchy (`IHierarchy`) with spread layers acting as parent objects for content. Compare the spread shown in [Figure 49](#) to the master spread shown in [Figure 55](#). The document (`kDocBoss`) shown contains a master spread (`kMasterPagesBoss`), with two pages (`kPageBoss`), and two paths (`kSplineItemBoss`) in the form of a square and a circle.

NOTE: Pages (`kPageBoss`) that are part of a master spread are master pages. This name clashes with the name of the master-spread boss class, `kMasterPagesBoss`, so the distinction between the two is worth repeating: a master page is a page (`kPageBoss`) owned by a master spread (`kMasterPagesBoss`).

FIGURE 55 Facing-pages master spread

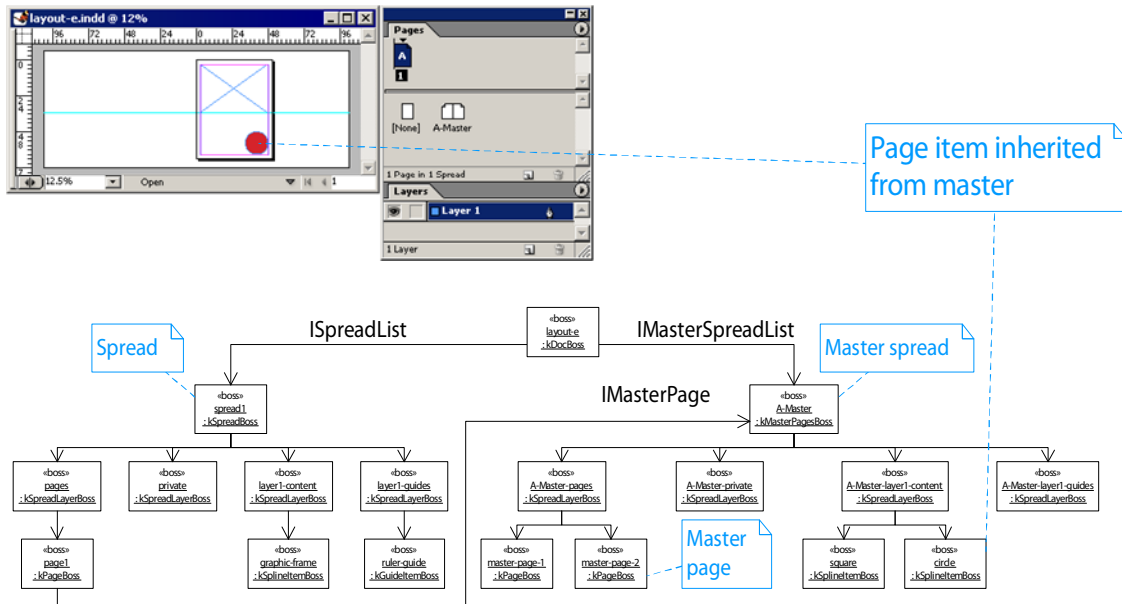


When a page is based on a master page, the page items that lie on the master page also appear on the page. When the master spread in Figure 55 is applied to page 1 of the facing-pages document in Figure 49, page items from the master page appear on page 1. The circle in the screenshot of page 1 in Figure 56 is an object from the master spread.

Figure 56 is an object diagram showing a one-page document that has a master (A-Master) applied. The circle drawn on page 1 is an object inherited from the associated master page. The boss objects that represent the spread and the master spread it is based on are shown. The association between a page (`kPageBoss`) and its master page is implemented by the `IMasterPage` interface. The screenshot shows that filtering of the objects on the master spread is being performed. Objects that intersect the bounding box of the master page associated with the page are drawn, other objects on the master spread are filtered out. The circle is the only object from

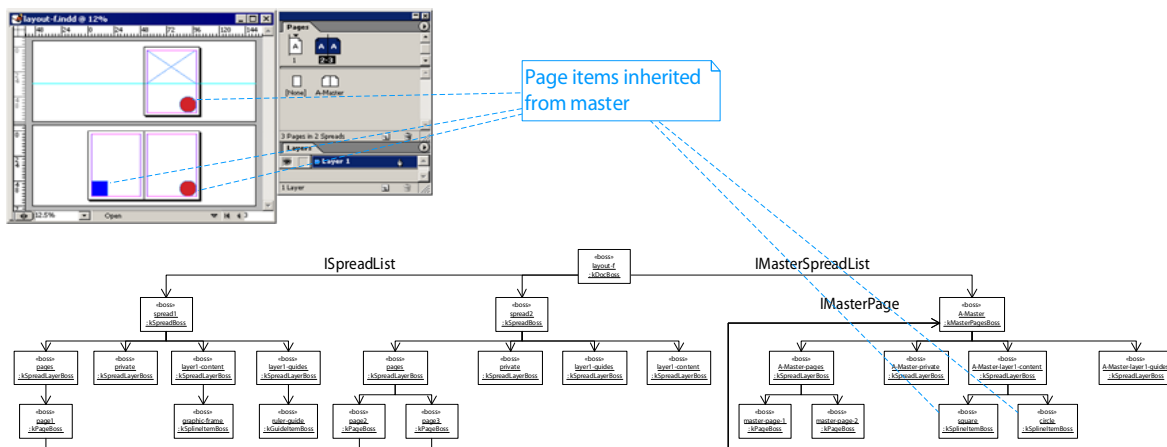
the master spread to draw, because it is the only object that intersects the bounding box of the master page associated with page 1.

FIGURE 56 Spread based on a master spread



When two new pages based on the master shown in Figure 55 are added to the document, the layout hierarchy is as shown in Figure 57. The object diagram shows the boss objects that represent three pages in a facing-pages document based on the same master spread. The circle and square objects drawn on pages 1, 2, and 3 come from the master.

FIGURE 57 Two spreads based on a facing-pages master spread



The master spread (`kMasterPagesBoss`) associated with a page (`kPageBoss`) is found by calling `IMasterPage::GetMasterPageUID`. The associated master page (`kPageBoss`) within that master spread is calculated by calling `IMasterPage::GetMasterIndex`. The calculation depends on the index position (0, 1, 2, ...) of the page within its spread and the document set-up. Given the result returned by `IMasterPage::GetMasterIndex`, `ISpread::GetNthPageUID` can be called to get a reference to the master page (`kPageBoss`), or `ISpread::GetItemsOnPage` can be called to calculate the objects on the master spread that intersect the bounding box of the master page.

To base a page or set of pages on a master spread, process the `kApplyMasterSpreadCmdBoss` command.

Master-page item overrides

Page items from a master spread can be overridden. For example, to change the fill color of the circle on page 1 in the [Figure 57](#), a master page item override is created. A record of the override is kept by the page (`kPageBoss`) in the `IMasterOverrideList` interface.

Overrides to master-page items are applied programmatically with `kOverrideMasterPageItemCmdBoss`.

Even when a master-page item is overridden, changes made to its counterpart on the master still can effect page items. An overridden page item continues to inherit all properties of its master counterpart that are not overridden. For example, if the only property that was overridden on page 1 is the fill color of the circle, modifying the position of the circle in the master causes the position of the circle to be updated on the pages based on that master (pages 1 and 3). The application of the initial fill-color override creates a copy of the circle (`kSplineItemBoss`) object on spread 1; a record of the override is kept in `IMasterOverrideList` on page 1. The circle on spread 1 is a controlled page item; the circle on the master spread is the controlling page item. Master page items maintain a list of controlled page items in the `IControlledPageItems` interface, which represents the page items for which overrides were made. An overridden master-page item on a spread maintains a reference to its controlling master-page item, in the `IControllingPageItem` interface.

Basing one master page on another

A master page can be based on another master page. The association is maintained by the `IMasterPage` interface as it is for a normal page (`kPageBoss`) owned by a spread (`kSpreadBoss`). For example, consider two masters, A and B, with different sets of page items. When you drag master A onto master B in the Pages panel, master B becomes based on master A. Master page items on master A appear on master B; however, the page items on master B inherited from master A remain owned by master A. If you alter the page items on master A, the change is inherited by master B. Master B can override page items from master A for individual properties, just as the master-page items on a spread can be overridden.

Page items

A page item is a path, frame, group, picture, text frame, or page-item type that represents content the user creates and edits on a spread. For general information about the organization of page items in a spread, see [“Spreads and pages” on page 157](#).

Frames and paths

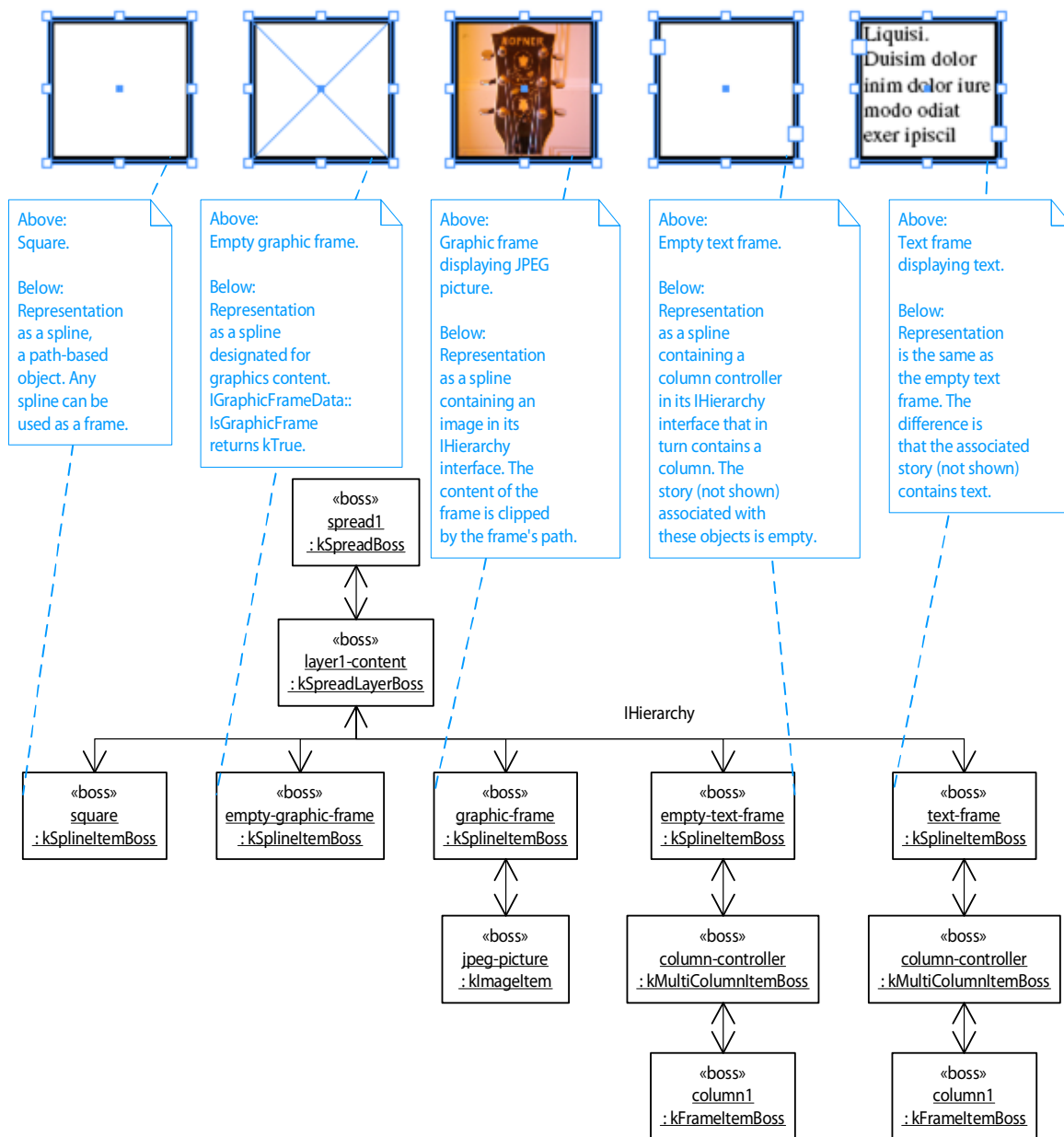
A path represents a straight line, curved line, or closed shape like a rectangle, ellipse, or polygon. A path comprises one or more segments, each of which may be straight or curved. Each path is open (the default) or closed. Graphic attributes are properties that control how the path is formatted when drawn, like stroke weight and color. For more information about paths, see the “Paths” section of the “Graphics Fundamentals” chapter. A frame is simply a path that contains—or is designated to contain—other objects, like a graphic page item, text page item, or page item that represents another type of content.

Frames and paths are represented by the same boss class, `kSplineItemBoss`.

A path can become a frame, and a frame can become a path. The difference between a path and a frame is the state of the interfaces on `kSplineItemBoss`. A path is a `kSplineItemBoss` object that contains no children in its `IHierarchy` interface. A graphic frame is a `kSplineItemBoss` object that contains a graphic page item in its `IHierarchy` interface. (For more information about graphic page items, see the “Graphic Page Items” section of the “Graphics Fundamentals” chapter.) A text frame is a `kSplineItemBoss` object that contains a text page item (`kMultiColumnItemBoss`). (For more information on text page items, see the “Text” chapter.)

[Figure 58](#) shows a square path, an empty graphic frame, a graphic frame displaying a picture, an empty text frame, and a text frame containing text. The object diagram shows a square being used as a path and as a frame.

FIGURE 58 Square used as a path and a frame



The toolbox palette provides the user with several path-drawing tools. The Rectangle, Ellipse, Polygon, and Line tools create basic shapes. The Rectangle Frame, Ellipse Frame, and Polygon Frame tools create basic graphic-frame shapes. The Pen and Pencil tools create free-form shapes. When one of these tools is used to draw a path, a spline item (kSplineItemBoss) is created to represent the path. The IPathGeometry interface on kSplineItemBoss describes the points in the path. Other interfaces on kSplineItemBoss provide properties like stroke weight

and stroke color that control how the path is drawn. When a path is used as a frame, the content is clipped by the frame's path.

`IGraphicFrameData` is a frame's signature interface. `IGraphicFrameData` stores data that distinguishes whether the boss object represents a frame or a path. `IFrameType` is an alternative signature interface. It provides an easy-to-use interface that indicates whether the object represents a path or a frame. Major interfaces on `kSplineItemBoss`, the boss class representing paths and frames, are shown in the class diagram in [Figure 59](#) and summarized in [Table 26](#). For more information on the interfaces noted and details of the other interfaces on `kSplineItemBoss`, see the API reference documentation.

FIGURE 59 *kSplineItemBoss*

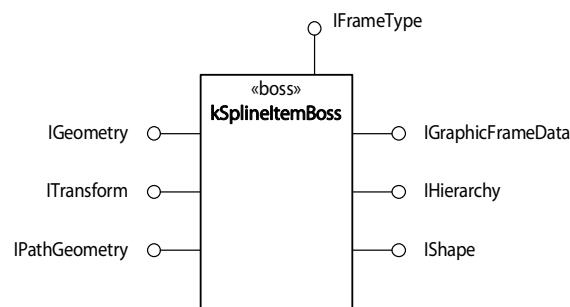


TABLE 26 Key *kSplineItemBoss* interfaces

Interface	Note
<code>IFrameType</code>	Indicates whether the boss object is a path or frame.
<code>IGeometry</code>	Stores the bounding box of the boss object in inner coordinates. See “Bounding box and IGeometry” on page 190 .
<code>IGraphicFrameData</code>	Stores whether the boss object is a graphic frame and provides other helper methods to determine the content of a frame.
<code>IHandleShape</code>	Draws selection handles on the boss object's bounding box. These selection handles are used to move and resize the object.
<code>IHandleShape (IID_IPATHHANDLESHAPE)</code>	Draws selection handles on the points in the boss object's path. These selection handles are used to edit the path points.

Interface	Note
IHierarchy	Connects the boss object into a tree that represents a layout hierarchy. Provides mechanism to find parent and child objects and interfaces. The objects the boss object contains are the children of the IHierarchy interface. The object in which the boss object is contained is its parent. The child-index order in IHierarchy defines the z-order of child objects. See “Parent and child objects and IHierarchy” on page 155.
IPageItemAdornmentList	A list of adornments that the page item object may have. For details, see the “Graphics Fundamentals” chapter.
IPathGeometry	Stores the points in the boss object’s path in inner coordinates. The interface can describe multiple paths.
IScrapItem	Creates commands that can copy and paste the boss object. Different types of page items need to transfer different kinds of data. For example, a path transfers a description of its shape, and a text frame transfers text as well as a description of the frame.
IShape	Draws the boss object.
ITransform	Represents any transformation applied to the boss object (e.g., translation, rotation, scaling) in a transformation matrix (PMMatrix). See “Transformation and ITransform” on page 191.

A frame can contain at most one child in its hierarchy (IHierarchy). The child boss object is the content of the frame. The child may be one of the following boss classes: kSplineItemBoss, kGroupItemBoss, a graphics page item (e.g., kImageItem, kSVGItem, kPlacedPDFItemBoss, and kEPSItem), a text page item (kMultiColumnItemBoss), or another content page item.

NOTE: The child object can be a group (kGroupItemBoss). To put several objects in a frame, first group them.

A frame can be owned by one parent using its hierarchy (IHierarchy) interface. Typically, a frame on a spread is owned by a spread layer (kSpreadLayerBoss), but a frame also can be owned by other boss objects. For example, a frame that is part of a group is owned by the kGroupItemBoss, a frame nested inside a frame is owned by a kSplineItemBoss, and an inline frame is owned by a kInlineBoss.

Paths and frames are created programmatically using IPathUtils. For sample code, see SDKLayoutHelper::CreateRectangleGraphic, SDKLayoutHelper::CreateSplineGraphic, SDKLayoutHelper::CreateRectangleFrame, and SDKLayoutHelper::CreateTextFrame. The frame for a page item can be created when a file is placed.

For sample code that can be used to examine the content of a frame, see [Example 18](#). For sample code that can be used to discover frames in a document, see [Example 19](#) and [Example 20](#).

The `SnInspectLayoutModel` code snippet can inspect the spreads in a document and their associated hierarchy, including their frames. To create a textual report, run the snippet in `SnippetRunner`. For sample code, see `SnInspectLayoutModel::ReportDocumentByHierarchy`.

Graphic page items

A graphic page item represents a picture. [Table 27](#) shows the boss classes that represent graphics-format files that are imported and placed in a document. Graphic page items are contained in frames (`kSplineItemBoss`) when placed on a spread. For more information, see “Graphic Page Items” in the “Graphics Fundamentals” chapter.

TABLE 27 *Graphic page-item boss classes*

Boss class	Represented graphics format
<code>kDCSItemBoss</code>	DCS
<code>kEPSItem</code>	EPS
<code>kImageItem</code>	Raster image formats (e.g., TIFF, JPEG, PNG, GIF)
<code>kPICTItem</code>	PICT
<code>kPlacedPDFItemBoss</code>	PDF
<code>kSVGItem</code>	SVG
<code>kWMFItem</code>	WMF

Text page items

A text page item represents a visual container that displays text. [Table 28](#) shows the boss classes that participate in the display of text. Text page items are contained in frames (`kSplineItemBoss`) when placed on a spread. For more information, see the “Text Fundamentals” chapter.

TABLE 28 *Text page-item boss classes*

Boss class	Represents
<code>kFrameItemBoss</code>	Column
<code>kMultiColumnItemBoss</code>	Column controller

Interactive page items

An interactive page item represents an item in a multimedia format. [Table 29](#) shows the boss classes that represent interactive page items. Interactive page items are contained in frames (`kSplineItemBoss`) when placed on a spread.

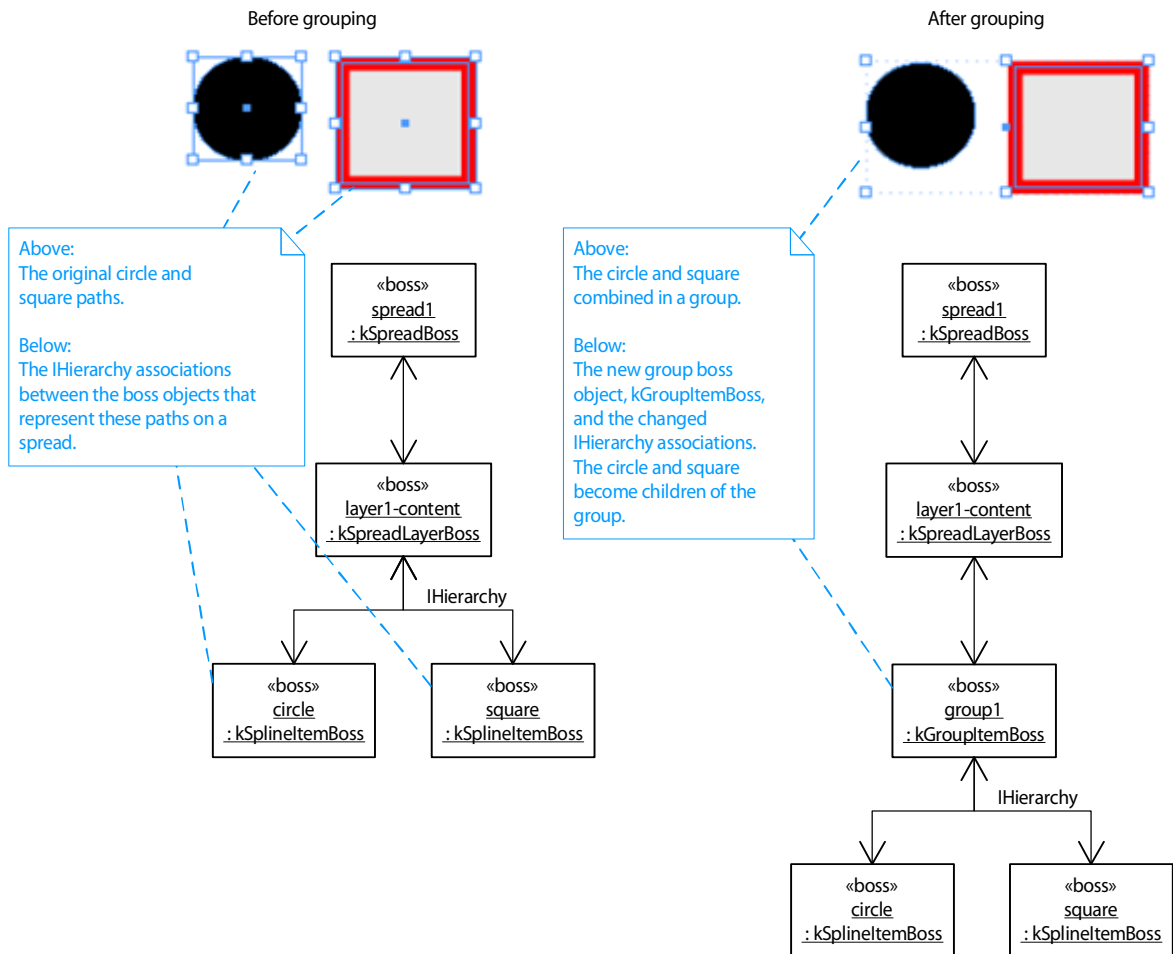
TABLE 29 *Interactive item boss classes*

Boss class	Represents
<code>kMoviePageItemBoss</code>	Movie
<code>kPushButtonItemBoss</code>	Button
<code>kSoundPageItemBoss</code>	Audio

Groups

Grouping is a way to combine two or more objects so they can be worked with as a single object. The objects in a group move, transform, copy, and paste as a unit. Grouping boss objects results in the creation of a `kGroupItemBoss` to represent the group. The grouped objects become the children of the group in its `IHierarchy` interface. Unlike a frame, a group does not have a path that clips its content when drawn. The geometry and shape of the group is defined by the objects in the group.

The object diagram in [Figure 60](#) shows an example of how the internal representation changes when two objects are grouped.

FIGURE 60 Grouping of two *kSplineItemBoss* path objects

A group must contain at least two children in its IHierarchy. The only boss classes that can be part of a group are *kSplineItemBoss* and *kGroupItemBoss*. In other words, only frames, paths, and groups can be grouped. To put a graphic page item—such as an image (*kImageItem*)—into a group, that item must be contained in a frame (*kSplineItemBoss*).

There is no signature interface on *kGroupItemBoss* that identifies a boss object uniquely as a group. To test for a group, call `IPageItemTypeUtils::IsGroup`.

Objects are grouped using the `kGroupCmdBoss` command and ungrouped using the `kUngroupCmdBoss` command. Selected objects can be grouped and ungrouped using `IGroupItemSuite`.

Abstract page items and *kPageItemBoss*

The *kPageItemBoss* boss class is the abstract base class for page items. The *kDrawablePageItemBoss* boss class is the abstract base class for page items that can be selected and edited on a

spread. These abstract classes are subclassed and implemented by the set of page items that can be created and edited on a spread, such as `kSplineItemBoss`, `kGroupItemBoss`, and `kImageItem`.

In general terms, a page item is any object that can participate in a hierarchy (`IHierarchy`). This perspective is valid and includes spreads (`kSpreadBoss`) and pages (`kPageBoss`) as page items. There is an alternative, more advanced definition of page item. To see all subclasses of `kPageItemBoss`, see the API reference documentation for `kPageItemBoss`.

Guides and grids

Guides and grids are used to align and position objects. Some, like ruler guides, can be dynamically created and changed. Others, like the margins of a page, are static properties of an object.

Ruler guides

A ruler guide is a horizontal or vertical guide line used to align and position objects on a spread. Ruler guides are represented by the `kGuideItemBoss` boss class and are a type of page item. Ruler guides are represented as page items, because ruler guides share many behaviors of page items. Ruler guides can be associated with a layer, moved around on a spread, and copied and pasted. The signature interface that identifies a boss object as a ruler guide is `IGuideData`, which stores the properties of the guide. There are two kinds of ruler guides: page guides span a specific page, and pasteboard guides span the pasteboard of a spread.

Ruler guides are kept in their own spread layer (`kSpreadLayerBoss`) in the spread hierarchy (`IHierarchy`), so ruler guides can be drawn in front or back of other content or completely hidden. For a description of this organization, see [“Layers” on page 161](#).

Ruler guides are created by the `kNewGuideCmdBoss` command. They can be changed by the `kMoveGuideRelativeCmdBoss`, `kMoveGuideAbsoluteCmdBoss`, `kSetGuideViewThresholdCmdBoss`, `kChangeGuideColorCmdBoss`, `kSetGuidesBackCmdBoss`, `kSetGuideOrientationCmdBoss`, and `kSetGuideFitToPageCmdBoss` commands.

Guide preferences are stored in the `IGuidePrefs` interface on the document workspace (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`). A distinct set of preferences that are inherited by new documents is maintained on the session workspace (`kWorkspaceBoss`). The `kSetGuidePrefsCmdBoss` command is used to manipulate these preferences.

Margin and column guides

Margin guides represent the margins of a page. Column guides represent columns on a page. Each page (`kPageBoss`) has its own margin and column settings stored in `IMargins` and `IColumns` interfaces, respectively.

The margins for a page can be changed using `kSetPageMarginsCmdBoss`. The columns for a page can be changed using `kSetPageColumnsCmdBoss` and `kSetColumnGutterCmdBoss`.

Document grid

The document grid is a grid (like graph paper) across a spread, on which page items can be aligned.

Grid preferences are stored in the `IGridPrefs` interface on the document workspace (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`). A distinct set of preferences that are inherited by new documents is maintained on the session workspace (`kWorkspaceBoss`). The `kSetGridPrefsCmdBoss` command is used to manipulate these preferences.

Baseline grid

The baseline grid is used to align the baseline of text across multiple columns on a spread.

Baseline-grid preferences are stored in the `IBaselineGridPrefs` interface on a story (`kTextStoryBoss`), the document workspace (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`), and the session workspace (`kWorkspaceBoss`). When a new story is created, the preferences in the document workspace are inherited by the story. New documents inherit preferences from the session workspace. The `kSetBaselineGridPrefsCmdBoss` command is used to manipulate these preferences. Each story can override its baseline-grid preference settings.

Snap

If snapping is on, when the user drags an object within a certain distance of a guide or grid, the object's position is snapped to the guide or grid. If snapping is off, an object can be moved freely. Snapping is implemented by interaction between three main objects:

- The object on which other objects are being moved around; for example, a spread (`kSpreadBoss`). This object supports snapping by instantiating the `ISnapTo` interface.
- An object that can be snapped onto, like a guide or grid. The snapping is performed by a snap-to service. The signature interface is `ISnapToService`, and the `ServiceID` is `kSnapToService`.
- The object handling the user interaction. Normally, this is a tracker created by a tool of some sort. See the API reference documentation for the `ITracker` interface.

Snap preferences are stored in the `ISnapToPrefs` interface on the document workspace (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`). A distinct set of preferences that are inherited by new documents is maintained on the session workspace (`kWorkspaceBoss`). The `kSetSnapToPrefsCmdBoss` command is used to manipulate these preferences.

Layout-related preferences

The interfaces that store the major preference settings related to layout are summarized in [Table 30](#). Unless noted otherwise, each interface is present on the session workspace (`kWorkspaceBoss`) and document workspace (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`). `kWorkspaceBoss` contains the settings inherited when a new document is created. `kDocWorkspaceBoss` contains the settings for the document. For more information about the interfaces and commands listed, see the API reference documentation.

TABLE 30 *Layout-related preferences*

Interface	Note	Mutator
<code>IAutoTextFramePrefs</code>		<code>kSetAutoTextFramePrefsCmdBoss</code>
<code>IBaselineGridPrefs</code>		<code>kSetBaselineGridPrefsCmdBoss</code>
<code>IColumnPrefs</code>		<code>kSetColumnPrefsCmdBoss</code>
<code>IDocStyleListMgr</code>	Stores a list of InDesign document presets (<code>kDocStyleBoss</code>). The Save Preset button in the New Document dialog box saves entries into this list. Present only on the session workspace (<code>kWorkspaceBoss</code>).	<code>kDocAddStyleCmdBoss</code> , <code>kDocDeleteStyleCmdBoss</code> , <code>kDocEditStyleCmdBoss</code> , <code>kDocSetStyleNameCmdBoss</code> , <code>kSaveDocumentStyleDataCmdBoss</code> , <code>kDocSetDefaultStyleNameCmdBoss</code>
<code>IFrameEdgePrefs</code>		<code>kSetFrameEdgePrefsCmdBoss</code>
<code>IGridPrefs</code>		<code>kSetGridPrefsCmdBoss</code>
<code>IGuidePrefs</code>		<code>kSetGuidePrefsCmdBoss</code>
<code>ILayerPrefs</code>		<code>kSetLayerPrefsCmdBoss</code>
<code>IMarginPrefs</code>		<code>kSetMarginPrefsCmdBoss</code>
<code>IPageLayoutPrefs</code>	Stores the default shuffling behavior preferences for pages (between spreads) when pages are added, deleted, or moved.	<code>kSetPageLayoutPrefsCmdBoss</code>
<code>IPageSetupPrefs</code>	Stores the default set-up of an InDesign document (number of pages, page size, orientation, etc.).	<code>kSetPageSetupPrefsCmdBoss</code>
<code>IPasteboardPrefs</code>		<code>kSetPasteboardPrefsCmdBoss</code>
<code>ISnapToPrefs</code>		<code>kSetSnapToPrefsCmdBoss</code>
<code>IZeroPointPrefs</code>		<code>kSetZeroPointPrefCmdBoss</code>

Coordinate systems

This section describes the coordinate spaces used by layout, and the arrangement of the layout-related interfaces that store geometric data.

Coordinate systems define the geometrical location of objects in a document and the canvas on which drawing occurs. Coordinate systems determine the position, orientation, and size of the text, graphics, and images that appear on a page.

InDesign uses two-dimensional graphics. Position is defined in terms of coordinates on a two-dimensional surface (a Cartesian plane). A coordinate is a pair of real numbers, x and y , that locate a point horizontally and vertically within a two-dimensional coordinate space. A coordinate space is determined by the location of the origin, the orientation of the x and y axes, and the lengths of the units along each axis.

InDesign defines several coordinate spaces in which the coordinates that specify objects are interpreted. The following sections describe these spaces and the relationships among them. Transformations among coordinate spaces are defined by transformation matrices, which can specify any linear mapping of two-dimensional coordinates, including translation, scaling, rotation, reflection, and skewing. Matrices are used to move from one coordinate space to another.

The approach used by InDesign aligns with PostScript and Adobe PDF. For more information, see the *Adobe PDF Reference* (http://partners.adobe.com/public/developer/pdf/index_reference.html). *Computer Graphics Principles and Practice* (Foley, James D., et al., Addison-Wesley, 1990) also provides useful theory on two-dimensional geometrical transformation.

Transformation matrices

A transformation matrix specifies the relationship between two coordinate spaces as a linear mapping of one coordinate space to another. By modifying a transformation matrix, objects can be scaled, rotated, translated, or transformed in other ways.

In InDesign, a transformation matrix is specified by six numbers in the form of a PMMatrix. In its most general form, this PMMatrix is denoted $[a\ b\ c\ d\ e\ f]$; it can represent any linear transformation from one coordinate system to another.

The PMMatrix patterns that specify the most common transformations are as follows:

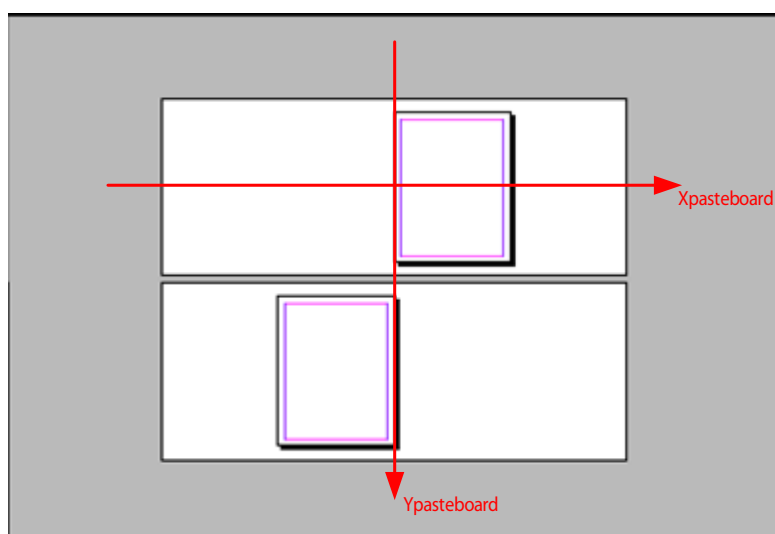
- Translation is specified by $[1\ 0\ 0\ 1\ T_x\ T_y]$, where T_x and T_y are the distances to translate the origin of the coordinate system in the horizontal and vertical dimensions, respectively.
- Scaling is specified by $[S_x\ 0\ 0\ S_y\ 0\ 0]$. This scales the coordinates so one unit in the horizontal and vertical dimensions of the new coordinate system is the same size as S_x and S_y units, respectively, in the previous coordinate system.

- Rotation is specified by $[\cos(A) \sin(A) -\sin(A) \cos(A) 0 0]$, which has the effect of rotating the coordinate system axes by an angle A counterclockwise.
- Skew is specified by $[1 \tan(A) \tan(B) 1 0 0]$, which skews the x axis by angle A and the y axis by angle B .

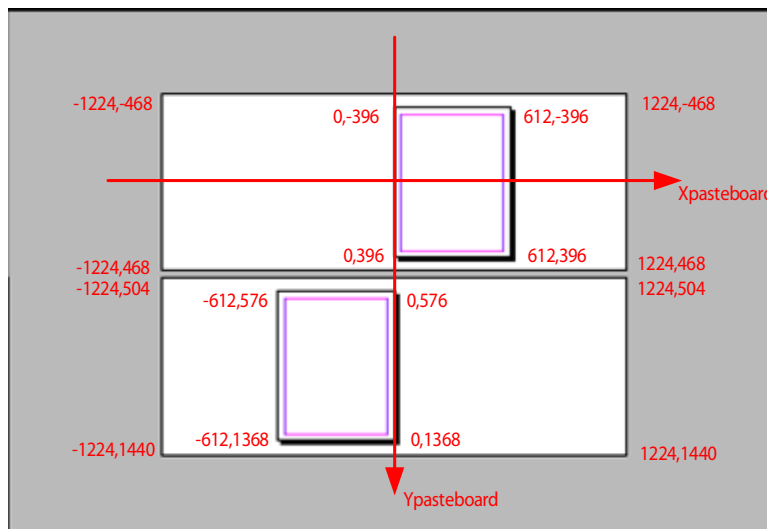
Pasteboard coordinate space

The pasteboard coordinate space is the global coordinate system that encloses all objects in a document, as shown in [Figure 61](#).

FIGURE 61 *Pasteboard coordinate space*



All objects in a layout can have their coordinates expressed in pasteboard coordinates. The origin is the center of the first spread. The x axis increases from left to right; the y axis decreases from up to down. The length along each axis is measured in the PostScript unit of points. For example, [Figure 62](#) shows the pasteboard coordinates of the bounding boxes for the spreads and pages in a basic document. The figure shows the pasteboard coordinates of the bounding box of each spread and page in a facing-page document with letter-sized pages of width 612 points and height 792 points. All values shown are in PostScript points.

FIGURE 62 Pasteboard coordinates of spread and page bounding boxes

The unit in which all measurements are stored in a document is the PostScript point. The unit in which measurements are shown in the user interface is controlled by a preference (see “[Measurement units](#)” on page 192).

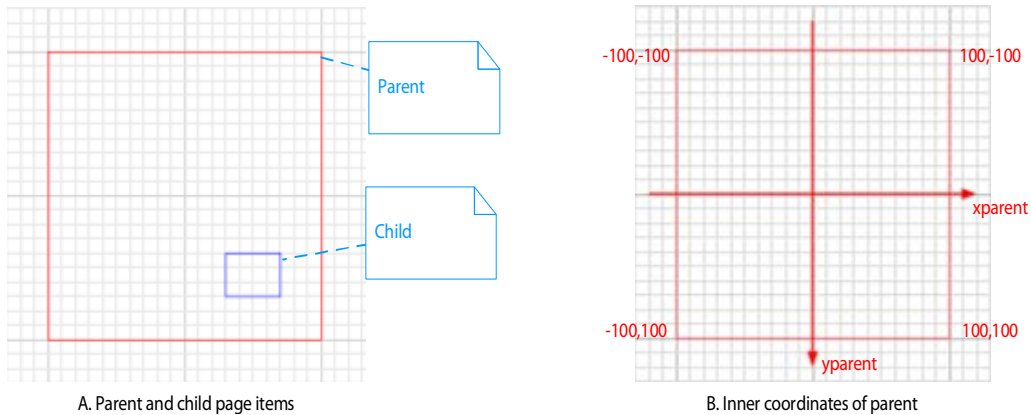
Inner coordinate space and parent coordinate space

Each page item has its own coordinate system, known as its inner coordinate space. Each page item has an associated parent coordinate space. The inner coordinate space and its relationship with its parent coordinate space are defined by three interfaces:

- **IHierarchy** defines the parent association. The parent coordinate space is the first ancestor boss object on **IHierarchy** that has an **IGeometry** interface. This may not be the boss object’s immediate parent. For example, many objects are owned by a spread layer (**kSpreadLayerBoss**). Spread layers are not geometrical objects; they do not have an **IGeometry** interface; therefore, the parent coordinate space for a boss object owned by a spread layer is the spread (**kSpreadBoss**).
- **IGeometry** defines the bounding box, which implies the origin and orientation of the x and y axes.
- **ITransform** defines the transformation matrix that maps from the inner coordinate space to the parent coordinate space.

Figure 63 shows a square containing a rectangular child page item as an example of a parent page item. The inner coordinate system of the parent as defined by its **IGeometry** interface is shown.

FIGURE 63 Parent coordinates



A. Parent and child page items

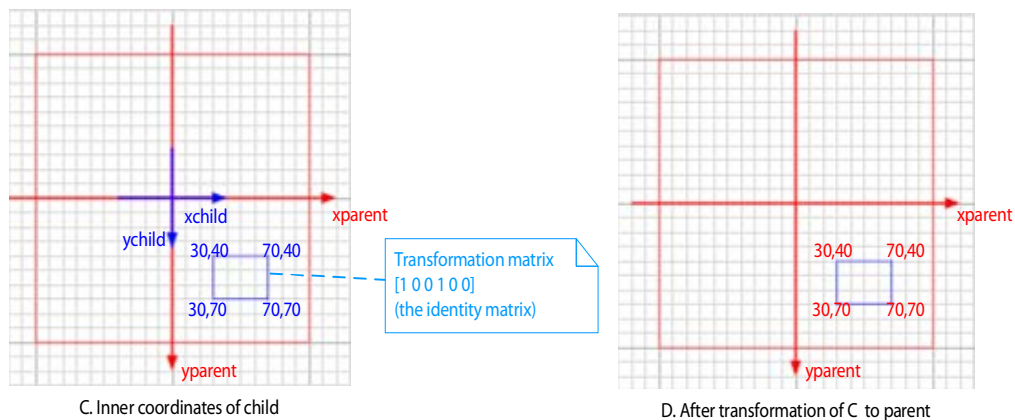
B. Inner coordinates of parent

In the A part of [Figure 63](#), the parent is a square (`kSplineItemBoss`), 200 points wide. The child is a rectangle (`kSplineItemBoss`), 40 points wide and 30 points high. The square is used as a frame for the rectangle; this association is defined by the `IHierarchy` interface. The objects are shown on a document grid with a grid line every 100 points and subdivisions every 10 points.

In the B part of [Figure 63](#), the bounding box stored by the square’s `IGeometry` interface defines the origin of the object’s inner coordinate space and the orientation of its x and y axes. The coordinates of the bounding box of the square in its inner coordinate space are shown, together with the x and y axes these coordinates imply. For a parent object, this is known as the parent coordinate space.

The `IGeometry` and `ITransform` interfaces on the child object express the coordinate system relationship to the parent. There is more than one way to arrange this data. In [Figure 64](#), the child’s coordinate system (the rectangle) is coincident with the parent’s coordinate system (the square).

FIGURE 64 Coincident inner coordinates and parent coordinates



C. Inner coordinates of child

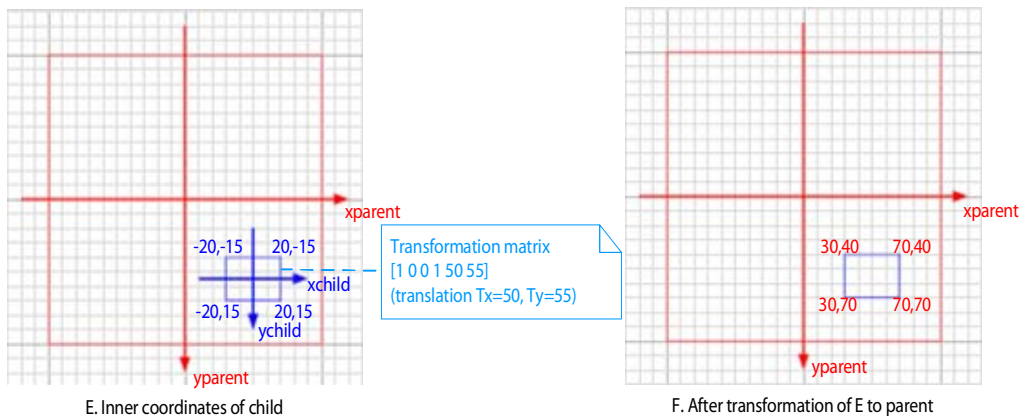
D. After transformation of C to parent

In the C part of [Figure 64](#), the rectangle has its own inner coordinate space. The bounding box stored by the rectangle's IGeometry interface is shown. This bounding box defines the origin of the object's inner coordinate space and the orientation of its x and y axes, labeled xchild and ychild. The transformation matrix defined by the rectangle's ITransform interface maps the rectangle's inner coordinate space (the child coordinate space) into the square's coordinate space (the parent coordinate space). In the arrangement shown, the parent and child coordinate systems are coincident; therefore, the transformation matrix in ITransform is the identity matrix.

In the D part of [Figure 64](#), when the bounding box of the child (the rectangle) is transformed using the child's transformation matrix to the parent coordinate space (the square), the coordinates are expressed in the parent coordinate space as shown.

In the arrangement shown in [Figure 65](#), the child coordinate space is not coincident with its parent coordinate space. Instead, the origin of the rectangle's coordinate space is located at the rectangle's center.

FIGURE 65 Non-coincident Inner coordinates and parent coordinates



In the E part of [Figure 65](#), the origin of the rectangle's inner coordinate space is located at its center. The coordinates of the bounding box defined by the rectangle's IGeometry interface, are shown together with the x and y axes these coordinates imply, labeled xchild and ychild. The transformation matrix defined by the child's ITransform interface specifies the translation required to map to the parent coordinate space.

In the F part of [Figure 65](#), when the bounding box of the child (the rectangle) is transformed using the child's transformation matrix to the parent coordinate space (the square), the coordinates are expressed in the parent coordinate space as shown.

A comparison of [Figure 64](#) and [Figure 65](#) shows that, after transformation, the bounding box of the rectangle in its parent's coordinate space is the same.

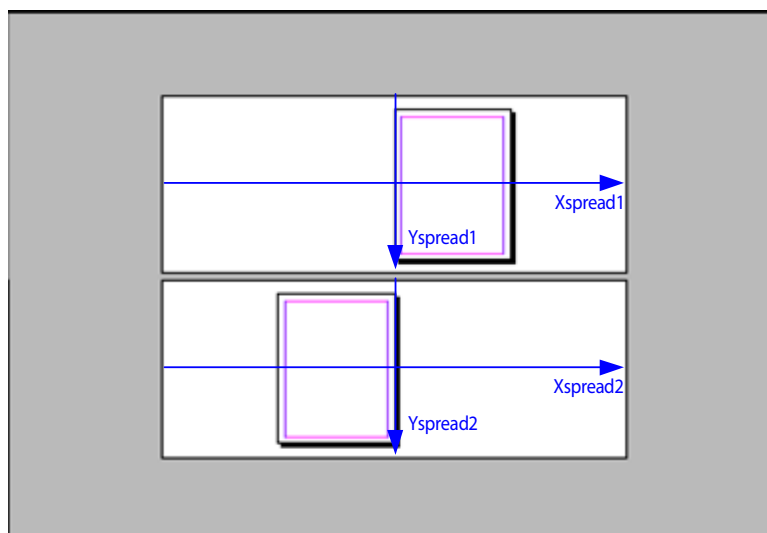
NOTE: To transform any point from inner coordinate space to any other coordinate space, the page item's transformation matrix (ITransform) must be applied. For utilities to help with the calculations, see TransformUtils.

Tools like the Rectangle tool use a tracker (`CPathCreationTracker`) to create a path (`kSplineItemBoss`) whose coordinate system is coincident with their parent coordinate system as shown in [Figure 64](#). Facades like `IPathUtils` often are used to create a path (`kSplineItemBoss`) arranged as shown in [Figure 65](#).

Spread coordinate space

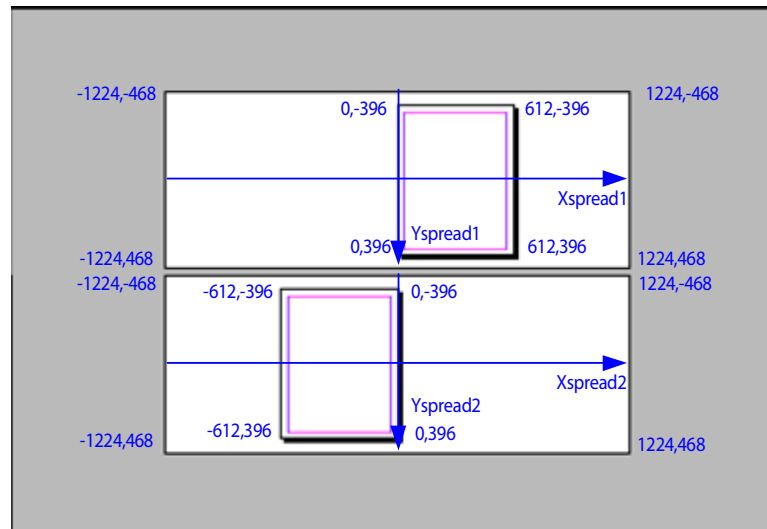
Spread coordinate space is the coordinate system of a spread (`kSpreadBoss`). Each spread has its own coordinate space, also known as the inner coordinate space for a spread. The origin of the spread coordinate space is the center of the spread. The parent coordinate space is pasteboard coordinate space. Unlike other page items, the parent of a spread is not defined by `IHierarchy`; the parent of a spread is fixed as the document (`kDocBoss`). See [Figure 66](#).

FIGURE 66 *Spread coordinate space*



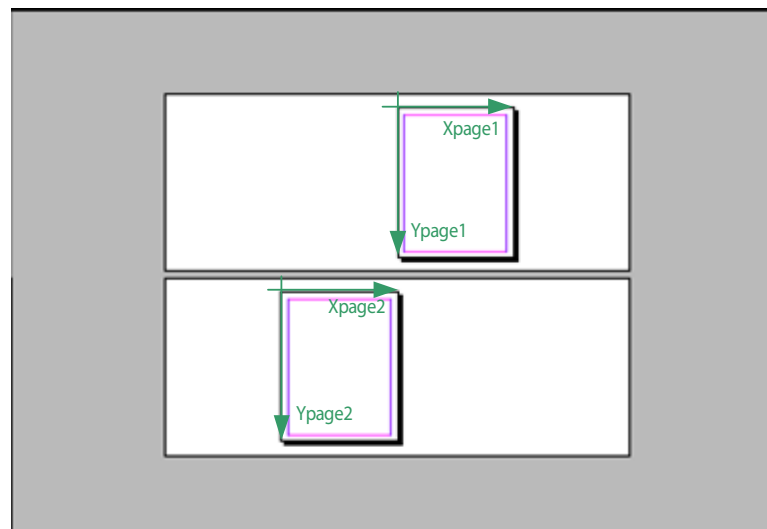
In spread coordinates, the bounding box of each spread is identical. It is returned by `IGeometry::GetStrokeBoundingBox`. The spread's (`kSpreadBoss`) implementation of `IGeometry` determines the bounding box using the `IPasteboard` interface. The spread's `ITransform` interface stores a transformation matrix that translates the spread coordinate space to pasteboard coordinate space. This matrix is a translation matrix $[1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ Ty]$, where Ty specifies the spread's offset in the vertical dimension.

[Figure 67](#) shows the spread coordinates of the bounding box of each spread and page in a facing-page document with letter-sized pages 612 points wide and 792 points high.

FIGURE 67 Spread coordinates of spread and page bounding boxes in a basic document

Page coordinate space

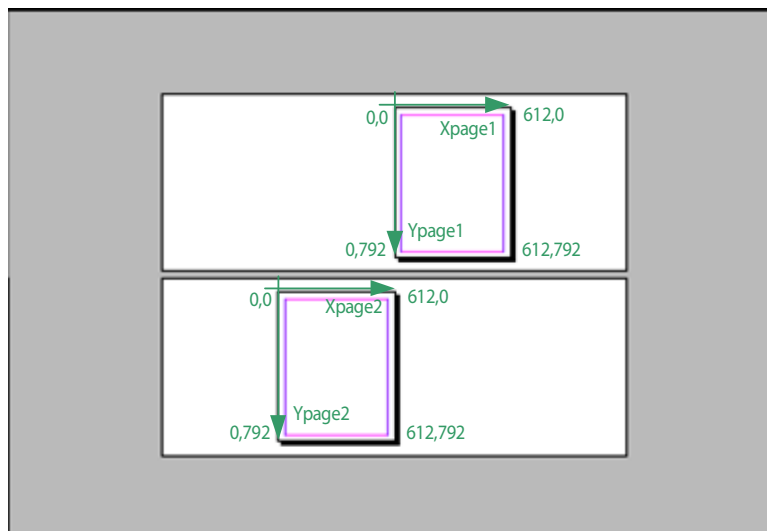
Each page has its own coordinate space, also known as the inner coordinate space for a page (`kPageBoss`). The parent coordinate space for page coordinate space is spread coordinate space. The origin of page coordinate space is the top-left corner of the page. See [Figure 68](#).

FIGURE 68 Page coordinate space

In page coordinates, the bounding box of each page (`kPageBoss`) in a document is identical. It is returned by `IGeometry::GetStrokeBoundingBox`. The page's `ITransform` interface stores a transformation matrix that translates the page coordinate space to spread coordinate space.

[Figure 69](#) shows the page coordinates of the bounding box of each page in a facing-page document with letter-sized pages 612 points wide and 792 points high.

FIGURE 69 Page coordinates of page bounding boxes in a basic document



Page-item coordinate space

Each page item has its own coordinate space, known as its inner coordinate space. The page item's bounding box is stored in interface `IGeometry`. The geometrical data stored in `IGeometry` and other data interfaces specific to the page item type are in the inner coordinate space of the page item. For example, the points that describe a path in interface `IPathGeometry` are stored in the inner coordinate space. A transformation matrix that transforms from inner coordinate space to parent coordinate space is stored in the `ITransform` interface. The parent coordinate system is defined by the `IHierarchy` interface.

For more information, see [“Inner coordinate space and parent coordinate space”](#) on page 185.

Bounding box and IGeometry

The bounding box (`IGeometry::GetStrokeBoundingBox`) is the smallest rectangle (`PMRect`) that encloses a geometric page item:

- The bounding box of an image (`kImageItem`) encloses the pixels that define its raster data.
- The bounding box of a group (`kGroupItemBoss`) is the union of the bounding boxes of the objects in the group.

- The bounding box of a path (kSplineItemBoss) encloses all points in the path (IPathGeometry) and includes the effect of the properties that control how the path is stroked, such as stroke weight and corner style.
- The bounding box of a page (kPageBoss) or spread (kSpreadBoss) encloses the objects that lie on it.

For illustrations, see [“Spread coordinate space” on page 188](#) and [“Page coordinate space” on page 189](#).

A page item stores the data that describes its geometry in its inner coordinate space. For example, the bounding box in IGeometry and the points that describe a path in interface IPathGeometry are stored in inner coordinate space (see [“Inner coordinate space and parent coordinate space” on page 185](#)). This stored data is independent of any transformation that may be in effect. Transformation (e.g., scaling and rotation) is described by the page item’s ITransform interface.

The IGeometry::GetPathBoundingBox method gives the path bounding box, the bounding box of a path excluding the effects of adornments.

NOTE: Paths (kSplineItemBoss) have path bounding boxes; page items of other types may not.

The IShape::GetPaintedBBox method gives the painted bounding box, the bounding box of the page item including the effect of adornments.

[Table 31](#) lists some useful geometry-related APIs.

TABLE 31 Useful geometry-related APIs

API	Note
IGeometry	Stores the bounding box of a page item.
IGeometryFacade	Positions and resizes page items.
IGeometrySuite	Positions and resizes objects currently selected.

Transformation and ITransform

A page item has its own coordinate space, its inner coordinate space. (See [“Inner coordinate space and parent coordinate space” on page 185](#).) The coordinates of the points that describe the page item are stored in this inner coordinate space. A transformation matrix (PMMatrix) that maps from inner coordinate space to the parent coordinate space is stored in the ITransform interface. Scaling, rotation, and other transformations that may be in effect are represented in this matrix. Points in inner coordinate space are mapped to the parent coordinate space using the matrix obtained from ITransform::GetInnerToParentMatrix. There are useful functions in TransformUtils.h that help to get the transform matrix (InnerToParentMatrix) and perform transform calculations. For details, see the API reference documentation.

For example, to calculate the bounding box of a page item in its parent coordinate space, get the bounding box from the page item (IGeometry::GetStrokeBoundingBox), and apply its transformation matrix (ITransform::GetInnerToParentMatrix). The calculated bounding box takes into account all scaling, rotation, and other transformations that are applied. The parent could

be a group (`kGroupItemBoss`), frame (`kSplineItemBoss`), spread (`kSpreadBoss`), or other kind of page item.

A transformation matrix can be inverted (`PMatrix::Invert`) to create a matrix that performs the inverse transformation. For example, if you have a matrix that transforms from inner coordinate space to parent coordinate space (`InnerToParentMatrix`), the inverse matrix can be used to transform points from parent coordinate space to inner coordinate space.

The matrix that transforms from inner coordinate space to pasteboard coordinate space is returned by `ITransform::GetInnerToRootMatrix`. To access it, we recommend you use a helper function, `InnerToPasteboardMatrix`. This code walks up the hierarchy (`IHierarchy`) and concatenates the transformation matrix (`ITransform::GetInnerToParentMatrix`) of each page item. The end result is a matrix that maps from the inner coordinates of the page item it started from into pasteboard coordinates.

To compare the coordinates of two or more page items, the coordinates first should be transformed to a common coordinate space. The pasteboard coordinate space often is used for this purpose.

When creating a path (`kSplineItemBoss`), it often is useful to specify its position in pasteboard coordinates. You often position new page items relative to an existing boss object, like a spread, page, or frame. For example, to determine a position relative to a page, you first need the `IGeometry` interface of the page (`kPageBoss`); then you can call `InnerToPasteboard` to transform points on that page into pasteboard coordinates. When you have the points described in pasteboard coordinates, you can use `IPathUtils` to create the path. Alternately, you can describe the points in the parent coordinate space as shown by the sample code in `SnpcCreateFrame` and `SDKLayoutHelper`.

[Table 32](#) lists some useful transformation-related APIs.

TABLE 32 Useful transformation-related APIs

API	Note
<code>ITransform</code>	Stores the page item's transformation matrix.
<code>TransformUtils</code>	Utility functions for transform calculations. See methods like <code>InnerToPasteboard</code> and <code>PasteboardToInner</code> in <code>TransformUtils.h</code> .
<code>ITransformFacade</code>	Scale, rotate, skew, or move page items.
<code>ITransformSuite</code>	Scale, rotate, skew, or move objects currently selected.

Measurement units

The internal unit of measurement used by the application is PostScript points. All measurements in a document are stored in the internal measurement unit as `PMReal` values. The user can choose to work in other measurement units, like centimeters, inches, picas, or ciceros. The user's preferred measurement unit is converted to and from the standard internal unit (PostScript points) at the boundary between the user interface and the document model.

Unit-of-measure service

The conversion from a specific measurement unit to the internal measurement unit is performed by a unit-of-measure service.

A unit-of-measure service is a boss class that aggregates the `IUnitOfMeasure` and `IK2ServiceProvider` interfaces. `IUnitOfMeasure` is the interface responsible for converting between the unit of measure and the internal unit of measure. `IUnitOfMeasure` also has methods for producing a formatted string representation from units and tokenizing a string to produce a formatted number from the string. The measurement units supported by the application can be extended. For more information, see [“Custom unit-of-measure service” on page 203](#).

Common unit-of-measure services include `kPointsBoss`, `kInchesBoss`, `kInchesDecimalBoss`, `kMillimetersBoss`, `kPicasBoss`, `kCicerosBoss`, and `kCentimetersBoss`.

Measurement-unit preferences

The user’s preferred measurement unit is stored in the `IUnitOfMeasureSettings` interface. The session workspace (`kWorkspaceBoss`) stores the measurement-unit preferences inherited by new documents. The document workspace (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`) stores the document’s preferences. The user changes these preferences by choosing `Edit > Preferences > Units & Increments` and using the resulting dialog box. To change these preferences programmatically, use the `kSetMeasureUnitsCmdBoss` command.

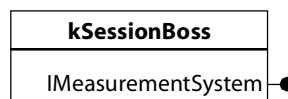
[Figure 70](#) is a class diagram of `IUnitOfMeasureSettings`.

FIGURE 70 Measurement-unit preferences (`IUnitOfMeasureSettings`)



The measurement system, `IMeasurementSystem`, is an interface aggregated on `kSessionBoss` that is used to help locate and use a unit-of-measure service. Unit-of-measure services can be referred to by either their `ClassID` or an index the measurement system assigns. The index assigned by the measurement system is used while referring to a unit of measure in memory, but this index should be converted to a `ClassID` when writing or reading from a stream. [Figure 71](#) is a class diagram of `IMeasurementSystem`.

FIGURE 71 Measurement system (`IMeasurementSystem`)



Geometrical data types

The core geometrical data types are as follows:

- *PMPoint* — (x, y) coordinates expressed as real (PMReal) numbers.
- *PMRect* — Rectangle represented by points that designate the top-left and bottom-right corners.
- *PMatrix* — Two-dimensional transformation matrix that maps from one coordinate space to another.

The core geometrical-collection data types are as follows:

- *PMPointList*
- *PMRectCollection*
- *PMatrixCollection*

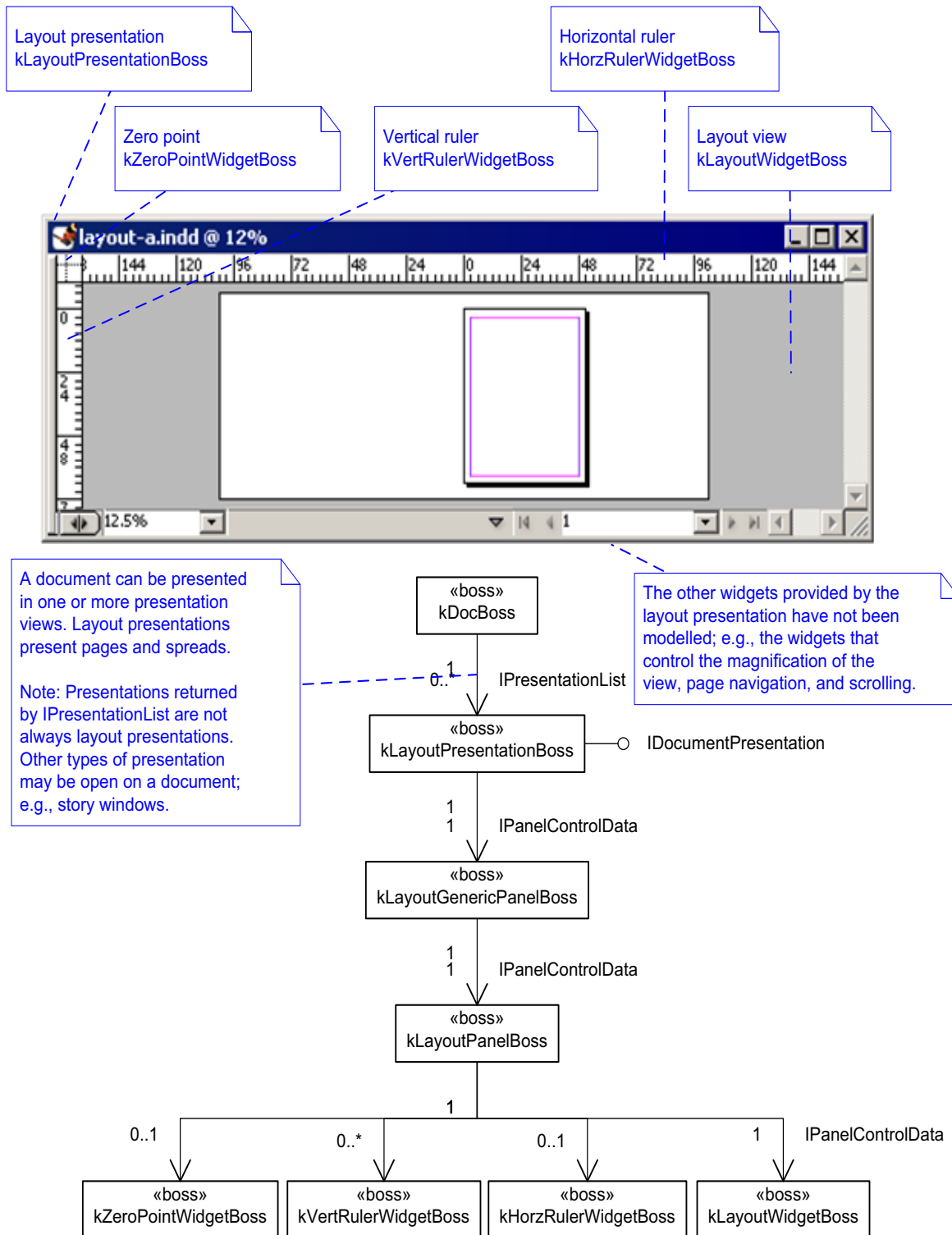
The layout presentation and view

This section describes the objects that present the layout to the user and allow the content to be edited interactively.

Layout presentation

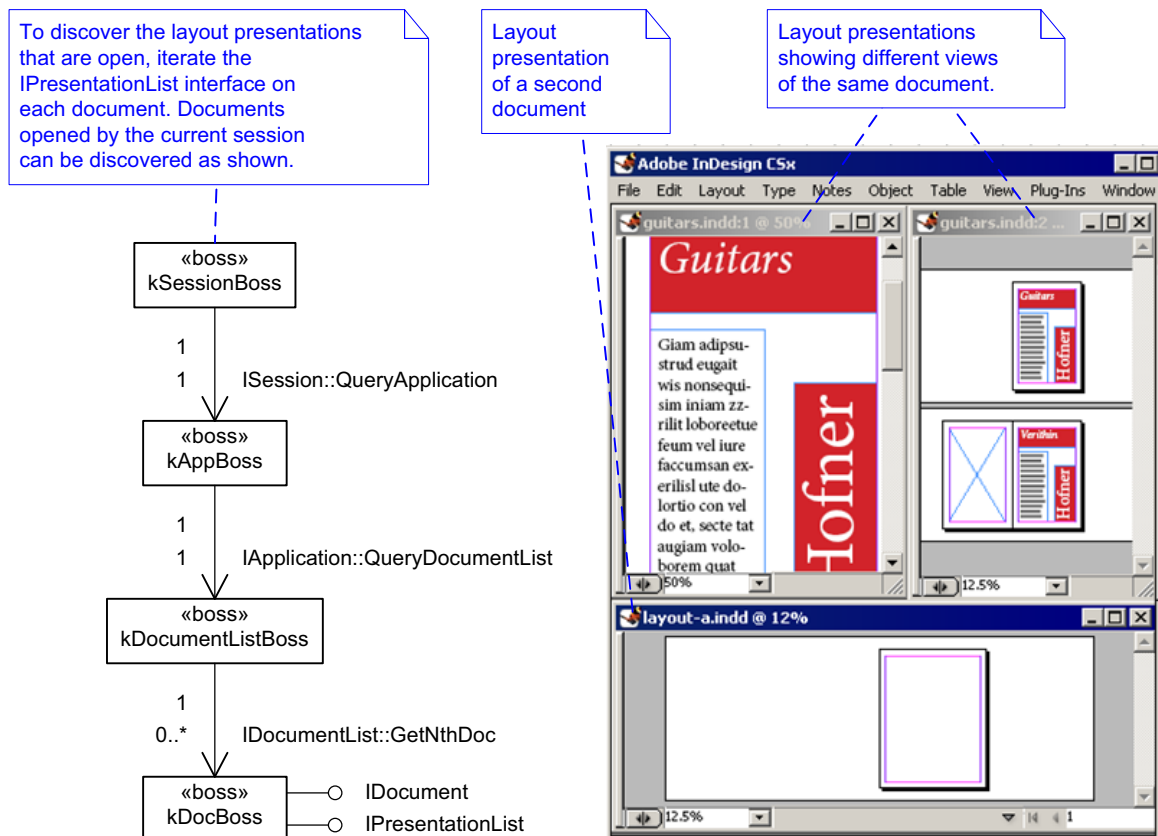
The layout of a document is presented within a layout presentation. A document has a layout presentation (`kLayoutPresentationBoss`) for each view of the publication's layout. A layout presentation is implemented by `kLayoutPresentationBoss` and its associated widgets. The pages and spreads are presented by the layout view (`kLayoutWidgetBoss`). The general arrangement is shown in the class diagram in [Figure 72](#).

FIGURE 72 Layout presentation



The application may have several layout presentations open at once, each displaying different documents or different views of the same document, as shown in the class diagram in [Figure 73](#). The figure shows a screenshot of the application with three layout presentations open. The boss classes and interfaces required to discover the documents open under the current session also are also shown. Each document knows the windows that are open on it by means of the IPresentationList interface on kDocBoss.

FIGURE 73 Multiple layout presentations



A document does not need to have a presentation view. Documents that do not have a presentation view can be edited programmatically. Sometimes this called editing a headless document.

Layout view

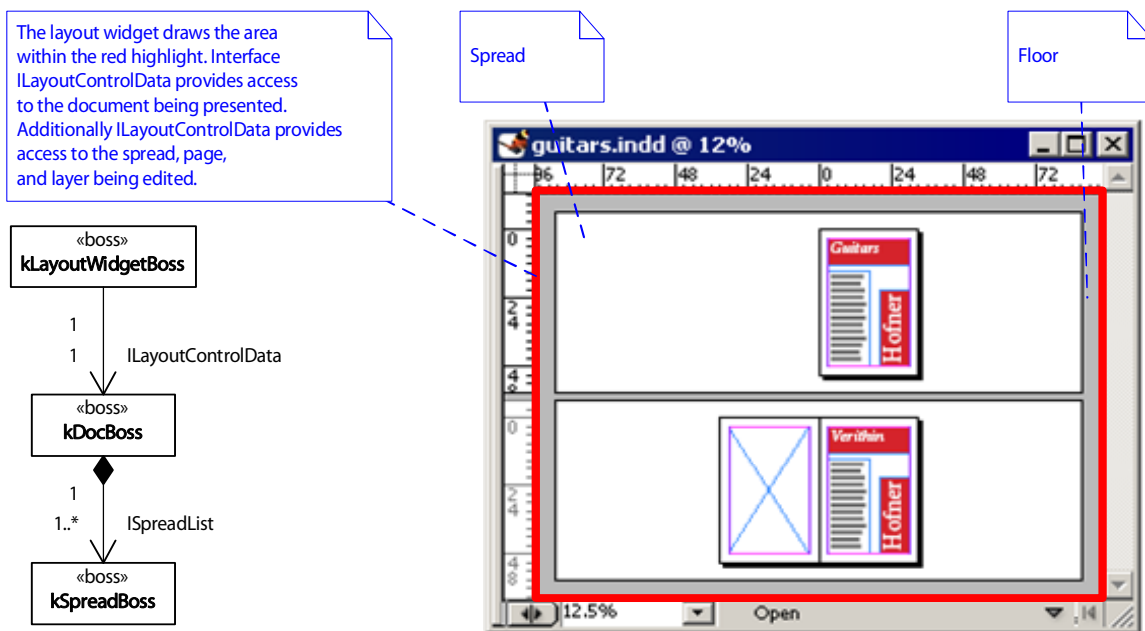
The layout view presents the layout of a document and is represented by the kLayoutWidget-Boss boss class. Documents can contain a variety of objects, like spreads, pages, frames, text, and graphics. The document stores these objects; the layout view displays them and allows them to be edited interactively. The layout view is part of a layout presentation (see [Figure 72](#)).

Only the visible part of a document is presented in layout view. The layout presentation controls which part of a document is visible using magnification and page navigation widgets, etc. Other panels, like the Pages and Navigation panels, also may adjust the view.

The layout view sometimes is known as the layout widget.

The layout view causes the visible objects to draw by discovering the spreads that are visible and calling each spread to draw. The general arrangement is shown in the class diagram in Figure 74.

FIGURE 74 Layout view and its associated document



The layout view uses its ILayoutControlData interface to get to its associated document. The ISpreadList interface on the document provides access to any particular spread. The IHierarchy interface can be used to access children of the spread. For reasons of efficiency, navigation of the layout hierarchy during a window draw is somewhat more selective than shown in Figure 74. Portions of spreads that are not visible in a window are not called to draw. The layout view also discriminates between redrawing an entire window and drawing only the region that changed. These two strategies mean page items are not guaranteed to be called to draw during every window draw.

Current spread and active layer

The current spread is the spread (kSpreadBoss) targeted for edit operations. Normally, new page items created by the tools that handle user actions in the layout view are created in the current spread. Each view (kLayoutWidgetBoss) stores a reference to its current spread in ILayoutControlData::GetSpreadRef. The current spread is set in the user interface by clicking on a

spread in the layout view. The tool that handles the click processes the `kSetSpreadCmdBoss` command. A reference to the current spread of the view that most recently edited the document (`kDocBoss`) is stored in the `IPersistUIDData` interface with `PMIID_IID_ICURRENTSPREAD`.

The active layer is the layer targeted for edit operations. New page items created by the tools that handle user actions in the layout view are assigned to the active layer. Each view (`kLayoutWidgetBoss`) has a reference to its active layer (`kDocumentLayerBoss`) given by `ILayoutControlData::GetActiveDocLayerUID`. The active layer is set in the user interface by clicking on a layer in the Layers panel, which then processes the `kSetActiveLayerCmdBoss` command. A reference to the active layer of the view that most recently edited the document can be found by calling `ILayerUtils::QueryDocumentActiveLayer`.

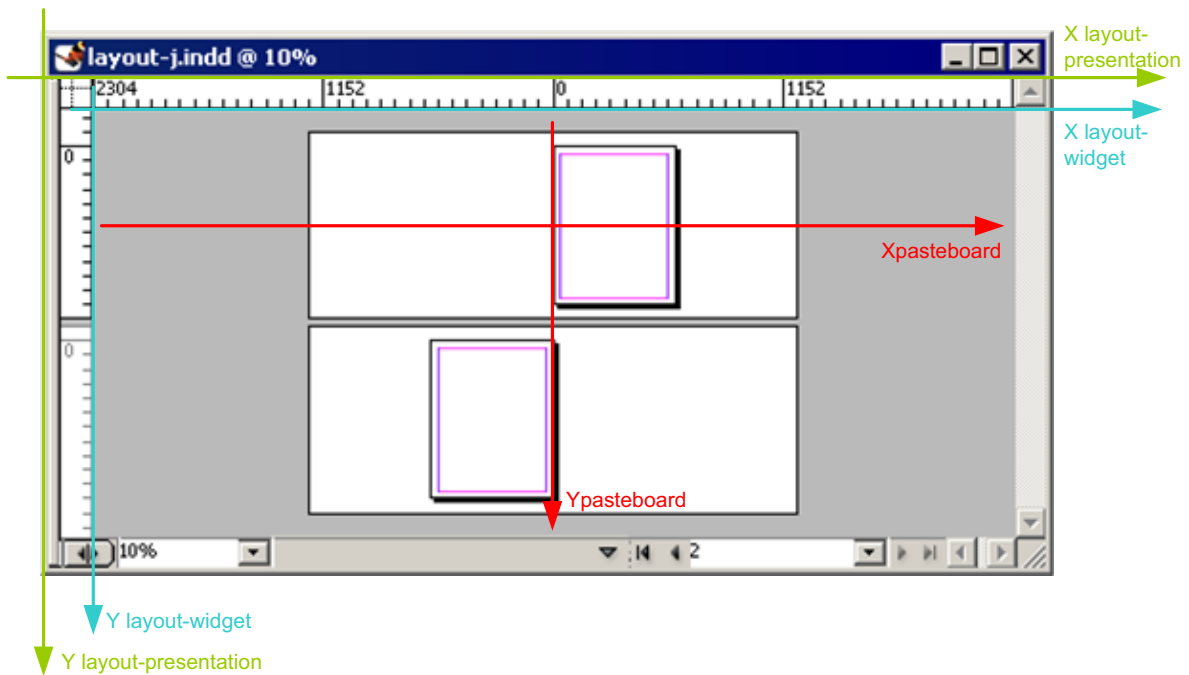
When creating a page item programmatically, choose its parent boss object. Normally, this is a spread layer (`kSpreadLayerBoss`). If you have access to a layout view, `ILayoutControlData::QueryActiveLayer` returns the hierarchy of the spread layer to use.

NOTE: The current page is not stored anywhere in a document (in contrast, the current spread and active layer are stored as described above). `ILayoutControlData::GetPage` returns the visible page. This is calculated by means of `ILayoutUIUtils::GetVisiblePageUID`, by finding the page whose center point is closest to the center of the layout view.

Layout-presentation and layout-view coordinate spaces

The relationship between layout-presentation coordinates and layout-view coordinates is relatively static and is described by the respective `IControlView` implementations. When the user hides the rulers, the layout-view coordinate space is coincident with the layout-presentation coordinate space. The relationship between pasteboard coordinates and layout-view coordinates is stored in the layout view's `IControlView` interface. The layout view's `IControlView::GetContentToWindowTransform` method returns the transform that maps from pasteboard coordinates to layout-view coordinates. See [Figure 75](#).

FIGURE 75 Layout-presentation and layout-view coordinate spaces



As the user zooms and scrolls the view, the relationship between layout-view coordinates and pasteboard coordinates changes. The layout view (`kLayoutWidgetBoss`) has an `IPanorama` interface to track the scroll and zoom changes. The relationship between the pasteboard and layout-view coordinate systems is stored in the layout view's `IControlView` interface. The layout view's `IControlView::GetContentToWindowTransform` method returns the transform that maps from pasteboard coordinates to window coordinates. By using the known coordinate relationships in the layout hierarchy, a region described in a page item's inner coordinate space can be mapped to the window coordinates.

Global-screen coordinates can be converted to pasteboard coordinates using `ILayoutUIUtils::ComputePasteboardPoint`. Event handlers often return mouse locations in global-screen coordinates.

Key client APIs

This section summarizes the APIs provided to manipulate layout-related objects. For more information, see the API reference documentation.

The layout view (`kLayoutWidgetBoss`) displays a document for editing and provides some important data interfaces, summarized in [Table 33](#). The layout view can be obtained in several ways, one of which is calling `ILayoutUIUtils::QueryFrontLayoutData`.

TABLE 33 Layout user-interface APIs

API	Note
ILayoutControlData	Data interface that refers to the document being viewed and the spread, page, and layer currently selected
ILayoutControlViewHelper	Helper routines for performing page item hit-testing

Table 34 summarizes the suite interfaces that manipulate layout-related objects that are selected. To obtain a suite, client code can query a selection manager interface (ISelectionManager) for the suite of interest. If the suite is available, its interface is returned; otherwise, a nil pointer is returned. For details of how to obtain the selection manager, see the “Selection” chapter of *Learning the Adobe InDesign CS4 Architecture*. Given a selection manager, you can call suite methods using code that follows this pattern:

```
InterfacePtr<IGeometrySuite> suite(selectionManager, UseDefaultIID());
if (suite) suite->MethodName();
```

TABLE 34 Layout suites

API	Description
IAlignAndDistributeSuite	Aligns and distributes objects that are selected.
IArrangeSuite	Brings forward, sends backward, or performs other z-order-related operations on objects that are selected.
IFrameContentSuite	Content-fitting operations and frame conversion operations on objects that are selected.
IGeometrySuite	Positions and resizes objects that are selected.
IGroupItemSuite	Groups and ungroups objects that are selected.
IGuideDataSuite	Manipulates the properties of guides that are selected.
ILayerSuite	Manipulates document layers.
ILayoutHitTestSuite	Hit-tests objects that are selected.
ILayoutSelectionSuite	Sets the page items that are selected.
IMasterPageSuite	Manipulates master page item overrides.
IPageItemLockSuite	Locks or unlocks objects that are selected.
IPathOperationSuite	Performs path operations of selected page items.
IPathSelectionSuite	Performs path selections.
IReferencePointSuite	Manipulates reference point.
ITransformSuite	Scales, rotates, skews, or moves objects that are currently selected.

There are many command boss classes related to layout, as summarized in “[Commands that manipulate page items](#)” on page 204. When possible, try to avoid processing low-level commands when possible; instead, look for a facade or utility, to see if there is a method that serves your purpose on one of these interfaces. Facades encapsulate parameterizing and processing the low-level commands. For example, to add an item to a page-item hierarchy, you could process `kAddToHierarchyCmdBoss`, but instead you should use `IHierarchyUtils::AddToHierarchy`, which provides a ready-made facade.

The facades and utilities related to layout are listed in [Table 35](#) and [Table 36](#). These interfaces are aggregated on `kUtilsBoss`. The `Utils` smart pointer class makes it straightforward to acquire and call methods on these interfaces. You can call their methods by writing code that follows this pattern:

```
Utils<IPathUtils>() ->MethodName(...)
```

TABLE 35 *Layout facades and utilities*

API	Description
<code>IGeometryFacade</code>	Positions and resizes page items.
<code>ITransformFacade</code>	Scales, rotates, skews, or moves page items.
<code>IPathUtils</code>	Creates and works with paths (<code>kSplineItemBoss</code>).
<code>IFrameContentUtils</code>	Helps work with text or graphic-frame content.
<code>IHierarchyUtils</code>	Adds and removes page items from a hierarchy (<code>IHierarchy</code>).
<code>IImageUtils</code>	Helper functions to get image information.
<code>ILayoutUIUtils</code>	Helper functions related to the layout user interface. Most of these are related to the active or front document.
<code>ILayoutUtils</code>	Helper functions related to layout. Most of these are related to pages or the page-item hierarchy.
<code>IMasterSpreadUtils</code>	Helper functions for master spreads and master page items.
<code>IPageItemUtils</code>	Page-item helper functions, like cache and change notifications.
<code>IPageItemTypeUtils</code>	Helps determine the type of a page item (e.g., path, frame, and image).
<code>IPasteboardUtils</code>	Helps determine the spread by location or gets the location of page items.
<code>IPathInfoUtils</code>	Helps get path information.
<code>IPathPointUtils</code>	Stores path points during path-point transformation.
<code>IPathUtils</code>	Creates and manipulates path page items.
<code>IRefPointUtils</code>	Utility interface for functions that compute reference points.

API	Description
ITransformUpdateUtils	Helps determine values relative to the zero point.
IValidateGeometryUtils	Validates transformation data.

TABLE 36 Layout helper classes

API	Note
Arranger	Brings to front, sends to back, and performs other z-order-related operations. See ArrangeUtils.h.
TransformUtils	Utility functions for transform calculations. See methods in TransformUtils.h, such as InnerToPasteboard and PasteboardToInner.

Extension patterns

This section summarizes the mechanisms a plug-in can use to extend the layout subsystem.

New-page-item responder

A new-page-item responder lets a plug-in receive notification when a new page item (e.g., frame, path, group, or image) is created by `kNewPageItemCmdBoss`. For the complete list of page item types, see “Page items” on page 173.

A new-page-item responder often is used to detect the creation of a specific type of page item. For example, to detect the creation of a graphic frame, implement a new-page-item responder that gets a reference to the new page item (`INewPISignalData::GetPageItem`) and then checks whether it is a graphic frame (`IPageItemTypeUtils::IsGraphicFrame`).

Another common use of a new-page-item responder is initializing a custom data interface on a page item from defaults.

Consider the case where you defined a custom data interface and added this data interface to the document workspace (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`) to store default data. You also added this data interface to `kDrawablePageItemBoss` to store the settings per page item, and you want the default data to be inherited when new page items are created. In this case, you can implement a new-page-item responder that copies the data from defaults into the new page item. For an implementation of this pattern, see `BasicPersistInterface`.

A new-page-item responder is a service provider characterized by the following:

- *The responder interface IResponder* — The implementation can expect to be able to acquire an INewPISignalData interface from the signal manager (ISignalMgr) that it is passed.
- *The signature interface IK2ServiceProvider* — The ServiceID must be of type kNewPISignalResponderService. You can re-use the API implementation kNewPISignalRespServiceImpl for this.

Sample code

BasicPersistInterface copies data from defaults into new page items.

Custom page item

A custom page item lets a plug-in extend the set of objects that can be laid out on a page. A custom page item gives the plug-in control of how the object is drawn and how it behaves when selected and manipulated by the user. A common use of a custom page item is adding support for a graphics format for which the application provides no native support. In this case, the custom page item also requires a custom import provider (IImportProvider), to allow files of that graphics format to be placed. Some custom page items also may require custom tools to be implemented to create and manipulate the custom page items.

Implementing a custom page item can be complex. Before beginning development of a custom page item, evaluate whether another type of extension pattern—like a page-item adornment or draw-event handler—might meet your needs. If you do need to implement a custom page item, study the subclasses of kPageItemBoss to see if there is an existing page item that is a close match to what you need. (See kPageItemBoss in the API reference documentation.) If an existing page item comes close to meeting your needs, use this boss class as the base class for your implementation. The examples provided in the SDK show only the basics of what is involved.

Sample code

- BasicShape specializes kSplineItemBoss and shows how to implement the interfaces involved in drawing a page item.
- CandleChart specializes kSplineItemBoss to show how to draw some data as a chart.

Custom unit-of-measure service

Plug-ins can extend the set of measurement units supported by the application by defining a unit-of-measure service. The following steps outline what a plug-in needs to do to make a custom unit of measure appear in the Edit > Preferences > Units & Increments dialog box:

1. Define a unit-of-measure service boss class.
2. Implement the C++ code for IUnitOfMeasure, using CUnitOfMeasure as a base.

3. Implement `IK2ServiceProvider` using the default `kUnitOfMeasureService` provided by the API, which registers the custom unit with the application-measurement system.
4. Include a ruler-resource description of the ODFRez type `RulerDataType` for your custom unit of measure in the `.fr` resource file.

Rulers

Rulers are displayed by the ruler widgets (`kHorzRulerWidgetBoss` and `kVertRulerWidgetBoss`). The presentation of the ruler is described by the data defined in the ODFRez resource type, `RulerDataType`. This type describes the font, associated unit-of-measure service `ClassID`, and tick-mark layout. For more details, see `RulerType.fh`.

Typically, a ruler is associated with a particular unit-of-measure service. The resource description for the ruler is in the same plug-in as the unit-of-measure service. The unit-of-measure service returns the resource ID of its ruler description in its implementation of `IUnitOfMeasure::GetRulerSpecRsrcSpec`.

When a new view is created on a document, the preferred measurement unit is determined. Then, the associated unit-of-measure service is queried for the resource ID of its ruler description. If one exists, that description is used to create a new ruler as part of the new view of the document.

Sample code

`CustomUnits` creates a custom unit. In addition, it provides a resource description of how the ruler tick markers are specified for the custom units. `CstUniRuler.fr` from the sample shows a sample ruler resource.

Commands that manipulate page items

Page-item creation commands

TABLE 37 *Commands that create page items*

Command	Description
<code>kCreateMultiColumnItemCmdBoss</code>	Creates a new text frame.
<code>kImportAndLoadPlaceGunCmdBoss</code>	Combination of <code>kImportPIFromFileCmdBoss</code> and <code>kLoadPlaceGunCmdBoss</code> .
<code>kImportAndPlaceCmdBoss</code>	Combination of <code>kImportPIFromFileCmdBoss</code> and <code>kPlacePICmdBoss</code> .

Command	Description
kImportPIFromFileCmdBoss	First, this command imports a file. If what is imported is a story, a multicolumn item is created. If what is imported is not in a graphic frame, a new graphic frame is created and the imported file is put into the frame. The UID of the new item is returned on the command's item list.
kLoadPlaceGunCmdBoss	Loads the item specified on the command's item list into the place gun. Only one item can be loaded by this command.
kNewPageItemCmdBoss	Used to create a new page item. You will need to use this command only if you are creating a custom page item. Do not use this command to create a page-item type supplied by the API, a kSplineItemBoss, kImageItem, or kMultiColumnItemBoss. Each page-item type provides a command to create it. The newly created page item can be any simple page item that supports the IGeometry interface. All attributes for the new page item are stored in the INewPageItemCmdData interface. The UID of the new page item is returned in the command's item list. If the parent is supplied, the new page item is added to the hierarchy.
kPlaceGraphicFrameCmdBoss	Creates a graphic frame and places an image item into it. The item to be placed can be passed through the command's item list or placed from the place gun. To use the place gun, set the usePlaceGunContents parameter on the IPlacePIData interface to kTrue, and do not set the command's item list. When passing the UID of the placed item using the command's item list, set the usePlaceGunContents parameter to kFalse.
kPlaceItemInGraphicFrameCmdBoss	Places a page item into an existing graphic frame. The page item can be passed into the command's item list, or it can be placed from the place gun. The UID of the graphic frame is returned on the command's item list.
kPlacePICmdBoss	Places a page item. This command does not create a new page item. It command takes an existing page item from the command's item list or the place gun, then places the page item into the page item hierarchy.
kReplaceCmdBoss	Replaces one page item with another. Both the old page item and the new page item are specified in the IReplaceCmdData interface.

Page-item update commands

TABLE 38 Commands that add/remove a page item to/from a hierarchy

Command	Description
kAddToHierarchyCmdBoss	Adds the page item in the command's item list to the parent specified in the IHierarchyCmdData interface. The index position for the page item also is specified on the IHierarchyCmdData interface. For example, when a new page item is created, it calls this command if the new item's parent was supplied.
kRemoveFromHierarchyCmdBoss	Removes a page item from its parent when deleting a page item or detaching the imported content from the imported frame.

TABLE 39 *Commands that position page items*

Command	Description
kAlignCmdBoss	Aligns the page items in the command's item list to the alignment type specified in the IIntData interface. The command itself is a compound command made up of a set of move-relative commands. Since the move commands are undoable, the align command also is undoable.
kCenterItemsInViewCmdBoss	Moves a set of page items so they appear centered in the current view. This command is not undoable.
kFitPageItemInWindowCmdBoss	Used to make the current selected page items fit in a window. This command is not undoable.
kMoveToLayerCmdBoss	Moves the page items specified on the command's item list to the document layer specified on the IUIDData interface. The page items appear in the same z-order relative to each other as before in front of the new layer. This command does not move the items that are children of a group or a graphic frame, nor does it move standoffs.
kMoveToSpreadCmdBoss	Like kMoveToLayerCmdBoss, except kMoveToSpreadCmdBoss moves the page items from one spread to another.

TABLE 40 *Commands for content fitting*

Command	Description
kAlignContentInFrameCmdBoss	Aligns the contents in the command's item list to the specified corners of their respective frames. The corner, which is the same for all items, is specified on the IAlignContentInFrameCmdData interface. This command ignores frames without content. The command's item list holds the UIDs of the contents, not the UIDs of the frames that contain the contents. This command sends out a notification that the content's subject has changed.
kCenterContentInFrameCmdBoss	Positions the contents at the centers of their respective frames. The content UIDs are stored in the command's item list.
kFitContentPropCmdBoss	Takes a list of frame content and modifies the content size and transformation to fit the frames and maintain the content's proportions.
kFitFrameToContentCmdBoss	Resizes each frame in the command's item list to fit its content's path bounding box. This command takes a list of page items, filters out the empty frame and non-graphical frame, and transforms the frame's path geometry. The text frames are still in the command's item list, even though they are not affected by this and other commands.

NOTE: Sometimes, after replace or paste operations, the graphic frame content (e.g., the placed image, PDF, or EPS item) does not fit into the frame or is not at the position you want inside the frame. Unfortunately, there is no graphic attribute or helper function that can determine the fitting mode for a page item. You can compare the bounding boxes for the content (for example, the image item) and the parent (the frame), to decide whether

the content should be positioned in the center, fit into the frame, or aligned to the corner of the frame using a content-fitting command. Because these commands are one-time actions and not attributes, however, these commands must be executed again if the page items are resized.

TABLE 41 *Commands that designate the type of a frame*

Command	Description
kConvertFrameToItemCmdBoss	Takes a list of graphic frames and text frames with no content and converts them to graphic items (unassigned), which are neither text frames nor graphic frames. This command sets the graphic-frame attribute of the specified page items to kFalse.
kConvertItemToFrameCmdBoss	The opposite of kConvertFrameToItemCmdBoss. kConvertItemToFrameCmdBoss sets the graphic-frame attribute of the specified page items to kTrue and converts unassigned graphic items to graphic frames. It command also converts empty text frames to empty graphic frames.
kConvertItemToTextCmdBoss	Converts unassigned page items and empty graphic frames to empty text frames.

TABLE 42 *Commands that copy and paste page items*

Command	Description
kCopyCmdBoss	A generic command for copying page items from one document to another. This command applies to any page item that supports the IScrapItem interface.
kCopyImageItemCmdBoss	Copies the specified image item to the specified target. Both the image item and the target are specified in the ICopyCmdData interface.
kCopyPageItemCmdBoss	Copies one or more page items to the specified parent object, if any. A UIDList of the page items created is returned in the command's item list.
kDuplicateCmdBoss	Duplicates the items specified in the command's item list. The page items in the command's item list are duplicated if the command is prepared successfully.
kPasteCmdBoss	Pastes one or more page items to the specified database in the command's ICopyCmdData interface. The UIDList of the items to paste are passed to the command in the ICopyCmdData interface.
kPasteGraphicItemCmdBoss	Used for pasting EPS, image, and PDF items into the destination database. The difference between kPasteGraphicItemCmdBoss and kCopyPageItemCmdBoss is that if the specified parent is a graphic frame, the graphic item (EPS, image, PDF) is created as a child of the frame. If no frame is specified as the parent, kPasteGraphicItemCmdBoss creates a new rectangular frame as its parent and applies all its transformation values to the frame, so it appears in the correct location.
kPasteInsideCmdBoss	Pastes the specified content into a frame and, if necessary, deletes previous content. The pasted content is aligned to the top left.

TABLE 43 Commands that transform page items

Command	Description
kTransformPageItemsCmdBoss	Performs various page-item transformations, such as move, rotate, scale, and skew. The caller needs to pass in appropriate data.
kTransformPathPointsCmdBoss	Transforms path points of page items. The transformation could be move, rotate, scale, skew, etc. The caller needs to pass in appropriate data.

NOTE: We strongly recommend using `ITransformFacade` and `ITransformSuite` for your transformation needs.

NOTE: Although other transform commands are still available, they may be removed in the future, so we strongly recommend you use only the two commands in [Table 43](#).

TABLE 44 Commands that group page items

Command	Description
kGroupCmdBoss	Groups selected items in the list and creates a new page item consisting of the group. The parent for the group is the same as the parent of the last item in the sorted selected-item list. The UID of the new group page item is returned in the command's item list. This command requires that the items to be grouped have valid parents, because only items at the same level in the hierarchy can form a group. For example, it is invalid to try to group an image with the spline item that contains it (or any other splines not at the same level as the image of the document hierarchy).
kUngroupCmdBoss	Ungroups the items specified in the command's item list. The parent of the group becomes the parent of all ungrouped items.

TABLE 45 Commands that lock page items

Command	Description
kSetLockPositionCmdBoss	Used to lock/unlock the page items. (See the <code>ILockPosition</code> interface.)

Page-item deletion commands

TABLE 46 *Commands that delete page items*

Command	Description
kDeleteCmdBoss	Deletes the page items specified in the command's item list. Any groups left empty by the deletions also are deleted.
kDeleteFrameCmdBoss	Deletes both the frame and its contents. In general, you should avoid directly calling this command. Instead, use the GetDeleteCmd method of the IScrapItem interface to delete the frame.
kDeletePageItemCmdBoss	Deletes the page items specified in the command's item list and removes the items from the hierarchy. In general, you should avoid directly calling this command. Instead, use the GetDeleteCmd method of the IScrapItem interface to delete the page item.
kDeleteImageItemCmdBoss	kDeleteImageItemCmdBoss is a subclass of kDeletePageItemCmdBoss. The purpose of kDeleteImageItemCmdBoss is to release an image object when the page item is deleted. This command deletes the image items on the command's item list. If the ClassID of any item is not kImageItem, that item is not deleted.
kDeleteLayerCmdBoss	Deletes the layer specified on the command's item list. The layers in the item list must be in the same document. After this operation, all page items on the layer list also are deleted.
kDeletePageCmdBoss	Deletes the pages specified on the command's item list. Page items on the pages also are deleted. If the spread is left without pages by this command, the spread also is deleted. If page reshuffling is specified on the IBoolData interface, the remaining pages in the affected spread and pages in the spreads that follow are reallocated so each spread has the number of pages specified in the page set-up preferences for the document.
kDeleteSpreadCmdBoss	Deletes one or more spreads and all their pages and page items. If the deletion would leave the document without spreads, the command is aborted and nothing is deleted. The list of spreads to delete is specified in the command's item list.
kDeleteUIDsCmdBoss	Deletes the UID's specified on the command's item list.
kRemoveInternalCmdBoss	Used when you delete a page item with embedded data. This command removes the embedded data from the publication.

Graphics Fundamentals

This chapter explains how the appearance of page items is specified, how page items are drawn, and how you can customize how page items are drawn.

The objectives of this chapter are as follows:

- Show how paths are defined and manipulated.
- Illustrate graphic page-item structure and how to import and export graphics files.
- Examine how colors and related properties of graphics are represented.
- Introduce graphic attributes.
- Describe stroke-related effects, like custom path strokers.
- Introduce transparency and transparency effects.
- Outline how spreads and page items are drawn to the screen and printed.
- Describe extension patterns to let you customize how page items are drawn.

For definitions of terms, see the “Glossary.”

Paths

This section shows how a path is defined and drawn according to its control points.

Path concepts

Paths

Paths can be created using various tools in InDesign. Shape tools and Frame tools create closed paths, the Pencil tool creates continuous smooth paths with lots of anchor points, and the Pen tool allows you create paths with great precision.

A path page item may have one or more paths. For example, a line, a rectangle, or an oval consists of one path; a compound path, two or more paths.

Path points

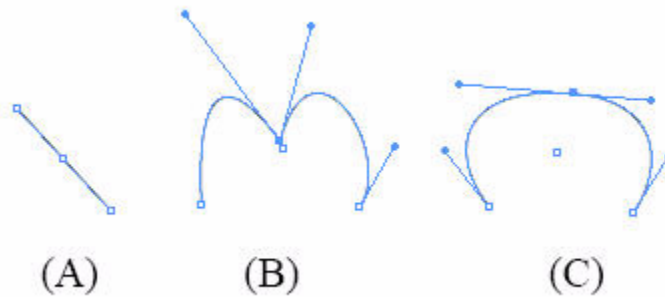
A path is defined by its path points. A path may have one or more path points. Path points are represented by `PMPATHPOINT` objects. There are three types of path points:

- *kL, line point* — Used to form a straight line. These (and `kCK` path points) are called corner points.
- *kCS, continuous smooth point* — Used to form a continuous smooth curve. These are called smooth points.
- *kCK, continuous unsmooth point* — The point’s left and right tangents are not on the same line. These (and `kL` path points) are called corner points.

A PMPATHPOINT object stores three PMPPOINT objects, represented as pairs of (x,y) coordinates. These PMPPOINT objects represent the anchor point, the left-direction point, and the right-direction point, respectively (see Figure 77). For a kL path point, the left- and right-direction points are the same as the anchor point.

Figure 76 shows examples of path points. In part A, the line consists of two kL points. In part B, the middle kCK point has two direction points that are not on a line with the anchor point. In part C, the middle kCS point's anchor point and two direction points form a line.

FIGURE 76 Path-point types

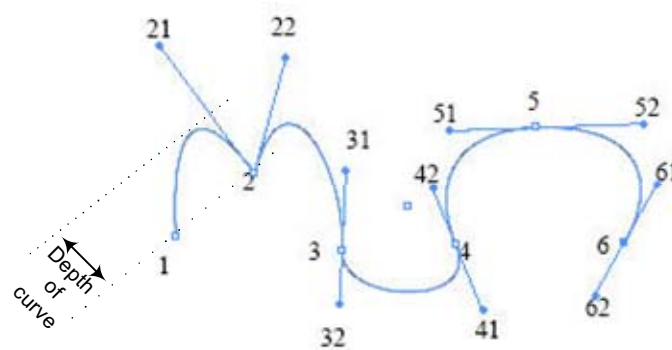


Path drawing

A path is controlled by its path points. InDesign draws Bezier curves based on the path points.

Figure 77 shows an open path with six path points.

FIGURE 77 Path with six path points



In the figure, note the following:

- Every anchor point (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6) is on the path.
- Points 21, 31, 41, 51, and 61 are left-direction points. Points 22, 32, 42, 52, and 62 are right-direction points.
- Direction lines (from anchor point to direction point) always are tangent to (perpendicular to the radius of) the curve at the anchor points.
- The angle of each direction line determines the slope of the curve, and the length of each direction line determines the height, or depth, of the curve.
- A path is drawn segment by segment. The shape of each segment is determined by its two end anchor points and their direction points. For example, curve (1,2) is determined by anchor points 1 and 2 and left-direction point 21; curve (2,3) is determined by anchor points 2 and 3, right-direction point 22, and left-direction point 31.

If a path is closed, the last segment is controlled by the last and first path points.

For more details, see `PMBezierCurve.h`.

Winding rule

The winding rule determines whether a given point is inside or outside the area defined by a path. InDesign supports both even-odd and non-zero winding rules:

- *Even-odd winding rule* — If a ray drawn from a point in any direction crosses the path an odd number of times, the point is inside; otherwise, the point is outside.
- *Non-zero winding rule* — The crossing count for a ray is the total number of times the ray crosses a left-to-right portion of the path minus the total number of times the ray crosses a right-to-left portion of the path. If a ray drawn from a point in any direction has a crossing count of zero, the point is outside; otherwise, the point is inside.

For details, see the book *PostScript Language Reference*, available on the Adobe Web site.

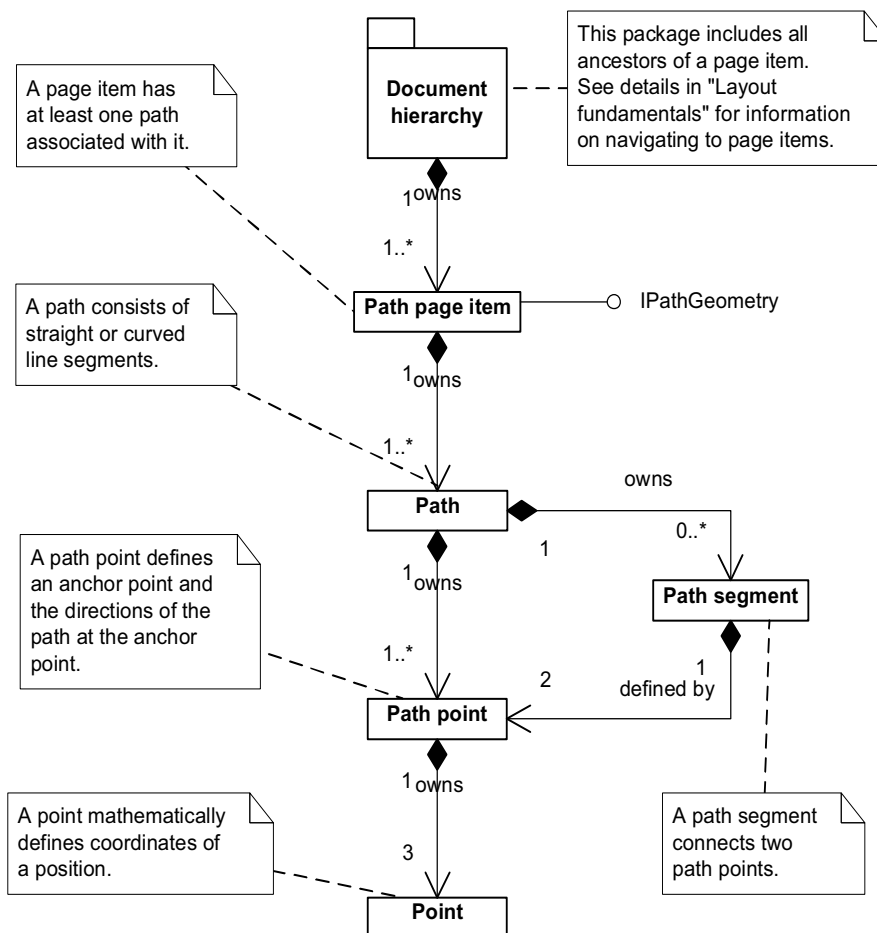
The winding rule of an object is stored as a graphic attribute of the `kGraphicStyleEvenOddAttrBoss` page item; therefore, you can get or set the winding rules through `IGraphicsAttributeUtils` the same way as other graphic attributes. For more information, see [“Graphic attributes” on page 256](#).

Paths data model

Path page-item structure

Paths can exist on any page item that defines an `IPathGeometry` interface. [Figure 78](#) show the relationship among page item, path, path point, and point. A path can be viewed as connected path segments or connected path points.

FIGURE 78 Path page-item structure



Path geometry

There is no object in the InDesign object model that maps to a single path directly; instead, all path points of all paths of a page item are stored using the interface defined by the `IPathGeometry` class. `IPathGeometry` is the signature interface of a path page item. It has methods to access path information of a page item, like the number of paths the page item has and whether a path is open or closed.

Paths are differentiated using a path index. Methods for accessing path points normally require a path index parameter.

The `PMPathPointList` type is defined as `K2Vector<PMPathPoint>`. An item of this type stores a list of path points; for example, all path points of a path. Unlike with `IPathGeometry`, path points stored in an item of type `PMPathPointList` are not divided into paths by path index.

The most common path page item is the spline item, represented by `kSplineItemBoss`. Spline items include paths (lines, curves, frames) like those shown in [Figure 76](#) and [Figure 77](#). There

are several other kinds of paths, including image-clipping paths, text-wrap paths, and text outlines. All paths use `IPATHGeometry` to store paths.

Path operations

You can access paths of a page item through the interface defined by the `IPATHGeometry` class. InDesign also encapsulates some complex manipulations into several high-level path operations, which are provided as commands and selection suites.

Compound paths

You can combine two or more paths, compound paths, grouped page items, text outlines, text frames, or other shapes that interact with and intercept one another to create a new compound path. The advantage of a compound path over individual paths is that a compound path is a single object, so you can apply attributes to the compound path as a whole.

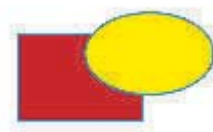
Use `kMakeCompoundPathCmdBoss` to create a new compound path and `kReleasePathsCmdBoss` to split a compound path into individual paths.

NOTE: A compound path does not connect or join any two points of existing paths; it only puts two paths together in one page item.

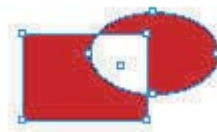
Comparing compound paths and groups

Both compound paths and groups involve combining multiple page items as a whole. The main difference between compound paths and groups is that making compound paths combines all items together into one page item (all other original page items are deleted), whereas grouping does not delete the original page items; they are just moved into the new group item. See [Figure 79](#). The steps in the figure are explained below.

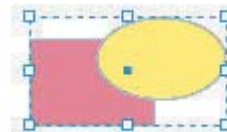
FIGURE 79 *Compound path contrasted with group*



(1) original red rectangle and yellow oval



(2) result of compound path



(3) result of group with 50% opacity applied

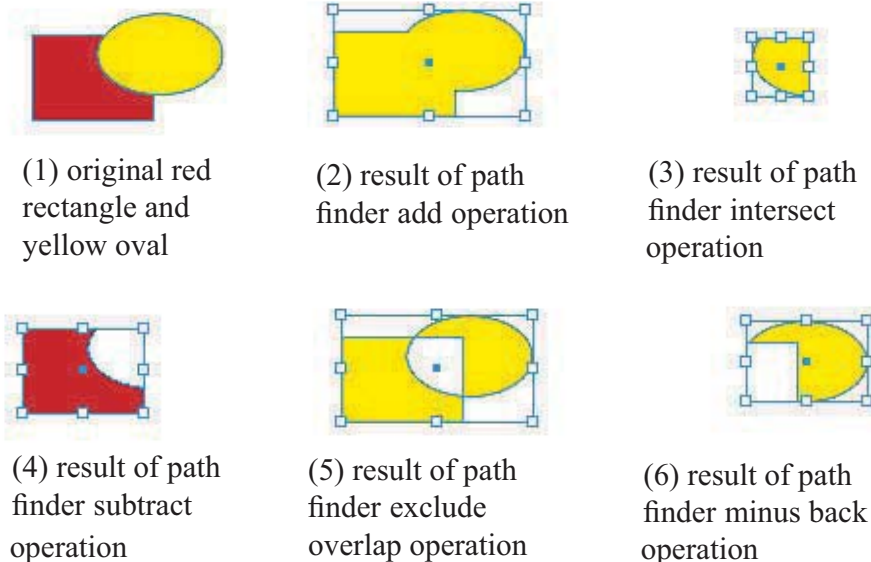
In [Figure 79](#):

1. The original page items are a red rectangle and a yellow oval, represented by `kSplineItemBoss` object A and `kSplineItemBoss` object B, respectively.
2. To make a compound path out of these two objects, to take the path points from `kSplineItemBoss` object B and add them to `kSplineItemBoss` object A through the `IPathGeometry` interface, then delete `kSplineItemBoss` object B. The result is only one `kSplineItemBoss` object, A, with new path points. The new item retains the first item's graphic attributes, including fill color. All path operations use the even-odd winding rule, resulting in the hole in the compound path.
3. To group the two page items instead, InDesign first creates a `kGroupItemBoss` object, then removes both `kSplineItemBoss` object A and `kSplineItemBoss` object B from their current hierarchical parents and adds them as hierarchical children to `kGroupItemBoss`. The result is three different boss objects. The graphic attributes of the original items are retained. You can apply graphic attributes to a group page item or its children independently.

Path-finder operations

Path-finder operations, also referred to as compound-shape operations, combine shapes enclosed by the paths. InDesign supports adding, subtracting, intersecting, excluding-overlap, and minus-back operations. [Figure 80](#) illustrates the results of these path finder operations.

FIGURE 80 Path-finder operations



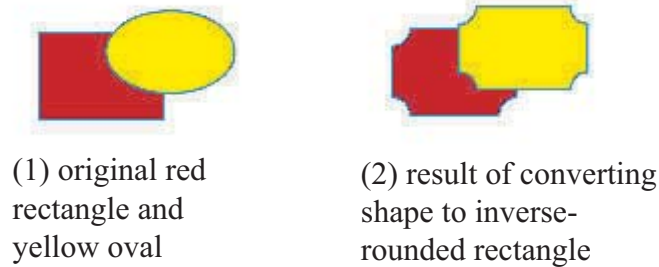
You can use `kMergePathCmdBoss` or `IPathOperationSuite` to achieve the effect.

Path-finder operations require exactly two input objects. The attributes of the front object are retained by the result object, except in the case of the subtract operation.

Shape conversion

Shape conversion changes the current shape to a new shape. InDesign can convert to various shapes, including lines, triangles, rectangles with corner effects, ovals, and polygons. [Figure 81](#) shows the result of converting a rectangle and an oval to inverse-rounded rectangles.

FIGURE 81 Convert shape



The command to achieve this effect is `kConvertShapeCmdBoss`. It gets the bounding box of the current shape, then inserts or changes path points in the `IPathGeometry` object to represent the desired shape, so the resulting page item maintains the same bounding box as the original shape.

`IConvertShapeSuite` takes shape type, corner effects, and several other parameters. You can use this method to convert a shape to a new shape with a new combination of attributes, like shape type, corner effects, and number of polygon sides.

NOTE: If you convert a page item from shape A to shape B, then convert from shape B back to shape A again, the number of path points and their coordinates may be different than for your original shape A.

Graphic page items

This section discusses the concepts and data model for graphic page items, as well as graphic page-item special operations, like setting clipping paths and text-wrap contours. This section also covers importing and exporting graphics files.

Graphic page-item types

Computer graphics fall into two main categories, vector graphics and raster images.

InDesign can import raster images, vector graphics, or a combination of both, depending on the graphics-file format.

Raster images

Raster images, or bitmap images, are the most common electronic medium for such continuous-tone images as photographs or images created in painting programs like Adobe Photoshop®. Raster images are resolution dependent.

InDesign supports almost all popular raster-image formats, including PSD, JPEG, TIFF, GIF, PNG, BMP, and Scitex, all of which are represented by `kImageItem` boss, which is discussed in more detail in [“Graphic page-item boss-class inheritances” on page 223](#).

An alpha channel is an invisible channel that defines transparent areas of a graphic. The alpha channel is stored in a graphic with the RGB or CMYK channels. A user can create alpha channels using background-removal features in Photoshop.

Vector graphics

Vector graphics use geometrical formulas to represent images. Paths created using the drawing tools in the InDesign Toolbox are examples of vector graphics.

Vector graphics are more flexible than bitmaps, because vector graphics can be resized without losing resolution. Another advantage of vector graphics is that their representations often require less memory than representations of bitmap images.

NOTE: Since most output devices are raster devices, vector objects must be translated into bitmaps before being printed or displayed. For example, PostScript printers have a raster image processor (RIP) that performs the translation within the printer.

Vector-graphic formats can differ dramatically. InDesign supports import and export of most common vector graphics (see [Table 47](#)).

TABLE 47 *InDesign-supported vector-graphics formats*

File format	Import	Export	Related page-item boss
DCS	Yes	No	<code>kEPSItem</code>
EPS	Yes	Yes	<code>kEPSItem</code>
PDF	Yes	Yes	<code>kPlacedPDFItemBoss</code>
PICT	Yes	No	<code>kPICTItem</code>
SVG	No	Yes	N/A. You can export various content or documents to SVG file format, but there is no page item for SVG format.
WMF	Yes	No	<code>kWMFItem</code>

For more information on importing vector graphics, see [“Graphics import” on page 238](#). For more information on exporting vector graphics, see [“Export to graphics file format” on page 243](#).

Graphic page-item settings

Content fitting

Sometimes the size of the graphic page item is not the same as the size of the parent graphics frame, causing the graphic to be displayed incorrectly. Usually, end users can move, resize, or rotate the graphic page item or the graphics frame in the same way as any other page item.

Taking advantage of the relationship between the graphic page item and the graphics frame, InDesign has several content-fitting options:

- *Fit content to frame* — Resizes the graphic page item to the same size as the graphics frame.
- *Fit frame to content* — Resizes the graphics frame to the same size as the graphic page item.
- *Center content in frame* — Moves the graphic page item to the center of the graphics frame. No resizing is involved.
- *Fit content proportionally* — Resizes the graphic page item to barely fit the frame (i.e., the graphic page-item edge touches the frame vertically or horizontally), while maintaining the aspect ratio of the graphic page item.
- *Fill frame proportionally* — Resizes the graphic page item while maintaining its aspect ratio until all white space in the frame is filled.

If there is a selection, we recommend you use `IFrameContentSuite` or `IFrameContentFacade` where possible to perform these operations, though individual commands for these operations do exist.

NOTE: These transformations of graphic page items and frames change only the `IGeometry` or `ITransform` objects. These transformations do not alter the structure of the graphic page item and frame objects.

Clipping paths

A clipping path crops part of the image so only part image appears through the shape you create. The clipping path is stored separately from its graphics frame, so you can freely modify one without affecting the other. The clipping path does not change the image; the clipping path affects only how the image is drawn.

Clipping paths can be created in the following ways:

- Use existing paths or alpha channels. You can add paths and alpha channels in Photoshop files.
- Let InDesign generate a clipping path with Detect Edges.
- Draw a path in the shape you want, and paste the graphic into the path.

When you set or generate a clipping path, the clipping path is attached to the image, resulting in an image that is drawn clipped by the path and cropped by the frame.

`IPathGeometry` aggregated on the graphic page-item bosses stores the clipping path. For more information on how a path is defined, see [“Path geometry” on page 214](#).

The `IClipSettings` interface is aggregated on `kWorkspaceBoss`, `kDocWorkspaceBoss`, and each graphic page-item boss, to define preferences or individual graphic page items' clipping-path settings. For more details on `IClipSettings`, see the API reference documentation.

Not all settings in `IClipSettings` are required to determine a clipping path. For example, if you choose the `kClipEmbeddedPath` type, you need to know only the embedded path index. Settings like `threshold`, `tolerance`, and `inset` are required only to detect edges. We highly recommend you use the `IClippingPathSuite` selection-suite interface.

Text wrap

You can wrap text around the frame of any page-item object.

The text-wrap data model is discussed in detail in the “Text Fundamentals” chapter. The path the text wraps around is defined by a separate page item, `kStandOffPageItemBoss`, which is accessible through `IStandOffData`, aggregated both on the graphic-frame boss (`kSplineItemBoss`) and graphic page-item boss (See [Figure 83](#)). Whenever the text-wrap object changes, the path is copied to the `IID_ITEXTWRAPPATH` interface (same implementation as `IPathGeometry`) of the graphic page-item boss; this improves the performance of text composition and screen redrawing.

What makes the graphic page item special in text wrapping is that you can specify the contour options when the text-wrap mode is set to `Wrap Around Object Shape`. In addition to setting the text-wrap contour to the stroke bounding box of the graphics frame that owns a graphic page item, you also can specify that text wrap around any of the following:

- The rectangle formed by the graphic's height and width (the stroke bounding box of the graphic page item).
- Paths generated by edge detection. You can adjust edge detection manually, using a clipping path (“[Clipping paths](#)” on [page 219](#)).
- The image's alpha channel.
- The image's embedded Photoshop path.
- The image's clipping path.

As with the clipping path setting, contour options for text wraps are specified by `IStandOffContourWrapSettings` aggregated on `kWorkspaceBoss`, `kDocWorkspaceBoss`, and individual graphic page-item bosses. We highly recommend you use `ITextWrapFacade` to manipulate text wraps, including setting contour options.

Display performance

Display performance is used to set the balance between graphic display speed and quality. You can specify the quality of how raster images, vector graphics, and transparencies are drawn to the screen. A display performance group is a set of values for these categories.

NOTE: Graphics display performance options do not affect output resolution when exporting or printing images in an InDesign document. When printing to a PostScript device, packaging for GoLive, or exporting to EPS or PDF, the final image resolution depends on the output options you choose when you print or export the file.

The following display performance groups are available:

- *Fast* — The highest display speed but the lowest display quality. In the standard setting for this group, InDesign draws a raster image or vector graphic as a gray box.
- *Typical* — The default option for graphic page items. In the standard setting for this group, InDesign draws a low-resolution proxy image appropriate for identifying and positioning a graphic.
- *High Quality* — The highest quality but the lowest display speed. In the standard setting for this group, InDesign draws a raster image or vector graphic at high resolution (i.e., uses the file provided by the graphic page item's link).

NOTE: Standard settings of display performance groups can be modified through the Display Performance area of the Preferences dialog box or programmatically. See the “Graphics” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

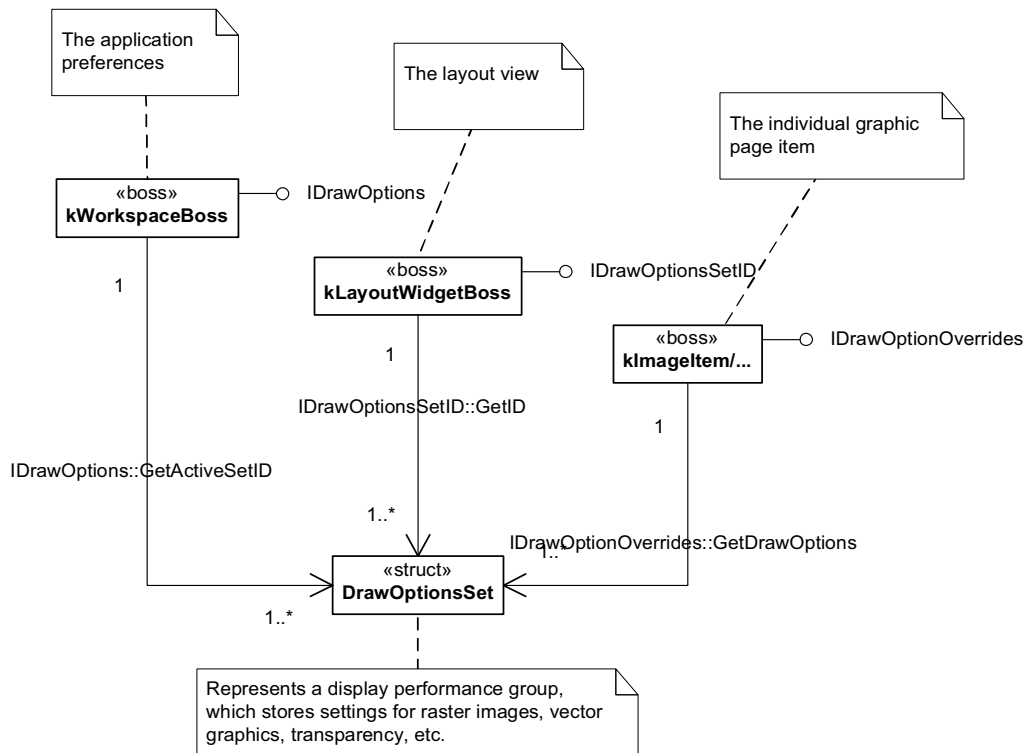
These display performance groups are session preferences, represented by `IDrawOptions`, aggregated on `kWorkspaceBoss` (see [Figure 82](#)). The interface stores an array of `DrawOptionsSet` (also defined in `IDrawOptions.h`), corresponding to the fast, typical, and high-quality groups, respectively. Each group itself, represented by a `DrawOptionsSet`, has a set identifier and defines the qualities for each category, including vector, raster, and transparency. (For details, see the API reference documentation.) The array of `DrawOptionsSet` defines a two-dimensional map that indicates whether the graphic page item should be displayed as a gray box, proxy image, or a high-resolution graphic, given a display group (such as fast) and a category (such as raster). You can contain the current active group by calling `IDrawOptions::GetActiveSetID`, and can set groups through the `Edit > Preferences > Display Performance` menu.

Display-performance settings are not document-level preferences; instead, they are set as view preferences. `IDrawOptionsSetID`, aggregated on `kLayoutWidgetBoss` (see [Figure 82](#)), allows each layout presentation to have different default settings, even if they are of the same document. `IDrawOptionsSetID` stores a `DrawOptionsSet` as default settings when importing graphic page items. These settings can be set through the `View > Display Performance` menu.

Individual graphic page items can have their own display-performance overrides. `IDrawOptionOverrides`, aggregated on `kDrawablePageItemBoss`—which is inherited by all graphic page item bosses (see [Figure 82](#))—stores a display-performance group (`DrawOptionsSet`) for each graphic page item. Display performance overrides can be set through the `Object > Display Performance` menu. The `IDisplayPerformanceSuite` selection-suite interface facilitates the manipulation of display-performance settings.

NOTE: To let page item overrides take effect, the `IDrawOptions::GetIgnoreOverrides` preferences flag must be `kFalse`. You can set this flag through the `View > Display Performance` menu.

The display-performance object model is summarized in the class diagram in [Figure 82](#).

FIGURE 82 Display-performance object model

Drawing a graphic page item

Changing display performance from typical to fast does not replace a proxy image with a gray box directly. In fact, changing display performance does not change the instance of the graphic page item at all. The effect is achieved by invalidating the layout and letting the page-item drawing process take care of displaying.

Drawing a layout containing graphic page items follows a generic drawing process detailed in “[Dynamics of drawing](#)” on page 278. A graphic page item is drawn in the following steps:

1. Set the crop rectangle. This involves calculating the graphic page item’s bounding box, cropped by the frame bounding box and view bounding box.
2. Clip the graphics with their clipping paths.
3. Determine drawing options and draw the graphics.

You can participate in the graphic page-item drawing process by implementing the custom, drawing event-handler extension pattern, described in “[Extension patterns](#)” on page 289.

Graphic page-item data model

This section illustrates the data model and common interfaces for graphic page items.

Graphic page-item boss-class inheritances

Although graphic page items are represented by various boss classes (kImageBoss and bosses for vector graphics in [Table 47](#)), they share similar interfaces and demonstrate similar properties.

kImageItem (the boss representing raster images), kPlacedPDFItemBoss, kEPSItem, kPICKItem, and kWMFItem directly or indirectly inherit from kDrawablePageItemBoss, which aggregates interfaces necessary for page-item drawing. For the complete inheritance graph for the bosses, see the API reference documentation; search for kDrawablePageItemBoss.

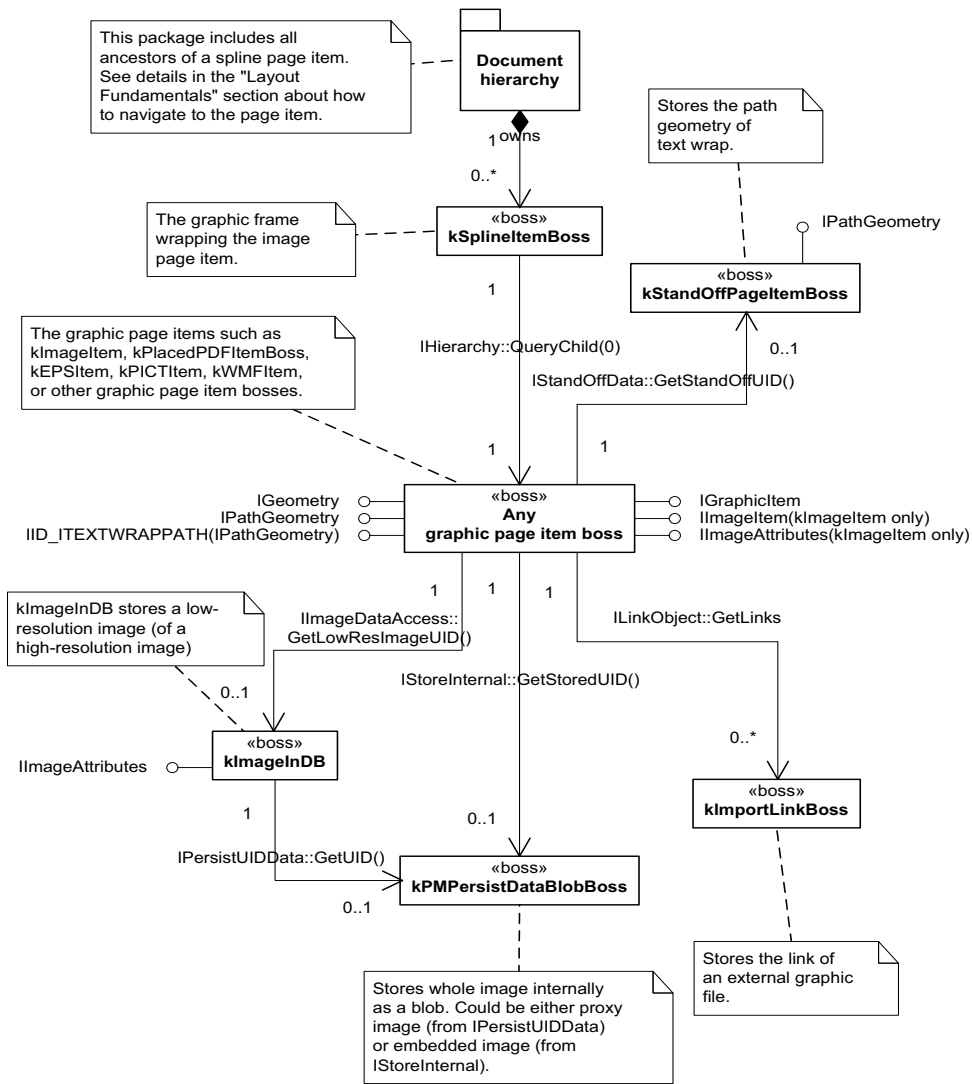
Graphic page-item class hierarchy

Graphic page-item boss classes have the following characteristics:

- Are wrapped in a spline item (kSplineItemBoss).
- Have text wrap around their contour or frame (represented as kStandOffPageItemBoss).
- Store low-resolution proxy images as kImageInDB.
- Store a link object (ILinkObject) which keeps the UIDRef(s) of link boss(es). A link boss, like kImportLinkBoss, links the link object (page item) and external graphic files.
- May embed link resources internally as kPMPersistDataBlobBoss.

[Figure 83](#) is a simplified view of the graphic page items in the class hierarchy of an InDesign document. ILinkObject provides access to the link object, which can be used to access the linked graphic resource. If the link is embedded, IStoreInternal provides access to kPMPersistDataBlobBoss, which stores the bitmap of the image. IImageDataAccess provides access to the proxy image, and the bitmap of the images also are stored as kPMPersistDataBlobBoss, which is accessible through IPersistUIDData on kImageInDB. Navigation from the document root to the kSplineItemBoss is wrapped into a package, which is discussed in the “Layout Fundamentals” chapter.

FIGURE 83 Graphic page-item class hierarchy



Graphic page-item interfaces

Several common interfaces are aggregated on graphic page-item bosses to provide features specific to graphic page items. These interfaces are either aggregated directly on the boss (e.g., kPlacedPDFItemBoss), or aggregated by way of their parent bosses (e.g., kImageBaseItem, the parent of kImageItem, or kDisplayListPageItemBoss, the parent of all other vector graphic page item bosses). Table 48 summarizes these important interfaces and their uses.

TABLE 48 Graphics-interface summary

Interface ID	Interface	Description
IID_IGRAPHICITEM	IIntData	This is the signature interface for all graphic types (raster, EPS, etc.). The integer data is never used.
IID_IIMAGEITEM	IImageItem	Aggregated onto kImageBaseItem, this interface provides access to the embedded color profile of the image. More importantly, testing the presence of this interface verifies that a page item boss is a raster image.
IID_IGEOMETRY	IGeometry	This interface defines the geometry (position, size, etc.) of a graphic page item. It is used for calculating cropping during the graphic page-item drawing process.
IID_IPATHGEOMETRY	IPathGeometry	This interface stores the clipping path of a graphic page item (see “Clipping paths” on page 219).
IID_ITEXTWRAPPATH	IPathGeometry	This interface stores the text-wrap path; however, this path is only a cache (or mirror) of the text-wrap path. The real path is stored at IPathGeometry on kStandOffPageItemBoss. Every time the real text-wrap path is changed, this path is updated. (See “Text wrap” on page 220 .)
IID_IIMAGEATTRIBUTES	IImageAttributes	This interface stores a set of tags to describe the attributes of a raster image. Predefined tags are defined as enumerators, each of which describes the type, length, and data of a raster image. These tags are crucial in defining image item properties, such as alpha channel, clipping path, and color profile.

Proxy images

When a graphic is placed, the contents of the original file are not actually copied into the document. Instead, InDesign creates a link to the original file on the disk and adds a screen-resolution bitmap image (the proxy image) to the layout, so you can view and move the graphic. When you export or print, InDesign uses the link to retrieve the original graphic, creating the final, desired, full-resolution output. Although end users can set preferences to tell InDesign to show high-resolution images (see [“Display performance” on page 220](#)), by default InDesign shows a low-resolution proxy image for performance reasons; the proxy image is created by processing kCreateLowResImageCmdBoss during the import process.

A proxy image is represented by the boss kImageInDB, which is accessible from the graphic page item through IImageDataAccess::GetLowResImageUID. The connection is established during the image-import process. For the data model of the proxy image in relation to the graphic page items, see [“Graphic page-item class hierarchy” on page 224](#) and [“Graphic page-item examples” on page 226](#).

One of the most important interfaces on kImageInDB is IPersistUIDData, which holds a UID pointing to an instance of kPMPersistDataBlobBoss, which stores the bitmap of the proxy image.

The proxy image is not always created by asking the image-import filter for the data. For raster images, if image auto-embedding is allowed in the image-import preferences, and the image is smaller than a predefined amount (defaults to 48 KB, accessible through `ILinkState::GetEmbedSize`), the original high-resolution image is embedded directly.

Creating a proxy image is aided by the `IImageStreamManager` interface, which provides a mechanism to convert the source-image format to a destination-image format according to the image attributes.

Graphic page items and links

Every graphic page item that was placed from a file has an associated link. End users can choose the Embed Link menu in the Links panel's fly-out menu to embed the link manually. The file remains in the Links panel, marked with an embedded link icon.

NOTE: This behavior differs from link for a text file. You can create a link when placing a text file; however, since text is inherently part of the InDesign document, you cannot really “embed” the link. If you create a link when placing a text file, you can choose to unlink the file from the Links panel. Once it is unlinked, the link is removed from the Links panel.

As a software developer, you also can use `ILinkFacade::EmbedLinks` to embed the image link (`ILinkFacade` is aggregated on `kUtilsBoss`). `kStoreInternalCmdBoss`, processed internally, reads the original high-resolution file and stores the image data as a data blob, referenced by the `IStoreInternal` interface on the graphic page item.

Embedding a link is not the same as embedding the small image to create a proxy image, discussed in [“Proxy images” on page 225](#):

- The image data is stored in a different place. Embedding a link stores a data blob referenced by `IStoreInternal` on the graphic page item. Embedding an image as a proxy stores the data blob referenced by `IPersistUIDData` on `kImageInDB` boss.
- Embedding a link does not cause a check for the size of the image. Embedding an image as a proxy requires the image file to be smaller than a predefined size.

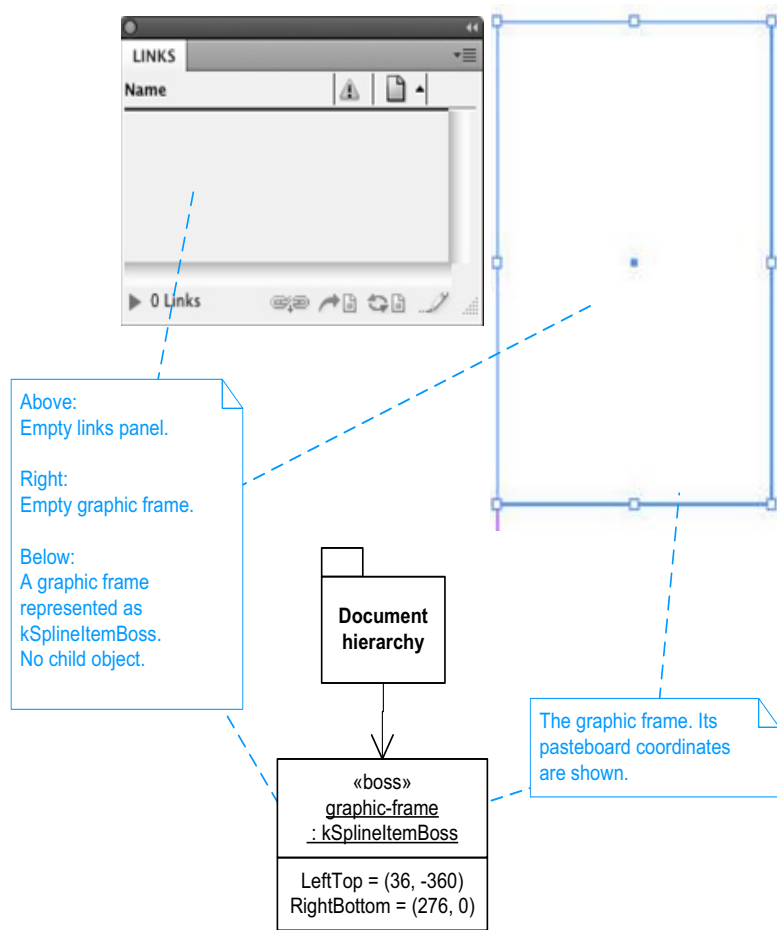
Graphic page-item examples

New graphics can be placed into a layout with or without an existing graphics frame. This section illustrates how instances of graphics objects evolve as you place a PDF file, replace it with an image, move the image around, embed a link, and set clipping-path and text-wrap contour options.

Begin with an empty graphics frame

We start exploring the graphics object model by examining an empty graphics frame. [Figure 84](#) shows a screenshot and the object model when only an empty graphics frame is created. The graphics frame is represented by `kSplineItemBoss`, and it does not have any hierarchical children.

FIGURE 84 Empty graphics frame



Place a PDF item in a graphics frame

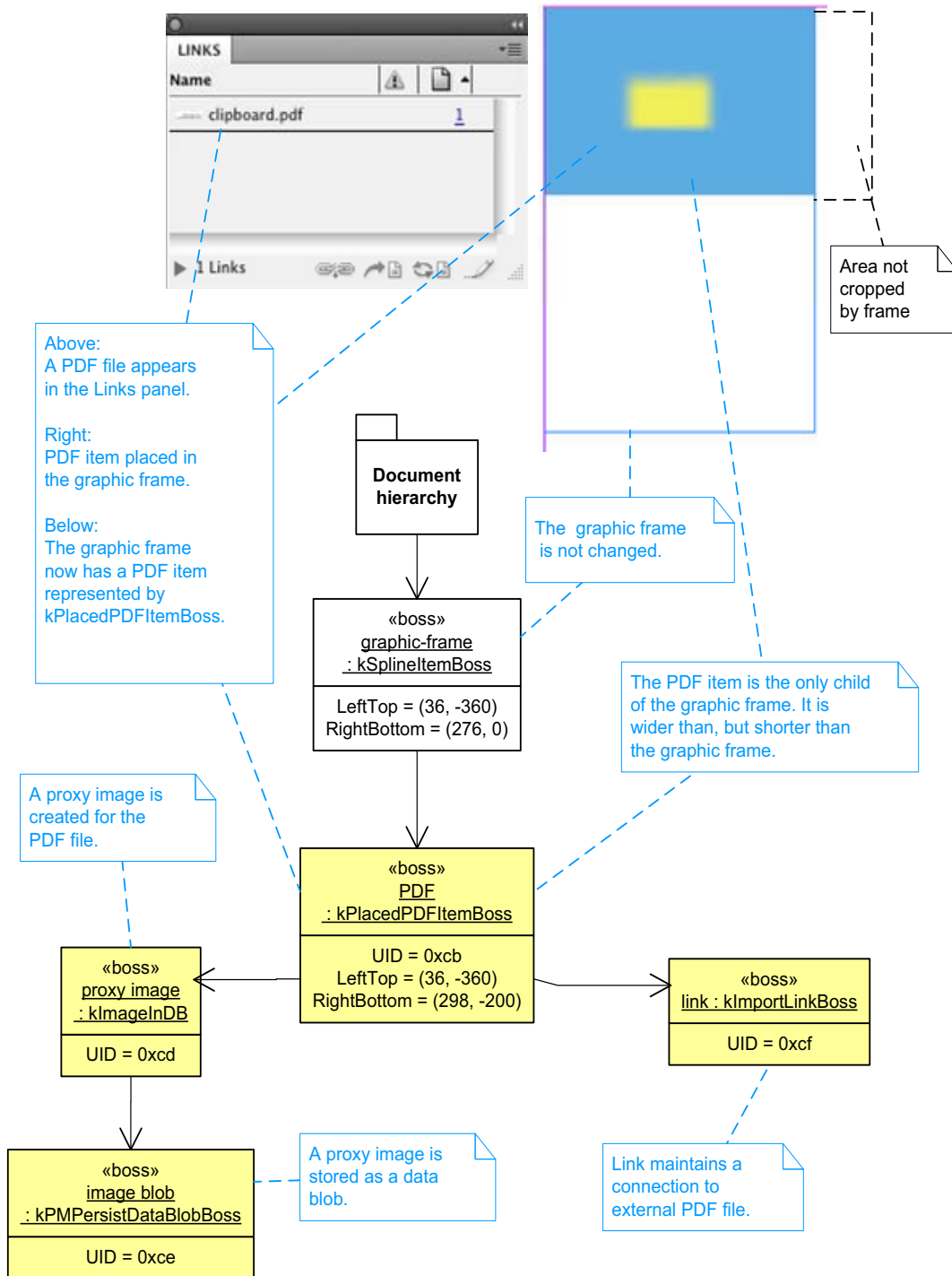
Next, we place a PDF file into the graphics frame. During import, InDesign creates a `kPlacedPDFItemBoss` object to represent the PDF item and adds it as a child of the graphics frame. [Figure 85](#) shows the object model of the graphics frame with a PDF item. A few other objects are created to represent information of the PDF item. New objects are marked in yellow.

Comparing [Figure 85](#) to [Figure 84](#), notice the Links panel shows a link to the external PDF file. The link is represented by `kImportLinkBoss` through `ILinkObject`, aggregated on `kPlacedPDFItemBoss`.

A proxy image is created for the PDF item as `kImageInDB` boss (UID 0xcd), and the proxy image bitmap is represented by `kPMPersistDataBlobBoss` (UID 0xce).

By default, a graphic page item is put into the graphics frame with an offset of (0,0) in inner coordinate space, so the PDF item has the same `PMRect::LeftTop` position (obtained from `IGeometry::GetPathBoundingBox`) on the pasteboard as the graphics frame. Although the PDF item is slightly wider than the frame (`PMRect::RightBottom` member), InDesign does not draw that part, because it is cropped by the frame.

FIGURE 85 PDF item in graphics frame

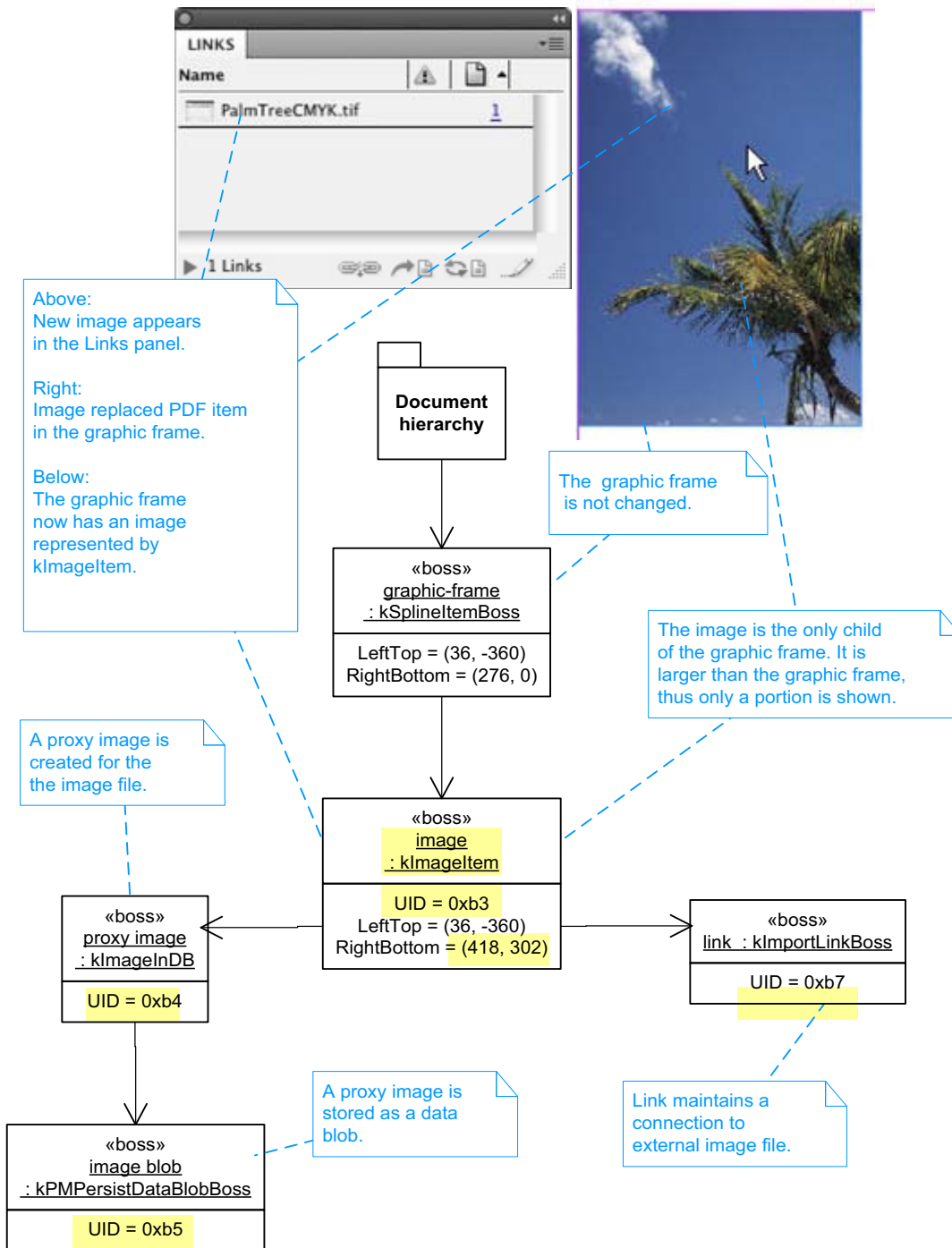


Replace a PDF item with an image

Next, we import an image file to replace the PDF item and examine the changes to the object model. [Figure 86](#) shows the screenshot and object model after the change. Again, new objects are marked in yellow. Note the following:

- The Links panel shows a link to the new image file (PalmTreeCMYK.tif).
- The overall structure of the object model did not change, but a new boss object `kImageItem` replaced `kPlacedPDFItemBoss`.
- The UID of the link, proxy image, and proxy image data blob also changed. These objects were created during the import process—and the old objects were deleted.

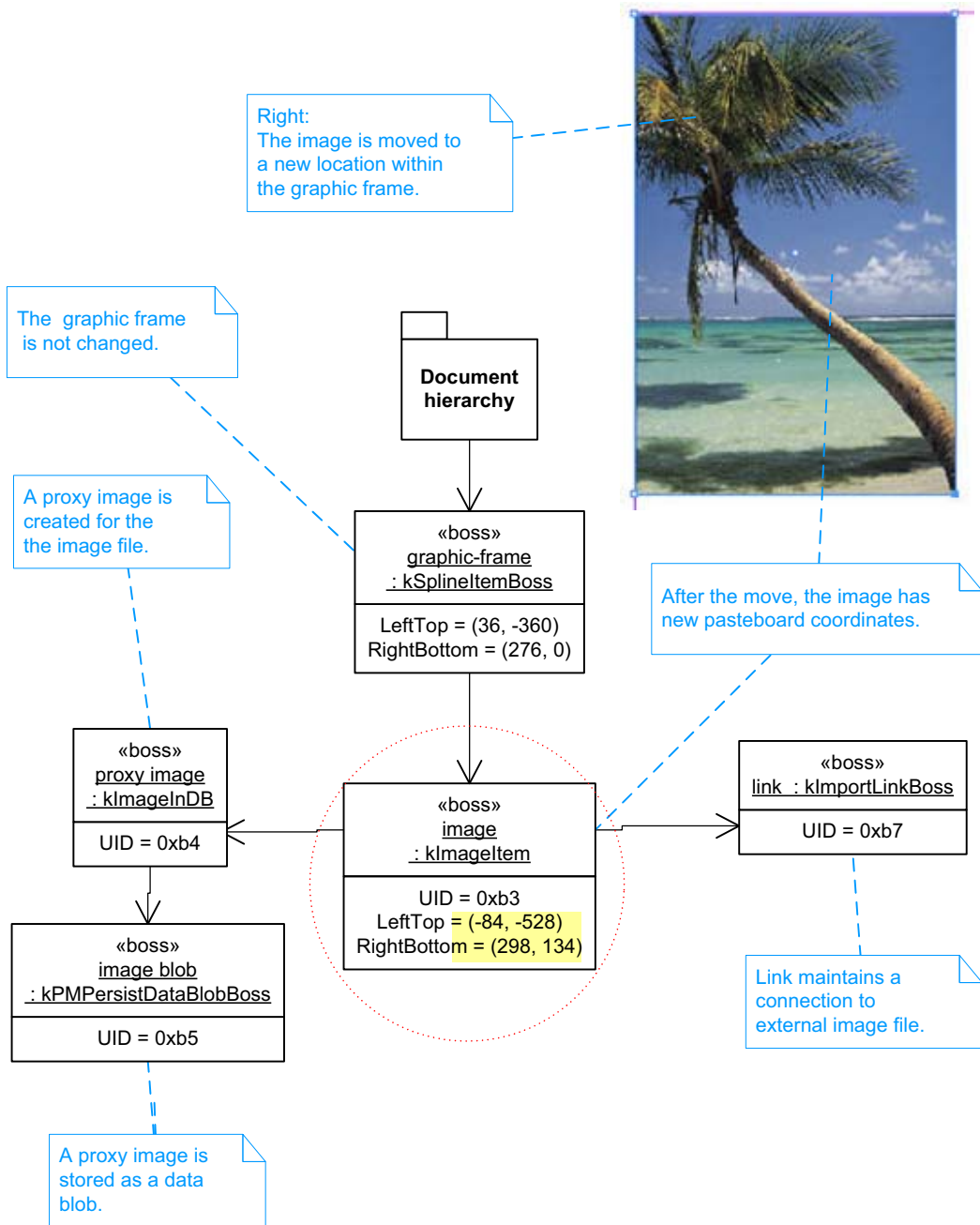
FIGURE 86 Imported image



Move an image within a frame

You may have noticed the palm tree image is large, and we can only see a small part of the tree. Now we move the image a little bit within the graphics frame, using the Direct Selection tool. [Figure 87](#) shows the resulting object model. Everything is the same, except the pasteboard coordinates of the image item. The changed object is marked by a red circle; changed values are marked in yellow. The coordinates represent the bounding box of the image item.

FIGURE 87 Image moved within a frame

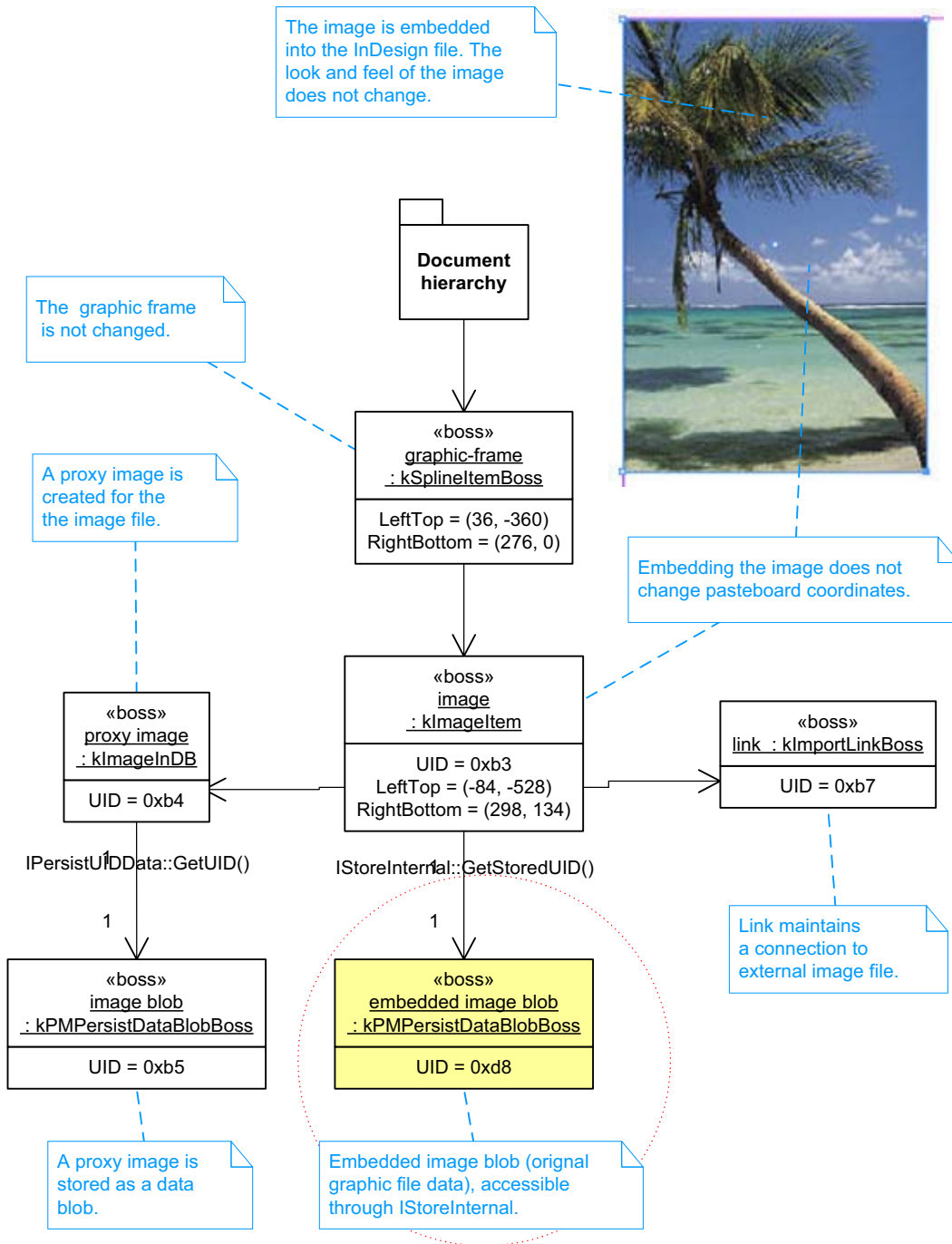


Embed an image's datalink

Next, we manually embed the image into the document by choosing Embed Link on the Links panel fly-out menu. [Figure 88](#) shows the changed object model after the image is embedded. The new object is within the red circle, marked in yellow. A new `kMPPersistDataBlobBoss` is created to store the embedded image information. Other bosses—including the link object (`kImportLinkBoss`)—do not change.

There are two `kMPPersistDataBlobBoss` objects in the object model, but they represent different things. The one accessible through `IPersistUIDData` on the proxy image:`kImageInDB` boss represents the proxy image; the other—accessible through `IStoreInternal` on the image:`kImageItem` boss—represents the embedded image data.

FIGURE 88 Embedded image

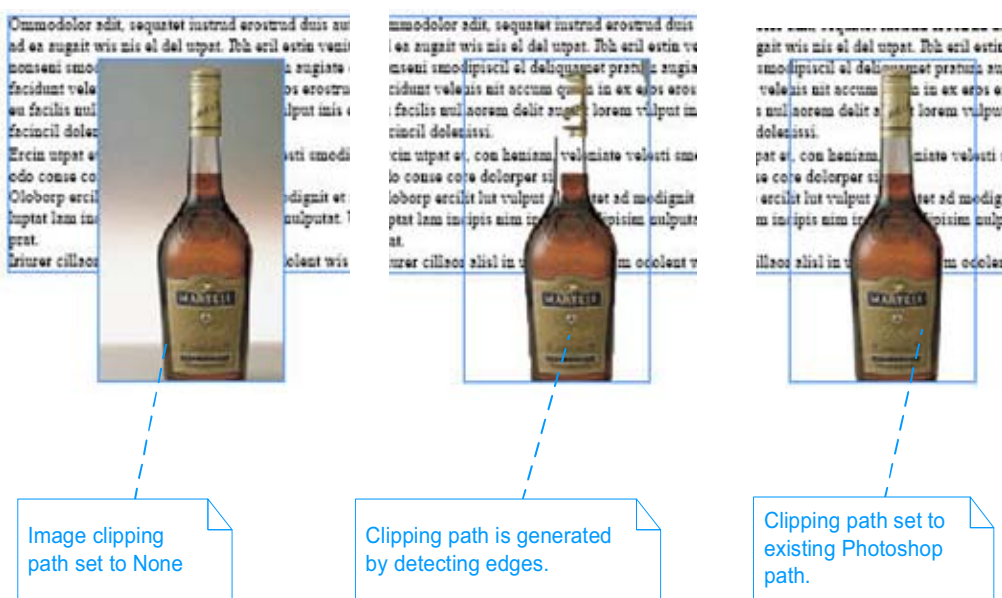


Setting clipping path and text wrap

Let's use a different image to set clipping-path and text-wrap options. In this section, we place a linked image, overlap it on top of a text frame, and examine how the image and text frame change when you set clipping-path and text-wrap options.

Figure 89 shows examples of clipping-path options. In the left screenshot, no clipping path was set, so the image overlaps the background text. The center screenshot shows the result of the clipping-path Detect Edges option (with the Threshold parameter set to 150). Although Detect Edges can detect most of the contours of the bottle, the result looks even better if you use the existing Photoshop paths, as shown in the right screenshot.

FIGURE 89 Clipping-path options

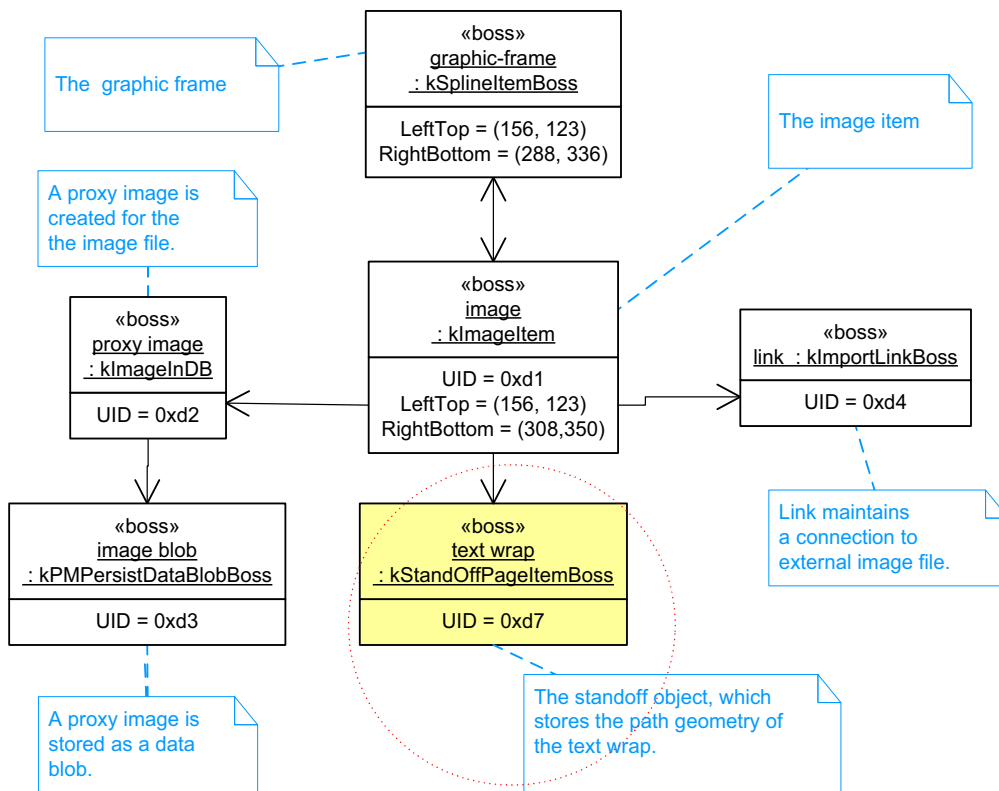
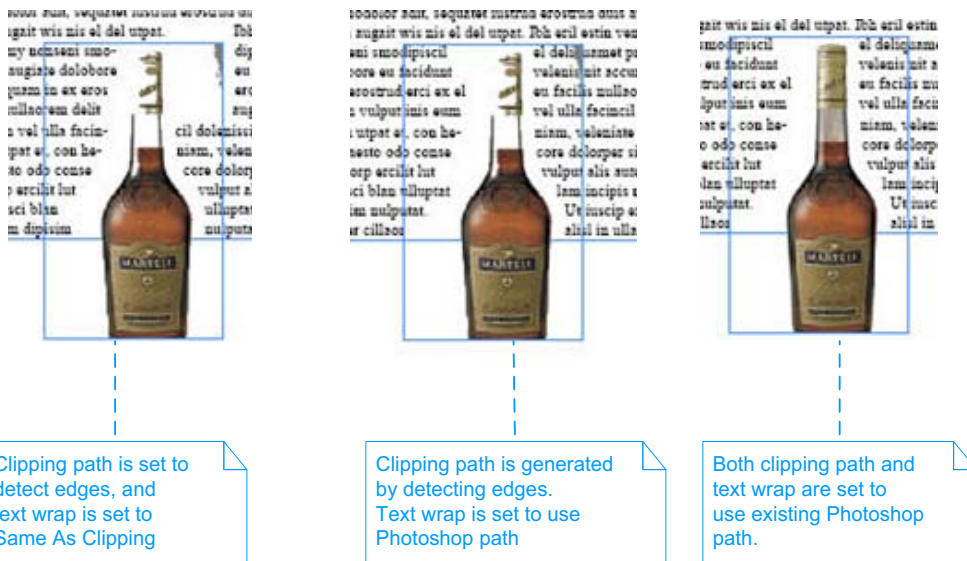


Reminder: The clipping path is stored with the IPathGeometry interface of the graphic page item, so no extra object is created. For the graphic page item's class diagram, see [Figure 83](#); for descriptions, see “Clipping paths” on page 219.

Now we set the text wrap of the image item, shown in [Figure 90](#). All three screenshots were taken with the text wrap set to wrap around the graphic page item's object shape. The left screenshot shows the result when the text-wrap contour option is set to Same As Clipping, with clipping-path type set to Detect Edges. The top-right corner of the bottle frame does not have text, because a small part of the image is there. You can set the contour option to use existing Photoshop paths independent of the clipping path, shown in the center screenshot. You also can set both the clipping path and text-wrap contour options to use the Photoshop path, which produces the best result, as shown in the right screenshot.

Object model changes after setting the text-wrap options are shown in the lower part of [Figure 90](#). A new `kStandOffPageItemBoss` object—within the red circle, marked in yellow—is created to hold the text-wrap path. For information on how this affects text composition, see the “Text Fundamentals” chapter.

FIGURE 90 Text-wrap options



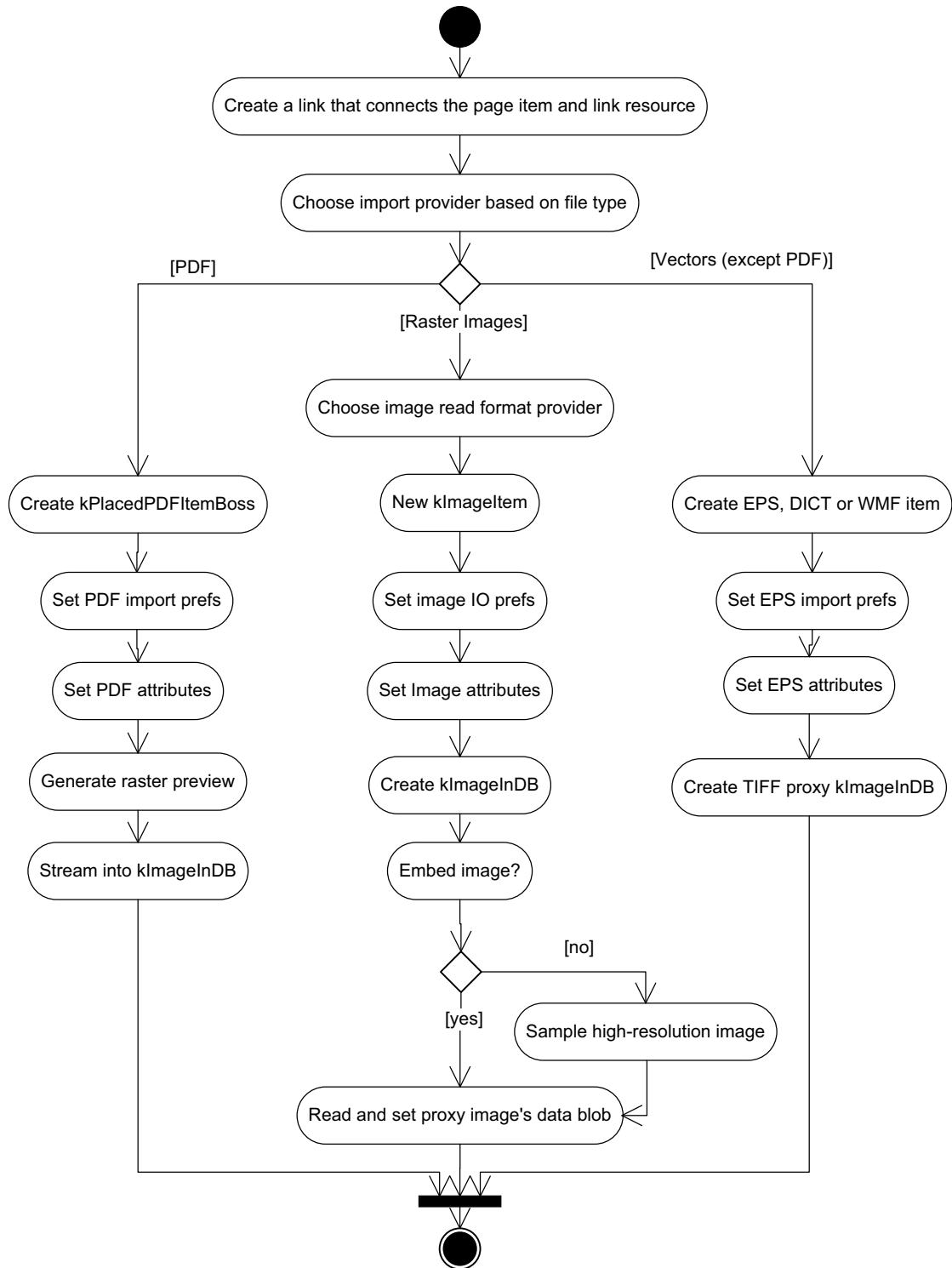
Graphics import

Overview of the import process

When a user chooses to place a graphic into a document, InDesign performs a sequence of steps to import the graphics file as a graphic page item. [Figure 91](#) shows the steps involved in importing PDF, EPS, and image files.

You also can import another InDesign document to a document. The import process works like PDF import. The only difference is importing InDesign document also imports swatches, inks, fonts and links, etc. and creates secondary links if the document being imported also contains links. You can set InDesign document-import options like other graphic file types; see [“InDesign document-import preferences” on page 242](#).

FIGURE 91 Graphics-import process



At a high level, the process involves the following steps:

1. Create a `kImportLinkBoss` that connects the link resource and the page item.
2. Query for an import provider that provides `kImportProviderService` for the graphic. This service also is used for importing other types of files, like plain-text files. For graphics files, one of four providers is called: `kPDFPlaceProviderBoss`, `kImagePlaceProviderBoss`, `kEPSPlaceProviderBoss` or `kNativeImportServiceBoss`. See [Table 49](#) for details on file formats supported by these providers.
3. Create the appropriate new page item according to the type of the graphics file. See [Table 49](#).
4. Import the file and set new page-item attributes, like `IPDFAttributes`, `IEPSAttributes`, and `IImageAttributes`. This may involve searching for an appropriate image import filter (“Image-import filters” on page 242) and setting import options (“Import options” on page 240).
5. Create and set a low-resolution proxy image for the new page item, which is accessible through `IImageAccess` on the new page item.

TABLE 49 Supported graphic-file formats for import

Import provider	Filename extension	Page-item boss
<code>kEPSPlaceProviderBoss</code>	AI, EPS, DCS	<code>kEPSItem</code>
<code>kEPSPlaceProviderBoss</code>	PCT, PIC	<code>kPICTItem</code>
<code>kEPSPlaceProviderBoss</code>	WMF, EMF	<code>kWMFItem</code>
<code>kImagePlaceProviderBoss</code>	TIF, TIFF, SCT, PSD, PNG, PCX, JPEG, JPG, GIF, DIB	<code>kImageItem</code>
<code>kPDFPlaceProviderBoss</code>	PDF	<code>kPlacedPDFItemBoss</code>
<code>kNativeImportServiceBoss</code>	INDD	<code>kInDesignPageItemBoss</code>

Import options

To control how the file should be imported, end users can choose Show Import Options in the Place dialog box, which allows the user to set import options through an Import Options dialog box. The specific options depend on the file type and graphics data in the file.

PDF-import preferences

The `IPDFPlacePrefs` (`IID_IPDFPLACEPREFS`) interface allows you to set various PDF import options, like how to crop the graphic and which pages to import. If the PDF file contains layers, you can set up layer information on the dialog using `IGraphicLayerInfo`.

Both interfaces are aggregated on `kWorkspaceBoss`. `IGraphicLayerInfo` can be initialized by the imported file before bringing up the Import Options dialog. [Table 50](#) lists some default settings of `IPDFPlacePrefs`.

For details, see the “PDF Import and Export” chapter.

TABLE 50 Selected default PDF-import preferences

Preference	Default value
Crop	kCropToContent
Page number	1
Proxy resolution	72
Show preview	kTrue
Transparent background	kTrue

EPS-import preferences

IEPSPreferences (IID_IEPSPREFERENCES) also is aggregated on kWorkspaceBoss. Some settings are set programmatically; for example, importing an EPS graphic from a file (not from the clipboard) automatically sets the import mode to “import whole” (kImportWhole). [Table 51](#) lists some default settings of IEPSPreferences.

TABLE 51 Selected default EPS-import preferences

Preference	Default value
Import mode	kImportWhole
Display resolution	72
Read OPI comments	kDontReadOPIComments
Create frame	kDontCreateFrameFromClipPath
Create proxy	kCreateIfNeeded

NOTE: “Create frame” corresponds to the Apply Photoshop Clipping Path checkbox, and kAlwaysCreate corresponds to the Rasterize The PostScript radio button in the EPS Import Options dialog box.

Image-import preferences

The Raster Image Import Options dialog box uses separate panels to set raster image-specific import options, like color profile and clipping path. Usually, InDesign uses session preferences (IImageIOPreferences on kWorkspaceBoss) to import an image file. [Table 52](#) lists some of the default settings.

TABLE 52 Selected default image-import preferences

Preference	Default value
Allow auto-embedding	kTrue
Create clip frame	kTrue
Preview resolution	72

When auto-embedding is allowed and the image size is small, InDesign automatically embeds the high-resolution image as the proxy image, so the data and the interfaces of `kImageInDB` reflect the high-resolution image rather than a new, low-resolution image.

InDesign document-import preferences

Placing InDesign document directly into an InDesign document has advantages in the publishing workflow, including automatically maintained links, fonts, swatches, links and so on. The `IImportDocOptions` (`IID_IIMPORTDOCOPTIONS`) interface allows you to set various InDesign document-import options, like how to crop the pages, which pages to import, and where to display previews. `IGraphicLayerInfo` let you set up layer information on the dialog to choose which layer to import.

Both `IImportDocOptions` and `IGraphicLayerInfo` are session preferences aggregated on `kWorkspaceBoss`. They also store information to pass to `kImportDocCmdBoss`, if you want to use the command directly to place InDesign files. [Table 53](#) lists some default settings of `IImportDocOptions`.

TABLE 53 Selected default InDesign document-import preferences

Preference	Default value
Crop	kCropToPage
Page number	1
Show preview	kTrue

Image-import filters

You may have noticed in [Table 49](#) that the same `kImagePlaceProviderBoss` is used for importing various kinds of raster images. These raster images have different file formats and, therefore, they need different ways to read data. InDesign provides another level of abstraction: the image-import provider queries for service providers that support `kImageReadFormatService`. This mechanism also serves as another extension pattern software developers may implement to support new raster-image formats.

InDesign implements a set of providers to read various image formats, to import TIF (TIFF), SCT, PSD, PNG, PCX, JPEG (JPG), GIF, and DIB files. These providers serve as the image-import filters. When InDesign is instructed to place an image, it iterates over all the providers until it finds one that can import the image. See [Table 54](#) for a list of these providers.

TABLE 54 Image read-format providers

File type	Image read-format provider
TIF	kTIFFImageReadFormatBoss
SCT	kSCTImageReadFormatBoss
PSD	kPSImageReadFormatBoss
PNG	kPNGImageReadFormatBoss
PCX	kPCXImageReadFormatBoss
JPEG	kJPEGImageReadFormatBoss
GIF	kGIFImageReadFormatBoss
DIB	kDIBImageReadFormatBoss

Export to graphics file format

InDesign supports exporting all or part of a document to PDF, EPS, SVG, and JPEG formats.

All the export processes are alike at a high level: exports are implemented using the IExport-Provider service-provider mechanism (see the “Service Providers” chapter of *Learning the Adobe InDesign CS4 Architecture*). Each type of export destination format provides export services. [Table 55](#) lists export providers that export to a graphics file format.

TABLE 55 Graphic-export providers

Export destination	Export provider
PDF	kPDFExportBoss
EPS	kEPSExportBoss
SVG	kSVGExportProviderBoss
JPEG	kJPEGExportProviderBoss

For examples of export provider implementations, see SDK samples like CHMLFilter, TextExportFilter, and XDocBookWorkflow.

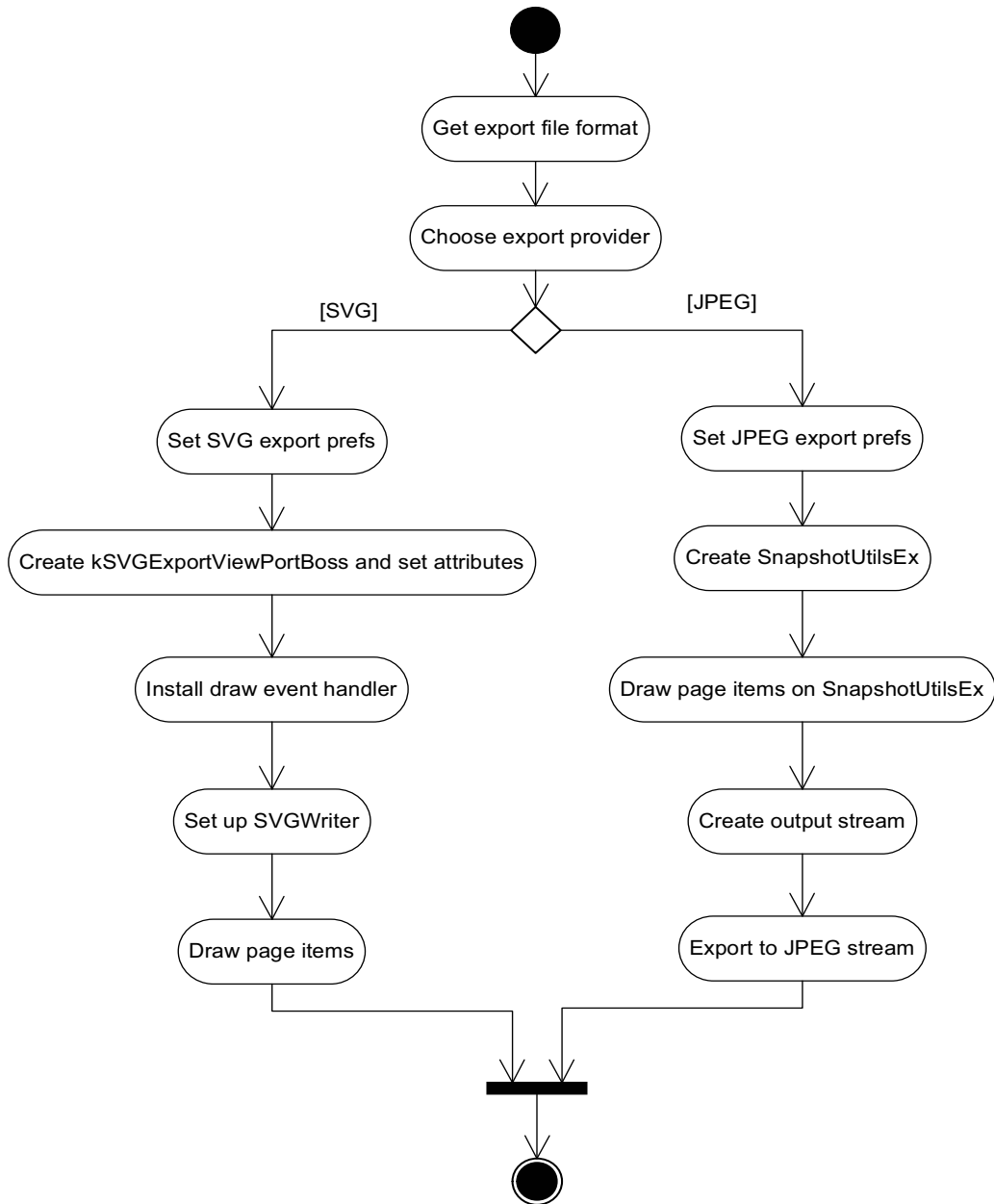
Each export provider has a corresponding command that exports content to a desired file format in the following two stages:

1. *Drawing* — Drawing page items to an intermediate entity, such as a viewport.
2. *Streaming* — Writing the content to the provided file stream.

Export to PDF and EPS are discussed in detail in the “Exporting to EPS and PDF” section of the “Printing” chapter. PDF import and export also are discussed in the “PDF Import and Export” chapter.

Only SVG and JPEG export are discussed in this section. [Figure 92](#) shows high-level activities of SVG and JPEG export.

FIGURE 92 SVG and JPEG export process



SVG export

SVG export preferences

Settings for SVG export are stored with the `ISVGExportPreferences` interface on `kWorkspaceBoss`. For details, see the API reference documentation.

End users can modify the preferences through the SVG Export Options dialog box. You also can change the preferences programmatically, with the `kSVGExportSetPrefsCommandBoss` command. [Table 56](#) lists some of the default SVG-export preferences.

TABLE 56 Selected default SVG-export preferences

Preference	Description	Default value
Embed fonts	Whether to embed fonts in the SVG file	<code>kTrue</code>
Embed image	Whether the image should be embedded in the SVG file	<code>kTrue</code>
Export bitmap sampling	Sampling quality	<code>kHiResSampling</code>
Image format	Image format	<code>kDefaultImageFormat</code> , which is set to the same as <code>kPNGImageFormat</code>
JPEG quality	Image quality	<code>kJPEGQualityMed</code>
Page item export	Whether to export the selected page item only	<code>kFalse</code>
Range format	The range of pages to export	<code>kAllPages</code>

Exporting to SVG format

InDesign exports to SVG format by drawing page items and documents to a special viewport, `kSVGExportViewPortBoss`. For more information about viewports, see [“Data model for drawing” on page 276](#). `kSVGExportCommandBoss` aggregates `ISVGExportController`, which controls the drawing process and hides much of the complexity involved in SVG export. `kSVGExportViewPortBoss` aggregates `ISVGWriterAccess`, which helps in writing contents to an SVG file stream.

JPEG export

JPEG export preferences

Settings for JPEG export are stored with the `IJPEGExportPreferences` interface on `kWorkspaceBoss`. For details, see the API reference documentation.

End users can modify the preferences through the JPEG Export Options dialog box. You also can change the preferences programmatically, with the `kJPEGExportSetPrefsCommandBoss` command. [Table 57](#) lists some of the default JPEG-export preferences.

TABLE 57 Selected default JPEG-export preferences

Preference	Description	Default value
Export bitmap sampling	Sampling quality	kHiResSampling
JPEG quality	Image quality	kJPEGQualityMed
Range format	The range of pages to export	kAllPages

Exporting to JPEG format

kJPEGExportCommandBoss creates a SnapshotUtilsEx object and draws document contents on it. kJPEGExportCommandBoss then calls SnapshotUtilsEx::ExportImageToJPEG to write to the file stream. SnapshotUtilsEx also has methods to export to TIFF and GIF formats, so you can export to TIFF and GIF if you write your own export command, though you may need to provide your own image-write format boss. In the case of JPEG, the write-format boss provided is kJPEGImageWriteFormatBoss. For more information on SnapshotUtilsEx, see “[Snapshots](#)” on page 285. For use of SnapshotUtils (the older version of SnapshotUtilsEx, see the Snapshot SDK sample plug-in).

NOTE: Multiple JPEG files are created for documents with multiple pages.

Colors and swatches

This section examines the data model for swatches, colors, and gradients.

Architecture

This section covers the representation of color, a fundamental graphic property, in the InDesign API. When we talk about color in the context of InDesign, we refer to the following:

- A color system refers to how colors and gradients are represented and printed and how to achieve consistent color throughout different applications and different devices. See “[Color management](#)” on page 252.
- A rendering attribute of a page item refers to how a color or gradient can be used to render a page item’s graphic attributes, like stroke and fill. See “[Graphic attributes](#)” on page 256.



Figure 93 shows some key color-related concepts and how they appear in the user interface.

FIGURE 93 Color concepts

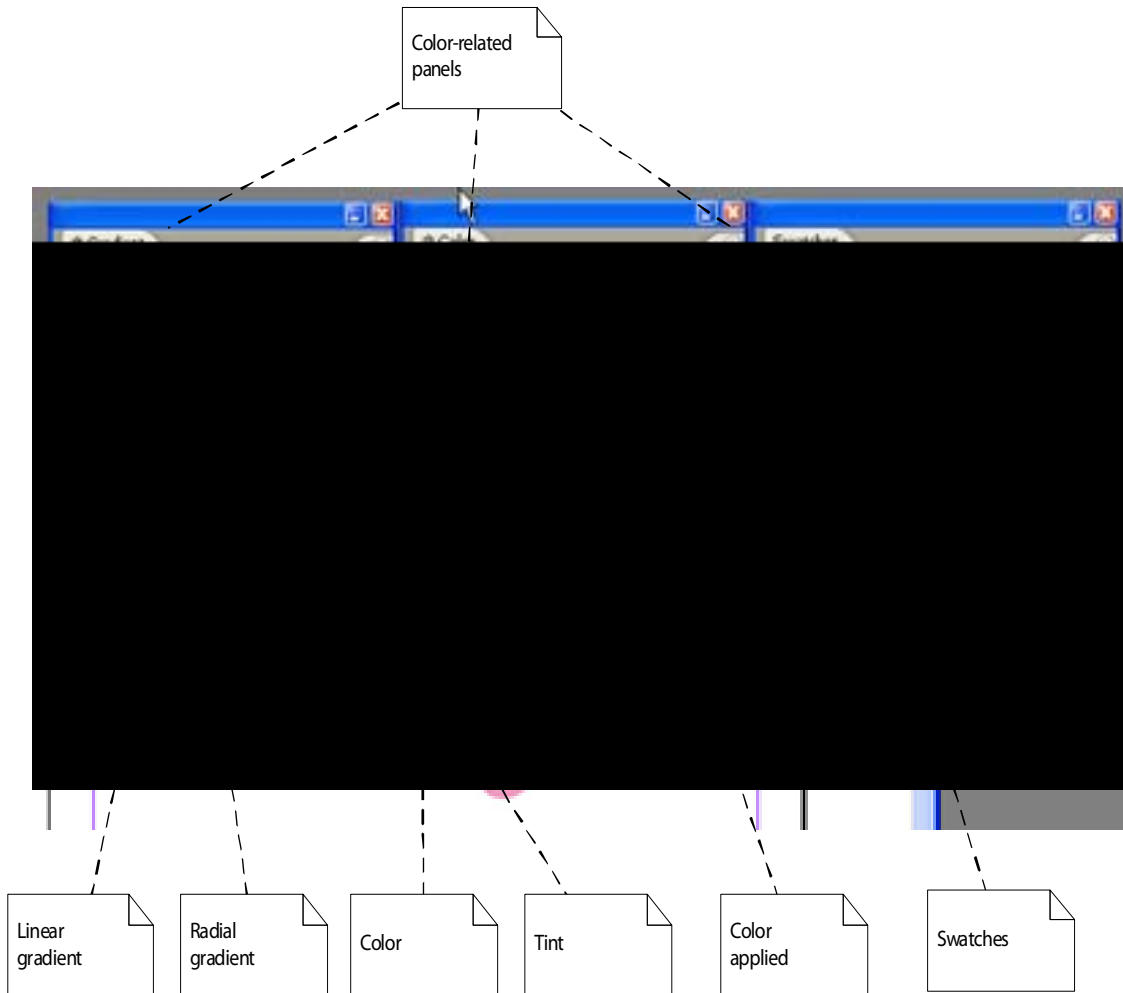


Figure 94 shows some of the key color-related concepts and the relationships among them.

FIGURE 94 Conceptual model for color

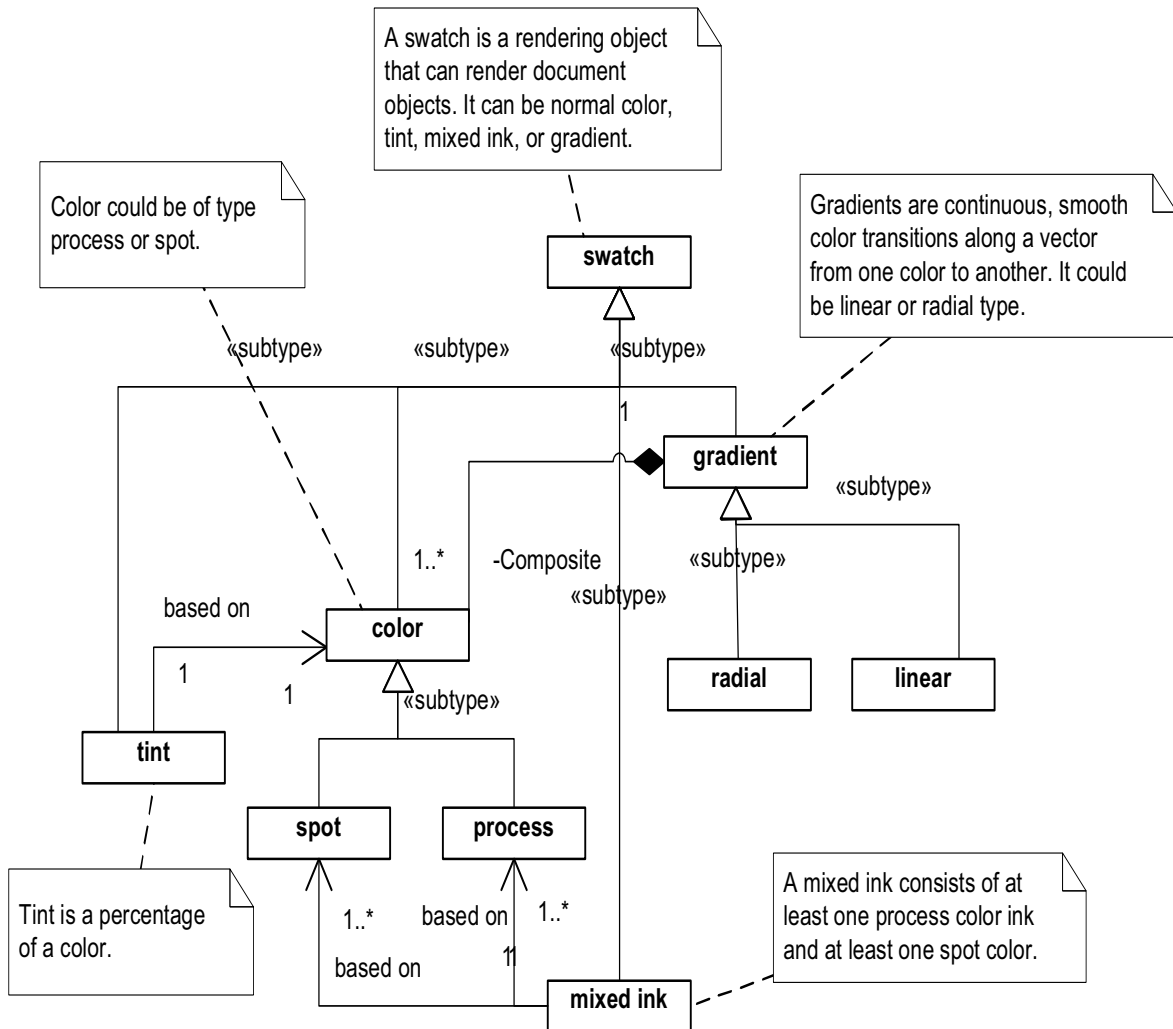
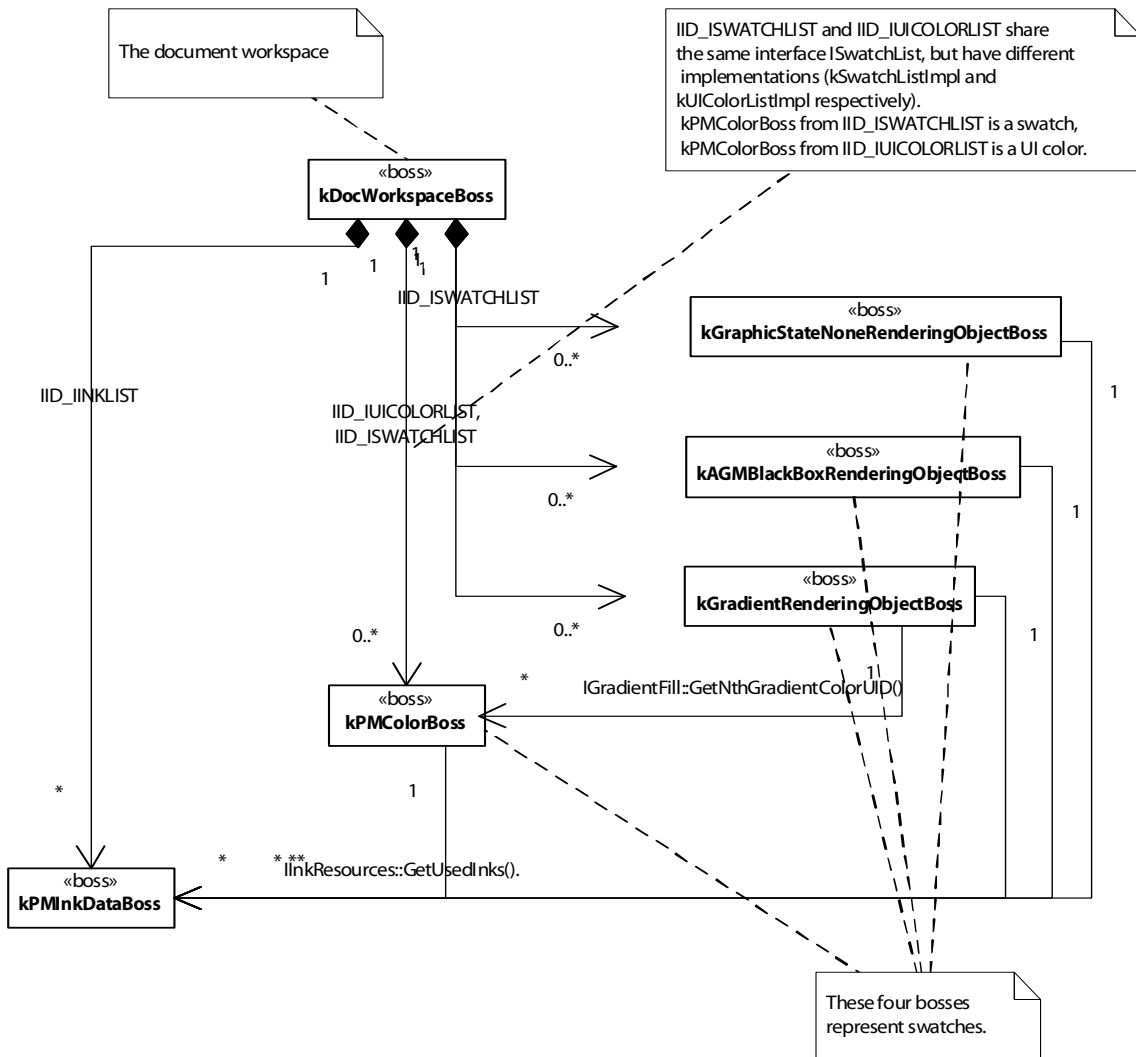


Figure 95 is a UML class diagram involving color-related boss classes. It shows the relationship among color and swatch-related boss classes. The relationships also apply if you replace kDocWorkspaceBoss with kWorkspaceBoss.

FIGURE 95 Color-related boss-class diagram



Comparing Figure 95 to the conceptual diagrams, note the following:

- The **kDocWorkspaceBoss** is used here to show where these boss classes belong. These interfaces also exist on **kWorkspaceBoss**.
- The boss objects of type **kPMColorBoss** and **kGradientRenderingObjectBoss** and other classes represent swatches directly. **IRenderingObject** is the signature interface.
- **kPMColorBoss** implements solid color, tint, mixed ink, process color, and spot color.

When swatches are created, modified, or deleted, the state of the swatch list changes. For a detailed discussion of these changes, see “Swatch-list state” on page 296.

Swatches

A swatch is an abstraction that can represent a color, gradient, tint or mixed ink.

A rendering object implements the `IRenderingObject` interface. `IRenderingObject` represents information about a color or gradient and exposes capabilities to render this information to a device. The following are some of the boss classes that expose the `IRenderingObject` interface:

- `kPMColorBoss` represents colors (including tint and mixed ink)
- `kGradientRenderingObjectBoss` represents gradient.
- `kGraphicStateNoneRenderingObjectBoss` represents the absence of rendering information; for example, this boss can represent no-fill or no-stroke attributes. This boss is used internally.
- `kAGMBlackBoxRenderingObjectBoss` is used for special page items created from Adobe Illustrator® clipboard format. It is only for internal use.

Some methods of `IRenderingObject` take an `IGraphicsPort` item as an argument. `IGraphicsPort` is an interface with methods that parallel PostScript operators like `setcolorspace`. The key responsibility of the rendering object implementation is to set up the color space, tint, and color components to draw to the graphics port. `IRenderingObjectApplyAction` is another required interface on rendering objects. For more details on `IRenderingObject`, `IRenderingObjectApplyAction`, `IGraphicsPort`, and the other interfaces on rendering object boss classes, see the API reference documentation.

Solid colors

Color is represented by the `kPMColorBoss` class, responsible for representing solid colors, including tints and mixed inks. In addition to the signature interface for a rendering object, `IRenderingObject`, `kPMColorBoss` aggregates several other interfaces, including the following:

- *IColorOverrides* — Stores tint and color remarks so the `kPMColorBoss` also can represent tint and special color types (e.g., reserved color). For details, see the API reference documentation.
- *InkData* — Stores the ink information used by the color. `InkType` represents color type (process or spot).
- *IColorData* — Represents color coordinates in a `ColorArray` vector and a color space.

There are three color spaces of interest:

- CMYK defines a color with four components: cyan, magenta, yellow, and black. Typically, these components are represented by percentages.
- RGB represents colors with three components: red, green, and blue. Typically, these components are represented by values between 0 and 255.
- LAB (more precisely, $L^*a^*b^*$) is a device-independent color space

See “[Color management](#)” on page 252.

Gradients

Gradients are represented by the `kGradientRenderingObjectBoss` boss class, which aggregates `IRenderingObject` as well as `IGradientFill`, representing gradient-specific properties. For details, see the API reference documentation.

Gradients can be linear or radial; see the enum declaration of `GradientType` in `GraphicTypes.h`. A gradient consists of one or more ranges of color, which are smooth interpolations between gradient stop positions. The color is defined only at the gradient stop positions, with calculated color values at intermediate positions. For more detail on working with gradients, see “Gradients” in InDesign Help.

Swatch lists

Rendering objects (`IRenderingObject`) are referenced in a swatch list (`ISwatchList`). The swatch list (`ISwatchList`) is exposed on workspaces (`IWorkspace`). For examples of the swatch list (and ink list) when an end user creates and applies swatches to page items in a document, see “Swatch-list state” on page 296.

If you create a color through the Color panel, or create a new gradient through the Gradient panel and then apply the gradient to a page item without creating a swatch beforehand, an unnamed (or local) swatch is created in the swatch list. The unnamed swatches do not appear in the Swatches panel, but they can be used for the strokes and fills of document objects by client code.

User-interface color list

Colors and color names that appear in the application user interface in places like the Layers panel and Tags panel are not the same ones used in representing color in the document. User-interface colors also are stored in an `ISwatchList` interface on workspaces (`IWorkspace`), but with the interface identifier `IID_IUICOLORLIST`.

User-interface colors are normally RGB only. A key utility interface for working with user-interface colors is `IUIColorUtils`. User-interface colors are represented by `kUIColorDataBoss` rather than a rendering-object boss class.

Inks

Colors are ultimately printed by means of inks; for example, CMYK color separation is performed before printing to a four-color press. Inks are represented by the `kPMInkDataBoss` boss class.

The rendering object classes like `kPMColorBoss` or `kGradientRenderingObjectBoss` aggregate the `IInkResources` interface, with which you can refer to the inks used in a color (or other page item) by using the `IInkResources::GetUsedInks` method, then querying for `IPMInkDataBoss`.

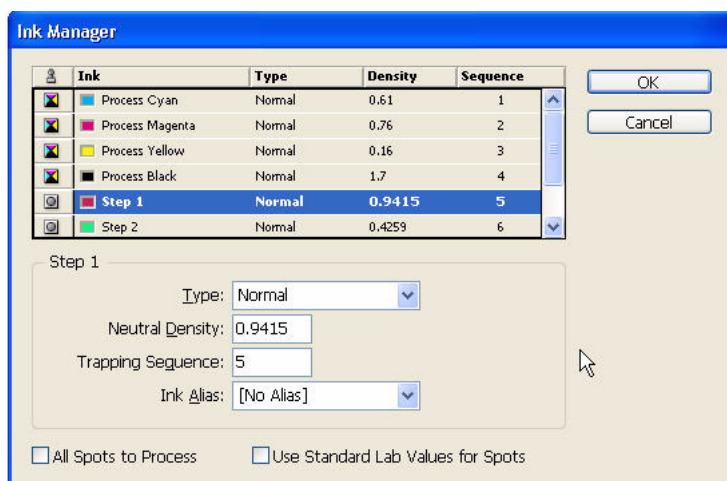
`IInkData::GetInkUIDList` returns an empty list when the color type is process. `IInkData` is an interface on `kPMColorBoss`.

There is an InkList interface on the workspace boss classes that specifies the inks needed for all swatches in the document and application. The ink list contains process inks and zero or more spot inks.

The relation between inks and the swatch list is fairly direct: adding a new spot color to the swatch list and applying it to a document object results in a new entry in the ink list. However, creating another swatch that is a process color and applying it does not necessarily change the entries in the ink list, if the process inks needed to print this new color already are in the ink list.

The ink-manager feature (Ink Manager in the Swatches panel menu) shows the inks associated with the contents of the swatch list. For example, if the swatches in the document were defined in terms of four process colors and two spot colors, the ink-manager user interface is similar to that shown in [Figure 96](#). For information on how to work with the ink manager and iterate through the ink list, see the “Graphics” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

FIGURE 96 Ink Manager dialog box



It is necessary to preflight documents to ensure they print correctly when submitted to the press. As far as color is concerned, it is necessary to identify the inks that must be loaded in the press for a job to print correctly.

Color management

The purpose of color management is to get accurate color on all kinds of devices. Color-management modules provide color-conversion calculations from one device’s color space to another, based on ICC device profiles. For detailed descriptions of the color spaces used by InDesign, see “Color spaces” on page 300.

ICC profiles

An ICC profile is a record of the unique color characteristics of a color input or output device. An ICC profile contains data for the translation of device-dependent color to L*a*b* color. The following illustrates the concept of translation from the L*a*b* color space to RGB and CMYK color spaces using ICC profiles:

- L*a*b* = RGB + ICC profile
- L*a*b* = CMYK + ICC profile

With an ICC profile, color-management systems can do the following:

- Translate a user-defined, device-specific color to a device-independent, L*a*b* color. For example, if the user creates an RGB color for a specific computer monitor, that color could be translated to L*a*b*.
- Translate a L*a*b* color to a device-specific color. For example, when printing to a printer, the L*a*b* color is translated to a CMYK color.

Color-management workflow

Color management within InDesign is relatively complex because of the following:

- InDesign supports multiple color spaces per document. For example, a user could assign text in one paragraph an RGB color, another paragraph a CMYK color, and so on.
- InDesign supports external links (by means of ILink) to assets that can have different color settings than those used in the document.

There are three levels of ICC profile sets involved in InDesign:

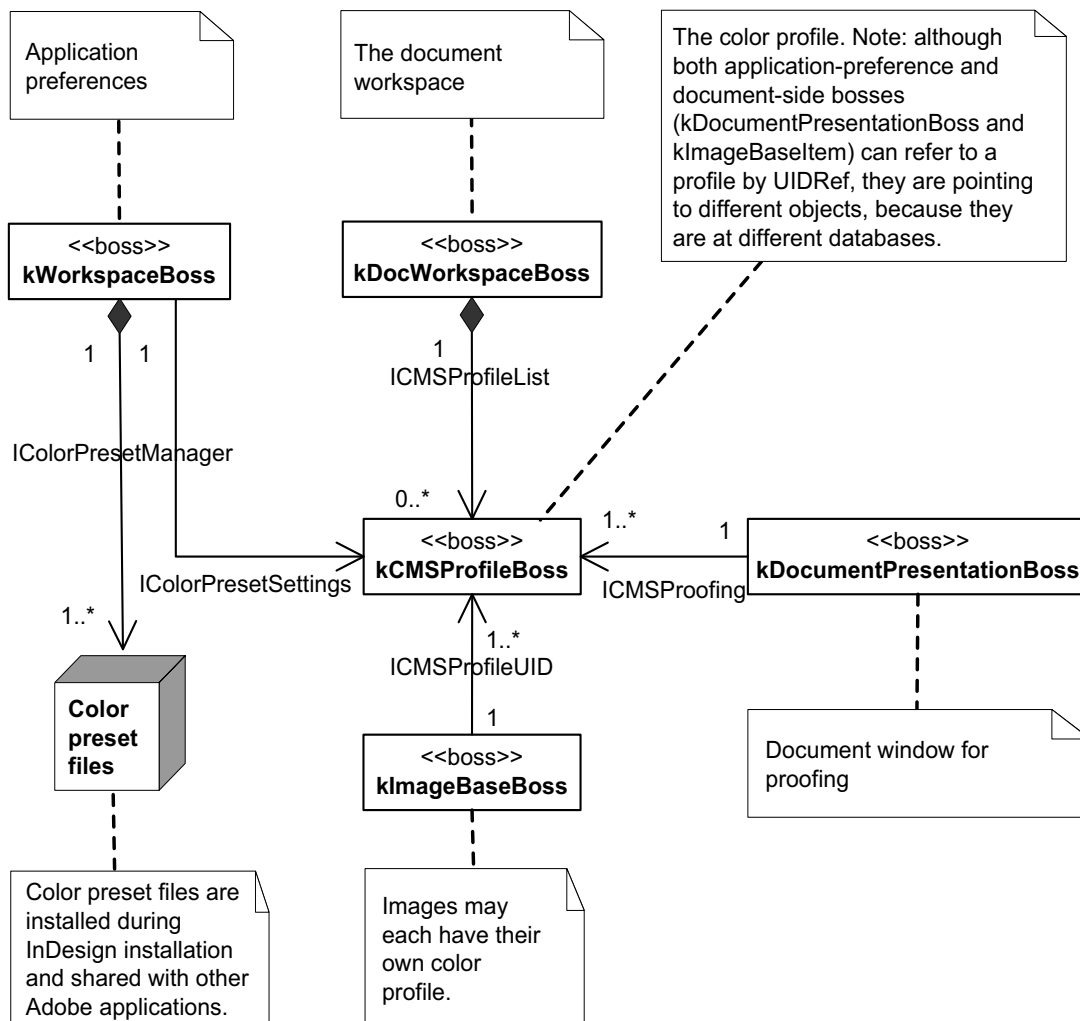
- *Image ICC profile* — This is embedded in the image file when the image is created.
- *Document ICC profile* — This is associated with a particular InDesign document.
- *Application ICC profile preference* — This is the default profile of the application. The default profile is assigned to any new document.

InDesign features relating to color management are described comprehensively in “Color Management” in InDesign Help.

Data model for color management

The implementation of color management is somewhat complex. The class diagram in [Figure 97](#) illustrates some color management-related boss class relationships in InDesign.

FIGURE 97 Color management



Color presets

Outside the application, predefined Adobe color-management settings are stored in color preset files, which are saved at the following location:

Windows:

Program Files\Common Files\Adobe\Color\Settings\

Mac OS:

Library/Application Support/Adobe/Color/Settings

These presets are shared among all Adobe Creative Suite® applications, to make it easier to achieve consistent color across the suite. The **kWorkspaceBoss** boss class aggregates the **IColorPresetsManager** interface, which is responsible for managing the presets, like loading color pre-

set files and saving customized presets. The settings of the current preset are populated into the `IColorPresetsSettings` interface on `kWorkspaceBoss`.

The `IColorPresetsSettings` interface stores the working color-management settings of the application, like RGB and CMYK, the ICC profile, and color-management policies. In the user interface, the color-management settings are accessed through the Color Settings dialog box.

Color profile

The `kCMSProfileBoss` boss class represents a color profile. The `ICMSProfile` interface on `kCMSProfileBoss` stores information about the type and category of the profile. This interface has a method for getting and setting profile data by accessing the `IACESpecificProfileData` interface on the same boss.

The `ICMSProfileList` interface, exposed on workspaces (`IWorkspace`), indicates which profiles are used, as either document profiles or image profiles, and which are assigned to specific document categories (e.g., document CMYK and document RGB). A profile can be assigned to each category of a document through `Edit > Assign Profiles`.

Image settings

Any imported image can have either an embedded profile or a profile already assigned to it. (See `Object > Image Color Settings`.) The `ICMSItemProfileSource` interface aggregated on the `kImageBaseItem` boss class stores the basic profile-assignment type (see the enumeration `ICMSItemProfileSource::ProfileSourceType`) and the name of the image's embedded profile, if any.

If an image uses an external profile or an embedded profile, an interface `IPersistUIDData` (with interface identifier `IID_ICMSPROFILEUUID`) stores the UID of an instance of `kCMSProfileBoss`, so you will be able to instantiate an interface on `kCMSProfileBoss` from this UID and get the profile data needed.

There is no link from a specific profile to the images that use that profile. To find the images that use a specific profile in the profile list, you need to iterate through all images using the links manager (`ILinksManager`).

Rendering intent

The `ICMSSettings` interface is aggregated on `docworkspace` (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`) and the `kImageBaseItem` boss class, a superclass for image boss classes, which stores rendering-intent information for document and image page item. Please use the `ICMSUtils` interface to set rendering intent, rather than manipulating the `ICMSSettings` interface directly.

For application defaults, rendering intent are determined by `IColorPresetsSettings` interface aggregated on `kWorkspaceBoss`. You can use `GetIntent` and `SetIntent` methods to manipulate rendering intent.

Proofing

The `ICMSProofing` interface is aggregated on `kWorkspaceBoss`, `kDocumentPresentationBoss`, and several user-interface panels. The implementation on `kWorkspaceBoss` is a proofing preference, and the implementation on `kDocumentPresentationBoss` is responsible for setting up drawing when users choose to proof their design using the `Proof Setup` dialog box. This `ICMSProofing` interface stores the proofing settings as well as a proofing profile.

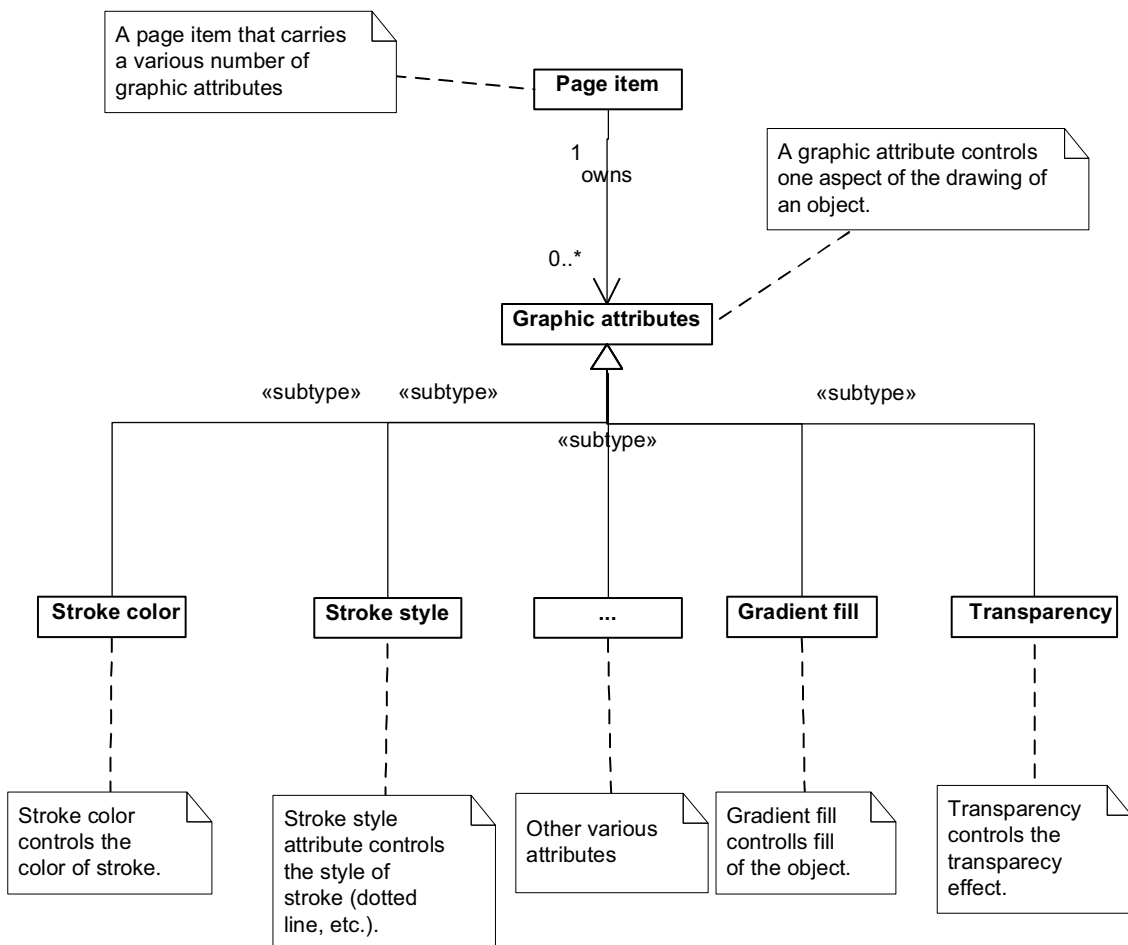
Graphic attributes

A graphic attribute describes an aspect of how a page item should be drawn. There are many kinds of graphic attribute for properties like stroke color, fill color, stroke type, and stroke weight. This section introduces the concepts involved and describes specific sets of graphic attributes for features like page-item rendering.

Graphic-attribute data model

Figure 98 is a conceptual model of the graphic attributes associated with a page item.

FIGURE 98 Graphic-attribute conceptual model

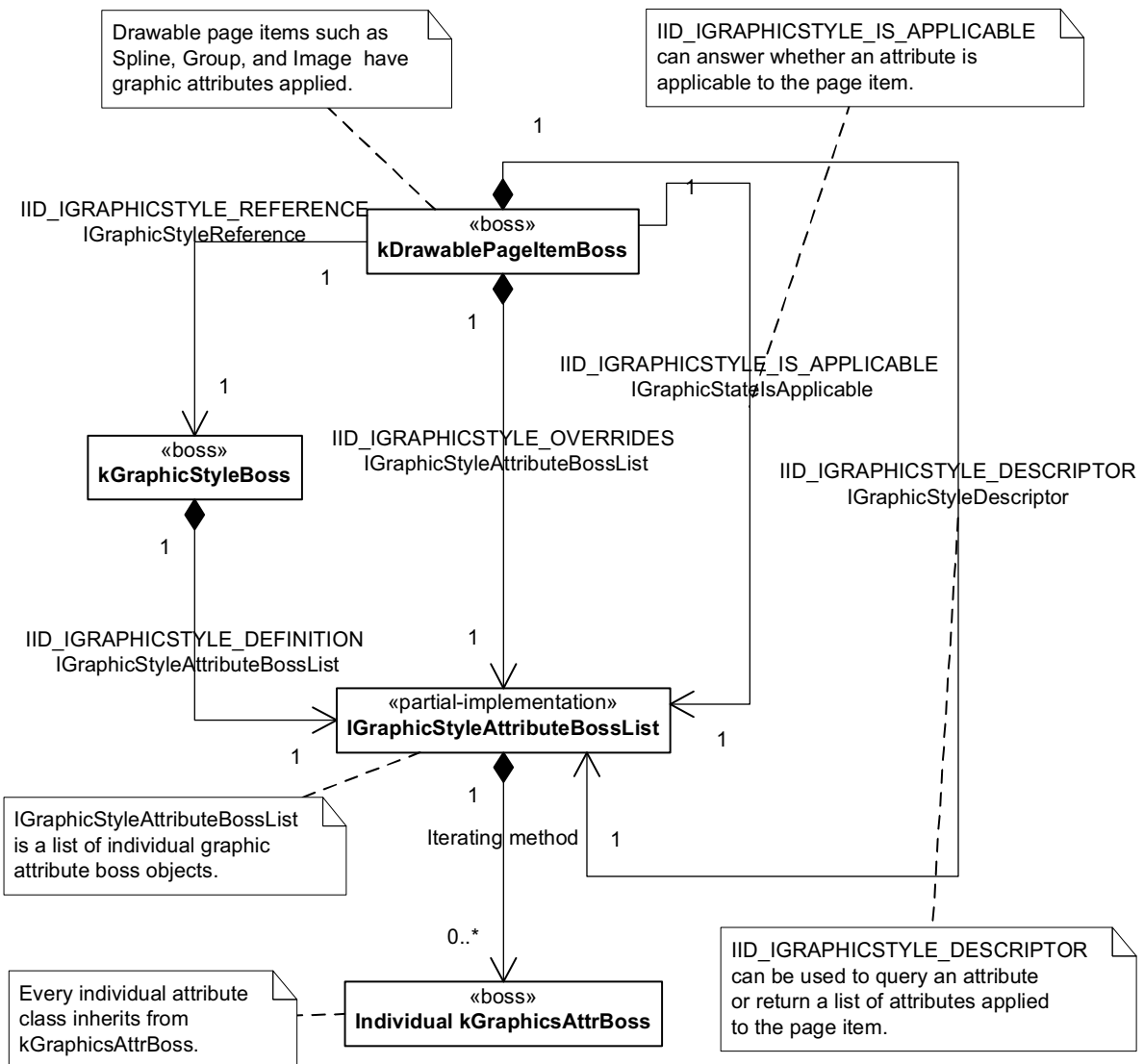


A page item owns a collection of graphic attributes, specifying properties that control how the page item is drawn, like stroke color, stroke style, and transparency. Each attribute is responsi-

ble for a single aspect of how the page item is drawn. A list of graphic attributes is represented by IGraphicStyleAttributeBossList.

Figure 99 shows the graphic-attribute UML class model of a drawable page item.

FIGURE 99 Graphic attributes on a page item



There are several important interfaces on a page item responsible for managing graphic attributes:

- IGraphicStateIsApplicable.
- IGraphicStyleAttributeBossList (IID_IGRAPHICSTYLE_OVERRIDES), which stores a list of graphic attributes that override those stored in a graphic style.

- IGraphicStyleAttributeBossList.
- IGraphicStyleDescriptor.
- IGraphicStyleReference.

For details on each interface's responsibilities, see the API reference documentation.

Representation of graphic attributes

Graphic attributes are represented by boss classes with the signature interface IGraphicAttributeInfo. The graphic attributes in the application appear in the API reference documentation for IGraphicAttributeInfo. Typically, they derive from the kGraphicsAttrBoss boss class.

The IGraphicAttributeInfo interface stores the name and type of the attribute. Some graphic attributes have corresponding text and table attributes. See [“Mapping graphic attributes between domains” on page 260](#).

Graphic attributes have additional data interfaces that specify their values. Because there are many graphic attributes, sometimes it is a challenge to determine which attribute boss corresponds to which attribute. For a description of attributes, see [“Catalog of graphic attributes” on page 301](#).

Most of the attributes represent a single value, like a boolean, int16, int32, PMPoint, or PMReal. These simple attributes generally are backed by interfaces like IGraphicAttrBoolean, IGraphicAttrInt16, IGraphicAttrInt32, IGraphicAttrPoint, and IGraphicAttrRealNumber. For example, kGraphicStyleEvenOddAttrBoss (IGraphicAttrBoolean) corresponds to the even-odd fill rule when you have a compound path; set it to kTrue to use the even-odd rule or to kFalse to use the default InDesign fill rule (non-zero winding fill rule).

Some other attributes have UID values. For example, attributes related to object rendering refer to a rendering object through the IPersistUIDData interface. For more information, see [“Rendering attributes” on page 261](#).

Some other attributes have ClassID values, which are all stored with IGraphicAttrClassID. These attributes are used to specify stroke effects of a page item. See [“Stroke effects” on page 262](#).

Graphic styles

A graphic style (kGraphicStyleBoss, UID-based) is a collection of graphic attributes. The IGraphicStyleNameTable interface exposed on workspaces (IWorkspace) stores the names and UIDs of graphic styles.

There are two key interfaces on kGraphicStyleBoss:

- IGraphicStyleInfo stores the name and UID for the style on which this style is based (the style from which this style inherits).
- IGraphicStyleAttributeBossList (IID_IGRAPHICSTYLE_DEFINITION) stores the list of graphic attributes this graphic style owns.

Only [No Style] is used in the InDesign CS4 and InCopy CS4 implementations. kGraphicStyleNoneBoss implements the default [No Style], which is set up during application start-up (for

the session workspace) and document creation (for document workspace). This style stores default settings of various graphic attributes, like stroke weight as 1.0 and stroke type as solid line.

Although there still is a public API to work with user-named graphic styles, these are deprecated since the introduction of object styles. Adobe applications do not define user-named styles using graphic styles as the container. We recommend you avoid using graphic styles for this purpose in your plug-ins. User-named styles are supported by the object styles feature.

An object style is a style that defines the appearance of a page-item object. An object style contains settings of a set of attributes, including graphic attributes and text attributes. An object style is a superset of graphic style.

Graphic state

Graphic state is the representation of the current state of things related to the graphic attributes. Usually this is a collection of graphic attributes for the current selection or, if there is no selection, the current defaults. The graphic state is represented by `kGraphicStateBoss`.

An active graphic state refers to the graphic state at the current context. Active graphic state can be accessed through `IGraphicStateAccessor`, aggregated on `kDocWorkspaceBoss` or `kWorkspaceBoss`. A reference to an interface of the active graphic state also can be acquired through `IGraphicStateUtils::QueryActiveGraphicState`, aggregated on `kUtilsBoss`.

The `kGraphicStateBoss` boss class aggregates interfaces like `IGraphicStateRenderObjects` and `IGraphicStateData`.

IGraphicStateRenderObjects

This interface is key to the graphic state. It can be acquired from the `IGraphicStateUtils` utility interface by querying active graphic state or the graphic state of a specific database. For sample code that shows how to acquire the interface, see the “Graphics” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Given this interface, you can query the current `IRenderingObject` interface for the specified rendering class or the active rendering class in the graphic state. The active rendering could be fill or stroke.

Changing the graphic state

Changing any graphic attributes changes the graphic state. Virtually every user-interface action—like selecting a new swatch, picking a color in the Color Picker panel, switching fill and stroke, selecting a different stroke style, changing selection, or changing the front document—causes a change to current active graphic state. You can use methods on `IGraphicAttributeUtils` or `IGraphicStateUtils` to acquire appropriate commands.

`kGraphicStateBoss` also aggregates an `ISubject` interface. Changes to the graphic state can be observed by listening along the `IID_IGRAPHICSTATE_RENDEROBJECTS` and `IID_IGRAPHICSTATE_DATA` protocols.

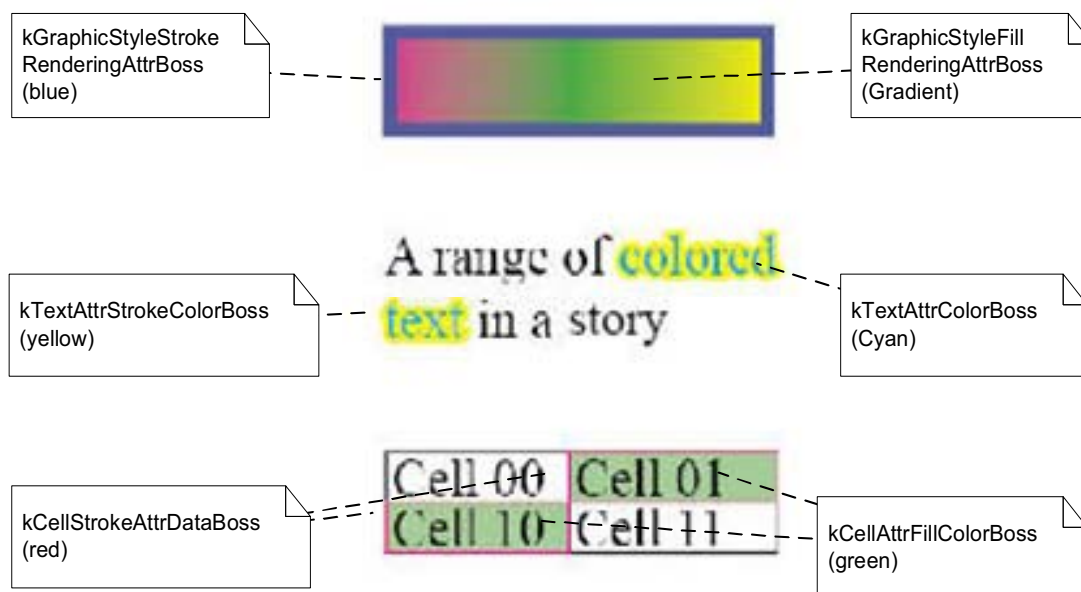
Creating new page items using default attributes

When a new page item is created, default attributes in the graphic-state boss objects are copied and applied to new page items when you specify `INewPageitemCmdData::kDefaultGraphicAttributes` as `attrType` parameter on spline creation methods on `IPathUtils`.

Mapping graphic attributes between domains

Some graphic attributes also can be applied to text or tables. For example, [Figure 100](#) shows stroke and fill colors and gradients applied to text, table cells, and a spline item. Although the intent is the same in each case, the attributes differ in each case. Text and tables have some attributes corresponding to the graphic attributes.

FIGURE 100 Stroke and fill attributes



There are independent attributes for each of these domains. For example, an attribute represented by `kGraphicStyleFillRenderingAttrBoss` on a spline page item is represented by the `kCellAttrFillColorBoss` type when the attribute is applied to a table cell, and it is represented by the `kTextAttrColorBoss` type when the attribute is applied to a text run.

When a graphic attribute is applied to a text run, there is a conversion process in which a new text attribute is applied as an override to the run. The same applies when trying to apply a graphic attribute to a table; the graphic attribute can be converted to a corresponding table attribute.

Not all graphic attributes apply to text or tables. The `IGraphicAttributeInfo::IsTextAttribute` and `IGraphicAttributeInfo::IsTableAttribute` methods return `kTrue` if the corresponding attribute in the respective domain exists. `IGraphicAttributeInfo::CreateTextAttribute` returns a

text attribute that maps onto the equivalent graphic attribute. Similarly, `IGraphicAttributeInfo::CreateTableAttribute` returns a table attribute that maps onto the equivalent graphic attribute. Each of these methods is expected to return a non-zero value if the `Is<XXX>Attribute` method returns `kTrue`.

The selection suites (e.g., `IGraphicAttributeSuite` and `IGradientAttributeSuite`) make it straightforward for client code to change the properties of a selection; the client code needs to work with only the graphic attributes. There is no need to worry about whether the selection is text, choosing the specific text attribute, and whether the selection is text, table, or layout.

The mapping between different domains is hard-coded. New graphic attributes added by third-party software developers may provide their own mapping by overriding the default implementations of `IGraphicAttributeInfo`. The mappings between graphic attributes and text attributes are shown in [Table 85](#). The mappings between graphic attributes and table attributes are shown in [Table 86](#). Note that the mapping between graphic attributes and table attributes is many-to-one rather than one-to-one because; for example, the `kCellStrokeAttrDataBoss` boss class can represent information about multiple stroke parameters, whereas each of the corresponding graphic attributes refers to one parameter.

Rendering attributes

A rendering attribute refers to a swatch to be used when drawing an aspect of a page item. Rendering attributes are a special kind of graphic attribute that refer to their associated swatch by UID. The swatch can be a color, gradient, tint, etc.

Color-rendering attributes

A page item's stroke, fill, or gap can be rendered independently. [Table 58](#) lists color-rendering attributes.

TABLE 58 *Color-rendering attributes*

Rendering-attribute class	Description
<code>kGraphicStyleFillRenderingAttrBoss</code>	Fill rendering object
<code>kGraphicStyleFillTintAttrBoss</code>	Fill tint
<code>kGraphicStyleGapRenderingAttrBoss</code>	Gap rendering object
<code>kGraphicStyleGapTintAttrBoss</code>	Gap tint
<code>kGraphicStyleStrokeRenderingAttrBoss</code>	Stroke rendering object
<code>kGraphicStyleStrokeTintAttrBoss</code>	Stroke tint

Gradient attributes

Page items also can be rendered using gradients; however, multiple graphic attributes are needed to represent a gradient. For example, you need to specify gradient fill angle, center, and length. There is no characteristic signature for a gradient attribute other than the boss class name; for the canonical graphic attributes, the boss-class name is of the following form:

```
kGraphicStyleGradient<graphic_attribute>AttrBoss.
```

A list of these boss classes is in the master attributes list in [“Catalog of graphic attributes” on page 301](#).

You can use the same color-rendering attributes class name to apply gradient attributes to page items. `IRenderingObjectApplyAction::PreGraphicApply` automatically forwards the attributes to appropriate gradient attributes. For example, if you are supplying `kGraphicStyleFillRenderingAttrBoss`, the method adds attributes including the following:

- `kGraphicStyleGradientFillAngleAttrBoss`
- `kGraphicStyleGradientFillGradCenterAttrBoss`
- `kGraphicStyleGradientFillHiliteAngleAttrBoss`
- `kGraphicStyleGradientFillHiliteLengthAttrBoss`
- `kGraphicStyleGradientFillLengthAttrBoss`
- `kGraphicStyleGradientFillRadiusAttrBoss`

The situation gets more complicated by the possibility of applying gradients to table cells; when a gradient is applied to a table cell, additional cell-specific attributes are involved. For example, `kCellAttrGradientFillBoss` and `kCellAttrGradientStrokeBoss` are table-cell attributes representing properties of gradients.

Stroke effects

There are several graphic attributes that define the look and feel of the stroke of a page item. Some of these attributes are straightforward, like `kGraphicStyleStrokeWeightAttrBoss`, which defines stroke weight.

Path stroker

A path stroker is responsible for the basic drawing of a path. To find existing path-stroker boss classes, see the API reference documentation for `IPathStroker`. For information on how to add custom path stokers, see [“Custom path-stroker effects” on page 289](#).

`IPathStrokerList` allows you to access the list of available path stokers. `IPathStrokerUtils` provides utility methods to do the same thing.

The `kGraphicStyleStrokeLineImplAttrBoss` boss class specifies the class ID of a path stroker that applies to a particular path.

Path corners

A path-corner effect draws the corners of a stroked path. For a list of path-corner-effect boss classes, see the API reference documentation for `IPathCorner`. For information on how to add custom path corners, see [“Custom corner effects” on page 290](#).

The `kGraphicStyleCornerImplAttrBoss` boss class specifies the class ID of the corner effect.

Path-end strokers

A path-end stroker (`IPathEndStroker`) draws the start and end of a stroked path. To find path-end strokers, see the API reference documentation for `IPathEndStroker`. For information on how to add custom path ends, see [“Custom path-end effects” on page 290](#).

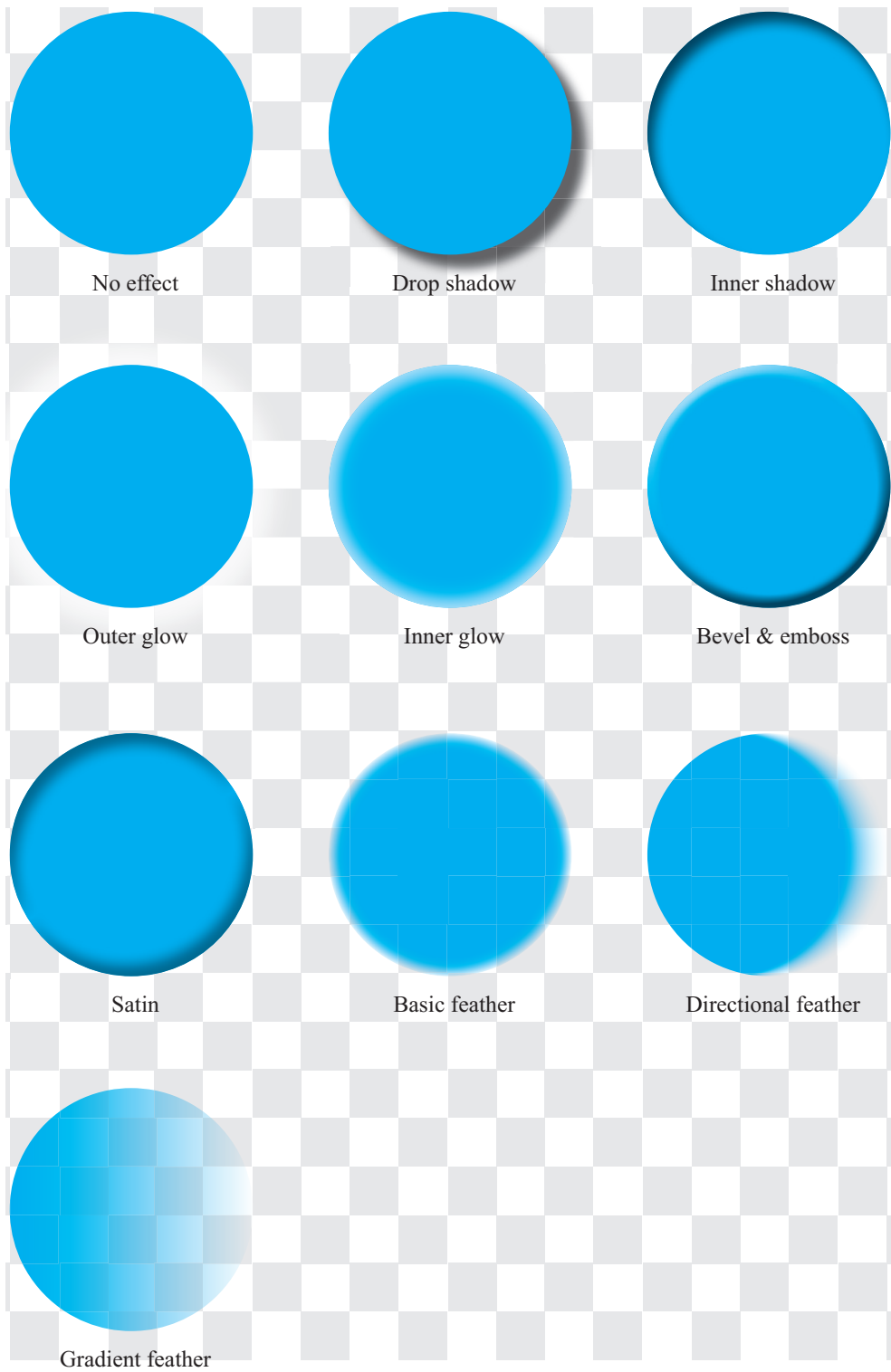
The `kGraphicStyleLineEndStartAttrBoss` boss class specifies the class ID of the line-end (for example, arrow) style at the starting side of a line. The `kGraphicStyleLineEndEndAttrBoss` boss class specifies the class ID of the line-end style at the terminating side of a line.

Transparency effects

Concepts

Transparency effects are a set of graphic attributes that define color blending for overlapped page items and backgrounds. Common transparency effects include basic transparency, drop shadow, and feather. [Figure 101](#) shows examples of transparency effects supported in InDesign.

FIGURE 101 Transparency effects supported in InDesign



These transparency effects can be divided into two classes:

- *Outer effects* include drop shadow, outer glow, and outer bevel, and emboss. In this class of effects, a copy of the artwork is converted to raster; the raster has the effects applied and is then drawn first, the artwork is then drawn on top of the effect. (The exception is emboss, in which artwork is drawn first then the effect is drawn on top)
- *Inner (clipped) effects* include inner shadow, inner glow, inner bevel, satin, and feathers. The artwork fill and shape is combined with the effect parameters, and the result is a new fill for the artwork. Because the fill is clipped to the artwork shape, this class of effect is highly dependent on the type of artwork involved.

Common controlling parameters

Different transparency effects are controlled by different sets of parameters. Some of these parameters are used commonly in defining different transparency effects.

Opacity

Opacity is the converse of transparency. It is represented by the following formula:

$$\text{opacity} = (1.0 - \text{transparency})$$

Opacity is expressed as a percentage, where 0% is completely clear and 100% is completely opaque. Page items can have individual opacities assigned to them. Items can be grouped and have a group opacity assigned, which is combined with the individual opacities to calculate the resultant color on the backdrop.

Blending mode

Blending mode defines how the background (backdrop) and foreground (source) colors interact. In the physical world, transparency is the result of light passing through translucent materials. Blending modes are somewhat different: they do not try to model the complex physics of transparency; rather, they are analytic expressions that produce interesting visual effects. The following blending modes are encountered often: normal, multiply, and screen. There also are blending modes related to color spaces, like hue, saturation, and color-blending modes.

Blending modes are vector functions that take as input the object source color and backdrop color and produce a resulting color that is the new color of the backdrop. This is not pixel-based blending; rather, this is in terms of points with no dimension. The colors that are the input for a blending function need to be specified in a common blending-color space (document CMYK or RGB). This is specified document-wide through the Edit menu.

A blending mode is described by an analytic expression that specifies how to calculate the resultant backdrop color given the mode, current backdrop color, foreground color, and opacities of the background and foreground. Ordinarily, a blending function is a vector function:

$$C_r = F(\text{Mode}, C_b, C_f, O_b, O_f)$$

where C_r is the resultant backdrop color, Mode is the blending mode, C_b is the current backdrop color, O_b is the opacity of the backdrop, and O_f is the opacity of the foreground (source object).

In general, the blending function gives the resulting color at a point. The two-dimensional coordinates in the backdrop plane also can be specified in the expression above, to give an exhaustive expression for a blending function.

Normal blending mode is a trivial blending mode, which specifies that the resulting blend is the value of the source color. The result of a normal blend is given by the following formula:

$$B(C_b, C_s) = C_s$$

where B is the blending function, C_b is the backdrop color, and C_s the source-object color.

Multiply-blending mode is the scalar product of the backdrop color and the source object color. For an additive color space like RGB, the multiply-blending mode is calculated by taking the component-wise product of the two vectors. The multiply blending mode is given by the following formula:

$$B(C_b, C_s) = C_b \cdot C_s$$

With an additive color space, the resulting blend color is darker than either of the two inputs, so the multiply-blending mode also is referred to as *shadow mode*.

For a subtractive color space like CMYK, it is necessary to take the reciprocal of the colors. The expression for the blending mode is identical to the above, but with the substitution of $(1-c)$ for the color.

Screen-blending mode often is referred to as highlight mode. The analytic expression for screen blending mode is given by the following formula:

$$B(C_b, C_s) = 1 - (1-C_s) \cdot (1-C_b)$$

This can be thought of as the reciprocal of multiply mode, in the sense that it is multiplying the reciprocal input colors and using the reciprocal of the result. The resulting components are larger than the corresponding input components, so the net effect is a highlight of the two colors.

Position

Position determines the location of a transparency effect. It could be specified as an X offset-Y offset pair or a distance-angle pair. They can be used to calculate each other. InDesign also have a concept of global light, which is the angle of the light and is maintained the same for every object of a document.

Size

Size refers to the size of a transparency effect. It is specified in number of points. For example, a drop shadow with size of 0p5 means the shadow width is 5 points.

Spread

Adding spread outset the object's outline before blurring, so the effect seems bolder. Spread is expressed as a percentage of the blur width. Typically, spread is for outer effects, Spread is the percentage of the size or blur width that is simply outset rather than tapered off. For example, for a drop shadow with a blur width of 10 points and a spread of 0%, you get 10 points of blur. If the spread is 50%, however, you get 5 points of outset and 5 points of blur. If the spread is 100% you get 10 points of outset and no blur.

Noise

Random noise can be added to the transparency effect, to give it a rougher appearance.

Choke

Choke is conceptually the same as spread, but for effects that go “inward,” like inner glow. For example, an inner glow with size 10 points and spread 50%, you get 5 points of inset and 5 points of blur.

Feather width

Feather width is conceptually the same as size, simply the total amount of inset applied. For example, if you have 10 points of width, the feather extends from the edge of the object to 10 points inside the object. For directional feather, you can specify width in four directions.

Basic transparency

Basic transparency is an effect that lets the viewer see through an object. The Transparency panel in the user interface allows end users to specify the transparency attributes of selected page items, including blending mode, opacity, whether these should be isolated, and whether knockout is required.

Transparency in group items

A group item is a collection of one or more page items. Transparency can be applied to a page item or a group item. Transparency groups are constructs to work around real-world problems involving grouped transparent objects. The application allows the assignment of opacity, knockout, and isolation properties to transparency groups (i.e., collections of page items). These group properties determine how a group of page items interact transparently with the backdrop. It also is possible to specify knockout and isolation properties for one page item.

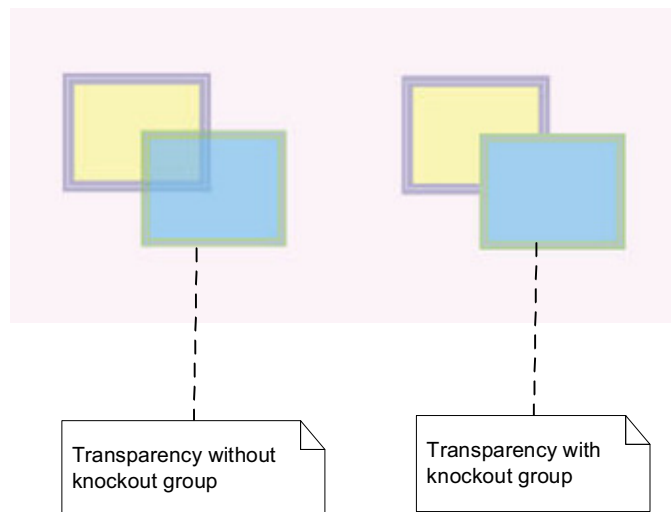
Group attributes combine with those of the objects in the group. For example, if objects have 50% opacity and the group has 50% opacity, the resulting opacity of the composited objects is equivalent to an object with 25% opacity.

These group properties are independent of, and in addition to, the opacities and blending modes of the individual objects. The objects interact with each other and the backdrop using their individual opacity and blending modes. The group opacity and group-blending mode do not affect the interaction of the individual objects with each other, but they do affect the interaction of these objects with the backdrop.

Knockout groups

A knockout group is a group whose individual elements do not interact with each other but do interact with the backdrop. The objects within the group paint opaquely over each other, but compositing occurs with the initial backdrop data. An example in which this is useful is a group that consists of the fill and the stroke of a path. If the group is not a knockout group, there is an interaction of the fill and stroke in the region they have in common, which often is undesirable. Instead, the desired effect is to have the stroke opaquely cover the fill in the common overlap, and to have each interact with the backdrop with respect to their individual opacities and blending modes. [Figure 102](#) shows a comparison of transparency effects with and without knockout groups.

FIGURE 102 *Knockout groups*



Isolated groups

An isolated group is a group whose individual elements do not blend with the backdrop independently but do blend with the backdrop as a group. An isolated group can be represented by its group object of color and opacity values. By definition, an isolated group can be represented by color and opacity values that are independent of the backdrop into which it is to be composited.

Drop shadow

In the real world, drop shadow is generated when light is blocked by an object. As represented in graphics, drop shadow is a blurred representation of the shape of an object, offset by a user-specified distance and drawn below the object.

The parameters that control a drop shadow include the ones listed in [Table 59](#).

TABLE 59 *Drop-shadow parameters*

Parameter	Description
Blending mode	See “Blending mode” on page 265.
Noise	See “Noise” on page 267.
Object-knockout shadow	Object does not interact with shadow.
Opacity	See “Opacity” on page 265.
Position	See “Position” on page 266.
Shadow honors other effects	Shadow can be the result together with other transparency effects.

Parameter	Description
Size	See “Size” on page 266.
Spread	See “Spread” on page 266.

Inner shadow

Inner shadow is very similar to drop shadow. It adds a shadow that falls just inside the edges of the object, giving the object a recessed appearance. The parameters that control an inner shadow effect are like those of drop shadows (see [Table 60](#)).

TABLE 60 Inner-shadow parameters

Parameter	Description
Blending mode	See “Blending mode” on page 265.
Opacity	See “Opacity” on page 265.
Position	See “Position” on page 266.
Size	See “Size” on page 266.
Noise	See “Noise” on page 267.
Choke	See “Choke” on page 267.

Outer and inner glow

Glow is a graphic effect that makes an object appear to shine as if with intense heat. Outer glow refers to the glow effect applied to the outside edges of the object; inner glow refers to the glow effect applied to the inside edges. The parameters that control outer glow are listed in [Table 61](#).

TABLE 61 Outer-glow parameters

Parameter	Description
Blending mode	See “Blending mode” on page 265.
Opacity	See “Opacity” on page 265.
Technique	The method to produce angled corners. You can get a smooth/rounded effect (softer) or a mitered effect (precise).
Size	See “Size” on page 266.
Noise	See “Noise” on page 267.
Spread	See “Spread” on page 266.

The parameters that control inner glow are listed in [Table 62](#).

TABLE 62 Inner-glow controlling parameters

Parameter	Description
Blending mode	See “Blending mode” on page 265.
Choke	See “Choke” on page 267.
Noise	See “Noise” on page 267.
Opacity	See “Opacity” on page 265.
Size	See “Size” on page 266.
Source	Indicates the “polarity” of the glow. “Center” means the center of the object glows and the edges do not. “Edge” means the opposite.
Technique	The method to produce angled corners. You can get a smooth/rounded effect (softer) or a mitered effect (precise).

Bevel and emboss

The bevel and emboss effect is a kind of simulation of how an object would look if it were “puffed up” into the third dimension. The parameters that control bevel and emboss are listed in [Table 63](#).

TABLE 63 Bevel and emboss parameters

Parameter	Description
Style	A choice of inner bevel, outer bevel, emboss and pillow emboss.
Direction	Indicates whether the object appears to be “sunken” or “raised.”
Technique	Simulate effect made with smooth, chisel hard and chisel soft.
Soften	The amount of blurring, more or less, that is applied to the beveled result. This softens the effect so your bevel is not so harsh.
Size	Width of the effect. See “Size” on page 266.
Depth	Determines the intensity or sharpness of the bevel.
Angle	The direction in the page-plane of the light source.
Altitude	The angular distance above the page plane.
Highlight-blending mode	See “Blending mode” on page 265.
Highlight opacity	See “Opacity” on page 265.
Shadow-blending mode	See “Blending mode” on page 265.
Shadow opacity	See “Opacity” on page 265.

Satin

Satin applies interior shading that creates a satiny finish. [Table 64](#) lists its controlling parameters.

TABLE 64 *Satin parameters*

Parameter	Description
Blending mode	See “Blending mode” on page 265.
Opacity	See “Opacity” on page 265.
Angle	The direction of the light to create effect.
Distance	The distance of the light to satin effect.
Size	See “Size” on page 266.

Feather effects

Feather is a graphic effect that allows designers to create a smooth edge around a frame. InDesign support three types of feathers: basic, directional, and gradient. The parameters that control a basic feather effect are listed in [Table 65](#). Directional-feather effect feathers only on selected sides of an object and takes additional parameters, listed in [Table 66](#). Gradient effect creates a linear or radial gradient of opacity around an object and allows parameters to define a gradient, like gradient stops, gradient type and angle,; see [Table 67](#).

TABLE 65 *Basic feather parameters*

Parameter	Description
Feather width	See “Feather width” on page 267.
Corners	Diffused, sharp, or rounded.
Choke	See “Choke” on page 267.
Noise	See “Noise” on page 267. Feather noise is added only to the feather region.

TABLE 66 *Directional-feather parameters*

Parameter	Description
Angle	The direction of the feather.
Choke	See “Choke” on page 267
Feather widths	See “Feather width” on page 267.
Noise	See “Noise” on page 267.
Shape	First edge only, leading edges, or all edges.

TABLE 67 Gradient-feather parameters

Parameter	Description
Gradient stops	Defines the gradient
Gradient type	Linear or radial gradient
Angle	The direction of the gradient

Flattening

PostScript and PDF 1.3 have no representation of transparency information. To print or export spreads with transparent information, it is necessary to generate nontransparent representations of the effects of transparency; this is known as flattening. In some cases, the interactions may be among areas of solid color, in which case they can be replaced by a solid color in each region of interaction. If images are involved, a composite image must be calculated that reflects the contributions of the objects being composited, including any solid-color areas.

Dealing with text and gradients requires the application of additional rules. If a section of the page is particularly complex, it can be faster to rasterize the area than to try to calculate all the interactions; the flattener user interface supports this feature.

The flattener is an Adobe core technology. Its implementation comes from the Adobe Graphics Manager (AGM) library, and it is used in other Adobe applications that support transparency within vector graphics, such as Illustrator.

The end user has a degree of control over how the flattener is used. The Print dialog box has an option to parameterize the flattener. The user may choose flattener presets and specify, for example, that high quality is preferred over high speed. There is a trade-off between precision of results and resources used. The lower the resolution, the quicker and less memory-intensive the calculation.

Flattening is a complex and potentially resource-expensive process. Various optimizations are required to implement transparency effectively, such as caching high-resolution images to file, to ensure that the memory requirements are minimized. There also are complexities introduced by OPI image substitution, because printing with transparency requires that embedded files write graphic primitives into the output stream.

Transparency data model

Transparency features are complicated, but the principles of their implementation are not. Basically, transparency implementation involves the following related aspects:

- Graphic attributes used to specify states and parameters of transparency effects
- Page-item adornments used to draw transparency effects
- Service providers and drawing-event handler to participate in the printing process that flattens the transparency before printing

The boss classes responsible for transparency behavior are delivered mainly by the Transparency plug-in. The user interface to the effects is supplied by the TransparencyUI plug-in.

Transparency information is represented by graphic attributes, and transparency is rendered to a device through page-item adornments.

Defining transparency: graphic-attribute bosses

Transparency effects are defined programmatically as a set of graphic attributes. These attribute boss classes derive from `kGraphicsAttrBoss` and aggregate a collection of interfaces that set and get a variety of graphic-attribute data types. For general information about graphic attributes, see [“Graphic attributes” on page 256](#). For a summary of the transparency=attribute boss structure, see [“Transparency-attribute boss structure” on page 273](#).

Transparency-attribute targets

Transparency effects can be applied to the object, stroke, fill, or content. They are called transparency targets. Accordingly, transparency attributes can be categorized into different targets. Attribute targets are defined as enums in `IXPAttributeSuite::AttributeTarget`.

Transparency-attribute groups

Each transparency effect has a set of attributes to represent the parameters that control the effect. Accordingly, transparency attributes can also be categorized into groups. Each group corresponds to each transparency effect. Transparency-attribute groups are defined as enums in `IXPAttributeSuite::AttributeGroup`.

Transparency-attribute data types and values

Different transparency attributes hold different types of data. The `IXPAttributeSuite::AttributeDataType` enum defines all possible data types a transparency attribute can have.

`IXPAttributeSuite::AttributeValue` is a class that can hold values for any of the attributes. It serves as a generic container for get and set functions.

Transparency-attribute boss structure

Transparency-attribute bosses are organized as a three-level inheritance. The most generic level is the `kGraphicsAttrBoss`. This implies transparency attributes work and can be manipulated the same way as any other graphic attributes.

The next level is attribute groups. These attribute group bosses inherit from `kGraphicsAttrBoss` and aggregate the `IID_IOBJECTSTYLEATTRINFO` interface with the `kXPAttrInfoImpl` implementation. These groups correspond to the transparency effects; see [Table 68](#).

TABLE 68 *Transparency-attribute groups*

Group-attribute boss	Transparency effect
<code>kDropShadowAttrBoss</code>	Drop shadow
<code>kVignetteAttrBoss</code>	Basic feather
<code>kXPAttrBoss</code>	Basic transparency

Group-attribute boss	Transparency effect
kXPBevelEmbossAttrBoss	Bevel and emboss
kXPDirectionalFeatherAttrBoss	Directional feather
kXPGradientFeatherAttrBoss	Gradient feather
kXPInnerGlowAttrBoss	Inner glow
kXPInnerShadowAttrBoss	Inner shadow
kXPOuterGlowAttrBoss	Outer glow
kXPSatinAttrBoss	Satin

The bottom level has the real transparency attributes that define every transparency. For example, `kXPBasicOpacityAttrBoss`, `kXPStrokeBlendingOpacityAttrBoss`, `kXPFillBlendingOpacityAttrBoss`, and `kXPContentBlendingOpacityAttrBoss` inherit from `kXPAttrBoss` and aggregate the `IID_IGRAPHICATTR_REALNUMBER` interface. They define the opacity attribute of basic transparency for object, stroke, fill, and content targets, respectively.

Transparency-attribute types

There are about 400 transparency attributes. You may still access them in the general graphic-attribute way; however, the InDesign API also provides utility functions in `IXPAttributeUtils` to manipulate transparency attributes more effectively. Part of that is the concept of transparency-attribute types.

Transparency-attribute types are defined as enums in `IXPAttributeSuite::AttributeType`. These enums are divided into segments according to transparency targets and transparency groups. The `BASE_XP_ATTR(t,x)` macro generates the base index of the segment. For example, if you want to know the enum value of the first transparency attribute for controlling inner shadow on the stroke of an object, use `kStrokeInnerShadowBaseID + 1`. `kStrokeInnerShadowBaseID` is calculated as `BASE_XP_ATTR(kTargetStroke, kGroupInnerShadow)`.

A transparency-attribute type has a one-to-one mapping to transparency-attribute boss. You can translate between `AttributeTypes` and attribute-boss `ClassIDs` using the `GetAttributeClassID` and `GetAttributeFromClassID` methods on `IXPAttributeUtils`.

Drawing transparency: adornment bosses

To create a transparent rendering for an object, add an `IAdornmentShape` implementation to the adornment boss class that provides the behavior for the object. The `kBeforeShape` and `kAfterShape` flags specify when to draw in response to the `IAdornmentShape::GetDrawOrderBits` method. The `IAdornmentShape::GetPaintedBBox` method specifies the adornment bounding box. Bound of the outer effects are larger than the object's bounds.

[Table 69](#) lists the adornment bosses responsible for drawing transparency effects. One adornment boss can draw multiple effects. The primary reason we do not have one adornment for every effect is to limit the total number of adornments of a page item, for performance reasons.

TABLE 69 Boss classes that aggregate *IAdornmentShape*

Boss-class name	Description
kXPDropShadowAdornmentBoss	Draws knockout drop shadows and outer glow.
kXPPageitemAdornmentBoss	Draws blending and non-knockout drop shadows.
kXPVignetteAdornmentBoss	Draws basic feather, directional feather, and gradient feather.
kXPInnerEffectsAdornmentBoss	Draws inner effects, like inner shadow, inner glow, bevel and emboss, and satin.

Printing transparency: flattening

Before transparency is printed, transparency effects must be flattened. You can choose different flattener presets to represent transparency using non-transparency representation, then print the result as normal page items.

Managing flattener presets

Flattener presets are represented by `kXPFlattenerStyleBoss`. The key interface is `IFlattenerSettings`, which defines settings of presets, directly corresponding to the Flattener Preset Options dialog box.

The flattener preset is an application-wide preference. The `IFlattenerStyleListMgr` interface is aggregated on `kWorkspaceBoss` and is responsible for managing all flattener presets. As with other general presets, like print presets, the `IFlattenerStyleListMgr` implementation hooks flattener presets into the generic presets dialog and provides an entry point for adding, deleting, and editing flattener presets with respective commands.

The `kSpreadBoss` also aggregates `IFlattenerSettings`, which allows the spread to override the flattener settings for a specific spread.

Printing-related bosses

Transparency participates in the printing process by iterating spreads for pages containing transparency effects that require flattening. With these bosses, the print command can examine transparency use, setting up viewport attributes and so on. Together with drawing in the spread and page item, InDesign can achieve results that appear as if there are transparency interactions, even though these are accomplished through flattened, opaque, drawing instructions. See [Table 70](#).

TABLE 70 Printing-related boss classes

Boss-class name	Description
kXPGatherProviderBoss	A document iterator provider that gathers document-wide use of transparency.
kXPPrintSetupServiceBoss	Implements print services to set up global color profiles.
kXPDrwEvtHandlerBoss	Transparency start-up and shut-down. Hooks transparency into the draw manager.

Data model for drawing

Presentation views

Drawing documents to the screen really means drawing to an application-layout presentation, which is a platform-independent construct containing layout widgets that display the contents of the document. Layout presentation is represented by `kLayoutPresentationBoss`, with the key interface `IDocumentPresentation`. Note that `kLayoutPresentationBoss` is inherited from `kWindowBoss`; however, it is very important *not* to use the `IWindow` interface for any layout-presentation operation. Instead, always use `IDocumentPresentation` for operations like minimizing the view. The `IWindow` on a `kLayoutPresentationBoss` is only for internal use. There may be several layout presentations open at the same time; these can be hosted in one operating-system window as tabbed document presentation views, or each layout presentation can be hosted inside its own operating-system window.

In addition to the layout presentation, there are other windows/view containers in InDesign. Dialog boxes and pop-up tips are application windows and are represented by the platform-independent `kWindowBoss` object. The panel container, often referred to as *palette*, is represented by a `PaletteRef`. For more detail on these interfaces and their responsibilities, see the API reference documentation.

To summarize, the application manages two main categories of views:

- *Document presentations* have a document associated with them and display the content of the document. They also are referred to as *layout presentations*. A document presentation may not always correspond to a standalone operating-system window, because an operating-system window can have many document presentations in it. Note, however, that “window” is still being referred to throughout this document, because that is still a commonly accepted term for the view to a document.
- *User-interface windows/palettes* are used for dialog boxes, panels, and other types of windows that do not have documents associated with them.

Most of the detail in the remainder of this section concerns drawing a layout.

Graphics context

Drawing requires a graphics context. When page items are called to draw, they are provided with a GraphicsData object, which contains a pointer to an InDesign graphics context. Using the application's graphics context, page items can perform platform-independent drawing to several of device contexts: screen, print, or PDF.

The graphics context for application drawing is described by an object derived from IGraphicsContext, an abstract-data container interface. This interface is not aggregated on boss classes, nor is it derived from IPMUnknown. Instead, implementations of IGraphicsContext are specialized for different drawing devices.

A graphics context is instantiated based on a viewport boss object (see [“Viewport” on page 277](#)), IControlView interface pointer, and update region. Several important pieces of information are stored in the graphics context object, including the following:

- The current rectangular clip region for the drawing port.
- The transform for mapping content to drawing device coordinates.

The transform describes the relationship of the content coordinates to the drawing-device coordinates. For screen drawing, the drawing device is a window. The transform is based on the IControlView implementation supplied at the time of the graphics-context instantiation. During a normal screen-drawing sequence, this is the IControlView implementation on the kLayoutWidgetBoss that instantiates the graphics context, so the transform is initialized to be pasteboard to the application-window coordinates. During the drawing sequence, this transform is modified to represent parent-window coordinates. For a description of coordinate systems related to drawing, see the “Layout Fundamentals” chapter.

Screen draws do not paint the entire document and then copy only a portion of it to the window. Instead, only the region of the window marked invalid is redrawn. The clip region stored in the graphics context is applied like a mask, discarding any drawing outside the clip bounds. During a drawing sequence, the clip represents the update region in the window and is stored in window coordinates.

For drawing to the screen, AGM is used to provide the graphics context. An offscreen context is used for drawing, to facilitate a smooth, flicker-free screen update. The drawing code renders off-screen, and the result of the completed drawing is subsequently copied to the screen. For more details, see [“Offscreen drawing” on page 284](#). The use of off-screen contexts is transparent to page items when they draw. The graphics context provided to the page item hides these implementation details.

Viewport

The application's platform-independent API for drawing is provided by the viewport. Page items use the IGraphicsPort interface on the viewport boss object for drawing. The viewport boss object does not draw directly to the platform window; instead, the viewport boss object draws through the AGM, which is specialized for the type of drawing device (for example, PostScript printing or the screen). The specialization is transparent to clients of the graphics context and the viewport boss object.

A viewport boss object operates as a wrapper between the drawing client (often a page item) and the underlying AGM code that defines the graphics context for the output device. There are several different types of viewport boss classes, each tailored to a particular type of drawing output. For a list of relevant boss classes and the responsibilities of the interfaces on the boss classes, see the API reference documentation for `IViewport`. For example, `kWindowViewportBoss` is used for drawing to application windows.

Dynamics of drawing

Drawing the layout

Layout drawing is the process of drawing page items to the layout presentation. Layout is described in depth in the “Layout Fundamentals” chapter. For more detail on how individual page items are drawn, see [“Drawing page items” on page 281](#).

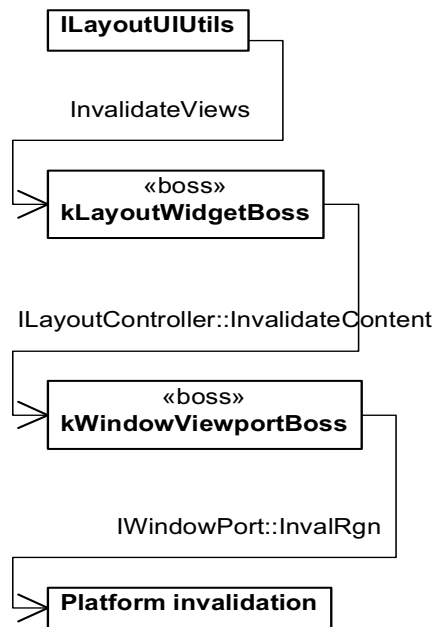
Invalidating a view

InDesign drawing occurs in response to invalidation of a view, or region. Although InDesign provides platform-independent APIs for invalidating a view, the APIs simply forward the invalidation to the operating system. The invalidation state is maintained by the operating system, which generates update events to the application.

Invalidation can be caused by changes to the model (persistent data in a document) or direct invalidation. Both use the same mechanism to invalidate a view.

Changes to the model are broadcast to interested observers with regular or lazy notification. For example, the application uses an observer on the layout widget to monitor changes to page items in the layout. When the observer receives notification of a change, it asks the subject of the change to invalidate a region based on its bounding box.

Views can be directly invalidated by using the `ILayoutUtils::InvalidateViews` method. The collaboration of boss objects is shown in [Figure 103](#).

FIGURE 103 Boss collaboration when invalidating a view

The `ILayoutUtils::InvalidateViews` method uses a document pointer to locate the views for a document. For each view, the method gets the `ILayoutController` interface on the `kLayoutWidgetBoss` and calls `ILayoutController::InvalidateContent`, which creates an invalidation region equal to the view's window. The invalidation region is passed to the `IWindowPort::InvalRgn` method on the `IWindowPort` interface of the `kWindowViewportBoss` corresponding to the window. This method then passes the invalidation by the operating system.

The invalidation region is then accumulated by the operating system, which generates a paint message. The operating system sends an update message (event) to the InDesign event dispatcher, where the message is wrapped in a platform-independent class and routed to the event handler on the appropriate window.

The window's event handler calls indirectly the `IControlView::Draw` method. At that point, the drawing sequence begins following the pattern for drawing a widget hierarchy; `Draw` uses the `IPanelControlData` interface to locate each of its children and call `Draw` on the child's `IControlView` interface. This means the `kLayoutPanelBoss` is called to draw, and it iterates each of its child widgets (scroll bars, the layout widget, rulers, etc.).

The drawing sequence concludes with validating the contents of the window. This completes the update cycle, from invalidation to redraw.

Layout drawing order

Layout presentations are updated in several steps that allow better performance and the opportunity to interrupt the drawing. Good performance is achieved by specializing the drawing

operations according to the view's z-order, whether the invalidation is due to a selection change or because all objects changed.

At the level of the `kLayoutWidgetBoss`, several decisions are made behind the scenes for the sake of drawing performance. The `IControlView` implementation on the `kLayoutWidgetBoss` chooses what to draw based on the window's z-order, the selection, and the update region.

Foreground and background drawing

If the window is the front view, two views may be drawn: a background view containing all objects and a foreground view containing only the decorations for the selection. Offscreen graphics contexts are created and cached for both views (see [“Offscreen drawing” on page 284](#)). If the update region overlaps the window or the current front view was not the last view to have been drawn, the background view is redrawn. If the selection is not empty, the foreground view also is redrawn.

Based on the above rules, the `kLayoutWidgetBoss` `IControlView` filters the visible spreads and calls their `IShape::Draw` methods through the InDesign draw manager. This filtering means page items are not guaranteed to be called for a screen draw. The background draw then propagates through the layout hierarchy, as described in [“Spread-drawing sequence” on page 307](#).

After the background draw is complete, if the selection is empty, the background image is copied to the window and the draw is complete. If the selection is not empty, the foreground draw starts by copying the background image to the foreground offscreen context. The selection is drawn to the foreground, then the foreground image is copied to the window.

The use of foreground and background draws means a page item could be called twice during a redraw: the first call to `IShape::Draw` in the order of the layout hierarchy for the background draw, and the second call to `IHandleShape::Draw` in the order of the selection list for the foreground draw.

If the window is not the front view, a more abbreviated drawing sequence takes place. Both the document items and the selection are drawn to a foreground offscreen context, and it is copied to the screen.

Z-order

Z-order is the order (depth) of page item objects in the direction perpendicular to the screen. Z-order determines which object or part of an object is visible to the user. InDesign handles three levels of z-order:

1. *Window z-order* — InDesign windows may overlap.
2. *Layer order* — InDesign documents are layered. InDesign draws page layers first, then other document layers. For more information, see the “Layers” section of the “Layout Fundamentals” chapter.
3. *Page item z-order* — On the same layer, page items are ordered according to their positions in the parent object's hierarchy. The child with index 0 is drawn first; the child with the greatest index is drawn last. For more information, see the “Documents and the Layout Hierarchy” section of the “Layout Fundamentals” chapter.

NOTE: Do not confuse z-order with foreground and background drawing. Z-order controls what is visible to the viewer, whereas foreground and background are just bitmaps for speeding up rendering.

Draw manager

Conceptually, `kLayoutWidgetBoss` calls each spread to draw. In reality, `kLayoutWidgetBoss` calls through the InDesign draw manager. The draw manager is an interface that exists on each viewport and is used to set clipping areas and initiate the drawing of any page element and its children to that viewport. The draw manager can be used for drawing to the screen, PDF, and print. Drawing in InDesign occurs on a spread-by-spread basis and is hierarchical. Without a service like the draw manager, it would be hard to change the behavior of drawing in a sub-hierarchy. Optionally, you can create a `kDrawMgrBoss` and use the `IterateDrawOrder` method, which allows clients to iterate the document in the same manner as drawing, calling a client-provided callback routine for every page item in the hierarchy, but without a graphics context.

Funneling all drawing activity through the draw manager provides three important features for changing the behavior of drawing operations:

- Clipping of areas to be drawn.
- Filtering of items to be drawn.
- Interrupting a drawing sequence.

Clipping and filtering provide a means to select items for the draw based on regions. The draw manager maintains the current values for the clip and filter regions. Interruption of the drawing sequence relies on the broader mechanism of drawing events. As items draw, they broadcast standard messages that announce the beginning and end of discrete drawing operations. Drawing events are received by special handlers that register interest in particular types of messages, and each drawing-event handler has the opportunity to abort the draw at that point. Clients of the draw manager (like the layout widget) install a default drawing-event handler.

The draw manager provides services for hit testing, iterating the drawing order, and drawing. Detail about how spreads are drawn is described in [“Spread-drawing sequence” on page 307](#).

Drawing page items

When page items are called to draw, they are passed information about their drawing context, including a `GraphicsData` object and `IShape` drawing flags (e.g., `kPatientUser`). For more information, see the API reference documentation for these types. Page items use this information to perform their drawing operations.

The `IGraphicsPort` interface is the InDesign interface for drawing and is aggregated on all viewport boss classes. The `IGraphicsPort` interface is used by all drawing interfaces on a page item, regardless of the output device.

The viewport settings can be modified using `IGraphicsPort` methods. The `IGraphicsPort::gsave` and `IGraphicsPort::grestore` methods effectively push the current port settings onto a stack and pop the old settings when desired. These methods are used to save the current port settings when setting the port's transform to a new space. For example, when a page item is called to

draw, it should save the port settings, set the port to its inner coordinate space, draw, and restore the port before returning.

The IGraphicsPort implementations provide methods very similar to PostScript graphics operators. These methods support drawing primitives, port-transformation manipulation, and changing port-clip settings. For a complete list of the methods, see the API reference documentation for IGraphicsPort.h. Line-drawing methods like IGraphicsPort::lineto, IGraphicsPort::moveto, IGraphicsPort::curveto, IGraphicsPort::closepath, IGraphicsPort::fill, and IGraphicsPort::stroke are available. If a path is defined in the port, it can be discarded using the IGraphicsPort::newpath method. These methods are demonstrated in the “Graphics” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*. Control over the color space, color values, gradient, and blending modes also is available through IGraphicsPort methods.

See [Table 71](#) for a list of interfaces for drawing page items.

TABLE 71 Interfaces for basic page-item drawing

Interface	Function
IGraphicStyleDescriptor	Renders graphic attributes.
IHandleShape	Renders selection handles. Called during foreground drawing.
IPageItemAdornmentList	Lists adornments for a page item.
IPathPageItem	Renders low-level draws for path, fill, and stroke.
IShape	Renders path, fill, and stroke. Called during background drawing.

IShape, IPathPageItem, and IHandleShape are directly involved in drawing a page item. IShape is the main interface for drawing the page item and is called when the entire page item needs to be rendered. Path-based items like spline bosses also have the IPathPageItem interface to handle the details of drawing their paths. IHandleShape is called when a page item is in the selected state and is used for drawing the decorations that denote selection. PathHandleShape is responsible for drawing path-selection handles.

IGraphicStyleDescriptor maintains the graphic attributes for the page item. The drawing process sets graphics port settings based on various graphic attributes.

IPageItemAdornmentList maintains a list of adornments for the page item. Adornments are drawn with the page item. This interface provides a means to enhance or decorate a page item’s appearance. For more detail, see [“Extension patterns” on page 289](#).

IShape is responsible for providing the drawing, hit testing, drawing-order iteration, and invalidation functions for page items. This interface is responsible for rendering a page item and is used during background draws to create the path, fill, and stroke of an object. For details, see its API reference documentation.

There are partial implementation classes like CShape and CGraphicFrameShape in the public API. For details, see the API reference documentation.

For details on the drawing sequence for a page item, see [“Drawing sequence for a page item” on page 310](#).

The IHandleShape interface

The IHandleShape interface is responsible for drawing and hit testing for a page item’s selection handles. This interface is defined in the abstract base class in IHandleShape.h.

As with the IShape class, the IHandleShape drawing sequence includes extensibility points in the form of adornment calls. For more detail, see [“Extension patterns” on page 289](#). For more detail on its responsibilities, see the API reference documentation on IHandleShape.

Most page items (such as kSplineItemBoss) that aggregate IHandleShape (with the ID IID_IHandleShape interface) also have another implementation of IHandleShape which is based on PathHandleShape (with the ID IID_IPATHHANDLESHAPE interface). The implementation based on PathHandleShape inherits from the same superclass as IHandleShape; therefore, it has exactly the same public interface. The purpose of this interface is to draw path-selection handles. Observe the difference in the user interface by switching between the Selection and Direct Selection tools.

The IPathPageItem interface

The IPathPageItem interface encapsulates the specialized drawing functions for path-based page items. This class provides methods for operations like stroke, fill, clip, and copying a path to the graphics port. The CGraphicFrameShape class delegates these specific draw operations to the IPathPageItem class.

In this class, graphic attributes are used to control the appearance. The IPathPageItem::Stroke method first calls IPathPageItem::Setup, which initializes a set of default stroke properties and then tries to get the stroke graphic attributes, like stroke weight and a ClassID for a path stroker. The path stroker is a service provider that delivers the kPathStrokerService. The IPathPageItem::Stroke method then uses the stroke graphic attributes and path stroker to actually create the stroke.

Drawing in user-interface widget windows

A user-interface widget is any descendant of kBaseWidgetBoss. Drawing in a user-interface widget window—such as a palette, dialog box, or panel—is like drawing to the layout presentation. Instead of calling the draw method of the layout-control view, palette drawing calls IControlView::Draw methods of various IControlView implementations.

The first stage in creating an owner-drawn panel is constructing an AGMGraphicsContext object from the IControlView::Draw parameters and obtaining an IGraphicsPort from the graphic context.

Next, set colors and draw the items. This can be done through the IInterfaceColors interface, aggregated on kSessionBoss. There are a few standard interface colors common to drawing items in user-interface windows. User-interface colors are defined in InterfaceColorDefines.h. Next, set the color of the graphics port and draw items.

Each widget actually is a window, so the `PMRect` value from `IControlView::GetFrame` represents the coordinates of the widget in its parent widget. An `IControlView::MoveTo(0,0)` call is convenient for transforming the coordinates.

You can draw lines, boxes, and so on as you normally draw in the layout presentation, using the methods of `IGraphicsPort`. For drawing `PMString`, `InDesign` provides utility methods on the `StringUtils` class (`DrawStringUtils.h`) that let you measure a `PMString` and draw strings directly. For more details, see the API reference documentation.

For an example of an owner-drawn panel, with a custom `IControlView::Draw` implementation, see the SDK sample `PanelTreeView` in `<SDK>/source/sdksamples/paneltreeview`, and inspect `PnlTrvCustomView.cpp`.

Offscreen drawing

Purpose of offscreen drawing

An offscreen drawing is simply a bitmap. The technique of offscreen drawing has been used for years by various applications to reduce screen flicker and improve performance when drawing to the screen. Mac OS X actually creates a separate offscreen buffer for each window, such that when an application tries to draw to a window, it actually is drawing to the offscreen buffer. The operating system then periodically transfers its offscreen buffer to the actual screen. This process is done at the operating-system level and decreases the number of cases in which `InDesign` needs to draw offscreen on Mac OS X.

Drawing layout offscreen

Offscreen drawing is used just about any time the layout presentation needs to update. `InDesign` maintains an offscreen representation of the layout presentation with everything except the current selection highlighting. Hence, when the selection changes, `InDesign` can very quickly redraw the screen from the offscreen buffer, followed by drawing the new selection.

The biggest area where offscreen drawing is used is the layout-control view. Drawing background and foreground in layout-control view is discussed in [“Layout drawing order” on page 279](#). What must be emphasized here is that drawing the layout does not really draw to the screen directly; instead, drawing the layout actually draws offscreen.

Corresponding to background and foreground drawing, there are background offscreen buffers and foreground offscreen buffers. The background offscreen representation in `InDesign` is the offscreen buffer maintained by each layout view, containing everything except current selection highlighting. Each layout view has its own offscreen buffer. The background offscreen buffer is invalidated by querying for the `ILayoutController` of the `IControlView` interface for the layout and calling `ILayoutController::InvalidateContent`.

`InDesign` can be told to update a layout without dirtying the background offscreen buffer, by querying for the `ILayoutController` of the `IControlView` interface for the layout and calling `ILayoutController::InvalidateSelection`.

Palettes and dialog boxes are responsible for their own offscreen representations. In general, most panels do not use offscreen drawing; however, a few user-interface windows, like the Navigator panel, maintain their own offscreen representations. As mentioned above, Mac OS X

provides offscreen buffers for all windows, so offscreen drawing on Mac OS X is not necessary if the goal is simply to avoid flicker.

Offscreen data

Drawing offscreen is drawing to the `kOffscreenViewPortBoss`. Besides other interfaces that are involved in drawing, one of the most important interfaces on `kOffscreenViewPortBoss` is `IOffscreenPortData`. This is the interface that stores a reference to the offscreen bitmap and distinguishes `kOffscreenViewPortBoss` from other viewports.

An offscreen bitmap is wrapped in the platform-independent `IPlatformOffscreen`. You can get and set bitmaps with `IOffscreenPortData`; however, you are not allowed to create bitmaps directly. Instead, you may want to aggregate an `IOffscreenViewPortCache` interface on the control-view boss class, so you can query background and foreground viewport data.

For more information, see the API reference documentation for `IPlatformOffscreen`, `IOffscreenPortData`, and `IOffscreenViewPortCache`.

Snapshots

A snapshot is a record of a part of the document view at a specific instant. `SnapshotUtilsEx` draws items into a memory-based graphics context, creating a bitmap (snapshot) that can be exported to a stream in several formats, like JPEG, TIFF, or GIF.

`SnapshotUtilsEx` also creates its own offscreen bitmap and uses an `IDrawMgr` to walk the `IHierarchy` and draw specific page items to the offscreen buffer; however, the internal implementation is different. Like layout offscreen, the viewport `SnapshotUtilsEx` interacts with `kAGMImageViewportBoss`, the bitmap it draws to is of type `AGMImageRecord` defined in `GraphicsExternal.h`, and it uses `IAGMImageViewport` to manipulate the bitmap. `SnapshotUtilsEx` does not interact with the layout's offscreen representation in any way.

`SnapshotUtilsEx` is very useful for creating proxy images of documents, since it uses the same draw manager to draw page items in memory, a much faster way. Sample code in the `Snapshot` sample plug-in and in `SnpCreateInddPreview.cpp` demonstrates the use.

The sample code in the SDK still uses `SnapshotUtils`. We recommend using the more recent `SnapshotUtilsEx`.

Client APIs

Path-related client APIs

High-level APIs provided to manipulate paths are summarized in [Table 72](#). For details about them, see the API reference documentation.

TABLE 72 Path and graphic page-item APIs

API	Description
IPathPointScriptUtils	Utility methods related to path point scripting (called by script providers).
IPageItemTypeUtils	Utilities to get the type of a page item.
IPathUtils	Path manipulations.
ISplineUtils	Utilities for spline-item manipulations.
IPathInfoUtils	Analyzes whether a list of PathInfo object forms a point or straight line.
IPathPointUtils	Utility methods related to path point transformations.
IPathOperationSuite	Manipulates paths on selected page items, including compound paths. Includes path-finder operations.
IConvertShapeSuite	Converts selected page items to a new shape.

Graphic page-item client APIs

APIs provided to manipulate graphics are summarized in [Table 73](#). For details about them, see the API reference documentation.

TABLE 73 Graphic page-item APIs

API	Description
IFrameContentSuite	Selection suite interface for content fitting and frame-content conversion.
IFrameContentFacade	Facade for content fitting and frame-content conversion.
IFrameContentUtils	Utility interface for determining various aspects of frame contents.
IClippingPathSuite	Gets and sets clipping path for selected graphics items.
ITextWrapFacade	Facade for manipulating text wrap.
IDisplayPerformanceSuite	Changes display performance settings for selection.
IImageObjectSuite	Accesses image layers.
IImageFacade	Facade for getting image information.
IJPEGExportSuite	Exports selection to JPEG file format.
ISVGExportSuite	Exports selection to SVG file format.

Key color-related client APIs

Interfaces provided to manipulate color, swatch, ink, and color management objects are summarized in “Color-related APIs” on page 287. For details about them, see the API reference documentation.

TABLE 74 Color-related APIs

API	Description
IGradientAttributeSuite	A selection suite interface. Provides gradient attribute-related operations that apply to the application defaults, document defaults, text, layout, and tables.
ISwatchUtils	Utility interface to manipulate swatches. For example, this interface can be used to acquire the active swatch list, retrieve or instantiate new, persistent, rendering boss objects, and modify the properties of the swatch list.
IUIColorUtils	Utility interface for dealing with user-interface colors.
IInkMgrUtils	Utility interface for managing inks. For example, this interface can be used to acquire the active ink list and retrieve information about name, type, ink alias, and corresponding swatches of a spot ink.
IInkMgrUIUtils	Utility interface, mainly for calling the ink-manager dialog box.
IColorSystemUtils	Utility interface for color-rendering objects. For example, this interface can be used to get color space and color components of a given color swatch.
ICMSAttributeSuite	A selection suite interface. Provides color-management functionality for the selected image page item, like getting or applying color profile or rendering intent.
ICMSUtils	Utility interface for the color-management system. For example, this interface can be used to obtain CMSSettings and ProfileList. Provides wrappers for color-management commands.
ICMSManager	A manager interface that provides a generic wrapper around a color-management system (CMS). Access to the CMS typically is done by coordinating between this interface and a data interface for the specific CMS implementation.
IColorPresetsManager	A manager interface that manages a set of color preset files. For example, load or save a color preset, and get or set working RGB/CMYK profile and CMS policy.

Since color-related objects like colors, swatches, inks, and color profiles are stored in the document or application database, you will need commands to manipulate them. The utility interfaces described above provide a higher-level abstraction that wrap the required commands. For a list of commands, see the API reference documentation.

Graphic-attribute client APIs

APIs provided to manipulate graphic attributes are summarized in “Graphic-attribute APIs” on page 288. For details about them, see the API reference documentation.

TABLE 75 *Graphic-attribute APIs*

API	Description
IGraphicAttributeUtils	Exposes methods that can be used to create lists of attribute overrides and create commands to apply attribute overrides. It also exposes methods to read the graphic attributes of document objects.
IGraphicStateUtils	Exposes methods to create or process commands to apply overrides, swap stroke and fill, and so on. It also exposes a key method to acquire a reference to the active graphic state, which is discussed in detail in the “Graphics” chapter of <i>Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions</i> .
IGraphicAttributeSuite	Selection suite that can be queried for through an abstract selection (kAbstractSelectionBoss). It is aggregated on the concrete selection boss classes connected with application defaults, document defaults, layout, tables, and text.
IGraphicAttrProxySuite	Selection suite that switches graphic attributes between layout objects and text.
IStrokeAttributeSuite	High-level attribute suite interface specifically to get and set various stroke attributes. It uses IGraphicAttributeSuite to get and set appropriate data.
IXPAttributeSuite	Accesses or changes transparency attributes on the selected page items or group items. This header file also defines all transparency-attribute-related enums such as attribute types.
IXPAttributeUtils	Transparency-attribute-related utility functions
IXPAttributeFacade	High-level transparency-attribute facade. Defines methods to get and set all transparency attributes.
IXPUtils	Transparency utility functions. Mainly for flattening.
IXPManager	Transparency helper functions.

There are command boss classes used to manipulate graphic attributes, graphic style, and graphic state. The utility interfaces described in [Table 75](#) provide a higher-level abstraction that wraps the common commands. For a complete list of provided commands, see the API reference documentation.

Extension patterns

Custom graphic attributes

You can provide custom graphic attributes that extend InDesign function for end users. As explained in [“Representation of graphic attributes” on page 258](#), graphic attributes are applied to page items by adding to a list of attribute boss objects associated with the page item.

To define a customized graphic attribute, follow these steps:

1. Create a new boss class for the attribute. The boss class should inherit from `kGraphicsAttrBoss`.
2. Provide an implementation of the `IGraphicAttributeInfo` interface.
3. If the graphic attribute value could be stored in an existing data interface, like `IGraphicAttrBoolean` or `IGraphicAttrClassID`, add it to the attribute class; otherwise, implement an interface of your own.
4. Provide your own code to initialize and set your attribute data when the attribute is applied to a page item. Code to apply the attribute to a page item also is required.

If you implemented a custom graphic attribute, you are likely to use a page-item adornment to decorate the page item based on your graphic-attribute value. For an example, see the `TransparencyEffect` and `TransparencyEffectUI` sample SDK plug-ins.

Custom path-stroker effects

You can provide custom path strokers with your own stroke implementation through a `kPathStrokerService`. The service provider should provide an implementation of `IPathStroker`, with `IStrokeParameters` used for storing parameters for the stroke. See [“Path stroker” on page 262](#). To implement a custom path stroker, follow these steps:

1. Create a new boss class for the service provider (for example `k<XXX>PathStrokerBoss`). Add a service provider to the boss class (the application-provided `kPathStrokerServiceProviderImpl` can be re-used), and define your implementation of `IPathStroker`.
2. Create your implementation of `IPathStroker`. The interface basically provides methods on how to draw the path on the specific graphic port and hit testing (stroke bounding box, etc.).

3. If the implementation of the stroker is complicated, you may aggregate additional interfaces on the boss. InDesign CS4/InCopy CS4 provides a common stroke-parameter implementation of the `IStrokeParameters` interface. The interface stores information like where a path segment starts and the length of the segment. For details, see the API reference documentation.

To change only the dash and gap of a stroke, you do not need a custom stroke implementation. Instead, just apply the appropriate `kDashedAttributeValuesBoss` attribute.

Custom corner effects

You can provide a custom corner path with your own corner path implementation through a `kPathCornerService`. The service provider should provide an implementation of `IPathCorner`. See [“Path corners” on page 263](#). To implement a custom corner effect, follow these steps:

1. Create a new boss class for the service provider (for example `k<XXX>CornerBoss`). Add a service provider to the boss class (the application-provided `kPathCornerServiceProviderImpl` can be re-used), and define your own implementation of `IPathCorner`.
2. Create your implementation of `IPathCorner`. The interface basically provides drawing methods from three points on the corner. For detailed definitions of the pointers, see the API reference documentation of the interface. The three points are calculated by a private method not included in the SDK from the stroke path and corner size. You need to provide only the method for creating the corner effect using these points.
3. Determine the size of the corner, and apply `kGraphicStyleCornerRadiusAttrBoss` to the path page item. The corner-size attribute is decoupled from the corner-path implementation, so you could set and change corner size independently and use this setting with other corner implementations.

Custom path-end effects

You can provide a custom path-end effect with your own path-end implementation through a `kPathEndStrokerService`. The service provider should provide an implementation of `IPathEndStroker`. See [“Path-end stokers” on page 263](#). To implement a custom path-end effect, follow these steps:

1. Create a new boss class for the service provider (for example `k<XXX>ArrowHeadBoss`). Add a service provider to the boss class (the application-provided `kPathEndStrokerServiceProviderImpl` can be re-used), and define your own implementation of `IPathEndStroker`.
2. Create your implementation of `IPathEndStroker`. The interface basically provides drawing and hit testing methods for a stroke end. A page item’s stroke bounding box includes both the stroke and stroke-end bounding box returned from the method on this interface.
3. Set the implementation ID to the appropriate line-end attribute, and apply the attribute to the page item.

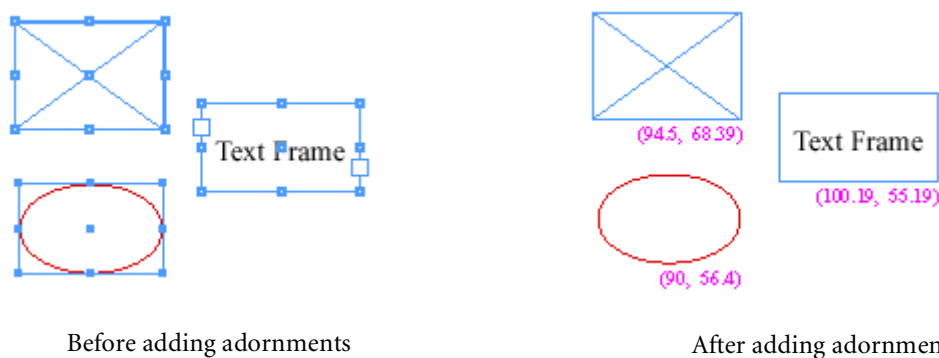
Custom page-item adornments

Page-item adornments customize the appearance of a page item, giving a plug-in the chance to add drawing when the page item is rendered. For example, if you want to add a drop shadow or label for a specific page item, a page-item adornment is one way to add these extra drawings.

Examples of page-item adornments in InDesign are the transparency drop shadow and feather effects, the graphics-frame outline path, and the empty-graphics frame indicator (the X inside the frame).

You can participate in page-item drawing by creating a custom page-item adornment. For example, you could provide an adornment to show in magenta type the width and height of each selected page item, as shown in [Figure 104](#).

FIGURE 104 Adding adornments to selected page items

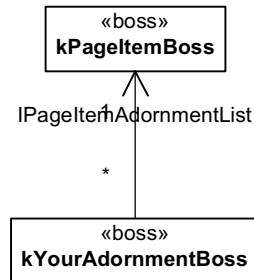


Architecture

Page-item adornments are represented by boss objects. There are two main types of page-item adornments:

- IAdornmentShape implementations, drawn during execution of IShape::Draw.
- IAdornmentHandleShape implementations, drawn during execution of IHandleShape::Draw.

The Draw methods on their implementations determine the appearance of the adornment. Page-item adornments are connected to page items through the IPageItemAdornmentList interface aggregated on the kPageItemBoss boss class. [Figure 105](#) illustrates the basic data model for adornments. A page item aggregates the IPageItemAdornmentList interface, which stores a list of adornments the page item has.

FIGURE 105 Adornment data model

IPageItemAdornmentList

The `IPageItemAdornmentList` interface manages a list of the adornments for a page item. Each adornment in the list is drawn in an order determined by the value of its `AdornmentDrawOrder`. For page-item adornments, there are several opportunities within the drawing cycle to draw.

Each adornment can be drawn at one or more phases within the drawing cycle if you AND together the flags defined in the `AdornmentDrawOrder` enumeration (defined in `IAdornmentShape.h` and `IAdornmentHandleShape`). These values indicate when the adornment is to be drawn. Upon calling the command `kAddPageitemAdornmentCmdBoss`, the adornment is inserted into the list based on drawing order.

When adding an adornment to a page item, define the adornment as a new boss class that aggregates the `IAdornmentShape` or `IAdornmentHandleShape` interface. In a more complex case, you can use more than one adornment for a single page item.

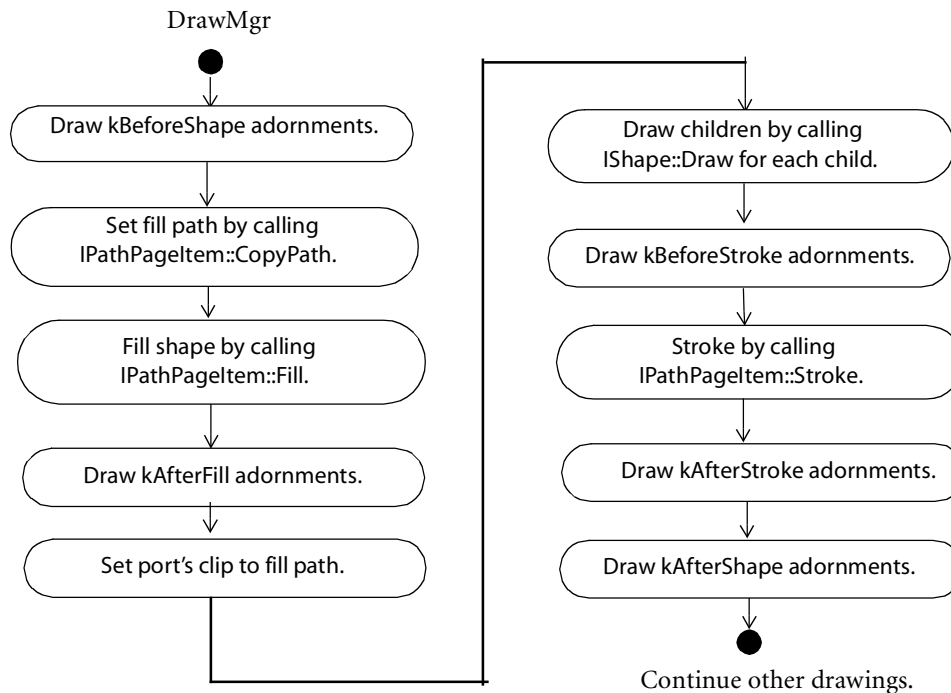
IAdornmentShape

When implementing `IAdornmentShape`, you can choose to provide hit testing and invalidation of the view, if needed. At a minimum, your implementation must draw the adornment.

When a page item is drawn, each attached adornment is called to draw through the `IAdornmentShape` interface. A page-item shape tells the drawing manager at which of the following times it should be drawn:

- After the frame shape (`kAfterShape`).
- Before the text foreground (`kBeforeTextForeground`).
- At one of the other events defined in the adornment objects.

The drawing order controls when the adornment is called to draw. [Figure 106](#) shows the drawing sequences for one rectangle spline item. When the adornments' drawing methods get called depends on the drawing order. For detailed information on page item drawing, see [“Drawing page items”](#) on page 281.

FIGURE 106 Drawing sequences for a rectangle page item

IAdornmentHandleShape

Implementing `IAdornmentHandleShape` lets you decorate the selection handles associated with a page item. This decoration can be drawn with `IAdornmentHandleShape::kBeforeShape` or `IAdornmentHandleShape::kAfterShape`; that is, before or after `IHandleShape` calls `DrawHandlesImmediate`.

Implementation hints

To implement a custom page-item adornment, you need to do at least the following:

1. Define an adornment boss class. Depending on the nature of your adornment, you need to implement `IAdornmentShape` or `IAdornmentHandleShape`. This determines how and when your adornment is drawn. In providing the implementation aggregated on the adornment boss class, you specify how the adornment is drawn and how the painted bounding box is calculated.
2. Determine when you will connect your adornment to the page-item adornment list, most likely by processing a low-level command.

For a sample showing how to implement a custom page-item adornment, see `FrameLabel` in the SDK; also see other samples that provide an implementation of `IAdornmentShape`, such as `TransparencyEffect` and `CustomDataLink`.

Custom drawing-event handler

You can use a custom drawing-event handler to take control when a page item is being drawn at some point in the drawing cycle, to modify how the item draws or cancel it being drawn.

Architecture

Drawing events are messages that are broadcast at specific points in the drawing order. Each drawing event signals the beginning or end of a phase of drawing. Drawing events provide extensibility points in that drawing operations can be modified or cancelled in response to the event.

Drawing-event types are defined in `DocumentContextID.h`. Some of the generic drawing event types associated with shape drawing are shown in [Table 76](#).

TABLE 76 *Generic drawing events*

Drawing event	Use
<code>kAbortCheckMessage</code>	Opportunity to abort drawing of an entire item.
<code>kBeginShapeMessage</code>	Start of shape drawing.
<code>kDrawShapeMessage</code>	Shape drawing is about to begin.
<code>kEndShapeMessage</code>	End of shape drawing.
<code>kFilterCheckMessage</code>	Opportunity to filter drawing based on object type.

In addition, there are other, more specific event types that signal the beginning and end of spread, layer, and page drawing. Drawing events are generated for each `Draw` method in the hierarchy: `kBegin<XXX>Message`, `kEnd<XXX>Message`, and `kDraw<XXX>Message`.

`kBegin<XXX>Message` is generated just before a call to the next level of the hierarchy (after any transformation is applied to the object). `kEnd<XXX>Message` is generated just after execution returns from a lower level of the hierarchy.

Registering and unregistering

There are two ways a plug-in can register or unregister for drawing events: as a service provider or using direct registration through the `IDrwEvtDispatcher` interface.

- Drawing-event handlers can be a type of service provider. If so, they are automatically registered at start-up. A boss can register as a service provider using the `IK2ServiceProvider` interface and the `kDrawEventService` service ID. The boss must provide an implementation of the `IDrwEvtHandler` interface. When the application starts, the `Register` method in the drawing-event handler registers for the drawing events it wants to receive.
- A second method of registering for events is to instantiate the `IDrwEvtDispatcher` interface and call `IDrwEvtDispatcher::RegisterHandler` directly. This requires parameters including the event being registered for, a pointer to the event handler, and the priority of the event handler.

In the PrintSelection SDK sample, the `kPrnSelDrawServicesBoss` boss class does not provide an implementation for `IK2ServiceProvider`. This is because this particular sample uses the direct registration method; see the `AfterPrintUI` method in `PrnSelPrintSetupProvider.cpp`.

Unregistering is similar to registering, except the call to `UnRegisterHandler` is on the `IDrwEvtDispatcher` interface.

Drawing event-handling priorities

Drawing event handlers register their prioritized interest in particular types of drawing events. Priorities are defined in `IDrwEvtDispatcher.h`. When a handler registers for an event, it must pass a priority to `RegisterHandler`. The priorities include the following:

- `kDEHPostProcess`
- `kDEHLowestPriority`
- `kDEHLowPriority`
- `kDEHMediumPriority`
- `kDEHHighPriority`
- `kDEHInitialization`

As each event is processed, handlers are called in order, from the `kDEHInitialization` priority down to `kDEHPostProcess`. If two handlers have the same priority for the same event, the handler registered first is called first. The return code for handlers registered using the `kDEHInitialization` priority is ignored. For additional information about return codes for the other priorities, see [“Handling drawing events” on page 295](#).

Handling drawing events

The drawing-event handler's `HandleEvent` method takes two parameters: a `ClassID` that is the `eventID` (see `DocumentContextID.h`) and a void pointer to a class containing the event data. For drawing events, this pointer must be cast to the `DrawEventData` class (see `IDrwEvtHandler.h`) to access the data.

In the `HandleEvent` method of the drawing-event handler, if the method returns `kTrue`, it is assumed the event was properly handled and no other event handlers are called for the event; therefore, the drawing at that step ceases. If the method returns `kFalse`, the drawing event is considered not handled, and the drawing step proceeds. A drawing-event handler that modifies or decorates the drawing of an object but does not replace it returns `kFalse`. Also, `kEnd<XXX>Message` does not look at the return code from the event handler, because the draw operation already completed.

Implementation

A custom drawing-event handler is an extension pattern to let third-party code participate in drawing or printing or interrupt the drawing or printing of a page item. The following steps summarize how to implement a custom drawing-event handler. The signature interface of the pattern is `IDrwEvtHandler`.

1. Define your own drawing-event handler boss class.
2. Depending on how you want to register and unregister your event handler, you also may need to implement the `IK2ServiceProvider` interface, returning a `ServiceID` of `kDrawEventService`.
3. Provide an implementation of `IDrwEvtHandler`.
4. In your `IDrwEvtHandler::HandleEvent` implementation, you will get an event ID and a void pointer to a class containing the event data. You should cast to the `DrawEventData` and obtain the `GraphicsData` pointer; then you can do your custom drawing in the same context of page-item drawing.

For sample code, see `BasicDrwEvtHandler` and other samples that implement `IDrwEvtHandler` in the SDK.

Swatch-list state

Initial state of swatch list and ink list

When the application starts, it initializes a swatch list by creating several default swatches (rendering objects). There are reserved swatches: None, Paper, Black, and Registration. [Table 77](#) lists the initial state of swatch list, and [Table 78](#) illustrates initial ink list. (UIDs are not necessarily the same for different workspaces.)

TABLE 77 *Initial state of swatches*

Index	UID	Rendering object	Swatch name	Color or gradient information
0	11	kPMColorBoss	Black (reserved)	kPMCsCalCMYK(0,0,0,1)
1	18	kPMColorBoss	C=0 M=0 Y=100 K=0	kPMCsCalCMYK(0,0,1,0)
2	19	kPMColorBoss	C=0 M=100 Y=0 K=0	kPMCsCalCMYK(0,1,0,0)
3	20	kPMColorBoss	C=100 M=0 Y=0 K=0	kPMCsCalCMYK(1,0,0,0)
4	21	kPMColorBoss	C=100 M=90 Y=10 K=0	kPMCsCalCMYK(1,0.9,0.1,0)
5	22	kPMColorBoss	C=15 M=100 Y=100 K=0	kPMCsCalCMYK(0.15,1,1,0)
6	23	kPMColorBoss	C=75 M=5 Y=100 K=0	kPMCsCalCMYK(0.75,0.05,1,0)
7	12	kPMColorBoss	Cyan	kPMCsCalCMYK(1,0,0,0)
8	13	kPMColorBoss	Magenta	kPMCsCalCMYK(0,1,0,0)
9	14	kGraphicStateNoneRenderingObjectBoss	None (reserved)	N/A

Index	UID	Rendering object	Swatch name	Color or gradient information
10	15	kPMColorBoss	Paper (reserved)	kPMCsCalCMYK(0,0,0,0)
11	16	kPMColorBoss	Registration (reserved)	kPMCsCalCMYK(1,1,1,1)
12	17	kPMColorBoss	Yellow	kPMCsCalCMYK(0,0,1,0)
13	97	kPMColorBoss	(invisible)	kPMCsCalCMYK(0,0,0,1)
14	99	kPMColorBoss	(invisible)	kPMCsCalCMYK(0,0,0,0)
15	98	kGradientRenderingObjectBoss	(invisible)	Stop 0 UID=99, Stop 1 UID=11
16	100	kAGMBlackBoxRenderingObjectBoss	(invisible)	N/A

Notice there are several invisible, unnamed swatches that are created but do not show up in the Swatches panel.

TABLE 78 Initial ink list

Index	UID	Name	Type
0	7	Process Cyan	Process
1	8	Process Magenta	Process
2	9	Process Yellow	Process
3	10	Process Black	Process

State of swatch list and ink list after adding a custom stop color

Adding a custom color swatch, PANTONE 368 C, causes an additional swatch-list entry to be created. For information on how to add a color swatch, see the “Graphics” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*. [Table 79](#) illustrates the new state of the swatch list, and [Table 80](#) illustrates the new state of the ink list. Note the following:

- The swatch is sorted by swatch name. Since the new swatch’s name is between index 9 and 10, the new color is inserted into position 10. The following row is added: 10, 167, kPMColorBoss, PANTONE 368 C, kPMCsCalCMYK (0.57,0,1,0), Spot.
- The swatch list is reordered, so entries 10 and after are shifted down. The UIDs of the existing swatches do not change.
- A new spot ink is added to the ink list.

TABLE 79 Swatches after adding a custom color

Index	UID	Rendering object	Swatch name	Color or gradient information
0	11	kPMColorBoss	Black (reserved)	kPMCsCalCMYK(0,0,0,1)
1	18	kPMColorBoss	C=0 M=0 Y=100 K=0	kPMCsCalCMYK(0,0,1,0)
2	19	kPMColorBoss	C=0 M=100 Y=0 K=0	kPMCsCalCMYK(0,1,0,0)
3	20	kPMColorBoss	C=100 M=0 Y=0 K=0	kPMCsCalCMYK(1,0,0,0)
4	21	kPMColorBoss	C=100 M=90 Y=10 K=0	kPMCsCalCMYK(1,0.9,0.1,0)
5	22	kPMColorBoss	C=15 M=100 Y=100 K=0	kPMCsCalCMYK(0.15,1,1,0)
6	23	kPMColorBoss	C=75 M=5 Y=100 K=0	kPMCsCalCMYK(0.75,0.05,1,0)
7	12	kPMColorBoss	Cyan	kPMCsCalCMYK(1,0,0,0)
8	13	kPMColorBoss	Magenta	kPMCsCalCMYK(0,1,0,0)
9	14	kGraphicStateNoneRendering ObjectBoss	None (reserved)	N/A
10	167	kPMColorBoss	PANTONE 368 C	kPMCsCalCMYK(0.57,0,1,0), Spot
11	15	kPMColorBoss	Paper (reserved)	kPMCsCalCMYK(0,0,0,0)
12	16	kPMColorBoss	Registration (reserved)	kPMCsCalCMYK(1,1,1,1)
13	17	kPMColorBoss	Yellow	kPMCsCalCMYK(0,0,1,0)
14	97	kPMColorBoss	(invisible)	kPMCsCalCMYK(0,0,0,1)
15	99	kPMColorBoss	(invisible)	kPMCsCalCMYK(0,0,0,0)
16	98	kGradientRenderingObjectBoss	(invisible)	Stop 0 UID=99, Stop 1 UID=11
17	100	kAGMBlackBoxRenderingObjectBoss	(invisible)	N/A

TABLE 80 Ink list after a stop color is added to swatch

Index	UID	Name	Type
0	7	Process Cyan	Process
1	8	Process Magenta	Process
2	9	Process Yellow	Process
3	10	Process Black	Process
4	166	PANTONE 368 C	Spot

Swatch list and ink list after adding a gradient swatch

The user also may add a custom gradient. Adding a gradient may add additional colors for a gradient stop. Similar to what occurs when adding a custom color swatch, new entries are created for these added colors and gradients. For information on adding a gradient swatch, see the “Graphics” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*. [Table 81](#) lists only the new entries for the swatch list, and [Table 82](#) illustrates the updated ink list.

TABLE 81 New entries in swatch list after adding a custom gradient

Index	UID	Rendering object	Swatch name	Color or gradient information
13	169	kPMColorBoss	Stop 1	kPMCsCalCMYK(0.2,1,0.5,0)
14	171	kPMColorBoss	Stop 2	kPMCsCalRGB(0,1,0.5)
15	173	kPMColorBoss	Stop 3	kPMCsCalCMYK(0,0.3,0.9,0)
16	174	kGradientRenderingObjectBoss	Tie-dye	Stop 0 UID=169, Stop 1UID=171, Stop 2 UID =173

The new gradient, Tie-dye, has three stops, so these three color swatches (Stop 1, Stop 2, and Stop 3) also are inserted into the swatch list.

For the existing swatches we did not list here, the swatch data did not change, but their indices were changed to make room for new swatches. The new swatches are inserted continuously, because these new swatch names happened to be in continuous position with existing names.

TABLE 82 Ink list after a gradient with three-stop colors is added to swatch

Index	UID	Name	Type
0	7	Process Cyan	Process
1	8	Process Magenta	Process
2	9	Process Yellow	Process
3	10	Process Black	Process
4	166	PANTONE 368 C	Spot
5	168	Stop 1	Spot
6	170	Stop 2	Spot
7	172	Stop 3	Spot

Since the gradient stop colors are spot colors, they also are added to the ink list.

Swatch list and ink list after applying an unnamed color to an object

When an instance of a color is chosen with the Color Picker panel and applied to a page item, a new, unnamed swatch entry is added to the end of the swatch list. See [Table 83](#).

TABLE 83 *New swatch entry added after picking a color from color picker*

Index	UID	Rendering object	Swatch name	Color or gradient information
22	177	kPMColorBoss	(invisible)	kPMCsCalCMYK(0.4715,0,0.75,0)

Unnamed swatches are not sorted, so a new unnamed swatch is appended at the end. After the previous step (adding a gradient), there were 22 swatches total in the list, so this step adds the swatch at index 22.

Unnamed swatches do not appear in the Swatches panel, but they can be used for the strokes and fills of document objects by client code. When a color is chosen through the Color panel, the active graphic state changes, and a new swatch may be created. A new swatch is created in the swatch list only if the new color is applied to a document object; i.e., if there is an active selection when the color is created or the color is applied to an object like a spline page item.

Because the added unnamed color is a process color, the inks this color uses to print (i.e., Process Cyan, Process Magenta, Process Yellow, and Process Black) already are in the ink list, so the ink list does not change. Applying a new gradient to a page-item object through the Gradient panel results in a similar state.

Color spaces

There are three common color spaces: RGB, CMYK, and L*a*b*.

RGB color spaces

RGB is a device-dependent color model. It is the native color model of monitors, scanners and digital cameras.

The kPMCsCalRGB space denotes calibrated RGB. Although the space is device-dependent, coordinates within this space are not arbitrary. There are several, slightly different color spaces that use the RGB color model:

- Adobe RGB (1998) — Previously referred to as SMPTE-240M.
- Apple® RGB — The default color space for Photoshop 3 and 4.
- ColorMatch RGB — Based on the Radius PressView display. This has a smaller gamut than Adobe RGB (1998) and other color spaces for print production jobs.
- sRGB (IEC61966-2.1) — The default color space for Photoshop 5. This reflects the color properties of the average computer monitor. It was proposed in 1996 by Hewlett-Packard and Microsoft® for representing color on the Internet, as described at <http://www.w3.org/Graphics/Color/sRGB.html>. sRGB also is the color space used to represent color in SVG documents. For more information about SVG, go to <http://www.w3.org/TR/SVG>.

CMYK

Like RGB, CMYK is a device-dependent color model. It is the native color model of most printers. Many color spaces use the CMYK color model. For example, the InDesign color-management user interface lets the end user specify any of the following:

- Euroscale Coated v2
- Euroscale Uncoated v2
- Japan Standard v2
- U.S. Sheetfed Coated v2
- U.S. Sheetfed Uncoated v2
- U.S. Web Coated (SWOP) v2
- U.S. Web Uncoated v2

The choice of color space is governed by expectations about the properties of the press on which the job will be printed.

LAB

L*a*b* (1976 CIE L*a*b* Space) is device-independent and is the basic color model in PostScript. L*a*b* is used for color management as the device-independent model of the ICC device profiles.

L*a*b* was standardized in 1976 to provide a space that is perceptually uniform. L*a*b* has its basis in the CIE standard observer, derived by analysis of the physiology of the retina and the early visual pathways.

The terms L*, a*, and b* refer to coordinate axes within the space. L is a function of luminance, the physical correlate of brightness. The other coordinates are less easily understood in physical terms and better regarded as mathematical abstractions.

Catalog of graphic attributes

There are many graphic attributes in the application. Sometimes several attributes collaborate to implement a feature, like transparency; sometimes the values of some attributes are important, like color and stroke-line implementations.

[Figure 107](#) is a master list of graphic attributes. The attribute boss class, name, and interface that store the attribute value are listed. Other information is provided in the boolean matrix on the right of the table.

The list can be obtained from the API reference documentation in two ways:

- Look for IGraphicAttributeInfo and see which boss classes aggregate this interface.
- Look at the kGraphicsAttrBoss boss class and examine the list of subclasses of this class.

Note this list is not a complete list of graphic attributes and is not updated for each release.

FIGURE 107 Master list of graphic attributes

className	attributeName	value interfaces	affectsPageItemGeometry?	isRequiredGraphicAttribute?	isTableAttribute?	isTextAttribute?	isObservedByGraphicState?	isObservedByTransparencyAttrSuite?	isFormFieldAttribute?
kCheckDefaultCheckedAttrBoss	Default Is Checked	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kCheckExportValueAttrBoss	Export Value	IStringAttr	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kChoiceAllowMultiSelAttrBoss	Allow Multiple Selection	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kChoiceEditableAttrBoss	Editable	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kChoiceListAttrBoss	Choice List	IChoiceListAttr (private)	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kChoiceSortAttrBoss	Sort Items	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kDashedAttributeValuesBoss	Dash settings	IDashedAttributeValues	no	yes	no	no	yes	no	no
kFormDefaultValueAttrBoss	Form Field Default Value	IStringAttr	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormDescriptionAttrBoss	Form Field Description	IStringAttr	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormExportAttrBoss	Form Field Export	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormExportMappingAttrBoss	Form Field Export Mapping Name	IStringAttr	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormExportRequiredAttrBoss	Form Field Required For Export	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormFontColorAttrBoss	Form Field Font Color	ITextAttrUID	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormFontOverprintAttrBoss	Form Field Font Color Overprint	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormFontSizeAttrBoss	Form Field Font Size	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormFontStrokeColorAttrBoss	Form Field Font Stroke Color	ITextAttrUID	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormFontStrokeOverprintAttrBoss	Form Field Font Stroke Color Overprint	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormFontStrokeTintAttrBoss	Form Field Font Stroke Tint	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormFontStrokeWeightAttrBoss	Form Field Font Stroke Weight	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormFontStyleAttrBoss	Form Field Font Style	ITextAttrFont	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormFontTintAttrBoss	Form Field Font Tint	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormFontUIDAttrBoss	Form Field Font Family	ITextAttrUID	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormNameAttrBoss	Form Field Name	IStringAttr	yes	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormPrintVisibleAttrBoss	Form Field Visible When Printed	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormReadOnlyAttrBoss	Form Field Read Only	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormScreenVisibleAttrBoss	Form Field Visible On Screen	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormSpellCheckAttrBoss	Spell Check	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormStyleAttrBoss	Form Field Style	IStringAttr	yes	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormTypeAttrBoss	Form Field Type	IGraphicAttrInt32	yes	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kFormValueAttrBoss	Form Field Value	IStringAttr	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kGraphicStyleCornerImplAttrBoss	Effect	IGraphicAttrClassID	yes	yes	no	no	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleCornerRadiusAttrBoss	Size	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	yes	yes	no	no	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleEvenOddAttrBoss	Even-Odd	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	yes	no	no	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleFillRenderingAttrBoss	Color	IPersistUIDData	no	yes	yes	yes	yes	no	no

className	attributeName	value interfaces	affectsPageItemGeometry?	isRequiredGraphicAttribute?	isTableAttribute?	isTextAttribute?	isObservedByGraphicState?	isObservedByTransparencyAttrSuite?	isFormFieldAttribute?
kGraphicStyleFillTintAttrBoss	Tint	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	yes	yes	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleGapRenderingAttrBoss	Gap color	IPersistUIDData	no	no	yes	no	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleGapTintAttrBoss	Gap tint	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	yes	no	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleGradientFillAngleAttrBoss	Gradient fill angle	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	yes	no	no	no
kGraphicStyleGradientFillGradCenterAttrBoss	Gradient fill center	IGraphicAttrPoint	no	no	no	yes	no	no	no
kGraphicStyleGradientFillHiliteAngleAttrBoss	Gradient fill highlight angle	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	no	no	no
kGraphicStyleGradientFillHiliteLengthAttrBoss	Gradient fill highlight length	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	no	no	no
kGraphicStyleGradientFillLengthAttrBoss	Gradient fill length	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	yes	no	no	no
kGraphicStyleGradientFillRadiusAttrBoss	Gradient fill radius	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	no	no	no
kGraphicStyleGradientStrokeAngleAttrBoss	Gradient angle	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	yes	no	no	no
kGraphicStyleGradientStrokeGradCenterAttrBoss	Gradient stroke center	IGraphicAttrPoint	no	no	no	yes	no	no	no
kGraphicStyleGradientStrokeHiliteAngleAttrBoss	Gradient stroke highlight angle	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	no	no	no
kGraphicStyleGradientStrokeHiliteLengthAttrBoss	Gradient stroke highlight length	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	no	no	no
kGraphicStyleGradientStrokeLengthAttrBoss	Gradient stroke length	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	yes	no	no	no
kGraphicStyleGradientStrokeRadiusAttrBoss	Gradient stroke radius	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	no	no	no
kGraphicStyleJoinTypeAttrBoss	Join	IGraphicAttrInt32	yes	yes	no	no	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleLineCapAttrBoss	End cap	IGraphicAttrInt32	yes	yes	no	no	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleLineEndEndAttrBoss	Line end	IGraphicAttrClassID	yes	yes	no	no	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleLineStartAttrBoss	Line start	IGraphicAttrClassID	yes	yes	no	no	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleMiterLimitAttrBoss	Miter limit	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	yes	yes	no	no	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleNonPrintAttrBoss	Non print	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	yes	no	yes	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleOverprintFillAttrBoss	Overprint fill	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	yes	yes	yes	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleOverprintGapAttrBoss	Overprint gap	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleOverprintStrokeAttrBoss	Overprint stroke	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	yes	yes	yes	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleStrokeAlignmentAttrBoss	Stroke alignment	IGraphicAttrInt32	yes	no	no	no	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleStrokeLineImplAttrBoss	Stroke type	IPersistUIDData IGraphicAttrClassID	yes	yes	yes	no	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleStrokeRenderingAttrBoss	Color	IPersistUIDData	no	yes	yes	yes	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleStrokeTintAttrBoss	Tint	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	yes	yes	yes	no	no
kGraphicStyleStrokeWeightAttrBoss	Stroke weight	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	no	no
kStrokeParametersBoss	Stroke parameters	IStrokeParameters	no	no	no	no	yes	no	no
kTextAlignmentAttrBoss	TextAlignment (form field)	IGraphicAttrInt32	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kTextHasMaxLengthAttrBoss	Has Maximum Field Length	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kTextMaxLengthAttrBoss	Maximum Field Length	IGraphicAttrInt32	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kTextMultilineAttrBoss	Multiline	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes

className	attributeName	value interfaces	affectsPageItemGeometry?	isRequiredGraphicAttribute?	isTableAttribute?	isTextAttribute?	isObservedByGraphicState?	isObservedByTransparencyAttrSuite?	isFormFieldAttribute?
kTextPasswordAttrBoss	Password	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kTextScrollAttrBoss	Scroll	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kTextUseForFileSelAttrBoss	Used For File Selection	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
kXPBasicBlendModeAttrBoss	Mode	IGraphicAttrInt32	no	yes	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPBasicIsolationGroupAttrBoss	Isolate blending	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPBasicKnockoutGroupAttrBoss	Knockout group	IGraphicAttrBoolean	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPBasicOpacityAttrBoss	Opacity	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	yes	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPDropShadowBlendModeAttrBoss	Mode	IGraphicAttrInt32	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPDropShadowBlurRadiusAttrBoss	Blur radius	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPDropShadowColorAttrBoss	Color	IPersistUIDData	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPDropShadowModeAttrBoss	Drop shadow	IGraphicAttrInt32	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPDropShadowNoiseAttrBoss	Noise	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPDropShadowOffsetXAttrBoss	X offset	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPDropShadowOffsetYAttrBoss	Y offset	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPDropShadowOpacityAttrBoss	Opacity	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPDropShadowSpreadAttrBoss	Spread	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPVignetteCornersAttrBoss	Corners	IGraphicAttrInt32	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPVignetteInnerOpacityAttrBoss	Inner opacity	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPVignetteModeAttrBoss	Feather	IGraphicAttrInt32	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPVignetteNoiseAttrBoss	Noise	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPVignetteOuterOpacityAttrBoss	Outer opacity	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no
kXPVignetteWidthAttrBoss	Feather width	IGraphicAttrRealNumber	no	no	no	no	no	yes	no

Some boss classes inherit from kGraphicsAttrBoss and implement IGraphicAttributeInfo. They are the base classes for graphic attributes, but they do not represent standalone attributes. These bosses are excluded from the master attributes list and are listed in [Table 84](#) for reference.

TABLE 84 Parent boss class of attributes

Boss ID	Description
kVignetteAttrBoss	Parent attribute boss for all basic feather attributes.
kDropShadowAttrBoss	Parent attribute boss for all drop-shadow attributes.
kXPAttrBoss	Parent attribute boss for all basic-transparency attributes.
kXPInnerShadowAttrBoss	Parent attribute boss for all inner-shadow attributes.
kXPOuterGlowAttrBoss	Parent attribute boss for all outer-glow attributes.
kXPInnerGlowAttrBoss	Parent attribute boss for all inner-glow attributes.
kXPBevelEmbossAttrBoss	Parent attribute boss for all bevel and emboss attributes.
kXPSatinAttrBoss	Parent attribute boss for all satin attributes.
kXPDirectionalFeatherAttrBoss	Parent attribute boss for all directional-feather attributes.
kXPGradientFeatherAttrBoss	Parent attribute boss for all gradient-feather attributes.
kDefaultGraphicsAttrBoss	Parent of kGraphicStyleNonPrintAttrBoss.
kStrokeEffectGraphicsAttrBoss	Parent of all stroke-effect attributes (line cap, join type, etc.).
kCornerEffectGraphicsAttrBoss	Parent of all corner-effect attributes (corner implementation, size).
kFillGraphicsAttrBoss	Parent of all fill attributes (gradient fill, gradient fill angle, fill color, overprint, etc.).
kStrokeGraphicsAttrBoss	Parent of all stroke attributes (gradient stroke, gradient-stroke angle, stroke color, stroke weight, etc.).
kGradientStrokeGraphicsAttrBoss	Gradient stroke itself is parent of all gradient-stroke attributes (length, gradient center, radius, etc.).
kGradientFillGraphicsAttrBoss	Gradient fill stroke itself is parent of all gradient fill attributes (length, gradient center, radius, etc.).

Mappings between attribute domains

TABLE 85 *Graphic-attribute-to-text-attribute mapping*

Graphic-attribute class	Text-attribute class
kGraphicStyleFillRenderingAttrBoss	kTextAttrColorBoss
kGraphicStyleFillTintAttrBoss	kTextAttrStrokeTintBoss
kGraphicStyleGradientFillAngleAttrBoss	kTextAttrGradLengthBoss
kGraphicStyleGradientFillGradCenterAttrBoss	kTextAttrGradCenterBoss
kGraphicStyleGradientStrokeAngleAttrBoss	kTextAttrStrokeGradAngleBoss
kGraphicStyleGradientStrokeGradCenterAttrBoss	kTextAttrStrokeGradCenterBoss
kGraphicStyleGradientStrokeLengthAttrBoss	kTextAttrStrokeGradLengthBoss
kGraphicStyleOverprintFillAttrBoss	kTextAttrOverprintBoss
kGraphicStyleOverprintStrokeAttrBoss	kTextAttrStrokeOverprintBoss
kGraphicStyleStrokeRenderingAttrBoss	kTextAttrStrokeColorBoss
kGraphicStyleStrokeWeightAttrBoss	kTextAttrOutlineBoss

TABLE 86 *Graphic-attribute-to-table-attribute mapping*

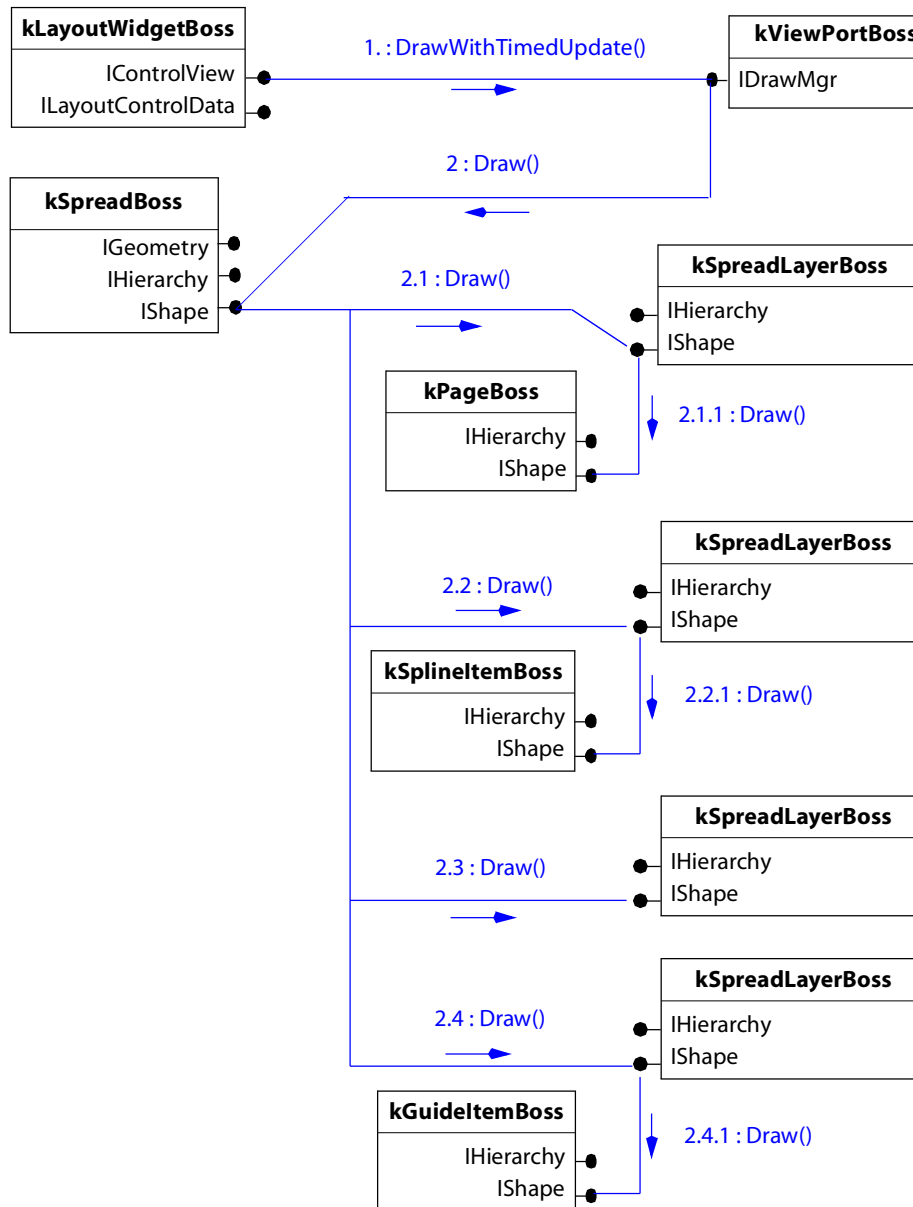
Graphic-attribute class	Table-attribute class
kGraphicStyleFillRenderingAttrBoss	kCellAttrFillColorBoss
kGraphicStyleFillTintAttrBoss	kCellAttrFillTintBoss
kGraphicStyleOverprintFillAttrBoss	kCellAttrFillOverprintBoss
kGraphicStyleOverprintStrokeAttrBoss	kCellStrokeAttrDataBoss
kGraphicStyleStrokeLineImplAttrBoss	kCellStrokeAttrDataBoss
kGraphicStyleStrokeRenderingAttrBoss	kCellStrokeAttrDataBoss
kGraphicStyleStrokeWeightAttrBoss	kCellStrokeAttrDataBoss

Spread-drawing sequence

Once the `kLayoutWidgetBoss` `IControlView` implementation obtains a list of the visible spreads, it has to ask each spread to draw through the InDesign draw manager. This section describes the overall sequence for drawing the layout hierarchy.

The collaboration for drawing the layout hierarchy is shown in [Figure 108](#). The `IControlView` implementation on the `kLayoutWidgetBoss` calls the draw manager once for each visible spread in the window's view. The draw manager is responsible for creating a `GraphicsData` object that describes the graphics context for the spread's drawing. Specifically, it sets the transformation matrix in the graphics port to support drawing in the spread's parent coordinate system, which is the pasteboard. The draw manager then calls the spread's `IShape::Draw` method to initiate the sequence of drawing that spread.

FIGURE 108 Boss collaboration for drawing the layout



When an item's IShape::Draw method is called, it must draw itself, then its children. This action is analogous to the mechanism used for the IControlView interface on widgets. The IShape implementation provides methods for drawing an object and iterating over the object's children, asking each of them to draw. Before drawing, the IShape implementation sets the transformation matrix in the graphics port to the item's inner coordinates. This establishes the following conventions:

- Each drawing object expects to receive the graphics port set to its parent's coordinate system.
- Each drawing object sets the graphics port to its inner coordinates before drawing itself or calling its children to draw.
- Each drawing object reverts the graphics port to its parent's coordinate system before returning to the caller.

Iterating over the object's children is accomplished by using the `IHierarchy` interface on each page item. This interface provides methods for iterating over the layout hierarchy. For more information about the `IHierarchy` interface, see the "Layout Fundamentals" chapter.

After being called by the draw manager, spread drawing always follows the layout hierarchy. Users can control whether the guides appear in front of the content or behind it, and this affects the hierarchy. Assuming guides are behind the content, page layers are drawn first, followed by the content layers, then the guide layers. If the guide layers appear in front of the content, the guides draw before the content. All content on a given layer is drawn before proceeding to the next layer. Embedded children of a page item are called to draw before that item completes its drawing. For example, when the `kSplineItemBoss` is called to draw in step 2.2.1 of [Figure 108](#), if it had children, they would be called to draw as step 2.2.1.1 and 2.2.1.2. before returning to the `kSpreadLayerBoss`.

Controlling the settings in a graphics port

The port's transform can be modified by translations, scale factors, and rotations, and a new transform can be concatenated to the existing port. Concatenation is most often used when page items draw; it is how a page item sets the port to draw to its inner coordinates. [Example 22](#) shows sample code demonstrating this operation. For more information on the application coordinate systems, see the "Layout Fundamentals" chapter.

EXAMPLE 22 *Manipulating the graphics-port settings*

```
// Get the graphics port from gd, a GraphicsData*.
IGraphicsPort* gPort = gd->GetGraphicsPort();
if (gPort == nil) return;

// Save the current port settings.
gPort->gsave();

// Get this page item's ITransform interface.
InterfacePtr<ITransform> xform(this, IID_ITRANSFORM);

// Concatenate the inner to parent matrix to the port.
gPort->concat(xform->CurrentMatrix());
```

```
// Draw a rectangle around the item.
InterfacePtr<IGeometry> geo (this, IID_IGEOMETRY);
const PMRect r = geo->GetStrokeBoundingBox();
gPort->rectpath(r);
gPort->stroke();

// Restore the previous port settings.
gPort->grestore();
```

Drawing sequence for a page item

The drawing sequence for a page item that implements `IShape` involves more than just the drawing instructions. Extensibility points are built into the sequence, in the form of drawing events and adornments. Extensibility points are described in “[Extension patterns](#)” on page 289.

Although each `IShape` implementation may have its own specific drawing sequence, all implementations follow these steps as guidelines:

1. When a page item begins drawing, three drawing events are broadcast (`kAbortCheckMessage`, `kFilterCheckMessage`, and `kDrawShapeMessage`). No `IShape` drawing activities occur between the broadcasts.
2. Save the graphics port state by calling `IGraphicsPort::gsave`. The graphics port is set to draw in the page item’s inner coordinate system.
3. A `kBeginShapeMessage` drawing event is broadcast. If any drawing-event handler returns `kTrue`, the drawing activity ends.
4. Draw `kBeforeShape` page item adornments.
5. Draw the page item’s own shape by calling the protected method `CShape::DrawShape`. This method varies depending on the nature of the page item. The following is a list of common tasks the `DrawShape` method may accomplish:
 - Define the item’s path.
 - Fill the path.
 - Set the port to clip to the path.
 - Draw the item’s children.
 - Stroke the path.
6. Draw `kAfterShape` page-item adornments.

There are types of page-item adornments other than `kBeforeShape` and `kAfterShape`. These may be called to draw at other points in the sequence. The use of graphics-port save and restore operations allows the adornments and child drawing routines to modify the port as needed and return it to a known state for the next drawing step.

For details of the code responsible for drawing, see the `CShape.cpp` and `CGraphicFrameShape.cpp` source code in the SDK, under `<SDK>/source/public/pageitems/basicinterfaces`. For examples of how to create your own shapes, also see the `BasicShape` and `CandleChart` sample plug-ins.

Text Fundamentals

This chapter provides background on the fundamental concepts used in the text architecture and describes the major subsystems that implement text features. It has the following objectives:

- Identify the core subsystems that implement the text architecture.
- Describe the model for text content—how raw text and formatting information is managed.
- Describe how the presentation of text (i.e., the actual rendered text) is modeled within the application, including both the glyphs that represent the text and the objects that manage the placement of glyphs on a spread.
- Describe text composition, the process of taking the content model and incomplete presentation model to generate the final appearance of text in the presentation model.
- Describe fonts and how they relate to the InDesign text subsystem.

[Table 87](#) lists resources for more information on relevant topics.

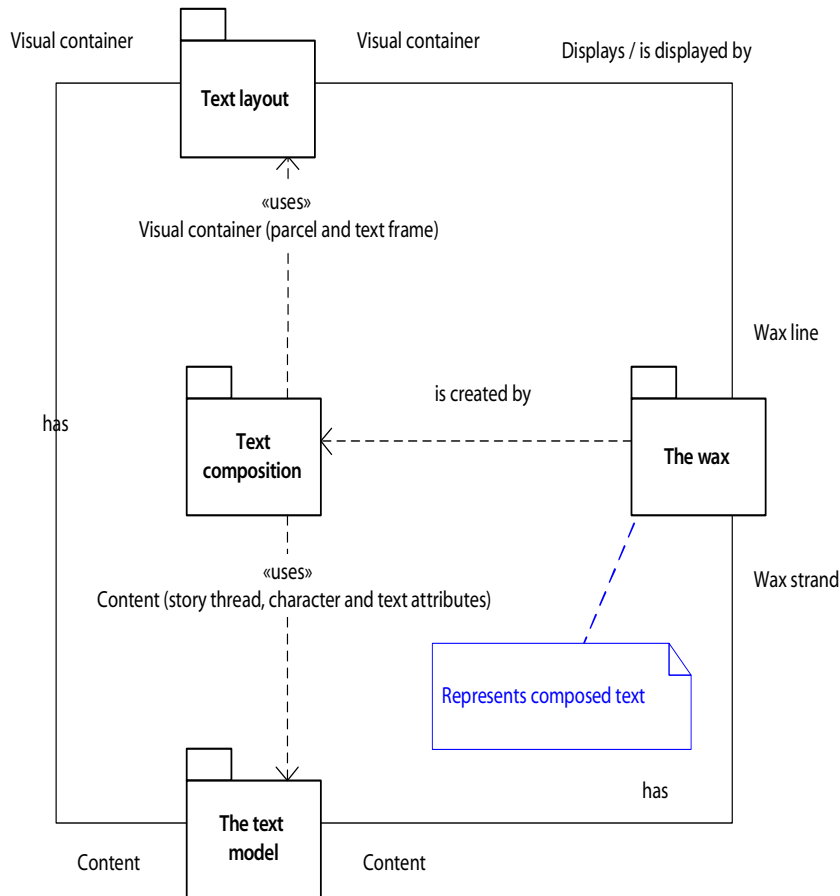
TABLE 87 For more information

For ...	Go to ...
More information on digital typography topics	http://store.adobe.com/type/topics/main.html
A glossary of typographic terms	http://store.adobe.com/type/topics/glossary.html
An overview of Adobe type technology	http://partners.adobe.com/asn/developer/type/main.html
The PostScript language FAQ list	http://www.postscript.org/FAQs/language/FAQ.html

Concepts

This section introduces the subsystems that implement the text architecture. The core text architecture can be divided into the following core subsystems: text content, text presentation, and text composition. Subsystems that extend the core include import and export, text styles, editors, and text search/replace. See [Figure 109](#).

FIGURE 109 Overview of core text architecture



The text-content subsystem manages the content of a story. The text-content subsystem stores the characters and attributes that control the styled appearance of text.

The text-presentation subsystem deals with where the text glyphs appear on the page. Text is composed into frames that display a story. A frame is a visual container for text. Visually, a story is displayed through a linked set of one or more frames. The frames have properties—such as the number of columns, column width, and text inset—that control where text flows. Text-wrap settings on overlapping frames may affect this flow. Once text is composed, it has a visual appearance and exhibits many of the same geometry traits as other page items.

The text-composition subsystem manages the process that flows text into a set of specified containers. Fonts provide the text-composition subsystem with the glyph dimensions it needs to arrange glyphs into lines of a given width.

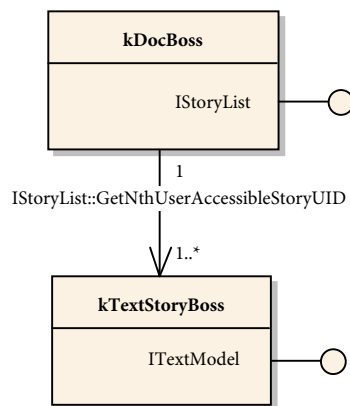
Text content

This section describes how the raw character and formatting information for a story is maintained within the application. Text content represents the information required to render a set of characters. This information includes the Unicode character values, along with any formatting information that defines the look of text, contents of footnotes and tables, inline graphics, and styles that can be applied to text.

Stories

Text content within a document is represented by a story (signature interface `ITextModel`). A single, related set of text is maintained within a single story. The document can contain multiple stories. All stories within the document can be accessed through the `IStoryList` interface on the `kDocBoss` class. [Figure 110](#) shows this relationship.

FIGURE 110 *Stories: maintained on the `kdocboss`, accessed by means of `IStoryList`.*



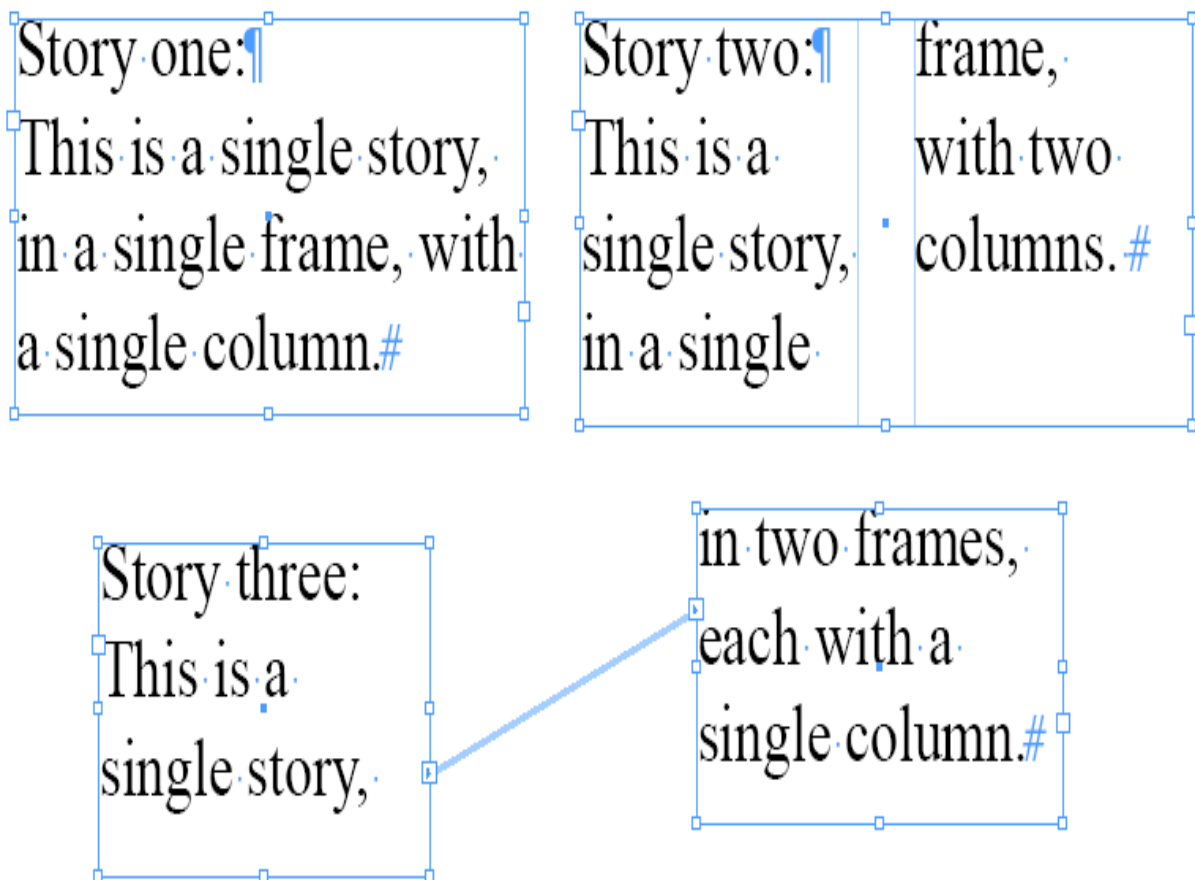
A document can contain private, feature-dependent stories, which are defined not to be user-accessible. Other features (like find/replace and spelling) ignore these stories. Programmatically, they can be accessed through the `IStoryList` interface, as with any other story.

Generally, stories are not directly created or deleted. The life-cycle of a story is controlled as a side effect of another operation. For example, creating a text frame using the Type tool causes a text story to be created, whereas linking two text frames together causes a story to be deleted. It is possible to control the lifetime of a story directly, though the story is still subject to the side effects of manipulating an associated text frame.

A story has a length, which can be accessed using `ITextModel::TotalLength`. A story has a minimum length of one character: a terminating `kTextChar_CR`, which is inserted into the story when the story is created. This character should not be deleted.

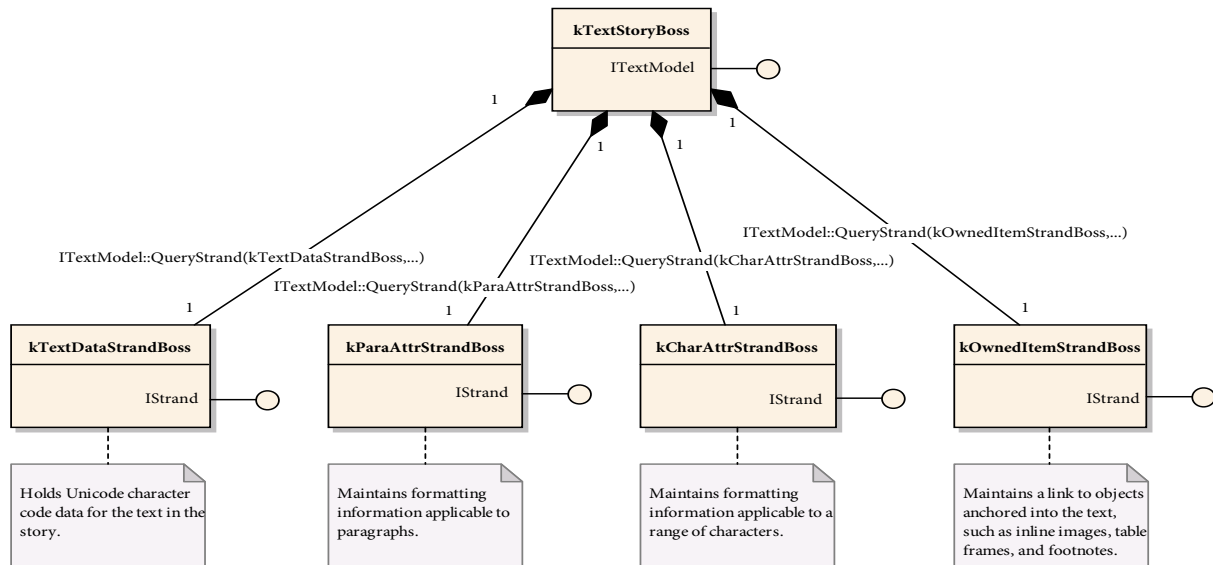
The textual content of a story is maintained independently from the visual containers in which it is contained; i.e., its layout on the page. The text content from a story can be contained within one frame, flow between columns within a frame, or even flow between multiple frames. For example, [Figure 111](#) shows three stories, each flowing through different sets of containers. The model used in maintaining the text content for each is the same. Determining where a particular glyph is rendered is the responsibility of the composer.

FIGURE 111 Three text stories flowing through text frames in a spread



Information related to the text in a story is maintained by a set of *strands*. Strands represent parallel sets of information, each of which holds a component of the story. The strands intertwine to give a complete description of the story. Strands are identified using the `IStrand` signature interface. Some common strands are shown in [Figure 112](#).

FIGURE 112 The text story aggregates the strands representing the content.



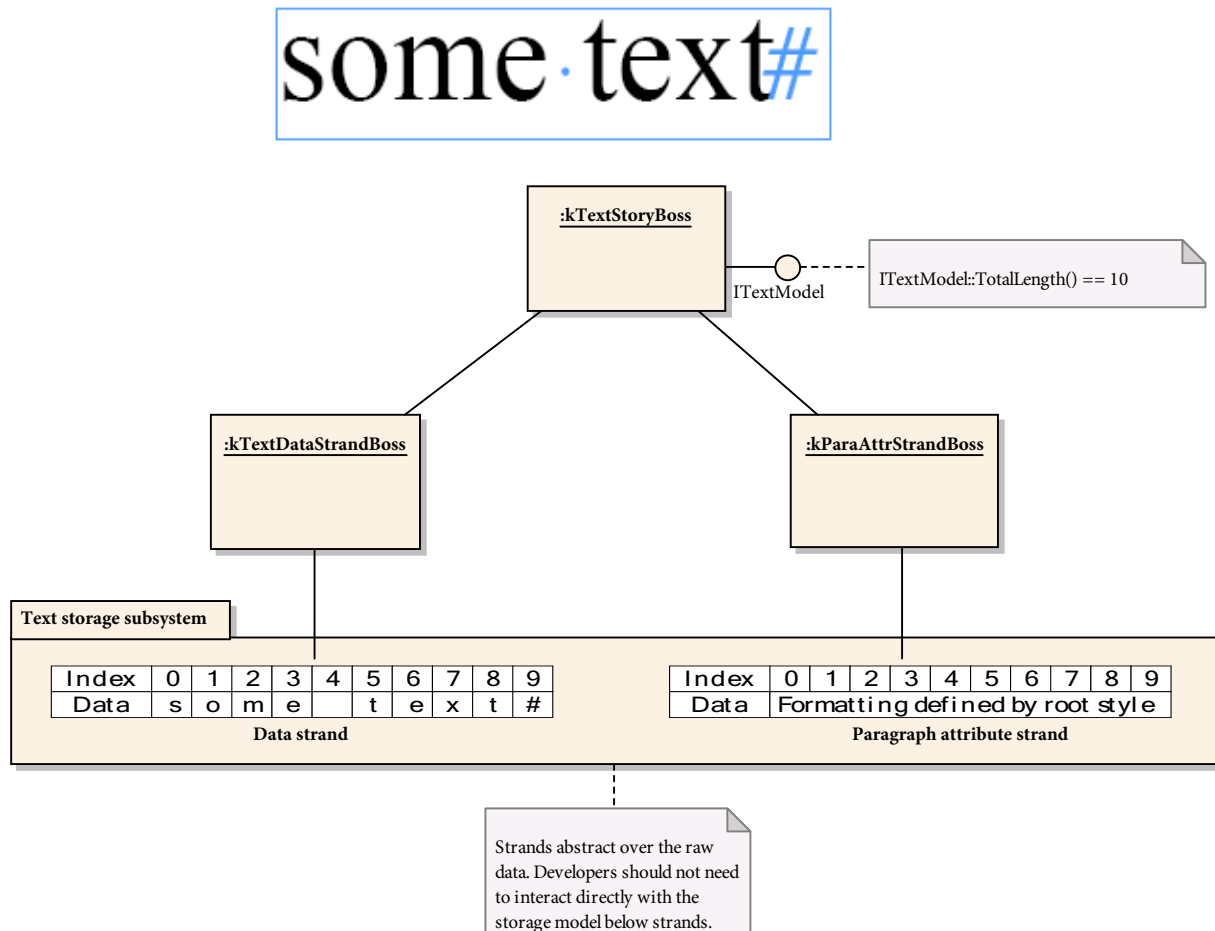
Strands

Strands (signature interface `IStrand`) model the linear behavior of text. Each strand represents a different aspect of textual information. A story can be thought of as the composition of the set of strands that contain information for a particular aspect of the story. [Figure 112](#) shows a story with associated text, paragraph-attribute, and character-attribute strands. It also shows the owned item strand used to maintain objects within the text, like inline graphics.

Each strand has the same virtual length, equal to the value returned by `ITextModel::TotalLength`. Each position within a strand refers to the same logical position within the other strands and the story as a whole. For example, position 10 on the `kTextDataStrandBoss` relates to a particular character—the character at position 10 within the `kCharAttrStrandBoss` refers to formatting information applicable to this character. Any modification of the text length is reflected in each strand.

[Figure 113](#) shows some text and how it might be represented on two strands. While the actual storage mechanism for the strands is of little interest, both strands have the same virtual length. A story (`kTextStoryBoss`) comprises a set of strands, each with the same length. The figure shows only the data (`kTextDataStrandBoss`) and paragraph-attribute (`kParaAttrStrandBoss`) strands.

FIGURE 113 A story and two of its associated strands



Formatting is defined in “[Text formatting](#)” on page 324.

Runs

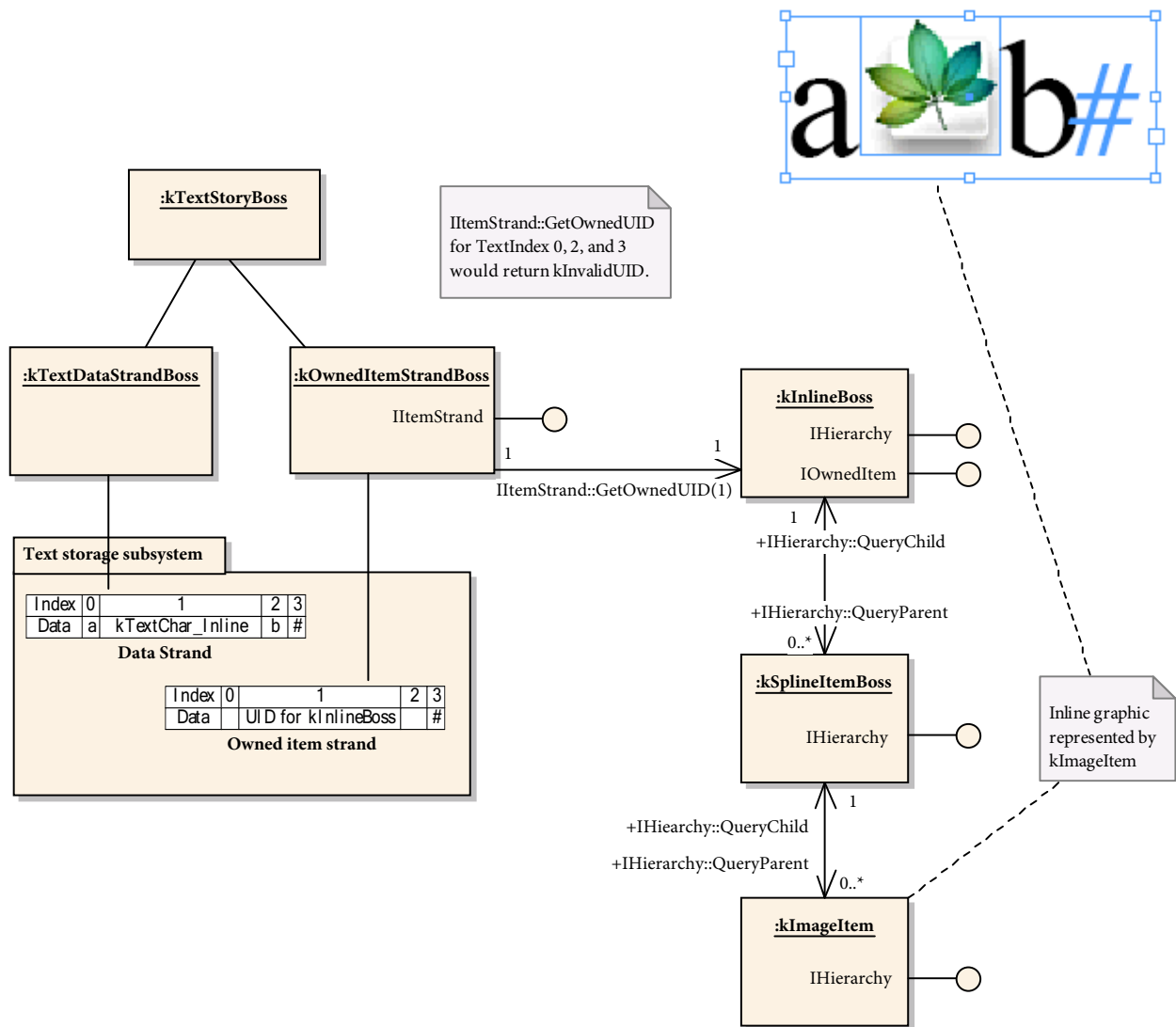
Strands are further divided into *runs*. A run represents something about the content of a particular strand. For the `kTextDataStrandBoss`, a run is a manageable-sized chunk of text data. For the `kParaAttrStrandBoss`, a run exists for each paragraph in the story. For the `kCharAttrStrandBoss`, a run represents a sequence of characters that share the same formatting information. The semantics of a run is defined by its strand.

Owned items

Owned items (signature interface `IOwnedItem`) exist to allow some object to be associated with a particular `TextIndex` position in the text strand. Generally, features anchor the owned item into the text by placing a special character into the `kTextDataStrandBoss`; however, there is no requirement for associating an owned item with a special character in the data strand. [Figure 114](#) shows an instance diagram associated with a story that contains an inline image.

The story has the character “a” followed by an inline image, then the character “b.” The owned item strand (kOwnedItemStrandBoss) maintains the UID of the inline object (kInlineBoss). The actual image (kImageItem—note the nonstandard name) is associated through the hierarchy (IHierarchy).

FIGURE 114 Instance diagram showing an owned item



Anchored-item positioning

The positioning of an inline object relative to its anchor position in the text is controlled through the **IAnchoredObjectData** interface. The default behavior is defined by the **IAnchoredObjectData** on the session and document-workspace boss classes. Object styles also can

define how an inline object is positioned (IAnchoredObjectData on kObjectStyleBoss). Specific inline objects can be modified (IAnchoredObjectData on kInlineBoss).

The placement of inline objects can be specified as any of the following:

- Within the text flow (with variable offset on the y axis).
- Above the line, aligned to the center, right, or left of the text or spline. A variable amount of space before and after the inline object can be specified.
- A custom position on the page, relative to the anchor point, text frame, page, or spline.

As the content that contains the anchor is manipulated (by either adding text that causes the anchor to flow out of the initial frame or manipulating the frames in which the text is contained), the position of the inline object is updated automatically.

Story threads

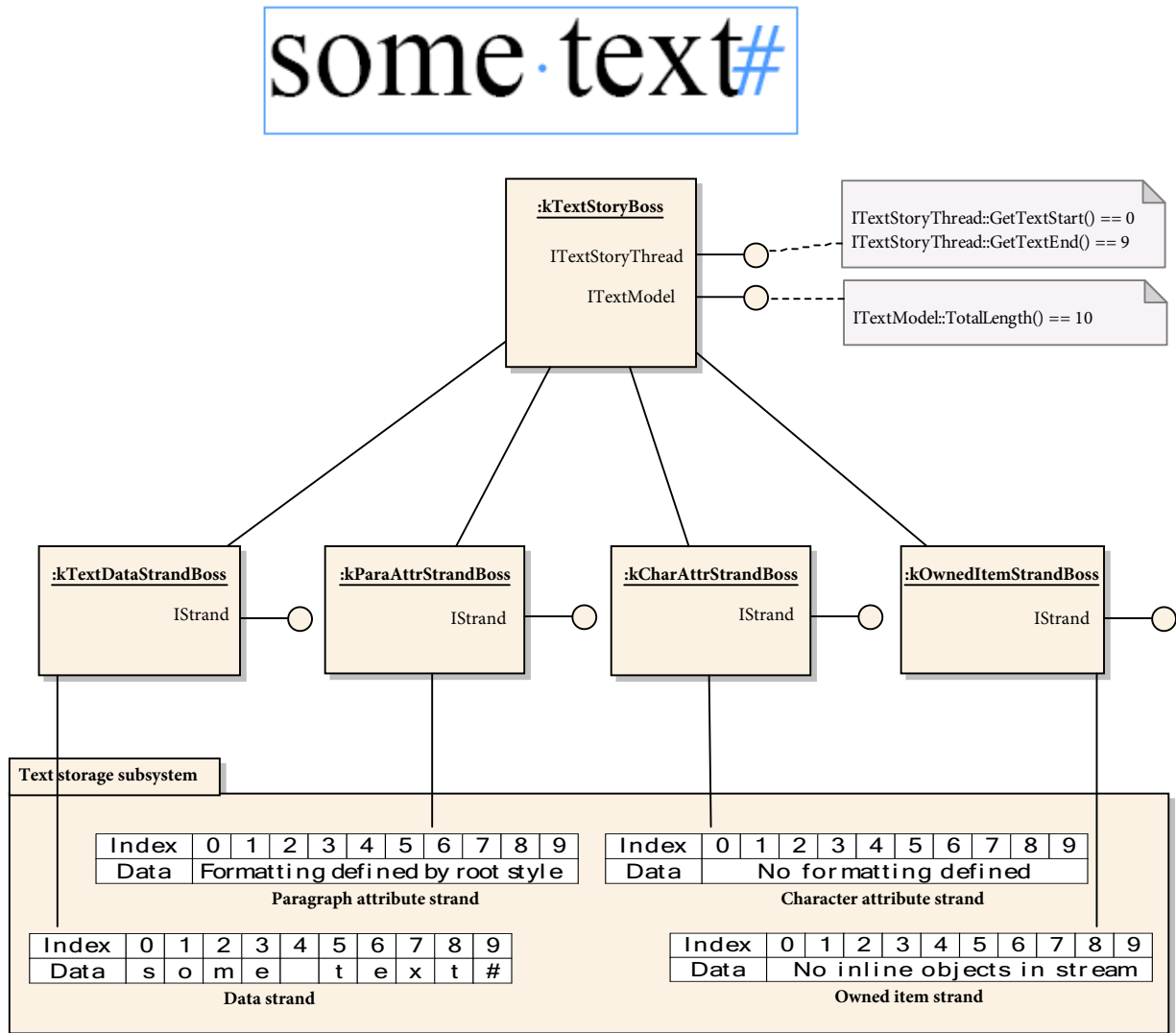
Strands model the linear nature of text; however, not all text within a story is linear. For example, an embedded table can have cells with textual content that flows independently from the main text in the story. Story threads (signature interface ITextStoryThread) represent these distinct flows of text.

Each story has at least one story thread, the primary story thread, which represents the main text of the story. Other text elements (like footnotes) contained within a story are anchored off the primary story thread using owned items, as described in [“Owned items” on page 318](#).

The interface that models story threads (ITextStoryThread) is maintained on the boss class related to the text it represents. For the primary story thread, the interface is found on the kTextStoryBoss. For footnotes, the interface is on kFootnoteReferenceBoss. The story thread maintains text indices that identify the range of text within the story that relates to the particular strands.

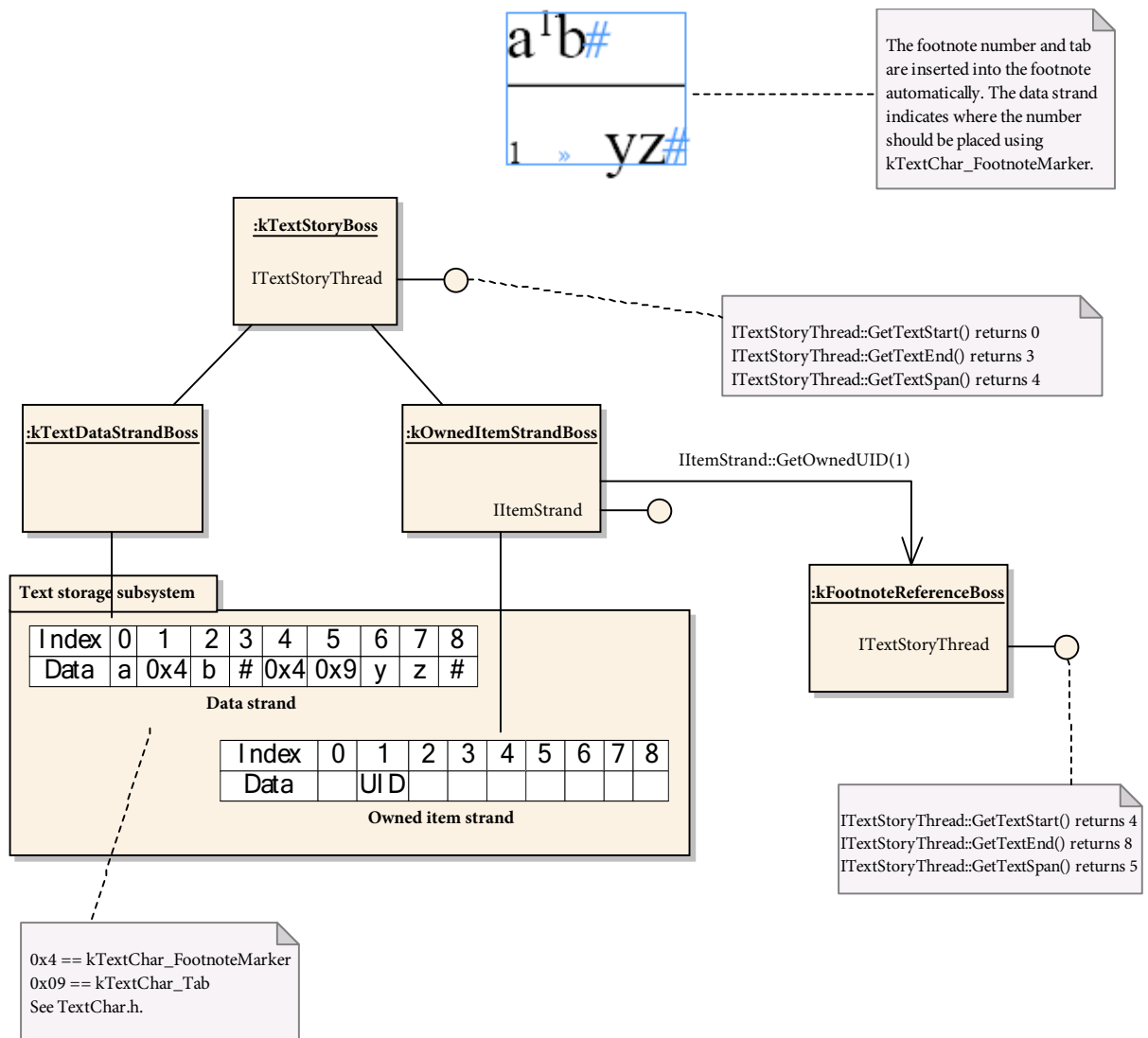
[Figure 115](#) shows a story with only text within the primary story thread (i.e., the story uses no features requiring other story threads). The story instance (kTextStoryBoss) has four associated strands. There is one story thread (ITextStoryThread) in this story.

FIGURE 115 Story with only primary story thread



The primary story thread always begins at TextIndex 0. Other features, like footnotes and tables, use story threads to maintain the feature text as a distinct entity. Figure 116 shows an instance diagram of a story with a footnote. In the figure, a text-story thread (ITextStoryThread) maintains a relationship with some part of the text in a story. In this example, the primary story thread (on kTextStoryBoss) ranges between TextIndex 0 and 3, and the footnote (kFootnoteReferenceBoss) ranges between TextIndex 4 and 8.

FIGURE 116 A story containing a footnote



Story-thread dictionaries and hierarchies

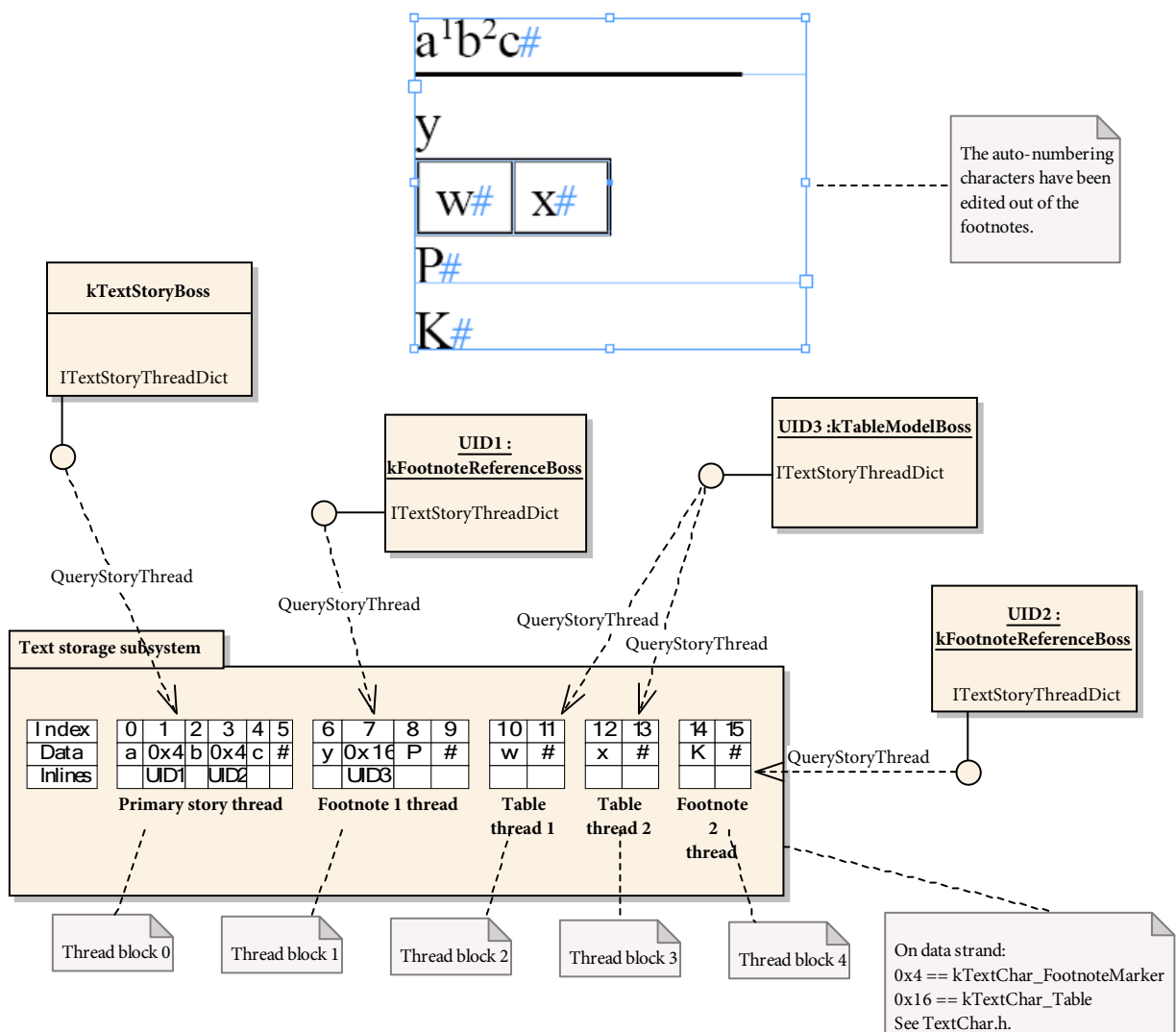
Each distinct instance of a text feature within a story has a distinct text-story thread (ITextStoryThread), including the main story text (the primary story thread). Text-story threads are associated with a particular TextIndex, known as the *anchor*, obtainable with ITextStoryThreadDict::GetAnchorTextRange. This does not apply to the primary story thread, which is the only thread that always returns an anchor position of zero. An anchor for a footnote appears to the users in the user interface as the footnote-reference character. The anchor for a table appears as the table itself.

A text-story thread can contain anchors for other text story threads, subject to some restrictions; for example, footnotes can contain tables but not other footnotes. A feature does not

need to associate the story thread with a particular TextIndex, in which case it is associated with the end of story marker for the primary text-story thread (these are unanchored threads).

A thread block is a contiguous text range (TextRange) that contains the contents for one text-story thread. If a text-story thread contains a set of anchors, the thread blocks associated with these anchors directly follow the thread block for this story thread. This is depicted in Figure 117. Note how the thread blocks for the table directly follows the thread block for the footnote into which it is anchored. In the figure, ITextStoryThreadDict manages the story threads for a particular use of a feature. There is one story thread for the primary story, one for each footnote, and two for the embedded table.

FIGURE 117 A story with two footnotes, one containing a two-cell table



The text-story thread dictionary (ITextStoryThreadDict) maintains the set of story threads associated with a particular use of a feature. In [Figure 117](#), each feature has one associated story thread, apart from the table. Each cell in the table has a distinct story thread. ITextStoryThreadDict is responsible for managing the set of threads in the table.

Text story threads have a hierarchical relationship (the root being the primary story thread). Individual features are responsible for managing a set of one or more story threads using the story-thread dictionary (ITextStoryThreadDict). In [Figure 117](#), kFootnoteReferenceBoss (UID1) manages one text-story thread, while kTableModelBoss (UID3) manages two story threads, one for each cell. The story maintains a dictionary hierarchy (ITextStoryThreadDictHier), which provides the ability to iterate across all objects that contain a dictionary associated with the story.

Text formatting

This section describes how the style information that controls the look of text is maintained within the application.

Text attributes

The fundamental component for formatting text is the text attribute (signature interface IAttrReport). This is a lightweight, non-persistent set of boss objects, each of which describes one text property; for example, the color or point size of text. Attributes are interpreted by the text-composition subsystem, to define how the text appears when composed.

Attributes target either arbitrary ranges of characters (like the color or point size of a set of characters) or a paragraph (like applying a drop cap or setting paragraph alignment).

Attributes are managed in an AttributeBossList list, a persistent container class. Consider an AttributeBossList list to be a hash table of attributes, the key being the ClassID. One implication of this is there can be only one instance of any particular attribute within an AttributeBossList list (for example, no conflicting text-color attribute within an AttributeBossList).

Attributes can be applied directly (within an AttributeBossList list) to the appropriate paragraph or character-attribute strand, or they can be applied to a text style. An example of applying the attribute directly to the strand would be italicizing text directly using the text editor. Such changes are local to the text being formatted and known as local overrides to the current style.

An attribute boss class that supports the IAttrImportExport interface can participate in the import and export of InDesign tagged text files.

Default attributes

The application provides a set of default attributes. These attributes are maintained within an AttributeBossList on both the session and document workspace. Default attributes define a set of overrides that are applied to any new stories created. These AttributeBossList lists reflect the state of the Character and Paragraph panels when no documents are open (session workspace) or new stories are created (document workspace). When a new document is created, the document workspace inherits the value of the default attributes from the session. The default

attributes can be updated directly through the Paragraph and Character panels or by selecting styles in the styles panels; the defaults are updated to match the style.

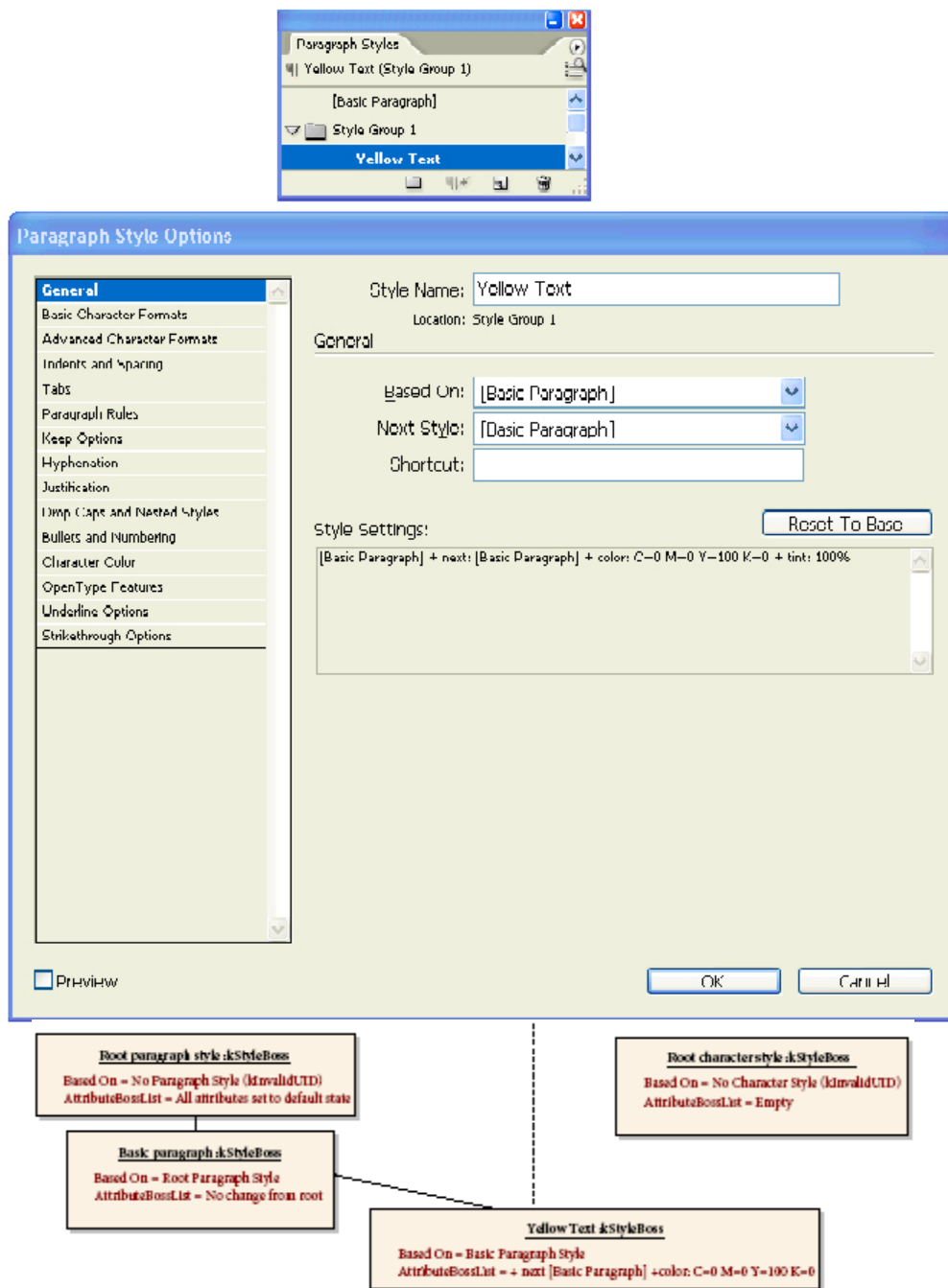
Text styles

A text style (signature interface `IStyleInfo`) provides a mechanism to name and persist a particular set of text attributes with particular values. The application supports two kinds of styles for text, paragraph styles and character styles. Each style has an `AttributeBossList` list that maintains the set of attributes that apply to that style. Access to the attributes in a style is achieved through the `ITextAttributes` wrapper interface. Character styles are associated with character attributes; however, paragraph styles can be associated with both paragraph and character attributes. Paragraph styles are applied to whole paragraphs; character styles can be applied to arbitrary ranges of text.

All text must be associated with both a paragraph style and character style. To support this, the application defines two default styles: the root character style and root paragraph style (known in the application user interface as [No Paragraph Style]). The root paragraph style contains a complete set of paragraph-based and character-based attributes. This defines the default look of text with no further formatting applied. The root character style is empty; it exists purely to provide a root for character styles.

Styles form a hierarchy rooted at the root style. Each style (except the root style) is based on a style. The `AttributeBossList` list for a particular style record only the differences from the style on which it is based; that is, the set of attributes the particular style overrides. This is shown in [Figure 118](#). In the figure, the `kStyleBoss` for the root paragraph style defines all attributes with a default value. The `kStyleBoss` for the new style (Yellow Text) contains only the attributes that differ from the root style. The root character style contains no attributes; it exists to provide a root to the character-style hierarchy.

FIGURE 118 Paragraph-style example



The application provides two basic styles, for character attributes and paragraph attributes. These are the default styles applied to new stories (assuming no other style is selected in a styles panel). The basic styles cannot be deleted, but you can modify them with plug-ins. Initially, the basic styles are based on the root styles; however, the parent styles can be changed.

Users can create, edit and delete folders, called Groups, in the Character, Paragraph, and Object Styles palettes. Style group is a collection of styles or groups. The user also can nest groups inside groups and drag styles within the palette to edit the contents of a group. Styles do not need to be inside a group and can exist at the root level of the palette. The group concept also is available in the object style palette.

Character and paragraph styles are not required to have unique names across groups; however, sibling styles and groups must have unique names within a parent (i.e., at the same level in the hierarchy). Style names are case-sensitive, so the user can have both “heading” and “Heading” in the same folder. A group and a style cannot have the same name. Since style names are not unique, they are displayed in the user interface as full paths.

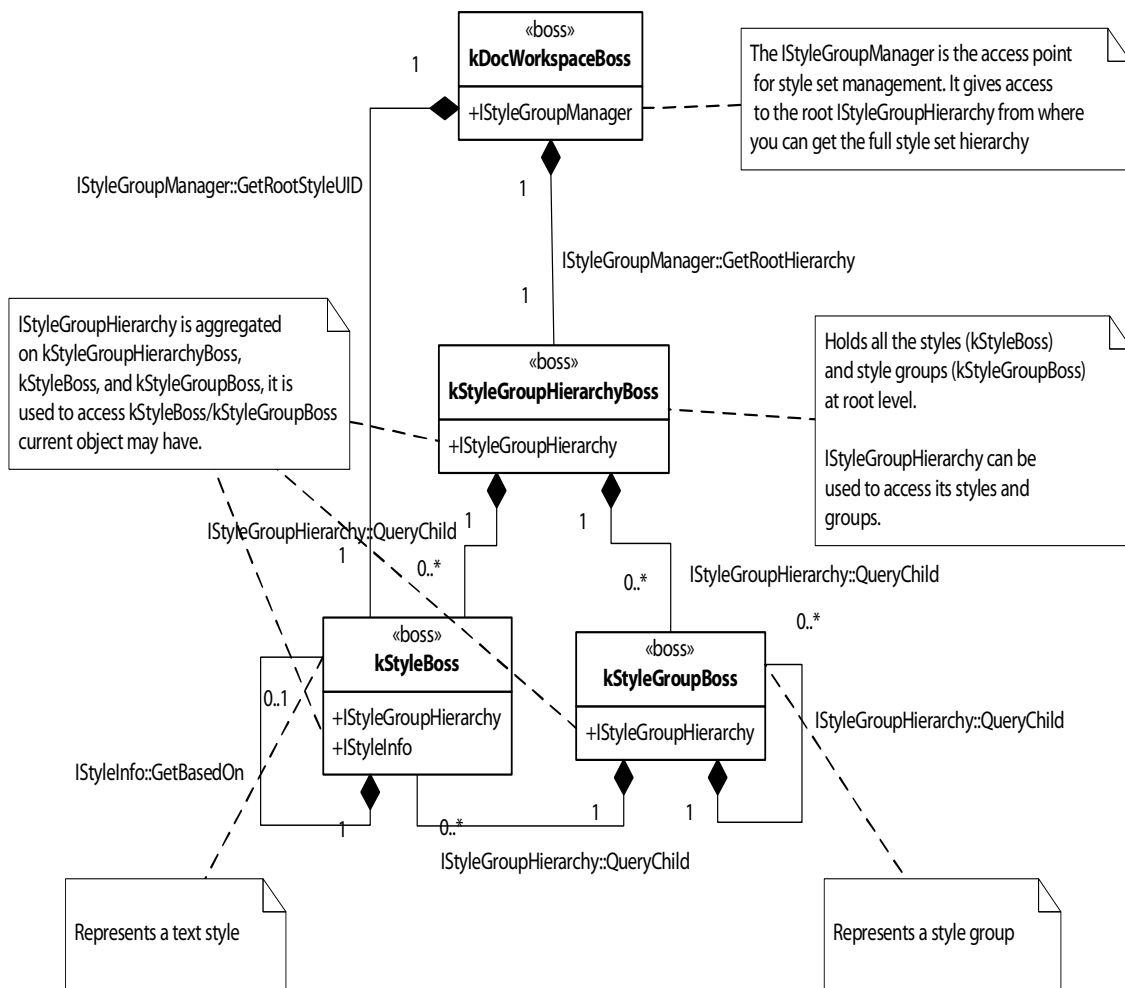
The alphabetical sort is an action applied to the entire list of styles. Users can rearrange the styles and groups arbitrarily at any time; to view the list alphabetically, they can resort the list with the Sort By Name command. Styles are intermixed with groups for sorting. Sorting is undo-able. The sorting is language specific, based on the user-interface language. Reserved styles like [Basic Paragraph] or [Basic Graphics Frame] are not reordered by this command.

Styles are accessible through the style group manager (signature interface `IStyleGroupManager`) on the document (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`) and session (`kWorkspaceBoss`) workspace boss classes. When a document is created, its style group manager inherits the existing set of styles from the session workspace. There are multiple style group managers supported by the workspaces, each identified by a distinct interface identifier; for example, `IID_IPARASTYLEGROUPMANAGER` and `IID_ICHARSTYLEGROUPMANAGER`. `IStyleGroupManager` has one automatically created object of type `IStyleGroupHierarchy` called “Root Hierarchy,” represented by the `kStyleGroupHierarchyBoss`. `IStyleGroupManager` provides access to `kStyleGroupHierarchyBoss` through its `GetRootHierarchy()` method.

This Root Hierarchy is created on the first call to the `GetRootHierarchy` method. The `kStyleGroupHierarchyBoss` holds all the styles (`kStyleBoss`) and style groups (`kStyleGroupBoss`) at root level. The key interface on the `kStyleGroupHierarchyBoss` is `IStyleGroupHierarchy`, which stores the persistent UID-based style tree hierarchy so you can query information like parent/child node information. All children of this root hierarchy must support the `IStyleGroupHierarchy` interface; therefore, `IStyleGroupHierarchy` also is aggregated on the `kStyleBoss` and `kStyleGroupBoss`, so access to the style hierarchy also is available if you have access to the UID of any style or style group in the hierarchy. With `IStyleGroupHierarchy`, you gain access to the style-tree hierarchy the user sees in the style panel. `IStyleGroupHierarchy` has a method to traverse the style hierarchy, which should be used to iterate through all styles. `IStyleGroupManager` also provides two overloaded `FindByName()` methods that return the UID of a style or style group.

[Figure 119](#) shows how to navigate the styles, given a particular workspace. The style group manager (`IStyleGroupManager` on document and session workspaces) provides access to all paragraph and character styles (`kStyleBoss`) through the `GetRootHierarchy()` method, which returns an `IStyleGroupHierarchy` on the `kStyleGroupHierarchyBoss`. `kStyleGroupHierarchyBoss` holds all the styles (`kStyleBoss`) and style groups (`kStyleGroupBoss`) at root level. Styles can be iterated over using `IStyleGroupHierarchy::GetDescendents` or accessed by name using `IStyleGroupManager::FindByName`. Given a particular style, the style it is based on can be accessed using `IStyleInfo::GetBasedOn`.

FIGURE 119 Navigating styles in a document



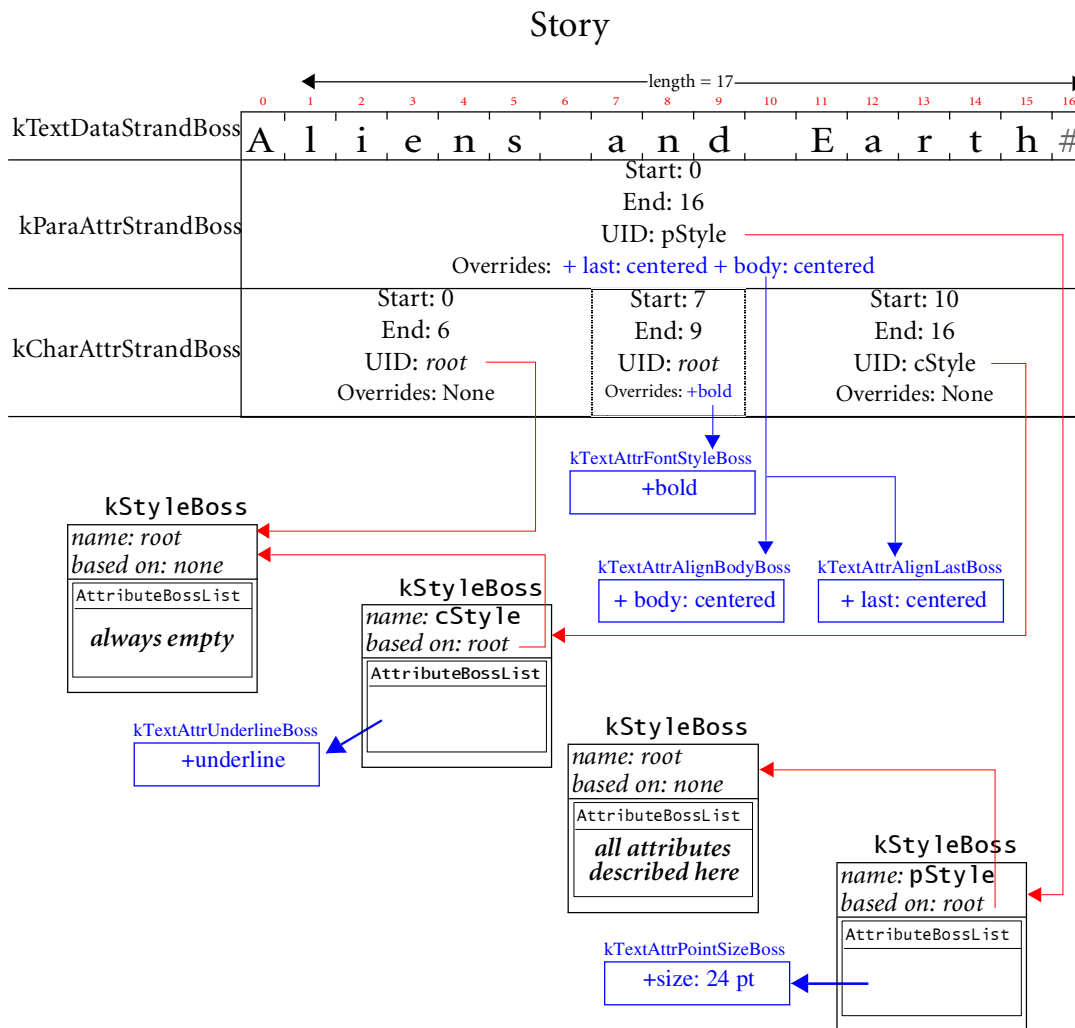
Sorting the style hierarchy is done through the `IStyleGroupHierarchy::Sort()` method, when it is invoked, it sorts its children and calls its children's `Sort` method. The call to `Sort()` on the root hierarchy recursively sorts all styles. This method takes a flag to indicate whether to sort in descending/ascending order, all child or immediate child, etc.

Text formatting and stories

All text has an associated character- and paragraph-attribute style. This style is either the root style (which defines a default value for the complete set of attributes used in composition) or a style that records differences from the root style. Styles form a hierarchy in which the values of attributes in child nodes override those in parent nodes. As well as having the character and paragraph styles defined on the attribute strands, local overrides can be applied. This occurs when a formatting change is made without modifying a style; for example, selecting a word and making it bold.

Attributes describe one of the text's appearance and are used by the composition engine when rendering the associated glyphs. IComposeScanner (on the kTextStoryBoss) provides APIs that allow the value of any attribute to be deduced for any TextIndex. Figure 120 shows an example of how styles and local attribute overrides combine to describe the exact look of text. The paragraph-attribute strand specifies the text will use the custom style pStyle and two local overrides. The overrides specify the body and last line of the paragraph are to be centered. The character-attribute strand specifies the root style for the word “Aliens,” a local +bold override for the word “and,” and the word “Earth” to use the custom style cStyle.

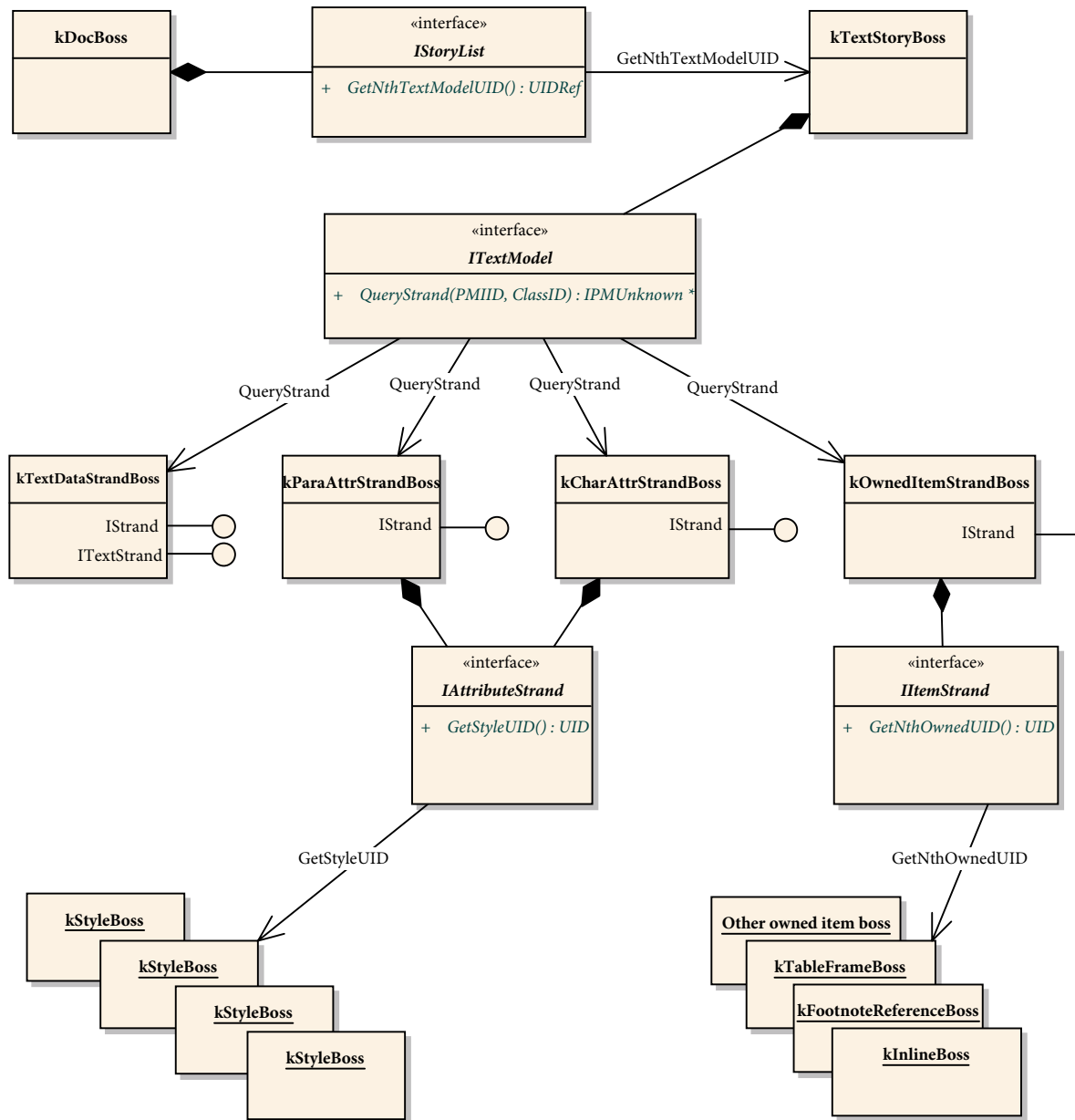
FIGURE 120 Formatting and strands



Class associations

Figure 121 shows the major classes and associations for text content.

FIGURE 121 Major classes and associations for text content



Text presentation

This section describes the presentation model responsible for managing the final look of text. The layout factors (such as the types of containers with which text can be associated) are described before the representation of the rendered text (the wax) is presented.

The text-presentation model represents both the information required to place a set of glyphs on a spread and the management of those glyphs within the application. In [Figure 109](#), this is represented by the text layout and wax components. Text layout is concerned with the containers for text and the attributes of a container that can affect how text is placed in respect to that container. The wax models the actual glyphs rendered into the layout.

Text layout

Text layout defines the shape and form of the visual containers in which text is composed and displayed. The textual content is maintained in the text model of the story associated with the layout. This content is divided into one or more story threads, each representing an independent flow of text. See [“Story threads” on page 320](#).

In text composition, text flows from the story thread into its associated visual containers to create wax that fits the layout. Text layout, in turn, displays the wax. When the layout is updated, text is recomposed to reflect the change.

Text frame

The text frame is the fundamental container used to place and display text. Text frames have properties, like the number of columns, column width, gutter width, and text inset, that control where text flows. A text frame is represented by several associated boss classes.

[Figure 122](#) shows a text frame containing two columns, with one line of text displayed in each column. [Figure 123](#) shows how this instance of a text frame is represented internally.

FIGURE 122 *Text frame*

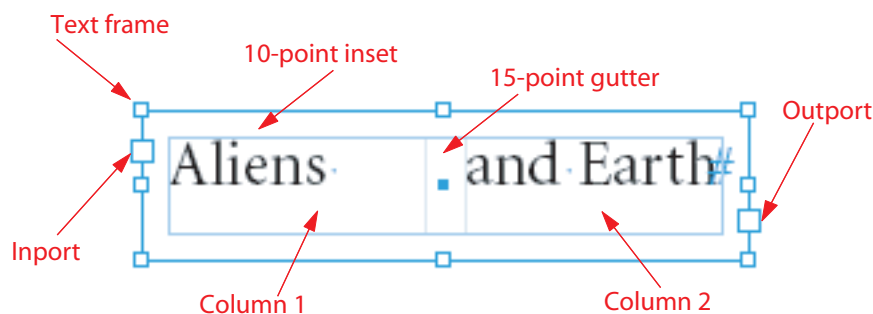
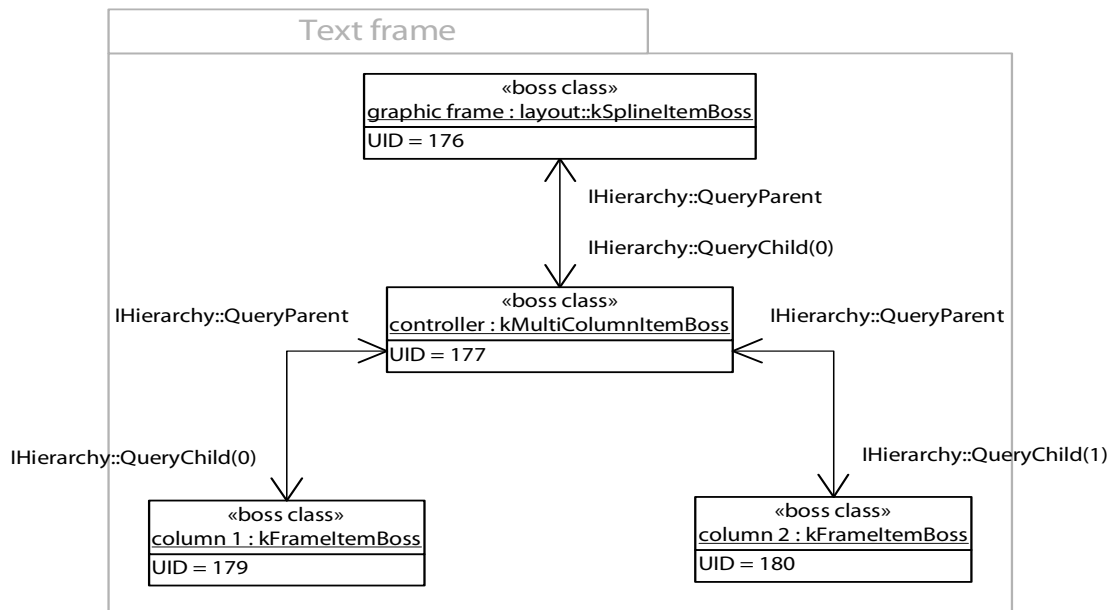
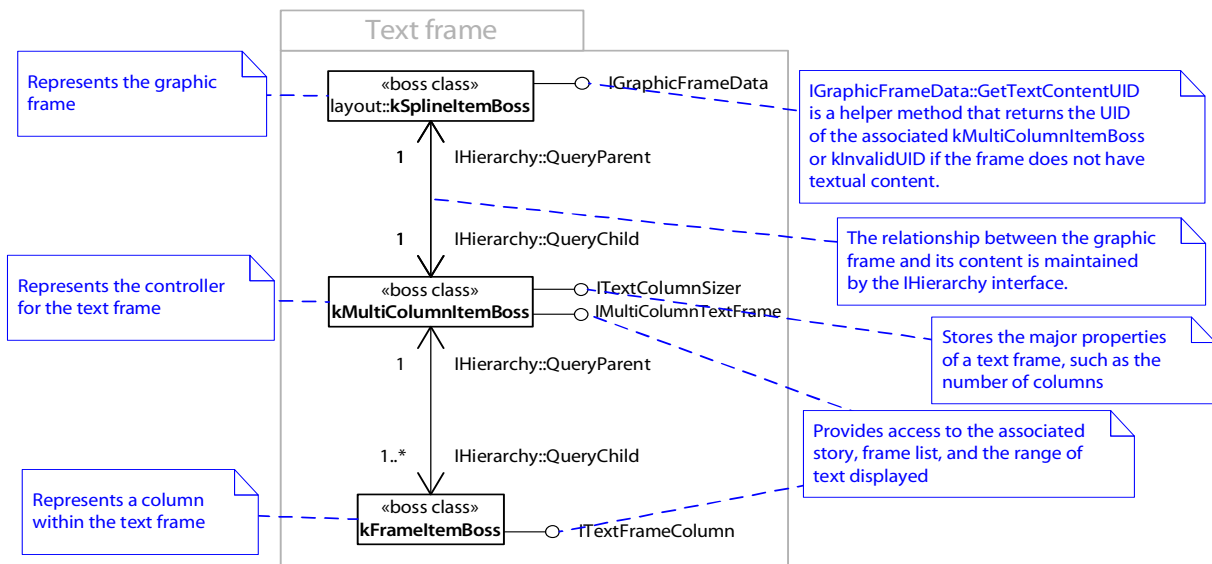


FIGURE 123 Instance diagram of text frame



As shown in [Figure 124](#), a text frame consists of a graphic frame (`kSplineItemBoss`) containing one multicolumn item (`kMultiColumnItemBoss`). The multicolumn item (`kMultiColumnItemBoss`) is the controller for the text frame and contains one or more columns (`kFrameItemBoss`). The `ITextColumnSizer` interface stores the major properties of the text frame, such as the number of columns. `IMultiColumnTextFrame` provides access to the associated story, frame list, and the range of text displayed.

FIGURE 124 Structure of a text frame



The relationship between the graphic frame (`kSplineItemBoss`) and its content is maintained by the `IHierarchy` interface. Use `IHierarchy::QueryChild` to navigate from the graphic frame to its associated multicolumn item, then onto individual columns. Conversely, use `IHierarchy::QueryParent` to navigate up from a column to the multicolumn item and on up to the graphic frame.

Frame list

A story (`kTextStoryBoss`) associates the text frames that display its content through the frame list (`kFrameListBoss`). Conversely, a text frame associates the story whose text it displays through the frame list. [Figure 125](#) and [Figure 126](#) shows the story and frame list objects for the example introduced in [Figure 122](#) and [Figure 123](#). [Figure 127](#) shows the general structure of the frame list (`IFrameList`) for a story.

FIGURE 125 Frame list

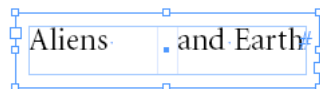


FIGURE 126 Instance diagram of frame list

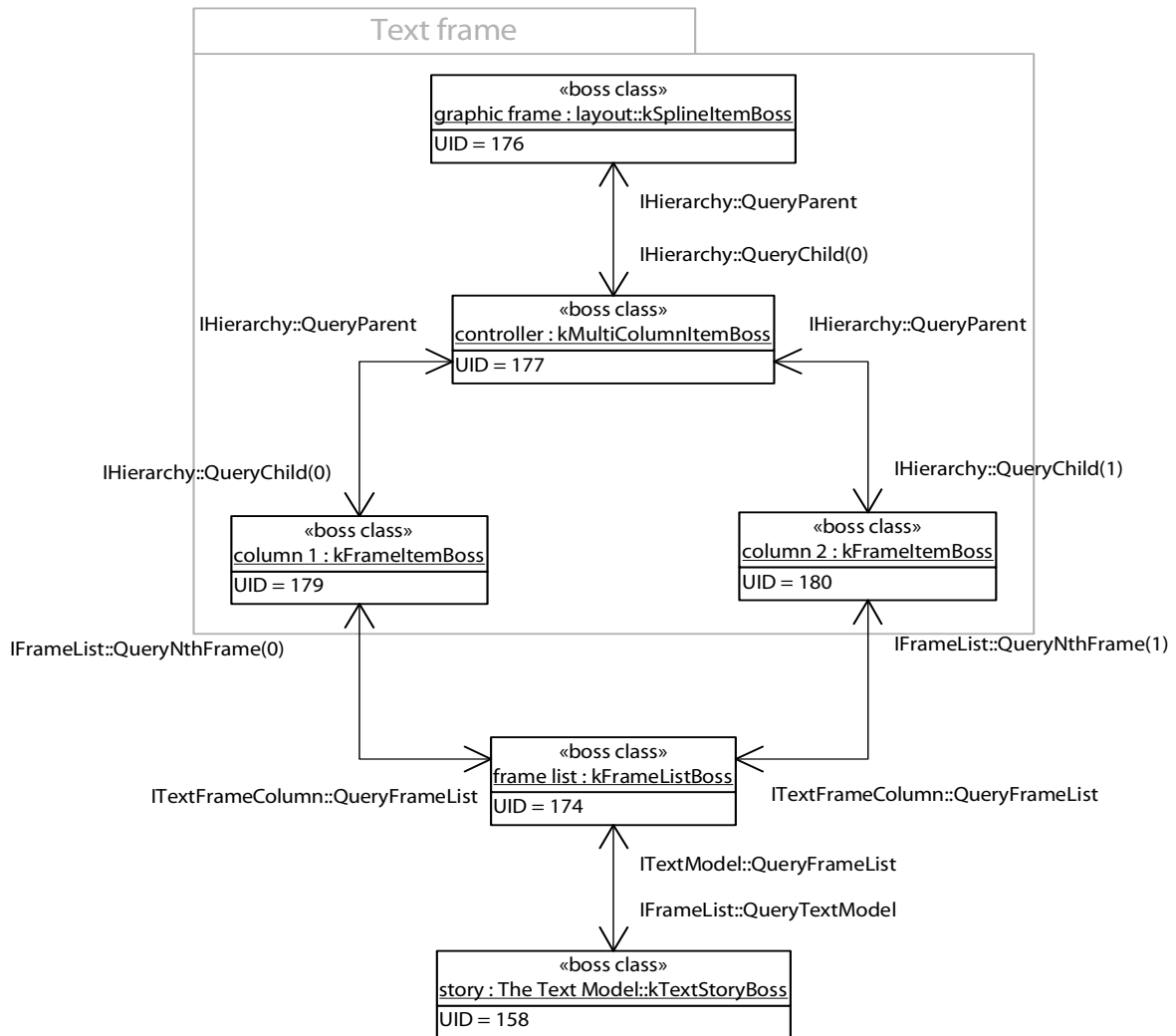
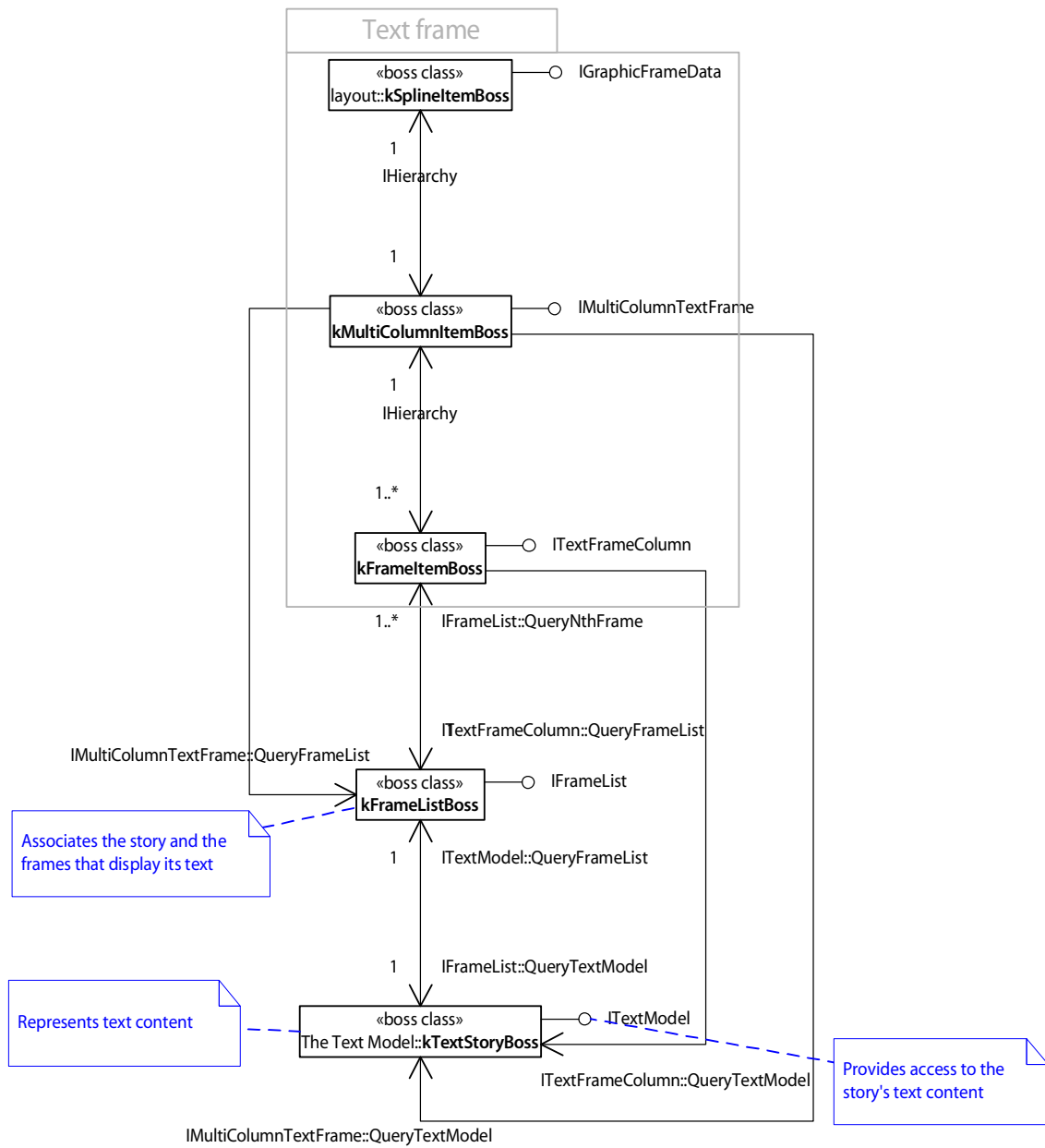


FIGURE 127 Structure of the frame list (IFrameList) for a story



Threading and text frames

The text in a frame can be independent of other frames, or it can flow between threaded frames. Threading of text is the process of connecting the flow of text between frames. Do not confuse threading text between frames with text-story threads. The connections can be visualized by selecting **View > Show Text Threads**, as shown in [Figure 130](#). Threaded frames share a common underlying story (kTextStoryBoss) and can be on the same spread or different spreads in the same document.

[Figure 128](#) shows two unthreaded text frames. Because each text frame is associated with a distinct story, editing the text in one of the frames does not affect the text in the other frame (see [Figure 129](#)).

FIGURE 128 *Unthreaded text frames*

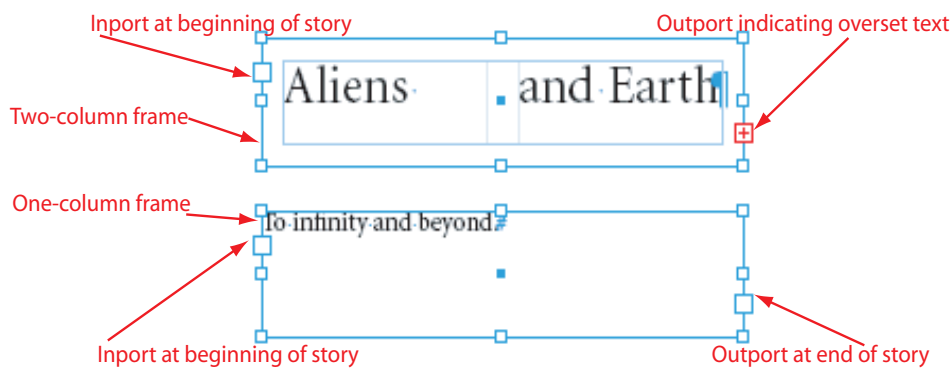
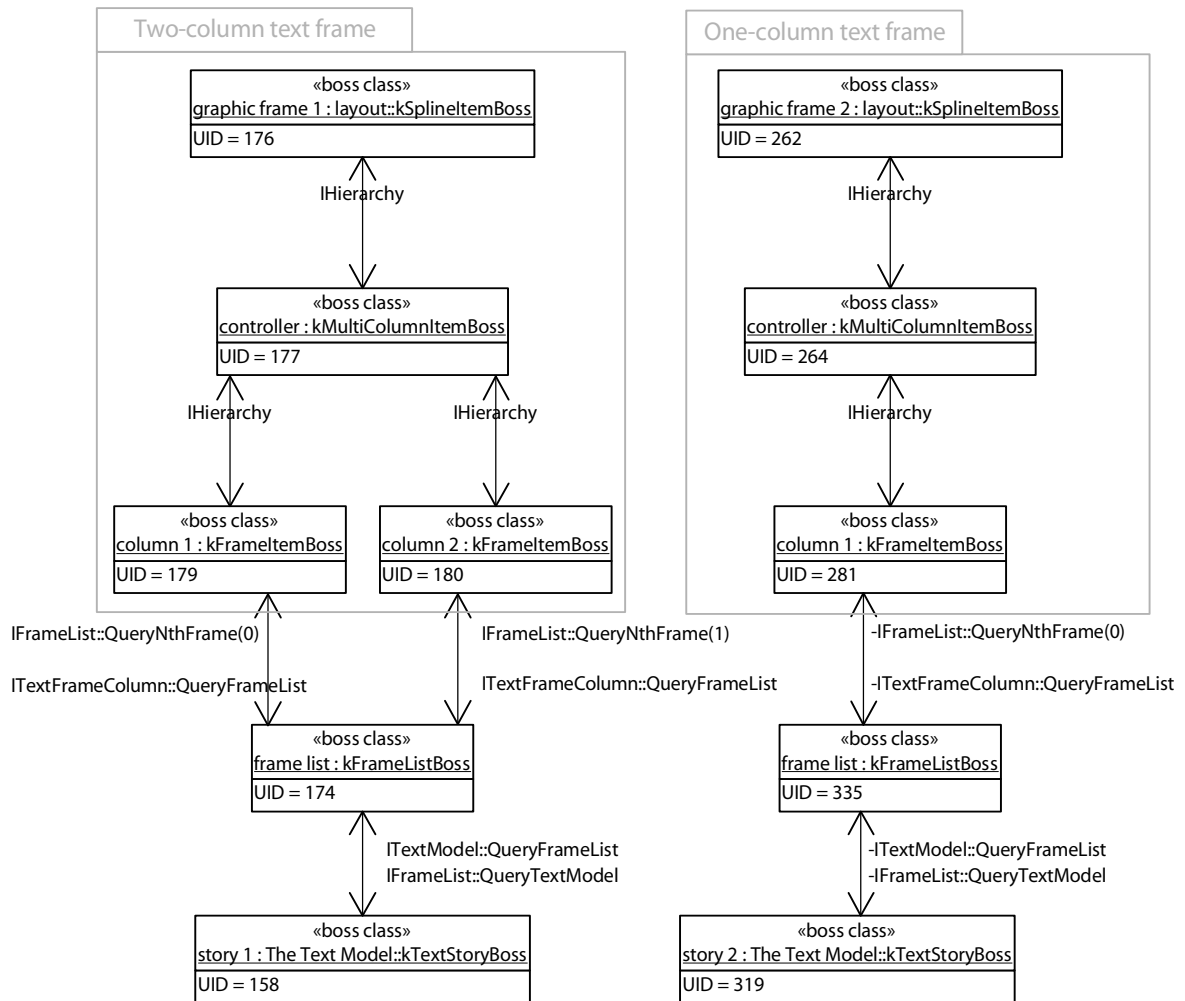


FIGURE 129 Instance diagram of unthreaded text frames



When the text frames that display a story cannot display all the text, the unseen text is called “overset text.” A red plus sign (+) on the output of the two-column frame indicates the story has overset text.

If the user clicks the output of the two-column frame with the Selection tool and then clicks the input of the one-column frame, the frames become threaded. In [Figure 130](#), the text from the two-column frame that was overset now flows through the one-column frame. During this process, the text from the story underlying the one-column frame is appended to the story underlying the two-column frame. The frame list (`kFrameListBoss`) and story (`kTextStoryBoss`) underlying the one-column frame are deleted. Once threaded, the two frames share the same underlying story (see [Figure 131](#)).

FIGURE 130 Threaded text frames

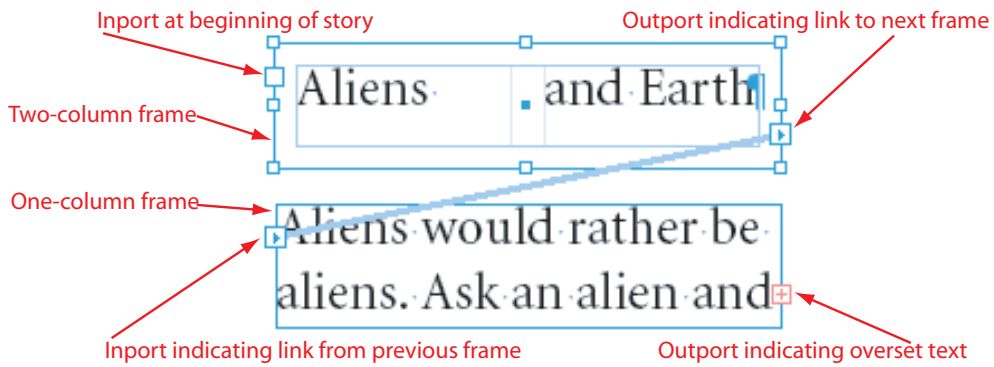
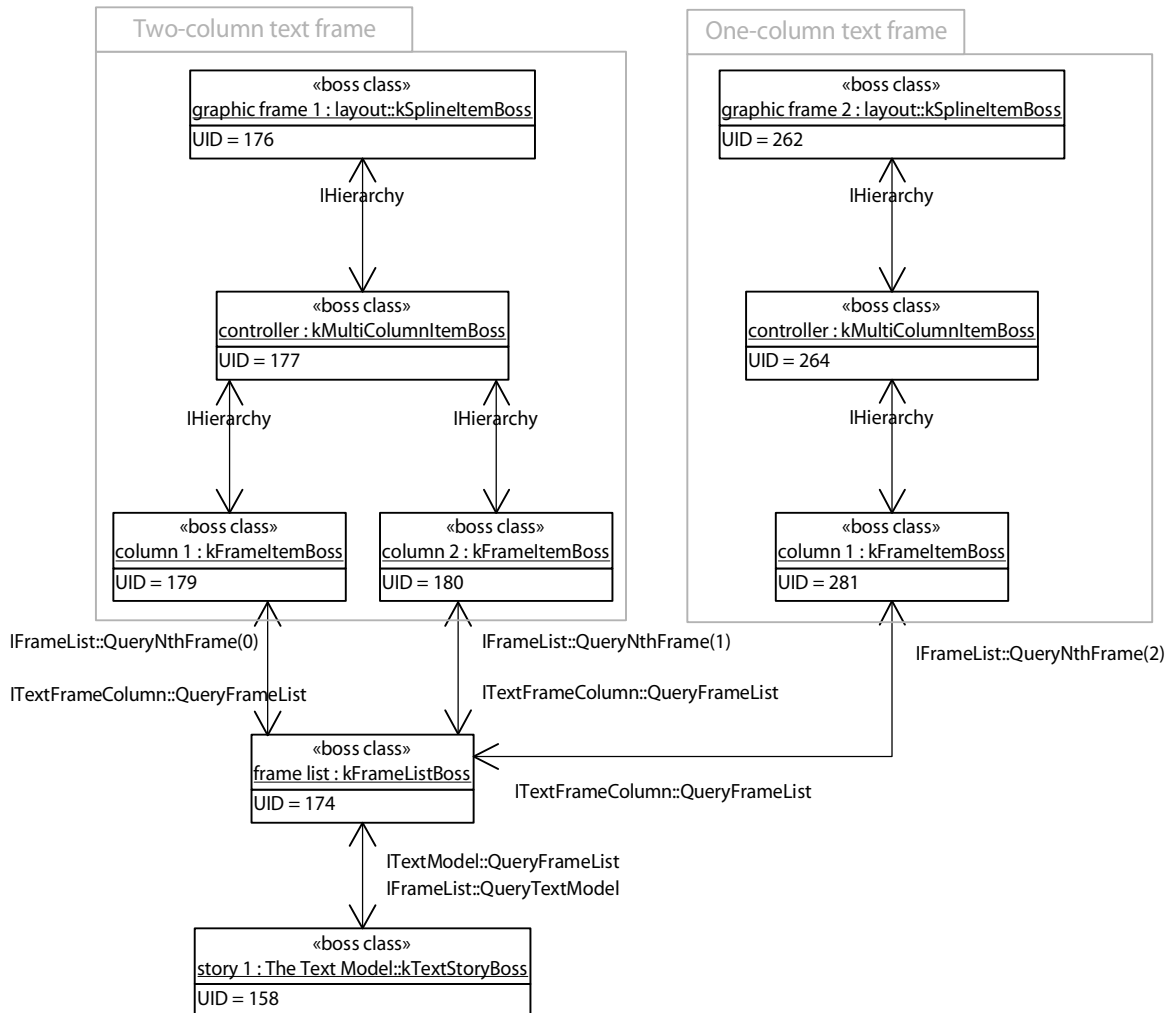


FIGURE 131 Instance diagram of threaded text frames



Parcels

A flow of text content within a story is a story thread, is represented by a boss class with an `ITextStoryThread` interface. A parcel is a visual container into which the text of a story thread is flowed for layout and display. A parcel is represented by a boss class with an `IParcel` interface.

The text of a story thread (`ITextStoryThread`) can be composed into a list of parcels (`IParcel`) in a parcel list (`IParcelList`).

Examples of application-provided parcels are as follows:

- Text frame item (`kFrameItemBoss`)
- Table cell parcel (`kTableCellParcelBoss`)
- Footnote parcel (`kFootnoteParcelBoss`)

[Figure 132](#) shows how text frames support story threads and parcels. The text in the primary story thread is displayed through parcels given by the parcel list on the frame list. These parcels are the frame items of the text frames that display the story.

FIGURE 132 Structure of the parcel implementation for text frames

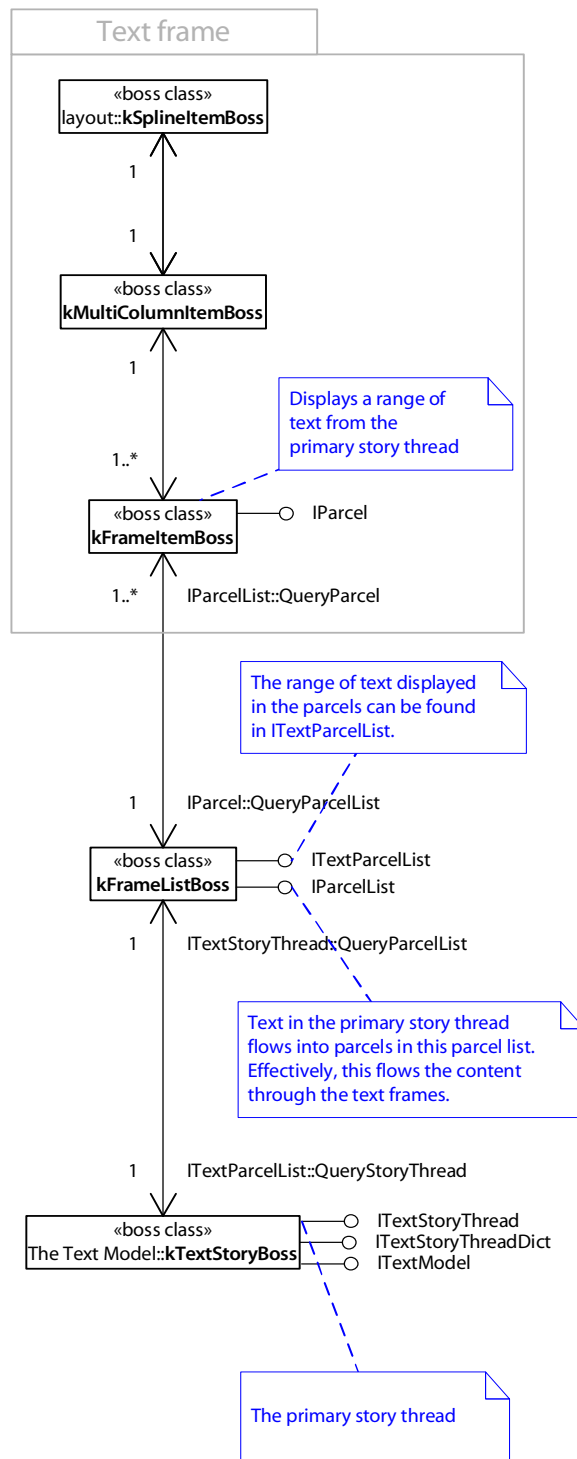
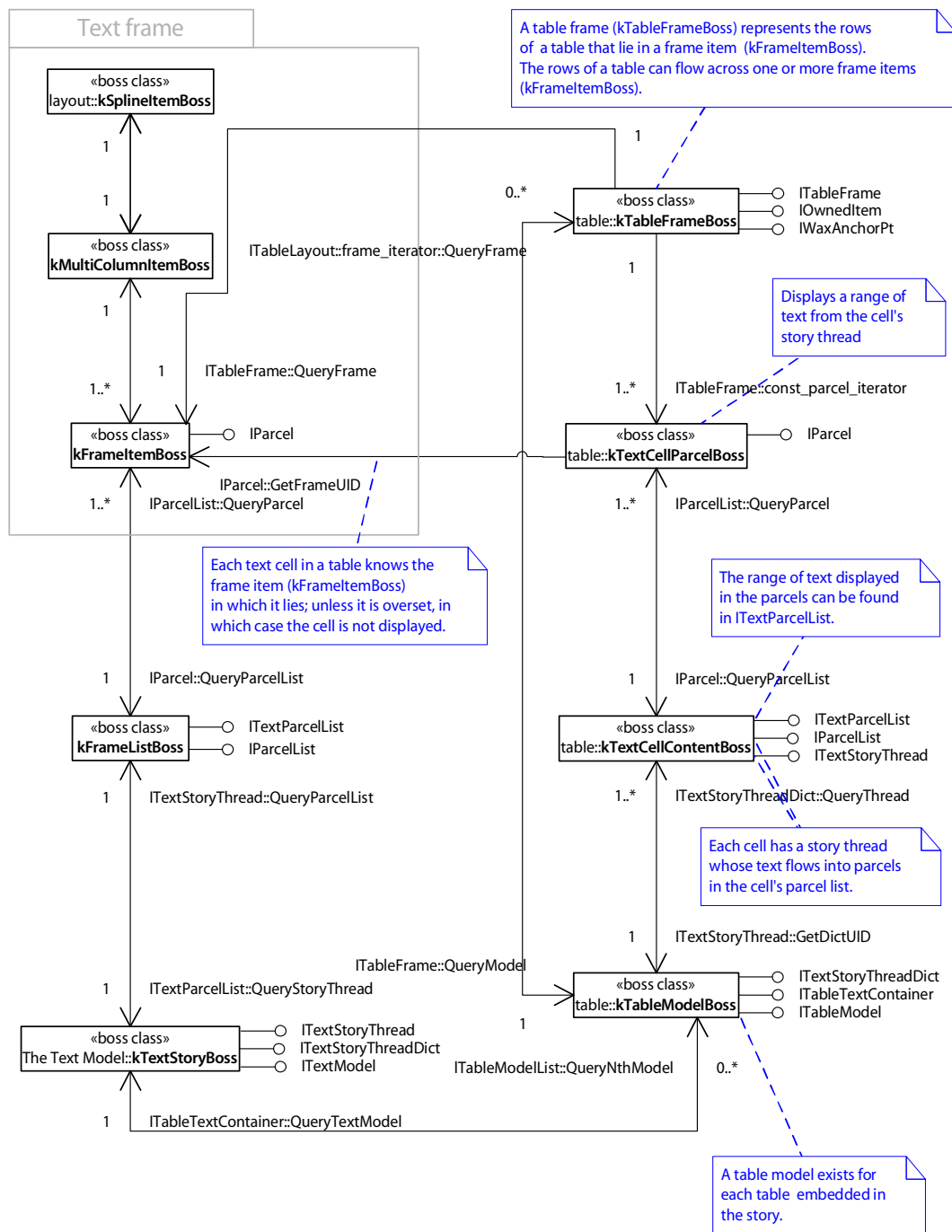


Figure 133 shows how tables support story threads and parcels. The text for the story thread of a table cell (`kTextCellContentBoss`) is displayed through the parcels given by its parcel list. These parcels are text cell parcels (`kTextCellParcelBoss`). For more information, see the “Tables” chapter.

FIGURE 133 Structure of the parcel implementation for tables



Span

Each object that displays text is associated with a story thread. After composition, the object stores the index (`TextIndex`) into the text model of the first character it displays and the total number of characters it shows. This text range is the *span*. The span is available on several interfaces (see [Table 88](#) and [Table 89](#)). [Table 88](#) lists the APIs that indicate the range of text displayed. [Table 89](#) lists the APIs that find the parcel or frame displaying a specific `TextIndex`.

NOTE: The ranges returned from these APIs are accurate only if the text in the object is fully composed. Before relying on these methods, you must check for damage and for the object to recompose, if necessary.

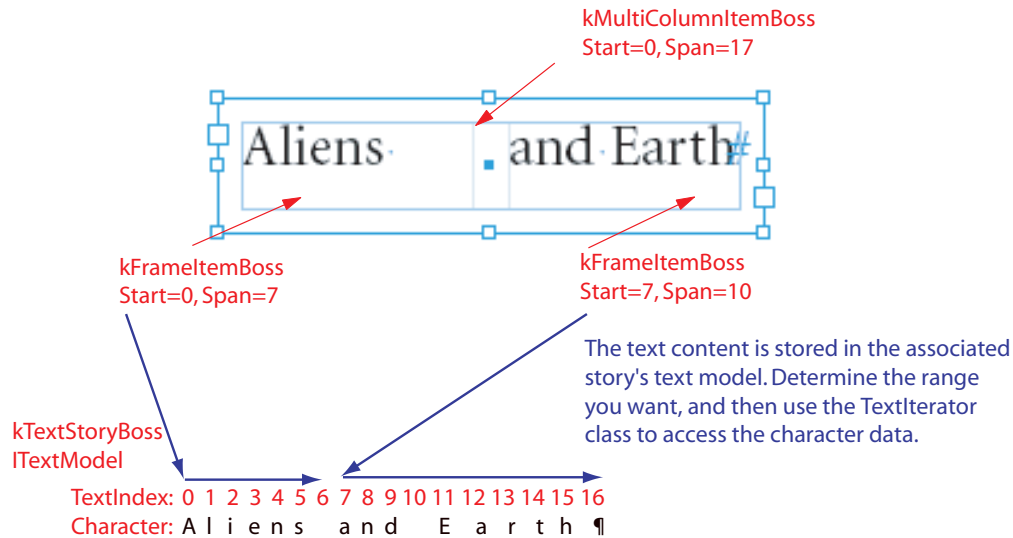
TABLE 88 APIs that indicate the range of text displayed

API	Description
<code>IFrameList</code>	Gives the range of text displayed by each frame item (<code>kFrameItemBoss</code>).
<code>ITextFrameColumn</code>	Gives the range of text displayed by the frame item (<code>kFrameItemBoss</code>).
<code>IMultiColumnTextFrame</code>	Gives the range of text displayed by the multicolumn item (<code>kMultiColumnItemBoss</code>).
<code>ITextParcelList</code>	Gives the range of text displayed by a parcel. All objects that display composed text are a kind of parcel (<code>IParcel</code>).

TABLE 89 APIs that find the parcel or frame displaying a specific `TextIndex`

API	Description
<code>IFrameList::QueryFrameContaining</code>	Use this method to find the frame item (<code>kFrameItemBoss</code>) that displays the character at a specific index (<code>TextIndex</code>) in the text model.
<code>ITextModel::QueryTextParcelList</code>	Call this to find the text parcel list associated with a given <code>TextIndex</code> . After you have the <code>ITextParcelList</code> , use <code>ITextParcelList::GetParcelContaining</code> , then <code>IParcelList::QueryParcel</code> . All objects that display composed text are a kind of parcel (<code>IParcel</code>). As a result, this approach finds parcels for text frames, table cells, or other new kinds of parcels. Note, however, that some text embedded in the text model may not be composed or displayed in a parcel.
<code>IWaxIterator</code>	After you know the text model (<code>ITextModel</code>) and the range of text you want, use this class to get the wax data.
<code>TextIterator</code>	After you know the text model (<code>ITextModel</code>) and the range of text that you want, use this class to get the character data.

[Figure 134](#) shows a story displayed in a two-column frame. The range of text displayed in both columns is available in the `IMultiColumnTextFrame` interface on the multicolumn item (`kMultiColumnItemBoss`). The range of text available in each frame item (`kFrameItemBoss`) is available in both `ITextFrameColumn` and `ITextParcelList`.

FIGURE 134 Finding the range of text displayed in a frame or parcel

Conversely, you can discover the parcel (IParcel) displaying the character at a specific index (TextIndex) in the text model. It is possible the TextIndex of interest is overset text that is not displayed. The kind of parcel returned depends on the kind of story thread (ITextStoryThread) that owns the range of text in which the TextIndex lies.

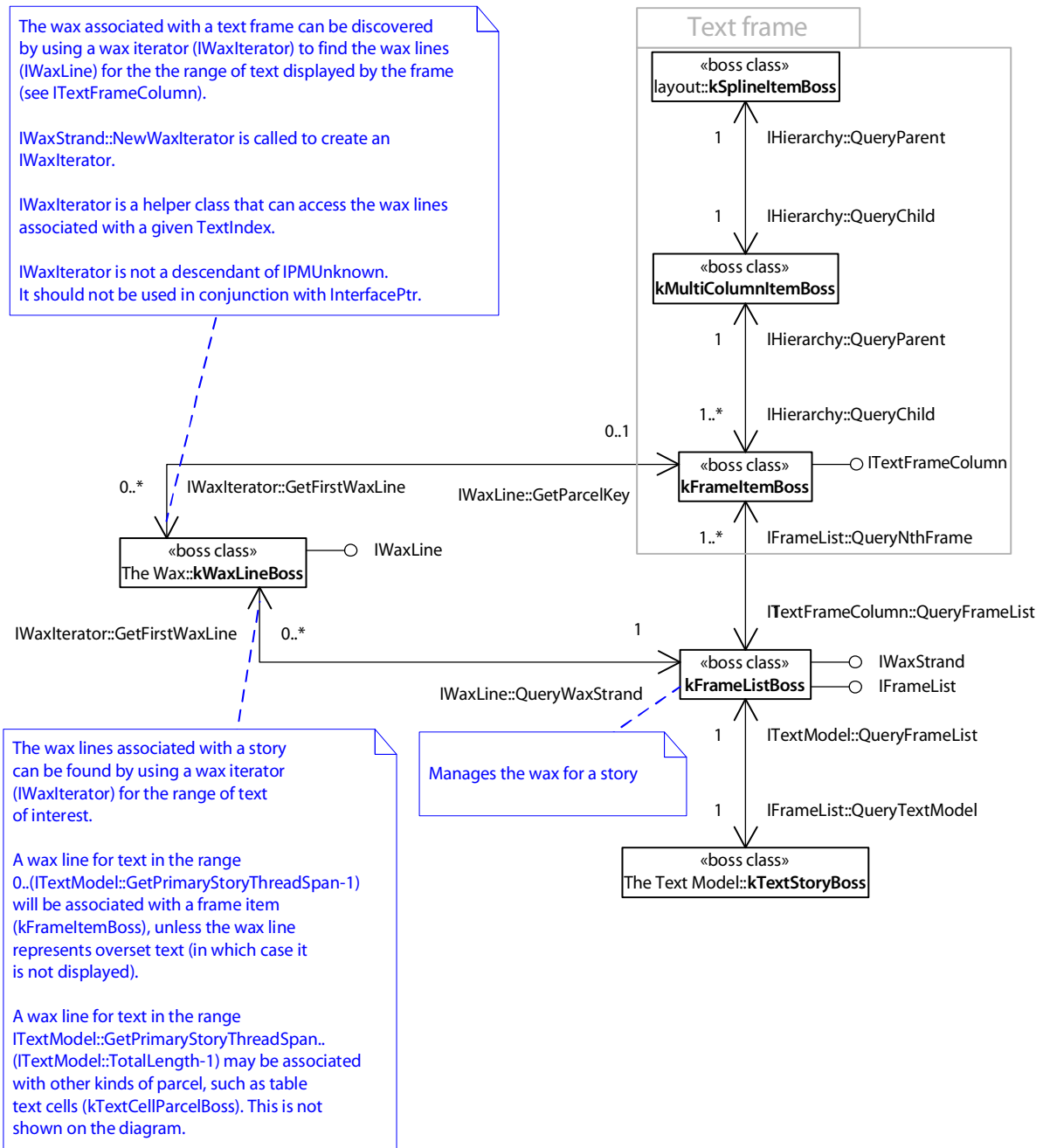
For example, if the TextIndex lies in the primary story thread, it is in the range 0 to (ITextModel::GetPrimaryStoryThreadSpan - 1). The primary story thread is displayed by the text frames associated with the story. In this case, the frame item (kFrameItemBoss) that displays the desired TextIndex is determined. Alternately, the desired TextIndex can be in the range ITextModel::GetPrimaryStoryThreadSpan to (ITextModel::TotalLength - 1). Text in this range is associated with a table or other feature that embeds text in stories, like notes, footnotes, or tracked changes. If the feature displays composed text, the parcel displaying a specific TextIndex can be determined.

Text frames and the wax

After text is composed, each line is represented by a wax line (kWaxLineBoss). The wax for a story is owned by the wax strand. A text frame is associated with its wax lines by the range of text displayed, which is obtained from ITextFrameColumn or ITextParcelList. The range of text displayed by the frame is maintained when text is recomposed. Wax lines are accessed using a wax iterator, IWaxIterator, which is a C++ helper class created by calling IWaxStrand::NewWaxIterator.

Consider the wax for a text frame with two columns, each displaying one line of text. See [Figure 135](#). Here, the wax line (kWaxLineBoss) objects do not have UIDs. They are managed by the wax strand (IWaxStrand on kFrameListBoss) that persists some wax data and regenerates the rest by recomposing the text when required.

FIGURE 135 Structure of the wax for a text frame



Text-frame options

You manipulate text-frame options from the dialog box invoked by choosing Object > Text Frame Options. Default text-frame options store the properties inherited when a new text frame is created. The text-frame options are stored in the `ITextOptions` interface on the document workspace. A distinct set of defaults are maintained on the session workspace and are inherited. [Figure 136](#) and [Figure 137](#) show the boss classes and interfaces involved.

FIGURE 136 Interfaces storing text-frame options on a text frame

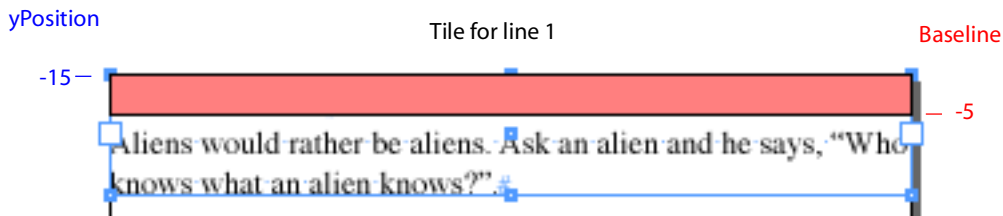
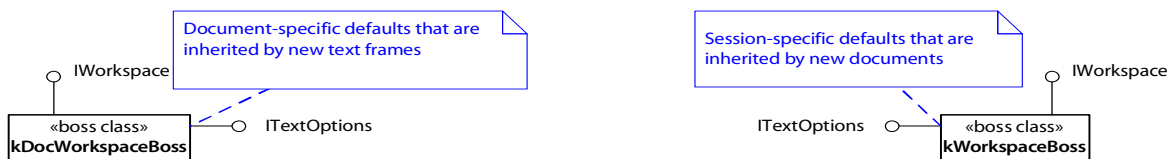


FIGURE 137 Interfaces storing default text-frame options



Text-frame geometry

In [Figure 138](#), the bounds of the page items that make up the text frame are tabulated in the inner coordinates of the spline. In [Table 90](#), the geometries of the multicolumn and column items are expressed in the coordinate space of their parent, the spline. Effectively, they share a common coordinate space.

FIGURE 138 Text-frame geometry

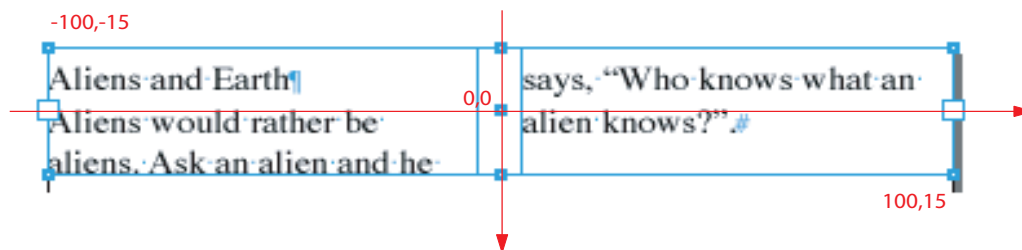


TABLE 90 Text-frame geometry

Item	Left	Top	Right	Bottom
kFrameItemBoss (left column)	-100.00	-15.00	-5.00	15.00
kFrameItemBoss (right column)	5.00	-15.00	100.00	15.00
kMultiColumnItemBoss	-100.00	-15.00	100.00	15.00
kSplineItemBoss	-100.00	-15.00	100.00	15.00

Text Inset

Text inset, a property of a text frame, is an area between the edge of the frame and the area where text flows. If the text frame is regular in shape, you can specify the inset independently for each side (see [Figure 139](#)). With irregularly shaped frames, the inset follows the contour of the text frame, and there is only one inset value (see [Figure 140](#)).

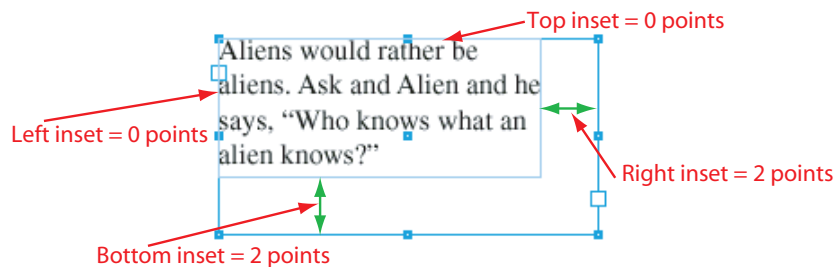
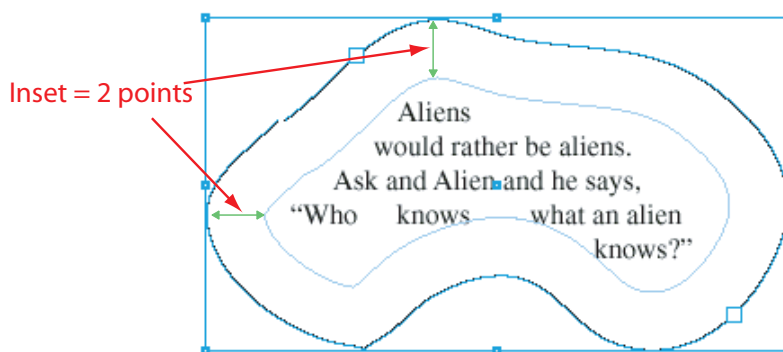
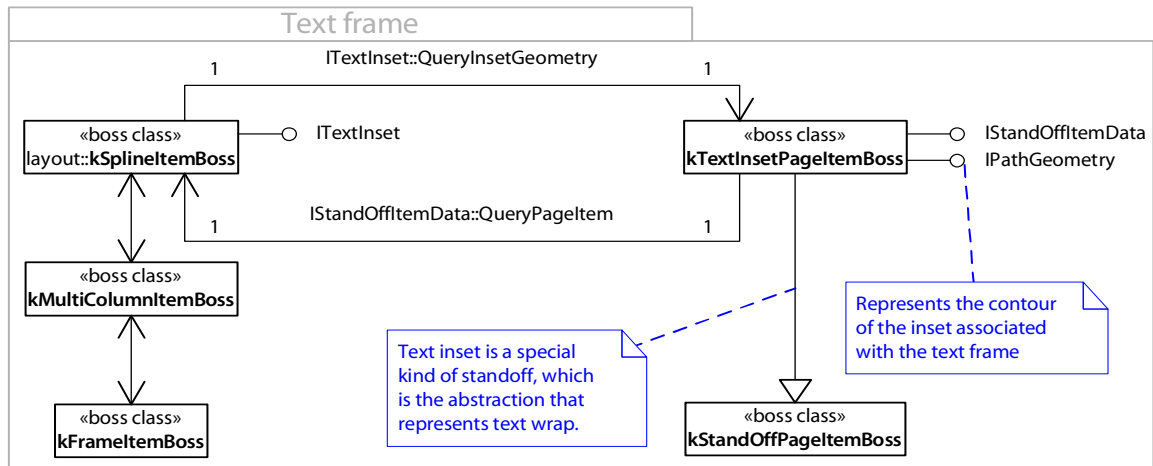
FIGURE 139 Text Inset**FIGURE 140** Irregular text inset

Figure 141 shows the structure of a text inset. The properties of the text inset are found in the `ITextInset` interface on the text frame's `kSplineItemBoss`. Even when there is no text inset in effect (all insets have a value of 0 points), a `kTextInsetPageItemBoss` is associated with the text frame and describes the contour of the text inset.

FIGURE 141 Structure of text inset



Text wrap

Text in a text frame is affected by other page items that have text wrap applied. Text wrap is represented by a standoff abstraction. A standoff describes whether there should be text wrap and, if so, the contour around which the text should be wrapped.

Figure 142 shows an empty graphic frame with text wrap set at a 4-point offset around the frame's path. Figure 143 shows that if there is no intersection between the boundary of the standoff and the boundary of the text frame, then the text in the text frame is not affected.

FIGURE 142 Text-wrap properties applied to empty frame

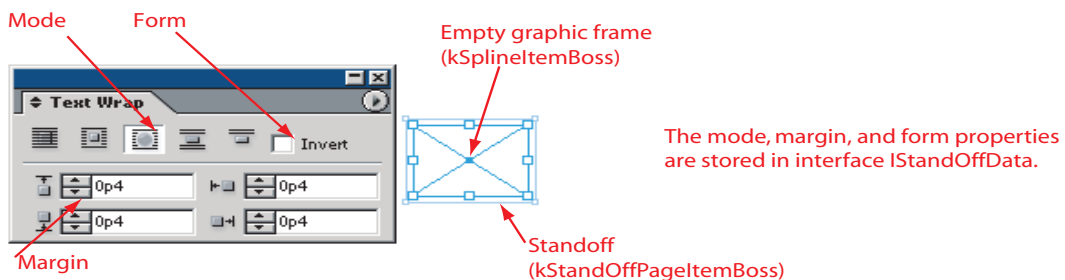


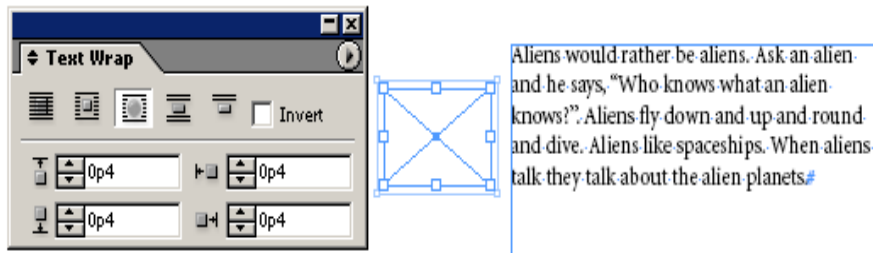
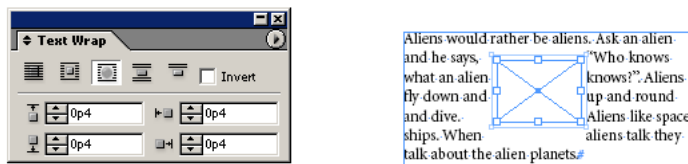
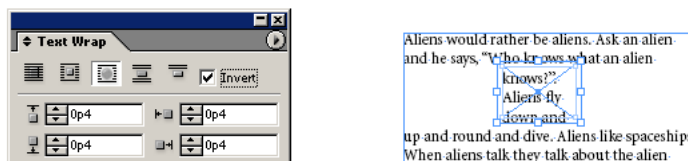
FIGURE 143 Text wrap: empty frame with text wrap alongside text frame

Figure 144 shows what happens when the empty graphic frame overlaps the text frame. The text within that frame is forced to wrap around the empty frame, which is said to repel the text. By inverting the text wrap, a page item can indicate it is to be used to attract text within its boundary rather than repel it. Figure 145 shows how this causes text to flow within the set boundaries.

FIGURE 144 Text wrap: empty frame with text wrap overlapping text frame**FIGURE 145** Text wrap: empty frame with inverted text wrap overlapping text frame

The objects representing the text wrap for the sample are shown in Figure 146. The general structure of text wrap is shown in Figure 147.

FIGURE 146 Instance diagram for text wrap

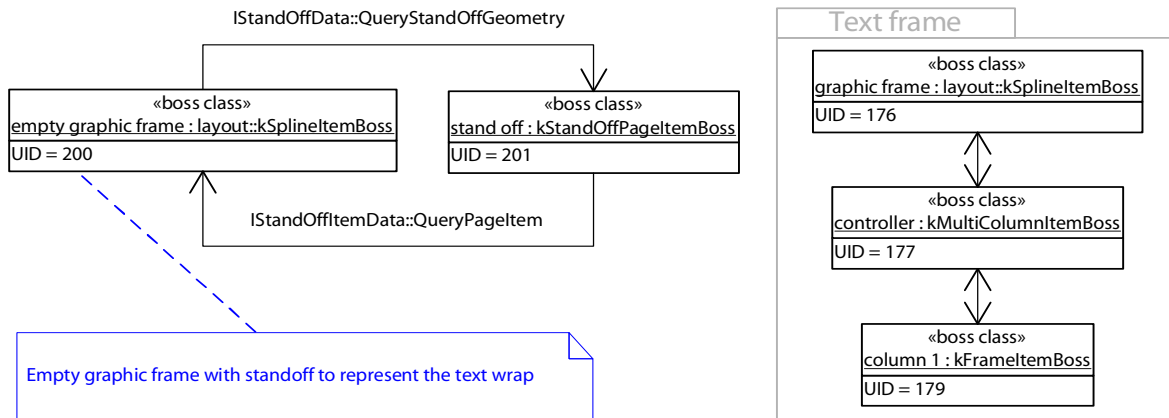
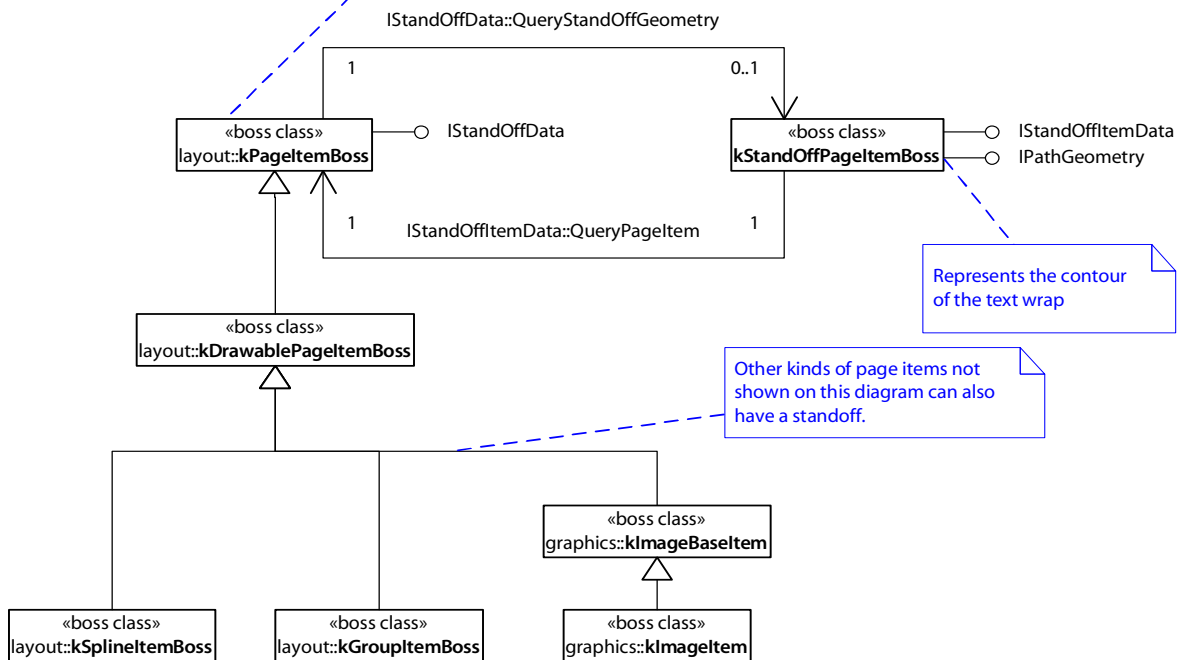


FIGURE 147 Structure of text wrap

Text wrap is represented by a standoff. A standoff can be associated with various kinds of page items such as graphic frames (`kSplineItemBoss`), pictures (`kImageItemBoss`, etc.), and groups (`kGroupItemBoss`). They can each have distinct standoff properties.



Properties of a standoff are found in `IStandOffData` on the page item with the standoff. Use `IStandOffData::GetMode` to obtain the kind of text wrap and `IStandOffData::GetMargin` to get the offsets. Each page item has distinct standoff applied, so the page item can be a graphic frame (`kSplineItemBoss`), a group (`kGroupItemBoss`), or another type.

When a text wrap is applied, a standoff boss class `kStandOffPageItemBoss` is associated with the owning page item. The standoff boss class is not part of the page item instance hierarchy; you do not navigate to it using `IHierarchy`. Instead, use `IStandOffData::QueryStandOffGeometry` to access the standoff boss class. The `kStandOffPageItemBoss` boss class has a path geometry that represents the contour of the standoff, and text in a text frame wraps to this contour.

Text on a path

Text on a path allows text to flow along the contour of a spline (`kSplineItemBoss`). Text on a path frame has an inport and an outport. As a result, you can thread text in other frames to and from it. [Figure 148](#), [Figure 149](#), and [Figure 150](#) show the objects involved in text on a path.

FIGURE 148 Text on a path

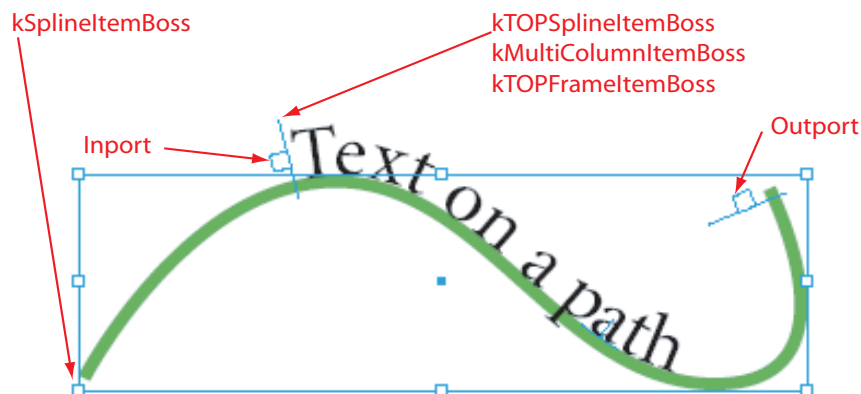


FIGURE 149 Instance diagram for text on a path

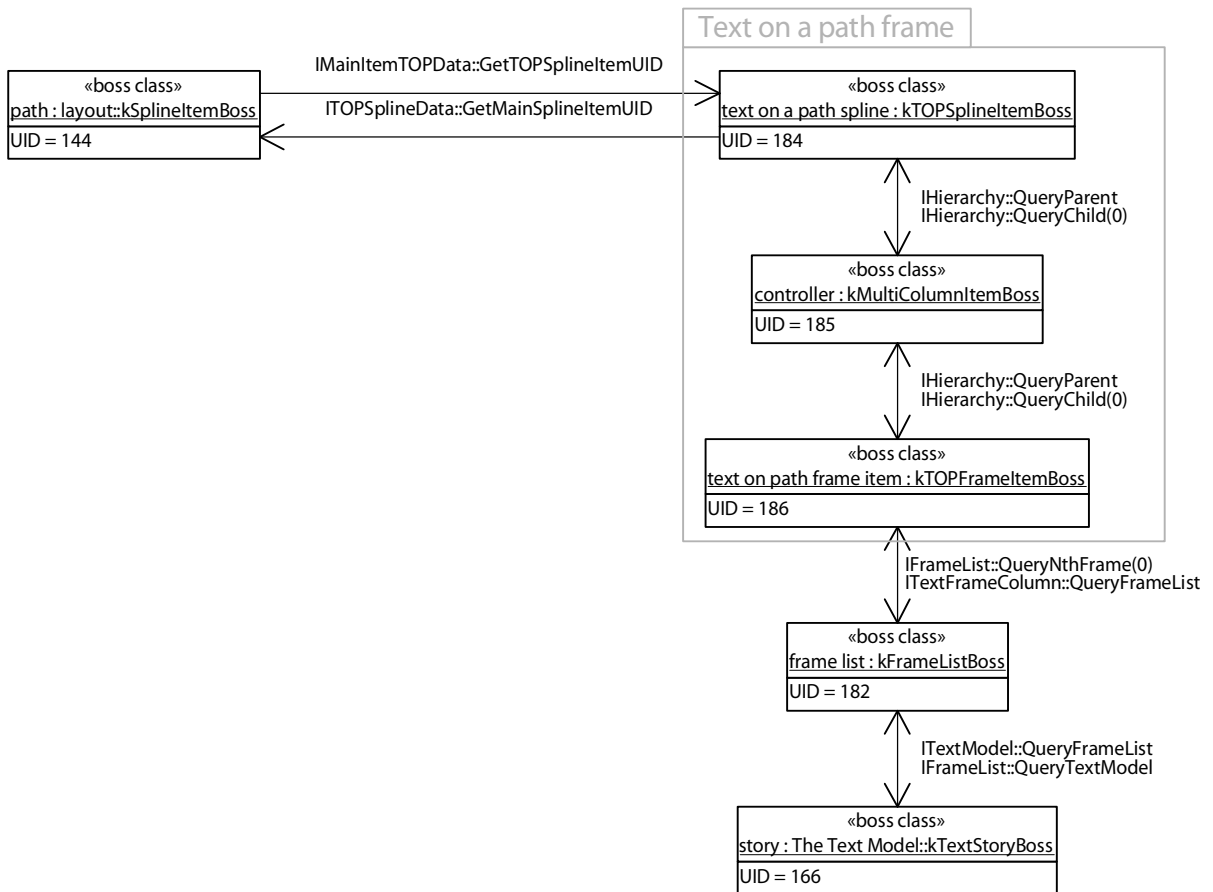
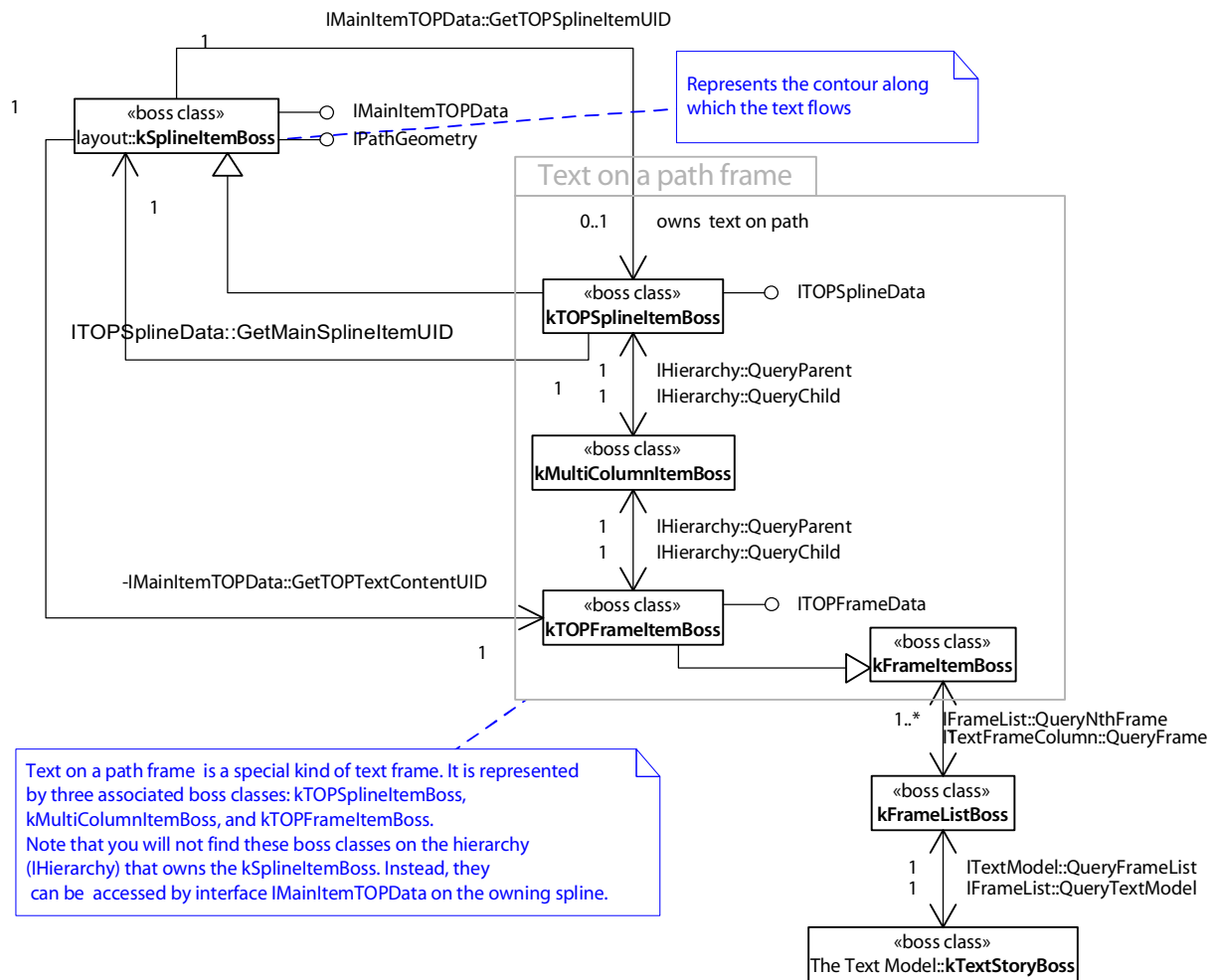


FIGURE 150 Structure of text on a path frame



Text on a path can be associated with any spline (**kSplineItemBoss**). The structure of text on a path frame parallels that of a normal text frame. It is represented by three associated boss classes: **kTOPSplineItemBoss**, **kMultiColumnItemBoss**, and **kTOPFrameItemBoss**. You can navigate from a spline (**kSplineItemBoss**) to any associated text on a path (**kTOPSplineItemBoss**) using the **IMainItemTOPData** interface. You can navigate back using the **ITOPFrameData** interface. After you have an interface on the **kTOPSplineItemBoss**, you can navigate up and down the text on a path frame using **IHierarchy**.

[Figure 151](#) and [Figure 152](#) show a text frame that also has text on a path running along its contour. In this example, the text displayed inside the frame and the text that runs its contour have distinct underlying stories. If they were threaded, they would be associated with the same story.

FIGURE 151 Text frame with text on a path

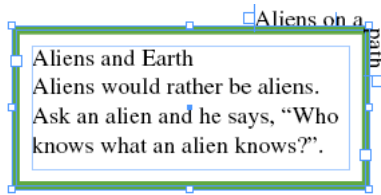
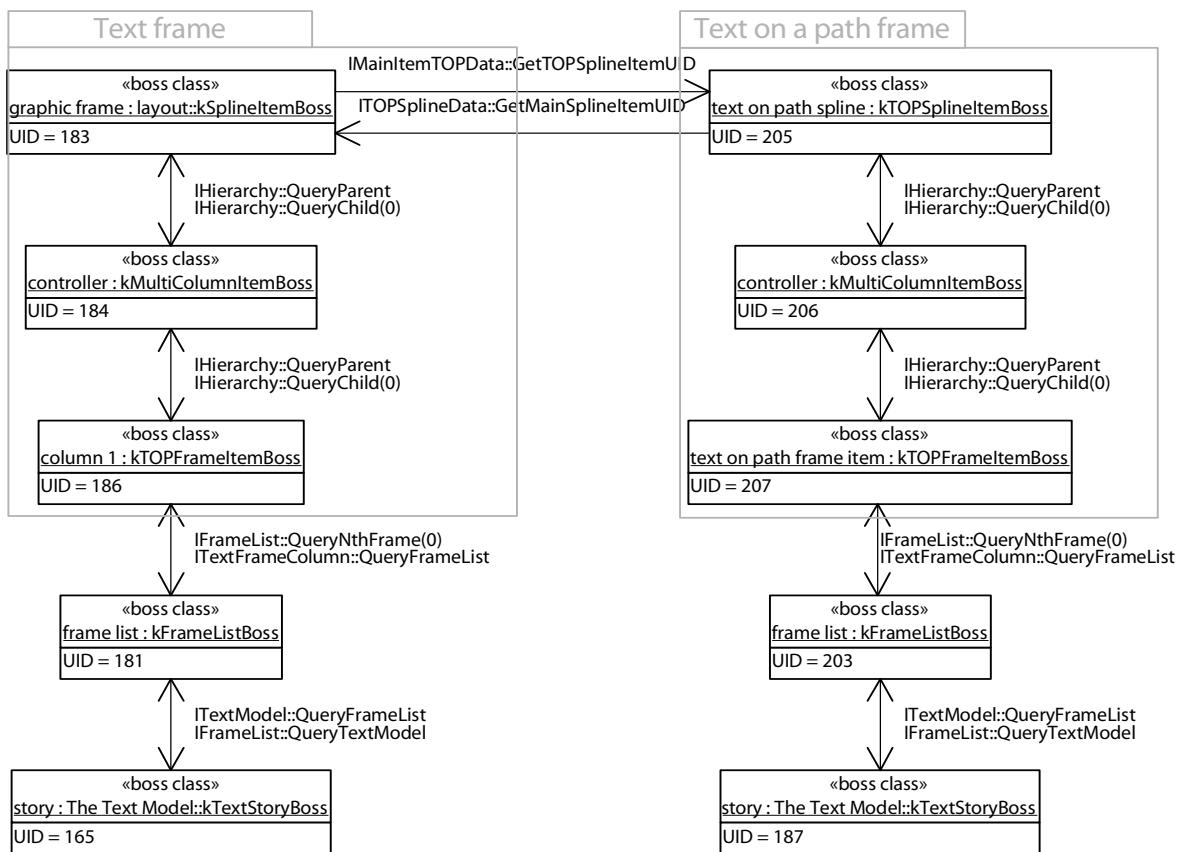


FIGURE 152 Instance diagram for text frame with text on a path



The wax

The output of text composition is called *the wax*. The wax is responsible for drawing and hit testing the text of a story.

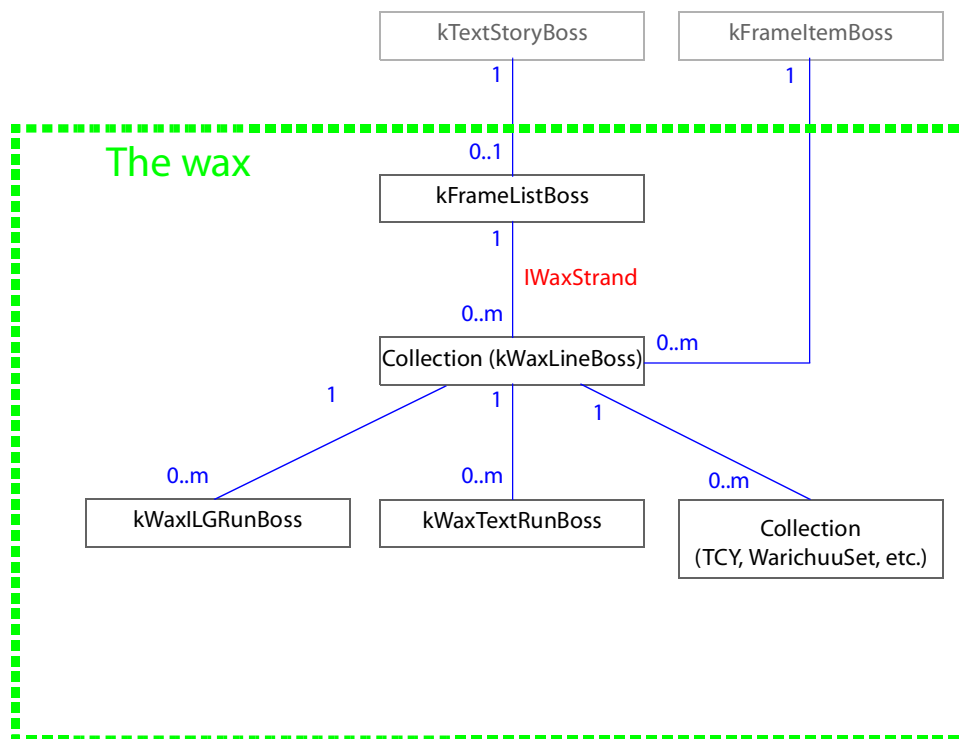
The term “wax” comes from the manual paste-up process conventionally used to create magazine and newspaper pages before the advent of interactive pagination software. In the old process, typeset columns of text (galleys) were received from the typesetter. The galleys were run through a waxer, cut into sections, and positioned on an art board. Wax was used as an adhesive to stick the sections on the art board.

The art board in InDesign is a spread, and you can think of the galleys as text frames. The typeset columns of text are the wax generated by text composition. The wax adheres—fixes—the position of a line of text within a frame.

Wax strand, wax line, and wax run

The frame list (`kFrameListBoss`) manages the wax for a story by means of the wax strand (`IWaxStrand` interface). The wax strand owns a collection of wax lines that contain wax runs, as shown in [Figure 153](#).

FIGURE 153 Class diagram of the wax



The wax is organized as a hierarchy of collections and leaf runs. The most common case is a series of *wax lines*, each with a collection of *wax runs*. A wax line is created for each line of text in a frame. A wax run is created each time the appearance of the text changes within the line. Examples of this include changes in point size, changes in font, and the interruption of the flow of text in a line because text wrap causes text to flow around another frame.

The IWaxStrand interface on kFrameListBoss owns all wax lines for a story and is the root of the wax tree. The IWaxIterator and IWaxRunIterator iterator classes provide access to wax lines and wax runs.

kWaxLineBoss typically represents the wax for one line of text. (Warichuu is an exception to this, where the Warichuu set contains multiple lines; all lines in the Warichuu set relate to one kWaxLineBoss object.) Each line owns its wax runs, collections of wax runs, or combination of runs and collections of runs. kWaxLineBoss provides access to its children through the IWaxCollection interface.

Any boss that supports the IWaxCollection interface is a parent in the wax hierarchy to boss objects that support the IWaxRun interface. A boss can support both the IWaxCollection and IWaxRun interfaces, creating levels in the hierarchy.

kWaxTextRunBoss is the object that represents the wax for ordinary text. This object stores the information needed to render the glyphs and provides the interfaces that draw, hit test, and select the text.

kWaxILGRunBoss represents the wax for inline frames. Inline frames allow frames to be embedded in the text flow. An inline frame behaves as if it were one character of text and moves along with the text flow when the text is recomposed. kWaxILGRunBoss provides the drawing, hit testing, and selection behavior for inline frames.

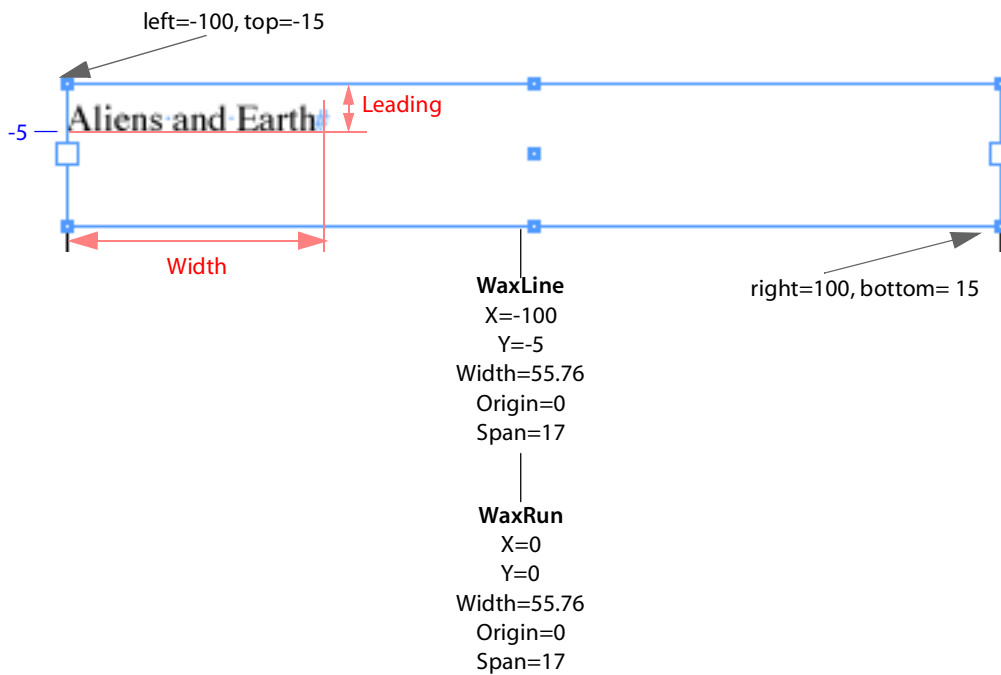
For a complete list of wax-run boss classes, see the API reference documentation for IWaxRun.

Examples of the wax

This section describes the wax generated for some sample text frames. To recreate these examples, use the Text tool to create the frames. If you use another tool, like the place gun or a graphic frame tool, the inner coordinate spaces for the frames will be different from those illustrated. For simplicity, use a sample page size 200 points wide and 100 points deep, and format text using 8-point type, the Times Regular font, and 10-point leading. All text is composed by the Adobe Paragraph Composer in a horizontal text frame.

Single line with no format changes

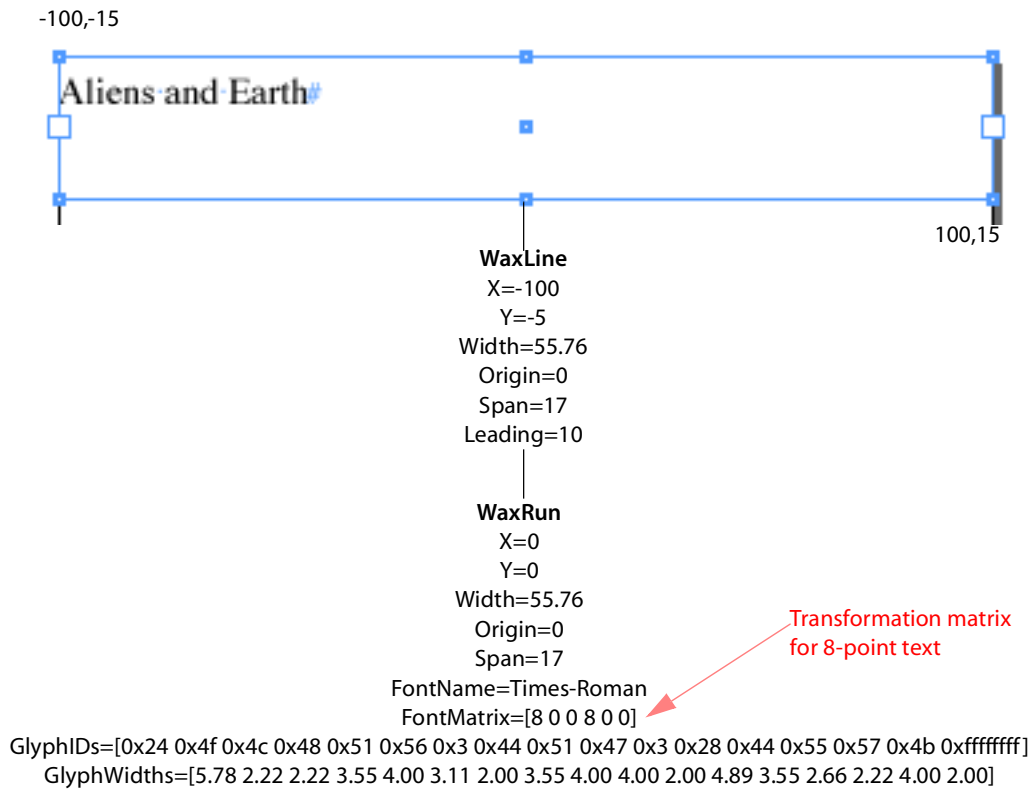
The wax generated for a single line of text with no format changes is shown in [Figure 154](#). This example has a frame 200 points wide and 30 points deep, containing one line of 8-point Times Regular text with 10-point leading. The first baseline offset setting for the frame is set to leading. This forces the baseline of the first line of text in the frame to be offset from the top of the frame by a distance equal to the leading value for the text (10 points).

FIGURE 154 Wax for single line with no format changes

Each node in the wax tree records its position, its width, and a reference to the characters in the text model it describes. The origin records the index into the text model to the first character in the node. The span records the number of characters in the node.

Wax lines record their position in the inner coordinate space of the frame in which they are displayed. Wax runs record their position as an offset relative to the position of the wax line. Additional information is stored specific to the type of node—wax line or wax run.

[Figure 155](#) exposes some additional data in the wax. A wax line stores the leading for the line. A wax run stores font name, a font-transformation matrix, glyph information, and other data necessary to describe how the text is to be drawn. A glyph is an element of a font.

FIGURE 155 Information stored in the wax

When a character is composed, its character code is mapped to its corresponding GlyphID from the font being used to display the character. The font provides the initial width of a glyph at a particular point size. This width may be adjusted by composition to account for letter spacing, word spacing, and kerning. The GlyphID values and their widths after composition are stored in the wax run, as shown in [Figure 155](#).

Generation of wax runs

Wax runs are generated for each set of format changes or line breaks that occur in the rendered text. [Figure 156](#) illustrates the effect of applying text attributes that change text format.

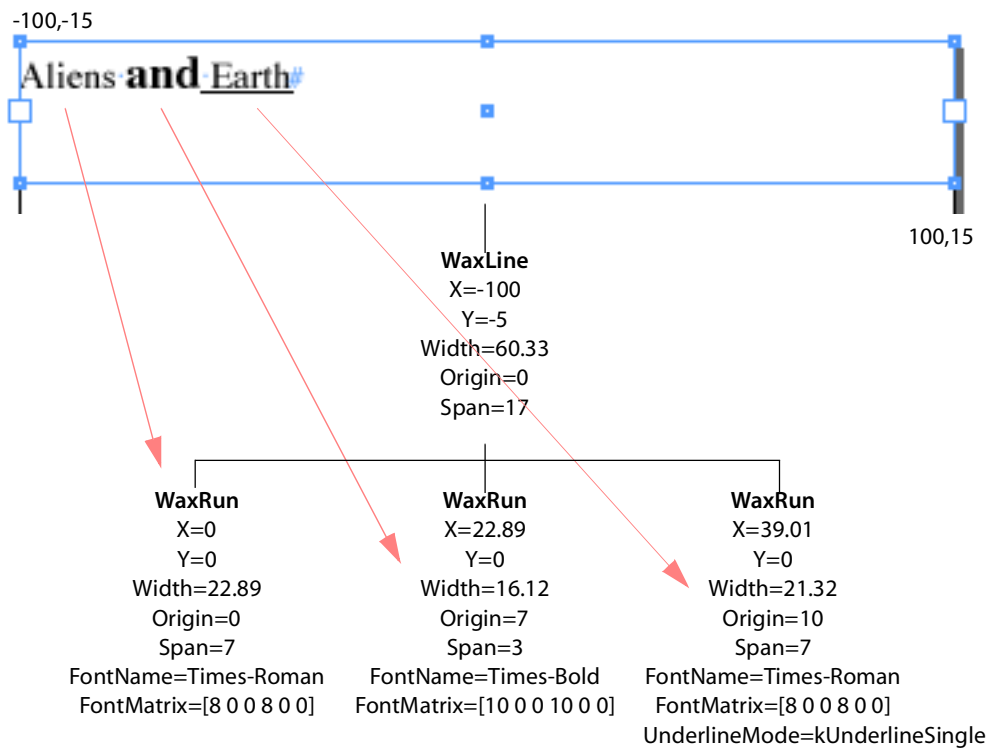
FIGURE 156 Wax for single line with format changes

Figure 156 shows how a wax run is created each time the text attributes specify the appearance of the text is to change. The arrows show the correspondence between the text drawn in the frame and the wax run that describes its appearance and location. A distinct wax run would be required for the following:

- Each time the appearance of the text changes within the line.
- Each line of text that appears in the parcel list for a story.
- Each side of a line that is interrupted, either by using an irregular-shaped frame or by overlapping a page item with wrap turned on within the frame.

Text adornments

Text adornments provide a way for plug-ins to adorn the wax (composed text). Text adornments give plug-ins the opportunity to do additional drawing when the wax in a frame is drawn. The wax draws the text and calls the text adornments it is aware of to draw. For this to occur, the adornment must be attached to the wax.

Text adornments are boss objects attached by ClassID to an individual wax run. When the run is drawn, text adornments are given control using the `ITextAdornment` interface.

Calls to the `ITextAdornment::Draw` method are ordered by the priority value returned by the `ITextAdornment::GetDrawPriority` method. Higher-priority adornments (smaller numbers) are called before lower-priority adornments (larger numbers).

Text adornments cannot influence how text is composed; for example, they cannot influence how characters are built into wax lines and wax runs by the text-composition subsystem. Instead, text adornments augment the appearance of the text. A text adornment controls whether the adornment is drawn in front of or behind the text.

There are two types of text adornments: local and global.

Local text adornments

A local text adornment is controlled by one or more text attributes. A local text adornment provides visual feedback of the text the text attributes control. For example, an adornment can highlight the background on which the text is drawn or strike out text by drawing a line in the foreground.

The text attribute controls the process by interacting with text composition and associating the adornment with a drawing style (see `IDrawingStyle` and `kComposeStyleBoss`). This causes the text composer to attach the adornment to a wax run (see `IWaxRenderData` in “The wax” on page 354).

Table 91 shows the main text adornments used by the application and the text attributes that control them.

TABLE 91 *Text adornments and associated text attributes*

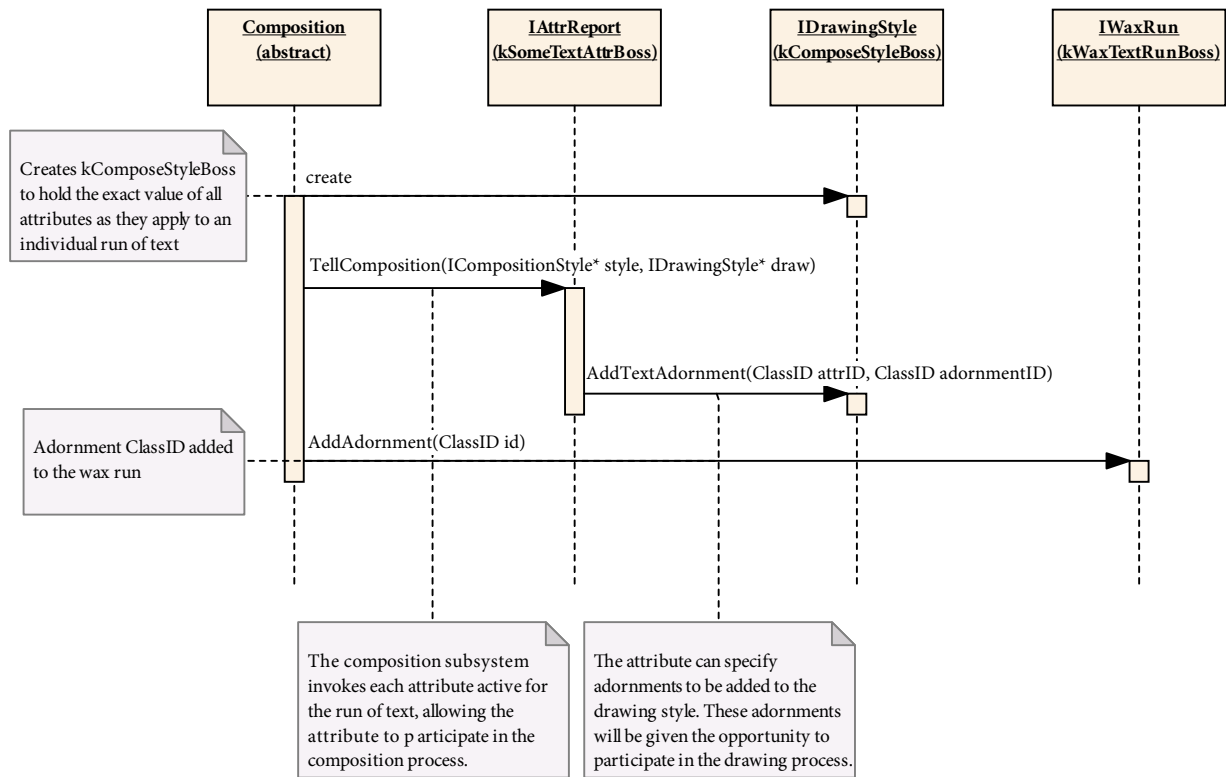
Adornment classID	Attribute classID	Description
<code>kTextAdornmentIndexMarkBoss</code>	<code>kTAIndexMarkBoss</code>	Index mark
<code>kTextAdornmentKentenBoss</code>	<code>kTAKentenSizeBoss</code> , etc.	Adorns text for emphasis
<code>kTextAdornmentRubyBoss</code>	<code>kTARubyPointSizeBoss</code> , etc.	Annotates base text
<code>kTextAdornmentStrikethruBoss</code>	<code>kTextAttrStrikethruBoss</code>	Strikes through text
<code>kTextAdornmentUnderlineBoss</code>	<code>kTextAttrUnderlineBoss</code>	Underlines text
<code>kTextHyperlinkAdornmentBoss</code>	<code>kHyperlinkAttributeBoss</code>	Hyperlink mark

To add a local text adornment, first add a new text attribute. In more complex situations, use multiple text attributes to control one text adornment. For example, `kTAKentenSizeBoss`, `kTAKentenRelatedSizeBoss`, `kTAKentenFontFamilyBoss`, and `kTAKentenFontStyleBoss` collectively control the kenten adornment implemented by the `kTextAdornmentKentenBoss`.

Local text adornments are attached to a drawing style and subsequently to an individual wax run. These adornments always are called to draw, although they can choose not to draw anything.

Figure 157 shows the sequence of calls that result in an adornment being associated with a particular wax run.

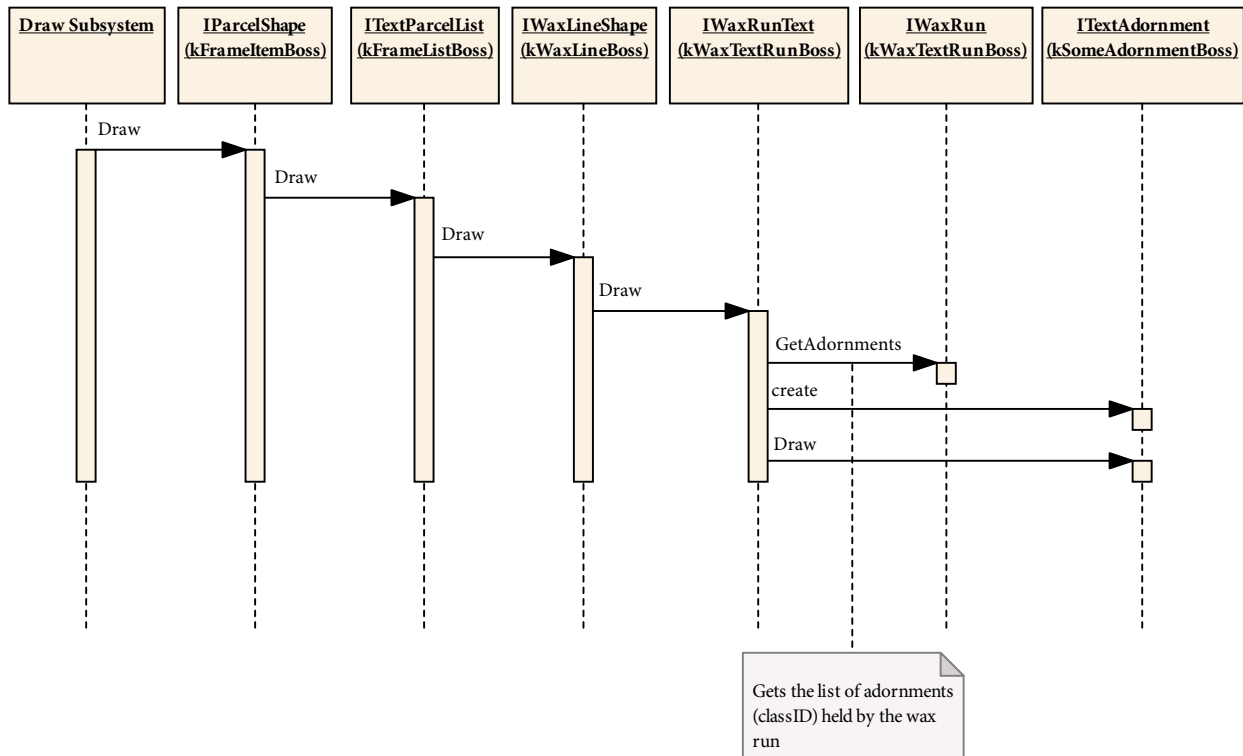
FIGURE 157 Sequence for adding an adornment to a specific wax run



The composition subsystem calls the `IAttrReport::TellComposition` method of each attribute that applies to a particular range of text. This gives the attribute a chance to interact with the composition subsystem. This interaction includes the registering of adornments that are to be associated with the wax and called when the wax is drawn (`IDrawingStyle::AddTextAdornment`). The adornments are attached to the wax as `ClassIDs` (`IWaxRun::AddAdornment`); i.e., the adornments are not instantiated at this point.

Figure 158 shows how adornments associated with a wax run are instantiated and called to draw.

FIGURE 158 Sequence for local-adornment drawing



The **Draw** signal propagates to the wax run (**IWaxRunText** on **kWaxTextRunBoss**). The wax run (**IWaxRun** on **kWaxTextRunBoss**) is interrogated for the set of adornments registered through composition, as shown in Figure 157. Each adornment (**ITextAdornment**) is created on whichever boss class it is represented on, and the **Draw** method is called.

It is possible to associate a data interface (**ITextAdornmentData**) during registration (**IAttrReport::TellComposition**). This interface allows control over whether the adornment is associated with wax runs.

Global text adornments

Global text adornments are attached to all wax runs, though they never have run-specific adornment data. Global text adornments provide the ability to draw something without requiring the text to be recomposed. Unlike local text adornments, global text adornments do not need to be attached to individual wax runs to draw; however, global text adornments are asked if they are active before they are called to draw.

For example, the **Show Hidden Characters** feature is implemented using a global text adornment, **kTextAdornmentShowInvisiblesBoss**. The adornment behaves as if it is attached to all runs, but is called only when the adornment requests draw.

Table 92 lists global text adornments.

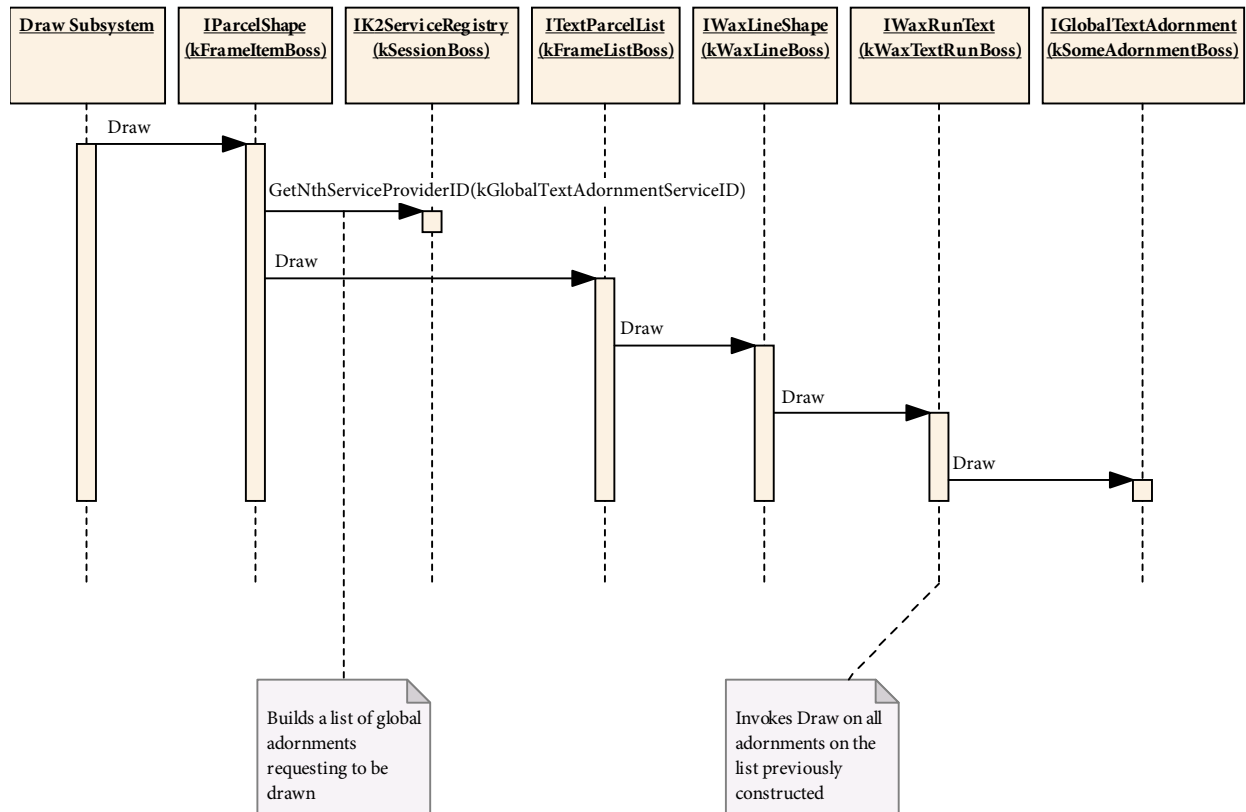
TABLE 92 *Global text adornments*

Adornment boss	Description
kTextAdornmentHJKepsVBoss	Highlights keeps violations.
kTextAdornmentMissingFontBoss	Highlights missing fonts.
kTextAdornmentMissingGlyphsBoss	Highlights missing glyphs.
kDynamicSpellCheckAdornmentBoss	Squiggle line to mark spell checks.
kTextAdornmentShowInvisiblesBoss	Shows hidden characters.
kPositionMarkerLayoutAdornmentBoss	Draws position marker.
kTextAdornmentShowKinsokuBoss	Shows Japanese character line break.
kTextAdornmentShowCustomCharWidthsBoss	Marks character width as a filled rectangle.
kXMLMarkerAdornmentBoss	XML marker.

Global text adornments are service providers. The ServiceID is kGlobalTextAdornmentService. Global text adornments aggregate the IK2ServiceProvider interface and use the default implementation kGlobalTextAdornmentServiceImpl.

Global adornments have the opportunity to participate in drawing if they are enabled. Figure [Figure 159](#) shows the sequence of events that cause IGlobalTextAdornment::Draw to be called. For brevity, the calls to the adornment to determine whether it is enabled (IGlobalTextAdornment::GetIsActive) and to access the ink bounds of the adornment (IGlobalTextAdornment::GetInkBounds) are not shown.

FIGURE 159 Sequence diagram for drawing of global adornments



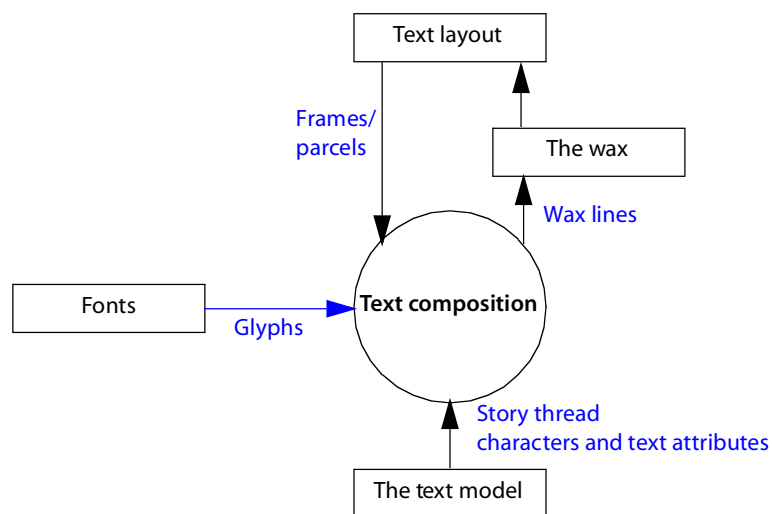
When a frame (IParcelShape on kFrameItemBoss) is instructed to draw, it queries the service registry (IK2ServiceRegistry on kSessionBoss) for the set of global text adornments that are enabled (IGlobalTextAdornment::GetIsActive). The frame calls Draw on the parcel list (ITextParcelList on kFrameListBoss), which causes the wax line (IWaxLineShape on kWaxLineBoss) and wax run (IWaxRunText on kWaxTextRunBoss) Draw methods to be called. During the drawing of the wax run, the global adornments built up previously (Draw from IParcelShape on kFrameItemBoss) have their Draw method called. Compare [Figure 159](#) with [Figure 158](#). The set of global adornments are global to the document (maintained by the service registry), whereas local adornments are local to a specific wax run.

Text composition

This section describes the process of creating the final rendered text. It includes information for software developers who want to develop custom composition engines.

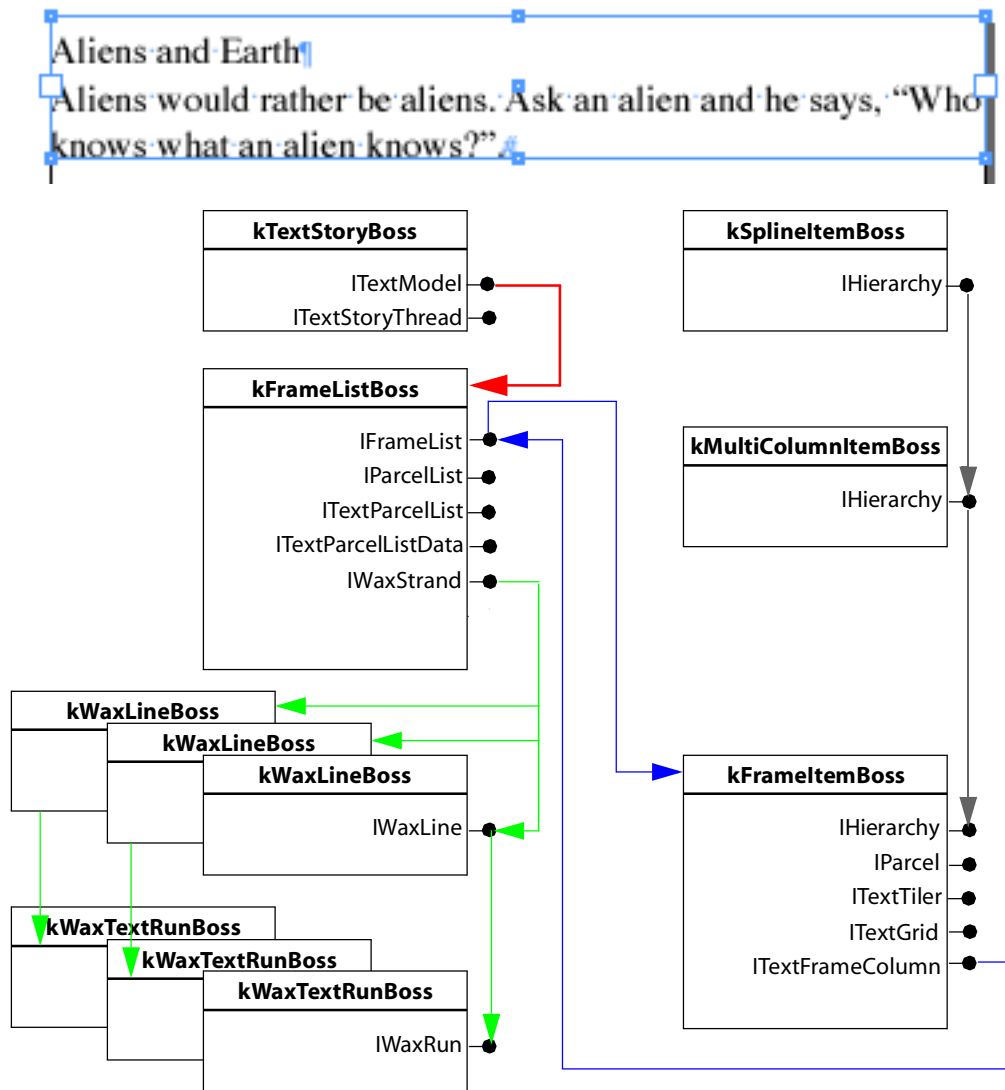
Text composition is the process of converting text content into its composed representation, the wax. The text-composition subsystem flows text content from a story thread maintained by a story into a layout represented by parcels in a parcel list. Story threads are described in “[Story threads](#)” on page 320; parcels and the wax, in “[Text presentation](#)” on page 331. [Figure 160](#) is an overview of text composition.

FIGURE 160 Text composition



[Figure 161](#) shows a sample text frame with no format changes. The figure shows the objects representing the story, the frame, and the composed text; it does not show the details of how the text actually gets composed.

FIGURE 161 Sample text frame with no formatting changes



Text composition creates the wax lines (**kWaxLineBoss**) and their associated wax runs (**kWaxTextRunBoss**) using the primary story thread's content and layout as input.

Wax lines are added to the wax strand (**IWaxStrand**). Text composition also maintains the range of characters displayed in each parcel/frame (see "Span" on page 342).

Phases of text composition

There are two distinct phases of text composition:

- *Damage* refers to changes that invalidate the wax for a range of composed text. Inserting text and modifying frame size are examples of changes that cause damage. This is described further in “[Damage](#)” on page 367.
- *Recomposition* is the process that repairs the damage and updates the wax to reflect the change. This is described further in “[Recomposition](#)” on page 369.

Text composition toggles the wax between the states shown in [Figure 162](#). The flow of damage and recomposition is shown in [Figure 163](#).

FIGURE 162 *The wax state*

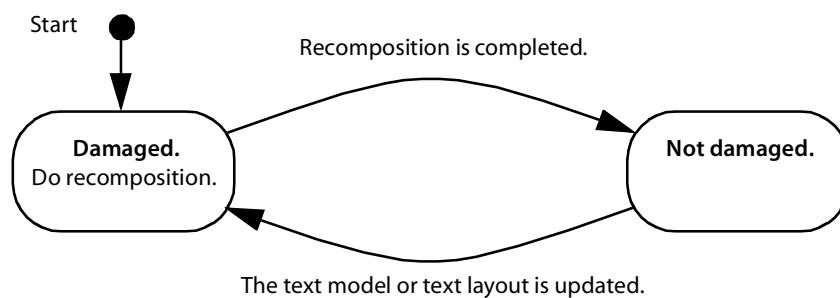


FIGURE 163 *Damage and recomposition, the phases of text composition*

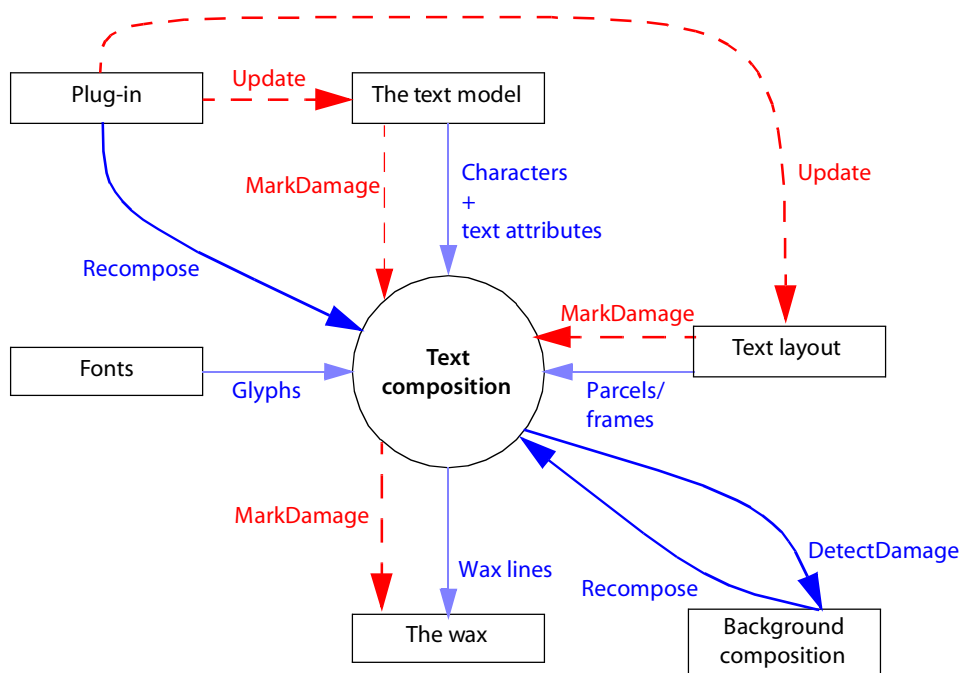


Figure 163 shows a plug-in can update the text model or text layout, causing the wax (the composed representation of the text) to be damaged.

The text-composition subsystem exposes interfaces that mark the damaged story, frame parcels, and wax. The damage-recording flow is represented by dotted lines in Figure 163. The text-composition subsystem also exposes interfaces that allow text to be recomposed. In the figure, the recomposition flow is represented by solid lines.

Background composition (see “Background composition” on page 371) is a separate process that drives text composition. Background composition runs as an idle task when the application has no higher-priority tasks.

Consider the example in which the plug-in shown in Figure 163 is the text editor. In response to typing, the plug-in processes a command to insert the typed characters into the text model. This command calls text-composition interfaces that record the damage caused. Background composition detects the damage and recomposes the affected text.

Damage

Damage is defined as the changes that invalidate the wax for a range of composed text. Damage is recorded by marking the affected stories, parcels, frames, and wax. The damage indicates where recomposition is required and the type of damage that has to be repaired.

The change counter on the frame list is incremented whenever something happens that causes damage. No notification is broadcast when the change counter is incremented, so the change

cannot be caught immediately; however `IFrameList::GetChangeCounter` returns a counter that is incremented (and eventually rolls over) each time any parcel in any frame in the frame list goes from undamaged to damaged, indicating some text in the frame list was damaged and must be recomposed.

Damage drives and optimizes the recomposition process. For example, recomposition can shuffle existing wax lines between frames to repair damage and avoid recomposing the text from scratch. Based on the action that caused the damage, there are the following categories of damage:

- *Insert damage* occurs when text is inserted.
- *Delete damage* occurs when a range of text is deleted.
- *Change damage* occurs when a range of text is replaced or the text attributes that apply to a range of text are modified.
- *Resize damage* occurs when a frame is resized.
- *Rect damage* occurs when text wrap or text inset is applied.
- *Move damage* occurs when a frame is moved.
- *Destroyed damage* occurs when some combination of the above types of damage occurs. When this happens, the existing wax for the affected range must be recomposed.
- *Keeps damage* occurs when a line must be pushed to the start of a new frame to eliminate orphans and widows. Orphans and widows are words or single lines of text that become separated from the other lines in a paragraph (see [Figure 164](#)). An orphan occurs when the first line of a paragraph becomes separated from the rest of the paragraph body. A widow occurs when the last line of a paragraph becomes separated from the rest of the paragraph body.

FIGURE 164 Orphan (left) and widow (right)



Check for damage before relying on the information stored in the wax or the frame spans (see “[Span](#)” on page 342). If your plug-in detects damage, it can either stop with a suitable error or recompose the text.

Damage API

To detect damage, use the interface methods shown in [Table 93](#) to detect damage. The damage bookkeeping methods used to record the damage are not called directly by third-party plug-ins; the text subsystem calls these methods as necessary in response to changes that affect text.

TABLE 93 *Damage-inquiry interfaces and methods*

Interface	Method
IStoryList	CountDamagedStories, GetLastDamagedStory, GetNthDamagedTextModelUID
IFrameList	GetFirstDamagedFrameIndex
IFrameDamageRecorder	GetCompState
IWaxLine	IsContentDamaged, IsDamaged, IsDestroyed, IsGeometryDamaged, IsKeepsDamaged
ITextParcelListData	GetFirstDamagedParcel, GetParcelIsDamaged
ITextParcelList	GetFirstDamagedParcel, GetIsDamaged

Recomposition

Recomposition is the process of converting text from a sequence of characters and attributes into the wax (fully formatted paragraphs ready for display). The components of recomposition are as follows:

- Interfaces that control text composition.
- The wax strand that manages the wax for the story.
- Paragraph composers that create the wax for a line or paragraph.

Recomposition API

To request recomposition, use the interface methods shown in [Table 94](#).

TABLE 94 *Recomposition interfaces and methods*

Interface	Method	Description
IFrameList	QueryFramesContaining	Helper method that causes recomposition.
IFrameListComposer	RecomposeThruNthFrame, RecomposeThruTextIndex	Controls recomposition of frames in the frame list (kFrameListBoss). The methods delegate to the parcel list composer (ITextParcelListComposer).
IFrameComposer	RecomposeThruThisFrame	Controls recomposition of a frame. The methods delegate to the wax strand (IWaxStrand), which does the real work.

Interface	Method	Description
ITextParcelListComposer	RecomposeThruNthParcel, RecomposeThruTextIndex	Controls recomposition of parcels in a parcel list. The methods delegate to the wax strand (IWaxStrand), which does the real work.
IGlobalRecompose	RecomposeAllStories, SelectiveRecompose, ForceRecompositionToComplete	Provides methods that can be used to force all stories to recompute. This interface marks damage that forces recomposition to recompute the damaged element, even though they were not actually changed.

The interfaces and methods in [Table 95](#) are not normally called by third-party plug-ins but play a central role in the control of recomposition.

TABLE 95 *Recomposition interfaces and key methods*

Interface	Method	See
IFrameComposer	RecomposeThisFrame	“Wax strand” on page 370
IRecomposedFrames	BroadcastRecomposition Complete	“Recomposition notification” on page 372
IParagraphComposer	Recompose, RebuildLineToFit	“Paragraph composers” on page 371

Wax strand

The wax strand (IWaxStrand) manages the wax for a story and is responsible for updating the wax to reflect changes in the text model or text layout. The wax strand controls the existing wax and determines when and where a paragraph composer needs to be used to create new wax. The wax strand also manages the overall damage-recording process.

The main text-recomposition methods are IFrameComposer::RecomposeThisFrame. The recomposition methods on interfaces, such as IFrameList and IFrameListComposer, delegate the actual work to these IWaxStrand methods.

NOTE: These methods are not called directly by third-party plug-ins.

The lifecycle of the wax is as follows:

1. The wax strand is informed a range in the text model was changed. In response, the wax strand locates the wax lines that represent this range and marks them damaged.
2. On the next recomposition pass, the wax strand finds the first damaged wax line in the story and asks a paragraph composer to recompute it.
3. The paragraph composer creates new wax lines and applies them to the wax strand (RecomposeHelper::ApplyComposedLine). RecomposeHelper is a helper class within IParagraphComposer, so any existing wax lines that represent the same range in the text model are destroyed.

4. The wax strand repeats this process until it finds no more damaged wax lines or reaches the end of the frame.

Paragraph composers

A paragraph composer (`IParagraphComposer`) takes up to a paragraph of text and arranges it into lines to fit a layout. The paragraph composer creates the wax that represents the composed text. Plug-ins can introduce new paragraph composers. For more information, see [“Implementation notes for paragraph composers” on page 372](#).

The text-composition architecture is designed for paragraph-based composition. The most significant implication of this design is that any change to text or attributes results in at least one paragraph’s composition information being re-evaluated. For example, inserting one character into a paragraph potentially can result in changes to any or all the line breaks in the paragraph, including those preceding the inserted character.

Shuffling

Avoiding recomposition of text and simply moving existing wax lines up or down is called *shuffling*. The performance improvement gained by shuffling is significant.

The wax strand can determine if a wax line was damaged because of something that occurred around the wax line and not because the range of text it represents changed, in which case the wax strand knows that the net result of recomposing the text is simply to move the wax line up or down. The content of the wax line after recomposition is identical to its current content.

For example, if you select and delete an entire paragraph of text, the next paragraph has not changed and does not need to be recomposed. By pulling the following paragraph up to the position occupied by the deleted paragraph, the wax strand avoids the cost of recomposition.

When shuffling, the wax strand implements some of the behaviors of a paragraph composer, like dealing with space before and after paragraph attributes.

Vertical justification

Vertical justification moves wax lines up and down within the container that displays them, according to rules. For example, the lines can be justified to the top, center, or bottom. They also can be justified to fill the available space. The wax strand is responsible for vertical justification, and this mechanism is not extensible by third-party plug-ins.

Background composition

Background composition looks for damage, then fixes it by calling for recomposition. Background composition runs in the background as an idle task (`IID_ICOMPOSITIONTHREAD` on `kSessionBoss`) and recomposes text. Each time background composition is called, it performs the following actions in priority order:

1. Recomposes visible frames of damaged stories in the frontmost document.
2. Recomposes other damaged stories in the frontmost document.
3. Recomposes damaged stories in other open documents.

The actions are performed until the time slice allocated for background text composition expires. Background composition requests recomposition by calling the `RecomposeUntil` method on `IFrameListComposer`.

Recomposition transactional model

Plug-ins use commands to update the input data that drives text composition (the text model and text layout). The commands cause damage to occur. Recomposition subsequently recomposes the text and generates the wax to reflect the changes. Recomposition does not execute within the scope of a command; instead, the wax strand begins and ends a database transaction around the recomposition process. This means recomposition cannot directly be undone; however, the commands used to update the input data are undoable. Undo causes damage, and recomposition repairs it to ensure the wax (the text displayed) reflects the state of the text model and text layout.

Recomposition notification

The `IRecomposedFrames` interface on the frame list (`kFrameListBoss`) keeps track of which frames are recomposed, so text frame observers can be notified when recomposition completes. When the `BroadcastRecompositionComplete` method is called, each affected column (`kFrameItemBoss`) receives notification that it was recomposed. Observers attach to the `kFrameItemBoss` in which they are interested and then watch for the `Update` method to be called with the `change == kRecomposeBoss` and `protocol == IID_IFRAMECOMPOSER`.

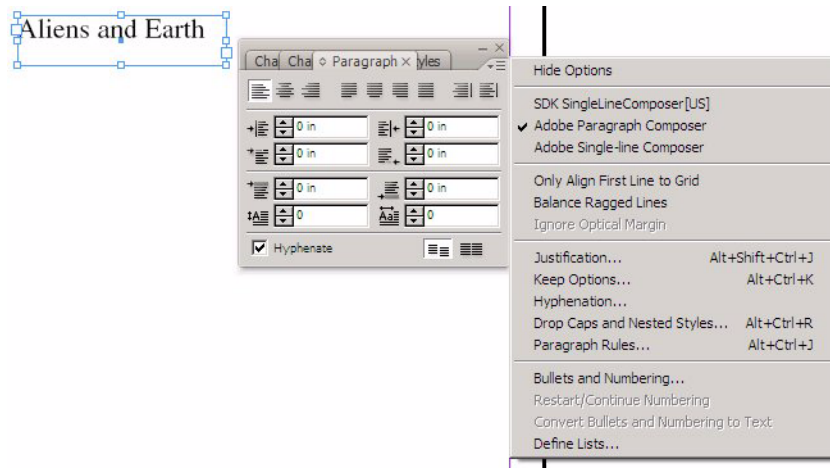
Implementation notes for paragraph composers

This section provides more in-depth background for software developers developing a custom paragraph composer for the application.

Paragraph composers

A paragraph composer (`IParagraphComposer`) takes up to a paragraph of text, arranges it into lines to fit a layout, and creates the wax that represents the text it composed. Plug-ins can introduce new paragraph composers.

The user selects the composer to be used for a paragraph from the menu on the Paragraph panel (see [Figure 165](#)) or by using the Paragraph Styles palette. Selecting a paragraph composer sets the `kTextAttrComposerBoss` paragraph attribute to indicate which paragraph composer to use.

FIGURE 165 Setting the paragraph composer

Hyphenation and justification (HnJ)

The term “hyphenation and justification” (‘HnJ’) often is used in computer systems to refer to breaking of text into lines and spacing of text so it aligns with the margins. This term is not used in this application’s API or documentation; however, the role performed by an HnJ system is similar to the role of a paragraph composer. Hyphenation is intimately associated with line breaking. In this application, the role is split out and implemented by a hyphenation service (IHyphenationService). A paragraph composer that needs to hyphenate a word uses a hyphenation service.

A paragraph composer’s environment

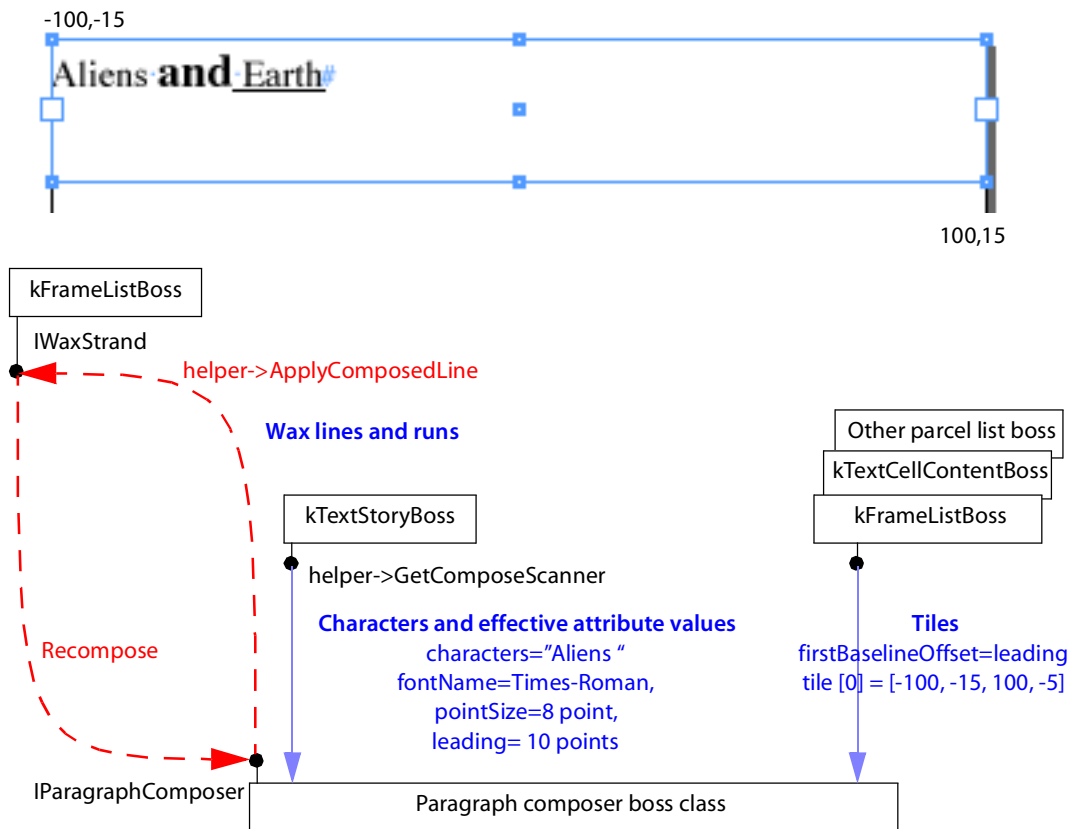
Paragraph composers are called by the text-composition subsystem. When text is to be recomposed, the wax strand examines the paragraph attribute `kTextAttrComposerBoss` that specifies the paragraph composer to be used, locates it through the service registry, and calls the `IParagraphComposer::Recompose` method. This call gives the paragraph composer a context stored in the helper class in which to work.

```
virtual bool16 Recompose(RecomposeHelper* helper)
```

The `RecomposeHelper` class is a wrapper of the story being recomposed. It stores information like the story’s compose scanner, tiler, starting index, text span, and position. The `RecomposeHelper` class definition is in `IParagraphComposer.h`.

[Figure 166](#) shows an example of a paragraph composer called to compose text.

FIGURE 166 Paragraph-composer environment



The following steps occur:

1. The paragraph composer composes the text and creates at least one wax line in the helper.
2. The paragraph composer accesses the character-code and text-attribute data for the story, using the `IComposeScanner` interface acquired from `helper->GetComposeScanner`.
3. The paragraph composer determines the areas in a line where glyphs can flow, using `IParagraphComposer::Tiler`.
4. The wax lines are applied to the `IWaxStrand` interface by calling `helper->ApplyComposedLine`.

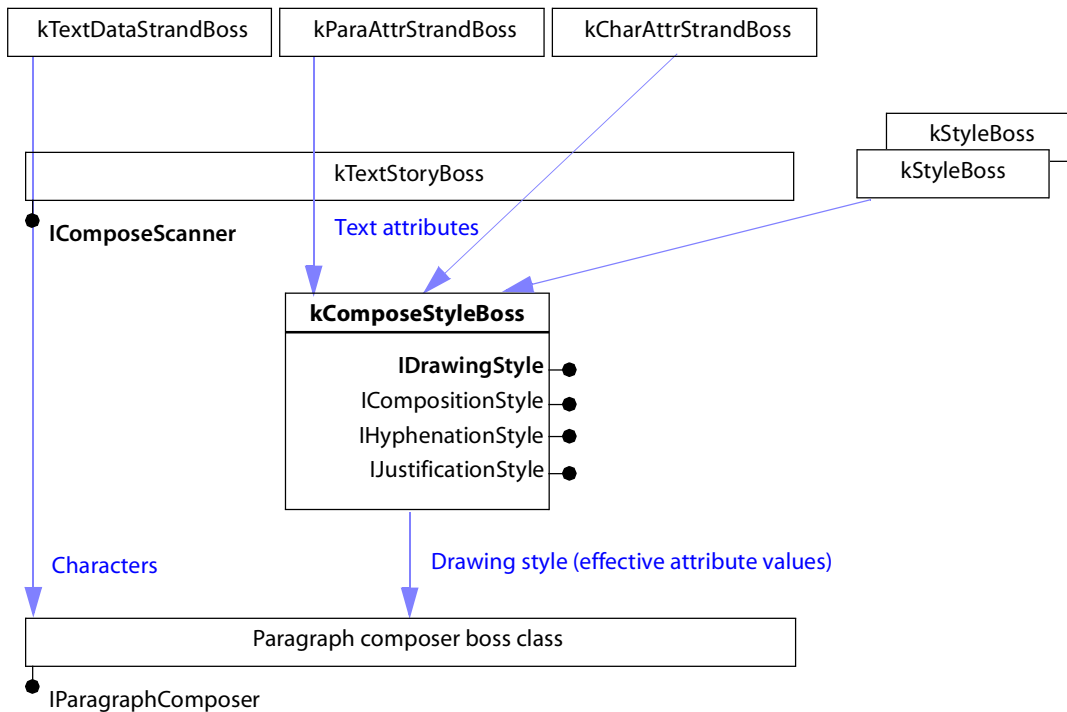
NOTE: Both `yPosition` and `tiles` are specified in the inner bounds (coordinate system) in `RecomposeHelper`.

The scanner and drawing style

The scanner (`IComposeScanner`) provides access to both character and formatting (text attributes) information from the text model, as shown in Figure 167. The drawing style (interface `IDrawingStyle`) represents the effective value of text attributes at a given index in the text

model. The drawing style cached by interfaces on `kComposeStyleBoss` considerably simplifies accessing text-attribute values. These interfaces remove the need to resolve text-attribute values from their representation in the text model and the text styles it references. A drawing style applies to at least one character. The range of characters it applies to is a run. For more information on styles and overrides, see “Text formatting” on page 324.

FIGURE 167 The scanner and drawing style

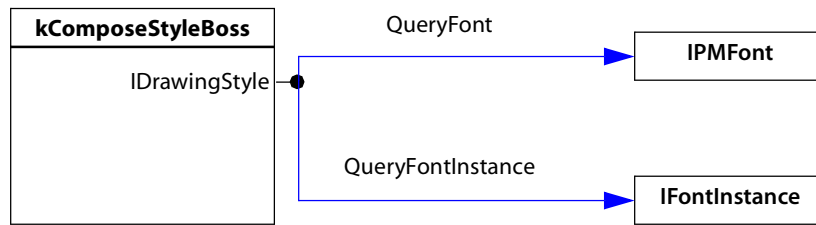


Fonts and glyphs

Fonts contain the glyphs that display characters for a typeface at a particular size. Paragraph composers use the drawing style (`IDrawingStyle`) to find the font to be used. The font APIs provide the metrics required to compose the text into lines composed of a run of glyphs for each stylistic run of text.

A *font* represents a typeface with a given size and style. A *typeface*, like Times, is the letters, numbers, and symbols that make up a design of type. A *glyph* is a shape in a font that is used to represent a character code on screen or paper. The most common example of a glyph is a letter, but the symbols and shapes in a font like ITC Zapf Dingbats also are glyphs. For more information, see Figure 168 and “Fonts” on page 389.

FIGURE 168 Accessing a font



Tiles

Tiles (IParagraphComposer::Tiler) represent the areas on a line into which text can flow. Normally, there is only one tile on a line; however, text wrap may cause intrusions that break up the places in the line where text can go. The tiler takes care of this, as well as accounting for the effect of irregularly shaped text containers.

Intrusions are the counterparts of tiles. Intrusions are not the inverse of tiles: they do not specify the areas in the line where text cannot be flowed. From the perspective of ITextTiler, an intrusion is a horizontal band within a frame, in which text flow within the bounding box of the frame may be interrupted. Intrusions can be used to optimize recomposition. An intrusion is a flag that indicates that text cannot be flowed into the entire width of a line. Intrusions are caused by text wrap and nonrectangular frames.

The tiles returned for a line depend on the y position where they are requested, their depth, and their minimum width. The intrusions and tiles for some sample text frames are shown in Figure 169 through Figure 173.

FIGURE 169 Text frame with no intrusions

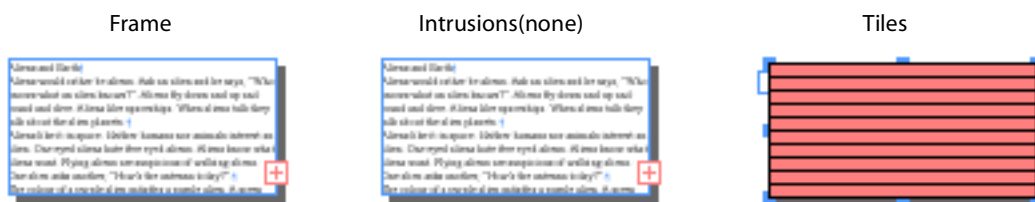


FIGURE 170 Effect of image frame with text wrap

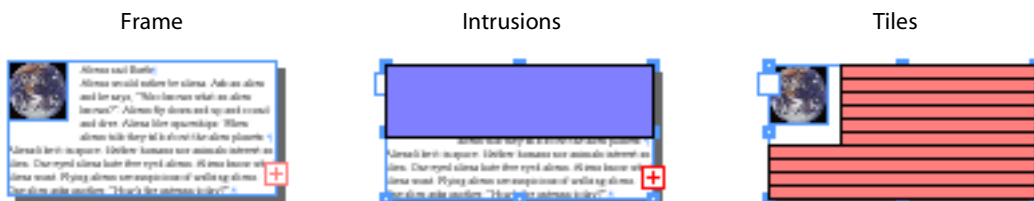
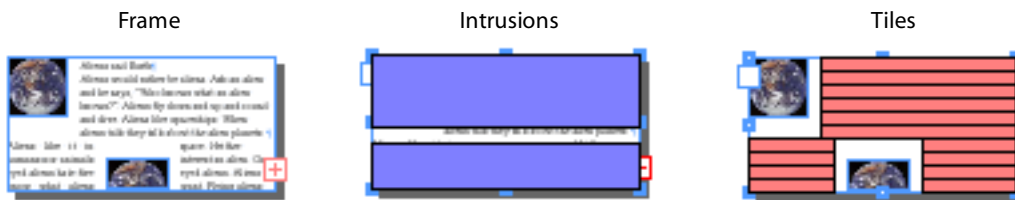
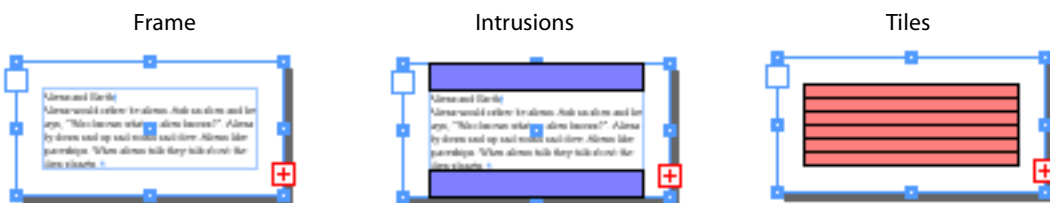
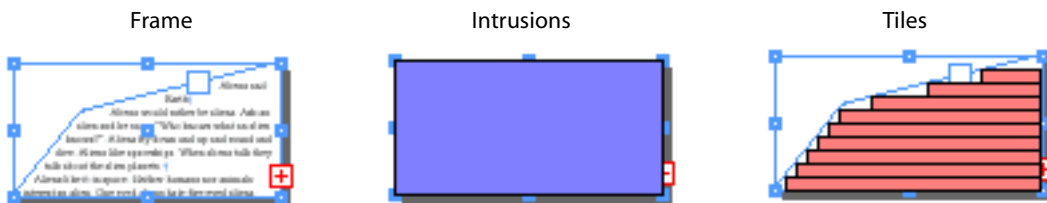
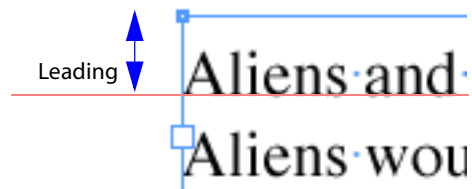


FIGURE 171 Effect of two images with text wrap**FIGURE 172** Effect of text inset**FIGURE 173** Effect of nonrectangular frame

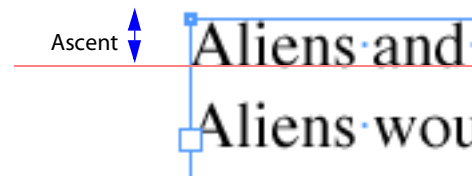
First-baseline offset

The first-baseline offset setting controls the distance between the top of a parcel or frame and the baseline of the first line of text it displays. Some sample settings are shown in [Figure 174](#).

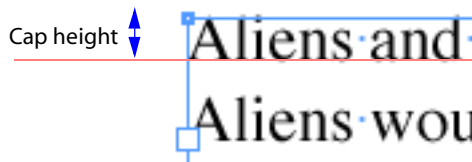
FIGURE 174 First-baseline offset examples

The setting controls the distance between the top inset of the frame and the baseline of the first line.

Use the largest leading on the line.



Use the largest ascent on the line. This makes the top of the tallest glyph fall below the top inset of the frame.



Use the largest Cap Height on the line. This makes the top of upper case letters touch the top inset of the frame.

Control characters

A paragraph composer can apply an appropriate behavior to correctly implement the semantic intent of many control characters. For a complete list of control-character codes, see `TextChar.h` in the API reference documentation.

Inline frames

Inline frames (`kInlineBoss`) allow frames to be embedded in the text flow. An inline frame behaves as if it were one text character and moves along with the text flow when the text is recomposed. The `kTextChar_ObjectReplacementCharacter` or `kTextChar_Inline` character is inserted into the text data strand to mark the position of the inline frame in the text. The inline frames are owned by the owned item strand (`kOwnedItemStrandBoss`) in the text model. Paragraph composers obtain the geometry of the frame associated with the `kInlineBoss` by using `ITextModel` to access this strand directly. Inline frames are represented in the wax by their own type of wax run, `kWaxILGRunBoss`.

Table frames

Table frames (`kTableFrameBoss`) are owned items anchored on a `kTextChar_Table` character embedded in the text flow. Paragraph composers can and do compose text displayed in table cells.; however, they never compose (create wax for) the character codes related to tables (`kTextChar_Table` and `kTextChar_TableContinued`). When a paragraph composer encounters either of these characters, it should create wax for any buffered text and return control to its caller.

Creating the wax

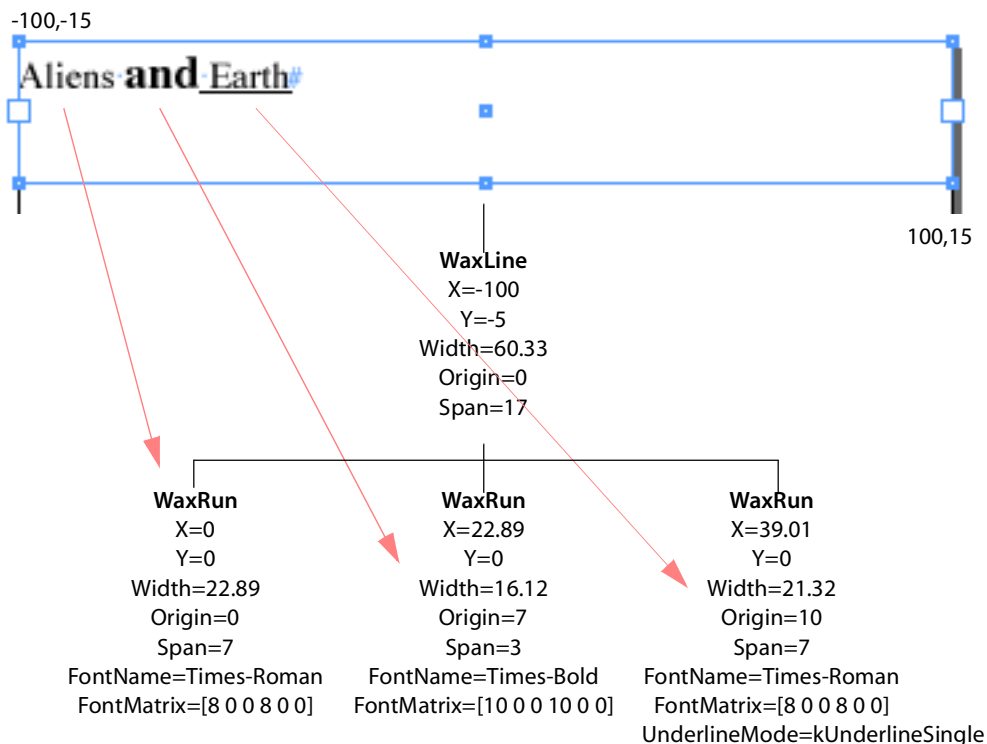
During the process of building lines, a paragraph composer normally uses an intermediate representation of the glyphs, so it can evaluate potential line-break points and adjust glyph widths. The specific arrangement used depends on the overall feature set of the paragraph composer and is beyond the scope of this document. Once the line-break decisions are made, the paragraph composer must create wax lines and runs.

For details of the mechanics of the creation of wax lines and runs, see “The wax” on page 354. Once created by a call to `RecomposeHelper::QueryNewWaxLine`, new wax lines are added to the wax strand for a story with the following call:

```
RecomposeHelper::ApplyComposedLine(IWaxLine* newLine, int32 newTextSpan)
```

Figure 175 shows an example of the wax generated by a paragraph composer.

FIGURE 175 Wax for a single line with format changes



Adobe paragraph composers

Figure 176 shows the paragraph composers provided by the application under the Roman feature set. Figure 177 shows the paragraph composers provided under the Japanese feature set. Paragraph composers are implemented as service providers (IK2ServiceProvider) and can be located using the service registry. The ServiceID used to identify paragraph composers is kTextEngineService.

FIGURE 176 Roman paragraph composers

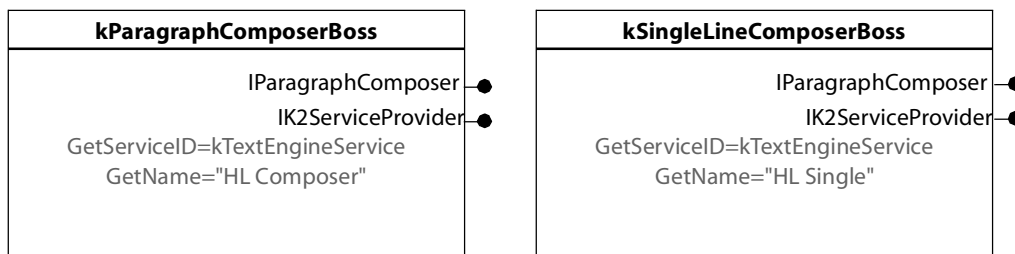
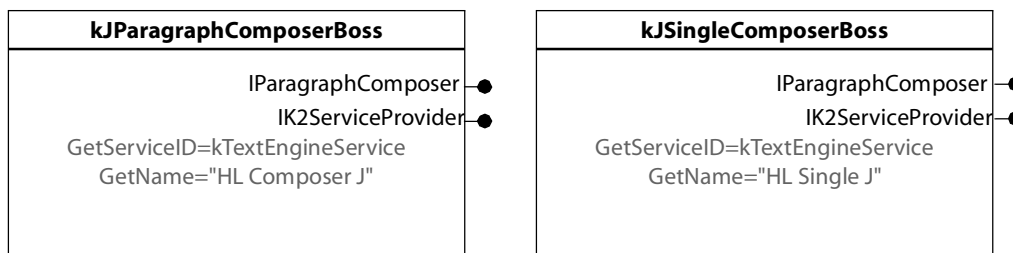


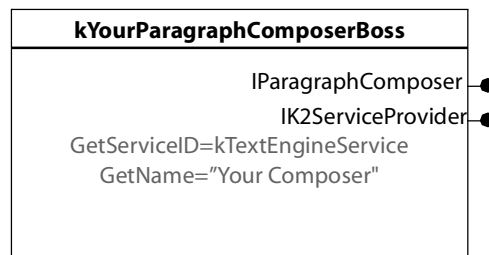
FIGURE 177 Japanese paragraph composers



Key APIs

Class diagram

Paragraph composers are boss classes that implement `IParagraphComposer`, the interface called by the application to compose text. To be recognized as a text composer, the boss class also must implement a text-engine service (`IK2ServiceProvider`) with a `ServiceID` of `kTextEngineService`. The service also must provide a name (a translatable string) for the paragraph composer, which is displayed in the user interface. As output, composers generate wax lines (`IWaxLine`) and associated wax runs (`IWaxRun`) for up to one paragraph of text at a time. Figure 178 shows the class diagram of a custom paragraph composer.

FIGURE 178 Custom paragraph composer

IParagraphComposer

There are two distinct phases to text composition, and `IParagraphComposer` reflects these roles:

- Positioning the line and, if necessary, deciding where text in the line should break. This information is represented persistently in the wax line. Features that affect line-break decisions belong here. This is the role of the `Recompose` method.
- Positioning glyphs that represent the characters in the line and, if necessary, adjusting their widths. This information is represented by a set of wax runs associated with the wax line. Wax runs are not persistent and must be rebuilt for display when a wax line is read from disk. Features that affect glyph position (paragraph alignment, justification, letter spacing, word spacing, and kerning) belong here. This is the role of the `RebuildLineToFit` method, which regenerates composed text data from the minimal data stored on disk.

`Recompose` is called when text needs to be fully recomposed. Each time this method is called, it should compose at least one line and at most one paragraph of text into the passed-in helper. `RecomposeHelper` actually does all the work, by creating wax starting from the character in the story indicated by `RecomposeHelper::GetStartingTextIndex`. The top of the area text flows into is given by `RecomposeHelper::GetStartingYPosition`, and composition is done using the supplied scanner and tiler. The wax lines generated as a result are applied to the given wax strand.

NOTE: The paragraph composer is expected to create at least one wax line each time `Recompose` is called, even when overset text is what is being composed.

`RebuildLineToFit` is called to regenerate the wax runs for a wax line from the minimal data stored on the disk. No line breaking or line positioning needs to be done here.

IComposeScanner

`IComposeScanner` is an interface aggregated on `kTextStoryBoss`. It provides methods that help access character and text-attribute information from the text model. It is the primary iterator for reading a story.

[Example 23](#) shows `QueryDataAt`, which gets a chunk of data from the text model starting from a given `TextIndex`. `QueryDataAt` is a primary method text composition uses to iterate through the text model. `QueryDataAt` returns a `TextIterator`, which has its own reference count on the chunk of data in the model, and thus makes the `TextModel` lifecycle independent of the com-

pose scanner cache. Optionally, `QueryDataAt` returns the drawing style and number of characters in the returned iterator. We recommend you always ask for the returned number of characters.

EXAMPLE 23 *IComposeScanner::QueryDataAt*

```
virtual TextIterator QueryDataAt (TextIndex position, IDrawingStyle** newstyle,
int32* numChars) = 0;
```

You also can acquire the drawing style by one of the methods listed in [Example 24](#). For more information on the methods in `IComposeScanner`, see the API reference documentation.

EXAMPLE 24 *Acquiring IDrawingStyle from IComposeScanner*

```
virtual IDrawingStyle* GetCompleteStyleAt
(TextIndex position, int32* lenleft = nil) = 0;

virtual IDrawingStyle* GetParagraphStyleAt
(TextIndex position, int32* lenleft = nil, TextIndex* paragraphStart = nil) = 0;
```

`QueryAttributeAt` allows callers to query the effective value of one or more particular text attributes at a given position. For more details, see the API reference documentation.

IDrawingStyle, ICompositionStyle, IHyphenationStyle, and IJustificationStyle

`IDrawingStyle` provides access to text-attribute values like font, point size, and leading. If the text property you want is not in `IDrawingStyle`, you will find it in one of the other style interfaces on `kComposeStyleBoss`.

For details, see the API reference documentation for `kComposeStyleBoss`, `IDrawingStyle`, `ICompositionStyle`, `IHyphenationStyle`, and `IJustificationStyle`.

IPMFont and IFontInstance

`IPMFont` encapsulates the `CoolType` font API. It represents a typeface and can generate instances (`IFontInstance`) of it at various point sizes. `IPMFont` is not based on `IPMUnknown`, but `IPMFont` is reference counted and can be used with `InterfacePtr`. For details, see the API reference documentation.

`IFontInstance` encapsulates the `CoolType` font-instance API. `IFontInstance` represents an instance of a typeface at a given size. `IFontInstance` is not based on `IPMUnknown`, but `IFontInstance` is reference counted and can be used with `InterfacePtr`.

`IFontInstance` controls the mapping from a character code (`UTF32TextChar`) into the identifier of its corresponding glyph (`GlyphID`). For details, see the API reference documentation.

IParagraphComposer::Tiler

`IParagraphComposer::Tiler` manages the tiles for a parcel list and is used by paragraph composers to determine the areas on a line into which text can flow (see “[Tiles](#)” on page 376). It controls the content area bounds of each line.

The `GetTiles` method is used to get the tiles. If `GetTiles` cannot find large enough tiles in the current parcel that meet all the requirements, it returns `kFalse` and should be called again to see

if the next parcel in the list can meet the request. If no parcel can meet the request, the tiler returns tiles into which overset text can flow.

GetTiles is a complex call to set up. To fully understand how to use it, see the API reference documentation and the text-composer samples (SingleLineComposer) provided in the SDK. The “TOP” abbreviation used in many of the parameter names is short for “top of parcel,” because when a line falls at the top of a parcel, special rules apply that govern its height (see “First-baseline offset” on page 377).

For Roman composers, a tile must be wide enough to receive one glyph plus any left and right line indents that are active. A heuristic often is used that approximates the minimum glyph width to be the same as the leading. The minimum tile height depends on the metric being used to compose the line. Normally this is leading, but the first line in a parcel is a special case in which the metric used may vary depending on the first-baseline offset (ascent, cap height, and leading) associated with the parcel. The pYOffset value indicates the top of the area for text to flow into. The pYOffset value actually is a position rather than an offset from the top of the parcel. The pYOffset value initially is the yPosition stored in RecomposeHelper when the IParagraphComposer::Recompose method is called. For more details, see the API reference documentation.

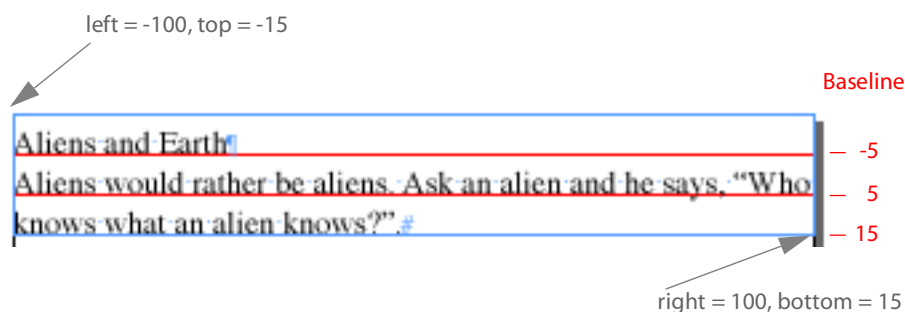
Scenarios

This section illustrates how text gets recomposed. The scenarios presented here demonstrate basic situations you may come across in developing a paragraph composer. To reduce complexity for these examples, assume the paragraph composer being called generates only one line for each call (a single-line composer).

Simple text composition

Figure 179 shows a composed text frame 200 points wide and 30 points deep, with its baseline grid shown. The text is 8-point Times Regular with 10-point leading, and the first-baseline offset for the frame is set to leading.

FIGURE 179 Simple text composition



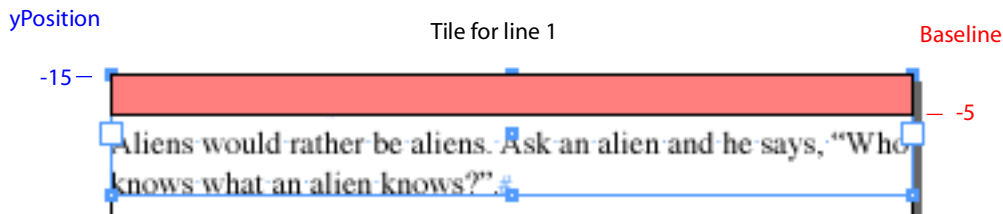
When text of the same appearance is flowed into the frame, the distance between the baselines of succeeding lines of text is set to the leading.

The wax strand examines the paragraph attribute that specifies which paragraph composer to use and locates it through the service registry. The paragraph composer is then asked to re-compose the story from the beginning, causing text to flow into the frame starting from the top by calling `IParagraphComposer::Recompose(helper)`.

The `yPosition` stored in the helper indicates the top of the area into which glyphs can flow. This is the baseline of the preceding line or the top of the parcel.

The composer examines the drawing style and its associated font and calculates the depth and width of the tiles it needs. The example uses 8-point text with 10-point leading and no line indents, so the minimum height and width is 10 points. The tiler is then requested for tiles of the required depth and minimum width at the given `yPosition`, and it returns the tile shown in [Figure 180](#).

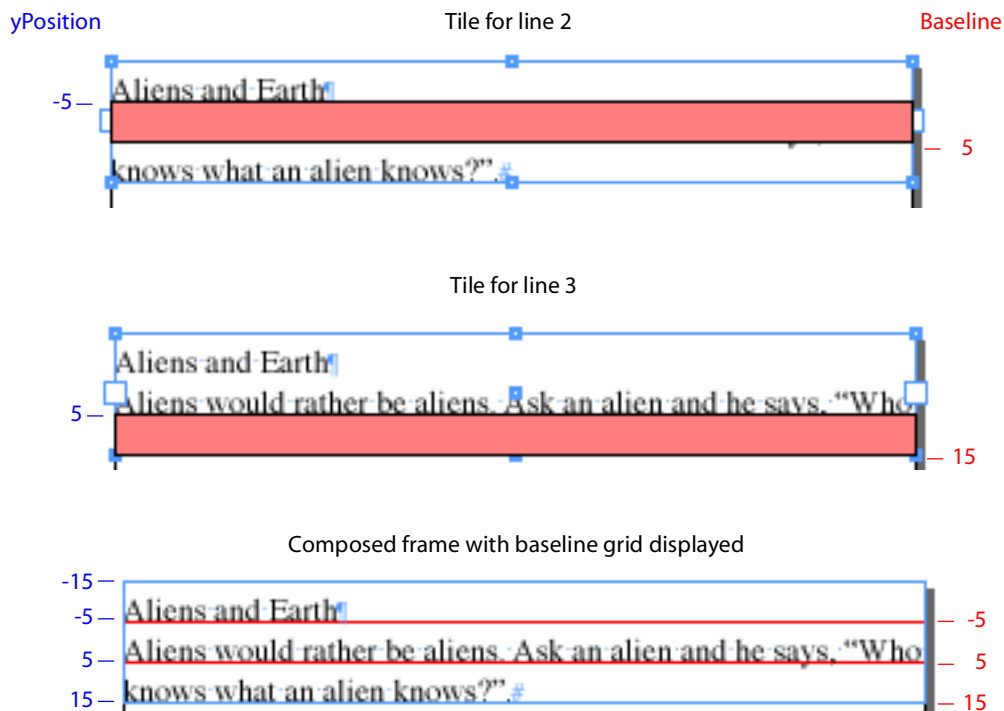
FIGURE 180 Tiles for the first line



The following sequence of actions then occurs:

1. The paragraph composer scans the text using `IComposeScanner`. Text flows into the tile until the tile is full or an end-of-line character is encountered.
2. The composer chooses where the line is to be broken and creates a wax line for the range of text the line will display.
3. The wax line is applied to the `IWaxStrand` and, as a side effect, the composer's `IParagraphComposer::RebuildLineToFit` method is called to generate wax runs for the line.
4. The `IParagraphComposer::Recompose` method is finished with its work and returns control to its caller.
5. The wax strand successively asks the paragraph composer to re-compose the second and third lines with `yPositions` of `-5` and `5`, respectively, until the text is fully composed.

The result is shown in [Figure 181](#). For more details, see the SDK sample code `SingleLineCompose`.

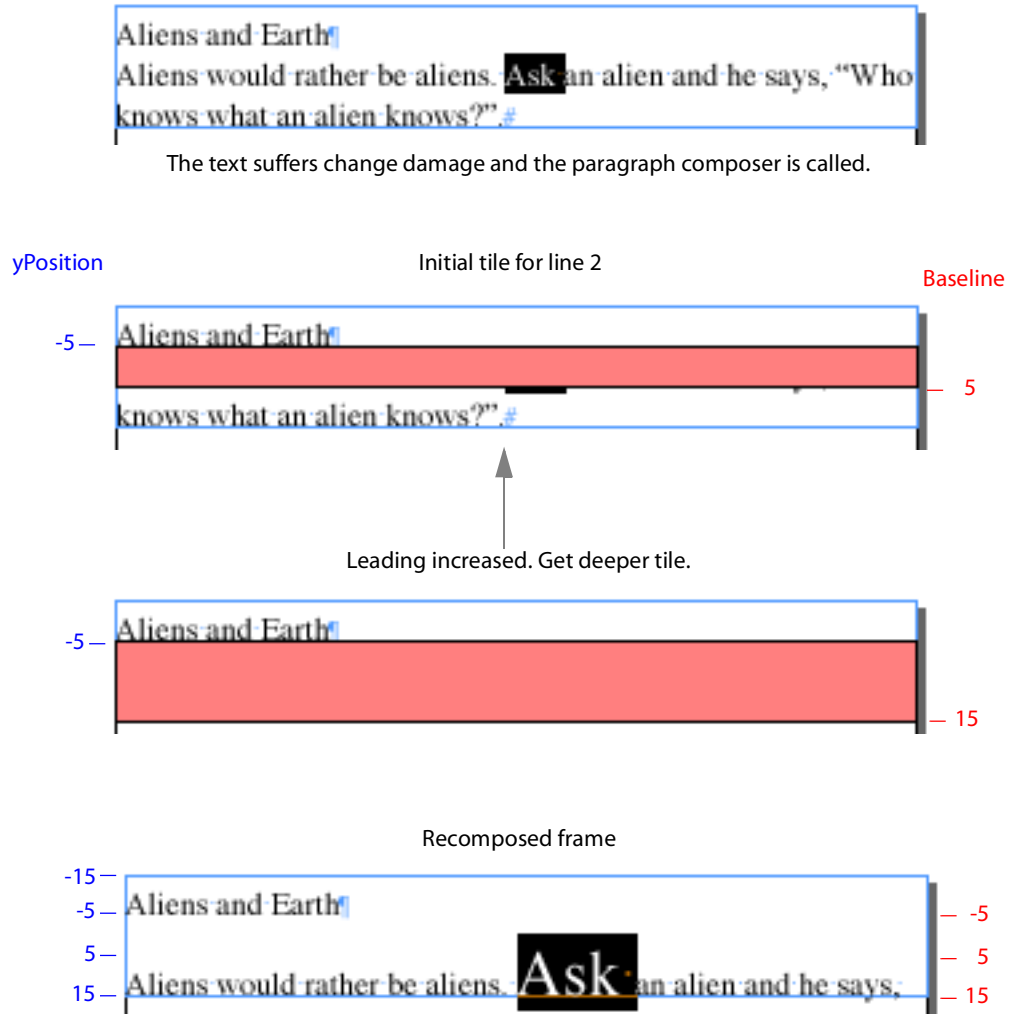
FIGURE 181 Tiles for the second and third lines

Change in text height on line

As a line is composed, attributes that control the height of the line, like point size and leading, may change. The baseline of the text must be set to reflect the largest value of the metric, such as leading or ascent, that is being used to compose the text. To achieve this, the composer asks the tiler for tiles deep enough to take text of a given height. If an increase in text height is encountered as composition proceeds along a line, the tiler needs to be asked for deeper tiles to accommodate the text. It is the composer's responsibility to ensure the parcel can receive the deeper text.

For example, if the point size for the word "Ask" is changed to 16 points and its leading to 20 points, the text suffers change damage. The resulting sequence of recomposition is shown in [Figure 182](#).

FIGURE 182 Changing point size and leading of selected text

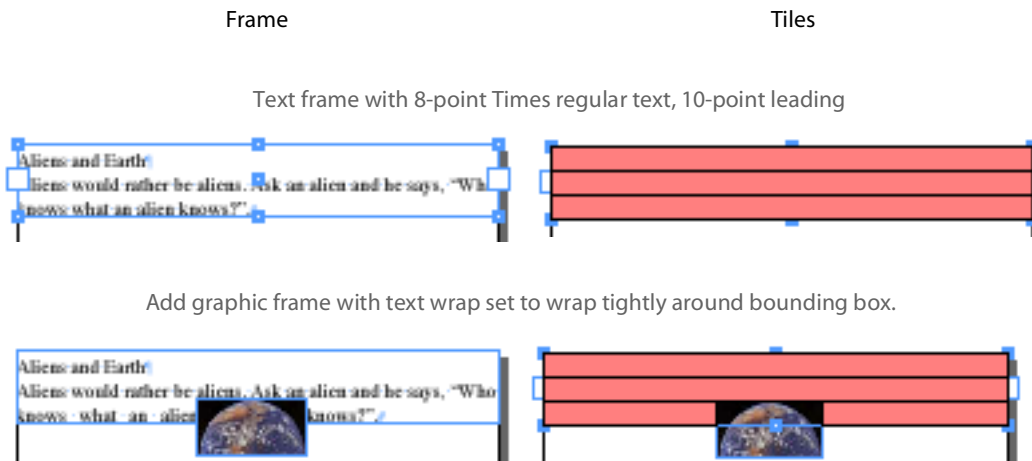


Initially, the composer encounters 8-point text on 10-point leading, and it requests tiles of an appropriate depth. When the composer hits the style change to 16-point text and 20-point leading, it goes back to the tiler and gets a deeper tile. When the style changes back to the smaller point size, the composer already has a tile deep enough to take this text, so it fills the tile with glyphs and breaks the line. Note how the baseline is set to reflect the largest leading value encountered in the line.

Text wrap

Depending on the `yPosition` and depth of the tiles needed, the text-wrap settings on other page items or a change to the shape of the frame may become significant during recomposition. To illustrate this, in [Figure 183](#), a graphic with text wrap is added to the simple text-frame arrangement.

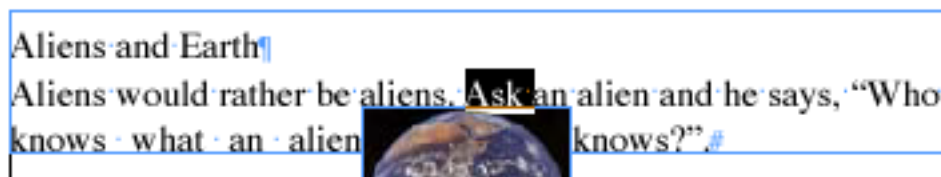
FIGURE 183 *Simple text wrap*



[Figure 183](#) shows the text frame and the tiles the 8-point text flows into with 10-point leading. Note that the third line in the frame is affected by the text wrap and flows around the bounding box of the graphic.

The following sequence illustrates what happens when the point size for “Ask” is changed to 12 points and its leading is changed to 14 points. The initial case is shown in [Figure 184](#).

FIGURE 184 *Changing the selection to 12-point text, 14-point leading*

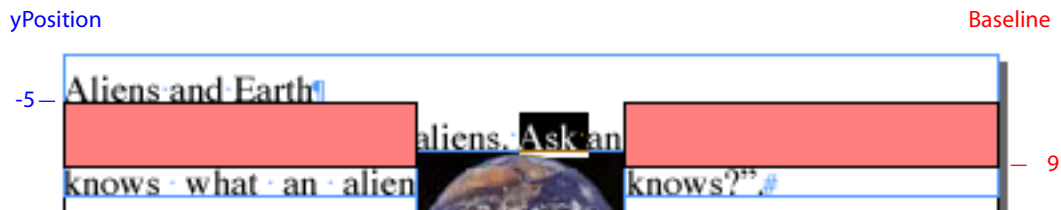


The wax strand picks up the change damage and asks the paragraph composer to recompose the first line of the second paragraph. The baseline of the first line of text in the frame, -5 points, is at the `yPosition` stored in the `RecomposeHelper`.

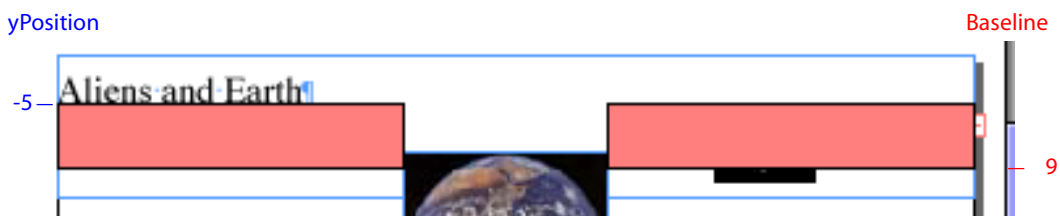
The paragraph composer gets tiles deep enough to take the initial leading value (10 points) it encounters on the line, as shown in [Figure 185](#).

FIGURE 185 *Composer begins to recompose*

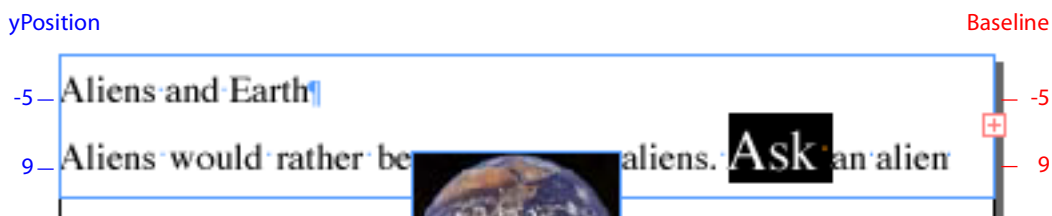
The paragraph composer then encounters the run of text with the changed point size and leading. Because the text is deeper than the tiles the paragraph composer obtained, the composer goes back to the tiler and asks for a new set of tiles to receive the deeper text. This is shown in [Figure 186](#).

FIGURE 186 *Composer asks for deeper tiles*

Because of the request for deeper tiles and the text-wrap setting on the graphic, the tiler returns the two tiles shown in [Figure 187](#), causing text to tightly wrap to the bounding box of the graphic.

FIGURE 187 *Deeper tiles*

The paragraph composer flows glyphs into the deeper tiles, generating a wax line with four wax runs: one for the tile to the left of the graphic and three in the tile to the right of the graphic. After this change, all text for the story cannot be displayed in the frame, so the story is overset, as shown in [Figure 188](#).

FIGURE 188 Fully recomposed frame

It is important to note that the tiles returned by the tiler depend on the `yPosition` within the frame for which they are requested and the depth asked for by the caller.

Frame too narrow or not deep enough

`IParagraphComposer::Recompose` must return a wax line each time it is called; however, it is possible a frame is too narrow to accommodate text, when either the indent settings for a paragraph are large or the text has a large point size. The result is *overset text*. Call the tiler (`IParagraphComposer::Tiler's GetTiles()`) repeatedly until it returns `kTrue`. The tiler iterates over all parcels; if none can accommodate the text, the tiler returns a tile into which *overset text* can flow.

Fonts

This section explains how fonts fit into the InDesign text architecture. Fonts provide the basic information required to render glyphs. A font is identified by a font name (e.g., “Minion Pro”) and a face or style name (e.g., “Bold” or “Heavy”). A rendered font also has a size; for example, this text is 11 pt (points). The font, along with the point size, is an instance of the font.

All rendered text in the application has an associated font. The operating system provides a set of font services, though fonts unique to the application can be maintained in the application fonts folder.

An application installation has a set of fonts available (from either the operating system or the application fonts folder). The font manager provides these fonts to the user while the document is being edited. There are times when the font manager gets a request for a font that is not available; for example, the font was removed from the system or the document was produced on a system with a different set of available fonts. The font manager resolves this situation by replacing the font with one that is available. The font manager warns the user when such a replacement occurs.

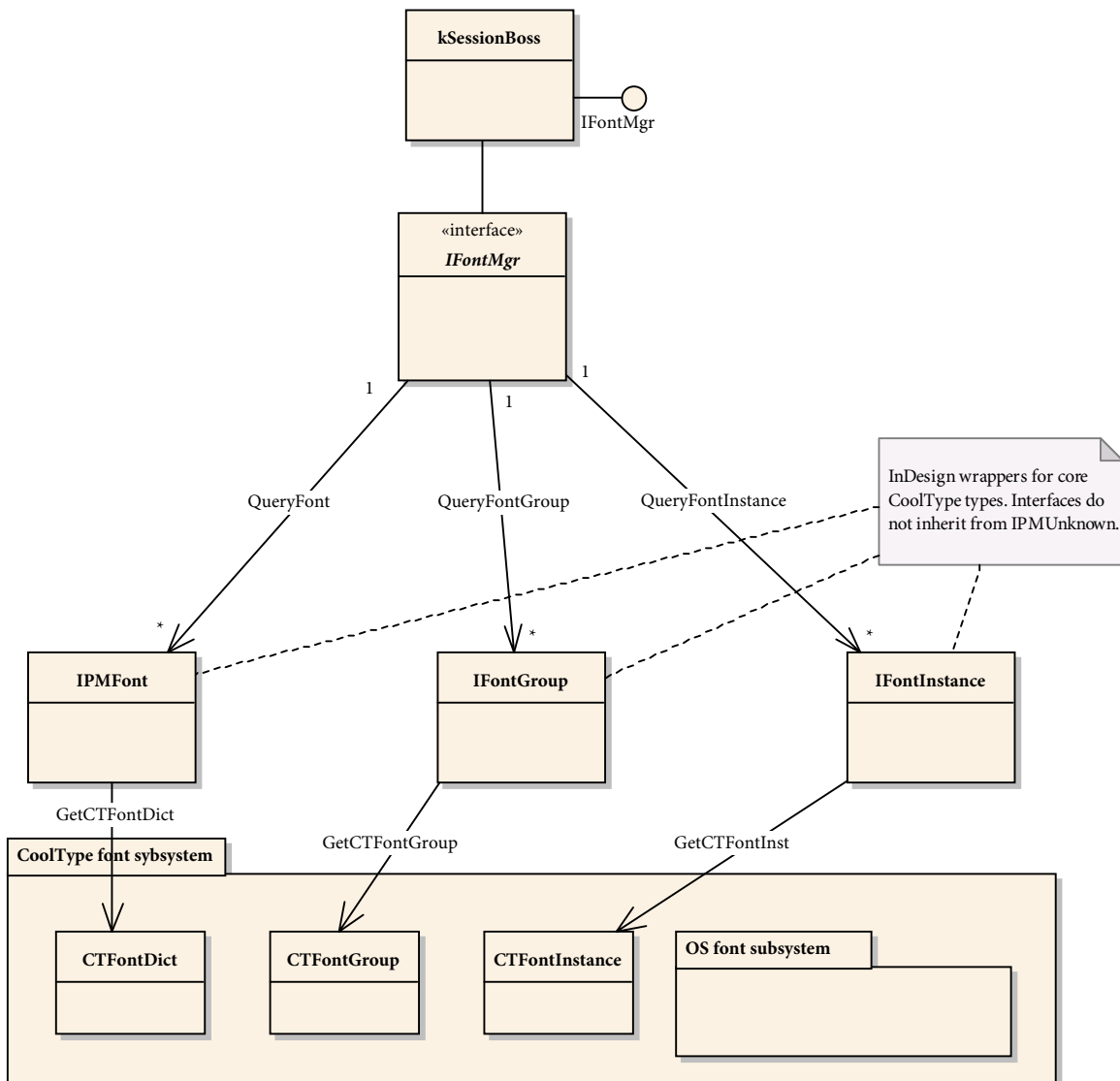
Fonts have rights, which determine what can be done with a particular font. For example, a font can indicate that it should not be embedded in a PDF document or it should not be printed. The font subsystem provides access to these rights and implements the policies required to adhere to these rights.

Font management within the application relies on a core piece of Adobe technology, CoolType. CoolType wraps the operating-system font services to provide a cross-platform abstraction and provides further services to clients.

Font-subsystem architecture

The application wraps the CoolType representation of fonts, font groups, and font instances with application-specific types. This is shown in [Figure 189](#).

FIGURE 189 Accessing CoolType fonts in the application



IFontMgr on kSession provides access to the CoolType font wrappers. IPMFont is the representation of a font, IFontGroup represents a group of related fonts, and IFontInstance represents a particular font at a particular point size.

Font manager

The font manager provides access to all font groups available to the application. Each font group allows you to access each font in the group. The IFontMgr interface is aggregated on kSessionBoss.

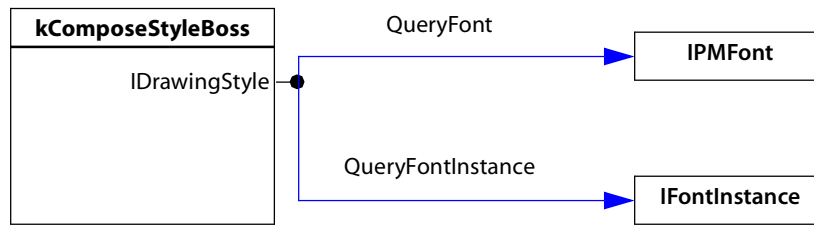
CoolType

CoolType is the core technology through which an application can access fonts. It automatically loads the fonts made available by the operating system. In addition, CoolType can load fonts directly from the common Adobe fonts folder and the Fonts folder inside the application's folder.

The API provides the IFontGroup, IPMFont, and IFontInstance interfaces as shells through which the application calls CoolType. These are not standard interfaces; that is, they do not derive from IPMUnknown. You cannot create them using CreateObject or query them for other interfaces; however, these interfaces are reference counted, and you can manage their lifetime using InterfacePtr. See [Table 96](#) and [Figure 190](#).

TABLE 96 Interfaces that use CoolType

Interface	Description	How to get the interface	Code snippet with example of use
IFontGroup	Represents all font groups available to the application	IFontMgr::QueryFontGroup, FontGroupIteratorCallBack	SnperformFontGroupIterator
IPMFont	Provides extensive data related to a particular font. IPMFont provides font-name mapping calls and access to font metrics at a given point size.	IFontMgr::QueryFont, IFontMgr::QueryFontPlatform, IFontFamily, text attributes kTextAttrFontUIDBoss and kTextAttrFontStyleBoss, IStoryService, IWaxRenderData	SninspectFontMgr
IFontInstance	Represents an instance of a font of a given point size. Of interest if you need to write a paragraph composer or map character codes to GlyphIDs.	IFontMgr, IDrawingStyle, IStoryService	SninsertGlyph

FIGURE 190 Accessing a font

Fonts are used when composing text, as fonts define the characteristics of individual glyphs. **kComposeStyleBoss** is used by the composition engine. The **IDrawingStyle** interface provides access to the font (**IPMFont**) and particular instance (**IFontInstance**) being used

Fonts within the document

Within a document, fonts are represented by the font name (plus information on font style and point size). When the actual font is required, the font manager resolves the name-to-font (**IPMFont** or **IFontInstance**) mapping.

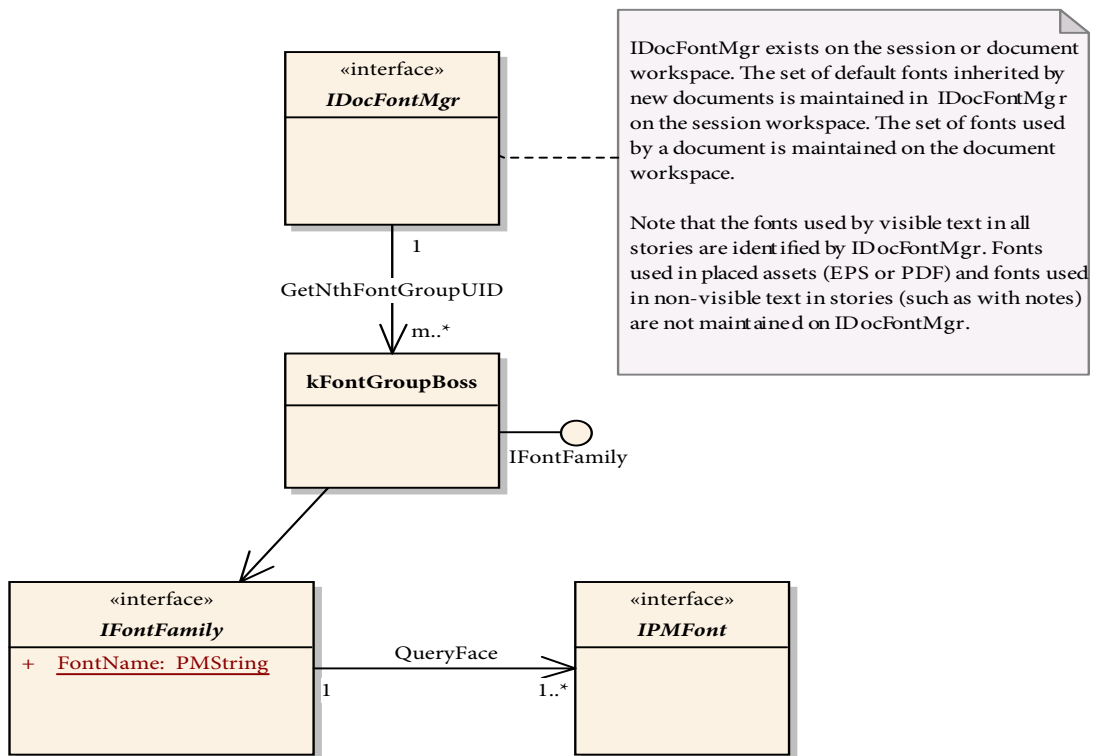
The document-font manager

The document-font manager (**IDocFontMgr**) provides access to all fonts that persist in a session or document workspace. The fonts that exist in a document include a set of default fonts, fonts used in visible stories, and fonts used for features that are modeled using the application text subsystem but not intended to be viewed or printed as part of a story (for example, text that exists in notes).

Fonts in the persistent document

Fonts are represented in the object model by **kFontGroupBoss** (signature interface **IFontFamily**). Each font used in a story results in an instance of this boss object. A font family along with a font style identifies a particular font in the font subsystem. The font family represents the name of the font (more correctly, the set of names that identify each font within a particular group). This decoupling between font and name in the document allows the font manager to resolve the font when required and take appropriate measures if the font is not available to the application. The relationship between font manager and fonts is shown in [Figure 191](#)

FIGURE 191 How fonts persist in a document



A font persists as a name, contained within a persistent implementation of IFontFamily. Access to these persistent objects is provided through the (session or document) workspace. IFontFamily::QueryFace requests the font from the font manager. If the returned IPMFont is non-nil, IPMFont::FontStatus can be used to determine the validity of the font.

A set of text within a story is associated with a particular font using standard text attributes.

The text attributes that refer to the font in which text appears are as follows:

- kTextAttrFontUIDBoss — ITextAttrUID gives the UID of the font family.
- kTextAttrFontStyleBoss — ITextAttrFont gives the name of the stylistic variant.
- kTextAttrPointSizeBoss — ITextAttrRealNumber gives the point size used.

The font family, along with the style of the font, identifies a particular font (IPMFont). The point size of the text is used to provide an instance of the font (IFontInstance).

Text attributes are introduced and described fully in “Text formatting” on page 324.

The used-font list

The used-font list (IUsedFontList) on a document (kDocBoss) details the fonts associated with story text. The used-font list does not include the fonts used in features that are not intended to be viewed or printed as part of a story (for example, text that exists in notes).

Fonts in placed assets

Placed (EPS or PDF) assets support the `IFontNames` interface. This interface reports the fonts used for the particular asset, including whether the asset depends on the presence of fonts on the system. Placed assets are maintained in the native asset's format (PDF or EPS), with the `IFontNames` interface providing access to information within the asset.

Document font use

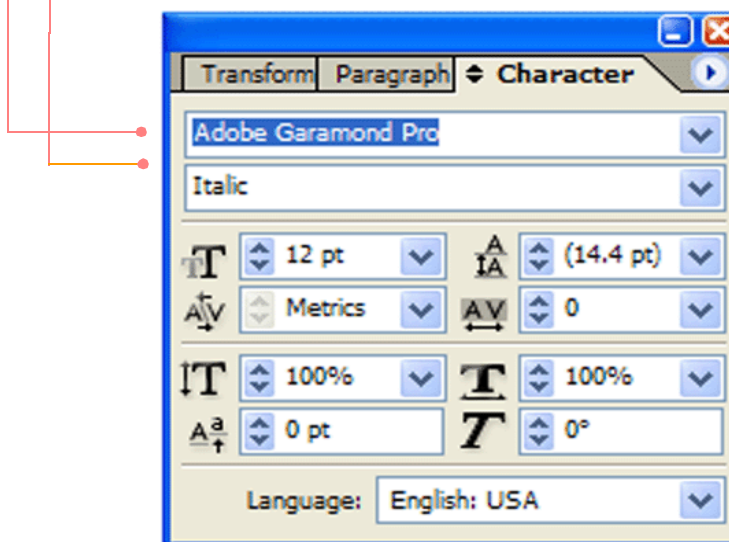
A utility interface (`IDocumentFontUsage`) on the document (`kDocBoss`) provides a facade over the two interfaces introduced above (`IUsedFontList` and `IFontNames`).

Font naming

Internally, application code uses PostScript font names. For example, `IPMFont::AppendFontName` returns the PostScript font name. If you know the PostScript name of the font you want, you can get the associated `IPMFont` using `IFontMgr::QueryFont`. Several other names are available on `IPMFont` and `IFontFamily`. For example, if you use `IFontMgr::QueryFont` to instantiate the PostScript font `AGaramond-Italic`, `IPMFont` gives you the names shown in the table in [Figure 192](#).

FIGURE 192 Font names

Name	Method	Example
PostScript font name	<code>IPMFont::AppendFontName</code>	<code>AGaramond-Italic</code>
Family name	<code>IPMFont::AppendFamilyName</code>	Adobe Garamond
Style name	<code>IPMFont::AppendStyleName</code>	Italic
	<code>IPMFont::AppendFullName</code>	Adobe Garamond Italic
	<code>IPMFont::AppendFamilyNameNative</code>	Adobe Garamond
	<code>IPMFont::AppendStyleNameNative</code>	Italic
	<code>IPMFont::AppendFullNameNative</code>	Adobe Garamond Italic



Notice the typeface name Adobe Garamond Pro in the panel in [Figure 192](#) does not match the family name in the table. This is because `ITextUtils::GetDisplayFontNames` supplies the platform-specific name in the Character panel. If you do not have the PostScript font name but know the name of the typeface on a given platform (the typeface name in Windows or the family name in Mac OS), `IFontMgr::QueryFontPlatform` returns the corresponding `IPMFont`.

Font warnings

The `IDocumentFontUsage` interface (on `kDocBoss`) manages used-font and missing-font information for text in stories of a document. The `IDocumentFontUsage` interface does not detail fonts used by features that rely on the application text model but are not rendered as part of the document (for example, notes).

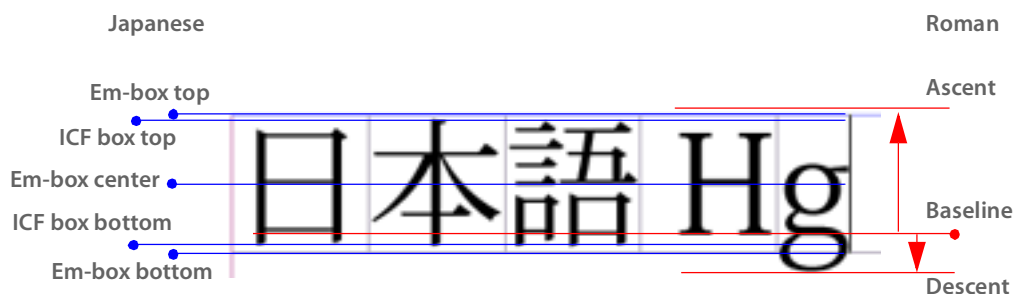
The `IMissingFontSignalData` interface provides data sent with the missing-font signal (of which responders of type `kMissingFontSignalResponderService` are notified).

The `IFontUseWarningManager` interface can be called to check a particular font and possibly warn the user about restrictions. Examples are restrictions based on user preferences or because a font is a bitmap.

Composite fonts and international-font issues

Some languages too many glyphs to be contained in a font; for example, Japanese contains about 50,000. To accommodate this, font developers create fonts with subsets of glyphs. Also, there is a desire within typography to replace some glyphs with others to achieve a certain visual effect. And users might want to shift the position of Roman glyphs relative to the baseline or enlarge or reduce the size of glyphs. See [Figure 193](#).

FIGURE 193 Japanese and Roman typography metrics



The `ICompositeFont` interface creates a new font composed of base fonts and provides for size and positioning adjustments. Font switching is based on Unicode values. The base font must be a Chinese, Japanese, or Korean font. For examples of using `ICompositeFont`, see the `SnppPerformCompFont` code snippet. An application can get this interface using any of the following:

- `IStyleNameTable` (from the active workspace or document workspace)
- `InterfacePtr<IStyleNameTable> compFontList(workspace, IID_ICOMPOSITEFONTLIST)`
- `InterfacePtr<ICompositeFont> rootTable(docDatabase, compFontList-> GetRootStyleUID(), IID_ICOMPOSITEFONT)`

Use the `ICompositeFontMgr` interface to manage composite fonts. For examples of its use, see the SDK code snippet `SnpPerformCompFont`.

The `IFontMetricsTable` interface obtains the correct `tsum` values (similar to side bearings on glyphs) around either the top and bottom or left and right of glyphs from the document originator and caches them. Later users (who might have only bitmaps of the fonts used to create the document) can use the `tsum` metrics saved in the document through this interface.

Tables

This chapter describes concepts and architecture related to the table feature of InDesign.

Table attributes are boss classes with ITableAttrReport implementation; they are discussed in “Table attributes” on page 407. Table and cell styles define a collection of table attributes that are appropriate for tables or cells. They can be applied to individual tables and cells. See “Table and cell styles” on page 409.

For information on how to work with table models and APIs, see the “Tables” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Concepts

Table structure

Tables in InDesign publications consist of rows, columns, and cells. Cells can span multiple rows or columns, as in the HTML 4 table model, which evolved from the CALS SGML table model.

There are helper classes in the InDesign API that are used to specify location, dimension of cells, and areas within tables. The abstractions used to specify these are shown in Figure 194. For this example, the resolution of the underlying grid is 4 (rows) by 3 (columns). Cells can consist of merged elements on this underlying grid.

FIGURE 194 Table-structure example

GridAddress(0,0) GridSpan(1,3)		
GridAddress(1,0) GridSpan(1,3)		
GridAddress(2,0) GridSpan (1,2)		GridAddress(2,2) GridSpan(1,1)
GridAddress(3,0) GridSpan(1,1)	GridAddress(3,1) GridSpan(1,1)	GridAddress(3,2) GridSpan(1,1)

Whole table:
GridArea(0,0,4,3)

Anchor cells versus grid elements

The top-left of a cell is its *anchor*.

A *grid element* is a unit on the underlying grid. Grid elements may or may not be anchor cells.

A cell can comprise multiple elements on the underlying grid, but there is at most one anchor point per cell.

To access the text content of a cell, some API methods require a `GridAddress` that refers to an anchor, whereas other methods can work with a grid element that is not necessarily an anchor.

GridAddress

The API helper class `GridAddress` identifies the location of cells within tables. `GridAddress` and the other `GridXXX` classes are defined in `TableTypes.h`. In `InDesign`, `GridCoord` is an alias for the primitive type `int32`. The non-default constructor for `GridAddress` is as follows:

```
GridAddress(GridCoord row, GridCoord column)
```

where *row* and *column* are the row and column, respectively, in which the top-left of the cell is located.

Another key concept is the underlying grid on which measurements are made, consisting of grid elements.

For example, if a cell is split by a vertical line, this increases the resolution of the grid in the horizontal direction. The resolution of the grid in a given direction is determined by projecting all cell boundaries onto an axis in that direction. Adding another vertical line means an additional projection onto the horizontal axis; i.e., an increase in horizontal grid resolution.

The grid lines are not uniformly distributed. The grid is rectilinear.

Determining what row a particular cell is in can become quite complex in a table with many split and merged cells; that is, tables with many nontrivial `GridSpan` values. The algorithm to determine the `GridAddress` for a particular cell is straightforward:

1. Determine the resolution of the underlying grid. For the horizontal direction, this can be calculated by projecting all vertical edges to the x-axis (top of the table). Similarly, for the vertical direction, project all horizontal edges to the y-axis (left of the table).
2. Calculate the coordinates on this grid. The process is shown in [Figure 195](#). The underlying grid is just fine enough so there are no cell edges that do not lie on an edge in this underlying grid. In the figure, the `GridAddress` of the red cell is (8, 9). The table has an underlying grid 12 rows wide and 11 columns high.

FIGURE 195 Complex table and underlying grid

									0
									1
									2
									3
									4
									5
									6
									7
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	8,9

The GridAddress of a cell can change even if its physical location does not change.

GridSpan

GridSpan is a class that represents the dimension of an area within a table, expressed as coverage of elements in the notional underlying grid. GridSpan has a constructor with two arguments:

```
GridSpan(int32 height, int32 width)
```

where *height* and *columns* are the numbers of rows and columns spanned, respectively (on the underlying grid).

When a table is created (e.g., using the Insert Table menu command), each cell in the table has the trivial GridSpan(1,1). The concept of GridSpan is illustrated in Figure 194, which shows the GridSpan for several cell configurations

The GridSpan of a given cell can change as more cells are added to a table—for example, by a cell being split vertically in a column that this cell spans—even if the physical dimension of the cell of interest does not vary. GridSpan for a cell is affected by changes in the columns spanned by a cell and the rows spanned by a cell.

Merging a pair of cells with trivial GridSpan(1,1) gives one cell with a GridSpan(2,1) if the cells are merged vertically and GridSpan(1,2) if the cells are merged horizontally.

Cells may be unmerged by selecting any merged cells—even the whole table—and choosing Unmerge Cells.

Splitting a cell with GridSpan(2,1) in the vertical direction gives two cells with trivial GridSpan(1,1). Splitting the cell horizontally leads to the GridSpan of other cells in the table being recalculated.

GridArea

The GridArea class is used to specify a region within a table. Like GridSpan and GridAddress, GridArea is calculated on the underlying grid. GridArea has a constructor with four arguments:

```
GridArea(GridCoord topRow, GridCoord leftColumn, GridCoord bottomRow, GridCoord rightColumn)
```

where:

- *topRow* is the row coordinate for the top-left of area.
- *leftColumn* is the column coordinate for the top-left of area.
- *bottomRow* is one greater than the lowest row contained in the area; i.e., the row immediately below the given area and outside it.
- *rightColumn* is one greater than the rightmost column contained in this area; i.e., the column immediately to the right of the given area and outside it.

The choice of using one greater than the last row or column allows for specifying an empty area in a simple way. That is, an empty GridArea can be specified by writing GridArea(0,0,0,0), for example.

Alternately, given the definition of GridArea, it is equivalent to the following:

```
GridArea(top, left, row-span, column-span)
```

Table and cell selection

You can select a whole table or cells within a table, allowing the selected cells to be deleted or their properties to be altered as a block. Alternately, you can select text within a table cell, allowing the text properties to be specified for this text run. This is shown in [Figure 196](#) and [Figure 197](#).

FIGURE 196 *Table cells selected*

Aliens and Earth Aliens would rather be aliens. Ask an alien and he says, "Who knows what an alien knows?". Aliens fly down and up and round and dive. Aliens like space-ships. When aliens talk they talk about the alien planets. Aliens like it in space. Neither humans nor animals interest an alien. One eyed aliens hate five eyed aliens. Aliens know what aliens want. Flying aliens are suspicious of walking aliens. One alien asks another, "How's the antenna today?"	The colour of a purple alien satisfies a purple alien. A green one says, "Why not be green?". Aliens tired of flying begin to walk. Small skinny aliens fly better than big fat aliens. Middle sized ones say, "It's nice to be neither fat nor skinny." Old ones teach young ones to say, "Don't believe in me unless you've seen me, felt me and lived on my planet.". When aliens go to war they fly shoot and hide, fly shoot and hide and so on. Aliens have never seen the earth and sometimes they ask, "What is this Earth we hear of?"
--	--

FIGURE 197 Table text selected

<p>Aliens and Earth Aliens would rather be aliens. Ask an alien and he says, "Who knows what an alien knows?" Aliens fly down and up and round and dive. Aliens like space-ships. When aliens talk they talk about the alien planets. Aliens like it in space. Neither humans nor animals interest an alien. One eyed aliens hate five eyed aliens. Aliens know what aliens want. Flying aliens are suspicious of walking aliens. One alien asks another, "How's the antenna today?"</p>	<p>The colour of a purple alien satisfies a purple alien. A green one says, "Why not be green?" Aliens tired of flying begin to walk. Small skinny aliens fly better than big fat aliens. Middle sized ones say, "It's nice to be neither fat nor skinny." Old ones teach young ones to say, "Don't believe in me unless you've seen me, felt me and lived on my planet." When aliens go to war they fly shoot and hide, fly shoot and hide and so on. Aliens have never seen the earth and sometimes they ask, "What is this Earth we hear of?"</p>
--	---

The selection manager hides the detail of the particular selection type involved from client code. The intent is that client code interact with the table model only indirectly, through the integrator suite interfaces, which present a uniform facade to client code. When the cursor is within a table cell, InDesign can perform operations for any of the three selection types: text selection, cell selection, and table selection.

Some operations are possible only with table cells selected; for example, the Merge Cells command is enabled only when multiple table cells are selected.

Table composition

Typically, a table is associated with a text frame. One text frame can contain multiple tables.

The table composer flows the row content of tables between table frames. Once a table becomes too deep for the containing text frame, rows from the table may be flowed to another text frame, if there is one linked to the current table's text frame. Only whole rows are flowed by the table composer.

Text composition within a table cell uses the same text-composition engines that operates over normal text (i.e., text outside tables). For more information on text composition, see the "Text Fundamentals" chapter.

A text frame that contains one or more table rows that are too deep to display is marked as overset. The overset rows can be flowed to another text frame by linking the frames, exactly as for overset text. The visual indicator for table cell overset is drawn as a text adornment.

Tables can be wider than the containing text frame; table rows, on the other hand, flow between linked cells, or the frame is marked as overset.

Table region

A table can be viewed as composed of regions: header rows, footer rows, left column, right column, and body rows. When inserting a table, headers and footers can be specified in the Insert Table dialog box. A table style can set different cell styles for each region.

Design and architecture

Table model versus text model

Text-model extensions for tables

The basic text model API is extended to accommodate tables. `kTextStoryBoss` aggregates interfaces to support the abstraction of text-story threads, which are spans of characters that represent the text content of one cell. The text-story thread interface (`ITextStoryThread`) is aggregated on the `kTextStoryBoss` class, which is used to represent the main text flow within a story designated as the primary story thread.

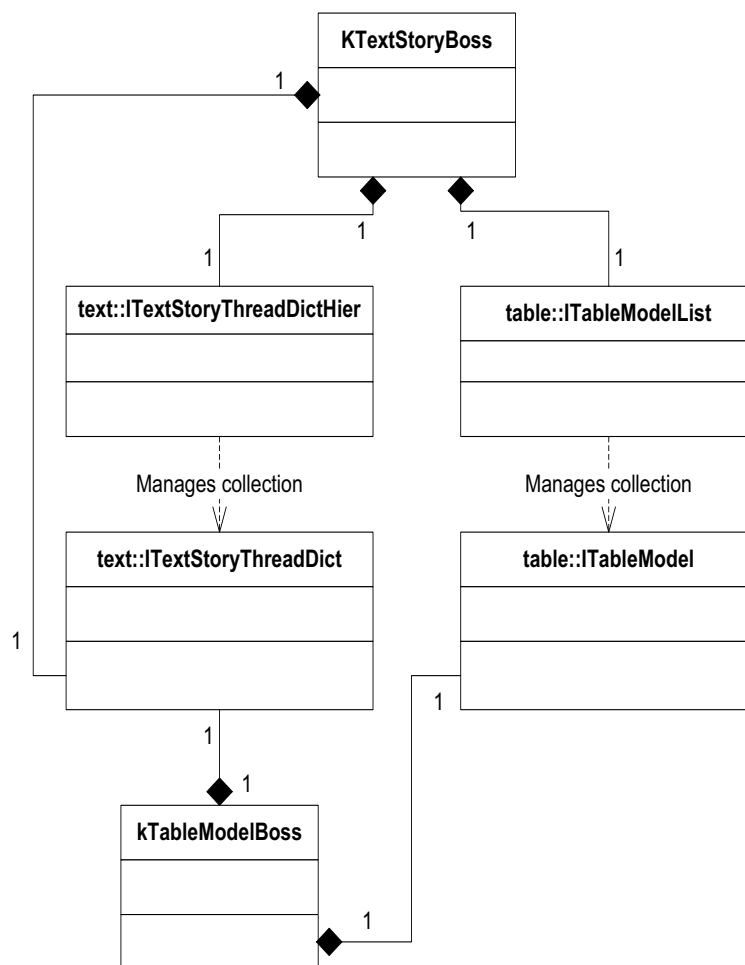
Many higher-level APIs make it possible to manipulate the content of text cells without having to manipulate the underlying text model directly. The essential API for this is the `ITableTextContent` interface, which is aggregated on the `kTableModelBoss` class. This provides a mechanism to get and set table text in chunks.

How tables are connected to text

The `kTextStoryBoss` boss class is the fundamental class that represents the textual content of stories. For more information, see the “Text Fundamentals” chapter.

A story can contain zero or more tables. Tables can be nested within tables to an arbitrary depth. The text-model interface (`ITextModel`) is the fundamental API to interact with stories; for every table, there is an embedding story. An `ITextModel` interface can be used to obtain the text-cell contents. The UML diagram in [Figure 198](#) is a graphical representation of the relationship between the story and table models. It shows other key abstractions, such as the table-model list and the `TextStoryThreadDictHier`.

FIGURE 198 Relation between story and table models



Text and tables are connected in two ways:

- Through the table-model list (ITableModelList, aggregated on kTextStoryBoss). This is relatively straightforward to understand, but it may be deprecated in future versions of the API.
- Through ITextStoryThreadDictHier. This is more complex to understand, but it represents the new architecture and will be a more dependable API moving forward.

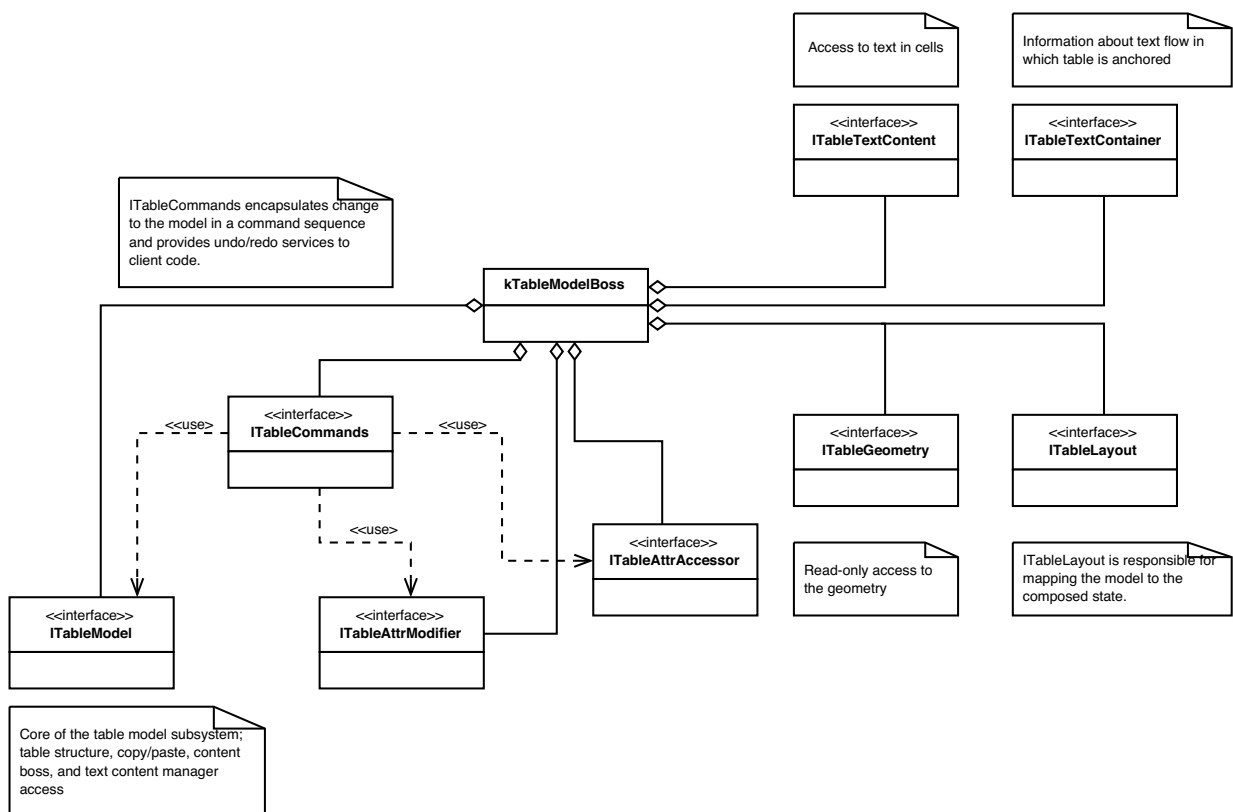
Obtaining a reference to ITableModel through the table model list meant making a series of API calls by client code to navigate the table architecture. The alternative scheme to obtain a reference to an ITableModel has a starting point of an ITextModel interface on a kTextStoryBoss object. The difference is that there is no dependence on ITableModelList.

Another API that allows connections between tables and text to be explored is ITableTextContainer. Given a table, ITableTextContainer allows client code to determine the embedding text model. This interface is aggregated on kTableModelBoss.

Table data model

A key abstraction in the table model is the `kTableModelBoss` boss class. Among other things, this class encapsulates the data model for a table, allows iteration over the cells in a table, allows access and modification of the attributes of a table, and provides access to the text chunks (or other content) in a table. It provides APIs that enable copy, paste, and deletion of content and access to the geometry of the table. For some of the key interfaces aggregated on the boss class, see [Figure 199](#).

FIGURE 199 Interfaces on the `kTableModelBoss` boss class



NOTE: Plug-in (client) code that uses the API exposed through interfaces aggregated on the `kTableModelBoss` class should be written to use the selection suites and facades.

The `kTableModelBoss` boss class aggregates interfaces like `ITableModel`. This interface has methods to obtain table iterators; these can be used to navigate a table or iterate through a specific `GridArea` within a table. These are STL-like iterators, supporting both forward and reverse iteration.

The `ITableAttrAccessor` and `ITableAttrModifier` interfaces also are aggregated on `kTableModelBoss`. These provide detailed queries over the set of table attributes and allow applying overrides to table and cell attributes. In practice, most of the capability required for client code to

query attributes and apply overrides is provided by the more convenient suite interface, `ITableSuite`. `ITableAttrModifier` is not likely to be used directly by client code; all the capabilities exposed by this interface are available through methods on `ITableCommands`, which wrap changes to the document object model in a command sequence in a clean and convenient way for client code to use. Client code should use `ITableCommands` (rather than `ITableAttrModifier`). See the API Reference for details of the interfaces aggregated on `kTableModelBoss`.

The `ITableTextContent` interface is aggregated on `kTableModelBoss`; this allows the text contained within cells to be accessed. Do not confuse this interface with `ITableTextContainer`, which is a fundamental API that represents the connection between a table and the story (`kTextStoryBoss`) within which it is embedded.

The `kTableModelBoss` class represents the data model for an entire table. A table is composed into a set of table frames (`kTableFrameBoss`) by the table composer.

`<SDK>/source/sdksamples/tablebasics` indicates how to acquire a reference to a table model. This code is in the context of a suite implementation that was added to a concrete-selection boss class.

Table layout

`ITableLayout` on `kTableModelBoss` provides detailed information about the layout of the table. `ITableLayout` centralizes the persistent data into one implementation and contains several subclasses responsible for maintaining table layout information, like `Row` (representing the composed state of table-model rows), `Frame` (mapped to one persistent `kTableFrameBoss` object), and `Parcel` (holding information about `IParcel`). `ITableLayout` also provides iterators to access these layout elements. For example, `ITableFrame` can be obtained from `ITableLayout` using the following snippet:

```
// Assume that iTableModel is a valid table model interface ptr.
InterfacePtr<ITableLayout> tableLayout(iTableModel , UseDefaultIID());
ITableLayout::frame_iterator frameIter = tableLayout->begin_frame_iterator();
ITableLayout::frame_iterator endFrameIter = tableLayout->end_frame_iterator();
while(frameIter != endFrameIter)
{
    InterfacePtr<ITableFrame> tableFrame(frameIter->QueryFrame());
    ...
}
```

The `ITableLayout::Row` subclass represents the partial mapping of a model row to a table frame (represented by the `kTableFrameBoss`). For each model row, there is one or more corresponding table layout rows. Each row contains information for each parcel owned by a table cell, like the `GridCoord` of the model row it maps and the `UID` of the table frame with which it is associated. Each layout row is associated with one table frame.

`ITableLayout` is responsible for the lifetime management of table frames. Besides containing the layout rows, the table frame also is responsible for maintaining the link back to the containing `Parcel` and associated `ParcelList`.

Table frames

The rows in a table may not all fit in one text frame. The table composer groups as many rows as will fit into the first text frame, the second text frame, and so on. A table with many rows may be spread across multiple, linked, text frames.

These groups of rows are *table frames*. Each row is part of one and only one table frame.

A table is divided into one or more table frames, spread across one or more text frames. A table frame (represented by the `kTableFrameBoss` boss class) is a collection of rows within a text frame. There can be multiple table frames within a text frame (if the text frame contains multiple tables), so there are at least as many table frames as text frames.

An occurrence of a table frame leads to its UID for the corresponding `kTableFrameBoss` object appearing in the owned item strand.

Tables can have an arbitrary number of table frames, split between linked text frames. If rows cannot be displayed within the last linked frame in the series, the frame is marked as overset. For each text frame, there is a corresponding table frame that represents the collection of rows being displayed within the given text frame.

For each row of a table, there is an occurrence of the `kTextChar_Table` or `kTextChar_TableContinued` character in the text data strand. For more information, see the “Text Fundamentals” chapter.

Cell data model

Cell-content managers

The table architecture supports having different cell-content managers. In practice, InDesign has only text cell-content manager (with behavior provided by `kTextCellContentMgrBoss`) and a dummy cell-content manager. (Future versions of InDesign may add canonical cell-content managers for content types like images.) You may add your own types of cell-content managers. The main responsibility of a cell-content manager is to implement the `ICellContentMgr` interface.

A cell-content manager is created during table creation. You can get the cell-content manager from the table via `ITableModel::QueryContentMgr()`.

Cell contents

Text cells (the only kind in InDesign) have behavior provided by the `kTextCellContentBoss` boss class. Instances of this boss class do not store the content directly but provide a convenient API on top of the table text model to allow its manipulation. It also is possible to quickly and conveniently manipulate the text content of a cell through the text model. In this case, API classes like `TextIterator` can be used to access a range within the text model.

To set cell text, the `ITableCommands::SetCellText` API method makes it straightforward to change the cell text at a given `GridAddress`. The `ITableCommands` interface is aggregated on `kTableModelBoss`.

Code snippets like `SnpAccessTableContent.cpp` show how to work with the APIs to access cell contents. See also the `TableBasics` plug-in and the `SnpSortTable.cpp` code snippet for examples of accessing and manipulating table text content.

Cell strands

The `kCellStrandBoss` cell strand provides storage for cell attributes and aggregates an `ITableStrand` interface. This abstraction is likely to be hidden from client code and should be treated as an implementation feature. Higher-level APIs, like `ITableAttrAccessor` and `ITableCommands`, provide methods to access and modify attributes without having to work at the lower level of representation of the table strand.

Table attributes

The table architecture supports extensible attributes with inheritance. Attributes can be applied to an entire table or one or more cells within a table, and there also are a small set of row-specific and column-specific attributes. As with the text subsystem, attributes are represented by boss classes. Table-attribute boss classes have names that follow the pattern `k<target-entity>Attr<property>Boss`, where `<target-entity>` is one of `Table`, `Cell`, `Row`, or `Column`. Some text-cell-specific attributes have `TextCell` in the attribute name.

The `ITableAttrReport::AppendDescription` method reports whether an attribute is a cell-specific, row-specific, column-specific, or table-specific attribute. To obtain information about the default value of each attribute, see the API reference documentation.

Table-specific attributes

A table attribute describes one property of an entire table. A table attribute is applied to the table itself; the attributes collectively define aspects of how the table should appear.

A table attribute is represented by a table attribute boss with a name that conforms to the pattern `kTableAttr<property>Boss`.

Row attributes

There are only a few row-specific attributes, which apply to a row or collection of rows within the table. Row attributes are represented by boss classes. For details, see `kRowAttrBaseBoss` in the API reference documentation. These are named to follow the pattern `kRowAttr<property>Boss`.

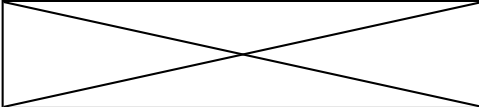


Column attributes


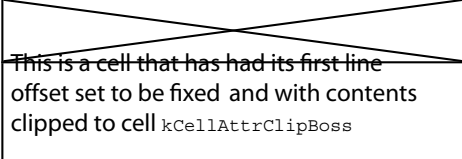
There are very few column-specific attributes. For details, see `kColAttrBaseBoss` in the API reference documentation. These are represented by boss classes, which are named to follow the pattern `kColAttr<property>Boss`.

Cell-specific attributes

There are a wide range of cell-specific attributes that can be overridden. These can be divided into those that apply to an entire cell and those that are specific to one border (bottom, left, right, top) of the cell. See [Figure 200](#).

FIGURE 200 Examples of cell-specific attributes

	This cell has an override (2p) for the bottom text inset <code>kCellAttrBottomInsetBoss</code>
This cell has an override for the bottom stroke color <code>kCellAttrBottomStrokeColorBoss</code>	This cell has an override for the bottom tint <code>kCellAttrBottomStrokeTintBoss</code>
This cell has an override (4 pt) for the bottom stroke weight <code>kCellAttrBottomStrokeWeightBoss</code>	This cell has no overrides.
	

	This cell has an override for the rotation (90 deg.) <code>kCellAttrRotationBoss</code>
This cell has an override for the cell fill color <code>kCellAttrFillColorBoss</code>	This cell has an override for a diagonal tint <code>kCellAttrDiagnolTintBoss</code>
	This is a cell that has had its first line offset set to be fixed and with contents clipped to cell <code>kCellAttrClipBoss</code>
This cell has an inline graphic and some text that flows around it. It has a diagonal in front of the cell contents <code>kCellAttrDiagnolsOnTopBoss</code>	This cell has an inline graphic and some text that flows around it. It has a diagonal behind the cell contents <code>kCellAttrDiagnolsOnTopBoss</code>

Text-cell-specific attributes

Some cell attributes apply only to text cells. Text cells are the only supported kind of cell in InDesign, but future versions may support other cell-content types, so text cells are not generic-cell attributes.

Text-cell attributes are represented by boss classes named to follow the pattern `kTextCellAttr<property>Boss`.

Default table attributes

The `ITableAttributes` interface is aggregated on the workspace (`kWorkspaceBoss` class) and the document workspace (`kDocWorkspaceBoss` class), with interface identifier `IID_IDEFAULTTABLEATTRIBUTES`.

When a new document is created, this root set of table attributes is applied to the document. This attribute list is further enhanced when the swatch list is available for the new document, since some of the attributes reference a swatch (black or none) by UID.

When a new table is created (by `kNewTableCmdBoss` class, an instance of which is created and executed through the `ITableCommands` interface on `kTableModelBoss`), the root table style is applied to the table.

Table and cell styles

A style can be considered a collection of attributes. Table and cell styles provide a mechanism to name and persist a particular set of table attributes.

Table style and cell style are analogous to paragraph style and character style in the text. Each style has an `AttributeBossList` list that maintains the set of attributes that apply to that style. Access to the attributes in a style is achieved through the `ITableAttributes` interface. Cell styles are associated with cell-specific attributes; however, table styles can be associated with both table attributes and cell-specific and other attributes.

Styles form a hierarchy rooted at the root style. Each style (except the root style) is based on a style. The `AttributeBossList` list for a particular style records only the differences from the style on which it is based; that is, the set of attributes the particular style overrides.

As with other types of styles, table and cell styles support the Style Group concept. Users can create, edit and delete folders (called Groups), in the table styles and cell styles palettes. Style group is a collection of styles or groups. The user also can nest groups inside groups and drag styles within the palette to edit the contents of a group. Styles do not need to be inside a group and can exist at the root level of the palette.

Table styles

A table style is represented by a `kTableStyleBoss`. Its `IStyleInfo` stores general, style-related information like style name and parent style. Its `ITableAttributes` interface stores a list of table attributes that are different from its parent.

The root table style (known in the application user interface as [No Table Style]) contains a complete set of default table attributes. This defines the default look of the table with no further formatting applied.

The application also defines a basic table style called [Basic Table]. The basic style cannot be deleted, but you can change it. Initially, the basic style is based on the root style; however, its parent style can be changed.

Table styles are accessible through the table-style group manager (signature interface `IStyleGroupManager` with interface identifier `IID_ITABLESTYLEGROUPMANAGER`) on the document (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`) and session (`kWorkspaceBoss`) workspace boss classes. When a document is created, its style group manager inherits the existing set of styles from the session workspace.

The `IStyleGroupManager` of the table styles works exactly the same way as that of paragraph and character styles. For details, see the “Text Fundamentals” chapter.

Cell styles

A cell style is represented by a `kCellStyleBoss`. Its `IStyleInfo` store general, style-related information like style name and parent style. Its `ITableAttributes` interface (with implementation `kCellStyleCellAttributeListImpl`) stores a list of cell-specific attributes that are different from its parent cell style.

The root cell style (known in the application user interface as [None]) is really nothing; in fact, it defines nothing. It is synonymous with the root character style. The root cell style cannot be deleted.

Cell styles are accessible through the cell-style group manager (signature interface `IStyleGroupManager` with interface identifier `IID_ICELLSTYLEGROUPMANAGER`) on the document (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`) and session (`kWorkspaceBoss`) workspace boss classes. When a document is created, its style group manager inherits the existing set of styles from the session workspace.

As with table styles, the `IStyleGroupManager` of the cell styles works the same way as that of paragraph and character styles. For details, see the “Text Fundamentals” chapter.

Regional cell styles

Each table style can assign different cell styles for different regions: headers rows, footers rows, first column, last column, and body rows. When a table style is applied to a table, these regional cell styles are applied to the appropriate regions.

Regional cell styles are considered as table attributes of a table style. Except for body rows, the values of two related attributes, “cell style” and “use body,” determine a regional style. See [Table 97](#).

TABLE 97 Regions and their controlling attributes

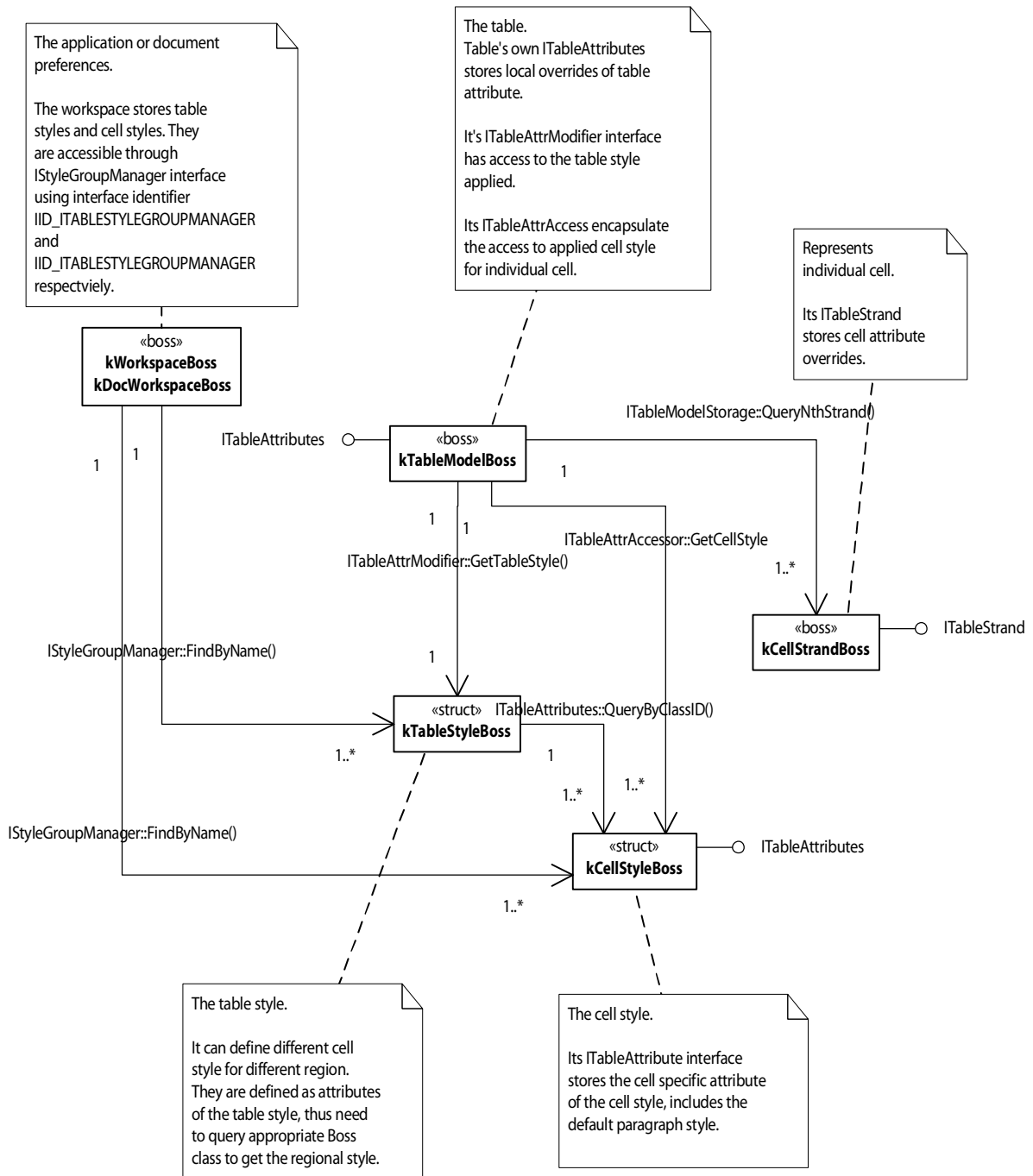
Region	Cell-style attribute boss	Use body attribute boss
Body rows	kTableAttrBodyCellStyleBoss	kInvalidClass
Header rows	kTableAttrHeaderCellStyleBoss	kTableAttrHeaderUseBodyCellStyleBoss
Footer rows	kTableAttrFooterCellStyleBoss	kTableAttrFooterUseBodyCellStyleBoss
Left column	kTableAttrLeftColCellStyleBoss	kTableAttrLeftColUseBodyCellStyleBoss
Right column	kTableAttrRightColCellStyleBoss	kTableAttrRightColUseBodyCellStyleBoss

To set a regional cell style, you need to create and apply an appropriate “cell style” attribute as well as create and apply an appropriate “use body” attribute (except for body rows). To get a regional cell style, you need to look for these attributes at the complete list of attributes. For more information, see the “Tables” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Table and cell style in the data model

[Figure 201](#) illustrates a simplified class diagram of table styles, cell styles, and their relationships to application/document workspaces and the table model. The descriptions of the boss classes give hints to navigate through these related classes.

FIGURE 201 Table and cell style



Formatting tables, cells, and table text

Formatting a table

Tables are formatted according to table-specific attributes. Every table is assigned a table style. `ITableAttributes`, aggregated on `kTableModelBoss`, provides coarse-grained access to the locally overridden attribute list for a particular table. For a given attribute (such as table stroke), `InDesign` follows these steps to format a table:

1. If there is a local override, format the table according to the override.
2. Otherwise, check the attributes in the table style of the table. If the attribute is among those attributes defined in `ITableAttributes` of `kTableStyleBoss`, format the table according to the value of the attribute defined in the table style.
3. Otherwise, check the table style's parent style, until either the attribute is found or the root table style (which defines all default attributes) is reached. Format the table according to the value of the attribute.

Formatting a cell

Cells are formatted according to cell-specific attributes, similar to tables. For a given cell attribute, `InDesign` follows these steps to format a cell:

1. If there is a local override, format the cell according to the override (which is defined in `ITableStrand` on `kCellStrandBoss`).
2. Otherwise, check the attribute against the attribute list of the cell style applied to the cell. To determine the cell style, check if a cell-style override is applied. If so, use the cell style; otherwise, use the regional cell style defined in the table style of the table.
3. As with table styles, if the attribute is among the attributes defined in `ITableAttributes` of `kCellStyleBoss`, format the cell according to the value of the attribute defined in the cell style. Otherwise, check the cell style's parent style, until either the attribute is found or the root cell style (where nothing is defined) is reached. Format the cell according to the value of the attribute or leave it as the default format.

Formatting text in a cell

It is helpful to view table attributes as equivalent to paragraph-level attributes for normal text, and cell attributes as equivalent to character-level attributes. The analogy holds insofar as the effective attributes are calculated by applying the following in the order listed below:

- Table-style attributes
- Table-level overrides
- Row or column cell style
- Cell overrides
- The paragraph style defined by the cell
- Paragraph override

- Character style
- Character overrides

To format a character in a table cell, InDesign looks at the reverse of the order above. An override always takes priority than a style; a smaller range style always takes priority over a coarse one.

TABLE 98 *Text-formatting priorities*

Overrides	Styles
Character overrides	Character styles
Paragraph overrides	Paragraph styles
Cell overrides	Cell style
Table overrides	Table style

A cell style can have a paragraph style used in the paragraphs of a cell to which the cell style is applied. If a cell style does not have a paragraph style defined, any cell that has that cell style applied to it will have all paragraph-style formatting removed.

Essential APIs

Table commands

`ITableCommands` is an interface that is aggregated by `kTableModelBoss` and provides methods to create and execute table-related commands, instead of having to manipulate the table model at a lower level. You can use `ITableCommands` to affect the table model on any specific table area. Some functions in `ITableCommands` also are provided by `ITableSuite`, which instead operates on the currently selected area of the table. For more details, see `ITableCommands` in the API reference documentation.

ITableSuite

`ITableSuite` is a key API for manipulating tables in client code. It provides much of the required capability for plug-ins, with the exception of insertion and retrieval of cell content.

The `ITableSuite` interface is aggregated on the integrator suite boss class (`kIntegratorSuiteBoss`), which makes it available through the abstract selection. Implementations of this interface are provided on various concrete-selection boss classes, which are hidden from client code through the facade of the abstract selection. To obtain `ITableSuite`, client code should query the selection manager (`ISelectionManager`) for the interface.

The integrator suites expose methods that determine whether a capability is present on the current selection; this always should be tested before trying to exercise a capability. For more detail on the integrator suites, see the “Selection” chapter.

Suite interfaces typically use this pattern of checking for a service (capability) and, if the abstract selection supports the capability, calling the method called. For details, see `ITableSuite` in the API reference documentation.

Use is illustrated in the following code:

```
bool16 canDeleteTable = iTableSuite->CanDeleteTable();
if (canDeleteTable)
{
    iTableSuite->DeleteTable();
}
```

ITableStyleSuite and ITableStylesFacade

`ITableStyleSuite` is the selection suite used to manipulate table styles, such as creating and editing table styles of a selected table; applying a table style to the current selection; and getting and setting local overrides of table attributes. As with other selection suites, the interface can be acquired through `ISelectionManager`.

Aggregated on `kUtilsBoss`, `ITablesStylesFacade` is used to manipulate table styles on a table or table style directly. It is the counterpart of `ITableStyleSuite`.

The `ITableAttrAccessor` and `ITableAttrModifier` interfaces aggregated on the `kTableModelBoss` provide access to and mutation of table attributes; however, we recommend you use suites and facades whenever possible.

ICellStyleSuite and ICellStylesFacade

`ICellStyleSuite` is the selection suite used to manipulate cell styles, like creating and editing the cell styles of selected cells; applying a cell style to the current cell selection; and getting and setting local overrides of cell attributes.

The facade counterpart of `ICellStyleSuite` is `ICellStylesFacade`, aggregated on `kUtilsBoss`.

By using suites and facade, implementation details of cell strands and cell styles storage are encapsulated. We recommend you use only suites and facades.

Printing

This chapter provides information about the concepts surrounding the process of printing a publication, including the printing data model and commands, the printing user interface, key interfaces, and how plug-ins can participate in the printing process.

Concepts

Printing is simply drawing to the printer

The implementation and user interface for printing from InDesign and InCopy are similar to those for printing from other Adobe applications, like Photoshop and Illustrator. All these applications use a common component, the Adobe Graphics Manager (AGM), to handle the core printing tasks. Printing from the application entails drawing part or all of a document to a printer rather than to the screen. Adobe applications use Display PostScript, supplied by AGM, to draw graphics primitives to both the screen and the printer.

For more information on how document content is drawn to an output device, see the “Graphics Fundamentals” chapter.

Control can be shared

The tasks of printing from InDesign can be shared among the following:

- AGM, which is responsible for PostScript generation.
- The InDesign Print plug-in, which is responsible for the user interface, initialization of print settings, and drawing pages. (See [“The print action sequence” on page 421.](#))
- Plug-ins that implement various print-related extension patterns, which provide the ability to participate in the printing process carried out by the Print plug-in

A plug-in can use printing commands, interfaces, structures, and event-handling mechanisms to print with the C++ API. By understanding the flow of operations in the application’s Print plug-in, you can design a plug-in to participate in the print process and the print user interface by hooking onto the various extensibility points.

Third-party plug-in developers do not have direct access to the AGM API. Instead, the application provides the user interface, commands, interfaces, and data structures necessary to drive and participate in the printing process. For details, see [“Printing data model” on page 419.](#)

Inks and colors

When printing a document to any output device, the colors used in a printable item on each page need to be rendered. Depending on the output device and print settings, each color can be separated into multiple inks. This is done so a system like a four-color (CMYK) printing press

can render each printable item. In some cases, printable items can contain spot colors, which generally correspond to a specific ink.

Colors, gradients, and spot colors generally are referred to as *swatches*. A swatch is identified by the `IRenderingObject` interface. Inks are identified by the `IPMInkBossData` interface.

For more details on inks and colors, see the “Graphics Fundamentals” chapter.

Overprinting

You can specify the way in which inks are printed on top of one another. Depending on how you set up overprinting, the colors of overlapping items of different colors may appear differently. For more details on overprinting, see InDesign Help.

Trapping

Trapping allows an output device to compensate for printing problems due to paper misregistration. When the print medium (e.g., paper) is not registered exactly in a multi-color press system, the output can show unintended gaps between inks. An example of a case in which this is especially important is when a printable item has a thin, dark border around a lighter-colored shape. By specifying how trapping is set up, you can compensate for media-registration errors.

Color management and proofing

What you see on the screen may not always be what you see printed on print media. This is due to variances in how each device used in the design and print process renders colors. For example, your computer monitor may show a bright red apple, but when that is printed on paper using a specific set of inks on a specific output device, the apple may appear to be a different color or brightness. Colors also may shift in the input device, such as digital scanners and cameras. It can be hard to make sure the colors appear as you want on the print media. InDesign and InCopy offer features to manage color throughout the design process.

For more details on color management and proofing, see “Color Management” in InDesign Help and the “Graphics Fundamentals” chapter in this document.

Preflight and packaging

Preflight is a way to verify before you send a publication to the output device that you have all associated files, fonts, assets (e.g., placed images and PDF files), printer settings, trapping styles, and so on. For example, if you placed an image as a low-resolution proxy but do not have the high-resolution original image accessible on your hard disk (or workgroup server), that may result in an error during the printing process. Preflight checks for this sort of problem.

For details, see the “Implementing Preflight Rules” chapter.

Exporting to EPS and PDF

Although the user interface for exporting a publication to the EPS and PDF file formats is different from that for printing, the output processes incorporate the same types of drawing components (AGM, inks and color swatches, color management, etc.). Some publishing workflows may incorporate exporting to EPS or PDF as part of the proofing and output steps. Though this document does not go into the details of extending the EPS and PDF export capabilities of the application, you can refer to [“Exporting to EPS and PDF” on page 450](#) for some highlights of how to drive the EPS and PDF export features.

Printing data model

This section describes the printing data model, commands, interfaces, and structures available in the SDK. InDesign and InCopy can print documents and books to a registered output device. The registered output device can be a printer, PostScript file, or external file format like EPS or PDF.

For more information on the PostScript language, see the PostScript Language Reference at <http://www.adobe.com/products/postscript/pdfs/PLRM.pdf>.

Print settings

This section describes the data interfaces that make up the print-settings data model. For information on bosses that aggregate these interfaces, see the API reference documentation. The print settings generally are set by the user in either the Print or Print Presets dialog box. (For more information on the Print user interface, see [“Print user interface” on page 423](#).)

IPrintData

IPrintData is the main data interface that keeps most print-settings data. It also is the interface passed among the print commands during a print operation or in the Print or Print Presets dialog box.

Other interfaces that store print settings

- IPrintDeviceInfo stores data about printing devices.
- IPrintJobData stores data specific to a print job.
- IPrintContentPrefs specifies which content (e.g., text, page items, Japanese layout grids, or frame grids) should be printed or omitted from printing.
- IOutputPages stores data about pages or spreads to print.
- ITrapStyle stores a set of trap settings with a specified name.
- IPrintGlyphThresholdPref specifies whether all glyphs of a font are to be downloaded to the output device completely or subsetted.

Print preset styles

A print preset style is a group of print settings with a specified name. Of the print-settings data model interfaces, the `IPrintData` and `IPrintDeviceInfo` data interfaces are stored as part of a print-preset style. A print-preset style is represented by `kPrStStyleBoss`, and a list of defined print-preset-style boss instances is managed in the `kWorkspaceBoss` using the `IPrStStyleListMgr` interface. `kPrStStyleBoss` also aggregates `IGenStyleLockInfo`, which specifies whether the style is locked or can be deleted.

When a list of print-preset settings is exported to a file (database), the root of that database is an instance of `kPrStExportRootBoss`, which also aggregates `IPrStStyleListMgr`. Using this `IPrStStyleListMgr` interface, you can iterate through the print-preset styles that are stored in the exported file.

Trap styles

A trap style is a set of trap settings with a specified name. A trap style is represented by `kTrapStyleBoss` and aggregates the `ITrapStyle` interface. `kTrapStyleBoss` also aggregates `IGenStyleLockInfo`, which specifies whether the style is locked or can be deleted. A trap style is associated with an individual page in a document.

A list of trap styles is accessible from `ITrapStyleListMgr` on `kDocWorkspaceBoss` (the trap styles used on a document), `kWorkspaceBoss` (the workspace default trap styles), and `kBookBoss` (the trap styles used in a book).

NOTE: `ITrapStyleListMgr` does *not* inherit from `IGenStlEdtListMgr` like `IPrStStyleListMgr` does; therefore, the behavior of some `ITrapStyleListMgr` methods differs from that of any interfaces derived from `IGenStlEdtListMgr`, and the general style-editing family of APIs (commands like `kGenStlEdtExportStylesCmdBoss` and interfaces like `IGenericSettings`) do not apply to trap styles managed in `ITrapStyleListMgr`.

Utility APIs

The following utility interfaces are available to facilitate the management and manipulation of print data settings:

- `IPrintUtils` (`kUtilsBoss`) contains various methods for checking settings on `IPrintData`. `IPrintUtils` also has `InitializeOutputPages`, a method that fills a list of pages to output, given `IPrintData` and a document.
- `ITrapStyleUtils` (`kUtilsBoss`) contains methods to facilitate manipulation of trap styles.

For details, see the API reference documentation.

The print action sequence

When you print a document or book in InDesign or InCopy, the application processes a hierarchy of commands. This is the core feature provided by the Print plug-in. This section discusses the sequence of events that take place during the print process and explains the various extensibility points for third-party plug-ins.

The primary actions taken by the Print plug-in are as follows:

1. Client code (usually in the form of a menu action or script event) receives two pieces of information: `IDocument` for the document to be printed and a user-interface options flag indicating which parts of the print user interface should be displayed. The client code creates and executes a specific print-action command, which is one of the following:

- `kPrintActionCmdBoss` — for printing a document in InDesign.
- `kBookPrintActionCmdBoss` — for printing a book in InDesign.
- `kInCopyPrintActionCmdBoss` — for printing a document in InCopy.

NOTE: For brief descriptions of these commands, see [“Print-action and supporting commands” on page 448](#).

2. From within the print-action command, a series of supporting print commands is processed. All subsequent steps originate from inside this print-action command.
3. A print-command data interface (`IPrintCmdData`) used by all print commands gets the `IDocument` supplied by the client code, along with the `UIDRef` for the print style (if any), the document’s ink list, and trap-style manager.
4. The print-action command polls print-setup providers (service providers of `kPrintSetupService`) to determine whether any plug-in wants to participate in the print process by calling `IPrintSetupProvider::StartPrintPub` (for document printing) or `IPrintSetupProvider::StartPrintBook` (for book printing). A print-setup provider can either take over the process at this point (including aborting the printing process by means of a flag passed in the parameter list) or perform an action and return control to the Print plug-in.
5. If control returns to the Print plug-in, a non-persistent instance of a print-settings data boss (generally `kPrintDataBoss`) is created. This is passed around during the rest of the printing process in each supporting print command.
6. The print-action command polls print-setup providers and calls `IPrintSetupProvider::BeforePrintUI`. A print-setup provider can determine whether to display the print user interface before returning control. After all print-setup providers are polled, the user-interface options flag is examined. If the print user interface is to be shown, the `kPrintDialogCmdBoss` is created and processed. If the dialog box is opened, the user can modify the settings for this particular print operation. The settings are stored back in the instance of the print-settings data boss created in the previous step.

7. The print-action command polls print-setup providers and calls `IPrintSetupProvider::AfterPrintUI`. A print-setup provider can either take over the process at this point or perform an action (for example, set the flag indicating whether to show the Save dialog box) and return control to the Print plug-in. If the Save dialog box is to be shown, the `kSaveFileDialogBoss` is processed.
8. If control returns to the Print plug-in, the print settings data (`IPrintData`) is saved to the document by means of processing `kPrintSavePrintDataCmdBoss` (for documents) or `kBookSavePrintDataCmdBoss` (for books).
9. Data is gathered for the print job. `kPrintGatherDataCmdBoss` is created but not yet processed. An instance of `IOutputPages` is created.
10. The print-action command polls print-setup providers and calls `IPrintSetupProvider::BeforePrintGatherCmd`. A print-setup provider can determine whether to allow processing of the `kPrintGatherDataCmdBoss` created earlier and whether to return control.
11. If control returns, the print-action command polls print-setup providers and calls `IPrintSetupProvider::AfterPrintGatherCmd`. A print-setup provider can determine whether to quit here or return control to the Print plug-in.
12. If control returns, a core print command (`kNewPrintCmdBoss` if running in InDesign or `kInCopyNewPrintCmdBoss` if running in InCopy) is created and processed. This is where the document or book data actually is sent to the output device.
13. If an error occurs during the core print command, it polls print-setup providers and calls `IPrintSetupProvider::PrintErrorEvent`. A print-setup provider can handle the print event and determine whether the error message should be displayed to the user. The global error code is set, and the core print command is aborted.
14. If no errors occurred in the core print command, the print-action command saves the print data again (in case it changed during printing).
15. The print process ends. The print-action command polls print-setup providers and calls `IPrintSetupProvider::EndPrint`. This is the final opportunity for print-setup providers to participate in the print process.

Common print interfaces

The following are the data interfaces used during the print-action sequence and supporting commands:

- `IPrintCmdData` stores most print settings. `IPrintCmdData` is used commonly among the print commands.
- `IPrintData` stores most print settings data. (See [“IPrintData” on page 419](#).)
- `IOutputPages` stores data about pages or spreads to print.
- `IBookPrintData` stores book-printing options for the `kBookSavePrintDataCmdBoss`.
- `IPrintJobData` stores data specific to a print job.

- `IPrintDialogCmdData` stores data for the `kPrintDialogCmdBoss`.
- `IPrintContentPrefs` specifies which content (e.g., text, page items, Japanese layout grids, and frame grids) should be printed or omitted from printing.
- `IInCopyGalleySettingData` stores settings used to construct the Galley panel and contains information about the constructed Galley panel for printing and PDF export in InCopy.

Print user interface

The print user interface lets an end user change print settings during a print process or in print preset styles. This section describes the design of the Print and Print Presets dialog boxes and how they are invoked, and it presents an overview of how to extend these dialog boxes.

Print dialog box

The Print dialog box shows the current print settings for the frontmost document. This dialog box opens when the user chooses File > Print in InDesign or chooses one of the print preset styles from the File > Print Presets menu. The Print dialog box also opens when the user chooses Print from the Book panel. This dialog box is invoked programmatically in InDesign by processing the `kPrintDialogCmdBoss` command.

NOTE: An InCopy version of the Print dialog box is invoked by processing the `kInCopyPrintDialogCmdBoss` box. This section focuses on the InDesign version of the Print dialog box.

The Print dialog box is a selectable dialog box, which contains a list of panels that are selectable by a list (located on the left-hand side of the dialog box). The Print dialog box contains the following panels:

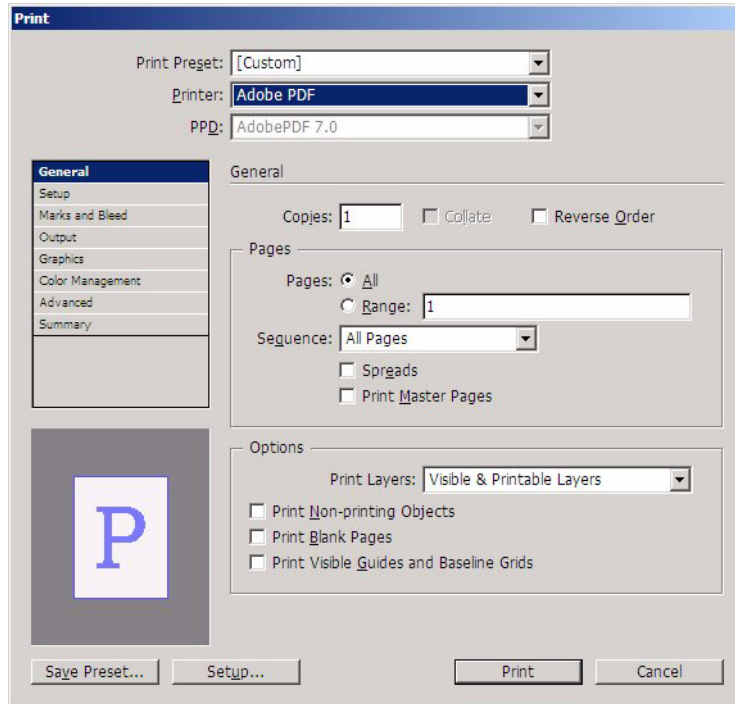
- General
- Setup
- Marks And Bleed
- Output
- Graphics
- Color Management
- Advanced
- Summary

The panels are shown in order in the following sections. Below a screen shot of each panel is a list of methods on the print data-model interfaces (e.g., `IPrintData`) corresponding to each user-interface element on the panel.

For details on these settings, see InDesign CS4 Help.

Print dialog box: General panel

FIGURE 202 Print dialog box: General panel



The three user-interface elements above the selectable panel region of the dialog box are common in all Print dialog box screenshots and are mapped to the following API methods:

- *Style Name* — `IPrintData::SetStyleName`
- *Printer* — `IPrintDeviceInfo::UpdatePrinterInfo` (which calls `IPrintData::SetPrinter` internally. Get with `IPrintData::GetPrinter`.)
- *PPD* — `IPrintDeviceInfo::UpdatePrinterInfo` (which calls `IPrintData::SetPPDFile` and `IPrintData::SetPPDName` internally. Get with `IPrintData::GetPPDFile` and `IPrintData::GetPPDName`.)

NOTE: Generally, there is a corresponding Get method for each Set method.

The user-interface elements on the General panel are mapped to the API methods listed in [Table 99](#).

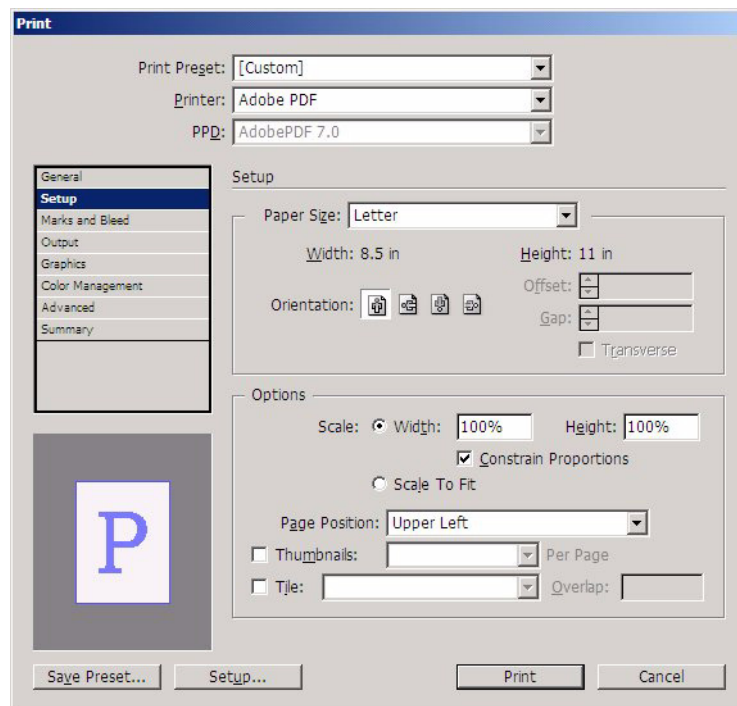
TABLE 99 Print dialog box: General panel

User-interface element	API method
Copies	<code>IPrintData::SetCopies</code>
Collate	<code>IPrintData::SetCollate</code>

User-interface element	API method
Reverse Order	IPrintData::SetReverseOrder
Pages: All	IPrintData::SetWhichPages(IPrintData::kAllPages)
Pages: Range	IPrintData::SetWhichPages(IPrintData::kPageRange) (Range text edit box); IPrintData::SetPageRange
Sequence	IPrintData::SetPrintOption, using IPrintData::kBothPages (for All Pages), IPrintData::kEvenPagesOnly, or IPrintData::kOddPagesOnly
Spreads	IPrintData::SetSpreads
Print Master Pages	IPrintData::SetScope, using IPrintData::kScopeMaster or IPrintData::kScopeDocument
Print Non-printing Objects	IPrintData::SetPrintNonPrintingObjects
Print Blank Pages	IPrintData::SetPrintBlankPages
Print Visible Guides and Baseline Grids	IPrintData::SetPrintWYSIWYGGridsGuides

Print dialog box: Setup panel

FIGURE 203 Print dialog box: Setup panel



The user-interface elements on the Setup selectable panel are mapped to the API methods listed in [Table 100](#).

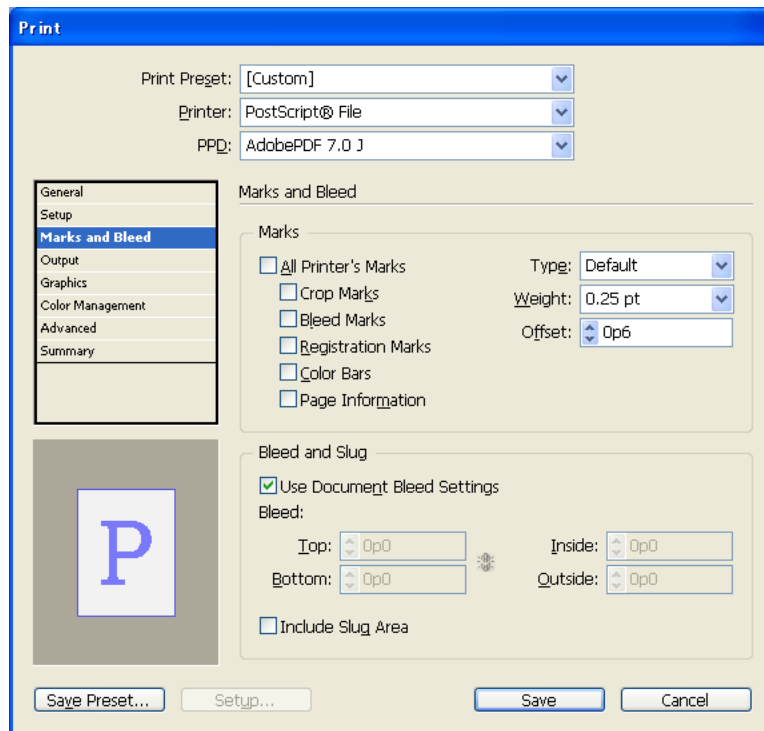
TABLE 100 Print dialog box: Setup panel

User-interface element	API method
Paper Size	IPrintData::SetPaperSizeSelection if defined by the user (IPrintData::kPaperSizeDefinedByUser), printer driver (IPrintData::kPaperSizeDefinedByDriver), or IPrintData::SetPaperSizeName
Paper Size: Width	IPrintData::SetCustomPaperWidth only if Paper Size is defined by the user; otherwise (if defined by driver or paper-size name), IPrintData::SetCustomPaperWidth(IPrintData::kCustomPaperSizeAuto)
Paper Size: Height	IPrintData::SetCustomPaperHeight only if Paper Size is defined by user; otherwise (if defined by driver or paper-size name), IPrintData::SetCustomPaperHeight(IPrintData::kCustomPaperSizeAuto)
Offset	IPrintData::SetCustomPaperOffset only if Paper Size is defined by the user
Gap	IPrintData::SetCustomPaperGap only if Paper Size is defined by the user
Transverse	IPrintData::SetPaperOrientation, using IPrintData::kTransverse or IPrintData::kNormal
Orientation	IPrintData::SetPageOrientation, using IPrintData::kPortrait, IPrintData::kLandscape, IPrintData::kReversePortrait, or IPrintData::kReverseLandscape
Scale (radio button)	IPrintData::SetScaleMode using IPrintData::kScaleXAndY
Scale: Width	IPrintData::SetXScale
Scale: Height	IPrintData::SetYScale
Scale: Constrain Proportions	IPrintData::SetProportional
Scale to Fit (radio button)	IPrintData::SetScaleMode using IPrintData::kScaleToFit
Page Position	IPrintData::SetPagePosition, using IPrintData::kPagePositionUpperLeft, IPrintData::kPagePositionCenterHorizontally, IPrintData::kPagePositionCenterVertically, or IPrintData::kPagePositionCentered

User-interface element	API method
Print Layers	IPrintData::SetPrintLayers using kPrintAllLayers, kPrintVisibleLayers, or kPrintVisiblePrintableLayers.
Thumbnails	IPrintData::SetTitleThumbMode, using IPrintData::kThumbnails or IPrintData::kTileThumbOff
Per Page	IPrintData::SetNumberOfThumbsPerPage. Calculate the number of thumbnails on the page (e.g., 4x4 = 16).
Tile	IPrintData::SetTitleThumbMode, using IPrintData::kTiling or IPrintData::kTileThumbOff
Overlap	IPrintData::SetTilingOverlap

Print dialog box: Marks and Bleed panel

FIGURE 204 Print dialog box: Marks And Bleed panel (Roman feature set)



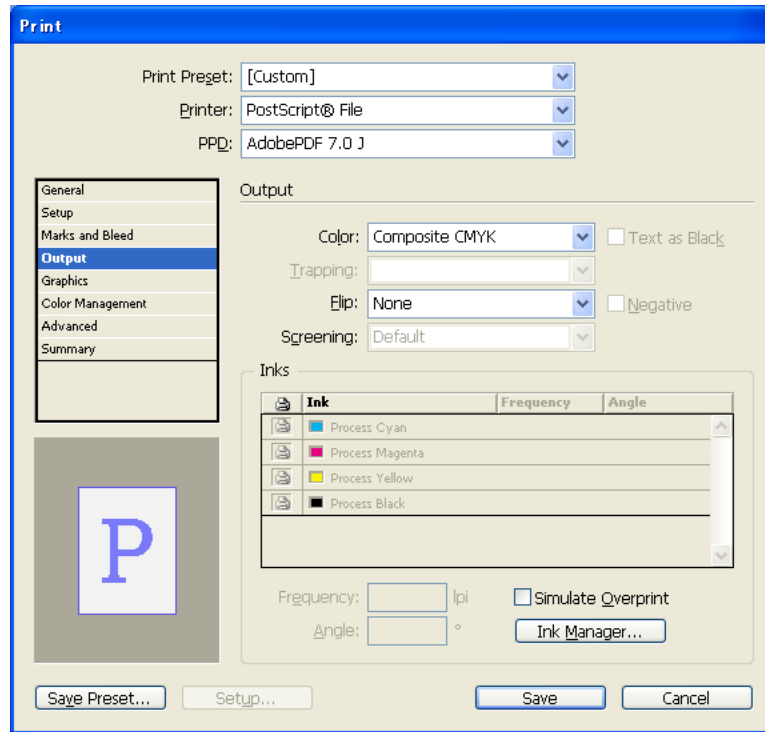
The user-interface elements on the Marks And Bleed selectable panel are mapped to the API methods listed in [Table 101](#).

TABLE 101 *Print dialog box: Marks and Bleed panel*

User-interface element	API method
All Printer's Marks	Checking this sets the state of the five check boxes below it.
Crop Marks	<code>IPrintData::SetCropMarks</code>
Bleed Marks	<code>IPrintData::SetBleedMarks</code>
Registration Marks	<code>PrintData::SetRegistrationMarks</code>
Color Bars	<code>IPrintData::SetColorBars</code>
Page Information	<code>PrintData::SetPageInformation</code>
Type	<code>IPrintData::SetPageMarkFile</code> . For the Roman and Japanese feature sets, you get the Default setting; in this case, the <code>PMString</code> passed into <code>SetPageMarkFile</code> is blank. There are extra details when using the Japanese feature set; see “Japanese page-mark files” on page 449 .
Weight	<code>IPrintData::SetMarkLineWeight</code> , using the enumerations ranging from <code>IPrintData::kMarkLineWeight125pt</code> to <code>IPrintData::kMarkLineWeight30mm</code> (see <code>IPrintData.h</code> .)
Offset	<code>IPrintData::SetPageMarkOffset</code>
Use Document Bleed Settings	<code>IPrintData::SetUseDocumentBleed</code>
Bleed (chain button)	<code>IPrintData::SetBleedChain</code>
Bleed: Top	<code>IPrintData::SetBleedTop</code>
Bleed: Bottom	<code>IPrintData::SetBleedBottom</code>
Bleed: Inside	<code>IPrintData::SetBleedInside</code>
Bleed: Outside	<code>IPrintData::SetBleedOutside</code>
Include Slug Area	<code>IPrintData::SetIncludeSlug</code>

Print dialog box: Output panel

FIGURE 205 Print dialog box: Output panel



The user-interface elements on the Output selectable panel are mapped to the API methods listed in [Table 102](#).

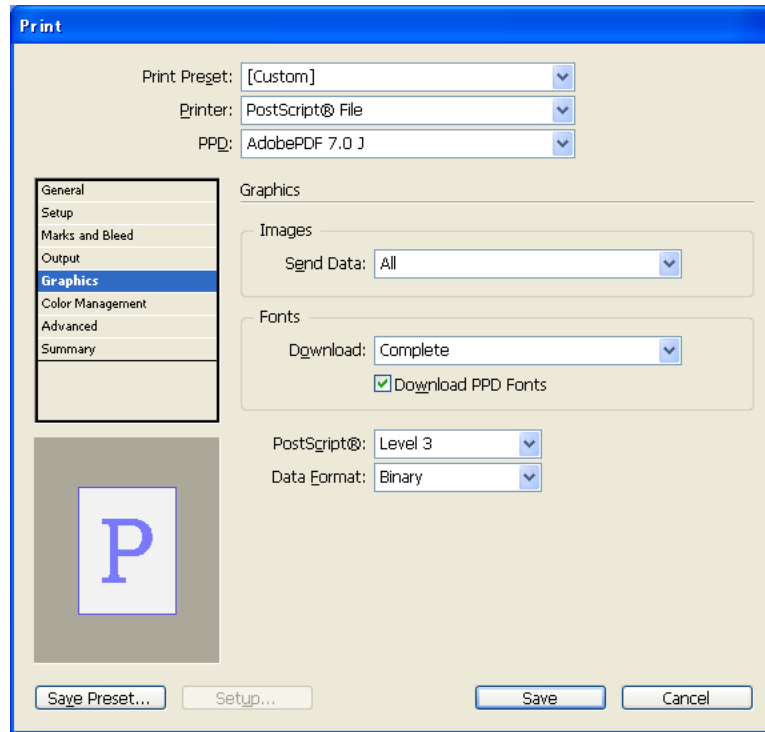
TABLE 102 Print dialog box: Output panel

User-interface element	API method
Color	<code>IPrintData::SetOutputMode</code> , using <code>IPrintData::kCompositeLeaveUnchanged</code> , <code>IPrintData::kCompositeGray</code> , <code>IPrintData::kCompositeRGB</code> , <code>IPrintData::kCompositeCMYK</code> , <code>IPrintData::kSeparationBuiltIn</code> , or <code>IPrintData::kSeparationInRIP</code>
Text as Black	<code>IPrintData::SetPrintColorsInBlack</code>
Trapping	<code>IPrintData::SetTrappingMode</code> , using <code>IPrintData::kTrappingNone</code> , <code>IPrintData::kTrappingBuiltIn</code> , or <code>IPrintData::kTrappingInRIP</code>

User-interface element	API method
Flip	<code>IPrintData::SetFlipMode</code> , using <code>IPrintData::kFlipOff</code> , <code>IPrintData::kFlipHorizontal</code> , <code>IPrintData::kFlipVertical</code> , or <code>IPrintData::kFlipBoth</code>
Negative	<code>IPrintData::SetNegative</code>
Screening	When the <code>IPrintData::GetOutputMode</code> is a separation mode, <code>IPrintData::SetSeparationScreenText</code> ; when the <code>IPrintData::GetOutputMode</code> is a composite mode, <code>IPrintData::SetCompositeScreenText</code> .
Frequency	If output mode is <code>kCompositeGray</code> and the composite-screen mode is string key “ <code>kCustom</code> ” (translates differently in each locale), <code>IPrintData::SetCompositeFrequency</code> .
Angle	If output mode is <code>kCompositeGray</code> and the composite-screen mode is string key “ <code>kCustom</code> ” (translates differently in each locale), <code>IPrintData::SetCompositeAngle</code> .
Simulate Overprint	<code>IPrintData::SetSpotOverPrint</code> , using <code>IPrintData::kSimulatePress</code> (if the radio button is checked) or <code>IPrintData::kLegacy</code> (if the radio button is not checked).
Inks	Stored temporarily in <code>IPrintDialogData::SetNthInkScreening</code> . When the user clicks the OK button in the Ind Manager dialog box, the <code>kChangeInkCmdBoss</code> command is processed for each ink listed.

Print dialog box: Graphics panel

FIGURE 206 Print dialog box: Graphics panel



The user-interface elements on the Graphics selectable panel are mapped to the API methods listed in [Table 103](#).

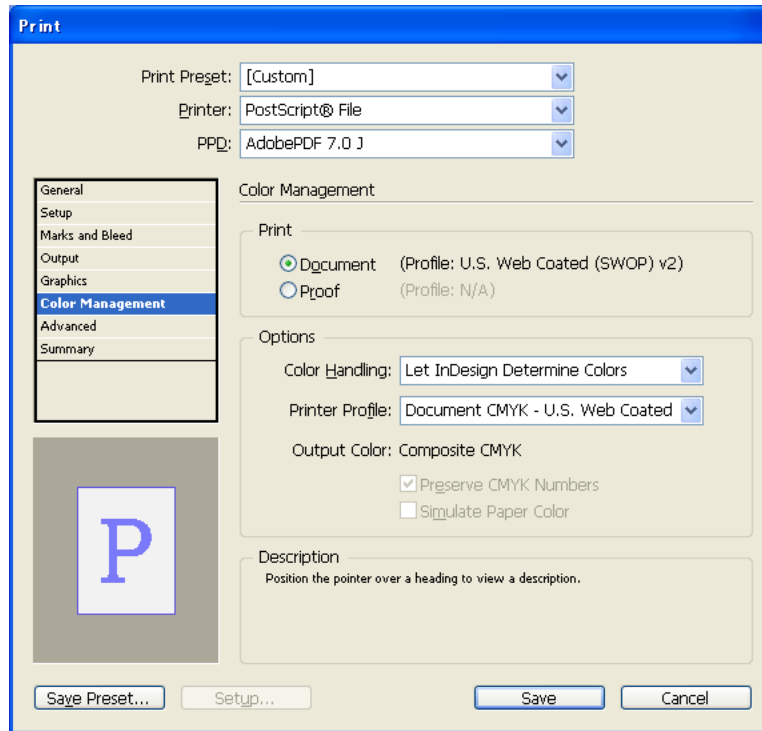
TABLE 103 Print dialog box: Graphics panel

User-interface element	API method
Images: Send Data	<code>IPrintData::setImageData</code> , using <code>IPrintData::kImageDataAll</code> , <code>IPrintData::kImageDataOptimized</code> , <code>IPrintData::kImageDataLoRez</code> , or <code>IPrintData::kImageDataProofPrint</code>
Fonts: Download	<code>IPrintData::setFontDownload</code> , using <code>IPrintData::kFontDownloadNone</code> , <code>IPrintData::kFontDownloadComplete</code> , <code>IPrintData::kFontDownloadSubset</code> , or <code>IPrintData::kFontDownloadSubsetLrg</code>
Download PPD Fonts	<code>IPrintData::setDownloadPPDFonts</code>
PostScript	<code>IPrintData::setPSLangLevel</code> , using <code>IPrintData::kPSLangLevel_2</code> or <code>IPrintData::kPSLangLevel_3</code>

User-interface element	API method
Data Form at	IPrintData::SetImageDataFormat, using IPrintData::kImageDataBinary or IPrintData::kImageDataASCII

Print dialog box: Color Management panel

FIGURE 207 Print dialog box: Color Management panel



The user-interface elements on the Color Management selectable panel are mapped to the API methods listed in Table 104.

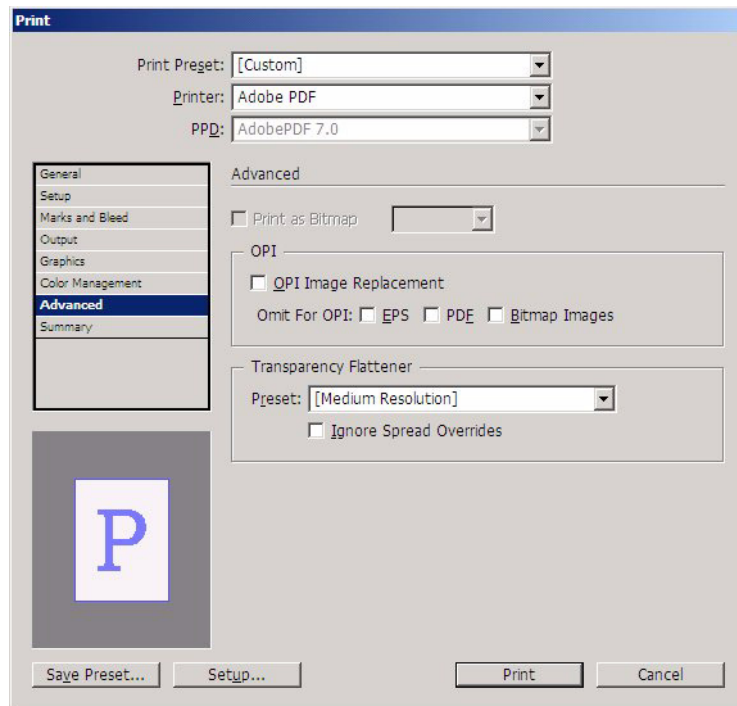
TABLE 104 Print dialog box: Color Management panel

User-interface element	API method
Print: Document	IPrintData::SetSourceSpace(IPrintData::kDocumentSourceSpace)
Print: Proof	IPrintData::SetSourceSpace(IPrintData::kProofSourceSpace)
Color Handling	IPrintData::SetProfileType, using IPrintData::kUseDocumentProfile, IPrintData::kUsePostScriptCMS, or IPrintData::kUseNoCMS

User-interface element	API method
Printer Profile	IPrintData::SetProfileType, using IPrintData::kUseDocumentProfile or IPrintData::kUseWorkingProfile. If this is not one of the predefined profiles, use IPrintData::kUseSpecificProfile and then call IPrintData::SetProfileName, specifying the name of the profile as displayed in the drop-down list.
Preserve CMYK Colors	IPrintData::SetPreserveColorNumbers
Simulate Paper Color	IPrintData::SetIntent, using IPrintData::kRelativeColorimetric (if the radio button is unselected) or IPrintData::kAbsoluteColorimetric (if the radio button is selected).

Print dialog box: Advanced panel

FIGURE 208 Print dialog box: Advanced panel



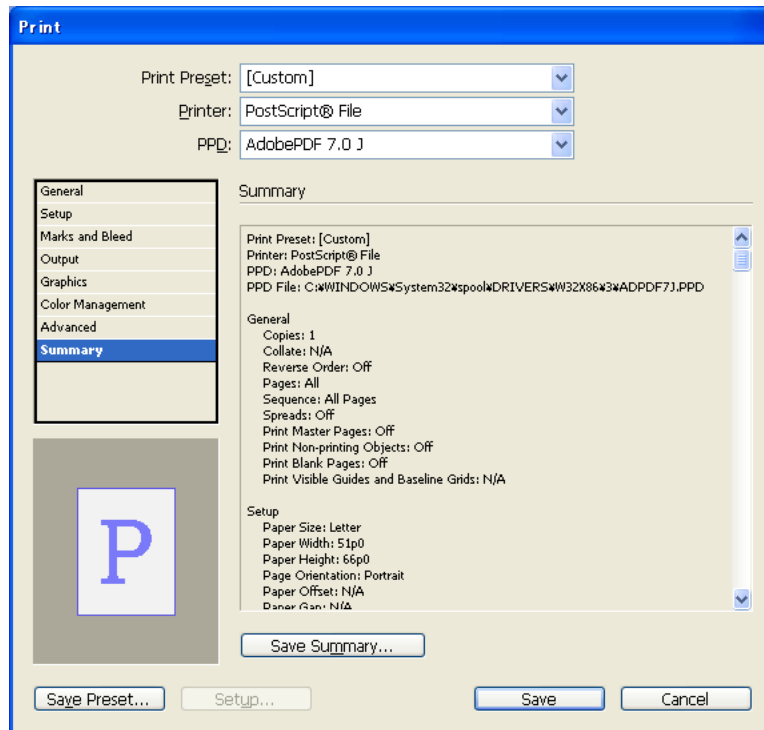
The user-interface elements on the Advanced selectable panel are mapped to the API methods listed in [Table 104](#).

TABLE 105 Print dialog box: Advanced panel

User-interface element	API method
OPI Image Replacement	IPrintData::SetOPIReplacement
Omit for OPI: EPS	IPrintData::SetOmitEPS
Omit for OPI: PDF	IPrintData::SetOmitPDF
Omit for OPI: Images	IPrintData::SetOmitImages
Transparency Flattener: Preset	IPrintData::SetFlattenerStyleName
Transparency Flattener: Ignore Spread Overrides	IPrintData::SetIgnoreSpreadOverrides

Print dialog box: Summary panel

FIGURE 209 Print dialog box: Summary panel



When you click the Save Summary button, the Save File dialog box opens, asking for the path of a text file to which to save the summary. If you call `IPrStStyleListMgr::GetNthStyleDescrip-`

tion for a selected printer style, you get the same text as shown in the Summary multi-line text widget.

Print Presets dialog box

The main Print Presets dialog box is opened when the user chooses File > Print Presets > Define.

In the main Print Presets dialog box, the user can see the currently defined print presets and a text summary of the currently selected preset. The main dialog box also has buttons for creating a new print preset (New), editing an existing print preset (Edit), deleting the selected print preset (Delete), loading from a print presets file (Load), and saving the print presets to a file (Save).

When the user clicks the New or Edit button, a selectable dialog box similar to the Print dialog box opens. The design of the Print Presets selectable dialog box is mostly the same as the Print dialog box, with a few minor differences:

- The title of the dialog box differs based on what the end user is doing.
- The thumbnail image on the bottom-left corner of the dialog box is shown only in the Print dialog box and is disabled in the Print Presets dialog box.
- The Print dialog box has a Save Preset button, which allows the user to save the current print settings as a print-preset style in the workspace. The Print Presets dialog box does not have that button, since the Print Presets dialog box is where you edit the print-preset style.

Extending the Print dialog box or the Print Presets selectable dialog box

The Print dialog box and the Print Presets selectable dialog boxes are extensible by third-party plug-ins by means of custom, selectable, dialog panel. By implementing one selectable dialog panel, you can add your own panel into both the Print dialog box and the Print Presets selectable dialog box. For a discussion on SDK sample plug-ins that implement selectable dialog panels, see [“Adding your own panel to the Print and Print Presets dialog boxes” on page 446](#).

Printing extension patterns

Print-setup provider

A plug-in can register a print-setup service boss by providing an `IK2ServiceProvider` implementation that supports the `kPrintSetupService` service ID. The service is called at various points during the print-action sequence (see [“The print action sequence” on page 421](#)). The implementation for `IPrintSetupProvider` provides methods to set up or change print parameters before and during the printing process. See [Table 106](#) for implementation details.

TABLE 106 Implementation recipe for a print-setup provider

Purpose	Participate in various phases in the print process.
ServiceID	kPrintSetupService
Required companion interface	IPrintSetupProvider
Boss class	IID_IK2SERVICEPROVIDER with implementation ID kPrintSetupServiceImpl (see PrintID.h) and IID_IPRINTSETUPPROVIDER with your implementation ID
When called	Methods of IPrintSetupProvider are called at various phases of the print action command. See “The print action sequence” on page 421 .
How called	All providers of this ServiceID get called.
Sample code	See “Participating in the stages of the print-action sequence” on page 443 .

Print-insert-PostScript proc provider

A plug-in can inject PostScript statements into the print-output stream by registering an IK2ServiceProvider implementation supporting the kPrintInsertPSProcService serviceID and providing an implementation for IPrintInsertPSProcProvider. See [Table 107](#) for implementation details.

TABLE 107 Implementation recipe for a print-insert-PostScript proc provider

Purpose	Inject PostScript comments at predetermined phases of the printing process.
ServiceID	kPrintInsertPSProcService
Required companion interface	IPrintInsertPSProcProvider
Boss class	IID_IK2SERVICEPROVIDER with implementation ID kInsertPSProcServiceImpl (see PrintID.h) and IID_IPRINTINSERTPSPROCPROVIDER with your implementation ID

When called	Methods of IPrintInsertPSProcProvider are called at various phases of the core print command. See “The print action sequence” on page 421 . The Setup method is called first, to give the provider a chance to store print settings. Then the GetInsertPSProcName method is called, so the provider can return a name. (The following steps occur only if your GetInsertPSProcName implementation returns a non-empty string.) The GetClientData method gets called to obtain the provider’s custom client data (if any), then the PrintInsertPSProc method is called at various phases of the printing process. (For a list of phases, see the enum IPrintInsertPSProcProvider::DocumentSection.)
How called	All providers of this ServiceID get called.
Sample code	See “Injecting PostScript comments or extra data into the print stream during the print action sequence” on page 444 .

Print-data helper-strategy provider

A plug-in can control whether to override the current locked state and relevant state of print data items in the Print dialog box by registering an implementation of IK2ServiceProvider supporting the kPrintDataHelperStrategyService serviceID. The IPrintDataHelperStrategy interface provides two methods: IsLocked and IsRelevant.

IsLocked allows a plug-in to lock the Print and Print Presets dialog-box user-interface elements. Although an item's locked state can be partially controlled using this method, the application print components are still free to change an item's value as necessary to maintain the print data in a consistent and valid context.

IsRelevant allows a plug-in to disable specific Print and Print Presets dialog-box user-interface elements. Although an item's relevant state can be partially controlled using this interface, the application print components are still free to change an item's value as necessary to maintain the print data in a consistent and valid context.

The most restrictive interface takes precedence. After an ID is set to be locked (the most restrictive setting), other implementations are not called. After an ID’s relevance is set to kFalse (the most restrictive setting), other implementations are not called.

See [Table 108](#) for implementation details.

TABLE 108 Implementation recipe for a print-data helper-strategy provider

Purpose	Influence the Print and Print Presets dialog boxes through the ability to suppress and lock print user-interface elements.
ServiceID	kPrintDataHelperStrategyService
Required companion interface	IPrintDataHelperStrategy

Boss class	IID_IK2SERVICEPROVIDER with implementation ID kDataHelperStrategyServiceImpl(see PrintID.h) and IID_IPRINTDATAHELPERSTRATEGY with your implementation ID
When called	Whenever IPrintData::IsLocked or IPrintData::IsRelevant is called. Generally this happens when the Print or Print Presets dialog box is being prepared for display.
How called	All providers of this ServiceID get called.
Related sample code	See “Specifying which parts of the Print and Print Presets dialog boxes are relevant or locked” on page 447.

Draw-event handlers

A plug-in can register a draw-event handler (IDrwEvtHandler) to participate in various draw events that happen during the printing process. For more details on draw-event handlers, including implementation details, see the “Graphics Fundamentals” chapter. For samples that implement this extension pattern for printing purposes, see [“Adding a custom watermark during the printing process” on page 444](#) and [“Injecting PostScript comments or extra data into the print stream during the print action sequence” on page 444.](#)

Printing solutions

Getting started

Printing a document

Execute (not process) one of the following commands:

- kPrintActionCmdBoss, to print a document in InDesign
- kInCopyPrintActionCmdBoss, to print a document in InCopy

The minimal settings required to print a document with kPrintActionCmdBoss in InDesign are as follows:

- The document you want to print.
- The range of pages in the document you want to print.
- Print user-interface options.

The print-action command is executed (not processed), because there is no undo capability provided. For a sample that uses either kPrintActionCmdBoss or kInCopyPrintActionCmdBoss, see the SnpPrintDocument.cpp sample code snippet, in particular SnpPrintDocument::DoPrintDocument.

Printing a Book

Execute the `kBookPrintActionCmdBoss` command.

Working with print-preset styles

Getting information about print-preset styles

Query for `IPrStStyleListMgr` on `kWorkspaceBoss`, then call the `Get` methods to get information about the print-preset styles that are registered. `IPrStStyleListMgr::GetNumStyles` reports the number of print-preset styles registered. `IPrStStyleListMgr::GetNthStyleName` reports the name of the print-preset style at index `n`. `IPrStStyleListMgr::GetNthStyleRef` returns the `UIDRef` of the print-preset style at index `n`. Using this `UIDRef`, you can query `IPrintData`, and get further information about the print-preset style. There are other useful methods on `IPrStStyleListMgr`.

NOTE: `IPrStStyleListMgr.h` does not declare any methods; however, it inherits `IGenStlEdtListMgr`. See `IGenStlEdtListMgr.h` for details.

For more details, see the `SnpmManipulatePrintStyles.cpp` code snippet, in particular `SnpmManipulatePrintStyles::InspectPrintStyle`.

Adding a print-preset style

Query for `IPrStStyleListMgr` on `kWorkspaceBoss`, then call `IPrStStyleListMgr::AddStyle`. When the new style is created, it is appended to the end of the list of print-preset styles.

For details, see the `SnpmManipulatePrintStyles.cpp` code snippet, in particular `SnpmManipulatePrintStyles::AddPrintStyle`.

Duplicating a print-preset style

Query for `IPrStStyleListMgr` on `kWorkspaceBoss`, then call `IPrStStyleListMgr::CopyNthStyle`. When the new style is created, it is appended to the end of the list of print-preset styles.

Modifying the name of a print-preset style

First, query for `IPrStStyleListMgr` on `kWorkspaceBoss`.

Then, call `IPrStStyleListMgr::SetNthStyleName`. When you do this, however, the name of the print-preset style stored in `IPrintData` is not updated, so you must query for `IPrintData` and call `IPrintData::SetStyleName`, using the same name. For details, see the `SnpmManipulatePrintStyles.cpp` code snippet, in particular `SnpmManipulatePrintStyles::ModifyPrintStyleName`.

Modifying the settings of a print-preset style

First, query for `IPrStStyleListMgr` on `kWorkspaceBoss`.

Then, call `IPrStStyleListMgr::EditNthStyle`, which invokes the Print Presets selectable dialog box. This procedure requires a user to use the dialog box to change settings. For details, see the `SnpmManipulatePrintStyles.cpp` code snippet, in particular `SnpmManipulatePrintStyles::ModifyPrintStyle`.

Deleting a print-preset style

Query for `IPrStStyleListMgr` on `kWorkspaceBoss`, then call `IPrStStyleListMgr::DeleteNthStyle`. For details, see the `SnpmManipulatePrintStyles.cpp` code snippet, in particular `SnpmManipulatePrintStyles::DeletePrintStyle`.

Exporting a set of print-preset styles to a file

Process the `kGenStlEdtExportStylesCmdBoss` command. In the `IGenStlEdtCmdData` data interface, call `SetListMgrIID` to set the type of style list to be the print style list, by specifying the `IPrStStyleListMgr::kDefaultIID` (`IID_IPRSTSTYLELISTMGR`), then call `SetTargetFile` to specify the full path of the file to save. Optionally, specify a set of style indices you want to export from `IPrStStyleListMgr` on `kWorkspaceBoss`. If you do not specify a set of style indices, all styles stored in `IPrStStyleListMgr` are exported.

Importing a set of print-preset styles from a file

Process the `kGenStlEdtImportStylesCmdBoss` command. In the `IGenStlEdtCmdData` data interface, call `SetListMgrIID` to set the type of style list to be the print style list, by specifying the `IPrStStyleListMgr::kDefaultIID` (`IID_IPRSTSTYLELISTMGR`), then call `SetTargetFile` to specify the full path of the file to import.

Getting notified when a print-preset style is imported to/exported from a file

Implement a signal-responder extension pattern that responds one or more of the following signals:

- `kBeforeExportStyleSignalResponderService`
- `kAfterExportStyleSignalResponderService`
- `kBeforeImportStyleSignalResponderService`
- `kAfterImportStyleSignalResponderService`

These IDs are defined in `GenericSettingsID.h`. In your implementation of `IResponder::Respond`, you can query for the `IStyleSignalData` interface using `ISignalMgr::QueryInterface` (or `InterfacePtr`). `IStyleSignalData` gives you a reference to the file that is the target of the export or import operation.

NOTE: Any preset style that is managed by the generic-settings framework and can be exported or imported—such as PDF-export styles and document-preset styles—can be monitored in the same way.

Working with trap styles

Getting information about trap styles

First, query for `ITrapStyleListMgr` on one of the following bosses:

- `kWorkspaceBoss`, for trap styles registered in the workspace (also used as document defaults when a new document is created)
- `kDocWorkspaceBoss`, for trap styles registered in a document
- `kBookBoss`, for trap styles registered in a book

The utility interface `ITrapStyleUtils` (on `kUtilsBoss`) has a `QueryTrapStyleListMgr` method to simplify this process. There are two overloaded methods:

- The one that takes `IDocument*` returns the `ITrapStyleListMgr` on `kDocWorkspaceBoss` (i.e., the workspace related to the document).
- The one that takes a `UIDRef` returns the `ITrapStyleListMgr` on the same boss as the `UIDRef`, or the `ITrapStyleListMgr` on `kWorkspaceBoss` if the `UID` in the `UIDRef` is `kInvalidUID`.

Next, call the `Get` methods to get various information about the trap styles that are registered. `ITrapStyleListMgr::GetNumStyles` reports the number of trap styles registered. `ITrapStyleListMgr::GetNthStyleName` reports the name of the trap style at index `n`. `ITrapStyleListMgr::GetNthStyleRef` returns the `UIDRef` of the trap style at index `n`. Using this `UIDRef`, you can query `ITrapStyle` and get further information about this trap style. There are other useful methods on `ITrapStyleListMgr`.

NOTE: `ITrapStyleListMgr` does not inherit from `IGenStlEdtListMgr` the way `IPrStStyleListMgr` does.

For details, see the `SnpmManipulateTrapStyles.cpp` code snippet, in particular `SnpmManipulateTrapStyles::InspectTrapStyle`.

Adding a trap style

Query for `ITrapStyleListMgr`, then call `ITrapStyleListMgr::AddStyle`. When the new style is created, it is appended to the end of the list of trap styles.

For details, see the `SnpmManipulateTrapStyles.cpp` code snippet, in particular `SnpmManipulateTrapStyles::AddTrapStyle`.

Duplicating a trap style

Query for `ITrapStyleListMgr`, then call `ITrapStyleListMgr::CopyNthStyle`. When the new style is created, it is appended to the end of the list of trap styles.

Modifying a trap style

Query for `ITrapStyleListMgr`, then call `ITrapStyleListMgr::EditNthStyle`. You are required to pass in the trap-style data via the parameter list as `ITrapStyle`. You can create a non-persistent instance of `kTrapStyleBoss` to store the settings.

For details, see the `SnpmManipulateTrapStyles.cpp` code snippet, in particular `SnpmManipulateTrapStyles::ModifyTrapStyle`.

Deleting a trap style

Query for `ITrapStyleListMgr`, then call `ITrapStyleListMgr::DeleteNthStyle`.

For details, see the `SnpmManipulateTrapStyles.cpp` code snippet, in particular `SnpmManipulateTrapStyles::DeleteTrapStyle`.

Exporting a set of trap styles to another trap-style list

First, create a command sequence, as the following procedure processes multiple commands. Next, query for `ITrapStyleListMgr`, then call `ITrapStyleListMgr::ExportStyles`. The first parameter is a `UIDRef` for the destination trap style list (note the source trap style list is identified by this particular instance of `ITrapStyleListMgr`), and that `UIDRef` must refer to a boss that aggregates `ITrapStyleListMgr`. If you want to export the trap styles to a file, you can create a new database using `DBUtils::CreateDataBase` and `IDatabase::New`, then put a new root UID by calling `IDatabase::NewUID`. The class for the new root should be `kTrapStyleExportRootBoss`. Create a `UIDRef` for this new root, and pass it into `ITrapStyleListMgr::ExportStyles`. Once that completes, save the database by calling `IDatabase::SaveAs`, and close the database by deleting the `IDatabase` pointer.

Importing a set of trap styles from another trap-style list

First, create a command sequence, as the following procedure processes multiple commands. Next, query for `ITrapStyleListMgr`, then call `ITrapStyleListMgr::ImportStyles`. The first parameter is a `UIDRef` for the source trap style list (note the destination trap style list is identified by this particular instance of `ITrapStyleListMgr`), and that `UIDRef` must refer to a boss that aggregates `ITrapStyleListMgr`. If you want to import the trap styles from a file, you can open a database using `DBUtils::CreateDataBase` and `IDatabase::Open`, then get the root UID by calling `IDatabase::GetRootUID`. The class for the new root should be `kTrapStyleExportRootBoss`. Create a `UIDRef` for this root, and pass it into `ITrapStyleListMgr::ImportStyles`. Once that completes, close the database by deleting the `IDatabase` pointer.

Determining which trap style is associated with a page on a document

Given a specific page (`kPageBoss`) on a document (which you can query using `IPageList` on `kDocBoss`), query for `IPersistUIDData` with the specific IID of `IID_ITRAPSTYLEUIDDATA`. Get the UID from `IPersistUIDData`. That UID refers to the trap style registered in `ITrapStyleListMgr` on the document workspace (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`). To find out the name of this trap style, first call `ITrapStyleListMgr::GetStyleIndexByUID` and then call `ITrapStyleListMgr::GetNthStyleName`.

Alternately, you can collect a list of pages that use a specific trap style. Call `ITrapStyleUtils::GetDocumentTrapStylePageList`. For details, see the `SnpmManipulateTrapStyles.cpp` code snippet, specifically `SnpmManipulateTrapStyles::InspectTrapStyle`.

Associating a trap style with a page on a document

Create a `UIDList` of pages (`kPageBoss`) to which you want to associate a trap style, and the `UIDRef` of the trap style. Then call `ITrapStyleUtils::AssignStyleToPageList`. For details, see the `SnpmManipulateTrapStyles.cpp` code snippet, specifically `SnpmManipulateTrapStyles::AssignTrapStyleToPages`.

Participating in the print process

Participating in the stages of the print-action sequence

There are various ways to participate in the print-action sequence. The main way is to implement a print-setup provider (see [“Print-setup provider” on page 435](#)). By implementing IPrint-SetupProvider, your plug-in can be notified at the stages of the print-action sequence described in [“The print action sequence” on page 421](#).

Other ways to participate in the print-action sequence are noted in the following list. Some of these require extra hook-ups from within a print setup-provider implementation.

- Implement a print-insert PostScript proc provider to inject PostScript statements into the print-output stream. (See [“Print-insert-PostScript proc provider” on page 436](#) and [“Injecting PostScript comments or extra data into the print stream during the print action sequence” on page 444](#).)
- Implement a print-data-helper strategy provider to influence the display of the Print and Print Presets dialog boxes. (See [“Print-data helper-strategy provider” on page 437](#) and [“Specifying which parts of the Print and Print Presets dialog boxes are relevant or locked” on page 447](#).)
- Implement a draw-event handler that handles print-related drawing events. (See [“Draw-event handlers” on page 438](#), [“Adding a custom watermark during the printing process” on page 444](#), [“Specifying which page items should be printed” on page 443](#), and [“Injecting PostScript comments or extra data into the print stream during the print action sequence” on page 444](#).)
- Implement a custom write stream so the print-action sequence writes to it. The custom stream must be specified from one of the methods in your print-setup provider. (See [“Writing printing data to a custom stream” on page 447](#).)

The following sample plug-ins contain an implementation of a print-setup provider:

- PrintMemoryStream prints document content to a custom memory stream.
- PrintSelection adds a flag to the document to print only selected page items.

For details, see the API reference documentation for each sample plug-in.

Specifying which page items should be printed

You can implement a print-setup provider (see [“Participating in the stages of the print-action sequence” on page 443](#)) and a custom draw-event handler to specify which pages items should be printed. From the print-setup provider (in any method that gets called before the core print command is executed, the last chance being AfterPrintGatherCmd), you register the custom draw-event handler that handles the print event only when it encounters document content you want to print. When the printing is done, you de-register the custom draw-event handler in your print-setup provider’s EndPrint implementation.

The PrintSelection sample plug-in shows how this is done. Here are the highlights of what the PrintSelection plug-in does:

- In `PrnSelPrintSetupProvider::AfterPrintUI`, the currently selected page items are gathered and the custom draw-event handler is registered for the draw event message `kDrawShape-Message`.
- In `PrnSelPrintSetupProvider::BeforePrintGatherCmd`, the set of pages to output is modified based on which pages contain the selected page items.
- The `PrnSelDrawHandler::HandleEvent` determines whether the current printable item should be printed. This draw event handler does not do any drawing; the actual drawing of the printable item is delegated to other draw-event handlers.
- In `PrnSelPrintSetupProvider::EndPrint`, the custom draw-event handler is unregistered.

For details, see the API reference documentation for the `PrintSelection` plug-in.

Specifying which layer(s) of a document should be printed

In the Setup panel of the Print dialog box, there is a setting called “Print Layers,” which is a drop-down list that allows the user to choose printing with visible and printable layers, visible layers, or all layers. This option can be get/set through the `IPrintData::GetPrintLayers/Set-PrintLayers` methods. Each layer’s visibility and printability, however, are managed by layer options as described in the “Layer Options” section of the “Layout Fundamentals” chapter. To set the visibility of a layer, use the `kShowLayerCmdBoss` command. To set the printability of a layer, use the `kPrintLayerCmdBoss` command. The `SnpprintDocument.cpp` SDK snippet shows how to use a `kPrintLayerCmdBoss`. Before processing a `kPrintLayerCmdBoss`, make sure the printability of the layer is different from the new state you are going to set. If the new printability state is the same as the old one, `kPrintLayerCmdBoss` asserts, although the assert is benign.

Adding a custom watermark during the printing process

You can implement a custom draw-event handler that draws the watermark on a page or a page item. This is done in the `BasicDrwEvtHandler` sample plug-in, a canonical example of a draw-event handler. For details, see the API reference documentation for the `BasicDrwEvtHandler` plug-in.

Another way to add custom watermarks to page items is to implement a page-item adornment that draws when the draw flag has the `IShape::kPrinting` bit set. While the `FrameLabel` sample plug-in does not support printing (i.e., if flags contains `IShape::kPrinting`, the `Draw` method breaks out), you can use the `FrameLabel` sample as a basis for implementing custom watermarks and extra persistent data on page items. For details, see the API reference documentation for the `FrameLabel` plug-in.

Injecting PostScript comments or extra data into the print stream during the print action sequence

You can implement a print-insert PostScript proc provider (see [“Print-insert-PostScript proc provider” on page 436](#)) to inject PostScript comments during predetermined phases of the print-output process as driven by the core print command. The `PrintMemoryStream` sample plug-in contains an implementation of a print-insert PostScript proc provider. The print-insert PostScript proc provider implementation in this sample is a canonical example that demonstrates when each method in `IPrintInsertPSProcProvider` gets called by writing a trace mes-

sage. This plug-in also demonstrates how to manage custom print settings throughout the print-action sequence.

There are other ways to inject PostScript comments into the print stream during the print action sequence:

- Implement a custom draw-event handler that calls the `IGraphicsPort::AddComment` method. For a sample of a draw-event handler that responds to the `kDrawShapeMessage` for printing, see `PrnSelDrawHandler::HandleEvent` in the `PrintSelection` sample plug-in. To obtain `IGraphicsPort`, you can first get a pointer to the `GraphicsData` from `DrawEventData::gd`, then call `GraphicsData::GetGraphicsPort`.
- Add custom registration marks on each page, if you are using the Japanese feature set of `InDesign` or `InCopy`. See “[Japanese page-mark files](#)” on page 449.

Adding custom print settings so they are managed like other print settings

Old method

First, write your own interface that allows you to manipulate your custom print-settings data (e.g., `IMyPrintData`). Then, the simplest way to persist your custom print settings is to add a persistent implementation of this interface (e.g., `kMyPrintDataImpl`) on a boss class that also is persisted with the document, like `kDocWorkspaceBoss` or `kDocBoss`. By adding your implementation only in the specified boss classes, however, you will not be able to manage your custom print settings together with print-preset styles.

In addition, there are several places where you must copy your custom print-setting data, as new instances of the aforementioned bosses are created (during processes like the print-action sequence and the `Print Presets` dialog) for the purpose of adding a print preset style or keeping a temporary instance for use during the print-action sequence. For print-data settings stored in `IPrintData`, the application calls `IPrintData::CopyData` to copy only the data managed within the `IPrintData` implementation to these new or temporary instances of the print data boss; however, your custom print settings are not copied at that time. Furthermore, the commands that copy the `IPrintData` to the appropriate instance print data boss do not notify any subjects. To solve these problems, you can implement a special observer. This observer observes changes that notify on the `IID_ICOMMANDMGR` protocol on a command’s target database. By knowing which commands copy `IPrintData` and when the data is copied, you can manage your custom print settings as the same time.

New method

Beginning in CS4, a new `kPrintCopyCustomDataService` is available; any plug-in that registers for this service gets a chance to manage its own print data during the print process. This is the preferred method for managing your own custom print data, instead of using the command-observer technique discussed above. Note the service provider is called after the application’s `CopyData` is done. You should provide the implementation for `IPrintCopyCustomDataProvider` and aggregate it on the service-provider boss that registered as `kPrintCopyCustomDataService`. Then your `IPrintCopyCustomDataProvider` will get called whenever `IPrintData::CopyData` is called.

Adding your own panel to the Print and Print Presets dialog boxes

You can implement a panel that adds itself to the dialog box identified by `kPrintSelectableDialogService`. The panel should be 400 pixels wide and 345 pixels high. The `ODFRez` widget type should inherit from `PrimaryResourcePanelWidget`, and the boss class that contains the necessary implementations (see below) should inherit from `kPrimaryResourcePanelWidgetBoss`. The required implementations in this boss class are as follows:

- `IK2ServiceProvider` (`IID_IK2SERVICEPROVIDER`), to register the `ServiceID` values specified in the `IPanelCreator::GetServiceIDs` method. You do not need to implement this yourself; you can use the implementation ID provided by the application: `kDialogPanelServiceImpl` (defined in `WidgetID.h`).
- `IPanelCreator` (`IID_IPANELCREATOR`), to specify the resource IDs in your `ODFRez` resource file (`.fr`) that declares the selectable dialog `ServiceID` and the panel resource IDs provided by the plug-in. Using this implementation, the `IK2ServiceProvider` in this boss (`kDialogPanelServiceImpl`) can get the necessary data to register the panel into the appropriate selectable dialog box. The implementation of this interface must inherit from `CPanelCreator`.
- `IDialogController` (`IID_IDIALOGCONTROLLER`), to initialize the panel, validate the settings on the panel when the OK button is clicked, apply the settings on the panel when the OK button is clicked, and perform any clean-up if the user cancels the dialog. The implementation of this interface may inherit from `CDialogController`.
- `IObserver` (`IID_IOBSERVER`), to handle user-interface actions for widgets on the panel, as well as widgets on the parent selectable dialog. (To get the widget IDs of the widgets on the parent selectable dialog box, choose `QA > Panel Edit Mode` in the debug build of the application.) The implementation of this interface must inherit from `AbstractDialogObserver` (as opposed to `CSelectableDialogObserver`, which is used in the `BasicSelectableDialog` sample plug-in). See the API reference documentation for `AbstractDialogObserver`.

In addition to the panel user-interface definition and the supporting boss class, you must include the following resources:

- `IDList` — Specifies the selectable-dialog service ID, which in this case is `kPrintSelectableDialogService`.
- `IDListPair` — Specifies the selectable-dialog service ID (again, `kPrintSelectableDialogService`), the resource ID of the panel you want to add to the selectable dialog box, and the `PluginID` that owns the panel. You can specify multiple panels in this resource.

Both these resources should have the resource ID you specified in your `IPanelCreator::GetPanelRsrcID` implementation. For example, if the resource ID you specify in `IPanelCreator::GetPanelRsrcID` is `kSDKDefIDListPairResourceID`, the resource ID of the panel is `kSDKDefPanelResourceID`, and the ID of the plug-in that provides this panel is `kPrtHokUIPluginID`, the resources would be written like [Example 25](#).

EXAMPLE 25 An IDList and IDListPair to support the kPrintSelectableDialogService

```
resource IDList (kSDKDefIDListPairResourceID)
{
  {
    kPrintSelectableDialogService,
  },
};
resource IDListPair (kSDKDefIDListPairResourceID)
{
  {
    kPrintSelectableDialogService, kSDKDefPanelResourceID, kPrtHokUIPluginID,
  },
};
```

To find out whether the panel is being opened from the Print or Print Presets dialog box, you can query the `IPrintDialogData` interface from the parent selectable dialog (by using the help of `IWidgetParent`), and call `IPrintDialogData::GetFlags`. See [Example 26](#).

EXAMPLE 26 Getting IPrintDialogData flags from a print-dialog selectable-panel implementation

```
// 'this' maybe a dialog controller or observer
InterfacePtr<IWidgetParent> widgetParent(this, UseDefaultIID());
InterfacePtr<IPrintDialogData> printDialogData
  ((IPrintDialogData*)widgetParent->QueryParentFor(IID_IPRINTDIALOGDATA));
printFlags = printDialogData->GetFlags();
```

If the returned value has the `IPrintDialogData::kWorkingOnStyle` bit set (test by doing a logical AND on the value with `IPrintDialogData::kWorkingOnStyle`), the panel is in the Print Presets dialog box.

A canonical implementation of a selectable dialog box (along with children panels) is provided in the `BasicSelectableDialog` sample plug-in. You can use `BasicSelectableDialog` to understand the interactions between the parent selectable dialog box and its child panels. For more details, see the API reference documentation associated with the `BasicSelectableDialog` sample plug-in.

Specifying which parts of the Print and Print Presets dialog boxes are relevant or locked

You can implement a print-data helper strategy provider (see [“Print-data helper-strategy provider” on page 437](#)). Print-data helper strategy provider also are called when the Print or Print Presets dialog box gets its summary text. (That is, if a setting is not relevant, it is not included in the summary text.) For a sample implementation of `IPrintDataHelperStrategy`, see the `Print-MemoryStream` sample plug-in.

Writing printing data to a custom stream

You can write a class that implements `IPMStream` (and inherits `CStreamWrite`), along with a class that inherits `IXferBytes`, to copy the data to whatever your stream targets. Your stream may target things like a file, a memory buffer, or even a database. This custom stream must be reported to the print-action sequence by calling `IOutputPages::SetOutputStream`. You can do this from one of the methods in your print-setup provider (see [“Print-setup provider” on](#)

page 435 and “Participating in the stages of the print-action sequence” on page 443), like IPrintSetupProvider::BeforePrintGatherCmd. For a sample implementation, see the Print-MemoryStream sample plug-in.

Bosses that aggregate IPrintData

- kBookBoss stores the Custom print settings for a book.
- kBookPrintDataBoss stores the print settings when printing a book with the print commands.
- kDocWorkspaceBoss stores the Custom print settings for a document.
- kInCopyTempPrintDataBoss stores the print settings for temporary use only (InCopy only).
- kPrintDataBoss stores the print settings when printing a document with the print commands. This is the most common boss class for storing print settings during the print process.
- kPrintDataOnlyBoss stores the print settings for temporary use only.
- kPrStStyleBoss stores the print settings for a particular style in the list of defined print preset styles. (See “Print preset styles” on page 420.)
- kStylePrintDataBoss stores the print settings for temporary use when generating the human-readable text summary of a print-preset style. This text is displayed in the Print Presets dialog box.

For details on these bosses, such as other aggregated interfaces or boss hierarchy, see the API reference documentation.

Print-action and supporting commands

Table 109 lists the main command bosses used in the print process.

TABLE 109 Command bosses used in the print process

Command boss	Description
kBookPrintActionCmdBoss	Top-level print-action command for printing a book. For most clients, this is the command to execute to print a book in InDesign. It processes the following supporting commands: kPrintDialogCmdBoss, kBookSavePrintDataCmdBoss, kPrintGatherDataCmdBoss, and kNewPrintCmdBoss.
kBookSavePrintDataCmdBoss	Saves the print data into a book.

Command boss	Description
kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss	Creates a galley window view to print.
kInCopyNewPrintCmdBoss	Performs the actual output of a document in InCopy.
kInCopyPrintActionCmdBoss	Top-level print-action command for printing in InCopy. For most clients, this is the command to execute to print a document in InCopy. It processes the following supporting commands: kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss, kInCopyPrintDialogCmdBoss, kInCopyNewPrintCmdBoss, and kPrintGatherDataCmdBoss.
kInCopyPrintDialogCmdBoss	Displays the print dialog box in InCopy.
kNewPrintCmdBoss	Performs the actual output of a document or a book to the output device in InDesign.
kPrintActionCmdBoss	Top-level print-action command for printing a document. For most clients, this is the command to execute to print a document in InDesign. It processes the following supporting commands: kPrintDialogCmdBoss, kPrintSavePrintDataCmdBoss, kPrintGatherDataCmdBoss, and kNewPrintCmdBoss.
kPrintDialogCmdBoss	Displays the print dialog box in InDesign.
kPrintGatherDataCmdBoss	Gathers print data.
kPrintSavePrintDataCmdBoss	Saves the print data into a document.

Japanese page-mark files

The Japanese feature set provides two extra Type options in the Marks And Bleed panel in the Print dialog box and Print Presets selectable dialog box:

- *Maru-tsuki Sentaa-tombo* — The untranslated string key “kJMarksWithCircle” is passed into `IPrintData::SetPageMarkFile`.
- *Maru-nashi Sentaa-tombo* — The untranslated string key “kJMarksWithoutCircle” is passed into `IPrintData::SetPageMarkFile`.

In addition (with either the Roman or Japanese feature set), you can specify a filename (without path or extension) of a file that contains a custom page mark written using PostScript. The contents of this PostScript file are injected during printing. The actual file should have an `.mrk` extension and be in one of the following locations:

(Windows) C:\Program Files\Common Files\Adobe\PrintSpt

(Mac OS) /Library/Application Support/Adobe/PrintSpt

Exporting to EPS and PDF

The process of exporting to EPS and PDF file formats is somewhat similar to the process of printing, in that similar components of the application are employed. The way you drive the export process and the data model behind the EPS and PDF export features are somewhat different. This section provides highlights of how to drive the EPS and PDF export features in the application.

Exporting to EPS

EPS export preferences

Settings for EPS export are stored in the `IEPSEExportPreferences` interface on `kWorkspaceBoss`. For details, see the API reference documentation.

To get the preferences, query for `IEPSEExportPreferences` on `kWorkspaceBoss` and call its `Get` methods.

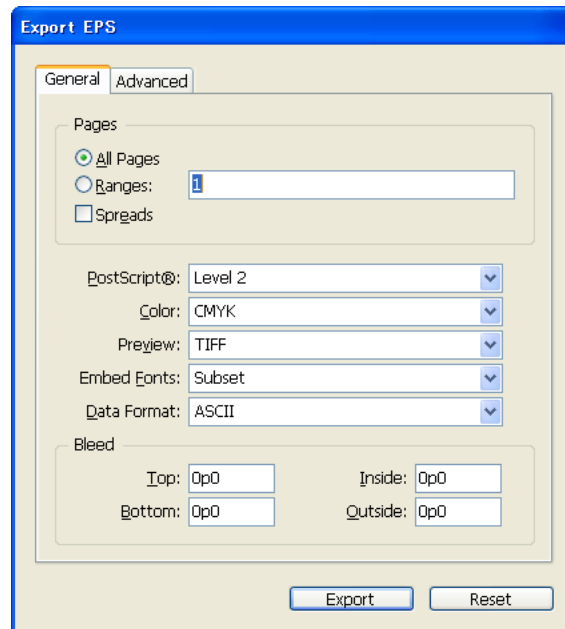
To modify the preferences, process the `kSetEPSEExportPrefsCmdBoss` command. This command has a data interface, `IEPSEExportPrefsCmdData`, with which you specify the new values of the EPS preferences. Before you call any `Set` methods, you can call `IEPSEExportPrefsCmdData::CopyPrefs` to copy the current preference settings in `IEPSEExportPreferences`.

User interface

When you choose `File > Export` and specify the file to export and the export format to be EPS, you will see a selectable dialog box with two panels, `General` and `Advanced`. The user-interface elements on these panels are mapped to the methods on `IEPSEExportPreferences`, as described below.

Export EPS dialog box: General panel

FIGURE 210 Export EPS dialog box: General panel

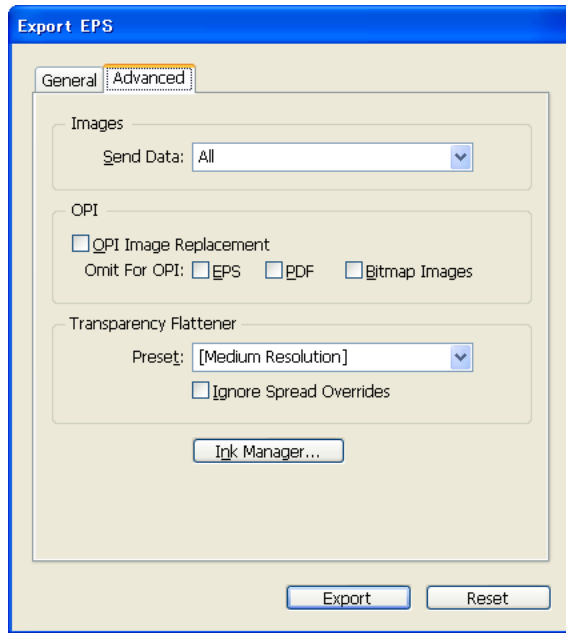


- *All Pages* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExPageOption using IEPSExportPreferences::kExportAllPages
- *Ranges* (radio button) — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExPageOption using IEPSExportPreferences::kExportRanges
- *Ranges* (text-edit box) — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExPageRange
- *Spreads* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExReaderSpread using IEPSExportPreferences::kExportReaderSpreadOFF or IEPSExportPreferences::kExportReaderSpreadON
- *PostScript* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExPSLevel using IEPSExportPreferences::kExportPSLevel2 or IEPSExportPreferences::kExportPSLevel3
- *Color* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExColorSpace, using IEPSExportPreferences::kExportPSColorSpaceLeaveUnchanged, IEPSExportPreferences::kExportPSColorSpaceDIC, IEPSExportPreferences::kExportPSColorSpaceCMYK, IEPSExportPreferences::kExportPSColorSpaceGray, or IEPSExportPreferences::kExportPSColorSpaceRGB
- *Preview* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExPreview using IEPSExportPreferences::kExportPreviewNone, IEPSExportPreferences::kExportPreviewTIFF, or IEPSExportPreferences::kExportPreviewPICT (Mac OS only)
- *Embed Fonts* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExIncludeFonts using IEPSExportPreferences::kExportIncludeFontsNone, IEPSExportPreferences::kExportIncludeFontsWhole, IEPSExportPreferences::kExportIncludeFontsSubset, or IEPSExportPreferences::kExportIncludeFontsSubsetLarge

- *Data Format* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExDataFormat, using IEPSExportPreferences::kExportASCIIData or IEPSExportPreferences::kExportBinaryData
- *Bleed: Top* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExBleedTop
- *Bleed: Bottom* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExBleedBottom
- *Bleed: Inside* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExBleedInside
- *Bleed: Outside* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExBleedOutside
- If any Bleed settings are over 0 — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExBleedOnOff using either IEPSExportPreferences::kExportBleedON, or IEPSExportPreferences::kExportBleedOFF

Export EPS dialog box: Advanced panel

FIGURE 211 *Export EPS dialog box: Advanced panel*



- *Send Data* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExBitmapSampling, using IEPSExportPreferences::kExportBMSampleNormal or kExportBMSampleLowRes
- *OPI Image Replacement* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExOPIReplace, using IEPSExportPreferences::kExportOPIReplaceON or IEPSExportPreferences::kExportOPIReplaceOFF
- *Omit for OPI: EPS* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExOmitEPS, using IEPSExportPreferences::kExportOmitEPSON or IEPSExportPreferences::kExportOmitEPSOFF
- *Omit for OPI: PDF* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExOmitPDF, using IEPSExportPreferences::kExportOmitPDFON or IEPSExportPreferences::kExportOmitPDFOFF

- *Omit for OPI: BitMap Images* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExOmitBitmapImages, using IEPSExportPreferences::kExportOmitBitmapImagesON or IEPSExportPreferences::kExportOmitBitmapImagesOFF
- *Preset* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExFlattenerStyle, using a UID of a kXPFlattenerStyleBoss object (use IFlattenerStyleListMgr to find one)
- *Ignore Spread Overrides* — IEPSExportPreferences::SetEPSExIgnoreFlattenerSpreadOverrides, using IEPSExportPreferences::kExportIgnoreSpreadOverridesON or IEPSExportPreferences::kExportIgnoreSpreadOverridesOFF

Exporting

Using IK2ServiceRegistry, query for service providers supporting kExportProviderService. Find an export provider that can support the format name “EPS,” by iterating over all export providers and calling IExportProvider::CountFormats and IExportProvider::GetNthFormatName, or IExportProvider::CanExportThisFormat. Once you find the export provider for EPS, do the following:

- Call IExportProvider::CanExportToFile to check whether the document and current selection target can be exported.
- Optionally, query for IBoolData, set it to kTrue to set IPrintContentPrefs, and query for IPrintContentPrefs and call its Set methods.
- Call IExportProvider::CanExportToFile or IExportProvider::ExportToStream to do the export.

Exporting to PDF

The structure of the PDF-export architecture is very similar to that of EPS export; however, you can specify a greater level of detail when exporting a document to PDF. For details of exporting to PDF, see the “PDF Import and Export” chapter.

PDF Import and Export

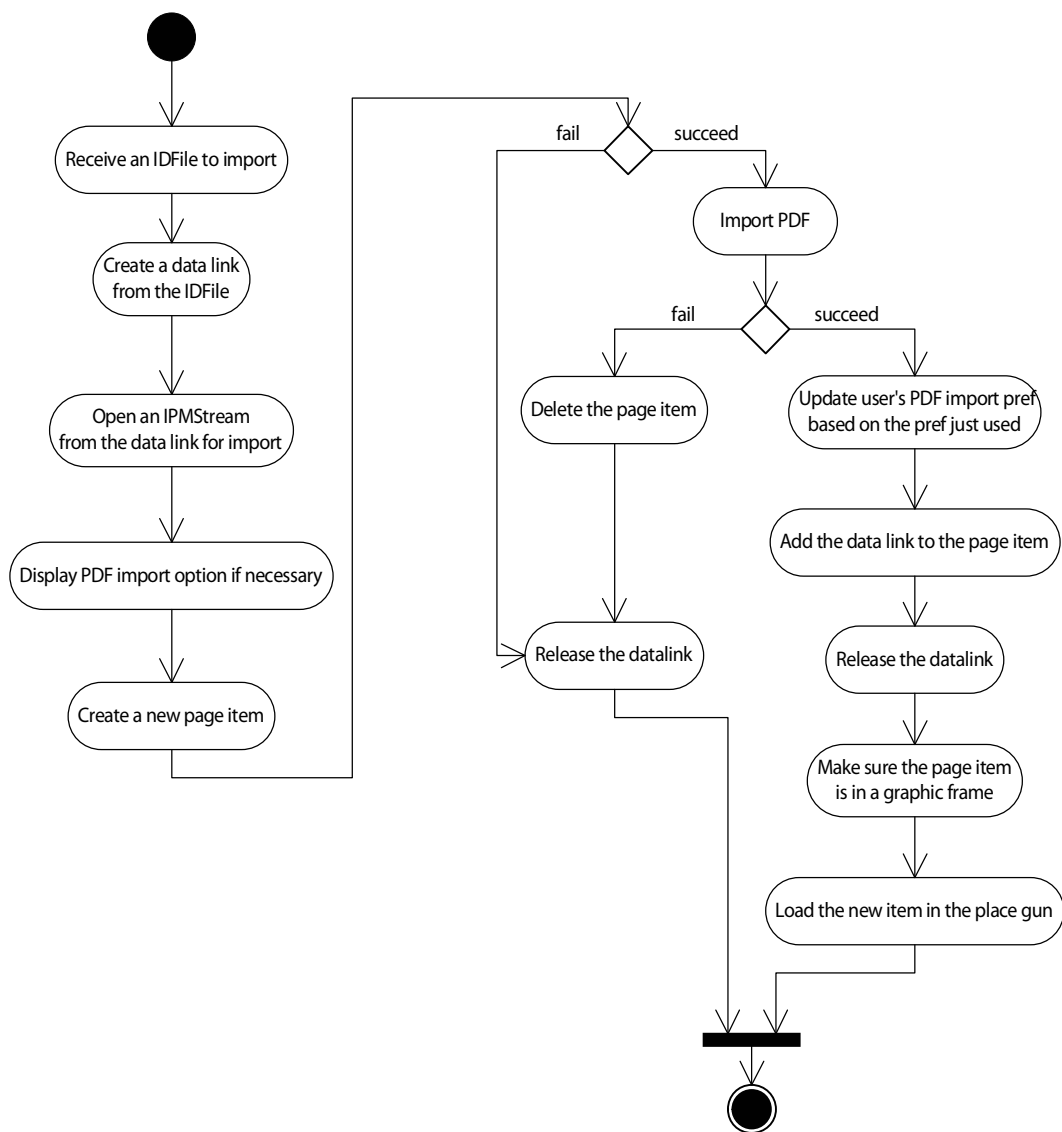
PDF import

This section focuses on how you can control PDF import preferences during the PDF import process.

Importing a file into InDesign requires a series of commands to be processed in a certain sequence. Before a PDF file can be imported, a page item needs to be created to hold the PDF content. Also, a proper datalink needs to be set up, so the association between the page item and the external file can be established.

[Figure 212](#) is a high-level illustration of the import process in InDesign for a standalone desktop PDF file (not a workgroup file) to be loaded into the place gun. The details of a complete import process is beyond the scope of this document. We recommend you always try to import (or place) a file using the method illustrated in the `SnPlaceFile.cpp` snippet sample, which uses `kImportAndPlaceCmdBoss` to place the file on the active spread. You also can use `kImportAndLoadPlaceGunCmdBoss` to load the file into the place gun. Both commands check with all the import providers and pick the appropriate provider for the type of file to import. The PDF import provider (`kPDFPlaceProviderBoss`) is the default InDesign import provider for PDF files. `kPDFPlaceProviderBoss` processes `kPDFPlaceCmdBoss`, which is the central command that does the real work of importing a PDF file.

FIGURE 212 High-level view of importing a desktop PDF file

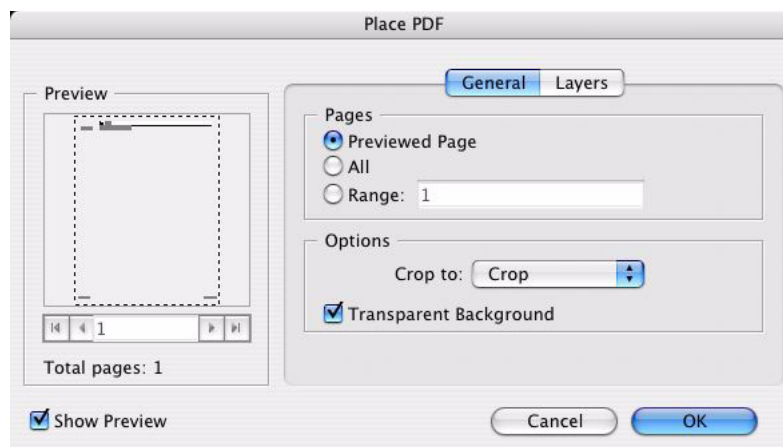


When you import a PDF file through the InDesign Place dialog box, if you choose Show Import Options, the Place PDF dialog opens, as shown in [Figure 213](#). The following options offer flexible PDF import:

- Placing multipage PDF pages (General tab) — You can place a range of PDF pages from a multipage PDF file. Under Pages, select All or enter a value for Range. The place gun is loaded as before, but the pointer changes to show that multiple pages exist. Each time you click, a PDF page is placed on the page. If you hold down the Alt/Option keys, the pointer changes to the cascade-place pointer, and clicking places all remaining pages on the page, cascading down from the click point.

- Optional content groups (OCG) layers support (Layers tab) — OCG groups content for selective viewing and printing, supports complex mapping of objects to groups, and allows special use cases like language and zoom factors. By recognizing OCG constructs in placed PDF files, InDesign offers users the ability to selectively include those pieces of content.

FIGURE 213 PDF import options



General PDF import options are stored in the `IPDFPlacePrefs` interface, and layers options are stored in `IGraphicLayerInfo`; both interfaces are added to the `kWorkspaceBoss` workspace. Normally, these options are used unless the PDF import is performed through a link update; in that case, the `IGraphicLayerInfo` on the page item (`kPlacedPDFItemBoss`) is used instead, and some attributes from the `IPDFAttributes` aggregated on the `kPlacedPDFItemBoss` are used. The following attributes override the defaults under the condition of a link update:

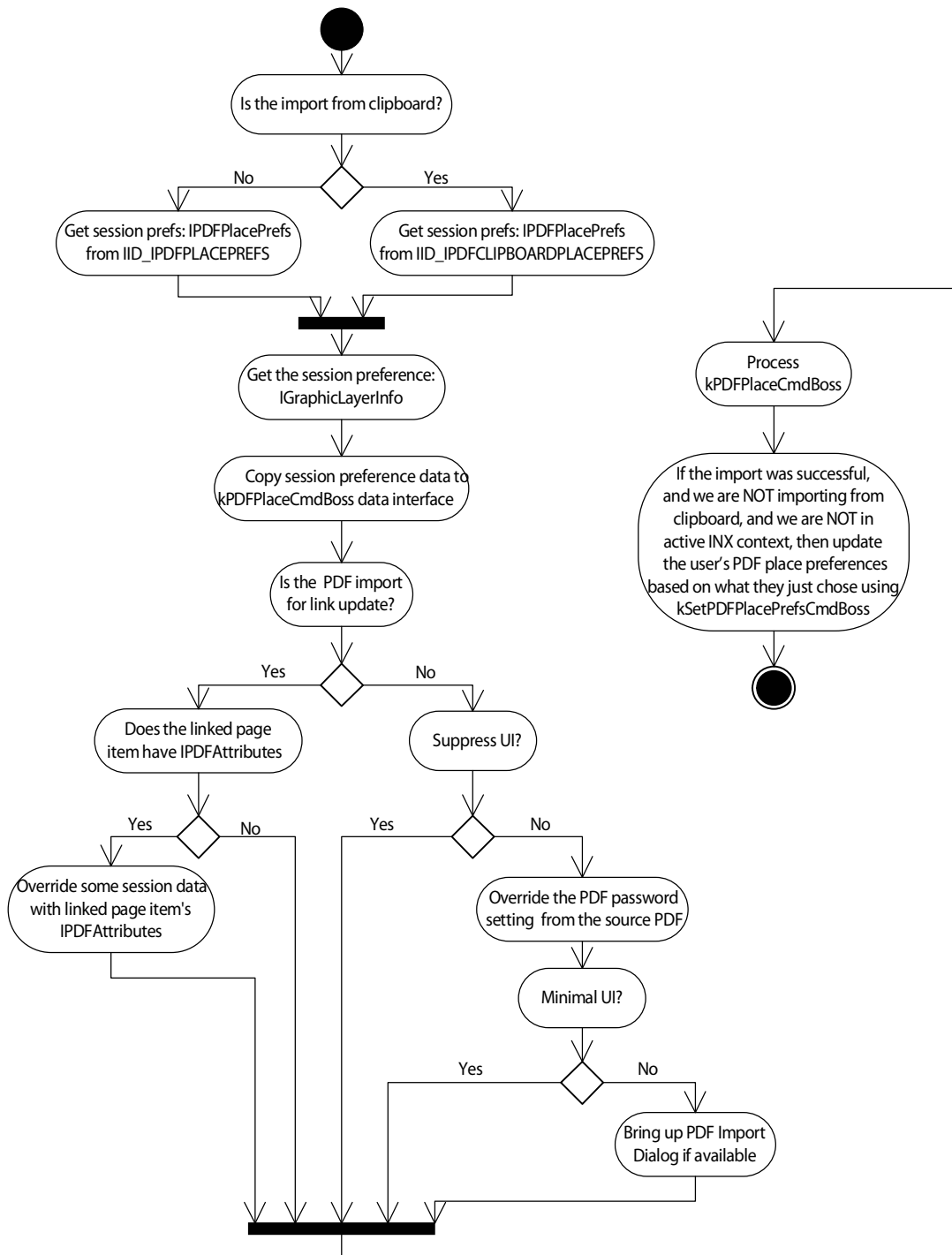
- `IPDFAttributes::SetPage` — Overrides *PDF page number* of the placed page.
- `IPDFAttributes::SetTransparentBackground` — Overrides *Transparency background*.
- `IPDFAttributes::SetPreserveScreens` — Overrides *Preserve Halftone Screens*.
- `IPDFAttributes::SetUserPassword` — Overrides *Set User Password*.
- `IPDFAttributes::SetCropTo` — Overrides *Set Crop To*.

Figure 214 shows how `kPDFPlaceProviderBoss` sets up the data interfaces for `kPDFPlaceCmdBoss` in different cases. If the import is done with the full user interface, the user can change settings through the Place PDF dialog (see Figure 213). InDesign uses `kPDFPlaceProviderBoss` to do its PDF import, so by changing import options you control InDesign’s PDF import behavior.

Figure 214 has a “Minimal UI” decision point. If the user deselects Show Import Options when importing a file, a minimal user interface is used: the user sees only a progress bar, not the Place PDF dialog.

Figure 214 also has an “Is the PDF import for link update?” decision point. Link update is performed when the user selects Relink or Update from the Links panel. Doing this triggers a PDF import if the link is a PDF item.

FIGURE 214 kPDFPlaceProviderBoss import option use



The main interfaces to control the PDF import options are IPDFPlacePrefs, IGraphicLayerInfo, and IPDFAttributes. To modify the data stored in these interfaces, use the commands shown in [Table 110](#). Note there is no command to modify the IPDFPlacePrefs for clipboard import (IID_IPDFCLIPBOARDPLACEPREFS). If you process your own kPDFPlaceCmdBoss, use the IPDFPlacePrefs aggregated on the command boss to set up the import option. The IGraphicLayerInfo on the page item passed to the kPDFPlaceCmdBoss is used for layer options.

TABLE 110 Commands to Change PDF Import Options

To change...	Use
IPDFPlacePrefs on the workspace	kSetPDFPlacePrefsCmdBoss
IGraphicLayerInfo on the workspace	kSetPDFPlacePrefsCmdBoss
IPDFAttributes on the page item	kSetPDFAttributesCmdBoss
IGraphicLayerInfo on the page item	kSetGraphicLayerInfoCmdBoss

PDF export

InDesign/InCopy document export

The easiest way to export an InDesign or InCopy document is to use the PDF export service provider. [Example 27](#) is a snippet showing how to get the PDF export provider and call the export method.

EXAMPLE 27 Getting the PDF export provider

```
PMString PDFFormat("Adobe PDF");
PDFFormat.SetTranslatable(kFalse);

InterfacePtr<ISelectionManager> selection(SelectionUtils::QueryActiveSelection());
IDocument *frontDoc = ::GetFrontDocument();

InterfacePtr<IK2ServiceRegistry> k2ServiceRegistry(gSession, UseDefaultIID());

// Look for all service providers with kExportProviderService.
int32 exportProviderCount = k2ServiceRegistry->GetServiceProviderCount(kExportProviderService);

// Iterate through them.
bool found = kFalse;
for (int32 exportProviderIndex = 0 ; exportProviderIndex < exportProviderCount ;
exportProviderIndex++)
```

```

{
    // get the service provider boss class
    InterfacePtr<IK2ServiceProvider> k2ServiceProvider
        (k2ServiceRegistry->QueryNthServiceProvider(kExportProviderService,
exportProviderIndex));
    // Get the export provider implementation itself.
    InterfacePtr<IExportProvider> exportProvider(k2ServiceProvider,
IID_IEXPORTPROVIDER);
    // Check to see if the current selection specifier can be exported by this
provider.
    bool16 canExportByTarget = exportProvider->CanExportThisFormat(frontDoc,
selection, PDFFormat);
    if (canExportByTarget)
    {
        found = kTrue;
        // assume idFile is a valid IDFile to hold the soon to be created PDF
exportProvider->ExportToFile(idFile, frontDoc, selection, PDFFormat, kFullUI);
    }
    if (found)
        break;
}

```

In the example, note the following:

- The format name used to get the PDF export provider is Adobe PDF, defined in the beginning of the example.
- The example tells the PDF export provider to use the full user interface during the export, meaning the PDF export settings dialog is brought up for the user to set export options. The settings dialog box is provided by kPDFExportDialogBoss in InDesign and by kInCopyPDFExportDialogBoss in InCopy. They are selectable dialog service providers you can retrieve through the IK2ServiceRegistry::GetServiceProviderIndex method, although it is most practical to specify kFullUI and let the export provider do the work. If kSuppressUI is used instead, no user interface is presented, and you can change the preference as described below.
- The example omits the steps that produce a valid IDFile to be passed into the IExportProvider::ExportToFile method. Normally, the IDFile is obtained through a standard Save File dialog box. You also can construct an IDFile from scratch. For more information on IDFile, see the “Using Adobe File Library” chapter.
- The example is for exporting an InDesign/InCopy document. To export an InDesign book, see [“InDesign book export” on page 468](#).

The PDF export provider for InDesign/InCopy documents is represented by kPDFExportBoss. There is an IBoolData in kPDFExportBoss, which indicates whether print content preferences (IPrintContentPrefs) should be considered. When you export from the InDesign menu, the default value for the IBoolData is set to false, so no print content preference are used during the default PDF export. Also, the PDF export provider allows you to use an export style (kPDFExportStyleBoss) instead of dealing with the settings one by one. This is achieved by passing the style UID in the UIIDData aggregated on the kPDFExportBoss.

The kPDFExportBoss processes kPDFExportCmdBoss. Before the command is processed, kExportValidationCmdBoss is used to verify that the attributes set for the command will pro-

duce a valid output. Table 111 summarizes the command interfaces kPDFExportBoss needs to set up before it processes kPDFExportCmdBoss.

TABLE 111 Critical data interfaces for kPDFExportCmdBoss

Interface	Purpose
IPDFExportPrefs	Holds most of the PDF export settings as seen in the PDF export options dialog.
IPDFSecurityPrefs	Holds the PDF security preference.
ISysFileData	Holds the destination IDFile for the PDF document.
IBoolData	Indicates whether the IPrintContentPrefs should be used.
IPrintContentPrefs	Allows certain contents to be removed from the output.
IBoolData (IID_IBOOKEXPORT)	Indicates whether the command is used to export an InDesign book.
IUIFlagData	Tells the command to use kFullUI, kMinimalUI, or kSuppressUI.
IOutputPages	Holds the UIDs of the pages to output in layout mode.
IInCopyGalleySettingData	Data for galley export.
IBoolData (IID_IINCOPIPDFNOTEANNOTATIONDATA)	Layout export note annotation flag.

From InDesign layout view

If a style is passed to the export provider, the IPDFExportPrefs on the kPDFExportStyleBoss is copied to the IPDFExportPrefs on the kPDFExportCmdBoss; otherwise, the IPDFExportPrefs on the kWorkspaceBoss is used. You can query the session's PDF export preference as follows:

```
InterfacePtr<IPDFExportPrefs>
appExportPrefs ( (IPDFExportPrefs*) ::QuerySessionPreferences ( IID_IPDFEXPORTPREFS ) );
```

To change the preferences, process kSetPDFExportPrefsCmdBoss and use the Set*** methods of IPDFExportPrefs on the command boss to change the settings.

IPDFSecurityPrefs is set up using the preferences saved in the session (i.e., IPDFSecurityPrefs on the kWorkspaceBoss). You can query the preferences as follows:

```
InterfacePtr<IPDFSecurityPrefs>
appSecurityPrefs ( (IPDFSecurityPrefs*) ::QuerySessionPreferences ( IID_IPDFSECURITYPREFS ) );
```

To change the security preferences, process kSetPDFSecurityPrefsCmdBoss and use the Set*** methods of IPDFSecurityPrefs on the command boss to change the settings.

Another critical interface in kPDFExportCmdBoss that needs to be set up is IOutputPages. It holds the UIDs of the pages from the document for export. The PDF export provider uses IPageRange on the kWorkspaceBoss to initialize the IOutputPages on kPDFExportCmdBoss. kPDFExportDialogBoss uses the same data to initialize the export settings dialog user inter-

face, and it updates the session data when the user changes it from the dialog box. [Example 28](#) shows how to set up `IOutputPages` from `IPageRange` on `kWorkspaceBoss`.

EXAMPLE 28 Setting up `kPDFExportCmdBoss`'s `IOutputPages` from `IPageRange`

```
InterfacePtr<IPageRange>
myPageRange( (IPageRange*)::QuerySessionPreferences( IID_IPAGERANGE ) );
IPageRange::RangeFormat pageRangeFormat = myPageRange->GetPageRangeFormat();
// Assume theDoc is a valid IDocument* for export.
UIDList pageUIDs = UIDList(UIDList::GetDataBase(theDoc));
InterfacePtr<IPageList> iPageList( (IPMUnknown*)theDoc, IID_IPAGELIST );
if (pageRangeFormat != IPageRange::kAllPages)
{
    PMString pageRange;
    pageRange = myPageRange->GetPageRange();
    pageRange.SetTranslatable(kFalse);
    iPageList->PageRangeStringToUIDList(pageRange, &pageUIDs);
}
else
{
    int32 cPages = iPageList->GetPageCount();
    for (int32 iPage = 0; iPage < cPages; iPage++ )
    {
        UID uidPage = iPageList->GetNthPageUID(iPage);
        pageUIDs.Append( uidPage );
    }
}
// Assume pdfExportCmd is the valid ICommand* from kPDFExportCmdBoss.
InterfacePtr<IOutputPages> iExportPages(pdfExportCmd, IID_IOUTPUTPAGES);
// Assume exportPrefs is the previously set IPDFExportPrefs from kPDFExportCmdBoss.
iExportPages->InitializeFrom(pageUIDs, (exportPrefs->GetPDFExReaderSpreads() ==
IPDFExportPrefs::kExportReaderSpreadsON));
PMString name;
theDoc->GetName( name );
iExportPages->SetName( name );
```

From InCopy layout view

There is an `IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData` interface on `kWorkspaceBoss`, which is used to store some InCopy layout export settings. During an InCopy layout export, `IPDFExportPrefs` is set up as described in [“From InDesign layout view” on page 461](#). Then the `IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData` on the `kWorkspaceBoss` is used to override some of the data on the command's `IPDFExportPrefs`. [Table 112](#) summarizes the overrides. To change the `IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData` on the `kWorkspaceBoss`, use `kSaveInCopyPDFExptLayoutDataCmdBoss`.

TABLE 112 InCopy Layout-specific export settings

Attributes	Override
Launch Adobe Acrobat	Changed by SetPDFExLaunchAcrobat. If IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData::GetPDFExLaunchAcrobat is equal to kTrue, this is set to kExportLaunchAcrobatON; otherwise, kExportLaunchAcrobatOFF.
Compatibility Level	Changed by SetPDFExAcrobatCompatibilityLevel. Set to the value returned by IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData::GetPDFExAcrobatCompatibilityLevel.
Compression Type	Changed by SetCompressionType. If IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData::GetPDFExAcrobatCompatibilityLevel >= kPDFVersion15, this is set to kCompressObjects; otherwise, kCompressNone.
Embed Page Thumbnails	Changed by SetPDFExThumbnails. If IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData::GetPDFExThumbnails is equal to kTrue, this is set to kExportThumbnailsON; otherwise, kExportThumbnailsOFF.
Optimize for Fast Web View	Changed by SetPDFExLinearized. If IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData::GetPDFExLinearized is equal to kTrue, this is set to kExportLinearizedON; otherwise, kExportLinearizedOFF.
Include Page Information	Changed by SetPDFExPageInfo. If IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData::GetPDFExPageInfo is equal to kTrue, this is set to kExportPageInfoON; otherwise, kExportPageInfoOFF.
Subset Fonts Threshold	Changed by SetPDFExSubsetFontsThreshold. Set to the value returned by IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData::GetPDFExSubsetFontsThreshold.
Export Reader Spreads	Changed by SetPDFExReaderSpreads. If IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData::GetPDFExReaderSpreads is equal to kTrue, this is set to kExportReaderSpreadsON; otherwise, kExportReaderSpreadsOFF.
Interactive Elements	Changed by SetPDFExAddInteractiveElements. Set to the value returned by IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData::GetPDFExAddInteractiveElements.
Multimedia Content to Embed	Changed by SetContentToEmbed. Set to the value returned by IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData::GetContentToEmbed.

IOutputPages for kPDFExportCmdBoss is set up like kPDFExportCmdBoss IOutputPages from IPageRange, except IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData::GetPDFExPageRangeFormat is used to check the range format and IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData::GetPDFExPageRange is used to get the range if the range format is not IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData::kAllPages.

kPDFExportCmdBoss also aggregates an interface, IInCopyGalleySettingData. During InCopy layout export, IInCopyGalleySettingData::SetGalleySetting(kFalse) is called, so no IInCopyGalleySettingData is used.

The IBoolData (IID_IINCOPIYPDFNOTEANNOTATIONDATA) on the kPDFExportCmdBoss is set to the value from IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData::GetPDFExAnnotationNotes.

From InCopy story view or galley view

Export from galley view is different than export from layout view, because the galley and story view on-screen may not be the export (print) view. Galley export allows the user to output the galley story with multiple columns and a selected range of story lines. When the user selects

export, a final view to the document is not yet available. The PDF export provider internally executes `kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss` to generate an invisible galley view for PDF port printing based on the user's preferences.

`IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData` on the `kWorkspaceBoss` is the default galley-specific setting data used during PDF export. It is used to set up some of the data in `IPDFExportPrefs` and `IInCopyGalleySettingData`; both are aggregated on `kPDFExportCmdBoss`. The PDF export provider does not take the data from `IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData` on the `kWorkspaceBoss` as is: if the galley document contains any story and the session's `IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData` is default (checked through `IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData::GetIsDefaultValues`), the data shown in [Table 113](#) is overridden.

TABLE 113 `IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData` overrides when it is default

Attributes	Override
Font Leading	Changed by <code>SetPDFExFontLeading</code> . Set to the string value returned from <code>IGalleySettingsOverwrite::GetDisplayFontLeading</code> .
Font Name	Changed by <code>SetPDFExFont</code> . Set to the value returned by <code>Utils<IGalleyUtils>()->GetFontFamilyAndStyle</code> .
Font Size	Changed by <code>SetPDFExFontSize</code> . Set to the string value returned from <code>IGalleySettingsOverwrite::GetDisplayFontSize</code> .
Font Type	Changed by <code>SetPDFExFontType</code> . Set to the value returned by <code>Utils<IGalleyUtils>()->GetFontFamilyAndStyle</code> .
Include Accurate Line Endings	Changed by <code>SetPDFExALE</code> . If <code>ITextLine::GetLinesType</code> is equal to <code>ITextLines::kLayoutLineEnds</code> , set to <code>kTrue</code> ; otherwise, <code>kFalse</code> .
Include Inline Notes	Changed by <code>SetPDFExInlineNotes</code> . If there is at least one note anchor in the document, set to <code>kTrue</code> ; otherwise, <code>kFalse</code> .
Include Line Numbers	Changed by <code>SetPDFExLineNumber</code> . Set to the value returned by <code>Utils<IGalleyUtils>()->InGalley()</code> .
Include Paragraph Styles	Changed by <code>SetPDFExStyle</code> . Set to the value returned from <code>IGalleySettingsOverwrite::GetShowParagraphStyleNames</code> .
Include Track Changes	Changed by <code>SetPDFExTrackChanges</code> . Set to the value returned from <code>IGalleySettingsOverwrite::GetShowTrackChanges</code> .
Notes Type	Changed by <code>SetPDFExNotesType</code> . Set to <code>kVisible</code> .
Show Notes Backgrounds in Color	Changed by <code>SetPDFExNotesBackground</code> . Set to <code>kFalse</code> .
Show Track Changes Backgrounds in Color	Changed by <code>SetPDFExTrackChangesBackground</code> . Set to <code>kFalse</code> .
Track Changes Type	Changed by <code>SetPDFExTrackChangesType</code> . Set to <code>kVisible</code> .

NOTE: `ITextLine` and `IGalleySettingsOverwrite` should be from the galley view (`kWritingModeWidgetBoss`) of the exported document.

In galley view mode, the PDF export provider initializes `IPDFExportPrefs` and `IPDFExportPrefs` in much the same way as described in “[From InCopy layout view](#)” on page 462, but the attributes from `IPDFExportPrefs` shown in [Table 114](#) are overridden by `IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData`, as described above.

TABLE 114 Galley-specific settings for `IPDFExportPrefs`

Attributes	Values
Acrobat Compatibility Level	Set by <code>SetPDFExAcrobatCompatibilityLevel</code> . Set to the value returned from <code>IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData::GetPDFExAcrobatCompatibilityLevel</code> .
Include Page Information	Set by <code>SetPDFExPageInfo</code> . If <code>IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData::GetPDFExPageInfo</code> is equal to <code>kTrue</code> , this is set to <code>IPDFExportPrefs::kExportPageInfoON</code> ; otherwise, <code>IPDFExportPrefs::kExportPageInfoOFF</code> .
Subset Fonts Threshold	Set by <code>SetPDFExSubsetFontsThreshold</code> . Set to the value returned from <code>IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData::GetPDFExSubsetFontsThreshold</code> .

As described in “[From InCopy layout view](#)” on page 462, `IOutputPages` is a critical interface that holds the UIDs of pages to be exported for `kPDFExportCmdBoss` in layout mode. For `InCopy` galley and story mode, however, `IOutputPages` cannot provide enough data for `kPDFExportCmdBoss` to draw a range of lines from galley view or rearrange the number of columns in the output PDF that are allowed in the galley export options dialog box. Therefore, the interface `IInCopyGalleySettingData` is aggregated on `kPDFExportCmdBoss` to hold the data used to create a galley window for PDF export. In addition to settings specific to galley mode, `IInCopyGalleySettingData` also holds the views (`IControlView*` of the galley writing widgets, paragraph information panel, etc.) that represent the real output pages based on the user’s galley export settings. `kPDFExportCmdBoss` passes these views to the PDF drawing port for output instead of using `IOutputPages`. The user of `kPDFExportCmdBoss` is responsible for setting up `IInCopyGalleySettingData` properly before the command is processed. The PDF export provider executes `kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss` to get an invisible output view based on the data from the current galley document and `IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData`. It then uses the view and `IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData` to set up `IInCopyGalleySettingData` for `kPDFExportCmdBoss`. The PDF export provider sets up `IOutputPages` of `kPDFExportCmdBoss` with `IOutputPages` returned from `kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss`, which has the values shown in [Table 115](#).

TABLE 115 IOutput pages from kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss

Attributes	Values
ContiguousPages	kTrue
Name	Name of the galley document
IsSpreads	kFalse
MasterDataBase	Database for the window created by the kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss
UIDs	Placeholder. UIDs number from 0 to total pages-1. UIDs contained in IOutputPages are not used by kPDFExportCmdBoss in InCopy galley and story mode.

The following steps summarize how the PDF export provider sets up IInCopyGalleySettingData for kPDFExportCmdBoss.

1. A new kInCopyGalleySettingDataBoss is created, with default value.
2. IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData is used to override the IInCopyGalleySettingData of the new kInCopyGalleySettingDataBoss.
3. IInCopyGalleySettingData is used to execute the kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss command.
4. A copy of IInCopyGalleySettingData returned from kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss in Step 3 is used to set up kPDFExportCmdBoss.

Table 116 shows how attributes from IInCopyGalleySettingData get their values in different stages. In the table, “PEGD” stands for IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData from Step 2 above.

TABLE 116 Setting up IInCopyGalleySettingData for kPDFExportCmdBoss

Attribute and description	Default value	Overridden value	Final value after kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss
Galley/story control view	nil	nil	Calculated by kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss
Paragraph panel control view (GetInfoColumnView)	nil	nil	Calculated by kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss
Line number panel control view (GetLineNumberView)	N/A, not used	N/A, not used	N/A, not used
Splitter control view (GetInfoSplitterView)	nil	nil	Calculated by kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss

Attribute and description	Default value	Overridden value	Final value after kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss
Total content height of the galley (GetTotalHeight)	0	0	Calculated by kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss
Start Line Number (GetStartLineNumber)	N/A, not used	N/A, not used	N/A, not used
End Line Number (GetEndLineNumber)	N/A, not used	N/A, not used	N/A, not used
Column width (GetColumnWidth)	0	Calculated based on PEGD and current unit settings	Calculated by kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss
GalleySetting	kTrue	kTrue	kTrue
Document UIDRef (GetDocUIDRef)	N/A	UIDRef of galley document	UIDRef of galley document
To print with paragraph style info (GetParaStyle)	kFalse	from PEGD	from PEGD
To print with line number (GetLineNumber)	kFalse	from PEGD	from PEGD
To print with accurate line ending (GetALE)	kFalse	from PEGD	from PEGD
To print with notes displayed (GetNotes)	kFalse	from PEGD	from PEGD
To print with tracked changes displayed (GetTrackChange)	kFalse	from PEGD	from PEGD
Notes displayed type (GetNotesType)	kVisible	from PEGD	from PEGD
Track change displayed type (GetTrackChangesType)	kVisible	from PEGD	from PEGD
Font name (GetFontName)	""	from PEGD	from PEGD
Font type (GetFontType)	""	from PEGD	from PEGD
Font size (GetFontSize)	""	from PEGD	from PEGD
Font leading (GetFontLeading)	""	from PEGD	from PEGD

Attribute and description	Default value	Overridden value	Final value after kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss
To print with line range scope (GetWhich)	IInCopyGalleyPrintData::kAll	If PEGD's GetPDFExlineRangeFormat is IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData::kAllLine, set to kAllLines; otherwise, kUseRange	If PEGD's GetPDFExlineRangeFormat is IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData::kAllLine, set to kAllLines; otherwise kUseRange.
To print the line range (GetRange)	""	from PEGD	from PEGD
Galley frame size (GetFrameSize)	Rect(0, 0, 0, 0)	Set frame to the page bounds from the first page of the galley document.	Set frame to the page bounds from the first page of the galley document.
To print with content filled with the page (GetFill)	kFalse	If GetALE returns true, then set to the return value from PEGD's GetPDFExFill; otherwise, kFalse.	If GetALE returns true, then set to the return value from PEGD's GetPDFExFill; otherwise, kFalse.
Story range (GetScope)	IInCopyGalleyPrintData::kAll	from PEGD	from PEGD
To print with story information (GetStoryInfo)	kFalse	from PEGD	from PEGD
To print with notes background in color (GetNotesBackgroundInColor)	kTrue	from PEGD	from PEGD
To print with track changes background in color (GetTrackChangesBackgroundInColor)	kTrue	from PEGD	from PEGD
To print with page information (GetPagesInfo)	kFalse	kFalse	kFalse (kPDFExportCmdBoss takes this info from IPDFExportPrefs)
To print with number of columns (GetColumns)	1	1	Calculated by kCreatePrintGalleyViewCmdBoss

InDesign book export

You can use the high-level kBookExportActionCmdBoss to easily export a book. For details, see SnpExportBookAsPDF.cpp.

kBookExportActionCmdBoss uses kPDFExportBookBoss (with service ID kExportBookService), which uses the same PDF export service provider (kPDFExportProviderImpl) as the

kPDFExportBoss; however, kPDFExportBookBoss aggregates an IOutputPages interface that lists document pages in the book to export. The regular document kPDFExportBoss does not aggregate IOutputPages; it sets up IOutputPages for the kPDFExportCmdBoss based on the IPageRange, as shown in [Example 28](#).

Selected page-items export

There is no direct user interface to allow export of selected page items in InDesign; however, you can copy selected page items to the pasteboard in PDF format. Then, when you paste into an external application that supports PDF import, the pasted object is in PDF format. This is done through kPDFExportItemsCmdBoss. The snippet in [Example 29](#) shows how to process the command.

EXAMPLE 29 How to process a kPDFExportItemsCmdBoss command

```
// Assume stream is the destination PDF file write stream.
// Assume realPageItems contains no guide item, which can
// cause trouble in PDF export.
InterfacePtr<ICommand> command(CmdUtils::CreateCommand(kPDFExportItemsCmdBoss));
if (command)
{
    command->SetItemList(realPageItems);

    // Initialize the command data from the session.
    InterfacePtr<IPDFExportPrefs> appExportPrefs((IPDFExportPrefs *)
        ::QuerySessionPreferences(IID_IPDFCLIPBOARDEXPORTPREFS));
    InterfacePtr<IPDFExportPrefs> exportPrefs(command, IID_IPDFEXPORTPREFS);
    InterfacePtr<IPDFSecurityPrefs> appSecurityPrefs((IPDFSecurityPrefs *)
        ::QuerySessionPreferences(IID_IPDFSECURITYPREFS));
    InterfacePtr<IPDFSecurityPrefs>
    exportSecurityPrefs(command, IID_IPDFSECURITYPREFS);
    exportPrefs->CopyPrefs(appExportPrefs);
    exportSecurityPrefs->CopyPrefs(appSecurityPrefs);

    // no progress bar
    InterfacePtr<IBoolData> useProgressBar(command, IID_IUSEPROGRESSINDICATOR);
    useProgressBar->Set(kFalse);
    InterfacePtr<IUIFlagData> uiFlagData(command, IID_IUIFLAGDATA);
    uiFlagData->Set(kSuppressUI);

    // Assume no destination color profile (i.e., ignore IUIData).
    // (IID_IPDFDESTCMSPROFILE)

    // Put the stream pointer in the IIntData.
    InterfacePtr<IIntData> exportCmdStreamData(command, IID_IINTDATA);
    exportCmdStreamData->Set((long) stream);
    // process the command
    CmdUtils::ProcessCommand(command);
    success = ErrorUtils::PMGetGlobalErrorCode();
}
}
```

PDF-style import and export

When the PDF export provider brings up the Export Adobe PDF options dialog box, the dialog box is initialized according to the following rules:

1. A preset style UID may be passed in. When it is available, use it.
2. Otherwise, if the last preset used is named “[Custom]” or the style name ends with “(modified),” use the application preferences of the workspace.
3. Otherwise, if the last preset used is not empty and is valid, use it.
4. Otherwise, use the default preferences. This is the first time the export dialog is run after deleting Save Data.

PDF export style is represented by `kPDFExportStyleBoss`, which aggregates an `IPDFExportPrefs` interface that stores the settings. Usually, the `IPDFExportPrefs -> CopyPrefs` method is used to copy the setting out of the style boss to another `IPDFExportPrefs` you are using. The last preset style’s name is saved in the `IPDFExportStyleLastUsed` on the `kWorkspace`. You can use the snippet in [Example 30](#) to get the name in `PMString`:

EXAMPLE 30 Getting the last-used style name

```
InterfacePtr<IPDFExportStyleLastUsed>
    iStyleLast((IPDFExportStyleLastUsed*)::QuerySessionPreferences
        (IID_IPDFEXPORTSTYLELASTUSED));
PMString lastPreset;
if (iStyleLast)
    lastPreset = iStyleLast->GetString();
lastPreset.SetTranslatable(false);
```

Given a style name, you can use `IPDFExptStyleListMgr` (aggregated on `kWorkspace`) to obtain the UID style object, Continuing from [Example 30](#), [Example 31](#) shows how to get to a last used style object from its name:

EXAMPLE 31 Getting a style object using name

```
InterfacePtr<IPDFExptStyleListMgr>
styleMgr((IPDFExptStyleListMgr*)::QuerySessionPreferences(IID_IPDFEXPORTSTYLELISTMGR));
int32 nStyle = styleMgr->GetStyleIndexByName(lastPreset);
if (nStyle != -1)
{
    UIDRef styleRef = styleMgr->GetNthStyleRef(nStyle);

    InterfacePtr<IPDFExportPrefs> pStylePrefs(styleRef, UseDefaultIID());
    if (pStylePrefs)
    {
        // assume myExportPrefs is an IPDFExportPrefs I am trying to set up
        myExportPrefs->CopyPrefs(pStylePrefs);
    }
}
```

Adding, deleting, and editing styles

To add a style, use `kPDFExportAddStyleCmdBoss`. [Example 32](#) shows how to process the command:

EXAMPLE 32 Adding a PDF-export style

```
InterfacePtr<ICommand> addCmd(CmdUtils::CreateCommand(kPDFExportAddStyleCmdBoss));
InterfacePtr<IExportStyleCmdData> cmdData(addCmd, IID_IEXPORTSTYLECMDDATA);
InterfacePtr<IWorkspace> workspace(gSession->QueryWorkspace());
UIDRef workspaceUIDRef = ::GetUIDRef(workspace);
cmdData->SetSrcList(workspaceUIDRef);
cmdData->SetDstList(workspaceUIDRef);
// Assume presetName is a PMString containing the new style name.
cmdData->SetNewName(presetName);
cmdData->SetStyleIndex(-2); // -2 means get the PDF preferences from the command.
InterfacePtr<IPDFExportPrefs> commandPrefs(cmdData, UseDefaultIID());
// Assume pSrcPref is my source IPDFExportPrefs to be made into the new style.
commandPrefs->CopyPrefs(pSrcPrefs);
commandPrefs->SetUIName(presetName);
ErrorCode rc = CmdUtils::ProcessCommand(addCmd);
```

The command boss aggregates an `IExportStyleCmdData` that has a method, `SetStyleIndex`, that sets up a style index for the command. The style index tells the command where the source style comes from, according to the following rules:

1. If there is valid index (index ≥ 0), that style's PDF preferences (queried from an `IPDFExportStyleListMgr` returned by `IExportStyleCmdData::GetSrcList`) are used.
2. If the index is -2, the PDF preferences come from the command.
3. If the index is -3, the PDF preferences come from the command, but the data is not written to disk.
4. Otherwise, the PDF preferences come from the current application preferences.
5. In all cases except -3, the data is written to disk.

To delete a style, use `kPDFExportDeleteStyleCmdBoss`. [Example 33](#) shows how to delete a style stored in the application's workspace:

EXAMPLE 33 Deleting a PDF-export style

```
InterfacePtr<IWorkspace> workspace(gSession->QueryWorkspace());
UIDRef workspaceUIDRef = ::GetUIDRef(workspace);
InterfacePtr<ICommand>
deleteCmd(CmdUtils::CreateCommand(kPDFExportDeleteStyleCmdBoss));
InterfacePtr<IExportStyleCmdData> commandData(deleteCmd, IID_IEXPORTSTYLECMDDATA);
// Assume i is the (to-be-deleted) style index in the style list.
commandData->SetStyleIndex(i);
commandData->SetDstList(workspaceUIDRef);
CmdUtils::ProcessCommand(deleteCmd);
```

To edit a style, use `kPDFEditStyleCmdBoss`. [Example 34](#) shows how to edit a style stored in the application's workspace:

EXAMPLE 34 Editing a PDF style

```
InterfacePtr<ICommand> editStyleCmd(CmdUtils::CreateCommand(kPDFEditStyleCmdBoss));
InterfacePtr<IIntData> data(editStyleCmd, IID_IINTDATA);
// Assume index is the index of the style to be edited.
data->Set(index);
InterfacePtr<IPDFExportPrefs> newPrefs(editStyleCmd, IID_IPDFEXPORTPREFS );
// Assume myPrefs is the edited copy of IPDFExportPrefs.
newPrefs->CopyPrefs(myPrefs);
CmdUtils::ProcessCommand(editStyleCmd);
```

Frequently asked questions

How does the PDF export provider determine whether it should start the viewer after the export?

In `InDesign`, `IPDFPostProcessPrefs` is used to maintain persistent PDF preference data not part of the standard `IPDFExportPrefs`. `IPDFPostProcessPrefs` is aggregated on `kWorkspaceBoss` and can be queried through `QuerySessionPreferences`. Use `IPDFPostProcessPrefs::GetViewAfterExport` to determine whether the viewer should be launched.

In `InCopy`, `IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData::GetPDFExLaunchAcrobat` (for galley) and `IInCopyPDFExptLayoutData::GetPDFExLaunchAcrobat` (for layout) are used to determine whether the viewer should be started.

How do I set the PDF clipboard setting as seen in the File Handling preferences?

Those settings (e.g., `Prefer PDF when Pasting`) are kept in the `IPDFClipboardPrefs` aggregated on the `kWorkspaceBoss`. To modify the settings, use `kSetPDFCBPrefsCmdBoss`.

How do I control which layer of a document should be exported?

`IPDFExportPrefs::SetExportLayers` can be used to control the function of layers for visibility and printability. Use the enums `kExportAllLayers`, `kExportVisibleLayers`, and `kExportVisible-PrintableLayers` to set the export layer's preference. Each layer's visibility and printability are controlled by each layer's option, managed by `IDocumentLayer`. For more information about how to set each layer's visibility and printability, see the "Layer Options" section of the "Layout Fundamentals" chapter.

How do I make the two-page spreads in my document export as two separate PDF pages?

Set the Boolean control for reader spreads in the IPDFExportPrefs to false. The IOutputPages on the kPDFExportCmdBoss usually is initialized as follows:

```
InterfacePtr<IOutputPages> iExportPages(cmd, IID_IOUTPUTPAGES);
iExportPages->InitializeFrom(pageUIDs, (exportPrefs->GetPDFExReaderSpreads() ==
IPDFExportPrefs::kExportReaderSpreadsON));
```

If the preference for the reader spreads is set to false and you set up IOutputPages as above, the two pages spreads are exported as separated pages in the PDF. See [“Setting up kPDFExportCmdBoss’s IOutputPages from IPageRange” on page 462.](#)

Why does kPDFExportCmdBoss give me an assert after the command is processed (ASSERT 'db != nil' in PDFExportController.cpp)?

Make sure you put the UIDRef of the pages in the IOutputPage interface. Also, set the item list with the pages’ UIDRef values (in a UIDList). kPDFExportCmdBoss is used for exporting both books (multiple .indd files) and multiple pages from a document. kPDFExportCmdBoss first checks to see whether it has a valid IOutputPages and uses the database from the first UIDRef of the output pages. If the command cannot find a valid database from IOutputPages, it looks for it from the command item list.

How do I set up line ranges for output in InCopy Galley or Story mode?

Use IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData::SetPDFExLineRange. Pass in a PMString with a format like “3-10” (i.e., the beginning page number, followed by a dash, followed by the ending page number). IInCopyPDFExptGalleyData is aggregated on the kWorkspaceBoss.

Is it possible to export only selected text from an InDesign document?

No. When printing or exporting to PDF, the decision to draw or not draw is made at the page-item level. This is evidenced by the “Nonprinting” attribute, which can be applied to a text frame but not the text itself. Similarly, draw event handlers work on the page-item level, such as the text frame.

Implementing Preflight Rules

Introduction

This chapter provides high-level information for developers who want to build their own rules or set of rules. It complements the low-level information found in the SDK.

About preflight in InDesign CS4

InDesign CS4 has a new feature for profile-based preflight. There was a preflight feature before CS4, but it was designed primarily for improving the reliability of the package operation. CS4 includes a fully rule-driven, parameterized, continuous preflight that can run in the background as you work.

The preflight model comprises several major areas, most of which are fully extensible by external developers. Very little preflight code is written using private interfaces.

- The *preflight object model* is a parallel view of the InDesign document and things that do not appear in the document. It has references to both standard InDesign objects like page items and documents and to non-persistent entities like marking operations. The object model is fully extensible to support new objects.
- *Preflight rule services* are where objects are checked for compliance with a set of parameters. A rule provides discovery, visitation, and reporting functions to the preflight engine.
- *Preflight processes* are idle-task-driven in-memory objects which coordinate all interactions between the object model and the rule services. Processes also can be driven synchronously if desired, but normally they run in the background. The processes are not extensible, but developers have full access to their status and database.

This chapter is concerned only with the rule services, which are the most common type of extension.

About rules

In the preflight model, rules are the entities that check conditions in the document and generate errors. An example of a rule is “Missing and Modified Graphics,” which looks for graphics that are missing or outdated.

To write a rule, you need two things:

- The *rule boss* encapsulates both the intelligence and data for a rule.
- The *rule service* tells InDesign that your rule exists and lets it create a boss for a rule. A rule service can “host” as many rules as desired; the native InDesign rule service hosts dozens of rules.

Rule IDs

Each unique rule (for example, missing fonts or image resolution) is identified by a rule ID. A rule ID is simply a WideString that is never exposed in the user interface but serves to distinguish it from every other rule out there. For each rule you implement, you need to devise a unique rule ID. For example, you could prefix your rule ID with your company name or use a GUID converted to a string. Rule IDs are exposed to scripting.

Rule service

A rule service is implemented as a standard InDesign service with the service ID kPreflightRuleService. On the service boss, you need the IID_IK2SERVICEPROVIDER (you can use kPreflightRuleSPIImpl for the implementation) and an IPreflightRuleService. The latter interface has two methods, shown in [Table 117](#).

TABLE 117 *Methods in your IPreflightRuleService implementation*

Method	Purpose
GetAllRules	Returns a vector of rule IDs that your services hosts.
CreateRule	Given a rule ID that you host, creates a rule boss and returns it.

In other words, this interface provides a map and boss factory for rule bosses. Most of the complexity is in the rule bosses themselves.

CreateRule can be called on when InDesign is creating new preflight profiles or, in some cases, for purely temporary purposes. For example, it might create a rule just to get some information about it, then destroy it. It takes a database pointer to indicate whether it wants the boss to be created in a document (or preferences) or in memory for temporary purposes.

IPreflightRuleService example

To illustrate a typical rule-service implementation, here are some sample method implementations. In this example, there are two rules, Maximum Text Size and Maximum Rectangle Size.

IPreflightRuleService::GetAllRules

The first step is to create rule IDs for these rules; typically, we'll also need rule bosses. If XYZCo company is developing the rules, we might use the mapping shown in [Table 118](#).

TABLE 118 Mappings used in our PreflightRuleService example

Rule	Rule ID	Boss
Maximum text size	XYZCo_MaxTextSize	kMaxTextSizeRuleBoss
Maximum rectangle size	XYZCo_MaxRectSize	kMaxRectSizeRuleBoss

The GetAllRules method must return a vector of rule IDs. This is not complicated:

```
const PreflightRuleID kMaxTextSizeRuleID("XYZCo_MaxTextSize");
const PreflightRuleID kMaxRectSizeRuleID("XYZCo_MaxRectSize");
virtual PreflightRuleIDVector GetAllRules() const
{
    PreflightRuleIDVector rules;
    rules.push_back(kMaxTextSizeRuleID);
    rules.push_back(kMaxRectSizeRuleID);
    return rules;
}
```

This method usually will be called only once per session, by the rule manager, which then holds onto the information in its internal maps.

IPreflightRuleService::CreateRule

This method creates the appropriate boss from a passed-in rule ID and fills in defaults. In our example, we would do something like the following. (For ease of reading, most error handling is omitted.)

```
virtual IPreflightRuleInfo* CreateRule
(
    // Rule to create
    PreflightRuleID ruleID,
    // Database in which to create it (nil = in memory)
    IDatabase* db
) const
{
    ClassID bossID = 0;
    PMString desc;

    if (ruleID == kMaxTextSizeRuleID)
    {
        bossID = kMaxTextSizeRuleBoss;
        desc = PMString("Maximum text size");
    }
}
```

```

    else if (ruleID == kMaxTextSizeRuleID)
    {
        bossID = kMaxRectSizeRuleBoss;
        desc = PMString("Maximum rectangle size");
    }
    else return nil;

    IPreflightRuleInfo* iRule = (IPreflightRuleInfo*)CreateObject
    (db, bossID, IID_IPREFLIGHTRULEINFO);
    iRule->SetRuleID(ruleID);
    iRule->SetRuleDescription(desc);
    iRule->SetPluginDescription("XYZCo Rules Plugin");

    // Set up default parameter values.
    InterfacePtr<IPreflightRuleUtilities> iUtils(iRule, UseDefaultIID());
    iUtils->UpdateRuleData();

    return iRule;
}

```

It is up to you what strategy to use for initialization, mapping rule IDs to bosses and descriptions, and so on. If you have only a few rules, the method above should suffice.

Rule bosses

A rule boss is where all the heavy lifting goes on in the preflight world. A rule boss corresponds to a particular rule and encapsulates all the behaviors of that rule, including the following:

- *Parameter data* — For example, if your rule looks for things larger than X, and the user can specify X, X is a rule parameter.
- *User interface* — This is the interface used to modify your rule parameters.
- *Evaluation* — Your rule is a visitor. The preflight engine “carries it around” to objects it wants to visit, and the rule must determine if the object is alright or has an error.
- *Aggregation* — Once your rule finishes gathering errors, it must determine how to present the errors to the user.
- *Utilities* — If your rule has any special requirements when copied or deleted, it needs to provide those implementations.

As shown in the previous example, each rule your plug-in supports typically has its own boss. Each rule boss must have the interfaces shown in [Table 119](#). You can add whatever other interfaces you want on your rule bosses.

TABLE 119 Required interfaces on rule bosses

Interface	Purpose
IPreflightRuleData	Stores the rule parameter data as a dictionary (key-value pairs). Use kPreflightRuleDataImpl unless you have a really good reason not to do so.
IPreflightRuleVisitor	Provides all the evaluation and aggregation functions. This interface tells InDesign what kinds of objects the rule wants to visit (page items, styles, artwork, etc.), is called back when it is time to visit one of those objects, and is called back when it is time to aggregate (create final report of findings). Also, it provides some parameter initialization and validation methods.
IPreflightRuleUtilities	Provides rule-specific utilities for your rule, including copying the rule, any special deletion requirements, and determining equality with other rules. In most cases, you can use the default kPreflightRuleUtilitiesImpl implementation.

These interfaces are documented in the headers and doc++ comments, but the IPreflightRuleVisitor interface is critical, so we expand on it below.

IPreflightRuleVisitor interface

The IPreflightRuleVisitor interface has three methods related to rule evaluation, shown in [Table 120](#).

TABLE 120 Rule evaluation methods on IPreflightRuleVisitor

Method	Description
GetClassesToVisit	Preflight calls this method, generally on start-up, when it builds its maps relating rules to objects. It must return a vector of preflight object class IDs that your rule wants to visit. For example, if you want to visit all images, you would return a vector containing kPreflightOM_Image.
Visit	Preflight calls this method when it is time to evaluate a given object, either because it was not visited before or something was changed such that the result <i>might</i> be different. This method is passed an abstract utility class that your method uses to obtain information and report its findings.
AggregateResults	Preflight calls this method after the first pass (visitation) is complete and the Visit method found something it might want to report. This method takes the “raw” results found during visitation into final presentation, in the form of nodes in the results tree. This method typically consolidates multiple errors into a single node, builds strings, and so on.

The IPreflightRuleVisitor interface also has two methods related to rule-parameter initialization and validation, shown in [Table 121](#). (These could be on another interface but since every rule needs to implement them, there is less overhead to include them on this interface, since every rule needs its own IPreflightRuleVisitor.)

TABLE 121 *Parameter methods on IPreflightRuleVisitor*

Method	Description
UpdateRuleData	Preflight calls this method at start-up (for application profiles) and document open time (for document embedded profiles), to give the rule an opportunity to initialize and/or update the rule parameters.
ValidateRuleData	Preflight calls this method when a parameter is set via scripting, to ensure it is a legitimate value.

IPreflightRuleVisitor method examples

The methods in this interface concentrate on the discovery, visitation, and aggregation phases of the preflight process. This is the trickiest interface to write.

IPreflightRuleVisitor::GetClassesToVisit

This method simply tells InDesign what object classes your rule wants to visit. For example the missing-fonts rule looks at text runs (to see directly which fonts are used and where), as well as placed content that has required-font data, namely placed EPS, EPS, and INDD files. Its implementation looks like the following:

```
virtual PreflightObjectClassIDVector GetClassesToVisit() const
{
    PreflightObjectClassIDVector classes;
    classes.push_back(kPreflightOM_WaxRun);
    classes.push_back(kPreflightOM_EPS);
    classes.push_back(kPreflightOM_PDF);
    classes.push_back(kPreflightOM_INDD);
    return classes;
}
```

Do not declare classes in which you are not actually interested. The preflight engine expands only those portions of the model required to satisfy the rules in the profile. If you ask for artwork, for instance, you will take a big hit in processing cycles; do this only if it is needed.

IPreflightRuleVisitor::Visit

This is the method in which your rule inspects objects it asked to visit. Typically, this method consists of comparing attributes of the object against rule parameters.

The argument for this method is IPreflightVisitInfo interface, which provides all the information you should need about the object being visited. It also provides the mechanism for reporting the errors. [Table 122](#) lists the methods in this interface.

TABLE 122 IPreflightVisitInfo methods

Method	Purpose
QueryOptions	Gets the IPreflightOptions interface for the current process. Not typically used, but sometimes rules want to know the options.
GetObjectID	Gets the PreflightObjectID of the thing being visited. Typically, this is used to get the ClassID of that object, if your rule looks at multiple object types.
QueryObject	Obtains the IPreflightObject interface for the object being visited. This is used in nearly every rule, because it lets you ask questions about the object.
CreateResultRecord	Creates a result record; that is, records a problem (or potential problem) with this node. Usually, this is an error indication, but not necessarily; you might use this to count instances of something and have an error only if it finds more than a certain number.

Here is an example of a Visit implementation, the page-count rule. (To enhance readability, most error checking, like nil interfaces, is omitted.)

```
virtual void Visit(IPreflightVisitInfo* iVisit) override
{
    InterfacePtr<IPreflightObject> iObj(iVisit->QueryObject());
    InterfacePtr<IDocument> iDoc(iObj->GetModelRef(), UseDefaultIID());
    InterfacePtr<IPageList> iDocPages(iDoc, UseDefaultIID());

    int32 count = iDocPages->GetPageCount();
    PreflightRuleDataHelper dh(this);
    ComparisonType comp = (ComparisonType)dh.GetIntParam(
        kParamCountComparisonType);
    int32 value = dh.GetIntParam(kParamCountComparisonValue);
    int32 value2 = dh.GetIntParam(kParamCountComparisonValue2);
    bool32 fails = kFalse;
```

```

switch(comp)
{
case kComparison_EqualTo:
fails = (count != value);
break;
case kComparison_Minimum:
fails = (count < value);
break;
case kComparison_Maximum:
fails = (count > value);
break;
case kComparison_MultipleOf:
fails = value > 1 && (count % value != 0);
break;
case kComparison_Between:
fails = (count < value || count > value2);
break;
}

if (fails)
{
InterfacePtr<IPreflightResultRecord> iRec
(iVisit->CreateResultRecord());
iRec->SetCriteria(kPreflightRC_Default);
iRec->AddValue(count);
}
}

```

In this case, the rule is looking only at the document object, so it does not need to check for the class ID of the object that is passed in. The first thing it does is as follows:

```

InterfacePtr<IPreflightObject> iObj(iVisit->QueryObject());
InterfacePtr<IDocument> iDoc(iObj->GetModelRef(), UseDefaultIID());

```

Since the object in question is the document, it has a model mapping, so `iObj->GetModelRef()` produces the `UIDRef` of the document. Not all objects have a model mapping. You need to do things that are unique to the kind of object you are looking at, even if in general those things fall into general categories.

The rest of the implementation simply compares the number of pages against the rule parameter, using the rule's comparison type (also a rule parameter). If it fails, then it does the following:

```

InterfacePtr<IPreflightResultRecord> iRec
(iVisit->CreateResultRecord());
iRec->SetCriteria(kPreflightRC_Default);
iRec->AddValue(count);

```

This code creates a result record, which is simply a small data structure that records what the rule tells it to, and attaches it in the process database (a non-persistent database) to the node representing the object (in this case, the document). This record can be produced later (along with all other records the rule created as it inspected objects), in the results-aggregation method. In this example, there is only one object, the document, but in a case where you are inspecting page items or marking operations, there could be dozens or hundreds.

After the result record is created, the rule sets the criteria to `kPreflightRC_Default`. This is the value used by rules that do not need to break down errors into different categories (or at least not at the time it is finding the errors).

Finally, consider the case where the rule is adding a value to the record. The meaning of this value and the use of the value vector are completely up to the rule; however, when the rule is inspecting the object, it may make complex decisions or get calculated values that are inconvenient to repeat when results are aggregated. For example, a marking operation that looks at stroke width will record the stroke width it found, because it does not want to have to look it up again later. More examples of this are later in this section.

Table 123 shows the contents of a results record.

TABLE 123 Contents of a result record

Field	Uses
Object ID	The <code>PreflightObjectID</code> of the entity to which the record refers. This always is the object to which the record was attached.
Subparts	A vector of subpart IDs. Normally, this is set up by one of the aggregation utilities during the aggregation phase, but a rule also may specify a subpart, if that is useful.
Values	A vector of <code>PMReals</code> . Normally, this is a width, height, or other quantity you want to record for this instance. For example, you can record the width of a stroke you found. The aggregation utilities also use this information when combining multiple records together.
Criteria	This can be used to differentiate different kinds of failure. This field also is used by the aggregation utilities to simplify the process of generating results. An example is the image-resolution rule, which has different criteria for each image type and min/max failure. This means that the aggregation method does not have to determine what the image type was again.
Aux String	This is just string data that the rule can use as it wishes. For example, the font-type rule records the font name here. This allows it to build results easily, because the aggregation utilities can sort by this value.
Process Node	If this record was created by <code>IPreflightVisitInfo::CreateResultRecord</code> , it has the process node ID recorded here. This is useful if you want to look at the result relative to other objects in the tree. The aggregation utilities use this to determine the relationship between artwork and containing objects.

IPreflightRuleVisitor::AggregateResults

This method is where your rule takes the results (specifically, the result records) found in the Visit phase and produces nodes in the aggregated results tree. In other words, the input is the array of result records; for example:

Stroke on object X is 0.1 pt

Stroke on object Y is 0.1 pt

The output is a hierarchy of preflight aggregated result nodes; for example:

Strokes are too small

Object X

Object Y

This example is simple. In the general case, especially with artwork, the raw results can be numerous, with many grouped under the same object (e.g., the same PDF).

The tree contains several different kinds of nodes:

- *Category nodes* are added by the preflight engine and represent the rule categories; for example, Document, Links, and Text. These nodes are created automatically by preflight, based on the categories the rule services declare and place the rules in.
- *Criteria nodes* are used to group failing objects together under the common failure type. For example, “Strokes are too small” is a criteria, under which you would put the violations of that rule (Object X and Object Y, in the above example).
- *Violation nodes* are individual failures of a rule. In the example above, “Object X” and “Object Y” are violation nodes.
- *Criteria/violation nodes* are nodes that are both criteria and violation, because there is only a single object or single failure for that rule. Typically, this means it is a document-level error, like number of pages.

Each node has a short string that appears in the tree-view widget in the preflight panel and long-form strings that appear in the Info section. In both cases, these strings also appear in the preflight report.

Mapping the raw preflight result records to the tree hierarchy can be complex, because each rule usually has its own strategy for reducing the complexity of the results presentation. The preflight API allows the rules to do this any way they like, but it supports those mechanisms with utilities that reduce the line count. All these utilities are in `IPreflightAggregatedResultsUtils`.

The recommended sequence of events in the `AggregateResults` method is as follows. The code assumes a declaration with the following arguments:

```
virtual void AggregateResults
(
    const IPreflightProcess* iProcess,
    const IPreflightProcess::NodeIDVector& resultNodes,
    IPreflightAggregatedResults* iResults,
    IPreflightAggregatedResults::NodeID parentID
) const
```

The first two parameters can be thought of as the inputs to the aggregation process; i.e., the nodes in the process database corresponding to the raw results found during the Visit. The last two parameters can be thought of as the outputs: `iResults` is the artwork-tree interface you would use to add nodes, and `parentID` is the node in that tree under which you should add your nodes as children.

All utilities in the IPreflightAggregatedResultsUtils work on preflight result records, collecting them in tables (IPreflightResultRecordTable) for most operations. A IPreflightResultRecordTable is simply a vector of ref-counted record pointers, so dividing a table into subtables is a fairly quick operation; therefore, most of the utilities transform one table of results into another, at which point those results are copied into the aggregated results tree.

Typical steps in aggregation are as follows:

1. Get the raw table of results — All the rule’s result records are extracted from the process database, to get an initial, raw, unprocessed table.
2. Apply standard aggregations — Records are combined in the table using standard combination techniques, such as localizing artwork to the page items that contain it and combining contiguous text runs. Improves the usability of the results and can dramatically reduce the size of the results.
3. Combine records into buckets — Once the record list is reduced by standard aggregations, there are various ways of grouping results together. In some cases, multiple records map to one result node; in others, result nodes are grouped together.
4. Generate result nodes — To make a result node, all required strings are generated and added to the result node; then, the result node is inserted into the tree.

Get the raw table of results

The first step in aggregation is getting the initial table of results by collecting them from the process-database result nodes. Unless you have a good reason otherwise, use IPreflightAggregatedResultsUtils::CreateTableFromNodes for this step:

```
Utils<IPreflightAggregatedResultsUtils> iUtils;
InterfacePtr<const IPreflightResultRecordTable> iRawTable(
    iUtils->CreateTableFromNodes(iProcess, resultNodes));
```

The raw table now contains all the results added by your iVisit->CreateResultRecord() calls.

Apply standard aggregations

The usual next step is aggregating all results together using “standard” aggregations, using IPreflightAggregatedResultsUtils::ApplyAllStandardAggregations:

```
InterfacePtr<const IPreflightResultRecordTable> iTable(
    iUtils->ApplyAllStandardAggregations(iProcess, iRawTable));
```

The standard aggregations utilities do the following:

- All records corresponding to marking operations are aggregated into the containing object (shape, text run, table cell, etc.) that contains them. The subpart is determined automatically. Only those records with the same subpart and criteria are aggregated together. Thus, you are left with “high level” objects that can be selected, rather than artwork, which cannot.
- Text runs that share the same criteria, subpart, and value are aggregated into a larger text range.

- Records that share the same criteria and values, but different subparts, are aggregated together. This is done last.

You do not need to call `ApplyAllStandardAggregations`. You do not need to make this call if your rule looks at only one object or does not look at objects that would ever be aggregated, or you simply do not want to do any standard aggregation. You also can use any of the “lesser” aggregation utilities, which do only one kind of aggregation, not all of them.

Combine records into buckets

After standard aggregation, the nodes are more or less ready to go into the tree; however, depending on your rule’s desired presentation, you may want to put them in buckets. The native `InDesign` rules put records into buckets in two ways

- *Single node* represents multiple violation records. For example, the image-resolution rule can fail in multiple ways on the same object; in particular, when the images come from a PDF, EPS, or INDD file. Rather than creating a node for each failure, there is a single node for the PDF/EPS/INDD, and all failures are enumerated within that node’s information text.
- *Nodes grouped under a rule or criteria* — If you just add violation nodes under `parentID`, typically they appear as children of a category, which usually is not desirable. (The exception is nodes that can involve only one object, like the document object; these should share both the criteria and violation in a single node.) Rather, you want a criteria node, which describes the error, with the individual violations of that error added as children of the criteria.

Several methods in `IPreflightAggregatedResultsUtils` are useful for bucketizing. Some of these are shown in [Table 124](#).

TABLE 124 *Bucketizing IPreflightAggregatedResultsUtils methods*

Method	Purpose/use
<code>CreateSubTable</code>	Use this when you have manually determined how to divide entries and want to create a new table containing just those entries (for example, for passing to your shared node-building subroutine).
<code>CreateSubTableByCriteria</code>	Use this to put all records under a common criteria node. This method creates a table with only the matching criteria, so you know all entries share that criteria.
<code>CreateTablesByCriteriaCreateTablesByAuxString</code>	Use this to group entries under the same criteria or aux strings, and might have quite a few different criteria (or in the case of strings, you probably don’t know ahead of time how many strings to expect). This method gives you a vector of tables, each sharing entries of the same criteria or string. You can then iterate over the vector and pass each to a common formatting utility.

Method	Purpose/use
CreateTablesByObject	Use this to ensure that an object appears in only one node. If there are multiple criteria/subparts under that object, you just want to add more information strings. For example, this how the stroke-width rule works.

You can use several of these together. For example, you could create tables by criteria, then for each of those tables, create tables by object. Remember, tables are lightweight and ref counted, so there is no record copying when creating subtables. Thus, you can use these utilities to your advantage, without worrying too much about overhead.

As an example, the colorspace rule's aggregation method looks like this:

```
// We only want one entry per object, so divide the table into multiple tables,
// one per common object.
IPreflightAggregatedResultsUtils::VectorOfTables byObject;
iUtils->CreateTablesByObject(iTable, byObject);

int32 i, n;

for(i = 0; i < byObject.size(); i++)
{
    // Create a violation node for this object; then for each record just
    // add strings corresponding to that record.
    IPreflightResultRecordTable* iObjTable = byObject[i];
    InterfacePtr<const IPreflightResultRecord> iRec(
        iObjTable->QueryNthRecord(0));
    InterfacePtr<IPreflightResultNodeInfo> iNode(
        iUtils->CreateViolationNode(iRec->GetObjectID()));

    InterfacePtr<IPreflightResultNodeData> iData(iNode, UseDefaultIID());
    iData->AddInfoString(IPreflightResultNodeData::kFieldRequired, sRequirement);

    // For each subpart create its own Problem line.
    for(n = 0; n < iObjTable->GetRecordCount(); n++)
    {
        InterfacePtr<const IPreflightResultRecord> iRec(
            iObjTable->QueryNthRecord(n));
        iData->AddInfoString(IPreflightResultNodeData::kFieldProblem,
            MyMakeProblemString(iRec));
    }
}
```

In the above example, some of the details are omitted. The point of the example is to show how the original, raw table, having been reduced through standard aggregation, is divided and conquered via CreateTablesByObject.

Generating result nodes

The final step is generating the nodes that appear in the results tree. There are three substeps:

- *Create the node* — You can create four kinds of nodes through the existing utilities: Generic, Criteria, Violation, and Criteria/Violation.
- *Fill in the node's short-form string* (i.e., the one that appears in the tree view panel) — Violation nodes are self-describing through the object model, but the others require you to specify the string you want to appear. These strings also appear in the reports.
- *Fill in the node's Info strings* — These are label-value pairs, like “Required:” and “Text must be either blue or green.” These strings appear in the Info pane below the tree view. They also appear in the reports.

To create the nodes, the IPreflightAggregatedResultsUtils methods in [Table 125](#) are handy.

TABLE 125 Methods for node creation

Method	Purpose
CreateGenericNode	Creates a generic node. Typically, this is a child of a criteria node and is used to group together like items by something other than a criteria. The native rules use this when they want to group by font name, for example.
AddCriteriaNode	Creates a criteria node and immediately adds it to the tree. You specify the name at the time of creation. Criteria nodes typically have no info text, which is why this does both operations.
CreateViolationNode	Creates a violation node; this is a node that describes a particular problem with a particular object. Thus, the name is generated automatically from the passed-in object ID, and all other behaviors are inherited automatically (page number reporting, selection, etc).
CreateCriteriaAndViolationNode	Creates a combination criteria and violation node. Typically, this is used for rules that check only the document or other singleton. There is not much point in having a criteria node with a violation child; that is unnecessary hierarchy.

In most cases, you take the result of these methods and start adding info strings. Unless you are going to build your own implementation of IPreflightResultNodeInfo, you do this via code like the following:

```
InterfacePtr<IPreflightResultNodeInfo> iNode(
    iUtils->CreateViolationNode(iRec->GetObjectID()));
InterfacePtr<IPreflightResultNodeData> iData(iNode, UseDefaultIID());

iData->AddInfoString(IPreflightResultNodeData::kFieldProblem,
    "The object has the wrong color.");
iData->AddInfoString(IPreflightResultNodeData::kFieldFix,
    "Set the color to something else.");
```

How you fill in the strings is up to you, but there are some utility methods that help with the task. Some of them are explained in [Table 126](#). Normally, these are used along with `StringUtils::ReplaceStringParameters()` to handle localization properly.

TABLE 126 *IPreflightAggregatedResultsUtils* methods that help with formatting

Method	Purpose/application
<code>IsPlacedContent</code>	Determines whether a given record corresponds to a placed element or a subpart of a placed element. In many cases, the recommended fix string depends on the distinction.
<code>FormatXMeasureFormatYMeasureFormatLineMeasureFormatTextSizeMeasureFormatResolutionFormatAsInteger</code>	Returns pre-translated strings ready for substitution via <code>StringUtils::ReplaceStringParameters()</code> . These take <code>PMReals</code> and return <code>PMStrings</code> . See below for an example.
<code>GetSubpartsDescription</code>	Returns a description of the subpart (or subparts) for a record. For example, if the subparts are <code>kPreflightOM_NativeStroke</code> and <code>kPreflightOSP_NativeFill</code> , this returns the string "Stroke, Fill". This leverages the object model.

Here is an example of how you might use the above:

```
// Set up requirement string
PreflightRuleDataHelper dh(this);
PMString sRequired("Min size is ^1", PMString::kTranslateDuringCall);
StringUtils::ReplaceStringParameters(&sRequired,
    iUtils->FormatXMeasure(dh.GetRealParam("min_size")));
iData->AddInfoString(IPreflightResultNodeData::kFieldRequired, sRequired);

// Set up problem string
PMString sProblem("Actual size is ^1", PMString::kTranslateDuringCall);
StringUtils::ReplaceStringParameters(&sProblem,
    iUtils->FormatXMeasure(iRec->GetMinValue()));
if (!iRec->HasCommonValue()) sProblem += PMString(
    " (smallest)", PMString::kTranslateDuringCall);
iData->AddInfoString(IPreflightResultNodeData::kFieldProblem, sProblem);
```

```
// Set up fix string
if (iUtils->IsPlacedContent(iRec))
{
    iData->AddInfoString(IPreflightResultNodeData::kFieldFix,
        "Fix it in the original file.");
}
else
{
    iData->AddInfoString(IPreflightResultNodeData::kFieldFix ,
        "Use Object > Size to change the size.");
}
```

The above example is almost literally the code found in the InDesign native rules. It takes a number of lines of code to write the string generation, but this is unavoidable; the presentation depends entirely on the nature of your rule and how verbose you want the results to be. You do not need to be this fancy, but users expect more in-depth information to be presented where possible.

IPreflightRuleVisitor::UpdateRuleData

This method is called when a document is opened, at start-up, or when a new rule is created. It examines the rule parameters, establishes defaults, and removes any parameters that are no longer needed. This is analogous to the class constructor and converters used for stream-based data in other interface implementations.

Typically, this method leverages the utilities in `PreflightRuleDataHelper`, which makes it easier to set defaults.

The following example is from the colorspace rule:

```
virtual void UpdateRuleData() override
{
    PreflightRuleDataHelper dh(this);
    dh.SetBoolParamDefault(kParamNoRGB, kFalse);
    dh.SetBoolParamDefault(kParamNoCMYK, kFalse);
    dh.SetBoolParamDefault(kParamNoGray, kFalse);
    dh.SetBoolParamDefault(kParamNoLAB, kFalse);
    dh.SetBoolParamDefault(kParamNoSpot, kFalse);}
}
```

By using `SetBoolParamDefault`, there will be no change if the parameter was already initialized, so this implementation works for both updating and initializing.

IPreflightRuleVisitor::ValidateRuleData

Preflight calls this method whenever a script sets a parameter on a rule. Since there is no range metadata in the rule data, the rule must perform any required checking. If the rule exposes no parameters with range restrictions, it can simply return `kSuccess`.

The following example is from the bleed/trim hazard rule:

```
virtual ErrorCode ValidateRuleData
(
    const IPreflightRuleData::Key& key,
    const ScriptData& proposedValue
) const
{
    PreflightRuleDataHelper dh(this);
    if (!dh.DataExists (key.GetPlatformString ().c_str ()))
        return kInvalidParameterError;

    PMReal value = -1;
    if (key == kParamLiveAreaL || key == kParamLiveAreaR ||
        key == kParamLiveAreaT || key == kParamLiveAreaB)
    {
        if (proposedValue.GetType () == ScriptData::s_double)
        {
            proposedValue.GetPMReal (&value);
            if (value < 0 || value > kMaxValue)
                return kOutOfRangeError;
        }
        else
            return kInvalidParameterError;
    }
    return kSuccess;
}
```

More on specific objects

This section describes how to work with particular objects in the model in your Visitor.

Native, UID-based objects

These are the simplest to work with because their preflight object boss does not have any additional interfaces. You simply use `IPreflightObject::GetModelRef` to get an interface on a native (persistent) `InDesign` boss in the document database. There is no point in preflight providing additional interfaces on the preflight object in this case, because you can get this information from the UID and all existing `InDesign` model interfaces.

For example, the Scaled Graphics rule always looks at graphic page items, so its Visit code looks like the following:

```
virtual void Visit(IPreflightVisitInfo* iVisit) override
{
    InterfacePtr<IPreflightObject> iObj(iVisit->QueryObject());
    InterfacePtr<IShape> iShape(iObj->GetModelRef(), UseDefaultIID());
    InterfacePtr<ITransform> iTransform(iShape, UseDefaultIID());
    // etc
}
```

This version has error checking removed, for readability. Initially, you may want to put in several asserts in your rules, to satisfy yourself that the visitor is looking at the object it thinks it is.

Artwork

A rule can ask to look at marking operations. This is a powerful capability because you can look at exactly what marking is done for a particular page item or graphic element, regardless of whether you “own” the implementation of that object. Preflight renders the spread into a port, then builds a tree data structure based on what it finds. That tree consists of the marking operations, any logical artwork groups (for example, transparency groups), and groups corresponding to native InDesign elements like wax runs and page items.

Unlike page items, artwork objects are not UID based, so all the information exists on the preflight object boss in interfaces that you query.

[Table 127](#) shows the artwork object types and their related interfaces.

TABLE 127 Artwork preflight object types

Preflight object class ID	Description
kPreflightOM_ArtworkMark	<p>The most commonly inspected object type for artwork rules. The boss that the service creates for this object type has the following interfaces:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IPreflightArtworkMarkInfo — Provides information about the marking operation, such as the geometry, colorspace, opacity, and text versus path. • IPreflightArtworkContext — Relates the marking operation to any context objects of which it is a child. This is useful when you need to know whether the mark is, say, drawn as part of rendering a text run or graphic.
kPreflightOM_ArtworkGroup	Placeholder for future implementation.

Preflight object class ID	Description
kPreflightOM_ArtworkContext	<p>“Metadata” contexts that enclose artwork. In other words, the marking operation tells you that a stroke of a specified width and color exists; the context tells you what that stroke is associated with. Preflight supports the following contexts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Shape</i> — The IShape-supporting page item containing the artwork. This also records the “subpart” of the shape: stroke, fill, adornments, and so on. Shape information is obtained via IPreflightArtworkShapeContext. • <i>Text</i> — The text with which the artwork is associated, if any. This is defined by the text model, index, and range. Text information is obtained via IPreflightArtworkTextContext. • <i>Table</i> — The associated table and cells, if any. This information is available from IPreflightArtworkTableContext. • <i>OPI</i> — If the artwork is being drawn as part of an OPI reference, this context is present. It has no data and only indicates that there is an OPI context. <p>To determine what contexts an artwork mark is associated with, you start with the IPreflightArtworkContext interface on the mark boss; that interface allows you to search for the nearest, or any, context of a given type. You also can walk the context tree manually. You can ask to visit these context types directly, although this would be uncommon. For example, the OPI rule looks at OPI contexts, because it cares about only their existence.</p>

Regarding artwork-based rules: if a rule wants to see any of these classes (or any other class that lists these classes as parents), preflight forces artwork expansion, which is fairly expensive compared to looking at the attributes of native objects. This is one reason why the out-of-the-box default profile (Basic) does not have any artwork rules. This is not to say you should not have such rules; many native rules (like colorspace and CMY marking) are artwork rules. If you can get the information you need by inspecting attributes instead of looking at artwork, however, you probably should use attributes, which has much lower overhead.

An artwork-rule visitor usually looks something like that shown below. This is actual code from the colorspace rule.

```
virtual void Visit(IPreflightVisitInfo* iVisit) override
{
    InterfacePtr<IPreflightObject> iObj(iVisit->QueryObject());
    InterfacePtr<IPreflightArtworkContext> iContext(iObj, UseDefaultIID());
    if (iContext && iContext->GetShapeContextDepth(
        kPreflightOSP_GraphicProxy) > 0)
    {
```

```
// Artwork is part of a graphic proxy (missing graphic); ignore
}
else
{
InterfacePtr<IPreflightArtworkMarkInfo> iMark
(iObj, UseDefaultIID());
InterfacePtr<IPreflightArtworkPaintInfo> iColor
(iMark->QueryColorPaintInfo());
if (!iColor) return;
InterfacePtr<IPreflightArtworkCSInfo> iCS
(iColor->QueryColorSpace());
// etc
```

Note the use of `IPreflightArtworkContext`, which looks for an enclosing shape context with a subpart of `kPreflightOSP_GraphicProxy`. This identifies the marking operation as proxy-related. Your rule may or may not want to exclude proxy artwork in this way.

Once the rule determines that the artwork is not part of a proxy, it gathers the marking data, including the paint characteristics. All these secondary interfaces (e.g., `IPreflightArtworkPaintInfo`) are obtained via methods in `IPreflightArtworkMarkInfo`. In the case of the color-space rule, it simply calls various `IPreflightArtworkCSInfo` methods to determine whether the marking operation violates its rule parameters.

Text runs and ranges

Text runs are not persistent objects, so `IPreflightObject::GetModelRef` will not give you a UID for one of these. Thus, a text run or range object has all its data on the preflight object boss itself.

To obtain information about text objects, query for the following interfaces:

- `IPreflightTextRangeInfo` — This interface is available on all text-range objects (`kPreflightOM_TextRange`, `kPreflightOM_TextCharacter`, `kPreflightOM_WaxRun`, and `kPreflightOM_TextParcel`). It provides the text model, thread, parcel, index, and span information for the text object. To obtain further information, you use the InDesign text model.
- `IPreflightWaxInfo` — This interface is available only on a `kPreflightOM_WaxRun` object, not the other text types, since they do not necessarily correspond to a wax-run boundary. This provides the number of glyphs in the run, as well as a method that provides an `IWaxRun`.

An example of the use of text interfaces follows (from the missing-fonts rule):

```
virtual void Visit(IPreflightVisitInfo* iVisit) override
{
    const PreflightObjectID& objID = iVisit->GetObjectID();
    InterfacePtr<IPreflightObject> iObj(iVisit->QueryObject());

    if (objID.GetClassID() == kPreflightOM_WaxRun)
    {
        InterfacePtr<IPreflightWaxInfo> iWax(iObj, UseDefaultIID());
        if (!iWax) return;
    }
}
```

```

InterfacePtr<const IWaxRun> iRun(iWax->QueryRun());
if (!iRun) return;

InterfacePtr<const IWaxRenderData> iRender(iRun, UseDefaultIID());
if (!iRender) return;

if (iRender->FontFaceMissing())
{
InterfacePtr<IPreflightResultRecord> iRec(
iVisit->CreateResultRecord());
iRec->SetCriteria(kPreflightRC_Default);

PMString fontName = iRender->GetFontName();
fontName.SetTranslatable(kFalse);

iRec->SetAuxString(fontName);
}
}

// etc

```

Tables, rows, columns, and cells

Many table elements in a document are composed of elements and may or may not have an associated UID. Thus, some of the table objects are UID based (e.g., use `GetModelRef`) and some are not. Those that are not have additional data on the preflight object boss.

For non-UID based elements, the `IPreflightTableCellInfo` interface on the preflight object boss provides the necessary data, from which you can navigate to the InDesign model. The objects that support this interface are `kPreflightOM_TableCell`, `kPreflightOM_TableArea`, `kPreflightOM_TableFrameCell`, and `kPreflightOM_TableFrameArea`.

The following is an abbreviated example from the overprint rule, which looks for any overprint attributes that are set. In this case, the rule is interested in page items, text, and tables, all of which have overprint attributes.

```

virtual void Visit(IPreflightVisitInfo* iVisit) override
{
    PreflightObjectID objID = iVisit->GetObjectID();
    InterfacePtr<IPreflightObject> iObj(iVisit->QueryObject());
    if (objID.GetClassID() == kPreflightOM_PageItem)
    {
        InterfacePtr<IGraphicStyleDescriptor> iStyle(iObj->GetModelRef(),
        UseDefaultIID());
        // Check graphic attributes..
    }
    else if (objID.GetClassID() == kPreflightOM_WaxRun)
    {
        InterfacePtr<IPreflightTextRangeInfo> iRange(iObj, UseDefaultIID());
        if (!iRange) return;
        // Check text attributes via the text model...
    }
}

```

```
else if (objID.GetClassID() == kPreflightOM_TableFrame)
{
InterfacePtr<ITableFrame> iFrame(iObj->GetModelRef(), UseDefaultIID());
if (!iFrame) return;
// Check the table attributes...
}
else if (objID.GetClassID() == kPreflightOM_TableFrameCell)
{
InterfacePtr<IPreflightTableCellInfo> iCellInfo(iObj, UseDefaultIID());
if (!iCellInfo) return;
// Check the cell attributes..
}
}
```

Note how the rule must use a different strategy for each object type. For page items and tables there is a UID to work with, so it queries the model directly. For text and cells, which are composed entities, the rule uses the interfaces hosted on the preflight object directly: `IPreflightTextRangeInfo` for text and `IPreflightTableCellInfo` for table cells.

For example, the first thing it does when looking for cell attributes is to look up the table attribute's accessor interface from the table model, using `IPreflightTableCellInfo::GetTableModelRef`:

```
InterfacePtr<ITableAttrAccessor> iTableAttrs(
    iCellInfo->GetTableModelRef(), UseDefaultIID());
if (!iTableAttrs) return;
```

XML Fundamentals

This chapter describes features of the InDesign XML subsystem relevant to plug-in developers, and the architecture that supports them. It explains how client code can use these features and take advantage of the XML-related extension patterns in the InDesign API.

For use cases, see the “XML” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Introduction

XML-based workflow

There are several benefits of using an XML workflow in publishing:

- Separation of concerns; for example, maintaining content and presentation information independently.
- Working with standards that are open, relatively stable, and defined by experts in a domain. This avoids being locked into proprietary, unpublished file formats and helps reduce implementation effort. For example, having standards available like NITF (<http://www.nitf.org>) and NewsML (<http://www.newsml.org>) prevents you from having to reinvent a language to store articles, transmit news feeds, and support a newspaper workflow.
- Relatively easy processing, because you have a textual representation of XML documents.
- Relatively easy re-purposing of content for other media, like HTML and Mobile SVG, in addition to print publishing and PDF delivery. The main advantage is that the content can be single-sourced but published to multiple media with relatively little effort.
- Relatively easy manipulation of XML documents, thanks to the availability of many XML-aware tools, software developer toolkits, and standardized APIs.
- Existence of many databases that can produce and consume XML data, some natively.

Disadvantages to an XML workflow can include the following:

- Journalists and graphic designers are unlikely to want to learn about XML. A system designed around XML may need to shield end users from having to create mark-up manually. For example, templates can be pre-tagged.
- Some XML technologies are not straightforward to use and may require some effort to understand (for example, XSLT/XPath), even for capable software developers.

Using XML with InDesign

Using XML-based data and XML templates in InDesign has some benefits to a programmer, which include the following:

- There are mature XML toolkits and technologies to manipulate XML data (see <http://xml.coverpages.org/software.html>), which make it relatively straightforward to manipulate XML data before import or after export. For example, using XSLT to manipulate XML data is particularly convenient in the context of the InDesign import architecture. You can develop and debug your XSL stylesheets independently of InDesign, using existing XSLT-aware tools, but deploy them as part of a workflow involving InDesign if you use its features like the XML transformer. See [“XML transformer” on page 554](#).
- Importing graphics into tagged placeholders is a convenient way to import and place graphics without writing much (if any) code. See [“Tagged graphic placeholder” on page 534](#).
- The XML API of InDesign is well documented. The command facades and suite interfaces in the XML API make it relatively straightforward to write client code. See [“Key client API” on page 552](#).

Terminology

See the “Glossary” for definitions of terms. [Table 128](#) lists terms used in this chapter and sections that relate to them.

TABLE 128 Terminology

Term	See ...
Acquirer; acquirer filter	“Extension patterns” on page 553
Backing store	“Backing store” on page 509
Comment, XML	“Processing instructions and comments” on page 547
Content handler	“Extension patterns” on page 553
Content item	“Content items” on page 506
Document element	“Document element and root element” on page 508
Document Type Declaration (DTD)	“DTD” on page 545
Entity	“SAX-entity resolver” on page 557
Logical structure	“Native document model and logical structure” on page 505 and “Elements and content” on page 534
Placed element; placed content	“Unplaced content versus placed content” on page 518

Term	See ...
Processing instruction (PI)	“Processing instructions and comments” on page 547
Repeating element	“Importing repeating elements” on page 519
Root element	“Document element and root element” on page 508
SBOS (small boss object store)	“Persistence and the backing store” on page 510
Tag	“Tags” on page 529
Unplaced element; unplaced content	“Unplaced content versus placed content” on page 518
XML element	“Elements and content” on page 534

XML features at a glance

XML extension patterns

Several XML extension patterns depend on the re-factored XML import architecture. You can implement these extension patterns to customize how XML data is imported and exported and other XML-related features. See [“Extension patterns” on page 553](#).

Tagging in tables and inline graphics

InDesign supports tagging of tables and table cells. See [“Tagged tables” on page 543](#). Inline graphics can be tagged, and placeholders for inline graphics can be created in XML templates. See [“Tagged inline graphics” on page 542](#).

Throw away unmatched existing (right)

It may be desirable to filter out elements in your XML template that are not matched by elements in the incoming XML data. When enabled, this feature discards unmatched existing elements in an XML template. See [“Throwing away unmatched existing elements on import \(delete unmatched right\)” on page 520](#). The feature is implemented by an import-matchmaker service, an extension pattern described in [“XML-import matchmaker” on page 555](#).

Throw away unmatched incoming (left)

It may be desirable to filter out incoming XML elements that have no corresponding match in your XML template. When enabled, this feature discards inbound elements in the XML-based data being imported that have no match in the XML template into which the data is being imported. In API terms, the feature is called “throw away unmatched left.” See [“Throwing away unmatched incoming elements on XML import” on page 522](#). The feature is implemented by an import-matchmaker service, described in [“XML-import matchmaker” on page 555](#).

Importing repeating elements

This feature allows text styling from elements in an XML template to be preserved (within one story) when repeated elements are imported. It is described in [“Importing repeating elements” on page 519](#).

Importing CALS table

This feature allows CALS table to be imported as InDesign table. It is described in [“Importing a CALS table as an InDesign table” on page 524](#).

Support for DOM core level 2

This specification is implemented by the features related to matching and transforming on import. Import matchmakers and XML transformers that operate on the DOM (Document Object Model) are described in [“Extension patterns” on page 553](#). For the DOM Level 2 Core specification, see <http://www.w3c.org/TR/2000/REC-DOM-Level-2-Core-20001113>.

Support table- and cell-styles import

This feature allows table and cell styles to be applied to InDesign table when is imported. It is described in [“Support table and cell styles when importing an InDesign table” on page 524](#).

Support XML-rules processing

The scripting-based XML-rules feature allows an XML DOM to be altered after an XML file is imported. XML rules also can be triggered by application events, such as open, place, and close. The feature is described in the “XML Rules” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Scripting Guide*.

Snippets

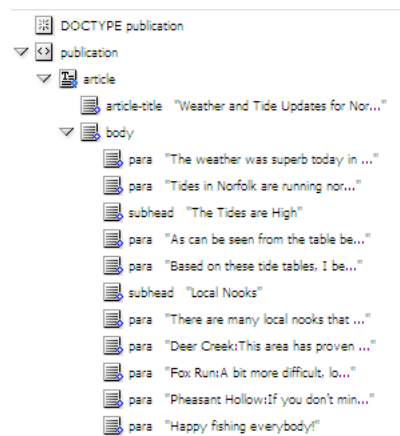
The snippet architecture is described in the “Snippet Fundamentals” chapter. The snippet architecture depends on the XML subsystem, as well as on INX (InDesign Interchange) or IDML (InDesign Markup Language) import and export. Snippets are XML-based representations of parts of a document in INX or IDML file format.

The user interface for XML

Structure view

Figure 215 shows the structure view, a representation of the logical structure of a document that lets you view and interact with its logical structure. You can make selections in this view and create new elements as children of the selection, delete elements, create or delete attributes, and so on. Figure 215 shows the structure view with text snippets visible, which provides context to see what content items in the document are associated with the elements in the logical structure.

FIGURE 215 Structure view



Depending on your workflow, it may be desirable to control the visibility and other properties of the Structure pane. These properties are controlled by preferences. See “[XML-related preferences](#)” on page 549.

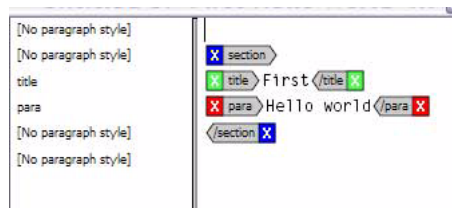
When you tag a graphic frame as a placeholder, the structure view draws a cross through the icon representing the element to indicate its placeholder status. There are also other icons that represent whether an element is associated with text content or image-based content.

Tags in layout view and story view

Figure 216 shows content that has been tagged, rendered in the layout view of the application. In layout view, tags are shown as brackets with a width of zero; that is, they are intended to have no effect on text composition. Start tags are indicated by brackets pointing right ([), and end tags by brackets pointing left (]). The tag name associated with the tag markers is encoded by color, corresponding to the color displayed in the Tags panel. Multiple tags can exist at the same position in layout view.

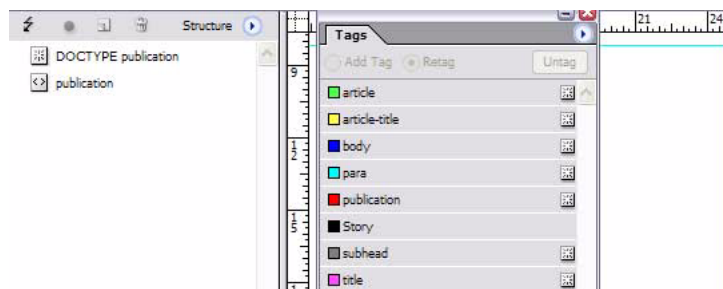
FIGURE 216 Tags in layout view

Story view makes it somewhat easier to understand the logical structure of a story and edit its structured content. [Figure 217](#) shows structured content rendered in story view. In this view, the names of tags are shown explicitly.

FIGURE 217 Tags in story view

Tags panel

[Figure 218](#) shows part of the Tags panel, which has a list of tags that can be applied to document content. Each tag has a name and associated color. In this example, some tags were created when a DTD was imported, shown with icons at the right-hand end of the list elements.

FIGURE 218 Tags panel

To open the Tags panel, choose Window > Tags. By default, the list of tags shown is sorted alphabetically by tag name; the list has no inherent logical structure. The complete set of tags in an imported DTD or imported tag list is shown, regardless of what is selected in the structure view. To populate the tag list, end users can load a set of tags with the Load Tags menu command in the Tags-panel menu.

You can create a new tag through the Tags panel; this adds an entry to the tag list. Creating a new tag means it is available to mark up content or tag placeholder graphic frames for content. You can delete a tag through the Tags panel. You can export the tag with the Save Tags menu command in the Tags-panel menu.

Mapping between tags and styles

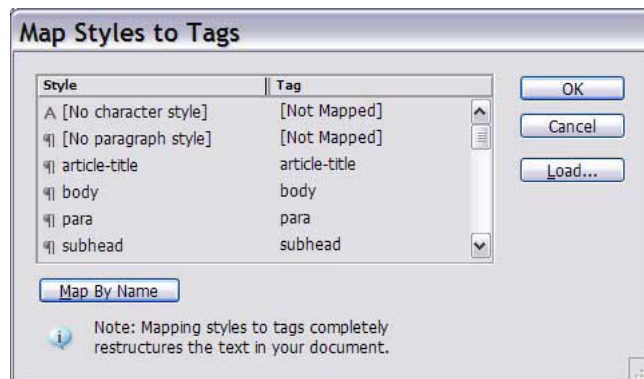
You can choose to apply a mapping between element names and styles (character and paragraph styles). Once the mapping is applied to a document, any marked-up text is styled as specified by the style on the right-hand side of this mapping. See [Figure 219](#).

FIGURE 219 User interface for mapping tags to styles



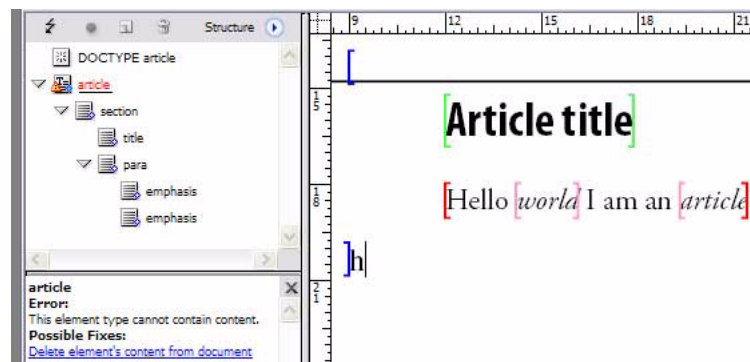
An important use case for mapping tags to styles is preparing a document for XML import. Assuming XML-based content does not carry style information, the tag-to-style map is a simple mechanism to apply styling to inbound XML-based content; more complex mechanisms include styling based on XSLT or a proprietary mechanism like an Adobe FrameMaker Element Definition Document (EDD). The FrameMaker EDD effectively is a style sheet containing rules specifying how to map tags to styles, but in a context-dependent way.

You can apply structure to an unstructured InDesign document by choosing to map styles to tags. The effect of this is to mark up the text ranges that have the styles on the left-hand side of the style-to-tag mapping. See [Figure 220](#).

FIGURE 220 User interface for mapping styles to tags

Validation window

The XML-validation-errors pane appears below the Structure pane; see [Figure 221](#). The XML-validation-errors pane contains hyperlinks. If the end user clicks on the hyperlinks, InDesign tries to fix the validation errors. This may not always have the desired effect; for example, it may delete content that was tagged incorrectly.

FIGURE 221 XML-validation-errors pane

Other

Other components of the user interface for XML—like context-sensitive menus for tagging the selection—are beyond the scope of this chapter.

XML model

Native document model and logical structure

The InDesign native document model specifies how end-user documents are represented by InDesign. The InDesign native document model consists of both the description of the document in terms of boss classes and the scripting DOM. End users directly manipulate spreads, pages, and the items they contain; these abstractions are represented by boss classes in the native document model or objects in the scripting DOM.

For example, a spread is represented by `kSpreadBoss` in the low-level model or boss DOM. Spread contents are organized into a hierarchy (`IHierarchy`). In the scripting DOM, a spread is represented by a `Spread` object, with properties like `Pages` or `PageItems` to represent the object hierarchy at a higher level of abstraction.

The logical structure of an InDesign document is specified by the user; for example, by tagging content items in the layout or importing their XML data. An XML template, consisting of tagged placeholders for text and graphics, provides the user with a way to define how user-domain data is mapped into the native model.

The logical structure of an InDesign document is organized into a hierarchy of XML elements (see `IIDXMLElement`) representing logical relationships between content. The `IIDXMLElement` interface plays the same role in the logical structure that `IHierarchy` plays in the spread hierarchy. The key operation that modifies logical structure is tagging document objects, like graphic frames, stories, and text ranges. Tagging establishes associations between objects in the native document model and the logical structure. See [“Elements and content” on page 534](#).

Importing XML-based data into an InDesign document creates new elements in the logical structure (see [“Importing XML” on page 511](#)). If there are tagged placeholders, content can be flowed into these placeholders. The logical structure of an InDesign document also can be exported as an XML file (see [“Exporting XML” on page 524](#)). You also can create new elements by mapping styles to tags (see [“Tags” on page 529](#)).

Elements and attributes

Elements represent user-defined logical relationships between content items in a document. Elements are created by InDesign when XML data is imported or content is tagged. The implementation of elements in InDesign is closely related to the XML specification (<http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml>), which defines an element as follows:

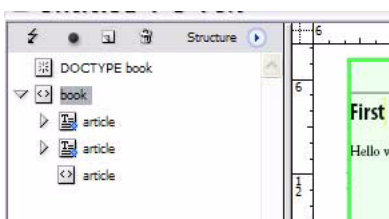
“Each XML document contains one or more elements, the boundaries of which are either delimited by start-tags and end-tags, or, for empty elements, by an empty-element tag. Each element has a type, identified by name, sometimes called its “generic identifier” (GI), and may have a set of attribute specifications. Each attribute specification has a name and a value.”

You can create a new element in the logical structure with the New Element menu command on the Structure-pane menu. The behavior of this feature depends on whether the element in the structure view already is placed and, if placed, what is the associated content item. You can

choose a tag for the element or create a new one. The tag stores the element's name and color in the user interface.

Figure 222 shows what happens when the root element is selected in the structure view and the user chooses the New Element menu command. The application adds a child element to the logical structure's root element. By default, the child element is added at the end of the collection of child elements of the root element. In this example, the root element `<book>` is selected and a new element `<article>` is added. The new element is inserted into the logical structure as the last child of the root element and is shown as unplaced content, since the top-level element was not placed; only its child elements are placed content.

FIGURE 222 Inserting a new element



You can add an element to the logical structure in the structure view, in which case the element is not directly associated with document content. You can indirectly add one or more elements in another view, like layout view, by tagging (e.g., tagging a text range or graphic placeholder frame).

Attributes are properties of elements. Attributes can be added by end users through the structure view, when a node is selected that supports added attributes. Some elements, like comments, processing instructions, and the DTD element, do not support the addition of attributes.

Elements are modeled by boss classes that have the `IIDXMLElement` interface. Tags are modeled by the `kXMLTagBoss` boss class. See “Tags” on page 529. Attributes are modeled as properties of elements (`IIDXMLElement`). There are facades that make it relatively easy to change the properties of elements, tags, and attributes (`IXMLElementCommands`, `IXMLTagCommands`, and `IXMLAttributeCommands`).

Content items

Elements (`IIDXMLElement`) are created when content items are tagged. Elements also may be created on import of XML data. New content items can be created when XML content is flowed into an XML template. The main point is that elements are defined in the user domain and represent logical relationships between content items—or between elements, in the case of structural elements.

Content items are objects in the layout or text domain that can be tagged to create an association with an element in the logical structure of an InDesign document. Many content items can be tagged:

- Placeholders for graphics (kPlaceholderItemBoss)
- Placeholders for inline graphics (kILPlaceholderPageItemBoss)
- Images (kImageItem, any other descendants of kImageBaseItem)
- Stories (kTextStoryBoss)
- Text ranges
- Tables (kTableModelBoss) and cells within them
- Text within table cells

There is no easy way to identify a content item. Many but not all the objects that can be tagged have the `IXMLReferenceData` interface. If you inspect the API reference documentation for `IXMLReferenceData` and see the boss classes in the native document model that aggregate this interface, you get some indication of the variety of document objects that can be tagged.

References to elements and content items

All elements in the logical structure of an InDesign document expose the `IIDXMLElement` interface; therefore, one type of reference to an element is an interface pointer of type `IIDXMLElement`. A more convenient type for programmers to work with is `XMLReference`, an instance of which can be obtained from `IIDXMLElement::GetXMLReference`. This `XMLReference` is just another way to refer to the same element.

Conversely, given an `XMLReference`, you can obtain an `IIDXMLElement` interface pointer by using `XMLReference::Instantiate`. `XMLReference` is the XML subsystem's equivalent of `UIDRef`; note that `UIDRef` applies only to UID-based objects, and elements in the logical structure are not UID-based.

`XMLContentReference` refers to a chunk of content rather than an element. Do not mistake the `XMLContentReference` type for `XMLReference`: `XMLContentReference` is a reference to a content item, which might be a UID-based like a graphic frame or a non-UID-based object like a table cell. An instance of `XMLContentReference` can be obtained from `IIDXMLElement::GetContentReference`. This generalizes and replaces `IIDXMLElement::GetContentItem`, which is deprecated.

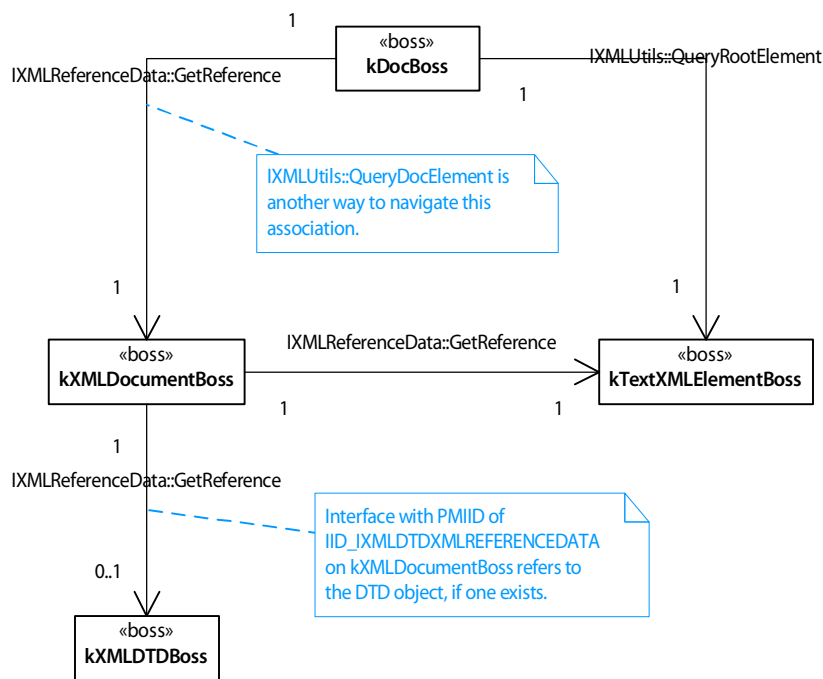
An instance of `XMLContentReference` can tell you the type of object with which it is associated, through `XMLContentReference::GetContentType`. For example, `kContentType_Normal` is used for elements associated with a UID-based object in the layout; this could be something like a tagged graphic placeholder.

For more information on methods and use of these key types, see the API reference documentation for `XMLReference` and `XMLContentReference`. The main difference between `XMLReference` and `XMLContentReference` is that `XMLReference` refers to an element (`IIDXMLElement`), whereas `XMLContentReference` refers to a content item.

Document element and root element

The IXMLReferenceData interface on kDocBoss stores a reference to the document element (instance of kXMLDocumentBoss). There also is an interface on the document (kDocBoss), with a different PMIID referring to the DTD element (kXMLDTDBoss), if one is associated with the document. The document element associates with the root element both through IXMLReferenceData (as shown in Figure 223) and through IIDXMLElement::GetNthChild, because the document element is the parent of the root element. The class diagram in Figure 223 shows associations involving the document element (kXMLDocumentBoss) and other classes.

FIGURE 223 Document element, root element, and DTD



The document element is responsible for managing document-level information (like the DTD) and comments and processing instructions that are peers of the root element.

The root element (kTextXMLElementBoss) appears as the root of the element hierarchy in the structure view, although the root element is a child of the document element, which is not shown in the structure view. By default, the root element for a new InDesign document has the tag Root; you can change this to whatever the content model for your XML vocabulary requires.

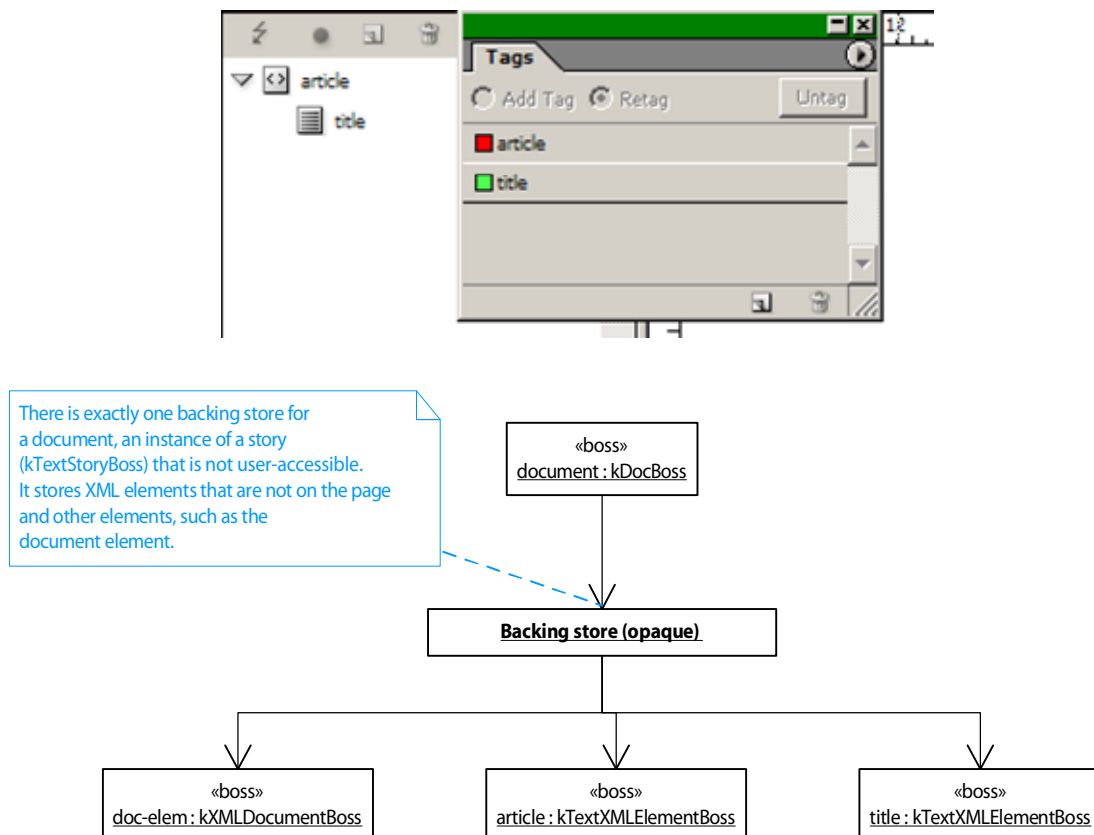
The document element and root element—along with the DTD element and any top-level comments (kXMLCommentBoss) and processing instructions (kXMLPIBoss)—are held in the backing store.

Backing store

Each InDesign document contains one backing store, which stores XML elements that are unplaced and elements that are siblings of the root element, like the document element, root element, DTD element, comments, and processing instructions. The backing store is a story (kTextStoryBoss) that is not accessible to the user and is present in every InDesign document. The architecture of the backing store is described in [“Persistence and the backing store”](#) on page 510.

The object diagram in [Figure 224](#) shows the relationship between the document, backing store, and elements stored in the backing store.

FIGURE 224 Backing store



The backing store is opaque to client code. Use facade methods like `IXMLUtils::QueryDocElement` and `IXMLUtils::QueryRootElement` to acquire objects like the document element (`kXMLDocumentBoss`) or the root element (shown as the article object in [Figure 224](#)). To acquire a reference to the backing store when you need it (e.g., for notification), use `IXMLUtils::GetBackingStore`.

For more information, see [“Backing store and notification of changes in logical structure” on page 558](#).

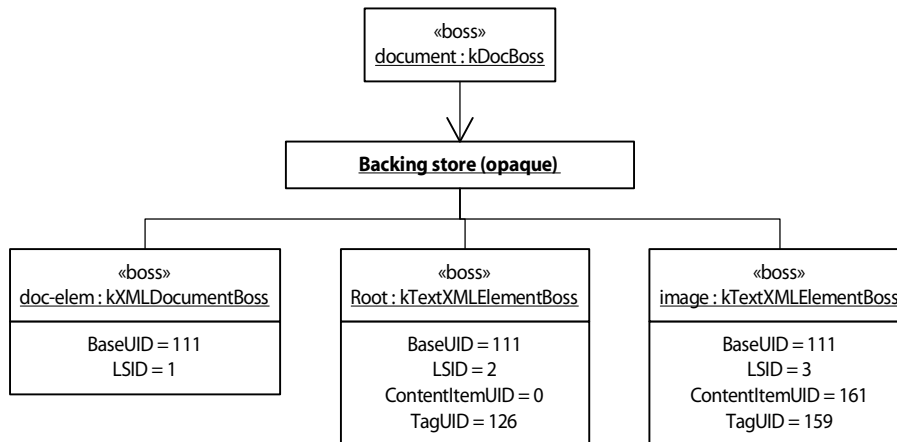
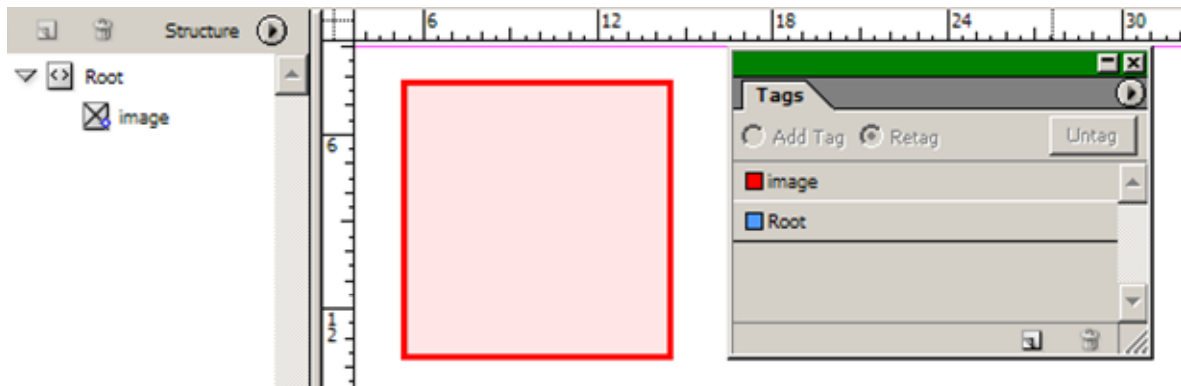
Persistence and the backing store

The main persistence mechanism for the native document model is UID-based; that is, each instance of the classes shown in the model, like `kSpreadBoss`, has a record number or UID (unique identifier) associated with it in the document’s database. The UID is unique only within the context of a particular database, not globally.

UID-based objects also can store persistent boss objects without a UID; for example, this model is used for attributes and widely within the table and XML subsystems. This as an example of container-managed persistence, to distinguish it from the conventional, UID-based persistence mechanism. The implementation of container-managed persistence in InDesign is very efficient compared to UID-based persistence, which played a large part in the decision to use it for both tables and XML. For more information, see the “Persistent Data and Data Conversion” chapter.

This object diagram in [Figure 225](#) is an elaborated version of [Figure 224](#). The BaseUID shown for each object is the UID of the `kTextStoryBoss` implementing the backing store. The LSID (logical structure ID) starts at 1 for the document element (`kXMLDocumentBoss`). See the API reference documentation for `XMLReference`. The root element, with LSID of 2 in this diagram, is an instance of `kTextXMLElementBoss`; it has a reference to a tag (`TagUID=126`, `name=“Root”`) but not to a content item. The image element has a reference to a tag (`TagUID=159`, `name=“image”`) and to a content item (`UID=161`, an instance of `kPlaceholderItemBoss`).

FIGURE 225 Backing store, with more detail



The backing store is an instance of a small-boss object store (SBOS), a storage container for small boss objects. The container has a UID, but the objects it stores do not have UIDs. The objects managed by the store have logical IDs (LSIDs) as keys. See the API reference documentation for `XMLReference::GetLogicalID` and related methods.

Importing XML

The application supports import of XML data encoded as any of the following:

- UTF-8 (see <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2279.txt>)
- UTF-16 (see <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2781.txt>)
- Shift-JIS, a two-byte format for Japanese (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/2000/NOTE-japanese-xml-20000414>)

There are two main workflows for importing XML data:

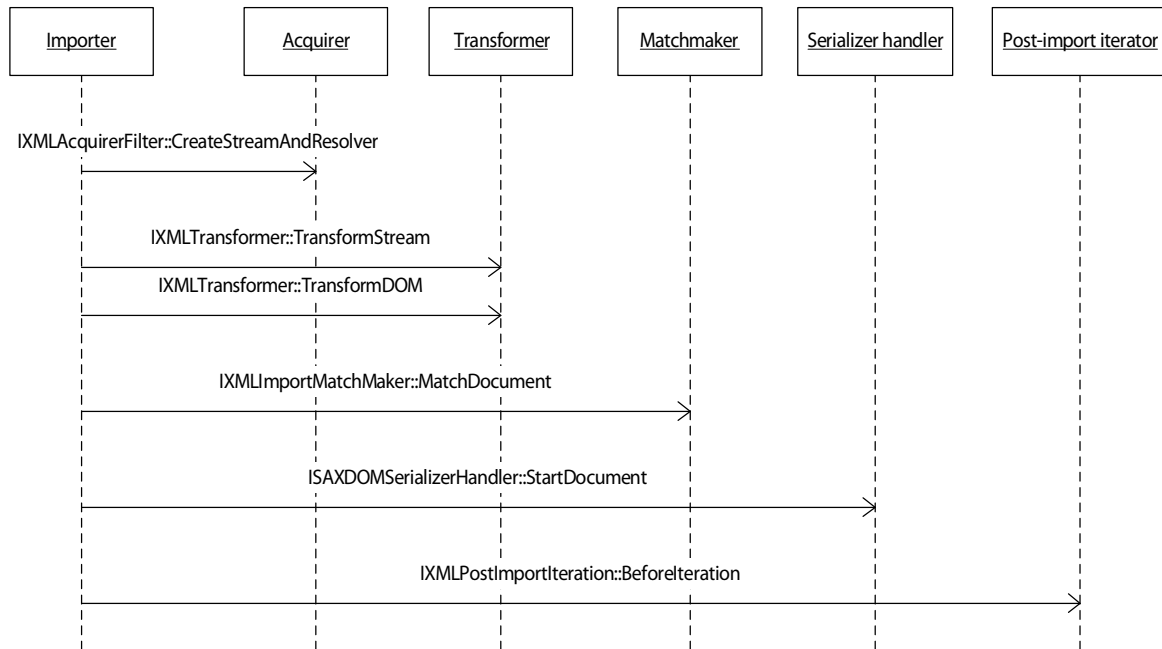
- Importing XML data into the backing store (see [“Backing store” on page 509](#)), then manually placing it onto the layout to set up the associations between elements in the logical structure and document object.
- Creating an InDesign document as an XML template that contains placeholders, which are tagged with names of the elements in the XML data to import. When the XML data is imported, the contents of the XML file are flowed into the placeholders. The order in which the elements appear in the logical structure determines how the content is flowed into the tagged placeholders.

Import architecture

The import process is controlled by the XML importer (kXMLImporterBoss), which is the main delegate for the low-level command that performs the import (kImportXMLFileCmdBoss). Unlike other forms of import—like EPS (import provider kEPSPlaceProviderBoss) and PDF (import provider kPDFPlaceProviderBoss) import—importing XML data does not use the standard import provider (IImportProvider) architecture. The importer controls the import process by dispatching messages to extension patterns responsible for different parts of the import sequence, as shown in [Figure 226](#).

The sequence diagram shows some of the messages sent during XML import. The importer object shown consists of the low-level import XML command (kImportXMLFileCmdBoss) and its delegate (kXMLImporterBoss). The main points to note are the order in which the different extension patterns are sent messages and, for the transformer (IXMLTransformer), how the stream transform precedes the DOM transform message.

FIGURE 226 XML-import sequence



A low-level command (`kImportXMLFileCmdBoss`) is processed to import an XML file. Much of the work is done by this command's delegate, an instance of the `kXMLImporterBoss` boss class, in its implementation of `IXMLImporter::DoImport`. The following operations are performed while importing an XML file:

1. The import parameters are specified through an instance of `kImportXMLDataBoss`. In particular, see `IImportXMLData`. This specifies either an `IDFile` (based on a path, which may be a file path or an arbitrary URL-like string).
2. An acquirer service (`IXMLAcquirerFilter`) is located, which knows how to turn the import specification (in `IImportXMLData`) into an XML stream, perhaps with a SAX entity resolver. See [“XML acquirer” on page 553](#) and [“SAX-entity resolver” on page 557](#).
3. The SAX parser service (`kXMLParserServiceBoss`, `ISAXServices`) parses the inbound XML from the stream.
4. XML transformer services (`kXMLImporterTransformerService`) are called to transform the stream. See [“XML transformer” on page 554](#).
5. At this point, the stream has been turned into an XML DOM. XML transformer services are called to transform the DOM. See [“XML transformer” on page 554](#).
6. The XML-import match driver calls XML-import matchmaker services (`kXMLImportMatchMakerSignalService`) to participate in matching the input XML data against the XML

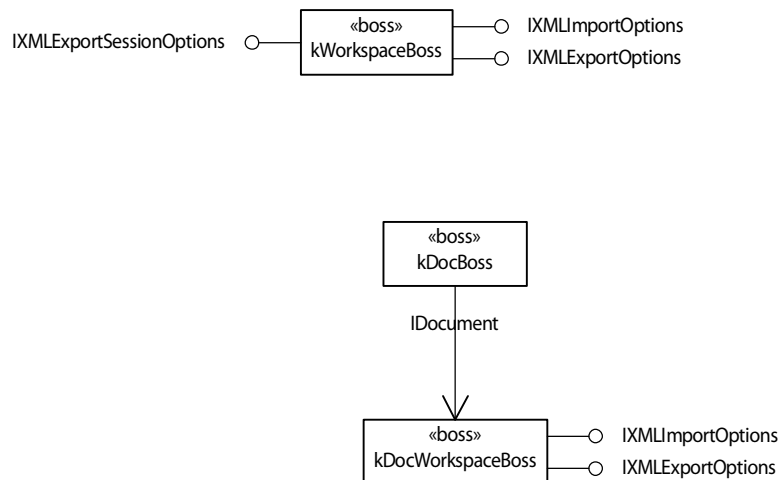
template (the logical structure of the document into which content is being imported). See “[XML-import matchmaker](#)” on page 555.

7. Matches are registered by the XML match recorder (IXMLImportMatchRecorder) of the importer (kXMLImporterBoss).
8. SAX DOM serializer handlers (ISAXDOMSerializerHandler) are called to create content based on the DOM. See “[SAX DOM serializer handler](#)” on page 557. The parsing of the final input XML data is controlled by a top-level SAX DOM serializer handler (kSAXDocumentHandlerBoss). Dependent SAX DOM serializer handlers turn parts of the DOM into InDesign content.
9. Post-import responders are called to iterate the DOM and take appropriate action. See IXMLPostImportIteration and “[Post-import responder](#)” on page 555.

When XML data is imported, the XML subsystem creates elements (IIDXMLElement) in the logical structure. See “[Elements and content](#)” on page 534. Import of XML data results in content items (IXMLReferenceData) being populated with the imported content, if the content items are tagged before import. After import, unplaced elements are held in the document’s backing store. See “[Backing store](#)” on page 509.

The UML diagrams in [Figure 227](#) show some interfaces involved in storing options for import and export of XML data at the session level (kWorkspaceBoss) or document level (kDocWorkspaceBoss). There are other interfaces specific to individual components in the XML import architecture (e.g., IXMLImportPreferences, which can be found on service boss classes), which are not shown here.

FIGURE 227 Some preferences related to import and export



Importing a minimal XML file

A new, empty document has a logical structure consisting of one Root element. To construct a slightly less trivial example, you can create a new document and import a minimal XML file into the backing store. The content is as shown in [Example 35](#).

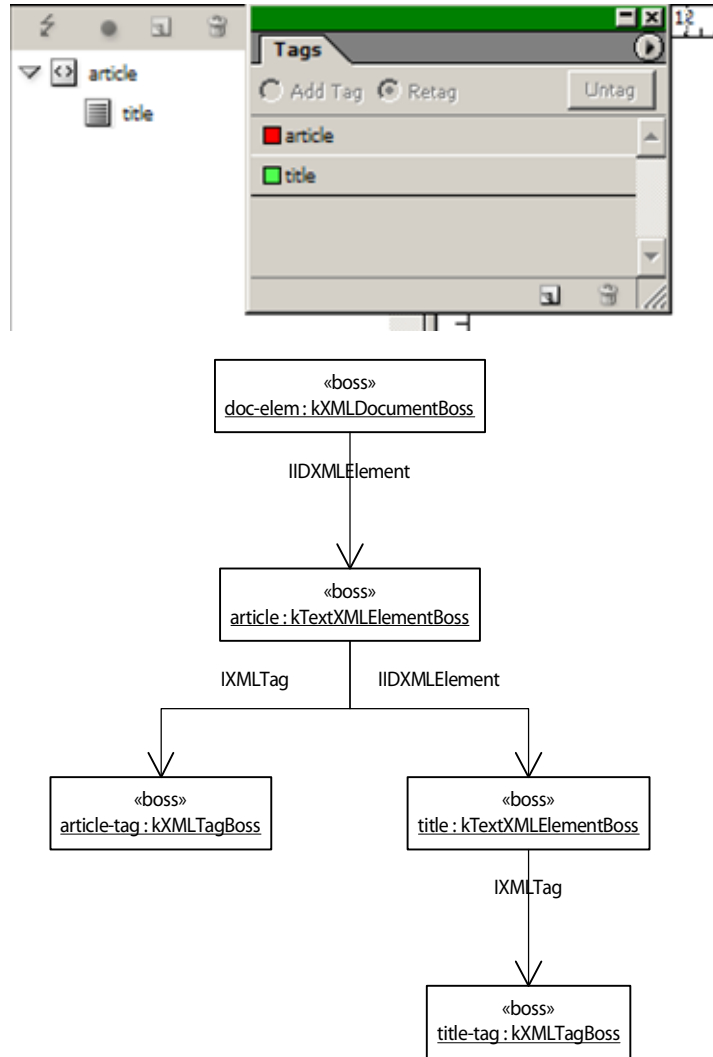
EXAMPLE 35 Minimal XML data to be imported

```
<article><title>Hello World</title>
</article>
```

The scenario to perform the import is as follows:

1. Save the XML data above to a text file, hello-world.xml.
2. Create a new InDesign document.
3. Show the structure view. Rename the Root tag to be “article.”
4. Create a new tag named “title.”
5. Import the XML data from the hello-world.xml file. The structure view should look like [Figure 228](#).

The objects created and instances of associations between them are shown in [Figure 228](#). The UML object diagram shows the objects involved in representing the logical structure when minimal XML content is imported into the backing store of a new InDesign document. The logical structure of the InDesign document represents the tree structure of the original XML document, which has one title element as a child of the root-article element. Instances of the associations with the objects that represent tags are shown (kXMLTagBoss).

FIGURE 228 Objects representing elements in logical structure and tags

Given a reference to the document (IDocument) or a document database (IDatabase), you can acquire a reference to the document element or root element in the logical structure, using the IXMLUtils facade.

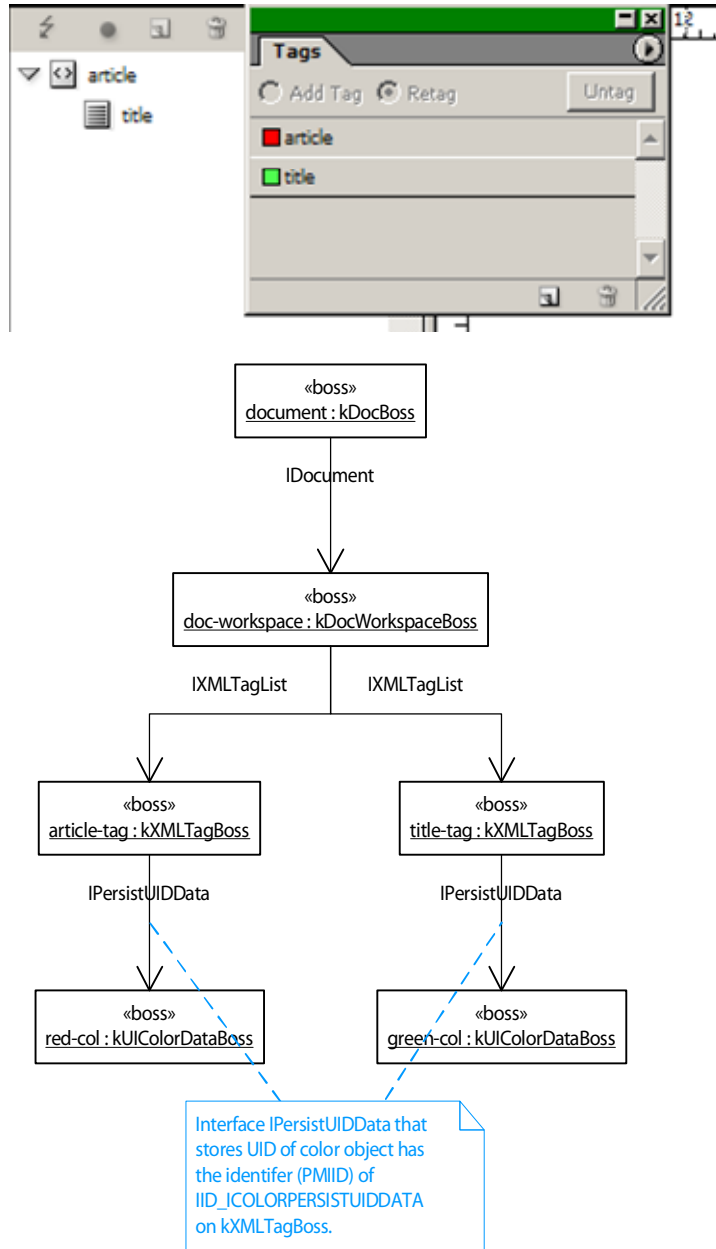
The document element has no tag, but the root element always has a tag; in this example, it is named “article.” The IIDXMLElement::GetTagString method discovers the tag name of an element.

The root element is one starting point for traversing the logical structure. For the minimal example, you can start from the root element and look at its children.

XML elements have the signature interface `IIDXMLElement`. Given an `IIDXMLElement` interface, you can obtain an `XMLReference`, another way to refer to an XML element. See `IIDXMLElement::GetXMLReference`. Conversely, given an `XMLReference`, you can get an `IIDXMLElement` interface through `XMLReference::Instantiate`. XML elements are described in more detail in [“Elements and content” on page 534](#).

The UML object diagram in [Figure 229](#) shows instances of associations between a document (`kDocBoss`), document workspace (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`), and objects representing tags (`kXMLTagBoss`) and their colors within the Tags panel (`kUIColorDataBoss`).

FIGURE 229 Objects representing tags and colors



Unplaced content versus placed content

When XML content is imported with default options and there are no tagged placeholders for the incoming content, the content is held in the backing store. See “Backing store” on page 509.

XML template

An XML template is an InDesign document with tagged placeholders. These can be any of the following:

- Stories
- Text ranges
- Graphic frames
- Tables and table cells

In addition, for the template to be useful, it is likely to already have some styles established and a mapping from tags to styles. See [“Tag-to-style mapping” on page 531](#).

Matching against an XML template

When XML data is imported into an XML template that matches elements in the imported XML data, some or all of the content becomes placed. Determining what constitutes a match is not a straightforward process.

Architecture

Matching against an XML template is performed by XML-import matchmaker services (IXMLImportMatchMaker), which implement the matching logic. For a description of this extension pattern, see [“XML-import matchmaker” on page 555](#). There are several existing import matchmaker services that support the import features; for example, for importing structured tables or repeating elements. For a more complete listing, see the API reference documentation for IXMLImportMatchMaker and the boss classes that aggregate this interface.

If you implement your own import matchmaker, you can customize how the matching against the template is done. For example, you might want to add new pages to the document when you encounter certain repeating elements in the incoming XML data or perform some other operation not provided by the application. For details, see [“XML-import matchmaker” on page 555](#).

Importing repeating elements

Suppose you have XML-based content that consists of many very similar elements, like classified advertisements for used automobiles. You want an XML template that can handle repeating elements in the incoming XML data, rather than having to specify up front how many advertisements could be flowed into the template. In designing an XML template, it often is desirable to design only one instance of a repeating substructure and, during import, have all incoming instances of the substructure pick up the design of that instance.

Often, the number of instances in the incoming XML data is either unknown or variable, so having the ability to handle repeating elements adds flexibility. During XML import, InDesign examines the incoming XML data's structure, compares it to the existing structure in the XML template, and makes duplicates of the existing template element as necessary when it detects the incoming elements are repetitions of the existing template element.

Suppose you are going to import this hypothetical XML data related to classified advertisements for motor vehicles. The fields in the XML template tagged with the names of the different elements may be styled differently. The number of items in the incoming XML data is unknown. You may set up a template structure like that in [Example 36](#).

EXAMPLE 36 Sample XML template

```
<classifieds>
  <advert>
    <vehicle>
      <year></year>
      <make></make>
      <model></model>
      <mileage></mileage>
      <price></price>
      ...
    </vehicle>
    <contact>
      <name></name>
      <phone></phone>
    </contact>
  </advert>
</classifieds>
```

In this case, the “advert” element is the repeating element. You would set up styling for the fields in each advert element. During XML import, InDesign duplicates the repeatable advert element as many times as there are elements in the incoming XML.

When the data is imported into the XML template, the fields under advert retain the original styling throughout the duplication process, so the final outcome is that there are as many advert elements as there advert elements in the incoming XML.

Architecture

The feature is implemented by an import matchmaker service (IXMLImportMatchMaker) whose ClassID is kXMLRepeatTextElementsMatchMakerServiceBoss, which is responsible for duplicating elements in the XML template to accommodate the incoming XML elements.

The feature is turned on or off by an XML import preference (IXMLImportPreferences); see [“Service-level XML preferences” on page 551](#).

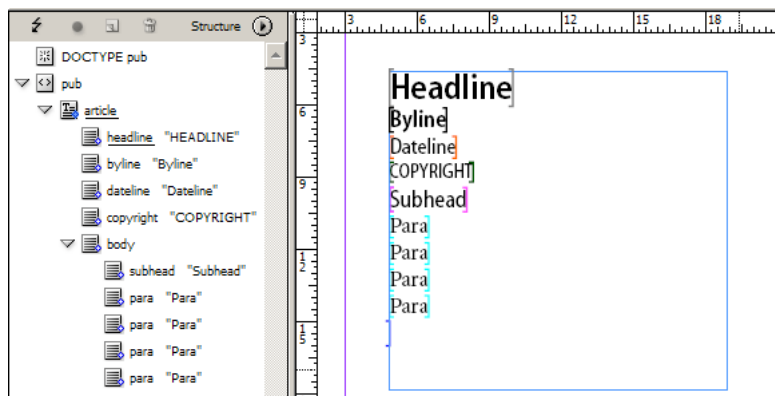
Throwing away unmatched existing elements on import (delete unmatched right)

You can choose to throw away (delete) unmatched existing elements on import, to filter out XML template elements that do not have a match in the incoming XML data. This might occur if, for example, your XML template contains placeholders for all possible elements in the incoming XML, including optional elements, and the incoming XML does not contain some of the optional elements. If an element (like a byline element) in your XML template is not matched in the actual content, you would not want to leave this unnecessary element in the logical structure of the document. This feature removes any unmatched optional elements (and

their content) in the document after XML import. The user sets this import option in the XML Import Options dialog box.

Suppose you have an XML template with the logical structure and existing mark-up shown in [Figure 230](#). If the feature to throw away unmatched existing elements is enabled before importing XML, and the inbound XML does not have elements that match a copyright element in the template, the copyright element in the template is deleted on import.

FIGURE 230 XML template

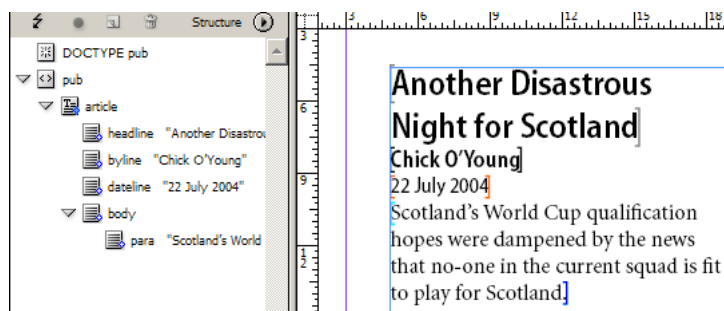


For example, suppose the incoming XML contains only the elements shown in [Example 37](#), rather than the full set of elements in the XML template document in [Figure 230](#).

EXAMPLE 37 Sample XML to import

```
<article><headline>Another Disastrous Night for Scotland</headline>
<byline>Chick O'Young</byline>
<dateline>22 July 2004</dateline>
<body><para>Scotland's World Cup qualification hopes were dampened by the news
that no-one in the current squad is fit to play for Scotland.</para></body>
</article>
```

The net result of importing the sample XML with the option to throw away unmatched existing elements is that only the elements in the incoming XML data explicitly matched in the template are retained, and the template elements and associated content are deleted from the document on import. The result for this sample XML is shown in [Figure 231](#).

FIGURE 231 After throwing away unmatched existing elements on import

Architecture

This feature is implemented by a matchmaking service (`kXMLThrowAwayUnmatchedRight-MatchMakerServiceBoss`); see [“XML-import matchmaker” on page 555](#). The feature is turned on or off by a service-specific import preference (`IXMLImportPreferences`); see [“Service-level XML preferences” on page 551](#). For more information on controlling the feature, see the “XML” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Throwing away unmatched incoming elements on XML import

You can choose to throw away (delete) unmatched incoming elements, to filter out elements in the incoming XML data that do not have a match in the XML template into which they are being imported. You can use this feature when you know there are optional elements in the incoming XML that you do not want to display, and you do not want to use XSLT to explicitly filter them out.

Architecture

This feature is implemented by a matchmaking service (`kXMLThrowAwayUnmatchedRight-MatchMakerServiceBoss`); see [“XML-import matchmaker” on page 555](#). This feature is turned on or off by a service-specific import preference (`IXMLImportPreferences`); see [“Service-level XML preferences” on page 551](#). For more information on controlling the feature, see the “XML” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Attribute-style mapping

Suppose you want to import XML that has (or is transformed to have) attributes that specify the character or paragraph style to apply to text content in the inbound XML. You can use the attribute-style mapping feature, which looks for attributes `pstyle` and `cstyle` in the inbound XML, then tries to match these to paragraph and character styles in the document.

Architecture

This feature is implemented by a post-import responder (`kXMLImporterPostImportMapping-Boss`); see [“Post-import responder” on page 555](#). This responder also implements tag-to-style

mapping on import; see [“Tag-to-style mapping” on page 531](#). For information on how this feature is turned on or off, see [“Service-level XML preferences” on page 551](#).

Creating links on XML import

When XML is imported into an XML template, the default behavior is not to create a link to the imported XML file; however, it is possible to turn on a feature that supports creating a link to the imported XML file.

XML linking is a feature that enables InDesign to keep track of imported XML files. Each imported XML file has a corresponding link, which is shown in the Links panel along with status. Operations that can be performed on XML links include the following:

- *Create* — When an XML file is imported, a link (kXMLImportLinkBoss) is created and associated with the root element of the imported content. Only one link can be associated with one element. Importing into an element that already has a link replaces the old link with the new one.
- *Delete* — Deleting an element deletes its associated link, if it has one.
- *Copy, paste, duplicate* — When an XML element associated with a link is copied, pasted, or duplicated, a copy of the link is created and associated with the new element.
- *Place* — Placing an element into the layout or unplacing it does not affect its XML link. Both placed and unplaced elements can be associated with XML links.
- *Check status* — An XML link's status (e.g., up-to-date, modified, or missing) is shown as an icon in the Links panel.

Architecture

This feature is controlled by an XML-related preference. For details on how this feature is turned on or off, see [“Service-level XML preferences” on page 551](#).

Sparse import

If this feature is turned on during XML import, incoming elements that have no content (or only whitespace for content) do not replace content in the matching existing XML element in the XML template. By default, this feature is turned off.

Architecture

The feature is controlled by an XML-related preference (kXMLSparseImportOptionsServiceBoss). The top-level SAX handler (kSAXDocumentHandlerBoss) acts on this preference, rather than the service (kXMLSparseImportOptionsServiceBoss) being responsible for providing the behavior. This explains why kXMLSparseImportOptionsServiceBoss has no service interface: it is not implementing a particular extension pattern other than for XML import preferences. For details on how to turn sparse import on and off, see [“Service-level XML preferences” on page 551](#).

Importing a CALS table as an InDesign table

You can choose whether to import a CALS table as an InDesign table. You can use this feature when you have a table specified in CALS table format and you want to manipulate it the same way as InDesign native tables.

Architecture

This feature is implemented by a matchmaking service (`kXMLTableMatchMakerServiceBoss`) and DOM serializer handler service; see [“XML-import matchmaker” on page 555](#) and [“SAX DOM serializer handler” on page 557](#). During the matchmaker phase, a special attribute, `kTableFormatAttr` (“tformat”), with value `kAttrValueCALS` (“CALS”), is inserted into the table element. During the DOM serializer phase, contents in the CALS table are altered to fit the InDesign table format. This feature can be turned on or off by a service-specific import preference (`IXMLImportPreferences`); see [“Service-level XML preferences” on page 551](#). For more information on controlling the feature, see the “XML” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Support table and cell styles when importing an InDesign table

You can specify table and cell styles when importing an InDesign table. A table-style attribute applies only to a table element. Cell-style attributes apply to either a table element or a cell element; they are ignored for other types of elements. If the style name specified in the attribute value does not exist, a new style with that name is created and then applied to the table or cell.

Architecture

This feature is implemented by a post-import responder (`kXMLImporterPostImportMappingBoss`), the same way as character style and paragraph style; see [“Attribute-style mapping” on page 522](#). The only difference is that the attribute names are `tablestyle` and `cellstyle`.

Exporting XML

Exporting XML data from InDesign is considerably more straightforward than importing XML data into InDesign. The downside to this is that there are fewer opportunities for your plug-in to customize the export side.

You can export the logical structure of an InDesign document as an XML document. The export takes place in document order, meaning the logical structures of the InDesign document and exported XML data are the same.

An XML file can be exported from any element in the logical structure. For example, if exported from the root element, the exported XML data represents the logical structure of the entire document. If another element—for example, E—is chosen, the exported XML data represents the logical structure of the subtree with E at its root.

Even an empty InDesign document has some (albeit trivial) logical structure: it has one root element with no dependents. If exported as XML data, one element (`<Root></Root>`) is writ-

ten to the output file. [Figure 232](#) shows the logical structure of an new, empty document and the XML data exported from InDesign with the default settings. Note the default encoding (UTF-8).

FIGURE 232 Structure of empty document and XML exported



```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes" ?>
<Root></Root>
```

There are two points to note about the relationship between XML data exported from InDesign and the logical structure:

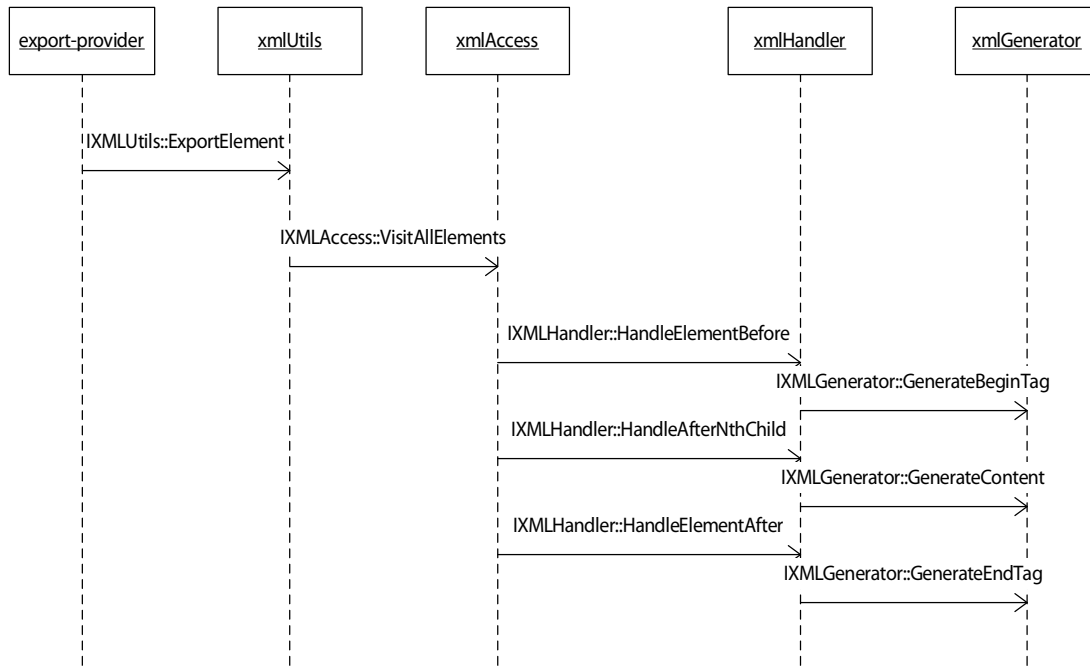
- XML content can be exported from a document even if it is not associated with placed content in the document. Exported XML data is based on the logical structure, irrespective of whether the elements are associated with content in the document.
- The order in which the elements appear in the XML output is based on the logical structure and has no direct relation with the hierarchy of the native document model. The exception to this is a story with mark-up, in which case the order of the elements in the logical structure within the subtree corresponding to the story corresponds to the story-reading order.

Export architecture

An XML generator (IXMLGenerator) is an abstraction responsible for generating the XML content during export. The IXMLGenerator interface is aggregated by classes representing XML elements (IIDXMLElement) in the logical structure.

The mechanism that supports XML export is a standard export provider (kXMLExportProviderBoss, IExportProvider). This delegates to an instance of kXMLExportHandlerBoss to perform the actual export. The implementation of IXMLHandler iterates elements in the logical structure, calling methods through the IXMLGenerator interface of the elements.

This sequence diagram in [Figure 233](#) shows some of the messages sent during a typical XML export.

FIGURE 233 XML-export sequence

The export provider (kXMLExportProviderBoss), shown as `export-provider` in [Figure 233](#), starts the export. The parser service (kXMLParserServiceBoss) has an `IXMLAccess` interface, shown as the `xmlAccess` object. An instance of `kXMLExportHandlerBoss`, shown as `xmlHandler`, with signature interface `IXMLHandler`, iterates elements in the logical structure. The implementation of the `IXMLGenerator` interface on these elements generates XML content to the output stream. There are several implementations of this interface, generating different content types on export.

Contributions to XML export come from instances of boss classes that expose the `IXMLGenerator` interface. These classes represent elements in the logical structure; e.g., `kTextXMLElementBoss` (tagged stories, tagged text ranges, and tagged graphics) and `kXMLCommentBoss` (XML comments).

You can participate in the export process by providing a custom `kXMLExportHandlerSignalService`. The providers are called when the XML handler iterates elements. For more information, see the extension pattern in [“XML-export handler” on page 558](#).

Document order

The logical structure of an InDesign document is exported as XML in document order, as defined in the XPath specification (<http://www.w3.org/TR/xpath#dt-document-order>). For convenience, part of the definition is repeated here:

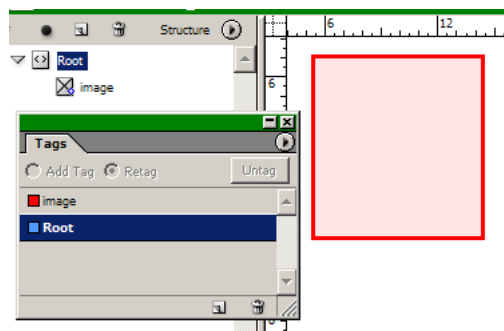
“There is an ordering, document order, defined on all the nodes in the document corresponding to the order in which the first character of the XML representation of each node occurs in the XML representation of the document after expansion of general entities. Thus, the root node will be the first node. Element nodes occur before their children. Thus, document order orders element nodes in order of the occurrence of their start-tag in the XML (after expansion of entities). The attribute nodes and namespace nodes of an element occur before the children of the element. ... Reverse document order is the reverse of document order.”

Document order has no direct relationship with the order in which a document would be read or other ordering schemes you might devise (e.g., based on page numbering).

Tagged graphic placeholder, exported

Consider the case, shown in [Figure 234](#), of a simple but nontrivial logical structure in which a tagged placeholder is intended as the destination for an image.

FIGURE 234 *Tagged graphic placeholder*



Exporting the logical structure with default export options results in the XML data shown in [Figure 235](#). To vary the options, like the encoding, see “[XML-related preferences](#)” on page 549.

FIGURE 235 *Exported XML from document with tagged-graphic placeholder*

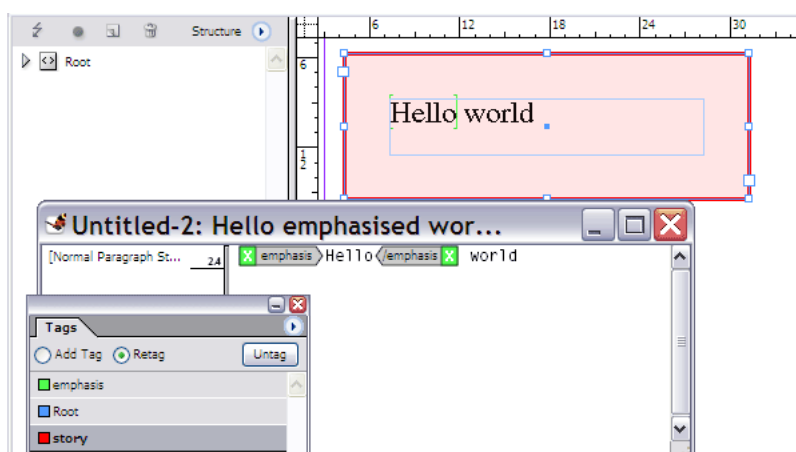
```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes" ?>
- <Root>
  <image />
</Root>
```

The abstraction responsible for generating the XML data related to the tagged graphic is the element (IIDXMLElement) that represents the graphic. It exposes the IXMLGenerator interface, which is used during the export process.

Tagged text range, exported

Consider the example in which you create a text frame, tag the story running through it with a tag named “story,” then tag a range within that story with a different tag named “emphasis.” The XML story element represents the instance of the tagged story. The XML emphasis element represents the tagged content item with value “Hello.” This is shown in [Figure 236](#). The screenshot shows logical structure, tags, and layout view for a document with one text frame, with a tagged text range. The story is tagged “story” and represented by the story element in the logical structure. The text range is tagged “emphasis” and represented by the emphasis element.

FIGURE 236 Tagged text range before export



If you export the logical structure as XML data from the root element, you get the XML data shown in [Figure 237](#). This time, the export option to export with UTF-16 encoding is set, to make it easier to inspect the Unicode character that represents the hard carriage return in the story. This XML data was exported by InDesign from the document shown in [Figure 236](#).

FIGURE 237 XML exported for tagged text range

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-16" standalone="yes" ?>
- <Root>
- <story>
  <emphasis>Hello</emphasis>
  world
</story>
</Root>
```

The XML content of the exported story requires some study. The intent of the InDesign function is that stories should be represented in exported XML data as closely as possible to how InDesign represents them internally. The end-of-line character corresponding to the hard car-

riage return after the word “world” is represented by the Unicode character 0x2029. If you open the XML file in a binary editor on Windows—which is little-endian—the Unicode character 0x2029 is represented as the octet 29 and then the octet 20. Soft carriage returns are represented by 0x2028. See `IXMLOutputStream`. This is shown in [Figure 238](#); the 0x2029 (hard carriage return) is highlighted.

FIGURE 238 Story exported from InDesign as XML in UTF-16 encoding

```

000000 FF FE 3C 00 3F 00 78 00 6D 00 6C 00 20 00 76 00 ...<?.xml .v.
000010 65 00 72 00 73 00 69 00 6F 00 6E 00 3D 00 22 00 e.r.s.i.o.n.= ".
000020 31 00 2E 00 30 00 22 00 20 00 65 00 6E 00 63 00 l..0." .e.n.c.
000030 6F 00 64 00 69 00 6E 00 67 00 3D 00 22 00 55 00 o.d.i.n.g.= ".U.
000040 54 00 46 00 2D 00 31 00 36 00 22 00 20 00 73 00 T.F.-1.6." .s.
000050 74 00 61 00 6E 00 64 00 61 00 6C 00 6F 00 6E 00 t.a.n.d.a.l.o.n.
000060 65 00 3D 00 22 00 79 00 65 00 73 00 22 00 3F 00 e.= ".y.e.s." ?.
000070 3E 00 0A 00 3C 00 52 00 6F 00 6F 00 74 00 3E 00 >...<.R.o.o.t.>.
000080 3C 00 73 00 74 00 6F 00 72 00 79 00 3E 00 3C 00 <.s.t.o.r.y.><.
000090 65 00 6D 00 70 00 68 00 61 00 73 00 69 00 73 00 e.m.p.h.a.s.i.s.
0000a0 3E 00 48 00 65 00 6C 00 6C 00 6F 00 3C 00 2F 00 >.H.e.l.l.o.<./
0000b0 65 00 6D 00 70 00 68 00 61 00 73 00 69 00 73 00 e.m.p.h.a.s.i.s.
0000c0 3E 00 20 00 77 00 6F 00 72 00 6C 00 64 00 29 20 >.w.o.r.l.d.
0000d0 3C 00 2F 00 73 00 74 00 6F 00 72 00 79 00 3E 00 <./s.t.o.r.y.>.
0000e0 3C 00 2F 00 52 00 6F 00 6F 00 74 00 3E 00 0A 00 <./R.o.o.t.>...
0000f0

```

Tags

Tags can be loaded from several different sources, including the following:

- An InDesign tag file, an XML document containing only tag-specific information.
- Any XML document that is an instance of the document type being worked with.
- By associating a DTD with the document. Doing this means the DTD is parsed for element tag names, and tags are created correspondingly. Elements defined within entities are ignored.

[Example 38](#) is a sample tag list.

EXAMPLE 38 Sample tag list

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-16" standalone="yes"?>
  <article colorindex="4">
    <articleinfo colorindex="6"/>
    ... (other elements omitted)
    <ulink colorindex="19"/>
  </article>

```

It also is possible to specify the color of the tag using RGB coordinates, which are used for any tags defined with a custom color. The coordinates are hex-encoded; for example, one tag with a custom color (0,0,255) in decimal RGB coordinates appears below:

```
<link rgb="0 0,0 0,3ff00000 0"/>
```

In addition, the custom-tag service-extension pattern lets you customize what tags are created when an XML document is being parsed. See [“Custom-tag service” on page 557](#).

Architecture

The `kXMLTagBoss` boss class represents an individual entry in a tag list. The signature interface of this boss class is `IXMLTag`; this stores properties like the name and color in the user interface. The tag list is represented by `IXMLTagList`.

`IXMLTagList` is aggregated on the session workspace (`kWorkspaceBoss`), representing a default set of tags for any new document.

`IXMLTagList` is aggregated on the document workspace (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`), representing tags in a given document.

The session workspace (`kWorkspaceBoss`) stores zero or more tags. A document workspace (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`) stores one or more tags; the minimal tag set for a new document consists of the Root tag.

Tagging relationships are represented by associations between classes representing elements in the logical structure and those representing tags. For example, if a graphic frame is tagged for use as a placeholder, an association is created between the placeholder boss object (an instance of the `kPlaceholderItemBoss` class) and an instance of the `kTextXMLElementBoss` class. An association is created between an element in the logical structure (`IIDXMLElement`) and an instance of `kXMLTagBoss`, to represent the tagging.

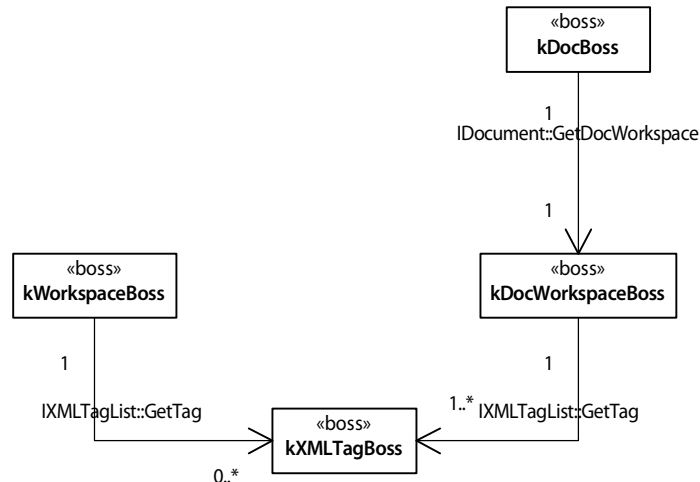
Tags (`kXMLTagBoss`) that can be used to mark up content items in the native document model are held in the tag list (`IXMLTagList`) of a workspace (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`, `kWorkspaceBoss`). Tags are rendered in the Tags panel ([Figure 218](#)) and shown in views like layout view ([Figure 216](#)) or story view ([Figure 217](#)). XML elements that have tag names are associated with tags (`kXMLTagBoss`) that store the tag names.

Given a reference to an XML element, you can find the tag string through a method on `IIDXMLElement`. You also can use `IIDXMLElement::GetTagUID` to acquire a reference to an instance of `kXMLTagBoss` representing the tag.

You can acquire a reference to a tag (`kXMLTagBoss`) in a document through the tag list (`IXMLTagList`) on the document workspace (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`). The `tagUIDRef` variable refers to an instance of `kXMLTagBoss`.

The class diagram in [Figure 239](#) shows associations between tags and workspaces and the document (`kDocBoss`).

FIGURE 239 Tags



Tag-to-style mapping

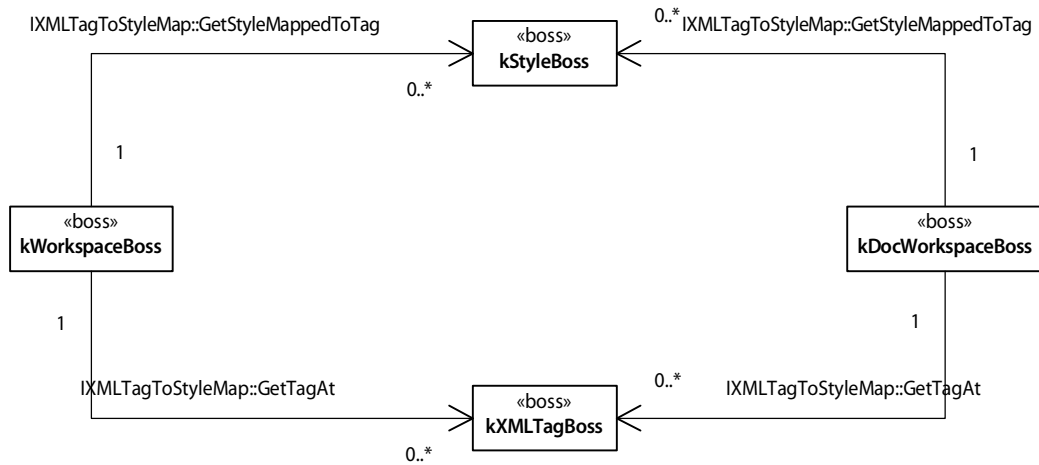
Suppose you have XML content with a headline tag and a p-head-1 paragraph style in your XML template. You can create an association between tags and styles in the document, to enable incoming XML to be styled automatically.

When a tag-to-style mapping is applied during the XML import, inbound XML content has the styles applied when elements with tag names matching the tags in the tag-to-style map are encountered. For example, if you create a mapping from the headline tag to the p-head-1 paragraph style, textual content in a headline element has the p-head-1 style applied.

The user interface for this feature is shown in [Figure 219](#). This establishes a one-to-one mapping from tag names to character or paragraph styles, which is sufficient when context-sensitive styling is not required. If context-sensitive styling for incoming XML is required, you can use a combination of a stream-based XML transformer and attribute-style mapping to achieve this. See [“XML transformer” on page 554](#) and [“Attribute-style mapping” on page 522](#).

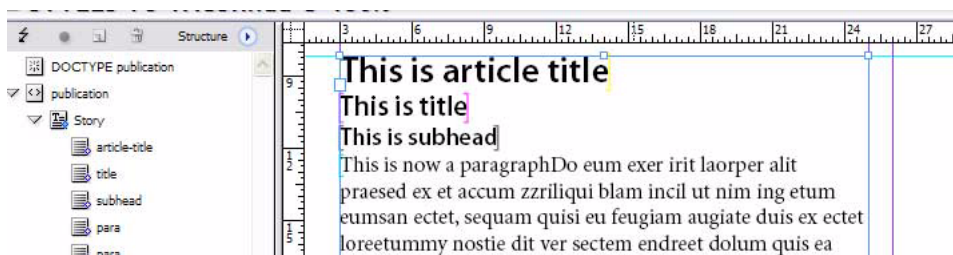
Architecture

[Figure 240](#) is a class diagram for tag-to-style mappings (`IXMLTagToStyleMap`). The session workspace (`kWorkspaceBoss`) stores the default mapping inherited by new documents. The document workspace (`kDocWorkspaceBoss`) stores the mapping applied to a particular document (`kDocBoss`).

FIGURE 240 Tag-to-style mapping

Style-to-tag mapping

Figure 241 is a screenshot of an unstructured but systematically styled document, which as an associated DTD. Figure 242 shows the result of applying a style-to-tag mapping.

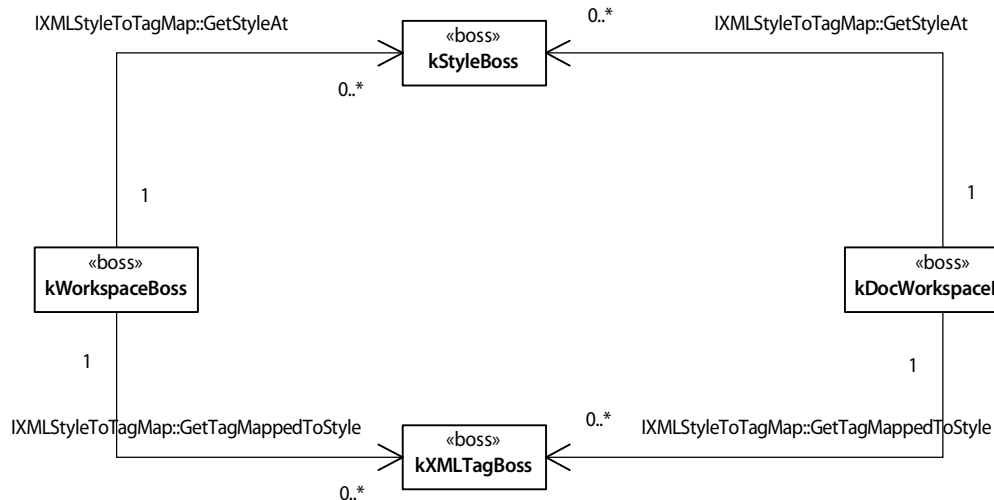
FIGURE 241 Before mapping styles to tags**FIGURE 242** After mapping styles to tags

Once a style-to-tag mapping is defined and applied, ranges of styled text with the styles mapped to given tags end up tagged, creating new elements in the logical structure. There are some default commitments in terms of the tags applied; for example, the Story tag is used for a story, even if it is not in the tag list of the document when the style-to-tag mapping is applied.

Architecture

The class diagram in [Figure 243](#) shows the associations between workspaces (*IWorkspace*), tags (*kXMLTagBoss*), and styles (*kStyleBoss*), mediated by the style-to-tag map (*IXMLStyleToTagMap*). The session workspace (*kWorkspaceBoss*) stores the default style-to-tag map for new documents. The document workspace (*kDocWorkspaceBoss*) stores the style-to-tag map for a given document (*kDocBoss*).

FIGURE 243 Style-to-tag mapping



Text styles are represented by *kStyleBoss*. Collections of styles are held in the style-name table (*IStyleNameTable*) and stored in a workspace (*IWorkspace*). The session workspace (*kWorkspaceBoss*) stores text styles that are defaults for new documents. The document workspace (*kDocWorkspaceBoss*) stores text styles that can be used in the associated document. For more information on text styles, see the “Text Fundamentals” chapter and the API reference documentation for *kStyleBoss*.

The workspace (*IWorkspace*) maintains an associative map between text styles (*kStyleBoss*) and tags (*kXMLTagBoss*). This map is stored in the persistent interface *IXMLStyleToTagMap*. The workspace style list (*IStyleNameTable*) may contain styles that are not referenced in the style-to-tag map. Similarly, there may be tags in the tag list (*IXMLTagList*) of the workspace that are not involved in the style-to-tag map.

Elements and content

Tagged graphic placeholder

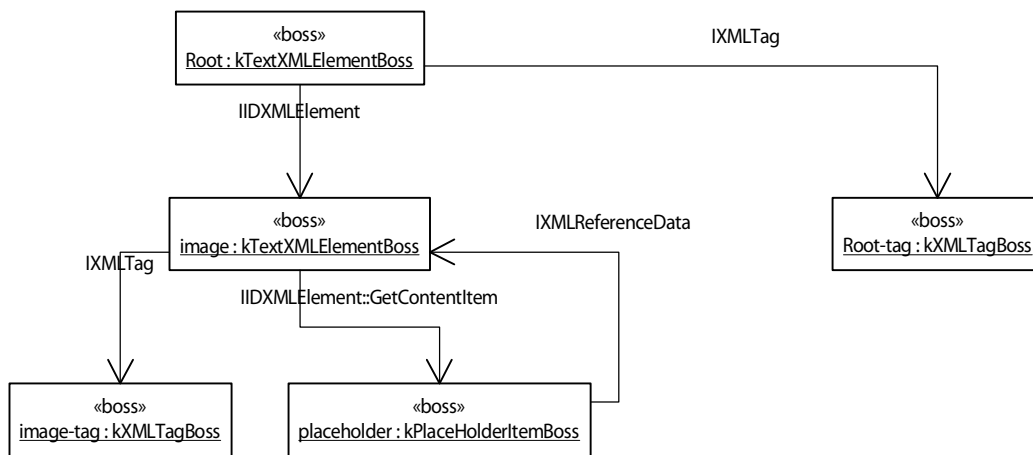
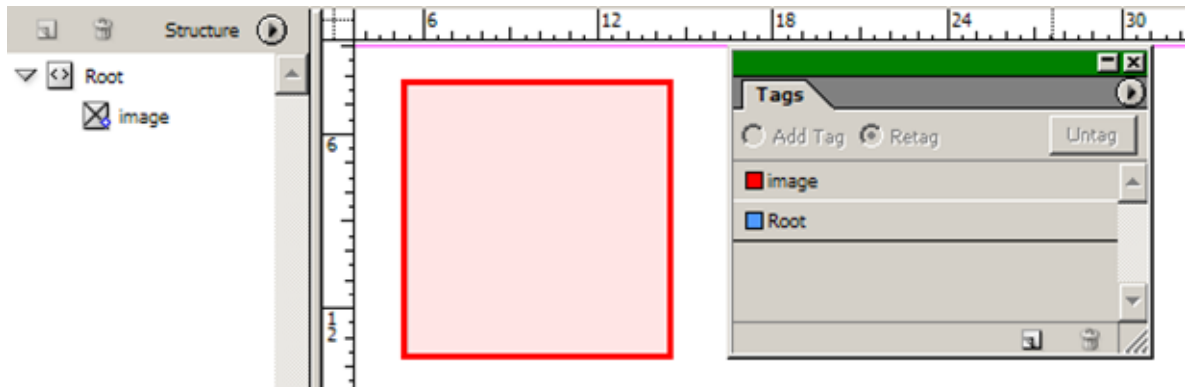
Suppose you are building an XML template and you want to create placeholders into which images will be placed when an XML data file is imported. To create a placeholder graphic for an image, follow these steps:

1. Create a new document.
1. Create a tag named “image” through the Tags panel (Window > Tags).
2. Create a rectangle page item with the Rectangle tool.
3. Leave the page item selected, and click on the image tag in the Tags panel.
4. Show the structure view. It should look like [Figure 244](#).

Architecture

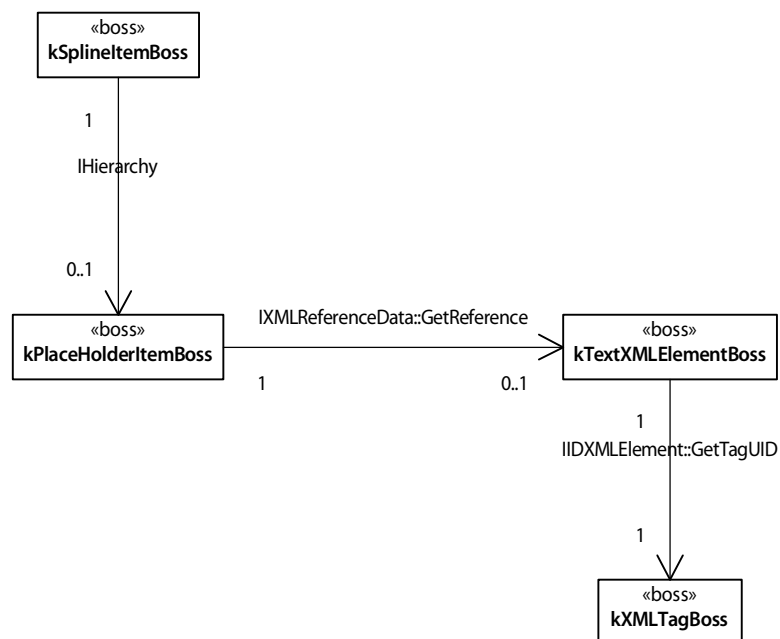
The UML object diagram in [Figure 244](#) shows the boss objects representing a tagged graphic placeholder and some of the relationships between them. The placeholder object (kPlaceholderItemBoss) is a child of a graphic frame (kSplineItemBoss); the latter is omitted from this diagram, in the interest of simplicity. Content items like kPlaceholderItemBoss have an IXMLReferenceData interface, which lets them refer to an element in the logical structure.

FIGURE 244 Tagged graphic placeholder



When document content is tagged, XML elements (IIDXMLElement) are created within the logical structure. Tagging content creates associations between content items (see IXMLReferenceData) and elements in the logical structure. Tagging also creates associations between elements and tags (kXMLTagBoss).

Figure 245 shows a class diagram for some of the classes representing a tagged placeholder graphic. A graphic frame (kSplineItemBoss) acquires a placeholder item child (kPlaceholderItemBoss), when the frame is tagged to use as a placeholder. If a graphic frame is not tagged, it has no dependent placeholder (kPlaceholderItemBoss).

FIGURE 245 Tagged placeholder

There are several key associations related to tagging of content items shown in [Figure 244](#) and [Figure 245](#):

- Content items in the native document model associate with elements in the logical structure. The association is maintained by the `IXMLReferenceData` interface and the `XMLReference` helper class.
- Elements in the logical structure associate with content items in the native document model. The association is maintained by the `IIDXMLElement` interface. See `GetContentItem` and `GetContentReference`.
- Elements in the logical structure associate with tags. The association is maintained by the `IIDXMLElement` interface. See `GetTagUID` and `GetTagString`.

Tagged images

[Figure 246](#) is an example of a minimal XML file that can be used to place an image. The path shown is a relative one; the image would have to be in the same folder as the XML file that referenced it.

FIGURE 246 Minimal XML content to place an image

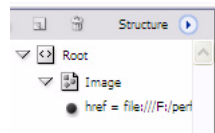
```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>
- <Root>
  <Image href="file:///testfile.tif" />
</Root>

```

See the “XML” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions* for an example of XML for importing an image by reference. On importing the XML file, if we do not have a pre-existing placeholder graphic frame tagged with the Image tag, the image is not placed.

Figure 247 shows the result of importing the minimal XML file.

FIGURE 247 Unplaced image

If there is a pre-existing graphic frame tagged with the Image tag, the image is placed on import. One constraint is that if you intend an image to be placed in the graphic frame, the Image element (for this example) must support the href attribute that on import should specify the system path with which to locate the image to be placed, or you will have to place the image yourself.

Architecture

Elements can be associated with a tagged placeholder (`kPlaceholderItemBoss`) or a tagged graphic content item, such as an image (`kImageItem`, `kPlacedPDFItemBoss`, `kEPSItem`, etc.).

When an XML tag is applied to a graphic frame with placeholder content (e.g., `kSplineItemBoss` containing a `kPlaceholderItemBoss`), a new instance of the `kTextXMLElementBoss` class is created, and a link is created between this object and the boss object representing the placeholder item (`kPlaceholderItemBoss`).

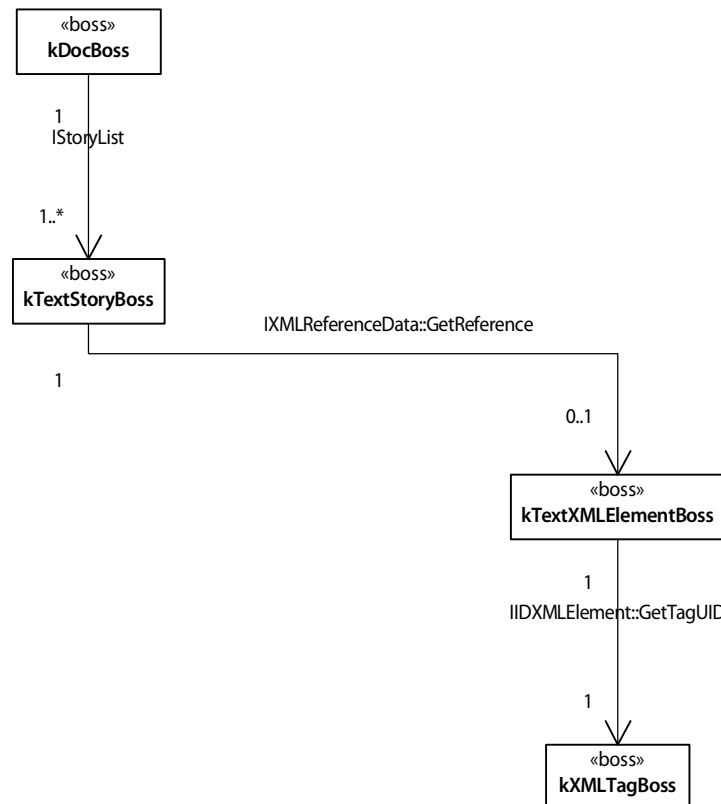
Tagged stories

Architecture

Elements (`IIDXMLElement`) can be associated with a content item that is either a story or a range of text within a story. The story (`kTextStoryBoss`) in which the text range is contained must be tagged before a range of text can be tagged. Tagging a story is useful when you want to create a tagged placeholder for incoming, text-based content. The end-user action to tag a story is to tag the text frame through which the story flows; this creates an association between the story (`kTextStoryBoss`) and an XML element (`IIDXMLElement`).

Figure 248 shows associations for some of the classes representing a tagged story (kTextStoryBoss). If a story is tagged, the IXMLReferenceData of the story boss object (kTextStoryBoss) refers to a valid instance of an element (kTextXMLElementBoss).

FIGURE 248 Tagged story



You can iterate over the children of the element tagging the story, using `XMLContentIterator`, to find out text ranges marked up by the child elements. For an example, see the section on “Finding Text associated with Tagged Text Ranges” in the “XML” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Tagged text ranges

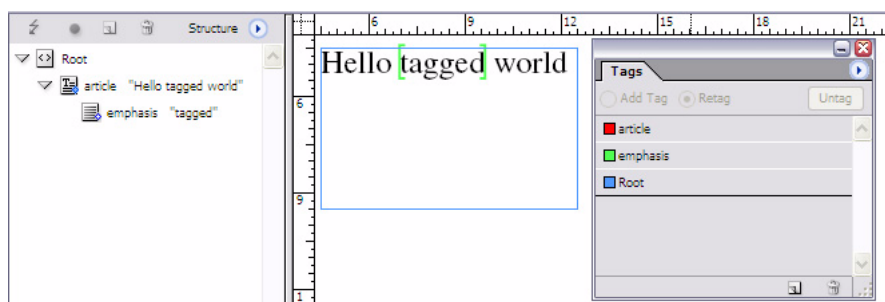
A tag is applied to a text range by making a text selection and either clicking a particular tag in the Tags panel or selecting an item from a context-sensitive menu containing tag names. Once the range is tagged, tag markers are placed before and after the tagged range. The “[” and “]” adornment characters are nonprinting, zero-width spaces inserted into the text; these characters can be shown or hidden.

Text ranges within a tagged story can themselves be tagged. Text within table cells also can be tagged. There are some constraints on what text can be tagged. The following text ranges cannot be tagged:

- Some owned items, including notes (kNoteDataBoss), tracked changes, and hyperlinks.
- Ruby text annotations in Japanese.
- Text in locked stories (see IItemLockData).

Figure 249 shows a tagged range of text. In this example, the article tag is applied to the story, and the emphasis tag is applied to the text range containing the characters “tagged.”

FIGURE 249 Tagged text range

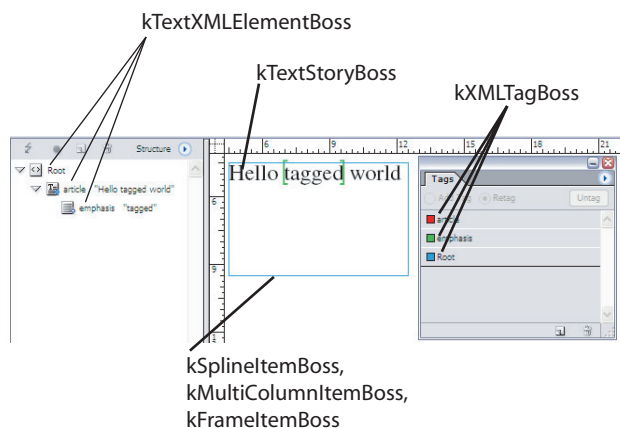


Architecture

When tagging a text range in an untagged story, the following steps take place:

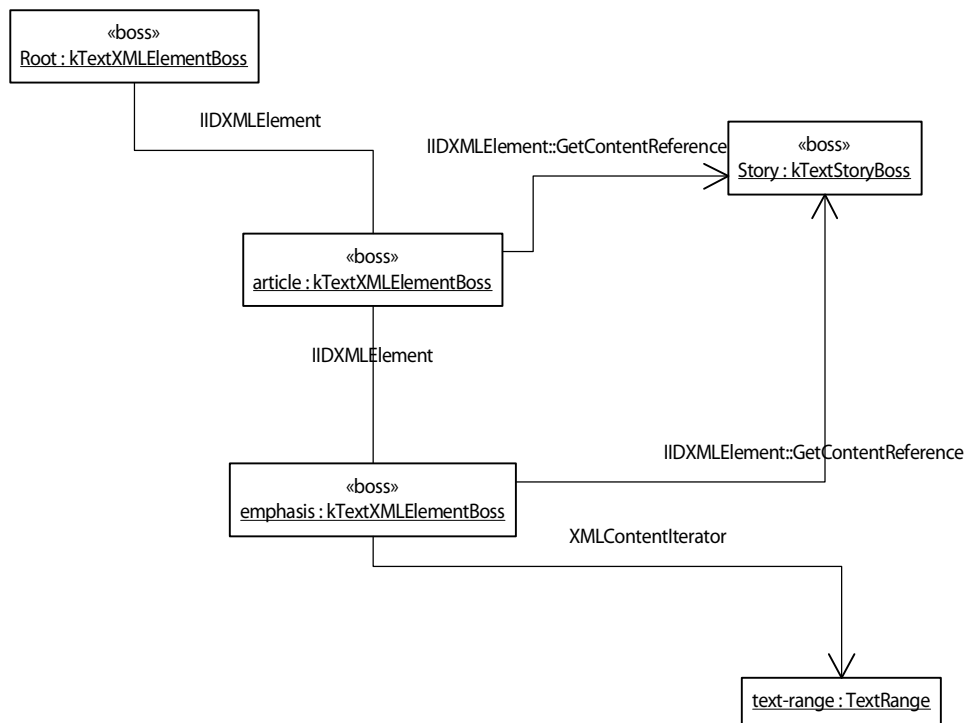
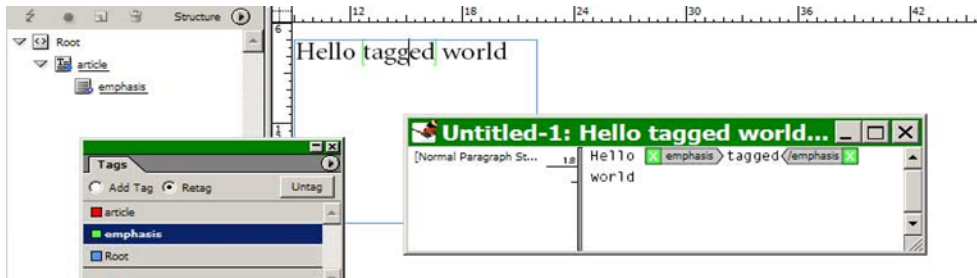
1. The story (kTextStoryBoss) in which the text range lies is tagged, and an element (IIDXMLElement) is created in the logical structure.
2. An element (IIDXMLElement) is created to represent the tagged-text range. This element refers to a tag (kXMLTagBoss) with a tag name (“emphasis” in the example in Figure 249).
3. Characters are inserted into the text model to represent the start and end of the tagged-text range (kTextChar_ZeroSpaceNoBreak).
4. Optionally, adornments (IGlobalTextAdornment, kXMLMarkerAdornmentBoss) are drawn in layout view, as shown in Figure 249, if the preference to show tag markers is enabled (see IXMLPreferences).

Figure 250 shows the classes involved in this minimal example of tagging a text range.

FIGURE 250 Classes associated with tagged text range

Consider the example of one tagged text range, as shown in [Figure 251](#), which shows objects involved in representing a tagged text range. The result of tagging this text range is to create a new element that is a child of the element associated with the tagged story. See [“Tagged stories” on page 537](#). In [Figure 251](#), an emphasis element is created on tagging the text range. This is a child of an article element for this example. The information about the range of text is encapsulated in the `kTextXMLElementBoss`, but it can be accessed through using `XMLContentIterator`.

FIGURE 251 Tagged text range (class diagram)

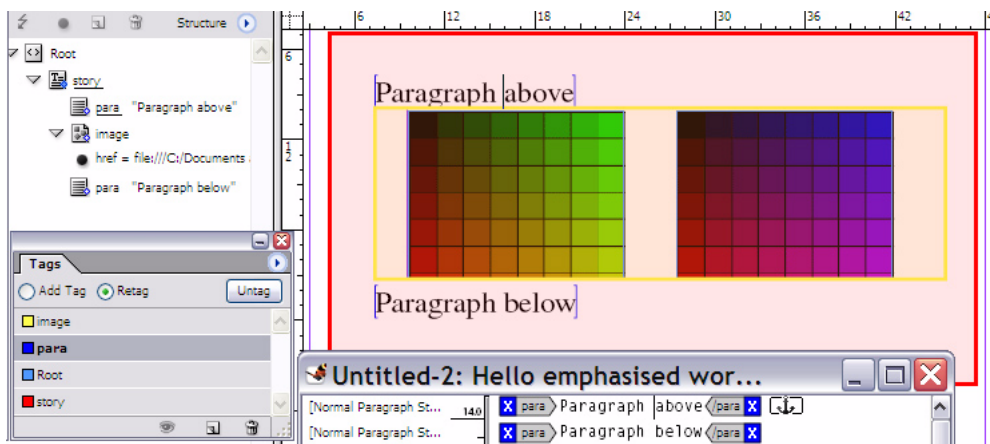


Tagged inline graphics

You can create a tagged inline graphic by either selecting an existing inline graphic and tagging it or placing an image into a tagged inline placeholder.

Figure 252 shows a tagged story, with two tagged paragraphs and a tagged inline graphic.

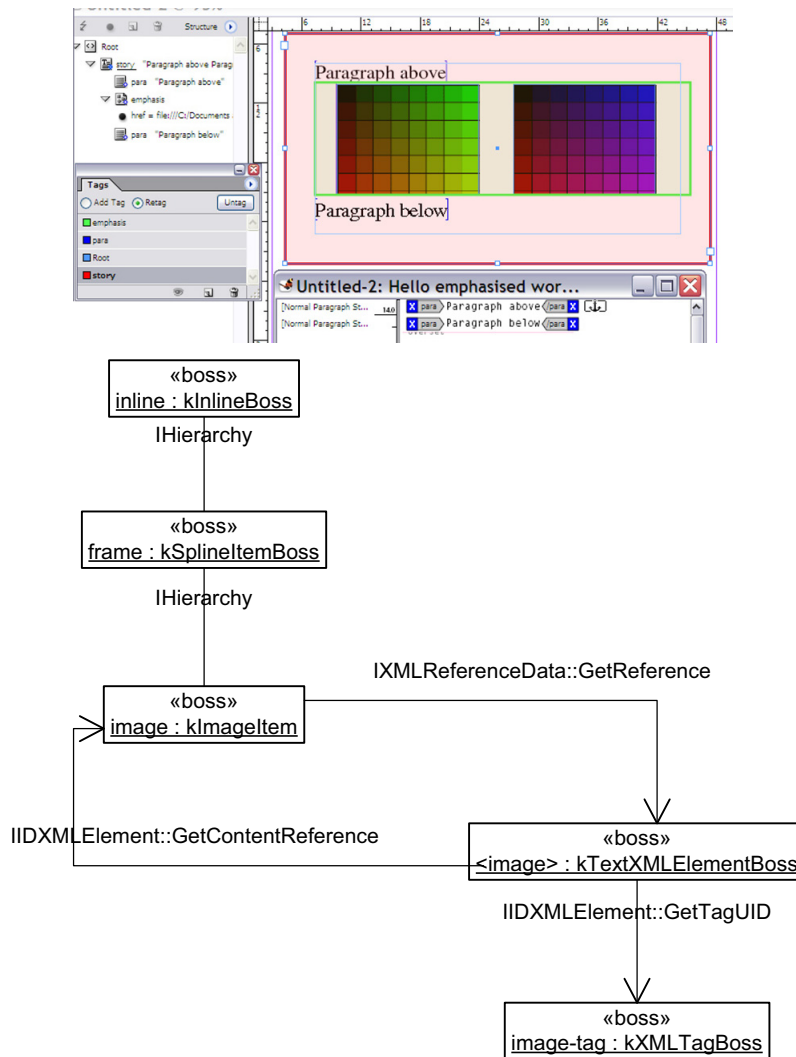
FIGURE 252 Tagged inline graphic



Architecture

From an XML perspective, tagged inline graphics are like tagged images, described in “[Tagged images](#)” on page 536. The main differences are on the native-document-model side; the image (e.g., `kImageItem`) is owned by a frame that itself is owned by an inline object (`kInlineBoss`). The object diagram in [Figure 253](#) above shows some objects that model a tagged inline graphic.

FIGURE 253 Tagged inline graphic (object-model diagram)



Tagged tables

You can tag a table and cells within a table. A table that is not explicitly tagged will not get exported during XML export. If a table is tagged, all its cells must be tagged. In other words, a tagged table cannot contain untagged cells, and a tagged table cell cannot be inside an untagged table.

Tagged tables and table cells also can be untagged; that is, the mark-up associated with them can be removed. Untagging a table or its cells untags the entire table, including the cells.

The model for tagging tables is restricted: you can tag either at the whole-table level or the cell level, but you cannot tag rows or create other container elements within the logical structure of a table.

Architecture

If you examine the API reference documentation for `IXMLReferenceData` and see the boss classes that aggregate this interface, you will notice table-related classes like `kTableModelBoss` and `kTableCellContentBoss`. The operation of tagging a table (`kTableModelBoss`) has the following constraints:

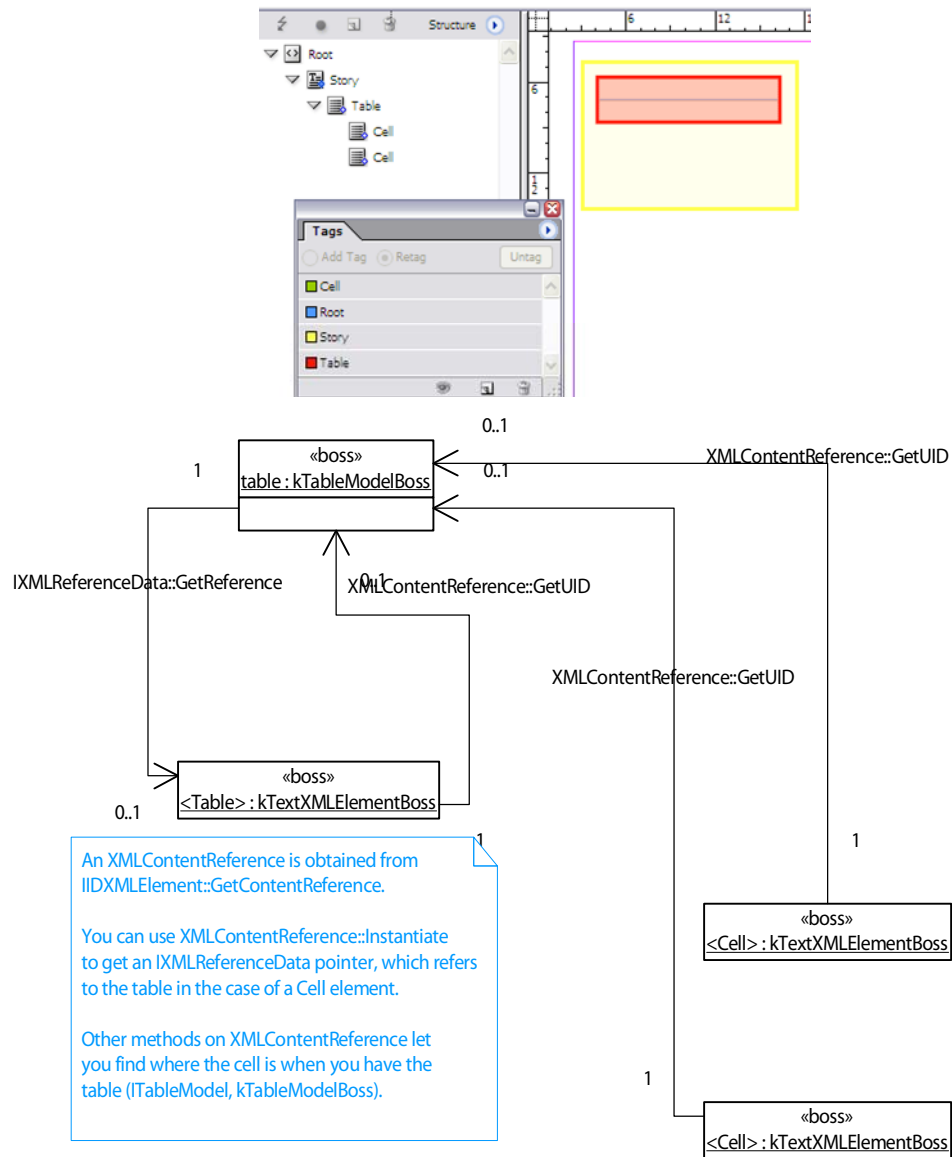
- A tagged table must reside in a tagged story (`kTextStoryBoss`), so the act of tagging a table also tags the story in which it resides, if the story is not already tagged. The story is auto-tagged with the Story tag, if no other tag is specified.
- The cells within the table also must be tagged when the table itself is tagged. The cells are auto-tagged with the Cell tag, if no other tag is specified.

It also is possible to tag text within a table cell, which is not much different than the situation described in “[Tagged text ranges](#)” on page 538. For example, if you create an element that is a child of a Cell element, the new element becomes a placeholder for tagged text within a table cell.

For more details on implementing tagging of tables, see the section on “Tagging a Table” in the “XML” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

The object diagram in [Figure 254](#) shows some of the objects that represent a tagged table. Note how the table (`kTableModelBoss`) associates with an XML table element. The key to understanding the model is the `XMLContentReference` type, an instance of which can be obtained from `IIDXMLElement::GetContentReference`. In the case of XML elements associated with table cells, the properties of the cells can be discovered through `XMLContentReference`.

FIGURE 254 Tagged table



DTD

A document type declaration (DTD) is a grammar defined in an extended Backus-Naur format that can be read by XML processors. The main point of associating a DTD with an InDesign document is to allow the logical structure of the InDesign document to be checked or validated against the grammar. The XML 1.0 specification (<http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml>) defines a DTD as follows:

“The XML document type declaration contains or points to markup declarations that provide a grammar for a class of documents. This grammar is known as a document type definition, or DTD. The document type declaration can point to an external subset (a special kind of external entity) containing markup declarations, or can contain the markup declarations directly in an internal subset, or can do both. The DTD for a document consists of both subsets taken together.”

You can import a DTD to create an association between the DTD and the document’s logical structure, using the Load DTD menu command in the Structure pane. This associates the DTD with the logical structure of the document. New tags are created (see “Tags” on page 529) from an element type declaration, if they are not already in the tag list.

After associating a DTD with the document, you can validate the logical structure of a document against the DTD. The user interface for this is shown in [Figure 221](#).

Once you load a DTD, you can validate the logical structure against the DTD, to determine the extent to which the document’s structure violates the constraints expressed in the grammar represented by the DTD. See Section “5.1 Validating and Non-Validating Processors” in the XML 1.0 specification.

The API does not support validating the logical structure of an InDesign document against an XML schema (<http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-0>).

If you import a DTD, a new element is created in the logical structure, and new tags are created as needed. A sample DTD is shown in [Example 39](#). This was associated with the logical structure of a document after importing the minimal XML from [Example 35](#).

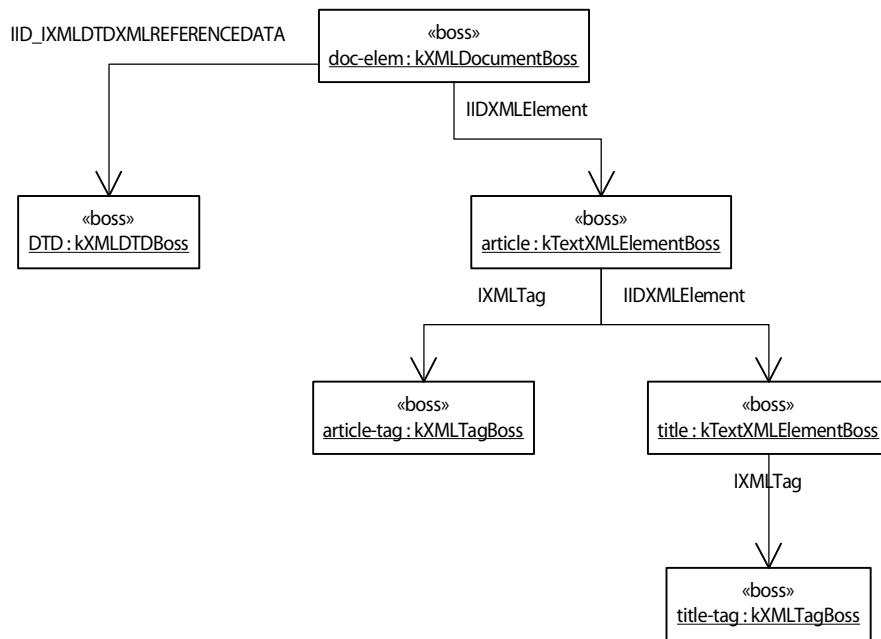
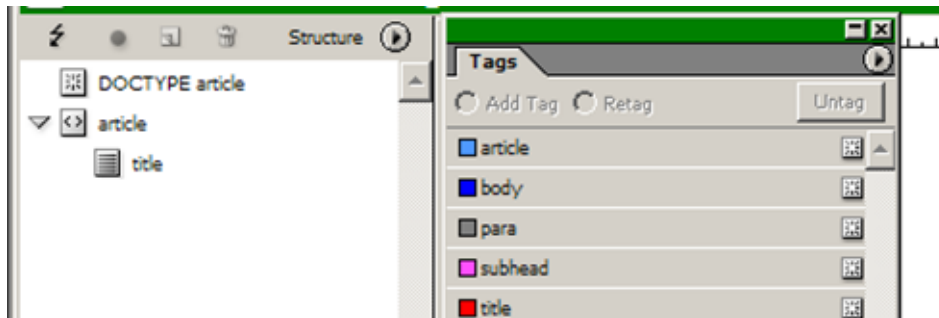
EXAMPLE 39 Small Sample DTD

```
<!ELEMENT article (title, body?)>
<!ELEMENT body (subhead | para)+>
<!ELEMENT title (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT subhead (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT para (#PCDATA)>
```

Architecture

The DTD associated with the logical structure of an InDesign document is represented by an instance of `kXMLDTDBoss`. When present, this instance is a child of the document element (`kXMLDocumentBoss`) and a peer of the root element. See [Figure 255](#) for an object diagram showing relationships between objects representing the logical structure of a minimal InDesign document. The UML diagram in [Figure 255](#) shows objects representing the logical structure when a DTD is imported into the document. `kXMLDTDBoss`, as a participant in the logical structure, has the `IIDXMLElement` interface; however, it does not have children and has no associated tag.

FIGURE 255 Elements when a DTD is imported



Processing instructions and comments

An XML comment stores text that is not considered part of the document content, but that may be relevant when authoring. XML comments are defined in the XML 1.0 specification (<http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml>) as follows:

“Comments may appear anywhere in a document outside other markup; in addition, they may appear within the document type declaration at places allowed by the grammar. They are not part of the document's character data ...”

XML comments can occur anywhere in the logical structure that is legal within the XML specification. An XML comment appears in the XML data like this:

```
<!-- This is a comment -->
```

Processing instructions (PIs) also store text that is not considered part of the document content, but the content may be relevant to an XML processor. Processing instructions are defined in the XML specification as follows:

“PIs are not part of the document's character data, but must be passed through to the application. The PI begins with a target (PITarget) used to identify the application to which the instruction is directed.”

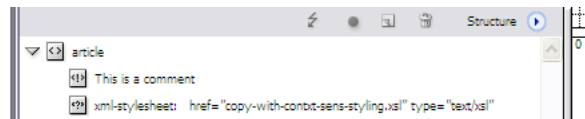
Processing instructions allow XML-based documents to contain instructions for applications that know how to process them. It is possible to create new processing instructions anywhere in the logical structure. A processing instruction appears in the XML data like this:

```
<?xml-stylesheet href="copy-with-contxt-sens-styling.xsl" type="text/xsl"?>
```

This processing instruction directs an XML application to choose a particular XSL stylesheet if applying an XSL transform to the XML content.

Figure 256 shows how an XML comment and processing instruction are rendered in the structure view.

FIGURE 256 Comment and processing instruction in the structure view



Architecture

An XML comment is associated with one string. Comments are represented by `kXMLCommentBoss`, with the text stored by an implementation of `IStringData`. On the other hand, a processing instruction appears to the user as a pair of strings, one specifying the target for the processing instruction and the other specifying the data. Processing instructions are represented by `kXMLPIBoss`; there are two `IStringData` interfaces implemented by this class, (`IID_IXMLPITARGET`, `IID_IXMLPIDATA`) storing strings representing the key (target) and value (data).

The `kXMLCommentBoss` and `kXMLPIBoss` boss classes have implementations of the `IIDXMLLElement` interface (through inheritance) and are part of the logical-structure tree. Comment and processing-instruction elements support some but not all properties of other XML elements. For example, you cannot add attributes to a comment or processing instruction, and there is neither a valid content-item reference nor a valid tag reference for a comment or processing instruction.

Structural (container) elements

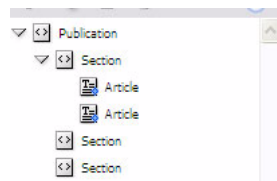
You can add new elements to the logical structure of a document using the structure view and its associated menu. Elements created in this way are not immediately associated with content items and are, therefore, unplaced.

Unplaced elements can be placed from the logical structure onto the layout manually or programmatically, but sometimes it is useful to retain unplaced elements as structural or container elements.

For example, suppose a publication is a collection of sections (e.g., “Arts” and “Motoring”), each comprising one or more articles. You could model this with a Section element that consists of a set of Article elements; the Section element might never itself have any content but instead be used to structure the collection of Article elements. The Section element is a logical element of the publication, rather than a content-related element.

The XML template for this publication might be set up as shown in [Figure 257](#). The Article elements appear as placed content, because we tagged some stories with Article tags; these stories are placeholders into which the XML-based data would be imported.

FIGURE 257 *Creating elements as structural elements*



Architecture

Structural elements differ from elements representing placed content only insofar as structural elements do not have a valid content-item reference (`IIDXMLElement::GetContentReference`). However, structural elements should have a valid tag reference (`IIDXMLElement::GetTagUID`).

XML-related preferences

The XML subsystem is relatively complex, and there are several interfaces that store XML preferences. These can be grouped into workspace-level preferences and service-level preferences.

Workspace-level XML preferences

There are some XML-related preferences (options) interfaces stored in workspaces (`kWorkspaceBoss` and `kDocWorkspaceBoss`). These are shown in [Table 129](#), along with low-level commands that enable them to be changed.

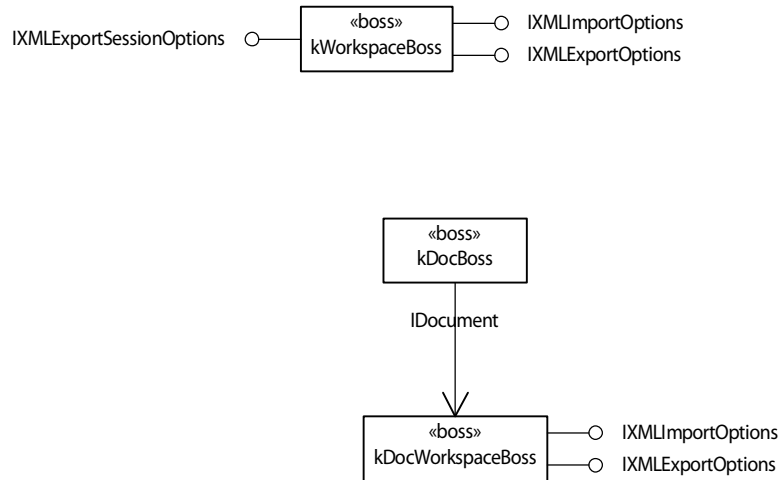
TABLE 129 Interfaces storing workspace-level XML preferences

Interface	Responsibility	Command to process to change preference
IDocStructurePrefs	Stores preferences like whether structure view is visible when the document is opened.	kChangeDocStructurePrefsCmdBoss to change the data, but you need to execute an action to change the structure-view state.
IGeneralXMLPreferences	Stores tagging preferences in the session workspace, like default tag name for story, table, and cell.	kSetGeneralXMLPreferencesCmdBoss
IStructureViewPrefs	Stores information related to the appearance of the structure view, like whether comments are visible.	kChangeStructureViewPrefsCmdBoss
IXMLExportOptions	Stores XML export options in the workspace that control what gets written to the XML data.	kChangeXMLExportOptionsCmdBoss
IXMLExportSessionOptions	Stores XML export options in the session workspace related to viewing XML data after export.	kChangeXMLExportOptionsCmdBoss
IXMLImportOptions	Stores XML import options in the workspace.	kChangeXMLImportOptionsCmdBoss
IXMLPreferences	Stores user-interface preferences related to XML.	kShowTaggedFramesCmdBoss, kShowTagMarkersCmdBoss, and kShowTagOptionsCmdBoss

In most cases, the command required to change a data interface is specified in the API reference documentation or can be deduced when inspecting the boss classes that aggregate a given interface.

The UML diagrams in [Figure 258](#) show some of the interfaces involved in storing options for import and export of XML at the session level (kWorkspaceBoss) or document level (kDocWorkspaceBoss).

FIGURE 258 Key options related to import and export



Preferences related to structure view and other user-interface components

The IDocStructurePrefs interface controls some properties of the structure view. IDocStructurePrefs is present on the session workspace (kWorkspaceBoss) and document workspace (kDocWorkspaceBoss). IDocStructurePrefs stores preferences related to whether to show the structure pane and how wide it should be.

The IStructureViewPrefs interface (only on kWorkspaceBoss) stores other properties of the structure view, like whether text snippets are to be shown. The IXMLPreferences interface on the session workspace (kWorkspaceBoss) stores the visibility of tag markers, etc.

Service-level XML preferences

Some services that aggregate the IXMLImportPreferences interface are shown in [Table 130](#).

TABLE 130 Object-specific preference interfaces related to XML

Service and its responsibility	Semantics of its IXMLImportPreferences interface
kXMLRepeatTextElementsMatchMakerServiceBoss, responsible for preserving story text styling when handling repeating elements.	0th preference is bool16, whether to turn on, kTrue by default.
kXMLThrowAwayUnmatchedRightMatchMakerServiceBoss, responsible for discarding unmatched elements in the XML template.	0th preference is bool16, whether to turn on feature, kFalse by default.

Service and its responsibility	Semantics of its IXMLImportPreferences interface
kXMLThrowAwayUnmatchedLeftMatchMakerServiceBoss, responsible for discarding incoming elements that have no match in the XML template.	0th preference is bool16, whether to turn on feature, kFalse by default.
kXMLImporterPostImportMappingBoss, responsible for attribute-style mapping.	0th preference, bool16, kTrue by default. Specifies whether to delete namespace attribute (aid: for example) and the namespace attribute (xmlns:).
kXMLSparseImportOptionsServiceBoss, just stores a preference relating to sparse import.	0th preference, bool16, whether to use sparse import, kFalse by default.
kXMLLinkingPostImportResponderBoss, responsible for creating a link (kXMLImportLinkBoss) to imported XML files.	0th preference, bool16, whether to create link, kFalse by default.

Key client API

XML suites

Some suite interfaces that represent a fairly high level of abstraction over the XML subsystem can be used to program the XML features. We recommend you use these suites when possible when programming using the XML features:

- IXMLNodeSelectionSuite can be used to make a programmatic selection in the Structure pane. See also the extension pattern described in [“Custom suite for the structure view” on page 556](#).
- IXMLStructureSuite can be used when there is a selection in the Structure pane. IXMLStructureSuite lets you change the logical structure of a document at the node selected in the structure-view tree. If you are writing client code that involves the end user making active selections, this is one mechanism to modify the logical-structure tree. The methods on this suite interface delegate to the command facades (for example, IXMLElementCommands and IXMLAttributeCommands).
- IXMLTagSuite can be used to apply tags to a selection, like a text range or graphic frames. IXMLTagSuite also can be used for other purposes, like adding a processing comment to the document’s logical structure. See [“Elements and content” on page 534](#) and [“Processing instructions and comments” on page 547](#).

You can extend the application by writing a custom suite that is available when there is a selection in the Structure pane. See [“Extension patterns” on page 553](#).

Command facades and utilities

There are many command-related boss classes named `kXML<whatever>CmdBoss`, but in most cases, you do not need to process these low-level commands, as there are command facades in the XML API that encapsulate parameterizing and processing these commands.

Interfaces like `IXMLUtils`, `IXMLElementCommands`, `IXMLMappingCommands`, `IXMLTagCommands`, and `IXMLAttributeCommands` are examples of command facades. These encapsulate processing of almost all the commands required by plug-in code. These interfaces are aggregated on `kUtilsBoss`; the smart pointer class `Utils` makes it straightforward to acquire and call methods on these interface. You can call their methods by writing code that follows this pattern:

```
Utils<IXMLElementCommands>() ->MethodName(...)
```

When writing code that does not involve selection, always look first at the `IXMLUtils` or `IXML<whatever>Commands` interfaces, to see if there is a method that serves your purpose on one of these interfaces. By doing so, you can avoid the increased chance of confusion and error that comes with processing low-level commands. Of course, your use case may require you to process some low-level commands, if the facades do not provide all the functionality you require.

Extension patterns

XML acquirer

Suppose you want to customize how InDesign obtains the XML data to be read by the standard import-XML file operation. For example, you might query your database to get XML-based data, and you want to allow InDesign to parse the XML data directly from a stream you open.

Architecture

An XML acquirer (`IXMLAcquirerFilter`) lets you take control to create a stream (`IPMStream`) from which InDesign reads XML data, and optionally provide an entity resolver (`ISAXEntityResolver`) for InDesign to use when importing the XML data in your stream. An XML acquirer allows you to take control early in the XML-import sequence, to determine where the XML data comes from. An XML acquirer is a service provider, characterized by the `IXMLAcquirerFilter` service interface. The `ServiceID` must be of type `kAcquireXMLService`; you can re-use the API implementation `kXMLFilterServiceProviderImpl` (`IK2ServiceProvider`) for this.

XML import begins with a URL-style string that describes the XML source. This stage of the import process (see [“Import architecture” on page 512](#)) has the task of converting the XML source description into a stream (`IPMStream`). In the simplest case, the URL-style string is a path to a local file. In more complex cases, it could be an XQuery, any kind of URL, or a comma-separated values (CSV) file.

These different identifiers for the XML source are handled uniformly by the XML importer (`kXMLImporterBoss`). The XML importer takes the source string and sends it to each of the XML acquirer filters (`IXMLAcquirerFilter`) in turn, until it finds one that can handle the string. Each filter examines the string and determines whether it can return a stream given the string.

The order in which the filters are called is undefined. The XML import mechanism of InDesign includes a file-based, XML-acquirer filter (`kXMLAcquirerTextFilterServiceProviderBoss`), and other filters can be added by third parties.

In theory, it should be possible to write a database connectivity acquirer to get XML data directly out of a database (or content-management system) into InDesign. The URL string has to be something that can be recognized by the target acquirer (and, hopefully, no one else). The URL can even be an instruction that points to another file with more instructions (for example, a binding file). The only thing the acquirer must do is return an XML stream in the end; the acquirer can process instructions, get some XML data, process it further, and finally return manipulated XML data if desired by the acquirer.

The import source is specified through data stored in the `IImportXMLData` of the data object (`kImportXMLDataBoss`), which encapsulates an `IDFile`. To implement a custom acquirer, you can construct an `IDFile` with an arbitrary path, then you can implement the `IXMLAcquirerFilter` to interpret the path specified by the `IDFile` to take whatever action you want. For example, you might plan to make a query on a server-based repository of some kind, then open a stream to a local file that you copied onto the machine from the server. The query could be specified or parameterized by information in the string you got back from `IDFile::GetString`, once you get inside your acquirer code (see `IImportXMLData::GetImportSource`).

XML transformer

Suppose you want to transform the incoming XML data using something like the InDesign built-in XSLT engine or a transformation engine of your own. The XML transformer is an extension pattern you can implement if you want to transform the XML data being imported. You have the choice of transforming the data when it is still a stream or when it has been turned into a DOM.

Architecture

The XML transformer (`IXMLTransformer`) is an extension pattern for manipulating the incoming XML DOM. It is an opportunity for a third-party software developer to add elements, throw away others, and change the rest before the incoming XML data is matched against the existing XML template. An import transformer is a service provider characterized by the service interface `IXMLTransformer` and signature interface `IK2ServiceProvider`. The `ServiceID` must be of type `kXMLImporterTransformerService`; you can re-use the API implementation `kXMLImportTransformerSignalServiceImpl` (`IK2ServiceProvider`) for this.

You can transform the inbound XML data in one or both of two phases:

- The first phase is while there is a stream (`IPMStream`); you can apply an XSLT transform to the inbound stream (`IPMStream`) of XML-based data and turn it into another stream (`IPMStream`). See `IXMLTransformer::TransformStream`.

- The second phase occurs immediately after the DOM is created. During this phase, you can manually manipulate the DOM by inserting, removing, and changing elements. See `IXMLTransformer::TransformDOM` and `IIDXMLDOMDocument`.

XML-import matchmaker

Suppose you want to customize how the XML template is matched against the incoming XML data.

Architecture

This is a service that participates in XML import, to determine how the incoming XML is matched against the XML template (document) into which the XML is imported. An import matchmaker is a service provider characterized by the service interface `IXMLImportMatchMaker` and signature interface `IK2ServiceProvider`. The `ServiceID` must be of type `kXMLImportMatchMakerSignalService`; you can re-use the API implementation `kXMLImportMatchMakerSignalServiceImpl` (`IK2ServiceProvider`) for this.

An XML-import matchmaker service (`IXMLImportMatchMaker`) is responsible for determining the behavior of `InDesign` when importing XML-based data into an XML template that has structure which provides a partial match for the inbound XML data. For example, the features to throw away unmatched existing or inbound are implemented by matchmaker services. In theory, you can implement a custom XML-import matchmaker to specialize how matching against an XML template is performed.

Post-import responder

Suppose you want to perform an operation just after the XML data is imported and the logical structure created, like placing images based on information in the logical structure. Rather than having to write your own code to traverse the logical structure after import, there is an extension pattern that lets you be called when the logical structure of the document is being traversed, just after the DOM is completed.

Architecture

A post-import iterator (`IXMLPostImportIteration`) is a type of responder (`IResponder`) that is signalled during XML import. An post-import iterator is a service provider; specifically, it is a responder service, characterized by the service interface `IXMLPostImportIteration` and signature interface `IK2ServiceProvider`. The `ServiceID` must be of type `kXMLPostImportIterationService`; you can re-use the API implementation `kXMLPostImportIterationServiceProviderImpl` (`IK2ServiceProvider`) for this.

A lot of post-processing tasks are of the form “go through the logical structure. and if you see `<something>`, do `<whatever>`.” The iterator allows you to do this without writing the iteration itself, while taking as little penalty in performance as possible. Essentially, `InDesign` iterates over the structure one time and calls all the clients when every node is visited. If your task is simple and localized, this is a good choice, because all you would write is your specialized code. If you require, you can still write a full post-import processor of your own design and iterate over the whole structure yourself.

Features of the application like tag-to-style mapping are implemented using a post-import iterator.

Custom suite for the structure view

Suppose you want to allow some operations to be performed whenever there is a selection of one or more nodes in the logical structure. For example, suppose you want to let an end user verify the image references in the nodes selected in the structure view, perhaps through a context-sensitive menu item that is present or enabled only when nodes are selected.

Architecture

A custom suite for the structure view lets your code be called only when there is a node-selection target (IXMLNodeTarget) in the structure view. You can follow the pattern of IXMLStructureSuite (see the API reference documentation for that interface). To implement a custom suite for the structure view, follow these steps:

1. Add an appropriate implementation of your custom suite to kIntegratorSuiteBoss (ASB, abstract-selection boss class).
2. Add an appropriate implementation of your custom suite in to kXMLStructureSuiteBoss (CSB, concrete-selection boss class).

When you implement a custom suite, it gives you access to the nodes selected in the structure view through IXMLNodeTarget, through your add-in to the concrete-selection boss class kXMLStructureSuiteBoss.

SAX-content handler

Suppose you want to load a configuration from an XML file that contains information relevant only to your plug-ins and does not specify document content.

Architecture

A custom SAX-content handler (ISAXContentHandler) lets you take control when XML is being parsed by the XML-parser service early in the XML-import service. This extension pattern can be used to read configuration data from an XML file, for example.

A SAX-content handler is not (any longer) a service. Your main requirement is to register with the SAX services (ISAXServices) of the SAX parser (kXMLParserServiceBoss).

There are several instances of SAX-content handlers (e.g., parsing the tag list, itself an XML file). See ISAXContentHandler in the API reference documentation and note the boss classes that expose this interface.

See <http://sax.sourceforge.net> for information about the Simple API for XML (SAX).

SAX DOM serializer handler

Suppose you want to take control when XML is being imported and the XML DOM is being serialized into the document, and you want to handle the parsing of XML content for some custom elements, to let you create some document content.

Architecture

A custom, SAX DOM serializer handler lets you take control when the XML DOM is imported and is being serialized (written) into the document. If you implement this extension pattern, you can choose how particular elements in the DOM are written into the document; for example, you can create custom content. This is done for tables and Ruby annotations.

A SAX DOM serializer handler is a service provider characterized by the service interface `ISAXDOMSerializerHandler` and signature interface `IK2ServiceProvider`. The `ServiceID` must be of type `kXMLContentHandlerService`; you can re-use the API implementation `kXMLContentServiceProviderImpl` (implementation of `IK2ServiceProvider`) to do this.

Custom-tag service

Suppose you have custom content in the XML file that is created programmatically on export, and you do not want end users to be able to apply the tags based on the element names in your custom content.

Architecture

A tag service is given the opportunity to handle elements in an XML stream that has been opened for reading element names to be used as tags.

A tag service is a service provider that is closely related to the SAX-content-handler service. A tag service is characterized by the service interface `ISAXContentHandler` and interface `IK2ServiceProvider`, which should yield a `ServiceID` of `kXMLTagHandlerService`. You can re-use the API implementation `kXMLTagServiceProviderImpl` to achieve this.

For example, you may be using a tag service to filter out names of custom elements you do not want to appear in the tag list. In this case, you would provide a minimal implementation of `ISAXContentHandler` that registers your handler for the elements you want to filter out and claims to handle a subtree. You then do not need to do anything when sent the other `ISAXContentHandler` messages for elements for which you do not want tags to be created.

SAX-entity resolver

Suppose you want to customize how external entities are resolved by the InDesign SAX parser. An external entity needs to have an associated `PUBLIC` or `SYSTEM` identifier, which can be translated to something like a URI, which should point at the input source where the entity is defined:

“Attempts to retrieve the resource identified by a URI MAY be redirected at the parser level (for example, in an entity resolver)”

See the XML specification (<http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml>, section 4.2.2) for a definition of “external entity.”

Architecture

If you implement a custom entity resolver for external entities, it is your responsibility to create a stream (IPMStream) to the input source where the entity is defined, when passed a PUBLIC or SYSTEM identifier for the entity. An entity resolver is characterized by the ISAXEntityResolver interface.

You create an instance of the boss class you defined with your own implementation of ISAXEntityResolver when needed; for example, when implementing an XML acquirer (IXMLAcquirerFilter::CreateStreamAndResolver or CreateResolver).

XML-export handler

Suppose you want to control the output of some XML elements when they are being exported; for example, you want to alter the structure of XML file for some custom elements, to better fit your needs.

Architecture

A custom, XML-export handler lets you control the output. If you implement this extension pattern, you can choose how particular elements in the document are written into the XML file.

An XML-export handler is a service provider characterized by the service interface IXMLExportHandler and signature interface IK2ServiceProvider. The ServiceID must be of type kXMLExportHandlerSignalService; you can re-use the API implementation kXMLExportServiceImpl (implementation of IK2ServiceProvider).

To customize the output of an element or elements, override the CanHandleElement method to return true for the element, and override other methods to write custom content to the output.

Commands and notification

Backing store and notification of changes in logical structure

When the logical structure of a document changes, the commands that change the logical structure send notification about changes in the backing store. The subject for notifications about change in the logical structure is a UID-based object (instance of kTextStoryBoss).

You can acquire the backing store with IXMLUtils::GetBackingStore and query for its ISubject interface. Once you have the ISubject interface, you can attach an observer and listen for changes of interest in the usual pattern.

Command output can be stored in the item list of a command boss object on output, which is sent as the changedBy parameter in the IObserver::Update message. When implementing an

observer, you can cast the `changedBy` parameter of the `Update` method to an interface pointer of type `ICommand*`, as shown below:

```
ICommand* iCommand = (ICommand*) changedBy;
const UIDList itemList = iCommand->GetItemListReference();
```

When the command output shows the output is stored in an interface on the command (e.g. as an `XMLReference`), you might write code like this:

```
InterfacePtr<IXMLReferenceData> cmdData(iCommand, UseDefaultIID());
if(cmdData) {
    XMLReference xmlRef = cmdData->GetReference();
    ...
}
```

Entities supported

Standard entities supported by default by the XML subsystem are shown in [Table 131](#). If you need to support a wider set—like the entire ISO-LATIN 1 set of character entities (e.g., `&174;` for `™`, the trademark symbol)—you can use them with the applications if they are defined in the DTD. For example, Simplified DocBook (<http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/simple/sdocbook>) contains additional entity definitions within its DTD to support ISO-LATIN 1.

TABLE 131 Standard entities supported

Entity	Meaning	Description
<code>&amp;</code>	<code>&</code>	Ampersand
<code>&lt;</code>	<code><</code>	Less than
<code>&gt;</code>	<code>></code>	Greater than
<code>&apos;</code>	<code>'</code>	Apostrophe
<code>&quot;</code>	<code>"</code>	Quote
<code>&#xa;</code>	CR	Character replacement entity for carriage return
<code>&#xd;</code>	LF	Character replacement entity for line feed

Assets from XSLT example

EXAMPLE 40 Basic grammar for article-based publications

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!ELEMENT publication (article)+>
<!ELEMENT article (article-title, body)>
<!ELEMENT body (title | subhead | para)+>
<!ELEMENT article-title (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT title (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT subhead (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT emphasis (#PCDATA)>
<!ENTITY % pub.content "#PCDATA">
<!ELEMENT para (%pub.content; | emphasis)*>
```

EXAMPLE 41 Fragment of XSL Stylesheet to Convert NITF to Basic Pub

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet version="1.0" xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform">
<xsl:strip-space elements="*"></xsl:strip-space>
<xsl:output method="xml" omit-xml-declaration="yes"/>

<xsl:template match="text()"><xsl:value-of select="normalize-space(.)"/>
</xsl:template>
<xsl:template match="/">
<xsl:apply-templates></xsl:apply-templates>
</xsl:template>
<!-- include content from these elements -->
<xsl:template match="nitf|block|body.head|ul">
<xsl:apply-templates></xsl:apply-templates>
</xsl:template>
<!-- exclude content we are not interested in with this empty template -->
<xsl:template match="*"></xsl:template>
<xsl:template match="body">
<article><xsl:apply-templates></xsl:apply-templates></article>
</xsl:template>
<xsl:template match="body.content">
<body><xsl:apply-templates></xsl:apply-templates></body>
</xsl:template>
<xsl:template match="p">
<para><xsl:apply-templates></xsl:apply-templates></para>
<xsl:text>
</xsl:text></xsl:template>
<xsl:template match="headline">
<article-title><xsl:value-of select="h1"/></article-title><xsl:text>
</xsl:text>
</xsl:template>
<xsl:template match="h1">
<title><xsl:value-of select="."/></title><xsl:text>
</xsl:text>
</xsl:template>
<xsl:template match="nitf-table">
<para><emphasis>Table omitted on import</emphasis></para><xsl:text>
```

```
</xsl:text>
</xsl:template>
<xsl:template match="h12">
<subhead><xsl:apply-templates></xsl:apply-templates></subhead><xsl:text>
</xsl:text>
</xsl:template>
<xsl:template match="em">
<emphasis><xsl:apply-templates></xsl:apply-templates></emphasis>
<xsl:text> </xsl:text>
</xsl:template>
<xsl:template match="org">
<xsl:text> </xsl:text>
<emphasis><xsl:apply-templates></xsl:apply-templates></emphasis>
</xsl:template>
<xsl:template match="li">
<para><xsl:apply-templates></xsl:apply-templates></para>
<xsl:text>
</xsl:text></xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

Limitations of the InDesign XML architecture

The architecture is detailed and has a broad client API and many extension patterns, but there are known limitations you should be aware of, which could make implementing particular XML-based workflows tricky or impossible.

Specifically, *XML elements associated with graphics cannot have dependents*. The model for representing logical structure does not allow you to have a subtree of elements that depend on the element linked to a graphic item.

Scriptable Plug-in Fundamentals

This chapter describes how to extend your plug-in so that its features can be automated by a script, accessed in InDesign Server and participate in technologies based on IDML.

You can add scripting support to a plug-in for InDesign, InCopy, or InDesign Server. This chapter is the C++ programming counterpart to *Adobe InDesign CS4 Scripting Guide* and *Adobe InCopy CS4 Scripting Guide*, which document how to write scripts that automate InDesign and InCopy. Both the scripting guides and this chapter are recommended reading if you are adding scripting support to your plug-in. This chapter also describes the relationship between scripting and the InDesign Markup Language (IDML) file format. (For information about IDML's predecessor, INX, and how it relates to scripting, read *Making Your Plug-in Scriptable* from the InDesign CS3 Products SDK.)

Terminology

This following list contains terms used throughout this chapter. For other terms used in this chapter that are not in the list below, see the “Glossary.”

- *Apple Event Terminology extension (AETE)* — A resource that defines Apple Events and objects which your application understands, both for scripts and for applications that send you events. Developed by Apple.
- *Apple Events* — High-level, semantic messages designed to allow for collaboration between programs.
- *Boss DOM* — The model of a document as a set of boss objects; i.e. the boss objects found under `kDocBoss`, like `kDocWorkspaceBoss`, `kSpreadBoss`, `kPageBoss`, and `kSplineItemBoss`. See “[Scripting plug-in](#)” on page 570.
- *Component Object Model (COM)* — An object-oriented system developed by Microsoft for creating binary software components that can interact with each other. See *Scripting DOM* below.
- *Dictionary* — A set of definitions for words that are understood by a particular application under AppleScript. A dictionary tells you which objects are available in a particular application and which AppleScript commands you can use to control it. See *Scripting DOM* below.
- *Element* — *Script element*.
- *Enum* — Enumerates the list of potential values a property or parameter can have. See “[Scripting DOM](#)” on page 568 and “[Enum element](#)” on page 603.
- *Event* — A method call on a script object; e.g., `open` or `close`. See “[Event element](#)” on page 595.
- *ICML* — InCopy Markup Language. An ICML file is a snippet file containing an InCopy story.

- *IDML* — InDesign Markup Language. IDML is based on serializing objects defined in a scripting DOM tree to an XML-based format.
- *Non-UID-based script object*; A script object that represents a scriptable boss with no UID. See “[Scriptable boss classes](#)” on page 574 and “[Script-object inheritance](#)” on page 619.
- *Plural form* — A script object that can exist in a collection is said to have a plural form. For example, the plural form of document is documents, a collection of document script objects. See “[Scripting DOM](#)” on page 568 and “[Object element](#)” on page 593.
- *Preferences script object* — A script object that represents preferences. See “[Script providers](#)” on page 574 and “[Script-object inheritance](#)” on page 619.
- *Property* — An attribute of a script object; e.g. color or width. See “[Scripting DOM](#)” on page 568 and “[Property element](#)” on page 597.
- *Provider* — Associates a script provider with the script object(s), event(s), or property(ies) it handles. See “[Scripting DOM](#)” on page 568 and “[Provider element](#)” on page 606.
- *Script element* — A script object, property, event, or enum. The elements from which the scripting DOM is made. See “[Scripting DOM](#)” on page 568 and “[Scripting resources](#)” on page 591.
- *Script language* — The language in which you write your scripts. AppleScript, Visual Basic, and JavaScript are supported in InDesign scripting.
- *Script manager* — Manages a scripting DOM for a particular client of the scripting architecture. For example, each scripting language has a script manager, `kAppleScriptMgrBoss` for AppleScript, `kOLEAutomationMgrBoss` for Visual Basic, and `kJavaScriptMgrBoss` for JavaScript. See “[Script managers](#)” on page 573.
- *Script object* — An object in the scripting DOM. See “[Scripting DOM](#)” on page 568 and “[Object element](#)” on page 593).
- *Script provider* — A boss class that provides an implementation of `IScriptProvider`. This manipulates a scriptable boss in response to requests made on a script object in the scripting DOM. See “[Script providers](#)” on page 574.
- *Scriptable boss* — A boss class exposed in the scripting DOM. Scriptable boss classes have the signature interface `IScript`. Each scriptable boss has a corresponding script object. See “[Scriptable boss classes](#)” on page 574.
- *ScriptElementID* — an identifier defined in `kScriptInfoIDSpace`; e.g. `kDocumentObjectScriptElement`. This is akin to `kClassIDSpace`, where a boss `ClassID` is defined. See “[ScriptElementIDs](#)” on page 610.
- *ScriptID* — A four-character identifier for a script element; e.g. “docu.” See “[ScriptIDs](#)” on page 610.
- *Scripting DOM* — A model of a document as a set of script objects with properties and events that represent the end user’s view. This is a high-level abstraction of the *boss DOM*. See “[Scripting DOM](#)” on page 568 and “[Scripting plug-in](#)” on page 570.
- *Singleton* — A script object that cannot exist in a collection. See *plural form* above, “[Scripting DOM](#)” on page 568, and “[Script-object inheritance](#)” on page 619. The term “singleton” does not imply there is only one instance of the object (the common understanding of sin-

leton in C++ programming and design patterns). It is common to find several instances of a singleton in the scripting DOM; for example, the singleton `kTextFramePreferencesObjectScriptElement` can have many instances, default text frame preference on the application, default text frame preferences on the document, and text frame preferences on each text frame.

- *Surrogate* — A concept that distinguishes an ownership relationship from a referential relationship. A surrogate is a referential relationship between parent and child; no ownership is implied. See [“Surrogate” on page 609](#).
- *Type library* — Binary files (.tlb files) that include information about types and objects exposed by a COM application.
- *UID-based script object* — A script object that represents a scriptable boss with a UID. See [“Scriptable boss classes” on page 574](#) and [“Script-object inheritance” on page 619](#).

Overview

Scripting

Scripting allows users to exert virtually the same control of the application from a script as is available from the user interface. This functionality can be used for purposes as simple as automating repetitive tasks, or as involved as controlling the application from a database. Scripts can be written in AppleScript, Visual Basic, or JavaScript. For instructions on writing and running scripts, see *Adobe InDesign CS4 Scripting Guide*.

The extensibility of this scripting architecture allows you to provide scripting support for functions added by your own plug-in. The architecture provides a platform-independent and scripting-language-independent foundation on which you can build. It abstracts and provides implementations for the common elements of scripting. Your task is adding implementations for the functionality you are exposing.

Benefits of making a plug-in scriptable

For the plug-in developer, making a plug-in scriptable has several benefits:

- InDesign/InCopy users can automate the features added by your plug-in, by writing and executing scripts. The potential for new solutions using automation means added productivity for you and your customers.
- Clients of InDesign Server can use your plug-in’s features. A plug-in must be scriptable to interact with InDesign Server. See *Adobe InDesign CS4 Server Plug-in Techniques*.
- Persistent data added to a document by your plug-in via boss objects and add-in interfaces is expressed in the IDML file format and its derivative file formats and technologies.

Scripting and IDML

IDML is an XML-based format used to serialize and deserialize a scripting DOM. For an overview of IDML and guidance on working with it, see *IDML File Format Specification* and *Adobe InDesign Markup Language Cookbook*.

By exposing functionality through scripting, plug-ins can participate in technologies like Save Backwards. You should make your plug-in scriptable if your plug-in adds persistent data to a document or to the session workspace (kWorkspaceBoss) and your plug-in uses features that depend on IDML, such as the following:

- Save backwards.
- Asset libraries.
- Assignments.
- InCopy stories.
- Application preference import/export. Preferences on the session workspace can be round-tripped as INDMML To participate, a plug-in's preferences must be exposed on the application script object (kApplicationObjectScriptElement). For guidance, see the “Shared Application Resources” chapter. Also see “[Adding a new script object to make preferences scriptable](#)” on [page 577](#), ISnippetExport::ExportAppPrefs, and ISnippetImport::ImportFromStream.

Making a plug-in scriptable

These are the principal tasks involved in adding scripting support to your plug-in:

- *Design and implement script objects, properties and events.* The features of your plug-in dictate the script objects, events, and properties you need to add to the scripting DOM. Use “[How to make your plug-in scriptable](#)” on [page 575](#) as a guide.
- *Refactor your code to fit into the scripting architecture.* This chapter does not make suggestions about how to refactor your own plug-in code; however, a common refactoring task is de-coupling the user interface and model-related source code in your plug-ins. Your user interface is a client of your plug-in's model; the scripting architecture also is a client. The time required for refactoring depends on the complexity of your plug-in and how well separated your user interface is from your model.
- *Document scriptability.* Users writing scripts need documentation on the objects, properties and events your plug-in makes available. The *Adobe InDesign CS4 Scripting Guide* documents the scripting supported by the application for AppleScript, Visual Basic and JavaScript. You need to document the additions provided by your plug-in.
- *Test.* There are three categories of testing:

1. *Testing scriptability* — This involves writing scripts in AppleScript (Mac OS), Visual Basic (Windows), and/or JavaScript (cross-platform). For instructions on writing scripts, see *Adobe InDesign CS4 Scripting Guide*. To learn how to verify that your plug-in exposes the script objects you intend, see [“Reviewing scripting resources” on page 583](#).
2. *Testing scriptability for backwards compatibility* — The application supports the ability to execute scripts written for earlier versions of the product. For example, suppose you released a scriptable plug-in for InDesign CS1 and you are releasing a new version for InDesign CS4. You should test that scripts written for InDesign CS1 run successfully under InDesign CS4 when targeted correctly. See [“Running versioned scripts” on page 586](#).
3. *Testing IDML support in the IDML-based technologies your plug-in requires* — Basic IDML support can be tested by exporting and importing documents containing your plug-in’s data as an IDML file.

Tools for making a plug-in scriptable

To make your plug-in scriptable, you need the following tools:

- The current SDK plug-in development environment. For details, see *Adobe InDesign CS4 Porting Guide*.
- For AppleScript, you need the AppleScript Script Editor (Mac OS) or another tool used to write and run AppleScript scripts.
- For Visual Basic, you need Microsoft Visual Basic or Windows Script Host (Windows), the tools used to write and run Visual Basic scripts. Alternatively, you can use any COM development environment, including Microsoft Visual C++ and C#.
- For JavaScript, you need a text editor. JavaScript can be run using the Scripts panel in InDesign CS4 and InCopy CS4. To debug JavaScript you must install the ExtendScript Toolkit (included in the InDesign installer).

For more information on writing and debugging scripts, see *Adobe InDesign CS4 Scripting Guide*.

Scripting architecture

This section provides an architectural description of the framework that supports scripting. Instructions on making your plug-in scriptable are in [“How to make your plug-in scriptable” on page 575](#)).

Scripting DOM

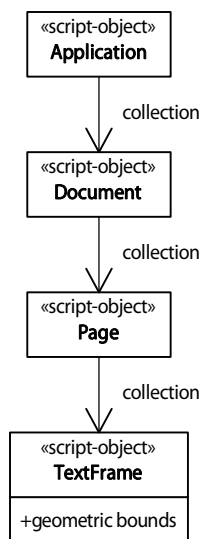
The scripting DOM is the end-user representation of an application and document as a set of script objects. Each script object has properties and/or events. The closest analogies for these concepts in an object-oriented programming language are class (script object), attribute (property), and method (event).

The scripting DOM describes a document as a tree structure of script objects, rooted at a document script object. For example, a document may have several children that are color script objects, several that are spreads, and so on. Besides having children, each script object can have a set of properties and events. A color has properties that describe its name, color model, and color value, among other things. At this level of abstraction, we have the objects that are part of the end-user's experience of an InDesign document (spreads, pages, frames, stories, etc.), but the representation is less closely tied to the boss objects you manipulate with the C++ API.

NOTE: For a description of the script objects provided by the application, see “[Scripting DOM reference](#)” on page 641. C++ programmers add new script objects, properties, and events to expose their plug-in's functionality.

Figure 259 shows a portion of the scripting DOM for an application that has a document containing a page with a text frame. The scripting DOM is a hierarchy of script objects with events and properties. Four script objects are shown in the figure: Application, Document, Page, and TextFrame. The script property that stores the bounds of a text frame object is shown.

FIGURE 259 Scripting DOM



Scripts get or set properties and execute events. To do this, a script must find the right object and then perform an operation. [Example 42](#) shows a script written in JavaScript that creates an instance of the scripting DOM shown in [Figure 259](#) and sets a property of the text frame.

EXAMPLE 42 JavaScript that creates a document containing a text frame

```
app.documents.add(); // event creates a document
app.documents[0].pages[0].textFrames.add(); //event creates text frame
app.documents[0].pages[0].textFrames[0].geometricBounds = ["0p0", "0p0", "36p0",
"36p0"]; // sets a property
```

A script object is said to be a child of the script object on which it is exposed. The script object that exposes another script object is said to be that object's parent. For example, in [Figure 259](#) the document script object is a child of the application, and the application script object is the parent of the document.

A script object that can exist in a collection is said to have a plural form. The document, page, and text frame script objects in [Figure 259](#) have a plural form. A script object that has a plural form must support the special script events used to manage collections (see [“Special events” on page 596](#)).

A script objects that does not have a plural form often is called a singleton. Examples are the application script object in [Figure 259](#) and script objects that expose preferences.

Each script object, event, and property has a name, description, ScriptID, and ScriptElementID defined, as described in [“Scripting resources” on page 591](#). The script objects provided by InDesign CS4 are identified in [Table 149](#), later in this chapter.

Each script object, event, and property has an associated script provider (see [“Script providers” on page 574](#)) that handles it.

Versioning the scripting DOM

The scripting DOM covers the entire boss DOM. As the boss DOM changes, the scripting DOM evolves in response. The scripting DOM is versioned to maintain compatibility with past and future versions.

Beginning in InDesign CS2, product releases must maintain at least one version of backward compatibility of the scripting DOM. This ensures that clients of the scripting DOM (e.g., scripts, IDML, and INX) work seamlessly in new versions of the product.

Clients of the scripting DOM can specify which version of the scripting DOM should be used by the application to interpret requests (see `RequestContext` in the API documentation). Requests involving scripting elements (script objects, properties, and events) that are added in a particular product version (for example, InDesign CS4) work only if the client specifies that version (or later) of the scripting DOM. Similarly, objects, properties, and events removed from the scripting DOM in InDesign CS4 will not work if the client specifies the InDesign CS4 version of the scripting DOM; however, they must still work if the client specifies the InDesign CS3 version of the scripting DOM.

Compatibility must be maintained not just for the elements in the scripting DOM, but for the functionality they expose. This means any underlying function that changes in InDesign CS4 must still be exposed as it was in InDesign CS3 for clients of the scripting DOM. In some cases, this requirement may constrain the ability to significantly re-architect the code. How to handle exceptions to this requirement, such as for functionality that no longer exists, is determined on a case-by-case basis. At the very least, script providers must degrade gracefully by implement-

ing support as a no-op. For details of working with versioning, see “Versioning of scripting resources” on page 621.

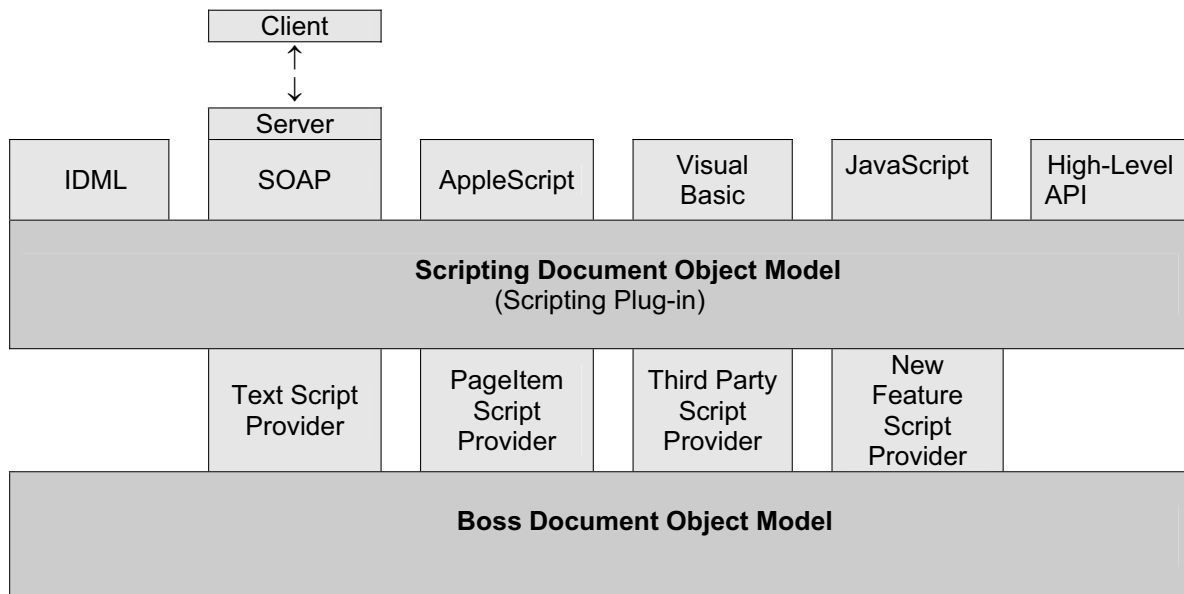
Special considerations and rules regarding versioning and IDML are in “Maintaining IDML forward and backward compatibility” on page 589.

Scripting plug-in

The core architecture is implemented in the scripting plug-in, which manages the scripting DOM. The scripting DOM is described by plug-ins using ODFRC resources (see “Scripting resources” on page 591). These resources define script objects, their properties, events, and the script provider (IScriptProvider) that handles them. The architecture is extensible. Plug-ins can add new script objects or add new properties and events to existing script objects by defining ODFRC resources and implementing a script provider.

See Figure 260. The scripting DOM represents a document as a set of script objects with properties and events. The boss DOM represents a document as a set of boss objects and interfaces. Plug-ins expose their boss DOM data as objects and properties in the scripting DOM, by defining ODFRez resources. Plug-ins expose other functionality as scripting events in a similar way. Plug-ins implement a script provider to manipulate data in the boss DOM when their script objects, properties, and events are used. The scripting plug-in manages the scripting DOM. When script managers access the scripting DOM, the scripting plug-in maps script object properties and events to their associated script provider.

FIGURE 260 Scripting architecture



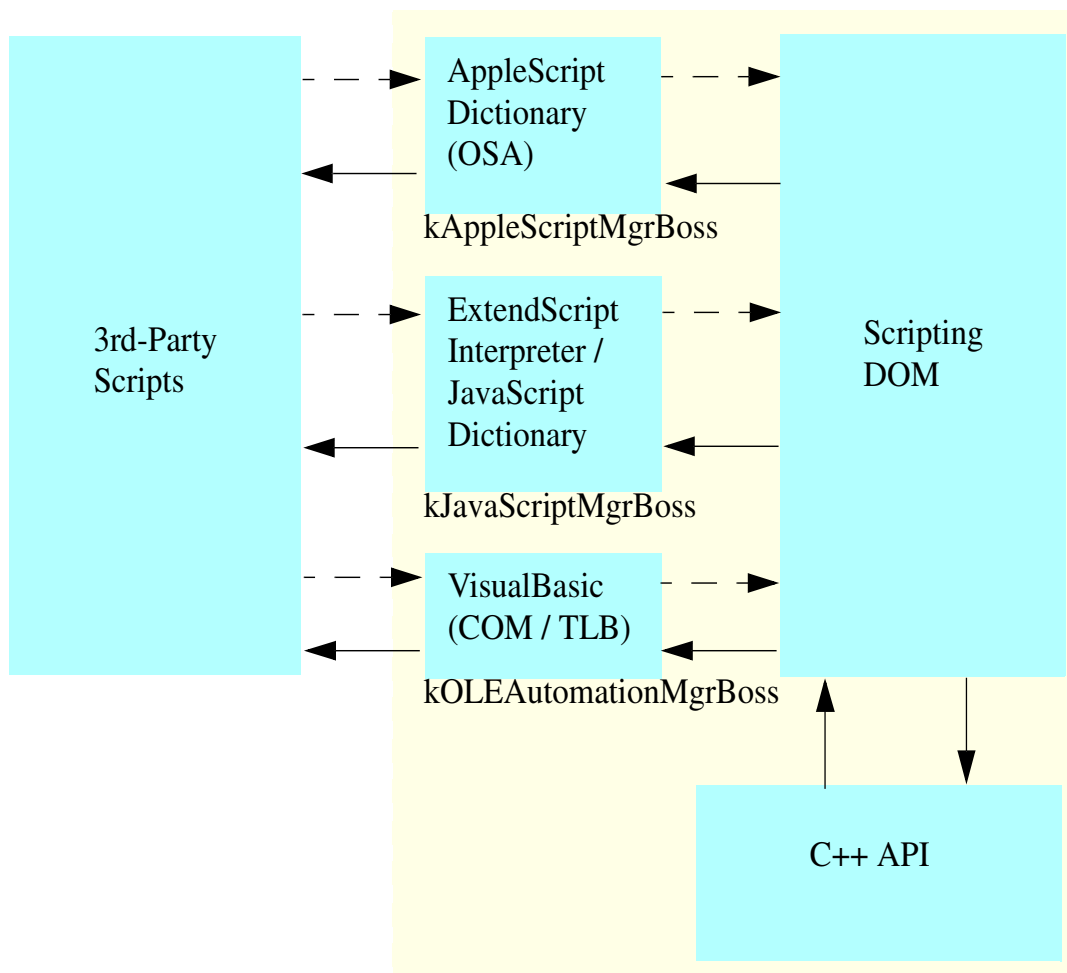
Clients of the Scripting DOM are called script managers (see the `IScriptManager` interface in the API documentation). Scripting language support for AppleScript, Visual Basic, and JavaScript is provided by optional plug-ins that implement a script manager. The scripting DOM was conceived to make the scripting architecture easier to use and more extensible; in addition, it has enabled other technologies to be built. The IDML file format is founded on the scripting DOM.

NOTE: The high-level API is based on the scripting DOM provided by Adobe plug-ins. It is not extensible by third parties.

Script interaction with the scripting DOM

Scripts interact with their associated script manager, which interacts with the scripting DOM, which interacts with the application's C++ API. The interaction varies somewhat depending on the scripting language, as shown in [Figure 261](#). AppleScript and Visual Basic communicate with the application through their respective inter-application communication processes, AppleEvents and COM/OLE automation.

FIGURE 261 Interaction between scripts and the application



Scripting process overview

1. Once the application launches, scripting system architecture support is available to the user through scripts; however, nothing is activated until a scripting request is received.
 2. When a scripting request is received, the *script manager* determines what to do with it. After doing set-up, checks, and so on, the script manager populates the *IScriptEventData* interface with the data that was passed in.
 3. The script manager invokes the *IScriptRequestHandler*, which invokes the appropriate *script provider* (*IScriptProvider*).
- If a *property* comes in, the script provider gets or sets the property, based on the parameters passed in through the *IScriptEventData* interface. For a get operation, the script provider simply returns the requested data from the model. For a set operation, the script provider

extracts the input and either executes its code successfully (modifying the model) or returns an error.

- *Events* work similarly. Some events do not require any data, but most events take a set of parameters. The script provider uses the `IScriptEventData` interface to get that input, executes any necessary model modification via commands, and returns data or an error code.
4. Control returns to the script manager, which does clean-up and conversion. The script manager takes the data in the `IScriptEventData` interface and converts it back to something the scripting language understands.
 5. The script manager returns, and control is passed back to the script.

Script managers

The application supplies script managers that handle the interaction the scripting client and your plug-in. See [Table 132](#).

TABLE 132 Major Script Manager Boss Classes

Script Manager ClassID	Used with
kAppleScriptMgrBoss	AppleScript
kINXScriptManagerBoss	Base class for INX and IDML script - manager bosses
kJavaScriptMgrBoss	JavaScript
kOLEAutomationMgrBoss	Visual Basic
kINXTraditionalImportScriptManagerBoss	INX
kINXTraditionalExportScriptManagerBoss	INX
kINXExpandedImportScriptManagerBoss	IDML
kINXExpandedExportScriptManagerBoss	IDML

Scriptable plug-ins

This section describes the parts that enable a plug-in to receive a scripting request from a script manager and report data back to the script manager. As with other client interfaces you would give a plug-in, scripting is intended to query and change the boss DOM. To accomplish this, we must be able to identify objects in the boss DOM via `IScript` and get and/or set values.

For instructions on making your plug-in scriptable, see [“How to make your plug-in scriptable” on page 575](#).

Scripting resources

Every scriptable plug-in needs to supply a `VersionedScriptElementInfo` ODFRez resource that specifies the plug-in's additions to the scripting DOM in the form of script objects, properties, events, and the providers that handle these additions. In this resource, you identify details about the script objects and their relationships with other script objects, and give them IDs so your additions to the scripting DOM can be identified.

See [“Scripting resources”](#) on page 591.

Script providers

`IScriptProvider` is the signature interface of a script-provider boss class. This interface allows the script manager to access a script object, get and set its properties, and execute its events. Script providers know how to handle script objects, properties, and events in an abstract sense. They map a request from the scripting DOM onto the boss DOM. For example, in response to being called to get a property, a script provider might call an accessor method on an interface on a scriptable boss. To set a property, it might process a command that changes a scriptable boss.

When you implement a script provider boss, you normally extend `kBaseScriptProviderBoss`. To see its interfaces, see the API documentation.

Partial implementations are as follows:

- `CScriptProvider` — Subclass this to add properties or events to existing objects in the Scripting DOM.
- `PrefsScriptProvider` — Subclass this to add a singleton script object and its properties to the scripting DOM
- `RepresentScriptProvider` — Subclass this to expose a new script object to the scripting DOM.

Scriptable boss classes

`IScript` is the signature interface of a scriptable boss; i.e. a boss class exposed in the scripting DOM. A scriptable boss object is the ultimate target of an event or property request made on a script object. The need to implement an `IScript` interface depends on whether you want to add function to an existing script object or are implementing a new script object of your own. To add function to an existing script object, such as the document, you do not implement the `IScript` interface. To create a new script object, you must define a boss class that implements the `IScript` interface, which maps your scriptable boss to its associated script object.

Partial implementations are as follows:

- `CScript` — Subclass this to expose a UID-based script object.
- `CProxyScript` — Subclass this to expose a non-UID based script object.

NOTE: If you are adding a property or event to an object that already exists in the scripting DOM, you do not need to implement `IScript`.

How to make your plug-in scriptable

Prerequisites

1. Examine the scripting samples provided by the SDK.
2. Determine how to represent your plug-in's features in the scripting DOM:
 - Examine the scripting DOM and choose the objects your plug-in's features should be exposed on. See the scripting references in `<SDK>/docs/references`, or create your own reference file as explained in [“Scripting DOM reference” on page 641](#).
 - Decide how to expose your plug-in's data and functionality in the form of objects, properties, and events. Data is exposed by adding new script objects (see [“Object element” on page 593](#)) that encapsulate properties or adding properties to existing script objects (see [“Property element” on page 597](#)). Function is exposed by adding events to new or existing script objects (see [“Event element” on page 595](#)).
3. Refactor your code so it is easy to call from a script provider:
 - Your plug-in will have its own model implemented by some combination of data interfaces and boss objects, together with commands that change this model.
 - We recommend you encapsulate the model manipulation code in a helper class, so this code can be easily shared between your user interface and script provider.
 - A facade interface added into `kUtilsBoss` is a good implementation solution. Another possibility is a regular C++ class.
 - If you already refactored your plug-in for the selection architecture, you may be able to use your selection suite interface from your script provider and your user interface code. The recommended approach, however, is to factor code so your CSB suite and script provider delegate to a facade that contains the shared code.
4. Examine the procedures in this section, and identify those that are relevant to your needs. Making your plug-in scriptable always includes the following steps, at a minimum:
 - Add `VersionedScriptElementInfo` statement to your plug-in's `.fr` file, to add script objects, properties, events, and providers to the scripting DOM. See [“Scripting resources” on page 591](#).
 - Add a script provider (`IScriptProvider`) to handle your plug-in's scripting elements.
 - Add an error string service (see `CErrorStringService`), so your script provider can return meaningful `ErrorCode` values.
 - Additional required steps depend on your plug-in's features.

Defining IDs

You must define IDs that identify your plug-in's additions to the Scripting DOM. See [“ScriptElementIDs, ScriptIDs, names, descriptions, and GUIDs”](#) on page 610.

Adding a new property to an existing script object

1. Define a ScriptID/Name pair and a ScriptElementID for the new property.
2. Create VersionedScriptElementInfo resource statement and do the following:
 - Add a Property statement that defines the property.
 - Add a Provider statement to identify the existing script object(s) on which the property should be exposed and define the script provider that will handle the property.
3. Create a script-provider boss that subclasses kBaseScriptProviderBoss.
4. Implement IScriptProvider by subclassing and completing CScriptProvider.

TABLE 133 Related sample code

Sample	Scripting DOM	Notes
BasicPersistInterface	Adds a string property to script objects kPageItemObjectScriptElement and kGraphicObjectScriptElement in the scripting DOM.	Exposes data stored in an add-in data interface on kDrawablePageItemBoss.
BasicTextAdornment	Adds a boolean property to script objects kTextStyleRangeObjectScriptElement and kTextObjectScriptElement in the scripting DOM.	Exposes data stored in a custom text attribute.

Adding a new event to an existing script object

1. Define a ScriptID/Name pair and a ScriptElementID for the new event.
2. Create VersionedScriptElementInfo resource statement and do the following:
 - Add an Event statement to define the event.
 - Add a Provider statement to identify the existing script object(s) on which the event should be exposed and define the script provider that will handle the event.
3. Create a script-provider boss that subclasses kBaseScriptProviderBoss.
4. Implement IScriptProvider by subclassing and completing CScriptProvider.

TABLE 134 Related sample code

Sample	Scripting DOM	Notes
CandleChart	Adds events to script object <code>kDocumentObjectScriptElement</code> in the scripting DOM.	Exposes processes that manage this sample's function.
SnippetRunner	Adds events and properties to script object <code>kApplicationObjectScriptElement</code> in the scripting DOM.	Exposes events and properties that manage code snippets and the framework that hosts them.

Adding a new script object to make preferences scriptable

A preference object contains preference settings and exists in the scripting DOM as a singleton property. Normally, preferences reside in the `kApplicationObjectScriptElement` and `kDocumentObjectScriptElement` objects in the scripting DOM. In the boss DOM, these generally correspond to preference data interfaces on `kWorkspaceBoss` and `kDocWorkspaceBoss`, respectively.

Follow these steps:

1. Define a `ScriptID/Name` pair and a `ScriptElementID` for the preferences script object. Define a `ScriptID/Name` pair and a `ScriptElementID` for the property, that will allow the new preference object to be accessed on its parent.
2. Create a `VersionedScriptElementInfo` resource and define the preferences script object, as follows:
 - Add an `Object` statement to encapsulate the preferences in a script object. Normally, the script object you add is based on `kPreferencesObjectScriptElement`.
 - Add a `Property` statement for each exposed preference in the script object.
 - Add a `Property` statement to allow the `Object` to be accessed on its parent.
 - Add a `Provider` statement to define the script provider that handles these preferences, the parent object(s) in the scripting DOM (`kApplicationObjectScriptElement` for preferences on `kWorkspaceBoss`, and `kDocumentObjectScriptElement` for preferences on `kDocWorkspaceBoss`), the object itself, and its properties.
3. You do not have to define a new boss or provide an `IScript` implementation to make your preferences scriptable. Normally, you can re-use `kBasePrefsScriptObjectBoss`.

4. Create a script provider boss that subclasses `kBaseScriptProviderBoss`, as follows:

```

Class
{
    kYourPrefsScriptProviderBoss,
    kBaseScriptProviderBoss,
    {
        IID_ISCRIPTPROVIDER, kYourPrefsScriptProviderImpl,
    }
}
    
```

5. Implement `IScriptProvider` by subclassing and completing `PrefsScriptProvider`. In the constructor, call `PrefsScriptProvider::DefinePreference` (for details, see the API documentation). This connects your preferences script object to the scriptable boss that handles preferences.

TABLE 135 Preference-related sample code

Sample	Scripting DOM	Notes
BasicPersistInterface	Adds script object <code>kBPiPrefObjectScriptElement</code> to <code>kApplicationObjectScriptElement</code> and <code>kDocumentObjectScriptElement</code> in the scripting DOM.	Exposes preferences stored in an add-in interface on <code>kWorkspaceBoss</code> and <code>kDocWorkspaceBoss</code> .
PrintSelection	Adds script object <code>kPrintSelectionObjectScriptElement</code> to <code>kDocumentObjectScriptElement</code> in the scripting DOM.	Exposes data stored in an add-in interface on <code>kDocBoss</code> .
SnippetRunner	Adds script object <code>kSnipRunObjectScriptElement</code> to <code>kApplicationObjectScriptElement</code> in the scripting DOM.	Exposes the Snippet Runner object as a singleton object under <code>kApplicationObjectScriptElement</code> , which does not have any counterpart interface on any workspace boss.

Adding a new singleton script object

If the object you are exposing is a singleton, follow the procedure for preferences (see [“Adding a new script object to make preferences scriptable” on page 577](#) and [Example 55](#)).

Adding a new script object to make a boss with a UID scriptable

1. Define the required `ScriptID/Name` pairs and `ScriptElementIDs`.
2. Create `VersionedScriptElementInfo` resources for the script object, events, properties, and provider (see [“Scripting resources” on page 591](#)). Normally, the script objects you add are based on `kUniqueIDBasedObjectScriptElement` and must be accessible from another script object in the scripting DOM.

3. Add an IScript implementation to the object's boss, as shown below:

```

Class
{
    kYourBoss,
    kInvalidClass,
    {
        ... //Other interfaces on your boss
        IID_ISCRIPT, kYourScriptImpl,
    }
}

```

4. Implement IScript by subclassing and completing CScript.
5. Create a script-provider boss that subclasses kBaseScriptProviderBoss, as shown below:

```

Class
{
    kYourScriptProviderBoss,
    kBaseScriptProviderBoss,
    {
        IID_ISCRIPTPROVIDER, kYourScriptProviderImpl,
    }
}

```

6. Implement IScriptProvider by subclassing and completing RepresentScriptProvider.

TABLE 136 Related sample code

Sample	Scripting DOM	Notes
PersistentList	Adds script object kPstLstDataObjectScriptElement to kGraphicObjectScriptElement, kPageItemObjectScriptElement and other page item related objects in the scripting DOM. (For the complete list, see the Provider statement in PstLst.fr).	Exposes the UID-based object kPstLstDataBoss.

Adding a new script object to make a boss with no UID scriptable

1. Define the required ScriptID/Name pairs and ScriptElementIDs.
2. Create VersionedScriptElementInfo resources for the object, events, properties, and provider. Normally, the script objects you add are based on kNonUniqueIDBasedObjectScriptElement and must be accessible from another script object in the scripting DOM.
3. Make your scriptable boss a subclass of kBaseProxyScriptObjectBoss, as shown below. (If you cannot do this, proceed as in [“Adding a new script object to make a C++ object with no boss scriptable” on page 580.](#))

```
Class
{
    kYourBoss,
    kBaseProxyScriptObjectBoss,
    {
        ... //Other interfaces on your boss
        IID_ISCRIPT, kYourScriptImpl,
    }
}
```

4. Implement IScript by subclassing and completing CProxyScript.
5. Create a script-provider boss that subclasses kBaseScriptProviderBoss, as shown below:

```
Class
{
    kYourScriptProviderBoss,
    kBaseScriptProviderBoss,
    {
        IID_ISCRIPTPROVIDER, kYourScriptProviderImpl,
    }
}
```

6. Implement IScriptProvider by subclassing and completing RepresentScriptProvider.
7. By default, proxy objects are specified by index. To specify by another property (e.g., name), override CProxyScript::GetScriptObject and substitute code to build your custom script object.

For sample code, see the SnippetRunner sample. For related APIs, see IScript, IScriptProvider, and CProxyScript.

Adding a new script object to make a C++ object with no boss scriptable

1. Define the required ScriptID/Name pairs and ScriptElementIDs.
2. Create VersionedScriptElementInfo resources for the object, events, properties, and provider. Normally, the script objects you add are based on kNonIDBasedObjectScriptElement and must be accessible from another script object in the Scripting DOM
3. Create a script object boss that subclasses kBaseProxyScriptObjectBoss, as shown below:

```
Class
{
    kYourScriptObjectBoss,
    kBaseProxyScriptObjectBoss,
    {
        IID_ISCRIPT, kYourScriptImpl,
    }
}
```

4. Implement IScript by subclassing and completing CProxyScript.

5. Create a script-provider boss that subclasses `kBaseScriptProviderBoss`, as shown below:

```

Class
{
    kYourScriptProviderBoss,
    kBaseScriptProviderBoss,
    {
        IID_ISCRIPTPROVIDER, kYourScriptProviderImpl,
    }
}

```

6. Implement `IScriptProvider` by subclassing and completing `RepresentScriptProvider`.
7. In your implementation of `RepresentScriptProvider::AppendNthObject`, call `IScriptUtils::CreateProxyScriptObject` to create your scriptable boss, `kYourScriptObjectBoss`.
8. By default, proxy objects are specified by index. To specify by another property (e.g., name), follow these steps:
 - Aggregate an appropriate data interface to your proxy script object's boss (e.g., `IID_ISTRINGDATA`).
 - In your implementation of `RepresentScriptProvider`, set the specifier data after the call to `IScriptUtils::CreateProxyScriptObject`.
 - In your implementation of `IScript`, override `IScript::GetScriptObject` and substitute code to build your custom script object.

TABLE 137 Related sample code

Sample	Scripting DOM	Notes
SnippetRunner	Adds script object <code>kSnpRunnableObjectScriptElement</code> to represent a code snippet that can be run by <code>SnippetRunner</code> .	Code snippets are C++ objects that have no associated boss.

Adding a new script object to make a panel scriptable

1. Define the required `ScriptID/Name` pairs and `ScriptElementIDs`.
2. Create `VersionedScriptElementInfo` resources for the object, events, properties, and provider. Normally, the script objects you add are based on `kNonIDBasedObjectScriptElement` and must be accessible from another script object in the scripting DOM.
3. In the `KitList` resource for the panel, use the panel object's own `ScriptID` rather than the default ID.
4. If your panel is created via an API call to `IPanelMgr::RegisterPanel`, pass the panel object's own `ScriptID` to that method (instead of the default value for the parameter).
5. Specific panels are singleton objects (even if there can be multiple instances of a particular panel type), so follow the procedure in [“Adding a new singleton script object” on page 578](#) for defining script elements. Unlike other singleton objects, do not expose a `ParentProperty` for access; access is by name via the application's `Panels` collection.

6. Create a script-provider boss that subclasses `kBaseScriptProviderBoss`. Implement support for the new panel object in a script provider that subclasses `PrefsScriptProvider`. Override `QueryPrefsScript` to call `IPalettePanelScriptUtils::CreatePanelScriptObject`, and pass the `ScriptID` of the new panel object. See the following example.

```

Class
{
    kYourScriptProviderBoss,
    kBaseScriptProviderBoss,
    {
        IID_ISCRIPTPROVIDER, kYourScriptProviderImpl,
    }
}

```

For related APIs, see `IPalettePanelScriptUtils`, `IPanelMgr`, and `IScriptProvider`.

Adding an error-string service

Your plug-in's script provider (`IScriptProvider`) should return a meaningful `ErrorCode`. If it returns `kFailure`, you will get an assert. To provide error information that is useful to clients, you must add an error-string service to your plug-in. Follow these steps:

1. Define a `ClassID` and `ImplementationID` in your plug-in's `ID.h` file for your error-string service.
2. Define an error-string service boss in your plug-in's `.fr` file.
3. Define a `UserErrorTable` resource in your plug-in's `.fr` file.
4. Define string keys and translations in your plug-in's `StringTable` resources.
5. Implement `IErrorStringService` by subclassing and completing `CErrorStringService`. See `BasicPersistInterface` for sample code and `IErrorStringService` for related APIs.

Handling multiple concurrent requests

The scripting architecture can handle multiple requests concurrently in two ways: across multiple target objects and across multiple properties.

Handling multiple objects concurrently

Many methods of `IScriptRequestHandler`, like `DoHandleEvent`, `DoHandleCollectionEvent`, `DoSetProperty`, and `DoGetProperty`, can take either one `IScript*` or a `const ScriptList&`. The request handler segregates the target objects according to which script provider handles them, then hands each script provider its own list of targets (by calling `IScriptProvider::HandleEventOnObjects` or `IScriptProvider::AccessPropertyOnObjects`).

The default implementations of these methods (in `CScriptProvider`) simply iterate through the individual objects and call `HandleEvent` or `AccessProperty` for each one separately. A script provider, however, may override the overloaded version of `CScriptProvider::HandleEventOnObjects` or `CScriptProvider::AccessPropertyOnObjects` that takes a `const ScriptList&`, to handle the request on all objects at once (e.g., by executing a single command on all targets).

This approach is most useful for script providers that handle events for which there is a command that takes (or may take) multiple objects.

Handling multiple properties concurrently

Use `IScriptRequestHandler::SetProperties` and `IScriptRequestHandler::GetProperties` to set and get multiple properties at a time. The request handler segregates the properties according to which script provider handles them, then hands each script provider its own list of properties (by calling `IScriptProvider::AccessProperties`).

The default implementation of `AccessProperties` (in `CScriptProvider`) simply iterates through the individual properties and calls `AccessProperty` to set each one separately. If you have a property-heavy script provider, however, you can override this behavior as follows:

1. Override `CScriptProvider::PreAccessProperty`, to create a command (or other cache) on set or acquire access to all the properties on get.
2. In the implementation of `AccessProperty`, cache the property information.
3. Override `CScriptProvider::PostAccessProperty` to execute the command (i.e., set all the properties at once), or release access to the cache.

The prerequisite for the above approach is a script provider that uses the same command to set all or most of the properties it supports, since the time to execute the command repeatedly is most expensive. Preferences script providers are a good candidate, since a variety of preferences often are grouped together in one command.

For related APIs, see `IScriptRequestHandler` and `IScriptProvider`.

Reviewing scripting resources

Windows: COM Type library location

The COM type library is stored under the user's defaults folder for the application on Windows; for example:

```
C:\Documents and Settings\<username>\Local Settings\Application Data\Adobe\  
<InDesign or InCopy or InDesign Server>\Version 6.0\en_US\Caches\  
Scripting Support\6.0\
```

See the “Resources for Visual Basic.tlb” file.

This folder also contains a “Scripting SavedData” file that holds a list of scriptable plug-ins, together with information that allows the application to detect changes that require the COM type library to be updated. When the application launches, it creates the COM type library (Windows only) if the files mentioned above do not exist or the “Scripting SavedData” file indicates these files need to be regenerated.

Another copy of the COM type library is stored under the “All Users” defaults folder on Windows; for example:

```
C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Adobe\  
<InDesign or InCopy or  
InDesign Server>\Version 6.0\Scripting Support\6.0\
```

See the “Resources for Visual Basic.tlb” file. This is set up by the product installer and regenerated only if the application launches and finds the file does not exist. It is not regenerated when the set of scriptable plug-ins changes.

Mac OS: AppleScript dictionary location

The AppleScript dictionary is stored under the user’s defaults folder for the application on the Mac; for example:

```
/Users/<username>/Library/Caches/Adobe <InDesign or InCopy or InDesign  
Server>/Version 6.0/en_US/Scripting Support/6.0/
```

See the “Resources for AppleScript.aete” file.

This folder also contains a “Scripting SavedData” file that holds a list of scriptable plug-ins, together with information that allows the application to detect changes that require the dictionary to be updated. When the application launches, it creates the AppleScript dictionary (Mac OS only), if the files mentioned above do not exist or the “Scripting SavedData” file indicates these files need to be regenerated.

Reviewing the scripting DOM

To verify that your new script elements were incorporated into the scripting DOM, follow these steps:

1. Create a dump of the scripting DOM, as described in [“Dumping the scripting DOM” on page 642](#).
2. Open the dump in a text editor, and search for your script elements by either ScriptID or ScriptElementID.
3. Verify that each of your properties, events, and enums is in the dump, and that they were added to the script objects you expected.

Reviewing the AppleScript dictionary

To verify that your new script objects were incorporated into the AppleScript dictionary, follow these steps:

1. Launch the AppleScript Script Editor on your system.
2. Choose File > Open Dictionary. . .
3. Select the application you want (for example, Adobe InDesign CS4), and browse the dictionary.

Reviewing the COM type library

To verify that your new script objects were incorporated into the COM type library, choose one of the following approaches:

Using Microsoft Visual Studio:

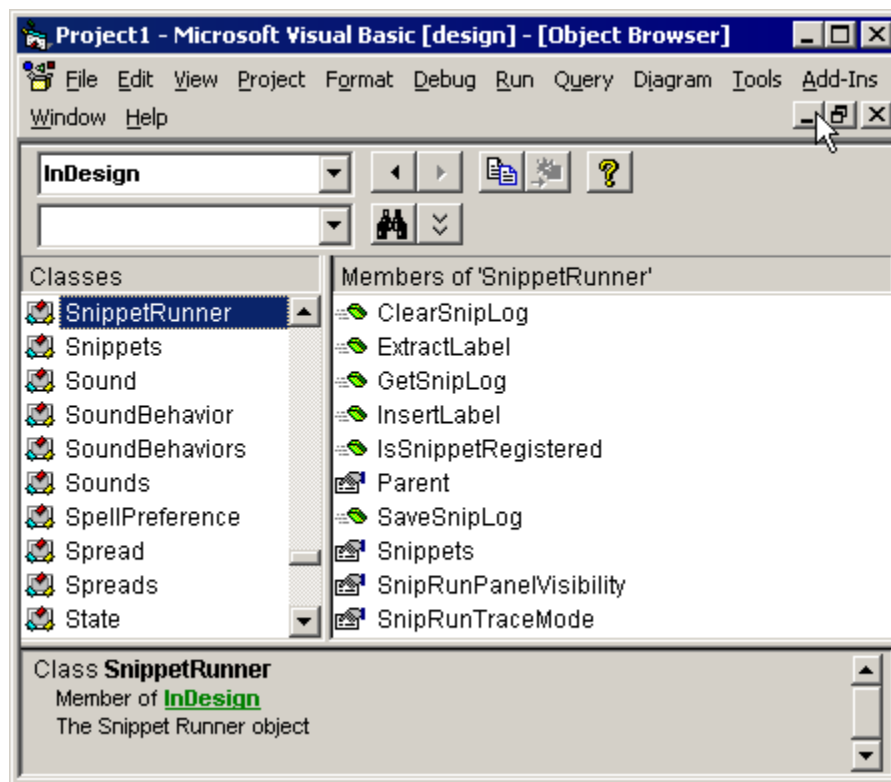
1. Launch Visual C++.
2. Select Tools > OLE/COM Object Viewer.

3. Select File > View TypeLib...
4. Open “Resources for Visual Basic.tlb” (see “[Windows: COM Type library location](#)” on page 583) and browse the type library.

Using Microsoft Visual Basic:

1. Launch Visual Basic and create a new project.
2. Select Project > References...
3. From the Available References list, check “Adobe InDesign CS4 Type Library” or “Adobe InCopy CS4 Type Library” and click OK. If it does not appear in the list, click Browse... and find “Resources for Visual Basic.tlb” (see “[Windows: COM Type library location](#)” on page 583). Click OK on the References dialog.
4. Select View > Object Browser (or hit the F2 key). Pick “InDesign” or “InCopy” from the first drop-down list, to view the type library. See [Figure 262](#).

FIGURE 262 Reviewing the COM type library from Visual Basic



Using Microsoft Word or Excel’s Macro Editor:

1. Launch Microsoft Word or Excel.
2. Select Tools > Macro > Visual Basic Editor.

3. Select Tools > References.
4. From the Available References list, check “Adobe InDesign CS4 Type Library” or “Adobe InCopy CS4 Type Library” and click OK. If it does not appear in the list, click Browse and find “Resources for Visual Basic.tlb” (see [“Windows: COM Type library location” on page 583](#)).
5. Select View > Object Browser (or hit the F2 key). Pick “InDesign” or “InCopy” from the first drop-down list, to view the type library.

Running versioned scripts

Three steps must be properly versioned to run an older script in a newer version of the product:

1. *Targeting* — Scripts must be targeted to the version application in which they are being run (i.e., the current version). The mechanics of targeting are language specific.
2. *Compilation* — This involves mapping the names in the script to the underlying identifiers, which are what the application understands. The mechanics of compilation are language specific.
3. *Interpretation* — This involves matching the identifiers to the appropriate request handler within the application. The current version of the application correctly interprets a script written to an earlier version of the scripting DOM, if you run it from a folder in the Scripts panel named, for example, “Version 3.0 Scripts,” or explicitly set the application's script preferences to the old DOM within the script.

Targeting

Targeting for AppleScript applications is done using the “tell” statement, as in [Example 43](#). You do not need a tell statement if you run the script from the Scripts panel, because there is an implicit tell statement for the application launching the script.

EXAMPLE 43 Targeting for AppleScript applications

```
tell application "Adobe InDesign CS4" --target CS4
```

Targeting for Visual Basic applications and VBScripts is done using the “CreateObject” method, as in [Example 44](#):

EXAMPLE 44 Targeting for Visual Basic applications

```
Set myApp = CreateObject("InDesign.Application.CS4") 'Target CS4  
Set myApp = CreateObject("InDesign.Application") 'Target the last version of  
InDesign that was launched
```

Targeting for JavaScripts is implicit when launched using the Scripts panel. If launched from elsewhere, use the “target” directive, as in [Example 45](#):

EXAMPLE 45 Targeting for JavaScript applications

```
#target "InDesign-6.0" //target CS4
#target "InDesign" //target the latest version of InDesign
```

Compilation**EXAMPLE 46 Compilation of AppleScript applications**

Typically, AppleScripts are compiled using the targeted application's dictionary. You can override this behavior with the “using terms from” statement, which substitutes another application's dictionary for compilation purposes.

```
tell application "Adobe InDesign CS4" --target CS4
  using terms from application "InDesign CS3" --compile using CS
  ...
end using terms from
end tell
```

To generate a CS3 version of the AppleScript dictionary, use the publish terminology event, which is exposed on the application object (see below). The dictionary is published into a folder (named with the version of the DOM) under the “Scripting Support” folder. For example: `/Users/<username>/Library/Caches/Adobe <InDesign or InCopy or InDesign Server>/Version 6.0/en_US/Scripting Support/3.0`. (In this case, compile using the “Adobe InDesign CS Dictionary” pseudo-application that results.)

```
tell application "Adobe InDesign CS4"
  publish terminology version 3.0 --publish the Adobe InDesign CS dictionary
  (version 3.0 DOM)
end tell
```

EXAMPLE 47 Compilation of Visual Basic applications

Compilation of Visual Basic applications may be versioned by referencing the Creative Suite 3 type library. To generate a Creative Suite 3 version of the type library, use the PublishTerminology event, which is exposed on the Application object. The type library is published into a folder (named with the version of the DOM) that is under the “Scripting Support” folder in your application's preferences folder. For example: `C:\Documents and Settings\<username>\Local Settings\Application Data\Adobe\<InDesign or InCopy or InDesign Server>\Version 6.0\en_US\Caches\Scripting Support\3.0\`.

```
Set myApp = CreateObject("InDesign.Application.CS4")
myApp.PublishTerminology( 3.0 ) 'publish the InDesign CS type library (version 3.0
DOM)
```

VBScripts are not pre-compiled. The application generates and references the appropriate type library automatically, based on the version of the DOM set for interpretation.

EXAMPLE 48 Compilation of JavaScript applications

JavaScripts are not pre-compiled. For compilation, the application uses the same version of the DOM that is set for interpretation.

Interpretation

The Application object contains a Script Preferences object, which allows a script to get/set the version of the scripting DOM to use for interpreting requests. The version will remain as set until explicitly changed again, even across scripts. The version defaults to the current version of the application and is persisted. See the examples below.

EXAMPLE 49 *AppleScript interpretation*

```
set version of script preferences to 3.0 --Set to 3.0 DOM
```

EXAMPLE 50 *Visual Basic interpretation*

```
Set myApp = CreateObject("InDesign.Application.CS4")  
myApp.ScriptPreferences.Version = 3.0 'Set to 3.0 DOM
```

EXAMPLE 51 *JavaScript interpretation*

```
app.scriptPreferences.version = 3.0 ; //Set to 3.0 DOM
```

Supporting IDML

For the most part, you support the IDML file format simply by exposing your persistent data in the scripting DOM.

If you are making a custom page item scriptable, make sure you do not rely on “with properties” (parameters) during the create event (e_Create). This is because the application component that generates the IDML file format may not have all the data to create the IDML tag attributes on your custom objects. Also, it may not set properties on your custom object in any specific order. So, in your script provider where you support the create event (e_Create), you should be able to support instantiation without properties while using reasonable defaults, and tolerate setting properties in random order.

If you have read-only properties that are set automatically by the application or your plug-in (e.g., file modification date/time), you may need a separate read/write version of the property for use by the kINXScriptManagerBoss, so the IDML subsystem can update it while writing. For example, kPageCountPropertyScriptElement is a read-only element that needs the following:

EXAMPLE 52 Page count, a read-only property to which IDML requires write access

```

{
    //Contexts
    {
        kInitialScriptVersion, kINXScriptManagerBoss, kWildFS, k_Wild,
    }
    //Elements
    {
        Provider
        {
            kSpreadScriptProviderBoss,
            {
                Object{ kMasterSpreadObjectScriptElement },
                Property{ kPageCountPropertyScriptElement, kReadWrite },
            }
        }
    }
} ;

```

IDML writes object and property data to XML using their long name identifiers. To allow long names to be written within a list of values, define your property using a StructType containing StructFields that define key/value pairs for each value in the list. For example, here is a definition of key/value pairs to define list elements:

```

Property {
    kBNRestartPolicyPropertyScriptElement,
    "numbering restart policies",
    "Numbering restart policies.",
    StructType {
        StructField("restart policy", EnumType( kBNRestartPolicyEnumScriptElement )),
        StructField("lower level", Int32Type ),
        StructField("upper level", Int32Type ) }
    {PermitTypeChange}
    kBNRestartPolicyBoss,
}

```

Maintaining IDML forward and backward compatibility

This section describes the versioning goals and rules for InDesign and the IDML file format. The same versioning goals and rules apply to InCopy and its ICML file format.

Consider three InDesign versions, A, B and C, with A being the oldest. The scripting DOM version is changed at the beginning of each product development cycle, so we also can speak of scripting DOM versions A, B and C. Each product version has its own IDML file format version, IDML-A, IDML-B, IDML-C, based on its associated scripting DOM.

Users do not want to specify which flavor of IDML they want to export or open. As a result, Adobe and third-party developers must preserve the illusion that there is one version of IDML.

Goals

1. *Each version of InDesign writes IDML in its own format.* InDesign-C uses scripting DOM version C to produce IDML-C, and similarly for earlier product versions.
2. *Each version of InDesign can read its own IDML version and all previous versions.* This is a natural consequence of having a versioned scripting DOM. InDesign simply sets the scripting DOM to the correct version when the file is opened. Everything else falls into place. InDesign-C can read IDML-A, IDML-B, and IDML-C, since it knows about all three versions of the scripting DOM. Likewise, InDesign-A knows about only its own scripting DOM version.
3. *Each version of InDesign can read IDML versions newer than itself.* A given InDesign version should ignore information it does not understand and provide reasonable defaults for missing information. This means InDesign-A should make a best effort to read files written in IDML-B and IDML-C.

Whether goal 3 is met depends on how carefully people write script providers. For most script objects, which are simple, just a small set of rules need to be followed.

Rules

Adding script objects or properties

If you add new script objects or add new properties to existing objects, there is no problem; older versions of InDesign simply ignore the information.

Removing script objects and properties

If you remove an object or property, there is no problem. Suppose a property called weasel is no longer needed in InDesign-B. Mark the weasel property Obsolete as of scripting DOM version B. Leave support for the property intact, since it will be needed when version A of the scripting DOM is active.

Changing the type of a property

We do not recommend changing the type of a property, and experience has shown that changes to a property's type should be rare. Choose carefully when adding a new property and specifying its type.

Verifying your plug-in's data is round-tripped through IDML

To make sure your new script objects are exported in IDML, follow these steps:

1. Start the application with your scriptable plug-in present.
2. Create a new document, and create objects that have your plug-in's data applied.
3. Choose File > Export, and select the "InDesign Markup (IDML)" format. Save your file with an .idml extension.

4. The IDML file is an archive package that contains XML files and other related files. To open the IDML package, first extract it using WinZip or a similar tool. Search in the appropriate XML files for your scripting object's name, specified in your plug-in's .fr file. For details about the contents of the IDML package, see *IDML File Format Specification*.
5. Open the .idml file in InDesign, and verify there is no assert or data loss.

For example, the Watermark sample plug-in adds a preference object to the document. Follow the instructions above, and use the Plug-ins > SDK > Watermark menu to define a watermark for the document. Export an IDML file, uncompress it, open designmap.xml, and search for "WatermarkPreference."

Tips for debugging the scripting architecture

To help debug your scriptable plug-in, use the following debug-build-only menu items:

- To trace BridgeTalk messages, turn on Test > TRACE > Script > BridgeTalk.
- To trace the loading of scripts into the scripts panel, turn on Test > TRACE > Script > ScriptPanelFile.
- To trace requests and see which script providers are invoked, turn on Test > TRACE > Script > ScriptRequestHandler.
- To trace the instantiation of scripting DOMs, turn on Test > TRACE > Script > ScriptTimer.
- To trace the loading of script information resources, turn on Test > TRACE > Script > ScriptInfoManager > Registration.
- To enable asserts when a dependent resource is missing, turn on Test > TRACE > Script > ScriptInfoManager > Resource Dependencies.
- To trace the specification and resolution of objects used by a JavaScript, turn on Test > TRACE > Script > CoreObjectSpecifier.
- To trace Apple events processed, turn on Test > TRACE > AppleScript > EventHandlers.
- To trace operations on InDesign COM objects used by a Visual Basic script, turn on Test > TRACE > GenericCOMObject.
- From the Test > Scripting menu, you can dump the contents of the ScriptInfoManager for various clients to a text file in the QA Logs folder. This makes it easy to diff changes you are making or between builds.

Scripting resources

The scripting DOM is made up of script objects, properties, events, and providers that are defined by plug-ins using the ODFRez resource statements described in this section.

NOTE: The scripting DOM provided by the application is described in “[Scripting DOM reference](#)” on page 641. The script objects to which C++ programmers can add script objects, events, and properties are identified there.

The scripting resources in a plug-in:

- Describe the objects, properties, and events exposed through the scripting DOM.
- Determine how objects are related to each other in the scripting DOM object hierarchy.
- Specify which script providers can handle which properties and events on which objects.
- Are stored in the plug-in’s .fr file and compiled like all ODFRC resources.
- Are loaded and validated on first launch, then persisted in the application’s SavedData.
- Are used to generate reference documentation required by specific clients (e.g., AppleScript Dictionary, Visual Basic TypeLibrary, IDML DTD, and high-level API).
- Are versioned to maintain backward and forward compatibility between releases of the product (see “[Versioning of scripting resources](#)” on page 621)

The scripting plug-in manages the scripting DOM via the IScriptInfoManager interface. IScriptInfoManager:

- Caches data from the resources and makes it available programmatically.
- Matches requests to handle events and properties on particular objects with the appropriate script provider.

NOTE: See <SDK>/source/public/includes/ScriptInfoTypes.fh for the script element type definitions for Object, Event, Property, etc.

VersionedScriptElementInfo resource

A VersionedScriptElementInfo statement adds script objects, properties, events, and providers to the scripting DOM. See [Example 53](#).

EXAMPLE 53 VersionedScriptElementInfo statement

```
resource VersionedScriptElementInfo(1) // See Note 1
{
    //Contexts
    {
        BasilScriptVersion, // See Note 2
        kCoreScriptManagerBoss, // See Note 3
        kWildFS, // See Note 4
        k_Wild, // See Note 5
        // See Note 6
    }

    //Elements
    {
        // See Note 7
    }
}
```

Notes:

1. There may be more than one `VersionedScriptElementInfo` resource in a plug-in's .fr file. Each must have its own distinct resource identifier. The statement shown has a resource identifier of 1.
2. This is the version of the product the statement targets; `kInitialScriptVersion` for CS1 and `kBasilScriptVersion` for CS4. See `ScriptInfoTypes.fh` for other versions. See [“Versioning of scripting resources” on page 621](#).
3. Use `kCoreScriptManagerBoss` if the statement contains resources that should be in all scripting DOMs. If the statement applies only to a specific client, use its `ClassID` here. For example, if the statement is specific to `AppleScript`, use `kAppleScriptMgrBoss`. See [“Client-specific scripting resources” on page 632](#).
4. This is the feature set identifier. `kWildFS` indicates this statement applies to all products and feature sets.
5. This is the locale identifier. `k_Wild` indicates this statement applies to all user interface locales.))
6. If the statement targets other contexts, repeat 1 through 4 to define the additional contexts.
7. Object, event, property, enum, and provider elements go here.

NOTE: The `ScriptElementInfo` resource is used by InDesign CS1 plug-ins to define script elements. InDesign CS2 and later plug-ins should always use `VersionedScriptElementInfo`. See [“Versioning of scripting resources” on page 621](#).

Object element

An object element defines a new script object that can be added to the scripting DOM using a Provider statement (see [“Provider element” on page 606](#)). [Example 54](#) is an example of a statement for a script object with a plural form:

EXAMPLE 54 Object statement for an object with a plural form

```
Object // See Note 1
{
    kSpreadObjectScriptElement, // See Note 2
    c_Spread, // See Note 3
    "spread", // See Note 4
    "A spread", // See Note 5
    kSpread_CLSID, // See Note 6
    c_Spreads, // See Note 7
    "spreads", // See Note 8
    "Every spread", // See Note 9
    kSpreads_CLSID, // See Note 10
    kUniqueIDBasedObjectScriptElement, // See Note 11
    kLayoutSuiteScriptElement // See Note 12
}
```

Notes:

1. The object is defined within a `VersionedScriptElementInfo` resource (see [“Versioned-ScriptElementInfo resource” on page 592](#)).
2. This is the `ScriptElementID` of the object (see [“ScriptElementIDs” on page 610](#)).
3. This is the `ScriptID` of the object (see [“ScriptIDs” on page 610](#)).
4. This is the name of the object (see [“Names” on page 610](#)).
5. This is a description of the object (see [“Descriptions” on page 610](#)).
6. This is the GUID of the object (see [“GUIDs” on page 611](#)).
7. This is the `ScriptID` of the object’s plural form (see [“ScriptIDs” on page 610](#)).
8. This is the name of the object’s plural form (see [“Names” on page 610](#)).
9. This is a description of the object’s plural form (see [“Descriptions” on page 610](#)).
10. This is the GUID of the object’s plural form (see [“GUIDs” on page 611](#)).
11. This is the script object on which this object is based (see [“Script-object inheritance” on page 619](#) and [“Scripting DOM reference” on page 641](#)).
12. This is the AppleScript suite to which the object belongs (see [“Suite element” on page 609](#)).

[Example 55](#) is an example of a statement for a singleton script object (e.g., preferences):

EXAMPLE 55 Object statement for a singleton script object

```
Object
{
    kMarginPrefsObjectScriptElement,
    c_MarginPref,
    "margin preference",
    "Margin preferences",
    kMarginPref_CLSID,
    NoPluralInfo, // A preferences object has no plural form
    kPreferencesObjectScriptElement, // Preferences are based on this script object.
    kPreferencesSuiteScriptElement,
}
```

We recommend that *any* singleton script object be implemented using the pattern for preferences, for backward compatibility. A singleton is based on `kPreferencesObjectScriptElement`, as shown in [Example 55](#), and it follows the implementation pattern outlined in [“Adding a new script object to make preferences scriptable” on page 577](#).

Earlier product versions (Creative Suite 1) required this, so the scripting DOM for JavaScript is set up correctly. If you add script elements to the scripting DOM for Creative Suite 1, make your singleton a preference script object).

Follow the above approach for *any* singleton, even if it exposing data to scripting that is not stored in the normal locations for preference data (i.e., `kDocWorkspaceBoss` and `kWorkspace-`

Boss). For sample code, see SnippetRunner's kSnipRunObjectScriptElement object and SnipRunScriptProvider.

Event element

An event element defines a new event that can be added to the scripting DOM using a Provider statement (see “[Provider element](#)” on page 606). See [Example 56](#):

EXAMPLE 56 Event statement

```
Event // See Note 1
{
  kQuitEventScriptElement, // See Note 2
  e_Quit, // See Note 3
  "quit", // See Note 4
  "Quit the application", // See Note 5
  VoidType, // See Note 6
  { // See Note 7
    en_SaveOptions, // See Note 8
    "saving", // See Note 9
    "Whether to save changes before closing open documents", // See Note 10
    EnumDefaultType( kSaveOptionsEnumScriptElement, en_No ), // See Note 11
    kOptional, // See Note 12
  } // See Note 13
}
```

Notes:

1. The event is defined within a VersionedScriptElementInfo resource (see “[Versioned-ScriptElementInfo resource](#)” on page 592).
2. This is the ScriptElementID of the event (see “[ScriptElementIDs](#)” on page 610).
3. This is the ScriptID of the event (see “[ScriptElementIDs, ScriptIDs, names, descriptions, and GUIDs](#)” on page 610).
4. This is the name of the event (see “[Names](#)” on page 610).
5. This is a description of the event (see “[Descriptions](#)” on page 610).
6. This is the data type of the event's return value (see “[Scripting data types](#)” on page 615).
7. This is a list of event parameters (Notes 8-12)
8. This is the ScriptID of the parameter (see “[ScriptIDs](#)” on page 610).
9. This is the name of the parameter (see “[Names](#)” on page 610).
10. This is a description of the parameter (see “[Descriptions](#)” on page 610).
11. This is the type of the parameter, including a default value for optional parameters (see “[Scripting data types](#)” on page 615).

12. This is `kOptional` or `kRequired`.
13. The definition of other parameters goes here.

Default parameter values

You may specify a default value for optional parameters, using a default type (see [“Scripting data types” on page 615](#)). There are no default declarations for date, file, object, record, or array types. (See the `ScriptInfoTypes.fh` file.)

NOTE: A default value is not available for parameters of these types: Date, File, Object, Record, or Array. For some of these types, you can use one of the permitted default value types. For example, a Unit typically can be specified as a real or a string; and a variable type that includes object and string types could be specified using a string. However, there is no supported way to specify an array of default values for an array type. You can try the following workaround, but there is no guarantee it will be compatible in the future.

```
//Specify as the default a list of two unit values equal to 0.0 points
kScriptInfoUnitType, 2, NoValue, NoValue, {s_list{{ UnitValue(0.0), UnitValue(0.0)
}}}, {}
```

Special events

Create

The create event instantiates a script object.

Most script objects can re-use the predefined event `kCreateEventScriptElement`, unless they have required parameters for the create event, which is strongly discouraged. To define your own create event, use `e_Create` as the `ScriptID` and “add” as the name in your Event statement.

The create event is expected to use the `WITHPROPERTIESPARAM` macro to add a “with properties” parameter for AppleScript and JavaScript.

The create event is added to the scripting DOM using a `CollectionEvent` field within a Provider statement; e.g.: `CollectionEvent{ kCreateEventScriptElement }`. See [“Provider element” on page 606](#). This associates the event with the collection object (or container of, in AppleScript).

Count

The count event indicates how many script objects are instantiated. It is considered a property in Visual Basic and appears on collections (the plural form of an object; e.g. “Books”) in the type library.

Most script objects can re-use the predefined event `kCountEventScriptElement`.

The count event is added to the scripting DOM using a `CollectionEvent` field within a Provider statement; e.g.: `CollectionEvent{ kCountEventScriptElement }`. See [“Provider element” on page 606](#).

Predefined events

[Table 138](#) lists common predefined events. They are useful if you are adding a new script object that has a plural form to the scripting DOM.

TABLE 138 Common predefined events

ScriptElementID	ScriptID	Name	Notes
kCreateEventScriptElement	e_Create	add	Instantiate a script object (“make” in Apple Script, “Add” in Visual Basic, and “add” in JavaScript).
kCountEventScriptElement	e_Count	count	Count how many script objects are instantiated.
kDeleteEventScriptElement	e_Delete	delete	Delete a script object. (“delete” in Apple Script, “Delete” in Visual Basic, and “remove” in JavaScript).
kDuplicateEventScriptElement	e_Duplicate	duplicate	Duplicate a script object.
kMoveEventScriptElement	e_Move	move	Move a script object.

Property element

A property element defines a new property that can be added to the scripting DOM using a Provider statement (see “[Provider element](#)” on page 606). See [Example 57](#):

EXAMPLE 57 Property statement

```
Property // See Note 1
{
  kNamePropertyScriptElement, // See Note 2
  p_Name, // See Note 3
  "name", // See Note 4
  "The name of the ^Object", // See Note 5
  StringType, // See Note 6
  {} // See Note 7
  kNoAttributeClass, // See Note 8
}
```

Notes:

1. The property is defined within a VersionedScriptElementInfo resource (see “[Versioned-ScriptElementInfo resource](#)” on page 592).
2. This is the ScriptElementID of the property (see “[ScriptElementIDs](#)” on page 610).
3. This is the ScriptID of the property (see “[ScriptIDs](#)” on page 610).
4. This is the name of the property (see “[Names](#)” on page 610).
5. This is a description of the property (see “[Descriptions](#)” on page 610).
6. This is the data type of the property (see “[Scripting data types](#)” on page 615, it can be one of the default type available beginning in CS4.).
7. This is a list of additional data types acceptable to use when setting the value of the property (in this case, none).

8. This is the ClassID of the text, graphic, or table attribute boss class associated with this property. Use `kNoAttributeClass` if the property is not associated with an attribute.

Other examples of Property statements are in [Example 58](#):

EXAMPLE 58 More property statements

```
// Property that can be set using the name of a swatch or a swatch object.
Property
{
    kPrefsFillColorPropertyScriptElement,
    p_FillColor,
    "fill color",
    "The fill color",
    StringType,
    { ObjectType( kSwatchObjectScriptElement ) }
    kNoAttributeClass,
}

// Accessor property for a new script object.
// Added to parent object in Scripting DOM using a
// ParentProperty field in a Provider statement.
Property
{
    kMarginPrefsPropertyScriptElement,
    p_MarginPref,
    "margin preferences",
    "Margin preferences",
    // This property refers to another object by ScriptElementID
    ObjectType( kMarginPrefsObjectScriptElement ),
    {}
    kNoAttributeClass,
}
```

TypeDef and TypeDefType

A TypeDef resource defines a synonym for another type. You can use a TypeDef type wherever a type is required, by using a TypeDefType declaration; for example, the storage type of a property resource or the return type or parameter types of an event resource. One TypeDef in the core DOM corresponding to user-interface colors in InDesign is implemented using this technique; the TypeDef is shown below.

```
TypeDef
{
    kInDesignUIcolortypeDefScriptElement,
    t_IDUIColorType,
    "InDesign UI color type",
    "Properties or parameters using the InDesign UI Colors enumeration ...",
    VariableType
    {
        RealMinMaxArrayType( 3, 0, 255 ),
        EnumType( kUIColorsEnumScriptElement )
    }
}
```

To use a TypeDef in a property definition, use TypeDefType to specify which TypeDef to use:

```
Property
{
    kWatermarkFontColorPropertyScriptElement,
    p_WatermarkFontColor,
    "watermark font color",
    "Watermark font color for a document",
    TypeDefType( kInDesignUIColorTypeDefScriptElement ),
    {},
    kNoAttributeClass,
}
```

Settable types

If a property takes a particular type on “set” but will never return that type on “get,” that type should be in the list of additional settable types, rather than in a variable type.

EXAMPLE 59 Property with settable types

Instead of using this:

```
Property
{
    kActiveLayerPropertyScriptElement,
    p_ActiveLayer,
    "active layer",
    "The active layer",
    VariableType{ ObjectType( kLayerObjectScriptElement ), StringType },
    {}
    kNoAttributeClass,
}
```

Use this:

```
Property
{
    kActiveLayerPropertyScriptElement,
    p_ActiveLayer,
    "active layer",
    "The active layer",
    ObjectType( kLayerObjectScriptElement ),
    { StringType },
    kNoAttributeClass,
}
```

Special properties

Special properties added via inheritance

The special properties in [Table 139](#) are added when appropriate via inheritance and do not need to be added to any Provider statement. For documentation on the inheritance of properties from base script objects, see [“Script-object inheritance” on page 619](#).

TABLE 139 Special inherited properties

ScriptElementID	Name	Description	Note
kClassPropertyScriptElement	class	Class descriptor type.	Provided under AppleScript by kAnyObjectScriptElement.
kIDPropertyScriptElement	id	The object's identifier.	Provided by kUniqueIDBasedObjectScriptElement and kNonUniqueIDBasedObjectScriptElement.
kIndexPropertyScriptElement	index	Index of the object within its parent.	Provided by kAnyObjectScriptElement.
kLabelPropertyScriptElement	label	A label that can be set to any string.	Provided by kUniqueIDBasedObjectScriptElement and kNonUniqueIDBasedObjectScriptElement.
kObjectReferencePropertyScriptElement	object reference	An object reference for this object.	Provided under AppleScript by kAnyObjectScriptElement.
kParentPropertyScriptElement	parent	The object's parent.	Provided by kAnyObjectScriptElement.
kPropertiesPropertyScriptElement	properties	Property that allows setting of several properties at the same time.	Provided by kAnyObjectScriptElement.

Name

This must be added into the Provider statement that supports the Name property; e.g.: `Property{ kNamePropertyScriptElement, kReadWrite }`.

Predefined properties

The properties in [Table 140](#) are predefined by the application and can be added to script objects via a Provider statement:

TABLE 140 Predefined properties

ScriptElementID	ScriptID	Name	Description	Data type
kBottomPropertyScriptElement	p_Bottom	bottom	Bottom edge of the object.	UnitType
kBoundsPropertyScriptElement	p_Bounds	bounds	Bounds of the object, in the format (top, left, bottom, right).	UnitArrayType(4)

ScriptElementID	ScriptID	Name	Description	Data type
kDatePropertyScriptElement	p_Date	date	Date and time.	DateType
kDescriptionPropertyScriptElement	p_Description	description	Description.	StringType
kFullNamePropertyScriptElement	p_FullName	full name	Full path including the name.	FileType
kHeightPropertyScriptElement	p_Height	height	Height of the object.	UnitType
kLeftPropertyScriptElement	p_Left	left	Left edge of the object.	UnitType
kLockedPropertyScriptElement	p_Locked	locked	Whether the object is locked.	BoolType
kNamePropertyScriptElement	p_Name	name	Name of the object.	StringType
kPathPropertyScriptElement	p_Path	file path	File path.	FileType
kPropertiesPropertyScriptElement	p_Properties	properties	Property that allows setting of several properties at the same time.	RecordType(kContainerObjectScriptElement)
kRightPropertyScriptElement	p_Right	right	Right edge of the ^Object.	UnitType
kTopPropertyScriptElement	p_Top	top	Top edge of the ^Object.	UnitType
kVisiblePropertyScriptElement	p_Visible	visible	Whether the ^Object is visible.	BoolType
kWidthPropertyScriptElement	p_Width	width	Width of the ^Object.	UnitType

Struct element

The StructType allows you to assign long scripting names to data within a group in your resource. This is especially useful for data that will be written to IDML.

EXAMPLE 60 StructType statement

```
TypeDef {
  kEmployeeTypeDefScriptElement,
  t_EmployeeType,
  "An Adobe employee",
  "Information about our most valuable asset.",
  StructType {
    StructField( "name", StringType ),
    StructField( "id", Int32Type )
  }
}
```

TypeDef element

A new feature added to the scripting resources is a TypeDef element and corresponding TypeDefType. A TypeDef resource defines a synonym for another type. A TypeDef type may be used wherever a type is required, by using a TypeDefType declaration; for example, the storage type of a property resource or the return type or parameter types of an event resource.

Two TypeDefs in the core DOM corresponding to user-interface colors in InDesign and InCopy were re-implemented using this technique. The new TypeDefs are shown below.

```
TypeDef
{
    kInDesignUIColorTypeDefScriptElement,
    t_IDUIColorType,
    "InDesign UI color type",
    "Properties or parameters using the InDesign UI Colors enumeration use this to
    specify the type as either one of the enumerated UI colors or a list of
    RGB values for a custom color.",
    VariableType
    {
        RealMinMaxArrayType(3, 0, 255),
        EnumType( kUIColorsEnumScriptElement )
    }
}
```

```
TypeDef
{
    kInCopyUIColorTypeDefScriptElement,
    t_ICUIColorType,
    "InCopy UI color type",
    "Properties or parameters using the InCopy UI Colors enumeration use this to
    specify the type as either one of the enumerated UI colors or a list of
    RGB values for a custom color."
    VariableType
    {
        RealMinMaxArrayType(3, 0, 255),
        EnumType( kInCopyUIColorsEnumScriptElement )
    }
}
```

Because these types were re-implemented, the following old #defines were removed from ScriptingScriptInfo.fh:

```
#define UIColorType TypeDefType(kInDesignUIColorTypeDefScriptElement)
#define UIColorDefaultType(def)
    TypeDefDefaultType(kInDesignUIColorTypeDefScriptElement) EnumValue(def) {}
#define InCopyUIColorType TypeDefType( kInCopyUIColorTypeDefScriptElement)
```

The old #define constants that were used in properties and events were replaced with the new TypeDefs. For example:

```

Property
{
    kWatermarkFontColorPropertyScriptElement,
    p_WatermarkFontColor,
    "watermark font color",
    "Watermark font color for a document",
    TypeDefType(kInDesignUIColorTypeDefScriptElement),    // changed for CS4
    {},
    kNoAttributeClass,
}

```

Enum element

An enum element defines the list of enumerated values a property or parameter can take. See [Example 61](#):

EXAMPLE 61 Enum statement

```

Enum // See Note 1
{
    kSaveOptionsEnumScriptElement, // See Note 2
    en_SaveOptions, // See Note 3
    "save options", // See Note 4
    "Options for saving before closing a document", // See Note 5
    { // See Note 6
        en_No, // See Note 7
        "no", // See Note 8
        "Don't save changes", // See Note 9

        en_AskUserSaveFile, // See Note 10
        "ask",
        "Ask user whether to save changes",

        en_Yes,
        "yes",
        "Save changes",
    }
}

```

Notes:

1. The enum is defined within a `VersionedScriptElementInfo` resource (see [“Versioned-ScriptElementInfo resource” on page 592](#)).
2. This is the `ScriptElementID` of the enum (see [“ScriptElementIDs” on page 610](#)).
3. This is the `ScriptID` of the enum (see [“ScriptIDs” on page 610](#)).
4. This is the name of the enum (see [“Names” on page 610](#)).
5. This is a description of the enum (see [“Descriptions” on page 610](#)).
6. This is a list of possible enum values (see Notes 7-9).
7. This is the `ScriptID` of the first enum value (see [“ScriptIDs” on page 610](#)).

8. This is the name of the first enum value (see “Names” on page 610).
9. This is a description of the first enum value (see “Descriptions” on page 610).
10. ScriptIDs, names, and descriptions of other possible enum values would go here.

An enum is referred to by a `ScriptElementID` from a Property statement or from parameters within an Event statement. See [Example 56](#) for an example of an Event statement that uses `kSaveOptionsEnumScriptElement` as a parameter.

Enumerator element

An enumerator element adds additional enumerators to an existing enum (see “Enum element” on page 603). This is handy when adding a new value for an existing enumerated property. It also can be used when the available values of an enum are different in the Roman and Japanese feature sets. See [Example 62](#):

EXAMPLE 62 Enumerator statement

```
Enumerator // See Note 1
{
  kExportFormatEnumScriptElement, // See Note 2
  { // See Note 3
    en_InCopyInterchange, "InCopy interchange", "InCopy Interchange"
    en_InDesignInterchange, "InDesign interchange", "InDesign Interchange",
    en_Snippet, "InDesign snippet", "InDesign Snippet",
  }
}
```

Notes:

1. The enumerator is defined within a `VersionedScriptElementInfo` resource (see “Versioned-ScriptElementInfo resource” on page 592).
2. This is the `ScriptElementID` of the enum being added to (see “ScriptElementIDs” on page 610).
3. This is a list of additional enum values. See “Enum element” on page 603 for the syntax of an enumerator value.

NOTE: To alter the existing enumerators of an enum or remove enumerators from an Enum, you must obsolete the existing enum and define a new one (see “Versioning of scripting resources” on page 621).

Metadata element

The metadata element allows you to add metadata to one or more existing Suite, Object, Event, Property, Enum, and `TypeDef` elements. The target elements are listed by `ScriptElementID`; the metadata takes the form of a `ScriptID/ScriptData` key/value pair. Metadata on an element can be accessed at run time via the `ScriptElement` base class’s `GetMetadata()` and `HasMetadata()`

methods. The CustomDataLink sample in the SDK provides an example of metadata element, which is shown in [Example 63](#).

EXAMPLE 63 Metadata statement that adds metadata to an existing element

```
Metadata
{
    kTranFxSettingsINXPoliciesMetadataScriptElement, // see note 1
    {
        // see note 2
        // Elements
        kTranFxSettingsObjectScriptElement,
    }
    {
        // see note 3
        m_NoDefaultsCache, NoValue,
        // How to handle these elements during import.
        m_INXSnippetAttrImportState, Int32Value(e_SetElementAttributes),
    }
}
```

Notes:

1. The ScriptElementID makes it possible to version the metadata resources included in a DOM based on the client.
2. The first group of braces identifies the target element onto which the metadata is to be added. Multiple elements can be added, and they can be different kind of element mixes, such as suite, object, and event.
3. The second group of braces is where you put the key/values pair for the data.

Value types

The following metadata value types are supported:

- EnumValue(enumerator)
- BoolValue(kTrue or kFalse)
- Int16Value(short int)
- Int32Value(long int)
- NoValue()
- RealValue(real)
- StringValue("string")
- UnitValue(real) //value in points

Provider element

A provider element adds the script objects, events, and properties you defined into the scripting DOM. It can be defined (used) in multiple places to represent different parent-child hierarchy client types. See [“Object element” on page 593](#), [“Event element” on page 595](#), and [“Property element” on page 597](#) for a description of how objects, events, and properties are defined. The provider statement:

- Indicates which events and properties are available on which objects.
- Defines the script object hierarchy.
- Specifies the script provider boss that handles the referenced object(s), event(s), and property(s).

[Example 64](#) is an example of a Provider statement that adds a property and an event to an existing object in the scripting DOM, `kPageItemObjectScriptElement`:

EXAMPLE 64 Provider Statement that adds to an Existing Object in the Scripting DOM

```
Provider // See Note 1
{
  kYourScriptProviderBoss, // See Note 2
  {
    Object{ kPageItemObjectScriptElement }, // See Note 3
    Event{ kYourEventScriptElement }, // See Note 4
    Property{ kYourPropertyScriptElement, kReadOnly }, // See Note 5
    // See Note 6
  }
}
```

Notes:

1. The provider is defined within a `VersionedScriptElementInfo` resource (see [“Versioned-ScriptElementInfo resource” on page 592](#)).
2. This is the ClassID of the script provider boss that handles the referenced event(s) and property(s).
3. The script object referenced by this field is the object in the scripting DOM to which properties and events referenced by subsequent fields are added. See [“Scripting DOM reference” on page 641](#) for documentation on the script objects provided by the application.
4. The event referenced by this field is added to the script object referenced by the preceding Object field. See [“Event element” on page 595](#).
5. The property referenced by this field is added to the script object referenced by the preceding Object field. See [“Property element” on page 597](#). This also indicates whether the property is read-write or read-only.
6. References to other events and/or properties handled by this script provider go here.

[Example 65](#) is an example of a Provider statement that adds a new script object into the scripting DOM:

EXAMPLE 65 Provider statement that adds a new script object with a plural form into the scripting DOM

```

Provider // See Note 1
{
  kDocumentScriptProviderBoss, // See Note 2
  {
    Parent{ kApplicationObjectScriptElement }, // See Note 3
    RepresentObject{ kDocumentObjectScriptElement }, // See Note 4
    CollectionEvent{ kCountEventScriptElement }, // See Note 5
    CollectionEvent{ kCreateDocumentEventScriptElement }, // See Note 6
    Event{ kCloseDocumentEventScriptElement }, // See Note 7
    Property{ kNamePropertyScriptElement, kReadOnly }, // See Note 8
    // See Note 9
  }
}

```

Notes:

1. The provider is defined within a VersionedScriptElementInfo resource (see [“Versioned-ScriptElementInfo resource” on page 592](#)).
2. This is the ClassID of the script provider boss that handles the referenced script object(s), event(s), and property(s).
3. The script object referenced by this field is the parent in the scripting DOM for the new script object referred to by the subsequent RepresentObject field. For documentation on the script objects provided by the application, see [“Scripting DOM reference” on page 641](#).
4. The script object referenced by this field is added to the scripting DOM. Its parent object is defined by a preceding Parent field.
5. The count event referenced by this field is added to the script object referenced by the preceding RepresentObject field. See [“Special events” on page 596](#).
6. The create event referenced by this field is added to the script object referenced by the preceding RepresentObject field. See [“Special events” on page 596](#).
7. The event referenced by this field is added to the script object referenced by the preceding RepresentObject field.
8. The property referenced by this field is added to the script object referenced by the preceding RepresentObject field. This also indicates whether the property is read-write or read-only.
9. Other references to parents, objects, events, and/or properties handled by this script provider go here.

Fields in a provider statement

The types of field that can appear in a Provider statement are listed in [Table 141](#). Each field refers to an associated script element (a script object, event, property, or enum) using its ScriptElementID.

TABLE 141 Field Types within a provider statement

Field type	Purpose	Use
Object	The script object referenced by this field is the object in the scripting DOM to which properties and events referenced by subsequent fields are added.	Add new properties and events to an existing script object.
Event	The script event referenced by this field is added to the script object referenced by the preceding Object or RepresentObject field.	Add event to a new or existing script object.
Property	The script property referenced by this field is added to the script object referenced by the preceding Object or RepresentObject field. This identifies access rights as kReadOnly, kReadWrite, or kReadOnlyButReadWriteForINX.	Add event to a new or existing script object.
Parent	The script object referenced by this field is a parent in the scripting DOM for the new script object referred to by a subsequent RepresentObject field.	Add a new script object to the scripting DOM.
RepresentObject	The script object referenced by this field is added to the scripting DOM. Its parent object is defined by a preceding Parent field.	Add a new script object to the scripting DOM.
ParentProperty	The script property referenced by this field is added to the script object referred to by a preceding Parent field.	Provide an accessor in the scripting DOM for a singleton script object.
CollectionEvent	A Create script event referenced by this field creates an instance of a script object in a collection. A Count script event referenced by this field counts how many instances exist in the collection. See “Special events” on page 596 .	Provide access in the scripting DOM for a collection of script objects. Script objects that can exist in a collection are said to have a plural form. For example, the plural form of spread is spreads.
SurrogateParent	See “Surrogate” on page 609 .	Deprecated. SurrogateParent is an old mechanism used to avoid INX getting confused about ownership relationships. The preferred approach is to create an INX-specific scripting resource (see “Client-specific scripting resources” on page 632) with a Provider statement that uses the kNotSupported script provider. Parent fields added to this Provider statement indicate the parent-child relationship that simply reference an object without any ownership. These parents are ignored by INX, and confusion about owner versus reference relationships is avoided.

Surrogate

A surrogate is a concept that helps INX identify a parent object that does not have an ownership relationship with a child object.

In the native InDesign model, a document is stored as a tree of boss objects, each of which is bound to and stored persistently in a database. Each boss object (except the root object) has one boss object (a parent boss object) that refers to it and “owns” it and zero or more boss objects that simply reference it without any ownership.

In the scripting DOM, a surrogate indicates a parent-child relationship that does not have an ownership relationship with the underlying boss object. A surrogate simply refers to a child object. If you ask a child in the scripting DOM for its parent, the object you get back is the parent that has the ownership relationship; you do not get surrogate. For example, a Page object has both a primary parent (a Spread object) and a surrogate parent (the Document object). You can access all pages in a document via the surrogate Document/Page relationship, but if you ask a Page which object is its parent, you always get back a Spread object back.

Suite element

A suite element adds a suite script element, which is used by AppleScript to group related script objects together. Each Object statement refers to its associated suite (see “Object element” on page 593). See [Example 66](#):

EXAMPLE 66 Suite statement

```
Suite // See Note 1
{
  kBasicSuiteScriptElement, // See Note 2
  s_InDesignBasicSuite, // See Note 3
  "InDesign basics", // See Note 4
  "Terms applicable to many InDesign operations", // See Note 5
}
```

1. The suite is defined within a VersionedScriptElementInfo resource (see “Versioned-ScriptElementInfo resource” on page 592).
2. This is the ScriptElementID of the suite (see “ScriptElementIDs” on page 610).
3. This is the ScriptID of the suite (see “ScriptIDs” on page 610).
4. This is the name of the suite (see “Names” on page 610).
5. This is a description of the suite (see “Descriptions” on page 610).

The ScriptElementIDs for common suites are defined in ScriptingID.h (for example, see kBasicSuiteScriptElement).

ScriptElementIDs, ScriptIDs, names, descriptions, and GUIDs

The scripting DOM is made up of script elements. A script element is a script object, script event, script property, script enum, or script suite. Each script element has two identifiers, a ScriptElementID and a ScriptID, together with a name and a description. Script objects also require one or more GUIDs.

ScriptElementIDs

A ScriptElementID is a kScriptInfoIDSpace ID, an object model identifier based on a plug-in prefix in the same way as the IDs for base classes, interfaces, and implementations. These IDs are defined in the ID.h file of the plug-in that adds the script element to the scripting DOM. For example, kSpreadObjectScriptElement, the ID for the spread script object, is defined in SpreadID.h.

ScriptIDs

A ScriptID is a four-character identifier for a script element. For example, “sprd” is the ScriptID for a spread. Most ScriptIDs in the scripting DOM supplied by the application are defined in the `<SDK>/source/public/includes/ScriptingDefs.h` header file.

NOTE: New ScriptIDs introduced by your plug-in must be registered with Adobe to prevent clashes with other plugins. See [“ScriptID/name registration” on page 612](#).

Names

The name field(s) in an Object, Event, Property, or Enum statement should contain a lowercase string, using a space to delimit the parts of the name (e.g., “graphic layer” or “text frame”). Optionally, you can force uppercase for an acronym (e.g., “URL”) or product name (e.g., “InDesign basics”).

NOTE: New names introduced by your plug-in must be registered with Adobe to prevent clashes with other plugins. See [“ScriptID/name registration” on page 612](#).

Descriptions

The string in the description field(s) an Object, Event, Property, or Enum statement should be sentence case (i.e., initial word capitalized), with no closing punctuation, unless the description is more than one sentence long, in which case all sentences except the last should have closing punctuation.

Object-sensitive descriptions

This option is particularly useful for events and properties that appear on multiple script objects.

Often, it makes sense for the description field(s) of an event or property element to contain the name of the script object on which the event or property is exposed. For example, consider an object named “swatch”:

- Description of the name property: “The name of the swatch.”
- Description of the count event: “The number of swatches.”
- Description of the return value for the create event: “The new swatch.”

By using `^Object` for the singular form and `^Objects` for the plural form, the name of the relevant object is substituted at run time. For example:

- Description of the name property: “The name of the `^Object`.”
- Description of the count event: “The number of `^Objects`.”
- Description of the return value for the create event: “The new `^Object`.”

GUIDs

A *GUID* is a Windows ID that allows COM to interact with the script manager. GUIDs are generated on Windows using the Microsoft GUID generator GUIDGEN.EXE.

Adding a singleton script object to the scripting DOM requires a GUID. Adding a script object that has a plural form requires two GUIDs (see “[Object element](#)” on page 593).

NOTE: If your plug-in is scriptable only on Mac OS, you can opt to use `kInvalid_CLSID` (see header `Guid.h`); however, we recommend you generate GUIDs for your script objects.

NOTE: Documentation on generating GUIDs on Mac OS can be obtained from <http://developer.apple.com>, search for “Generating UUID.” See also http://www.apple.com/downloads/macosx/development_tools/uuidfactory.html.

[Example 67](#) is a sample GUID declaration:

EXAMPLE 67 Example of a GUID declaration

```
#define kDocument_CLSID { 0x1a5e8db4, 0x3443, 0x11d1, { 0x80, 0x3c, 0x0, 0x60,
0xb0, 0x3c, 0x2, 0xe4 } }
```

If you need to access the GUID from C++ code in your plug-in, you must declare the GUID, as shown in [Example 68](#). Normally this is not necessary in the course of making a plug-in scriptable.

EXAMPLE 68 Example of a `DECLARE_GUID` call

```
DECLARE_GUID( Document_CLSID, kDocument_CLSID );
```

Scripting ID naming idioms

[Table 142](#) lists the `ScriptID` and `ScriptElementID` naming idioms:

TABLE 142 *ScriptID and ScriptElementID naming idioms*

Script element	ScriptID prefix	ScriptElementID	Examples
Object	c_	kXxxObjectScriptElement	c_Spread, kSpreadObjectScriptElement
Event	e_	kXxxEventScriptElement	e_Open, kOpenEventScriptElement

Script element	ScriptID prefix	ScriptElementID	Examples
Event parameter	p_	not required	p_ShowInWindow
Property	p_	kXxxPropertyScriptElement	p_LineWeight, kStrokeWeightPropertyScriptElement
Enum	en_	kXxxEnumScriptElement	en_FitContentOptions, kFitContentOptionEnumScriptElement
Suite	s_	kXxxSuiteScriptElement	s_TableSuite, kTableSuiteScriptElement

Source-file organization

The current SDK sample organization of source files for scripting IDs is given below. For the referenced sample files, see <SDK>/source/sdksamples/basicpersistinterface:

- Define ScriptElementIDs for your script elements in your plug-in's ID.h file (e.g., kBPIPreObjectScriptElement in BPIID.h). The recommended style is to group identifiers by element type (objects, events, properties, etc). See [Example 69](#) for a template you can use in your ID.h file.
- Define ScriptIDs in your plug-in's ScriptingDefs.h file (e.g., BPIScriptingDefs.h).
- If you are adding new objects to the scripting DOM, define Windows GUIDs in your plug-in's ScriptingDefs.h file (e.g., kBPIPref_CLSID in BPIScriptingDefs.h). See [“GUIDs” on page 611](#).

NOTE: In a future SDK release, it is likely ScriptIDs and GUIDs will be consolidated in the plug-in's ID.h file.

EXAMPLE 69 Template for ScriptElementIDs

```
//Script Element IDs
//Suites
DECLARE_PMID(kScriptInfoIDSpace, k???SuiteScriptElement, k???Prefix + 1)
//Objects
DECLARE_PMID(kScriptInfoIDSpace, k???ObjectScriptElement, k???Prefix + 40)
//Events
DECLARE_PMID(kScriptInfoIDSpace, k???EventScriptElement, k???Prefix + 80)
//Properties
DECLARE_PMID(kScriptInfoIDSpace, k???PropertyScriptElement, k???Prefix + 140)
//Enums
DECLARE_PMID(kScriptInfoIDSpace, k???EnumScriptElement, k???Prefix + 220)
```

ScriptID/name registration

This section discusses the scenarios in which plug-in developers need to extend the scripting DOM, and how ScriptIDs and names, referred to as *ScriptID/name pairs*, are managed.

When you add a new script element (script object, event, property, or enum) to the scripting DOM, the element has a ScriptID and a name (see [“ScriptIDs” on page 610](#)) and [“Names” on page 610](#)). The ScriptID and name are treated as a pair and must be used together. When you

need a new ScriptID/name pair, you must register them with Adobe via an online registration process, to avoid conflicts with other plug-ins.

If you are unsure whether you need to register a ScriptID/name pair for the elements you want to add to the scripting DOM, always do the safe thing. *Register a new unique ScriptID/name pair.*

Use the ScriptID/name pairs you register consistently in your code:

- If you allocate a pair to identify a script object (for example, ‘myob’/”my object”), always use this pair to identify this type of script object.
- If you allocate a pair to identify an event (for example, ‘myev’/”my event”), always use this pair to identify this event.
- If you allocate a pair to identify a property (for example, ‘mypr’/”my property”), always use this pair to identify this type of property.
- Follow this consistency rule with the ScriptID/name pairs you register for other kinds of script elements.

ScriptID/name registration Web page

The ScriptID/name registration database is accessed via the following Web page:

<http://partners.adobe.com/public/developer/indesign/devcenter.html>

All plug-in developers—third party *and* Adobe engineers—register new ScriptID/name pairs via this Web page when needed.

The scenarios below indicate situations when a new ScriptID/name pair is needed. Do not use an arbitrarily chosen ScriptID/name pair as a new ScriptID/name pair. If the ScriptID/name pair you want is already registered, you must choose *and register* an alternative. Follow the procedures outlined in the scenarios below.

All plug-in developers must check for ScriptID/name pair conflicts with Adobe plug-ins, by loading their plug-in under the debug build of the application having deleted the application’s SavedData file before launching. If conflicts are detected, asserts are raised on start-up. Developers must change their scripting resources to fix any conflicts and be able to start the application without asserts.

Reserved words in each scripting language (that do not yet have any corresponding IDs) are pre-populated in the ASN ScriptID/name pair database with arbitrarily chosen IDs.

NOTE: Adobe-registered ScriptID/name pairs for InDesign CS4 are documented in “[Scripting DOM reference](#)” on page 641.

Adding a new script object

1. Choose the ScriptID/Name pairs for your script object. If your object has a collection you need two pairs; the second pair is for the collection. If your object is a singleton, you need only one pair for the object; however, you need a second pair for a new property, to expose your new object on its parent or parents.
2. Make your plug-in scriptable, then test against the debug application build and resolve any conflicts with Adobe-registered ScriptID/name pairs.

3. Register the new, unique ScriptID/name pairs (see [“ScriptID/name registration Web page” on page 613](#)). Conflicts with any other third-party developers' objects are mitigated by this registration.

Adding a new property or event to an Adobe script object

You can add a new property or event to the application or document script object (kApplicationObjectScriptElement or kDocumentObjectScriptElement). Follow these steps:

1. Choose the ScriptID/Name pair for your property or event.
2. Make your plug-in scriptable, then test against the debug application build and resolve any conflicts with Adobe-registered ScriptID/name pairs.
3. Register the new, unique ScriptID/name pairs (see [“ScriptID/name registration Web page” on page 613](#)). Conflicts with any other third-party developers' properties/events are mitigated by this registration.

Adding a new suite or enum

- Choose the ScriptID/Name pairs for your suite or enum.
- Make your plug-in scriptable then test against debug application build and resolve any conflicts with Adobe registered ScriptID/Name pairs.
- Register the new, unique ScriptID/Name pairs (see [“ScriptID/name registration Web page” on page 613](#)). Conflicts with any other third party developers' suites/enums will be mitigated by this registration.

Adding a new property or event to an Adobe script object using an Adobe ScriptID/name pair

Suppose you want to add Adobe's name property (kNamePropertyScriptElement) to the page-item script object (kPageItemObjectScriptElement). In this example, the ScriptID/name pair is 'pnam'/'name' and is registered by Adobe.

NOTE: Do not under any circumstances do this. If you do this, you are creating a potential conflict should the same ScriptID/name pair be added by another developer.

Never use Adobe-registered ScriptID/name pairs to add elements to Adobe script objects. Instead, register your own ScriptID/name pair for any new element you add to an Adobe script object. See [“Adding a new property or event to an Adobe script object” on page 614](#).

NOTE: *If you ignore this guideline, you risk conflict with other parties, and someone will have to give in. Adobe will not mediate such disputes.*

You can re-use an Adobe-registered ScriptID/name pair in your own script object. This is required if you are overriding an event or property in any base script object provided by Adobe. When adding your new object, follow the guidelines in [“Adding a new script object” on page 613](#).

If you already registered the ScriptID/name pair for your element, this scenario does not apply to you: you are not re-using an Adobe ScriptID/name pair). In this situation, the only party you can clash with is yourself, so the resolution is under your control.

Scripting data types

The data types that can appear in Property and Event statements are listed in [Table 143](#). These types are defined as ODFRC macros in `<SDK>/source/public/Includes/ScriptInfoTypes.fh`. A table key follows:

- *default* — A value-type macro of the desired type
- *enum_id* — The ScriptElementID of an enum.
- *length* — The number of items in the array. If it varies, use `kVariableLength`.
- *min, max, default* — A value of the relevant type
- *object_id* — The ScriptElementID of an object.
- *struct_type_list* — A list of *two* or more StructField's separated by commas. A StructField consists of a field name (string) and (non-Void) type.
- *typedef_id* — A valid ScriptElementID of a typedef.
- *variable_type_list* — A list of one or more basic types separated by commas.

TABLE 143 Scripting data types

ODFRC type	Description	ODL type	AETE type
VoidType	Void	void	typeNull
Int16Type	Short integer	short	typeShortInteger
Int16DefaultType (<i>default</i>)	Default short Integer	short	typeShortInteger
Int16MinMaxType (<i>min, max</i>)	Short integer range	short	typeShortInteger
Int16MinMaxDefaultType (<i>min, max, default</i>)	Default short integer range	short	typeShortInteger
Int32Type	Long integer	long	typeLongInteger
Int32DefaultType (<i>default</i>)	Default long Integer	long	typeLongInteger
Int32MinMaxType (<i>min, max</i>)	Long integer range	long	typeLongInteger
Int32MinMaxDefaultType (<i>min, max, default</i>)	Default long integer range	long	typeLongInteger
BoolType	Boolean	VARIANT_BOOL	typeBoolean
BoolDefaultType (<i>default</i>)	Default boolean	VARIANT_BOOL	typeBoolean
StringType	String	BSTR	typeChar
StringDefaultType (<i>default</i>)	Default string	BSTR	typeChar
UnitType	Measurement unit	VARIANT	cFixed
UnitDefaultType (<i>default</i>)	Default measurement unit	VARIANT	cFixed

ODFRC type	Description	ODL type	AETE type
UnitMinMaxType (<i>min, max</i>)	Measurement unit range	VARIANT	cFixed
UnitMinMaxDefaultType (<i>min, max, default</i>)	Default measurement unit range	VARIANT	cFixed
RealType	Real number	double	cFixed
RealDefaultType (<i>default</i>)	Default real number	double	cFixed
RealMinMaxType (<i>min, max</i>)	Real number range	double	cFixed
RealMinMaxDefaultType (<i>min, max, default</i>)	Default real number range	double	cFixed
DateType	Date or Time	DATE	typeLongDateTime
FileType	File name or path	BSTR or VARIANT	typeAlias
KeyStringDefaultType (<i>default</i>)	Key string (untranslated version of a translatable string)	BSTR	typeChar
EnumType (<i>enum_id</i>)	Enum	enum's name	enum's ScriptID
EnumDefaultType (<i>enum_id, default</i>)	Default enum	enum's name	enum's ScriptID
ObjectType (<i>object_id</i>)	Object	IDispatch*	cObjectSpecifier
Int16ArrayType (<i>length</i>)	Array of short integers	VARIANT	typeShortInteger (listOfItems)
Int16MinMaxArrayType (<i>length, min, max</i>)	Array of short integer ranges	VARIANT	typeShortInteger (listOfItems)
Int32ArrayType (<i>length</i>)	Array of long integers	VARIANT	typeLongInteger (listOfItems)
Int32MinMaxArrayType (<i>length, min, max</i>)	Array of long integer ranges	VARIANT	typeLongInteger (listOfItems)
BoolArrayType (<i>length</i>)	Array of booleans	VARIANT	typeBoolean (listOfItems)
StringArrayType (<i>length</i>)	Array of strings	VARIANT	typeChar (listOfItems)
UnitArrayType (<i>length</i>)	Array of measurement units	VARIANT	cFixed (listOfItems)
UnitMinMaxArrayType (<i>length, min, max</i>)	Array of measurement unit ranges	VARIANT	cFixed (listOfItems)
RealArrayType (<i>length</i>)	Array of real numbers	VARIANT	cFixed (listOfItems)

ODFRC type	Description	ODL type	AETE type
RealMinMaxArrayType (<i>length</i> , <i>min</i> , <i>max</i>)	Array of real number ranges	VARIANT	cFixed (listOfItems)
DateArrayType (<i>length</i>)	Array of dates/times	VARIANT	typeLongDateTime (listOfItems)
FileArrayType (<i>length</i>)	Array of file names/paths	VARIANT	typeAlias (listOfItems)
EnumArrayType (<i>enum_id</i> , <i>length</i>)	Array of enum values	VARIANT	enum's ScriptID (listOfItems)
ObjectArrayType (<i>object_id</i> , <i>length</i>)	Array of objects	IDispatch*	cObjectSpecifier (listOfItems)
RecordType	List of key/value pairs	VARIANT	typeAERecord
StructType { <i>struct_type_list</i> }	Structure	VARIANT	typeWildcard
StructArrayType (<i>length</i>) { <i>struct_type_list</i> }	Array of structures	VARIANT	typeWildcard
TypeDefType(<i>typedef_id</i>)	Type definition	(defined type is substituted)	(defined type is substituted)
TypeDefArrayType(<i>typedef_id</i> , <i>length</i>)	Array of type definitions	(defined type is substituted)	(defined type is substituted)
VariableType { <i>variable_type_list</i> }	Variable	VARIANT	typeWildcard
VariableDefaultType <i>default</i> , { <i>variable_type_list</i> }	Variable with default	VARIANT	typeWildcard
VariableArrayType (<i>length</i>) { <i>variable_type_list</i> }	Array of variable contents	VARIANT	typeWildcard (listOfItems)

VariableType examples

See [Table 144](#):

TABLE 144 VariableType examples

Example	Description
VariableType{ FileType, FileArrayType(kVariableLength) }	A single file or an array of files.
VariableType{ ObjectType(kPageItemObjectScriptElement), ObjectArrayType(kPageItemObjectScriptElement, kVariableLength) }	A single page item or an array of page items.
VariableType{ StringType, EnumType(kNothingEnumScriptElement) }	A string or the enumeration “none.”
VariableType{ EnumType(kAnchorPointEnumScriptElement), UnitArrayType(2) }	An anchor point enumeration or an array of two unit values (i.e., a measurement point).

Example	Description
<code>VariableType{ ObjectType(kSwatchObjectScriptElement), StringType }</code>	A swatch object or a string (i.e., the name of the swatch).
<code>VariableDefaultType StringValue("None"), { StringType, FileType }</code>	A string or file (defaults to the string "None").
<code>VariableArrayType(kVariableLength) { ObjectType(kPageItemObjectScriptElement), ObjectType(kImageObjectScriptElement), ObjectType(kEPSObjectScriptElement), ObjectType(kPDFObjectScriptElement) }</code>	An array of one or more page items, images, EPS files, and/or PDF files.

Object-sensitive types

Object-sensitive types are useful for events and properties that appear on multiple script objects. In such cases, it makes sense for the type of a property or the return type of an event to be the type of the script object on which the event or property is exposed. A field containing `ObjectType(kContainerObjectScriptElement)` is used to indicate this. For example, the create event that can be re-used by new script objects uses it as shown in [Example 70](#):

EXAMPLE 70 *Using `objecttype(kContainerObjectScriptElement)` to define an event that returns the type of the script object on which it is exposed*

```
Event
{
    kCreateEventScriptElement,
    e_Create,
    "add",
    "Create a new ^Object",
    ObjectType( kContainerObjectScriptElement ),
    "The new ^Object",
    {
        WITHPROPERTIESPARAM,
    }
}
```

The `ObjectType(kContainerObjectScriptElement)` is commonly used by:

- The type of the AppleScript object reference property.
- The type of the object returned by a create or duplicate event.
- The type of a parameter to the move event.

Less often, a property or event parameter may have the type of the parent script object. For these cases, use `ObjectType(kContainerParentScriptElement)` as the type. See [Example 71](#):

EXAMPLE 71 Using ObjectType (kContainerParentScriptElement)

```
Property
{
  kParentPropertyScriptElement,
  p_Parent,
  "parent",
  "The ^Object's parent",
  ObjectType(kContainerParentScriptElement),
  {}
  kNoAttributeClass,
}
```

The `ObjectType(kContainerParentScriptElement)` is used by:

- The type of the parent property.
- The type of the reference parameter to a move, duplicate, or create event.

Record type

A “record” is a list of key/value pairs, where the key is the `ScriptID` of a property and the value is any appropriate one for that property. A `RecordType` declaration takes an `object_id`, which is the `ScriptElementID` of the object to which the properties in the record apply. For example:

- `RecordType(kDocumentEventScriptElement)` indicates the keys in the record correspond to properties of the document object.
- Furthermore, you can use an object-sensitive type like `RecordType(kContainerObjectScriptElement)`. In a property resource, this indicates the keys correspond to properties on the object that contains the property; in an event’s parameter resource, this indicates they correspond to properties on the object that contains the event.

Script-object inheritance

Script-object inheritance is what you use to construct specialized script objects from existing ones. If one script object is based on another, it inherits the base object’s events and properties. It does not inherit its parents, children/collections, or collection events. The root of the script-object inheritance hierarchy is `kAnyObjectScriptElement`.

A script object is based on another by specifying the base object in its `Object` statement (see “Object element” on page 593). Normally, a new script object is based on one of the base script objects shown in Table 145:

TABLE 145 Base script objects

ScriptElementID	Description	Based on
kNonIDBasedObjectScriptElement	A non-ID-based script object. A proxy object in scripting. The text script objects that represent character, word and line for example.	kAnyObjectScriptElement
kNonUniqueIDBasedObjectScriptElement	A non-unique-ID-based script object. A script object that exposes a scriptable boss that has an ID of some sort but not a UID e.g. table cells.	kAnyObjectScriptElement
kPreferencesObjectScriptElement	A script object that exposes preferences.	kNonIDBasedObjectScriptElement
kUniqueIDBasedObjectScriptElement	A unique-ID-based script object. A script object that exposes a scriptable boss that has a UID.	kAnyObjectScriptElement

A new script object also can be based on an existing script object. The script object that represents page items is `kPageItemObjectScriptElement`, as shown in [Example 72](#). An oval is a kind of page item, so it is based on `kPageItemObjectScriptElement`, as shown in [Example 73](#).

EXAMPLE 72 `kPageItemObjectScriptElement`

```
Object
{
  kPageItemObjectScriptElement,
  c_PageItem,
  "page item",
  "An item on a page, including rectangles, ellipses...",
  kPageItem_CLSID,
  c_PageItems,
  "The page items collection ...",
  "All page items",
  kPageItems_CLSID,
  kUniqueIDBasedObjectScriptElement,
  kLayoutSuiteScriptElement,
}
```


EXAMPLE 73 *kOvalObjectScriptElement* is based on *kPageItemObjectScriptElement*

```

Object
{
    kOvalObjectScriptElement,
    c_Oval,
    "oval",
    "An ellipse",
    kOval_CLSID,
    c_Ovals,
    "ovals",
    "A collection of ellipses",
    kOvals_CLSID,
    kPageItemObjectScriptElement, // Script object inheritance
    kLayoutSuiteScriptElement,
}

```

NOTE: Basing a script object on another implies that a collection of the base objects (e.g., a spread's collection of page items) automatically include any existing subclass objects (e.g., the spread's ovals). This is a requirement for the IDML file format and programmatically depends on the implementation of the `IScriptProvider::GetObject` methods for the base object's collection.

Overloading an existing event or property

Two script objects can have the same property or event, but with a slightly different definition. For example, the descriptions, types of the property, or parameters of the event may differ. In this case, you must define a unique `ScriptElementID` for each resource. The name and `ScriptID` must be identical in both resources. Other information (description, type, parameters, etc.) may be identical or different.

Versioning of scripting resources

The sections below describe how to work with versioning in the scripting DOM (see [“Versioning the scripting DOM” on page 569](#)).

Versioned resources

Scripting resources include data for the first and last version of each script element. This data may be altered on an element-by-element basis.

Adding a new resource

New script elements (objects, properties, events, etc.) are added to the scripting DOM using a `VersionedScriptElementInfo` statement. For the version information, specify the first version of `InDesign` for which the contained elements are applicable. The version information is called the context for the elements. See [Example 74](#):

EXAMPLE 74 *VersionedScriptElementInfo* statement for InDesign CS4

```
resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 4010 )
{
  //Contexts
  {
    //The contained elements are exposed beginning in InDesign CS4
    kFiredrakeScriptVersion, kCoreScriptManagerBoss, kWildFS, k_Wild,
  }
  //Elements
  {
    // Object, Event, Property, Enum and Provider statements go here
  }
} ;
```

VersionedScriptElementInfo resources can accommodate multiple contexts. See [Example 75](#):

EXAMPLE 75 *VersionedScriptElementInfo* statement for InDesign CS4 and InDesign Server

```
resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 4010 )
{
  //Contexts
  {
    //The contained elements are only relevant to the Roman feature set in InDesign
    kFiredrakeScriptVersion, kCoreScriptManagerBoss, kInDesignRomanFS, k_Wild,
    //but are exposed for all feature sets in the InDesign Server product
    kFiredrakeScriptVersion, kCoreScriptManagerBoss, kInDesignServerAllLanguagesFS,
    k_Wild,
  }
  //Elements
  {
    ...
  }
} ;
```

Specifying an obsolete element

To designate an existing resource as obsolete (that is, no longer part of the scripting DOM as of the current version), add “Obsolete” to the beginning of the keyword for the type of element (e.g., ObsoleteSuite, ObsoleteObject, ObsoleteProperty, etc.) in the existing resource. Also, add version information to specify the first version of InDesign for which the element is no longer applicable. If you are removing a resource (rather than revising it), do not forget to also obsolete the relevant Provider resource.

EXAMPLE 76 Removing a script element from the scripting DOM

```

resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 20 ) //An existing resource
{
  //Contexts
  {
    //The contained elements were exposed by InDesign CS1
    kInitialScriptVersion, kCoreScriptManagerBoss, kWildFS, k_Wild,
  }
  //Elements
  {
    ObsoleteProperty
    {
      kBasilScriptVersion, //This element is no longer exposed as of Basil
      kOldInfoPropertyScriptElement,
      p_OldInfo,
      "some old info",
      "Information no longer relevant after Cobalt",
      StringType,
      {}
      kNoAttributeClass,
    }

    ObsoleteProvider
    {
      kBasilScriptVersion, //This element is not exposed as of Basil
      kApplicationScriptProviderBoss,
      {
        Object{ kApplicationObjectScriptElement },
        Property{ kOldInfoPropertyScriptElement, kReadWrite },
      }
    }

    ... //Other, unaffected elements may remain in this resource
  }
} ;

```

Splitting a provider resource

If the property is only one of many on an object that is being obsoleted, you must pull it out into a new `ObsoleteProvider` resource, rather than obsoleting the entire provider. For example, [Example 77](#) shows an existing resource with two properties, foo and bar”

EXAMPLE 77 A Provider to be split due to an obsoleted property

```

Provider
{
  kApplicationScriptProviderBoss,
  {
    Object{ kApplicationObjectScriptElement },
    Property{ kFooPropertyScriptElement, kReadWrite },
    Property{ kBarPropertyScriptElement, kReadWrite },
  }
}

```

[Example 78](#) shows what the resources would look like after making the “Foo” property obsolete:

EXAMPLE 78 Split providers

```

Provider
{
    kApplicationScriptProviderBoss,
    {
        Object{ kApplicationObjectScriptElement },
        Property{ kBarPropertyScriptElement, kReadWrite }, //This property is NOT
obsolete
    }
}

ObsoleteProvider
{
    kBasilScriptVersion, //This element is not exposed as of Basil
    kApplicationScriptProviderBoss,
    {
        Object{ kApplicationObjectScriptElement },
        Property{ kFooPropertyScriptElement, kReadWrite }, //This property is obsolete
    }
}

```

Changing an existing property

This involves the following steps:

1. Indicating the existing definition is obsolete.
2. Creating a revised definition in a new VersionedScriptElementInfo statement.

[Example 79](#) shows the existing resource before any changes:

EXAMPLE 79 Existing resource before changes

```

resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 10 )
{
    //Contexts
    {
        kInitialScriptVersion, kCoreScriptManagerBoss, kWildFS, k_Wild,
    }
    //Elements
    {
        Property
        {
            kTolerancePropertyScriptElement,
            p_Tolerance,
            "tolerance",
            "Tolerance",
            Int32Type,
            {}
            kNoAttributeClass,
        }
    }
}

```

```

    ...      //Other elements
  }
} ;

```

[Example 80](#) shows the existing resource after making it obsolete (in the existing .fr file):

EXAMPLE 80 Existing resource after making it obsolete

```

resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 10 )
{
  //Contexts
  {
    kInitialScriptVersion, kCoreScriptManagerBoss, kWildFS, k_Wild,
  }
  //Elements
  {
    ObsoleteProperty //Change type to RealType for Firedrake
    {
      kFiredrakeScriptVersion,
      kTolerancePropertyScriptElement,
      p_Tolerance,
      "tolerance",
      "Tolerance",
      Int32Type,
      {}
      kNoAttributeClass,
    }
    ...      //Other, unchanged elements that remain exposed "as is" in Firedrake
  }
} ;

```

[Example 81](#) shows the new, corrected resource (in a new _40.fr file):

EXAMPLE 81 New, corrected resource

```

resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 4010 )
{
  //Contexts
  {
    kFiredrakeScriptVersion, kCoreScriptManagerBoss, kWildFS, k_Wild,
  }
  //Elements
  {
    Property //Change type to RealType for Firedrake
    {
      kTolerancePropertyScriptElement,
      p_Tolerance,
      "tolerance",
      "Tolerance",
      RealType,
      {}
      kNoAttributeClass,
    }
  }
} ;

```

Changing an existing event

This involves the following steps:

1. Indicating the existing definition is obsolete.
2. Creating a revised definition in a new `VersionedScriptElementInfo` statement.

[Example 82](#) shows the statement that defines the event before any changes:

EXAMPLE 82 Event to be changed

```
resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 200 )
{
  //Contexts
  {
    kInitialScriptVersion, kCoreScriptManagerBoss, kWildFS, k_Wild,
  }
  {
    Event
    {
      kDeleteSwatchEventScriptElement,
      e_Delete,
      "delete",
      "Delete swatch",
      VoidType,
      {
        p_Replace, "replacing with", "The swatch to apply in place of this one",
        ObjectType( kSwatchObjectScriptElement ), kRequired,
      }
    }
    ... //Other elements
  }
} ;
```

The statement is edited in the existing `.fr` file, to indicate the existing definition is obsolete (see [“Specifying an obsolete element” on page 622](#)). See [Example 83](#):

EXAMPLE 83 Obsoleting the event to be changed

```
resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 200 )
{
  //Contexts
  {
    kInitialScriptVersion, kCoreScriptManagerBoss, kWildFS, k_Wild,
  }
  //Elements
  {
    ObsoleteEvent
    {
      kFiredrakeScriptVersion,
      kDeleteSwatchEventScriptElement,
      e_Delete,
      "delete",
      "Delete swatch",
    }
  }
}
```

```

VoidType,
{
  p_Replace, "replacing with", "The swatch to apply in place of this one",
ObjectType( kSwatchObjectScriptElement ), kRequired,
}
}
... //Other, unchanged elements that remain exposed "as is" in InDesign CS4
}
} ;

```

A new `VersionedScriptElementInfo` statement (in a new `_40.fr` file) is used to define the change. See [Example 84](#):

EXAMPLE 84 *Event changed to make a parameter optional as of InDesign CS4*

```

resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 40200 )
{
  //Contexts
  {
    kFiredrakeScriptVersion, kCoreScriptManagerBoss, kWildFS, k_Wild,
  }
  //Elements
  {
    Event //Parameter is required in InDesign CS1, but optional in InDesign CS4
    {
      kDeleteSwatchEventScriptElement,
      e_Delete,
      "delete",
      "Delete swatch",
      VoidType,
      {
        p_Replace, "replacing with", "The swatch to apply in place of this one",
        ObjectType( kSwatchObjectScriptElement ), kOptional,
      }
    }
  }
} ;

```

Changing an existing enum

New enumerators can be added and removed using `Enumerator` and `ObsoleteEnumerator` elements. To add an additional enumerator, however, instead of obsoleting the entire enum, you can use an enumerator resource. For example, suppose you want to add a new enumerator to the enum shown in [Example 85](#):

EXAMPLE 85 An enum before additional enumerator is added

```
resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 110 )
{
  { kInitialScriptVersion, kCoreScriptManagerBoss, kAllProductsJapaneseFS, k_Wild, }
  {
    Enum
    {
      kKinsokuTypeEnumScriptElement,
      en_KinsokuType,
      "kinsoku type",
      "Kinsoku type",
      {
        en_KinsokuPushInFirst, "kinsoku push in first", "Kinsoku push in first",
        en_KinsokuPushOutFirst, "kinsoku push out first", "Kinsoku push out first",
        en_KinsokuPushOutOnly, "kinsoku push out only", "Kinsoku push out only",
      }
    }
    ... //Other elements
  } ;
}
```

Using an enumerator resource, as shown in [Example 86](#), you can add an additional enumerator to the existing enum without obsoleting the existing one:

EXAMPLE 86 Adding a new enumerator using the enumerator resource

```
resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 40110 )
{
  //Contexts
  {
    kFiredrakeScriptVersion, kCoreScriptManagerBoss, kAllProductsJapaneseFS, k_Wild,
  }
  //Elements
  {
    Enumerator
    {
      kKinsokuTypeEnumScriptElement,
      {
        en_KinsokuPushInAlways, "kinsoku push in always", "Kinsoku push in always", //new
        enumerator
      }
    }
  }
} ;
```

You also can use this approach for obsoleting one (or more) enumerators without obsoleting the entire enum.

[Example 87](#) shows the existing resource:

EXAMPLE 87 Existing resource

```
Enum
{
    kTextImportCharacterSetEnumScriptElement,
    en_TextImportCharacterSet,
    "text import character set",
    "Character set options for importing text files.",
    {
        en_ANSI, "ansi", "The ANSI character set.",
        en_ASCII, "ASCII", "ASCII",
        en_DOSLatin2, "DOS latin 2", "DOS Latin 2",
        en_CSUnicode, "unicode", "The Unicode character set.",
        en_ShiftJIS83pv, "RecommendShiftJIS83pv", "The Recommend:Shift_JIS 83pv
character set.",
        ... //Other enumerators
    }
}
```

Move the obsolete enumerator(s) into a separate, obsolete enumerator resource:

EXAMPLE 88 The changed enum resource

```
Enum
{
    kTextImportCharacterSetEnumScriptElement,
    en_TextImportCharacterSet,
    "text import character set",
    "Character set options for importing text files.",
    {
        en_ANSI, "ansi", "The ANSI character set.",
        en_CSUnicode, "unicode", "The Unicode character set.",
        en_ShiftJIS83pv, "RecommendShiftJIS83pv", "The Recommend:Shift_JIS 83pv
character set.",
        ...
    }
}

ObsoleteEnumerator
{
    kBasilScriptVersion,
    kTextImportCharacterSetEnumScriptElement,
    {
        en_ASCII, "ASCII", "ASCII",
        n_DOSLatin2, "DOS latin 2", "DOS Latin 2",
    }
}
```

Client access to the version

The scripting architecture requires that all requests specify which version of the scripting DOM to use.

Via the object model from IScriptProvider implementations

Script providers also can check which version of the scripting DOM to use when handling a request:

```
// IScriptProvider methods have an "IScriptEventData* data" parameter
if ( data->GetRequestContext().GetVersion() >= kFiredrakeScriptVersion )
...

```

Major changes to function across versions should be implemented in a separate script provider (see [“Process for making changes” on page 630](#)) and directed to the correct script provider via a versioned resource.

Via the Object Model from IScriptManager Implementations

This is implemented via the IScriptPreferences interface, which is aggregated by every script manager boss (i.e., those with IScriptManager).

The code is as you would expect:

```
//Where "this" is a subclass of IScriptManager*
InterfacePtr<IScriptPreferences> scriptPrefs( this, UseDefaultIID() );
if ( scriptPrefs->GetVersion() >= kFiredrakeScriptVersion )
...

```

IScriptManager::GetRequestContext() returns a request context based on the current settings (version and locale) of the aggregated IScriptPreferences interface. The default implementation of IScriptManager::CreateScriptEventData() calls GetRequestContext(). This means you must make sure the version information is set correctly before generating the IScriptEventData for a client's request.

Via the scripting DOM

For information on accessing and setting the DOM version through scripting, see [“Running versioned scripts” on page 586](#).

For testing purposes

The Test > Scripting > Set Current DOM version menu contains items to set current DOM version to a variety of versions. These reset *all* active script managers to the selected version.

Process for making changes

Most changes to the scripting DOM require creating a new VersionedScriptElementInfo statement (usually in a new .fr file) and, possibly, a new script provider .cpp file.

Changes that may be made in the existing resource

You can make nonfunctional/superficial changes; e.g., correcting an element's description.

Changes that may be made in the existing script provider

You can fix bugs in the function of the script provider; for example:

- Returns kSuccess but actually fails (no return value).
- Returns error when it is expected to succeed.
- Does something different than promised/expected.

Changes that must be made by versioning the resource and/or script provider

1. Semantic changes to the function of an element:

- Script-provider code change.
- Underlying model code change.

2. Changes to the Context of a Script Resource

- Script manager boss id
- Feature set id
- Locale id

3. Changes to an element's script resource:

- Identity: Name, ScriptID, ScriptElementID.
- Object: Modify GUID, change inheritance, change suite membership.
- Property: Modify type.
- Event: Modify type of return value, add/remove return value, add/remove event parameters.
- Event parameter: Modify type, modify whether optional or required, modify default value.
- Enum: Add/remove enumerators.

4. Changes to a provider's script resource:

- Changes to the implementation of a script-provider boss ClassID.
- Parent: Add/remove, make surrogate or not.
- Event: Add/remove.
- Object: Add/remove, make represent or not
- Property: Add/remove, change read-only access to/from read-write.

5. Delete/add elements and functions:

- Suite
- Object
- Event
- Property

- Enum
- Provider

Protocol for changes

New elements

- Resources — Define new elements in a new `VersionedScriptElementInfo` statement in a new `.fr` file. We recommend, for example, that the name of the new file be of the form `MyScriptInfo60.fr`, to indicate that it was added in Basil and contains version 6.0 resources.
- Code — Implement support for the new elements in a new script provider `.cpp` file. We recommend the name of the file be in the form “`MyScriptProvider60.cpp`,” to indicate it was added in InDesign CS4 and implements version 6.0 support.

Obsolete elements

- Resources — Edit the existing element definition to designate it as obsolete in the existing script info `.fr` file.
- Code — This should require no changes to script provider `.cpp` files.

Altered elements

- Resources — Edit the existing element definition to designate it as obsolete. Define the revised elements in a new `VersionedScriptElementInfo` statement (in a new `.fr` file).
- Code — If the function is changing, implement support for the changed function in a new script provider `.cpp` file. The new script provider needs to contain the code for only the elements that are changing; unchanged elements (properties and events) can still be handled by the existing script provider.

Bug fixes

- Resources — Fixes to resources must be treated as a change to the scripting DOM (see “Altered Elements” above).
- Code — If the functionality is changing radically, implement support for the changed functionality in a new script provider `.cpp` file. Changes to the semantics of an existing element must be treated as a change to the DOM (see “Altered Elements” above).

Client-specific scripting resources

Certain script elements are applicable to only one client of the scripting DOM. These script elements are declared in `VersionedScriptElementInfo` statements, but using the `ClassID` of the client's script manager boss instead of `kCoreScriptManagerBoss`. These script elements are managed automatically by the same `IScriptManagerInfo` interface and are visible (or not) depending on the client that requested the information.

On first launch, all script elements are loaded into a single “database” managed by the scripting plug-in and stored in `SavedData`. Each element includes a member datum of the `ElementCon-`

text class (defined in ScriptInfo.h), which specifies the element's client (core or specific), feature set, locale, and version (first and last).

When a client wants access to the script information database, it must specify a RequestContext (defined in ScriptInfo.h), which indicates the client, feature set, locale, and version in which the client is interested. The client calls `IScriptUtils::QueryScriptInfoManager` or `IScriptUtils::QueryScriptRequestHandler`. If this is the first request using a particular RequestContext, the scripting plug-in creates a new `ScriptInfoManager` boss containing only the relevant elements. If this RequestContext was received previously, the scripting plug-in returns the appropriate interface on the existing boss.

The elements contained in a `ScriptInfoManager` boss for a particular RequestContext include *all* core script elements *plus* all elements specific to the specified client (if any). Script elements are included in the DOM for client X if they are exposed for client X or any parent bosses of X in its boss inheritance hierarchy.

For example, suppose the boss inheritance hierarchy looks like this:

```
kCoreScriptManagerBoss > kINXScriptManagerBoss >
kINXExpandedExportScriptManagerBoss
```

Every DOM includes all core elements exposed to the base script manager `kCoreScriptManagerBoss`. `kINXScriptManagerBoss` gets all core elements plus any elements specifically exposed for it. `kINXExpandedExportScriptManagerBoss` gets everything in the `kINXScriptManagerBoss`'s DOM, plus any INX Expanded (IDML)-specific elements.

If any element is exposed at more than one level, the element exposed to the most derived boss is retained. For example, if an element with the same `ScriptElementID` is exposed to `kCoreScriptManagerBoss` and `kINXScriptManagerBoss`, the one for `kINXScriptManagerBoss` is used. If another element with that `ScriptElementID` is exposed to `kINXExpandedExportScriptManagerBoss`, it would be used for the INX-ALT DOM.

Elements visible to only one client

All `VersionedScriptElementInfo` resources specify a client, the ClassID of a script manager boss. For core script elements, this is `kCoreScriptManagerBoss`. For client-specific script elements, this is the ClassID of the client's script manager boss. See [Example 89](#):

EXAMPLE 89 Client-specific `VersionedScriptElementInfo` statement

```
resource VersionedScriptElementInfo(10)
{
  kInitialScriptVersion,
  kMyScriptManagerBoss, // See Note 1
  kWildFS, k_Wild,
  {
    // See Note 2
  }
};
```

Notes:

1. This is the ClassID of the script manager for the client for which these resources are exposed; e.g., kAppleScriptMgrBoss. See [Table 132](#).
2. Client-specific suite, object, event, property, and provider resources go here.

Elements defined differently by different clients

Attributes of a script element that are intrinsic to its definition (i.e., that appear in fields of the script element's resource) can be changed on a per-client basis. For example, a property might have a different type, or an event might have different parameters.

One way to do this is to define a new script element with its own ScriptElementID, name, and ScriptID. In this case, both versions of the element are available. Alternatively, you can use the same ScriptElementID, but change some or all of the other attributes. In this case, only the client-specific version of the element is available for that client. In either case, the alternative script element could be handled by the same or a different script provider as the original one, since that is determined by the provider resource.

For example, in [Example 90](#), the delete event for the swatch object has one parameter by default but no parameters for my client (which also uses a different script provider to handle the event):

EXAMPLE 90 Script elements defined differently by different clients

```
resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 20 )
{
  {
    kInitialScriptVersion, kCoreScriptManagerBoss, kWildFS, k_Wild,
  }
  {
    Event
    {
      kDeleteSwatchEventScriptElement,
      e_Delete,
      "delete",
      "Delete swatch",
      VoidType,
      {
        p_Replace, "replacing with", "The swatch to apply in place of this one",
        VariableType{ ObjectType( kSwatchObjectScriptElement ), StringType }, kRequired,
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```

Provider
{
kCoreSwatchScriptProviderBoss,
{
Object{ kSwatchObjectScriptElement },
Property{ kDeleteSwatchEventScriptElement },
}
}
} ;

resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 21 )
{
{
kInitialScriptVersion, kMyScriptManagerBoss, kWildFS, k_Wild,
}
{
Event
{
kDeleteSwatchEventScriptElement,
e_Delete,
"delete",
"Delete swatch",
VoidType,
{
}
}
}
}

Provider
{
kMySwatchScriptProviderBoss,
{
Object{ kSwatchObjectScriptElement },
Event{ kDeleteSwatchEventScriptElement},
}
}
} ;

```

Relationships between elements that are different for different clients

In some cases, attributes of a script element that are related to its behavior for a specific object are set in the provider resources; for example, whether an object has a particular parent or whether a property is read-only or read-write. For a particular client to obtain behavior that is different than the core attributes set in the core resources, define a separate provider resource in a context-sensitive `VersionedScriptElementInfo` resource for that client.

In [Example 91](#), the name property of the hyphenation exception object is read-only by default but read-write for my client (and still handled by the same script provider implementation):

EXAMPLE 91 Relationships between elements that are different for different clients

```

resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 30 )
{
  {
    kInitialScriptVersion, kCoreScriptManagerBoss, kWildFS, k_Wild,
  }
  {
    Provider
    {
      kHyphExceptionScriptProviderBoss,
      {
        Object{ kHyphenationExceptionObjectScriptElement },
        Property{ kNamePropertyScriptElement, kReadOnly },
      }
    }
  }
} ;

resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 31 )
{
  {
    kInitialScriptVersion, kMyScriptManagerBoss, kWildFS, k_Wild,
  }
  {
    Provider
    {
      kHyphExceptionScriptProviderBoss,
      {
        Object{ kHyphenationExceptionObjectScriptElement },
        Property{ kNamePropertyScriptElement, kReadWrite },
      }
    }
  }
} ;

```

Relationships between elements that are not applicable to a particular client

By default, elements specified in a core resource are available in all clients, although sometimes these elements have an alternative, client-specific definition (see above). In most cases, however, whether these elements actually are accessible to a user of the client is determined by whether they appear in a provider resource. That is because the provider resources determine the parent/child relationships of the DOM hierarchy, as well as which events and properties are supported by which objects. This makes it possible for a client to hide a particular element by hiding relationships between elements. (This is not true of core suite or enum elements, which, therefore, cannot be hidden.)

To remove a relationship, define a provider resource that uses `kNotSupported` as the identifier of the script provider. Doing so means any relationships in that provider resource specifically is *not* supported for the client in question.

In [Example 92](#), a client-specific provider resource is used to add additional parents for the link object and to remove a property these parents use to access links in the default case:

EXAMPLE 92 Relationships between elements that are not applicable to a particular client

```

resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 40 )
{
  {
    kInitialScriptVersion, kCoreScriptManagerBoss, kInDesignAllLanguagesFS, k_Wild,
  }
  {
    //For core clients, only the Document has a links collection
    Provider
    {
      kLinkScriptProviderBoss,
      {
        SurrogateParent{ kDocumentObjectScriptElement },
        RepresentObject{ kLinkObjectScriptElement },
        CollectionEvent{ kCountEventScriptElement },
      }
    }

    Property
    {
      kItemLinkPropertyScriptElement,
      p_Link,
      "item link",
      "Link to a placed file",
      ObjectType( kLinkObjectScriptElement ),
      {}
      kNoAttributeClass,
    }

    //For core clients, there is a item link property on linkable objects
    Provider
    {
      kLinkScriptProviderBoss,
      {
        Object{ kStoryObjectScriptElement },
        Object{ kGraphicObjectScriptElement },
        Property{ kItemLinkPropertyScriptElement, kReadOnly },
      }
    }
  }
} ;

resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 41 )
{
  {
    {
      kInitialScriptVersion, kMyScriptManagerBoss, kInDesignAllLanguagesFS, k_Wild,
    }
  }
}

```

```

//For my client, there is a links collection on linkable objects
Provider
{
kLinkScriptProviderBoss,
{
Parent{ kStoryObjectScriptElement },
Parent{ kImageObjectScriptElement },
Parent{ kEPSObjectScriptElement },
Parent{ kWMFObjectScriptElement },
Parent{ kPICTObjectScriptElement },
Parent{ kPDFObjectScriptElement },
RepresentObject{ kLinkObjectScriptElement },
CollectionEvent{ kCountEventScriptElement },
}
}

//For my client, there is no item link property on linkable objects
Provider
{
kNotSupported,
{
Object{ kStoryObjectScriptElement },
Object{ kGraphicObjectScriptElement },
Property{ kItemLinkPropertyScriptElement, kReadOnly },
}
}
} ;

```

Elements that are not applicable to a particular object

It also is possible to use `kNotSupported` to remove elements from an object. Typically, this is used for a subclass object that does not want to inherit elements from its parent object type. We discourage this approach, since by definition subclasses should support all of their parent class' DOM.

In the following example, the name property and delete event are removed from the foo object.

```

resource VersionedScriptElementInfo( 40 )
{
{
kInitialScriptVersion, kCoreScriptManagerBoss, kWildFS, k_Wild,
}
{
Provider
{
kNotSupported,
{
Object{ kFooObjectScriptElement },
Property{ kNamePropertyScriptElement, kReadOnly },
Event{ kDeleteEventScriptElement }
}
}
}
} ;

```

Key scripting APIs

This section contains lists of commonly used scripting-related APIs. For reference documentation, either search in `<SDK>/docs/references/index.chm` for the specified class by name or, if you uncompressed the HTML-based API documentation (`sdkdocs.tar.gz`), view `<SDK>/docs/references/api/class{ClassName}.html` with your HTML browser.

[Table 146](#) lists common scripting-related interfaces. [Table 147](#) lists common partial implementation classes. [Table 148](#) lists other headers. For more information, see the API documentation.

TABLE 146 Interfaces

Interface	Location / description
IExportProviderSignalData	Data interface for export providers to use when signaling responders. This is not scripting specific.
IScript	<code><SDK>/public/interfaces/architecture/IScript.h</code>
IScriptArgs	For passing arguments into scripts.
IScriptCoreFunctor	Represent a function object in scripting.
IScriptError	Contains error state information for a scripting request.
IScriptErrorUtils	Used to set event data for common errors.
IScriptEvent	The interface for an attachable event in scripting.
IScriptEventData	<code><SDK>/public/interfaces/architecture/IScriptEventData.h</code>
IScriptEventTarget	Any object that can be the target of attachable events in scripting should aggregate this interface to the same boss as its IID_ISCRIPT.
IScriptInfoManager	Manages information about elements in the scripting DOM
IScriptLabel	Script label.
IScriptManager	Provides basic information about support for a particular scripting client (including IDML)
IScriptObjectMgr	Manages non-persistent (i.e., proxy) script objects.
IScriptObjectParent	Allows script objects (usually proxy script objects) to refer to the parent object in the scripting DOM.
IScriptPreferences	Preferences for the application environment when executing a script.
IScriptProvider	<code><SDK>/public/interfaces/architecture/IScriptProvider.h</code>
IScriptRequestHandler	<code><SDK>/public/interfaces/architecture/IScriptRequestHandler.h</code>

Interface	Location / description
IScriptRequestHandler	Matches requests from clients to the appropriate script provider.
IScriptRunner	Runs a script from within the application.
IScriptUtils	<SDK>/public/interfaces/architecture/IScriptUtils.h
ITextObjectParent	This interface must be implemented for any scripting object that wants to act as a parent of text objects in the scripting DOM.

TABLE 147 Partial Implementation Classes

Class	Location
CProxyScript	<SDK>/public/includes/CProxyScript.h
CScript	<SDK>/public/includes/CScript.h
CScriptEventData	<SDK>/public/includes/ CScriptEventData.h
CScriptProvider	<SDK>/public/includes/CScriptProvider.h
PrefsScriptProvider	<SDK>/public/includes/PrefsScriptProvider.h
RepresentScriptProvider	<SDK>/public/includes/CScriptProvider.h

TABLE 148 Other headers

Header file	Location
ScriptData.h	<SDK>/public/includes/ScriptData.h
ScriptInfo.h	<SDK>/public/includes/ScriptInfo.h
ScriptInfoTypes.(f)h	<SDK>/public/includes/ScriptInfoTypes.(f)h
ScriptingDefs.h	<SDK>/public/includes/ScriptingDefs.h
ScriptingID.h	<SDK>/public/interfaces/architecture/ScriptingID.h This header is needed in .fr files for base boss class ID declarations.

Scripting DOM reference

The scripting DOM made available for developers to extend is documented by the references listed in [Table 149](#). New script objects, properties, and events are added to the script objects defined in these references. Most of the scripting DOM is common to all client scripting managers; however, separate references for IDML, INX, AppleScript, JavaScript, and Visual Basic are provided for completeness, so you can see the differences. These mainly show how base script objects adapt to meet the needs of each script manager. If you need information on the scripting DOM for another product (e.g., InCopy), version (e.g., CS1) or feature-set locale (e.g., Japanese), you can create your own dump containing the desired information (see [“Dumping the scripting DOM” on page 642.](#))

NOTE: Most of the ScriptIDs in the reference are defined as symbols in the header file `ScriptingDefs.h`.

TABLE 149 *Scripting DOM references for C++ programmers*

Scripting DOM reference	Location
<i>Adobe InDesign CS4 IDML Scripting DOM Reference for C++ Programmers</i>	<SDK>/docs/references/scripting-dom-idml-idr60.html
<i>Adobe InDesign CS4 INX Scripting DOM Reference for C++ Programmers</i>	<SDK>/docs/references/scripting-dom-inx-idr60.html
<i>Adobe InDesign CS4 AppleScript Scripting DOM Reference for C++ Programmers</i>	<SDK>/docs/references/scripting-dom-applescript-idr60.html
<i>Adobe InDesign CS4 JavaScript Scripting DOM Reference for C++ Programmers</i>	<SDK>/docs/references/scripting-dom-javascript-idr60.html
<i>Adobe InDesign CS4 Visual Basic Scripting DOM Reference for C++ Programmers</i>	<SDK>/docs/references/scripting-dom-visualbasic-idr60.html

Scripting DOM versioning

The scripting DOM is versioned by product, version, feature-set locale, and scripting client. This means each product (InDesign, InCopy, and InDesign Server) has several distinct scripting DOMs. For more information, see `RequestContext` in the API documentation. For example, each row in [Table 150](#) represents an instance of a scripting DOM in InDesign CS4. The scripting DOM varies by scripting client, but most of the DOM is core. There can be considerable variation by feature-set locale (Roman or Japanese) and product version (e.g., 3.0, 4.0, or 5.0). Similar tables could be created for InCopy CS4 and InDesign Server.

TABLE 150 Scripting DOM Instances in InDesign CS4 Roman

Product	Version	Locale	Script manager
InDesign	6.0	Roman	kAppleScriptMgrBoss
InDesign	6.0	Roman	kJavaScriptMgrBoss
InDesign	6.0	Roman	kOLEAutomationMgrBoss
InDesign	6.0	Roman	kINXTraditionalImportScriptManagerBoss
InDesign	6.0	Roman	kINXTraditionalExportScriptManagerBoss
InDesign	6.0	Roman	kINXExpandedImportScriptManagerBoss
InDesign	6.0	Roman	kINXExpandedExportScriptManagerBoss

Dumping the scripting DOM

Via the diagnostics plug-in

The *Adobe InDesign CS4 Scripting DOM Reference* documents identified in [Table 149](#) are created via the diagnostics plug-in and an XSLT stylesheet. See the “Diagnostics” chapter for information on dumping the scripting DOM in XML and transforming it from XML to HTML using XSLT.

Via Test > Scripting > Dump All Script Resources

The scripting DOM can be dumped to a text file using the debug build. To find the script objects provided by a product and the events and properties they expose, follow these steps:

1. Choose Test > Scripting > Dump All Script Resources and wait while the application dumps a text file containing the scripting DOM for each client. Dump files are created in the qa/Logs folder, in the folder that contains the application executable.
2. Choose the dump for the scripting client in which you are interested. See [Table 132](#) for a list of scripting clients. For example, under InDesign CS4, the dump file named kJavaScriptMgrBossIDR60.txt contains the scripting DOM for JavaScript under InDesign CS4.

The dump contains separate sections that describe the available suites, enums, events, properties, and script objects.

Snippet Fundamentals

A snippet is a logically complete fragment of an InDesign document, expressed in one of two XML formats, INX (.inds or .incx file extensions) or IDML (.idms or .icml file extensions). INX-based snippets were introduced in InDesign CS, but because of the complexity of the format, we did not recommend using them to generate and manipulate content outside of InDesign. IDML- and IDML-based snippets were designed for these purposes. This chapter describes the snippet architecture and the organization of snippets for different asset types, and it relates this to the low-level (boss) document object model (DOM). The snippet architecture is the basis for the asset library in InDesign, which is a collection of snippets in a binary container. The chapter discusses implications of the change to this snippet architecture if you store your own persistent data in documents.

In addition to explaining what snippets are, the chapter describes the organization of some snippets, identifies use cases involving snippet, and provides implementation hints.

Conceptual overview

Snippets as self-contained assets

Snippets are a feature added to InDesign to support factoring a document into components that become self-contained assets. One special application of this is an InCopy story. A snippet is a logically complete fragment of an InDesign document, saved in either InDesign Interchange format (INX) or InDesign Markup Language (IDML). Both are XML-based formats. INX-based snippet files have the extension .inds (or .incx for InCopy stories). IDML-based snippet files have the extension .idms, (or .icml for InCopy stories).

The snippet architecture allows a subset of the objects in a document (and their dependencies) to be imported into a snippet file, which can be exported to another document. Features like assignments depend on snippets to factor document content into XML documents, each of which represents a subset of the information in the original InDesign document.

The asset-library subsystem takes advantage of the snippet architecture, reinforcing the notion of a snippet as an asset. An InDesign library is a collection of snippets in a binary container. If you store persistent data in InDesign documents (e.g., through adding your own persistent interfaces to page items), you must make sure this content roundtrips through snippets, by adding scripting support to your plug-in. See the “Scriptable Plug-in Fundamentals” chapter.

Snippets can contain page items, swatches, styles, XML tags, XML elements, and application preferences. If you understand how to export and import snippets, you can assemble most of the contents in an InDesign document from snippets. To make the process more straightforward, see the procedures in the “Snippets” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Snippet types

Snippets can—in one format—represent information previously exported from InDesign in several quite different (and often opaque binary) formats. The object types that can be exported from InDesign include the following:

- Page items, like text frames, group items, and placed images
- XML elements
- Preferences
- InCopy stories

These reduce down to a handful of basic snippet types, described in [“Snippet types and policies” on page 648](#).

Features that depend on snippets

Several subsystems and features depend on the snippet architecture:

- Assets are stored as snippets in a library database file (.indl file). The database is a binary file; however, within a database, assets are snippets.
- Assignments depend on the ability to factor out document content into distinct assets as snippet files.
- InCopy Interchange (INCX) and InCopy Document (ICML) files are both snippet files.
- Object styles are stored in a snippet file. Load Object Styles reads in styles defined in a snippet file.

User interface for snippets

The snippet architecture is more a foundation technology than a feature, so there is relatively little user interface to let you interact directly with snippets; however, there are a few places where snippets show up in the user interface, directly or indirectly.

Drag and drop

You can drag a snippet file onto the InDesign layout view, and the application takes appropriate action. For example, if the snippet file contains a text style, a new text style may be created if one matching the specification does not already exist. If you drag a snippet file defining a group item with many page-item dependents, a new group item with dependents is created in the InDesign document.

An end user can create a new snippet file on the desktop, by dragging a layout object from an InDesign document onto the desktop. An end user also can drag an XML element from the structure view to the desktop, to create a snippet on the desktop.

The snippet format is the primary representation for chunks of InDesign content for data exchange. The user interface now strictly uses IDML-based (IDMS) snippets. You can still generate INX-based (INDS) snippets using the API.

Asset library

The asset library depends on page items being represented as snippets. An InDesign library (INDL) file is a binary file containing a collection of snippets, and the Library panel can be considered a view onto the snippets it contains.

When an asset is dragged from the library onto a document, the snippet is imported into the document, and the new content is created. When an asset is dragged from a document into a library or added through a menu item on the Library panel menu, the content is written to the library file in a block of XML contained within the (binary) library.

Export snippet from selection

You can export snippets under certain selection conditions, including the existence of a layout selection (page items) or structure-view selection (XML elements). You can export an InCopy story (ICML or INCX) when there is a text selection. The snippet-export provider is responsible for serializing page items to snippet files after drag and drop. This export provider depends on the suite `ISnippetExportSuite`. (See “[Client API](#)” on page 663.) For more information about the selection architecture, see the “Selection” chapter.

Snippet model

Snippets contain collections of XML fragments that represent document content. What makes snippet files interesting is that they are standalone representations of document assets (for example, a styled page item) that can be imported into another document. The precise collection of XML fragments that compose a snippet depends on the objects you want to export into the snippet and the objects on which it depends.

The objects represented in the snippet file are instances of classes in the scripting-level DOM. Deciding what goes into a snippet file and understanding what is represented there requires knowledge of the low-level boss DOM. Understanding what happens when a snippet file is imported requires knowledge of the low-level boss DOM.

INX, IDML, and snippets

INX and IDML are XML-based formats that represent InDesign content at a higher level of abstraction than the low-level binary InDesign document (INDD) files. These higher level files contain a collection of XML elements that represent an entire InDesign document, created by serializing the scripting DOM for a document instance.

A major benefit of this representation is that the scripting DOM is stable relative to the low-level (boss) document model. A price to be paid for this higher level of abstraction (and XML-based format) is that it takes longer to read and write an INX- or IDML-based file than a binary InDesign (INDD) document. InDesign binary documents load data on demand, whereas the entire INX file must be loaded before it can be used.

A snippet file represents one or more root objects and their dependents in the document from which they came. A root object in this context does not mean the root of the entire document, but the root of a subtree within the scripting-DOM tree.

A root object must expose the IDOMElement interface. Parent-child relationships in a snippet come from ownership relations in the scripting DOM; however, as we will see in the examples, the elements in a snippet file have information that comes from the boss DOM (about UIDs, for example), and the relationship between the boss DOM and scripting DOM is predictable.

Although INCX, the INX-based InCopy story format, is still supported, the default file format for InCopy is ICML. The main difference between an INX or IDML file and a snippet file is that INX and IDML files represent complete InDesign documents, whereas a snippet file represents only a subset of the information in an InDesign document.

There are two things you need to know to work with snippets:

- How to acquire references to the objects you want to export as a snippet. Minimally, you need an IDOMElement interface on each root object you want to export in a given snippet and an export policy. For information on acquiring references to objects in the layout, see the “Layout Fundamentals” chapter.
- Where to target the snippet import; i.e., what DOM element (IDOMElement) you should use as the parent for the objects in the snippet to import. To understand how to do this, you need to understand the connection between the scripting DOM and the boss DOM, because you target a node in the scripting DOM on import.

Generating a snippet from scratch is not easy. Snippets for even simple content page items are complex, owing to the need to serialize the graph of dependencies. We do not recommend generating INX-based snippets. If you need to generate snippets outside of InDesign, create IDML-based snippets. You still will have to be concerned with fulfilling all dependencies.

Boss DOM overview

The InDesign DOM is relatively complex on the surface, but it is fundamentally simple. An InDesign (binary) document consists of the following:

- A set of persistent boss objects.
- Relationships between the boss objects.
- References to external content (images, fonts, etc.).

You can consider an InDesign (binary) document as a serialized graph of boss objects. The boss DOM specifies InDesign documents at the level of boss classes and relationships between them. Sometimes the relationships are hard to express purely in terms of classes, and we visualize them in object diagrams to understand them better. See the “Layout Fundamentals” chapter.

A boss object can represent a spread (`kSpreadBoss`), guide (`kGuideItemBoss`), frame (`kSplineItemBoss`), story (`kTextStoryBoss`), etc. The binary document stores the persistent state of these boss objects, consisting of a hierarchy of objects on each spread (`kSpreadBoss`) and a set of relationships between the boss objects.

One kind of relationship that can exist between boss objects is ownership, which is the same as the concept of composition in object-oriented literature: coincident lifetime of part and whole, composite object responsible for creation and destruction of parts. Boss objects can either own other objects (and manage their lifetimes) or refer to them.

Boss objects expose interfaces which provide their behavior, and if they have persistent implementations, store their state across instantiations of InDesign. The persistent interfaces determine exactly what data a given boss object stores in the document; for example, it may store references to other objects it depends on in some way or references to objects it owns.

Persistent implementations of interfaces on each boss class that participates in the boss DOM read and write the data in an InDesign binary document. The interfaces themselves are part of the low-level API for InDesign, which is fine-grained and extensive. This means an InDesign (binary) document is very tightly coupled to the low-level API.

Scripting DOM overview

Compared to the boss DOM, there is a more abstract way to represent an InDesign document, based on the notion of scriptable objects (`IScript`). This level of abstraction is the scripting-DOM view of an InDesign document. This level of abstraction still involves the objects that are part of the end user's experience of an InDesign document (spreads, pages, frames, stories, etc.), but the representation is less closely tied to the boss objects you manipulate with the low-level API. There are several advantages of working at this level of abstraction:

- The classes in the scripting DOM have names with meaning within the application domain, rather than being associated with the implementation domain.
- The weak coupling to the low-level API means you are somewhat shielded from changes in the low-level API. This made it easier to stabilize the format and insulate it from changes in the low-level API. Versioning also was built into the scripting DOM from its inception.
- There are fewer entities in the scripting DOM than in the boss DOM.

The concepts of ownership relationships between classes versus referential associations also exists in the scripting DOM and, therefore in snippets. These two types of associations are important when it comes to understanding what is in a snippet file.

From boss DOM to scripting DOM

The low-level boss DOM is the ultimate truth as far as inDesign document is concerned, and the scripting DOM is an abstraction over that very fine-grained, low-level model. When you inspect snippet files, you will find information that comes directly from the boss DOM, like UIDs.

Information can appear in a snippet file only if some boss object with an `IDOMElement` interface generates it. As a C++ programmer, you inevitably work at the level of how scripting was

implemented within the InDesign API, rather than at the consumer level. This means scripting appears as an additional complexity, but it provides a stable abstraction over the low-level boss document model.

Each script class has an identifier (`ScriptElementID`) defined in `kScriptInfoIDSpace`; this space is parallel with `kClassIDSpace`, where a boss `ClassID` is defined. If you consider the scripting DOM and boss DOM as distinct graphs, they have points of contact, where a node in the boss DOM also participates in the scripting DOM (e.g., `kSpreadBoss`), and there are points of difference (sometimes there is a proxy boss class, sometimes no boss class at all).

The `IScript` and `IDOMElement` interfaces are exposed by any boss class that participates in the scripting DOM. The signature interface of a scriptable object, `IScript`, provides the low-level API programmer with a bridge into the scripting object world. `IDOMElement` can be used to traverse the scripting DOM for a given document instance.

Snippet types and policies

The supported snippet types are listed in [Table 151](#).

TABLE 151 *Snippet types*

Snippet type	Boss DOM source
ApplicationPreferences	Session workspace (<code>kWorkspaceBoss</code>) preferences.
InCopyInterchange	From story (<code>kTextStoryBoss</code>). InCopy default story format.
PageItem	A page item in the spread hierarchy (<code>kSpreadBoss/ISpread</code>).
XMLElement	XML elements (see <code>IIDXMLElement</code>) and associated content, if elements are placed.

Export

Application-preferences export

Exporting application preferences means serializing the state of preference objects that are dependents of the application-script object (`kApplicationObjectScriptElement`). See `IScriptUtils::QueryApplicationScript` and `IINXInfo::IsPreferenceObject`. In terms of where these preferences are stored in the boss DOM, these are preferences stored in the session workspace (`kWorkspaceBoss`) as persistent interfaces.

The export policy for application preferences (`kAppPrefsExportBoss`) would be specified explicitly only if you were trying to export a subset of application preferences, which is beyond the scope of this document. If you use methods like `ISnippetExport::ExportAppPrefs`, the policy is implicit. The exact behavior of the policy is beyond the scope of this document.

Application-preference export supports only INX-based snippets.

Document-element export

Exporting a document element means exporting something that is a fairly direct dependent of the document (IDocument). For example, swatches are stored in the document workspace (kDocWorkspaceBoss), and these are exported as DocumentElement snippets.

Page-item export

Exporting a page-item snippet means exporting one or more root objects and dependents. For example, if you placed images or text frames containing content, exporting a page item gives you a self-contained representation of the page item that you can import into another document.

The page-item export policy contains rules including the following:

- If all frames of a story are chosen for export, the entire story is exported as a story element. The text contents for the entire story—including notes, tables, and tracked changes—is exported as children of the story element.
- If some frames of a story are not chosen for export, a story element is not exported. The text contents for the frames chosen—including editorial notes, table, and tracked changes—that lie within the span of the text frames are exported as children of the text-frame elements.
- Hyperlink sources are exported if the source exists in/on an exported page item. Hyperlink destinations are exported if the destination exists in/on an exported page item. Hyperlink page destinations are not exported. Hyperlinks are exported if the associated hyperlink source is exported, and destination references are set to nil if the destination is not exported.
- Bookmarks are exported if the associated hyperlink destination is exported.

A page-item snippet is exported from a layout selection (see ISnippetExportSuite), or you can choose one or more page items by UID and export them using ISnippetExport.

InCopy stories

Exporting in InCopy stories can be done either through the export provider for this format or by exporting a snippet with type InCopyInterchange and export policy kInCopyInterchange-ExportBoss.

The export policy is very much the same as for a page item, with respect to how story content is handled, as described in [“Page-item export” on page 649](#).

There is a high-level suite responsible for exporting snippets (ISnippetExportSuite). It exports an InCopyInterchange snippet if there is a text selection on export. If you used a lower-level API like ISnippetExport, in which you must choose the document object from which to export, you would export from a story (rather than text frame); you would export a story by calling ISnippetExport::ExportInCopyInterchange().

XML-element export

The high-level suite responsible for exporting snippets (`ISnippetExportSuite`) can export XML elements selected in the structure view. If you use a lower-level API like `ISnippetExport` to perform the export, you need to explicitly identify the objects to export by `XMLReference`. For more information on acquiring references to objects in the logical structure, see the “XML Fundamentals” chapter. Use the XML-element export policy (`kXMLElementExportBoss`) when exporting XML elements.

Import

Snippets are imported mostly as if they were standard INX or IDML files. Snippet-import policies are applied when importing a snippet, depending on the type of content in the snippet file. As a programmer, you need to decide what object in the boss DOM should parent the objects you are importing from the snippet. For example, if you import a page-item snippet and want the page items in it to be top-level items on a spread, you specify a particular spread (`kSpreadBoss`) to parent the content. For most other snippet types, the document (`kDocBoss`) is sufficient.

The snippet type is carried by processing instructions at the start of a snippet file. These are of the form `<?aid ... ?>`. See [Table 151](#) for list of types that can occur. For example, if the snippet is a page item, the following processing instruction occurs:

```
<?aid SnippetType="PageItem"?>
```

Importing snippets can be tricky for some snippet types, like XML elements, because you must decide the node in the scripting DOM that will parent the incoming content, and sometimes this is nontrivial to discover. When you import a snippet, you must choose a boss object to parent the snippet content that has `IDOMElement` and `IScript` interfaces that characterize participants in the scripting DOM. Some snippet types are easy, and the choice is the document (`kDocBoss`) or session workspace (`kWorkspaceBoss`). Others require more work and a detailed understanding of how the scripting DOM works in terms of boss classes.

Application-preferences import

When you import application preferences, you need to identify an object that can parent the import. This is the session workspace (`kWorkspaceBoss`). Suppose you opened a stream onto a snippet file containing “ApplicationPreferences.” You might import it by writing code like the following:

```
InterfacePtr<IScript> appScript (Utils<IScriptUtils>()->QueryApplicationScript());
InterfacePtr<IDOMElement> rootElement (
    appScript, UseDefaultIID());
Utils<ISnippetImport>()->ImportFromStream(stream, rootElement);
```

The `IScriptUtils::QueryApplicationScript` method returns a reference to the session workspace (`kWorkspaceBoss`) in the boss DOM through its `IScript` interface. The session workspace associates with the application script object (`kApplicationObjectScriptElement`) in the scripting DOM.

The import policy is complicated and beyond the scope of this document.

Page-item import

When importing a page item—like a placed image or text frame—you can target a Spread element in the scripting DOM. This supposes you want the page item to be a top-level page item.

In boss terms, this means targeting a spread (`kSpreadBoss`) rather than the spread-layer boss (`kSpreadLayerBoss`), the parent of top-level page items in the boss DOM.

A boolean interface, `IID_ISNIPPETIMPORTUSESORIGINALLOCATIONPREF`, was aggregated on both `kWorkspaceBoss` and `kDocBoss` to determine whether the coordinates of the page item imported should be same as where it was exported from or a new location. The behavior also can be altered temporarily based on modifier key ALT/Option when the page item is imported via the user interface, such as via drag-and-drop and use-place-gun.

NOTE: If the snippet contains guides, all page items, together with the guides, are placed at the same location when they are exported.

The import policy does very little, because most of the work is done by the page-item export policy during export.

InCopy-story import

When importing a story from an InCopy story snippet, you can go through the import provider, rather than trying to import the snippet directly. Importing InCopy stories directly using the low-level snippet API (`ISnippetImport`) is not supported.

XML-element import

Deciding where in the scripting DOM an XML-element snippet should be parented is not straightforward. This is because XML elements are represented by proxy objects in the scripting DOM. That is, boss classes like `kTextXMLElementBoss` that represent XML elements in the boss DOM do not have `IScript` and `IDOMElement` interfaces. There are proxy boss classes that participate in the scripting DOM, and you need to specify one of these as the parent for incoming XML-element snippet content.

If you want to import an XML element into a specified location within the logical structure of an InDesign document, you must construct a proxy boss object (`kXMLItemProxyScriptObjectBoss`), configure it correctly, and set this as the target for `ISnippetImport::ImportFromStream`.

When you import a snippet containing XML elements, what happens depends on whether the exported XML elements were placed or all unplaced content. If the XML elements in the snippet were exported from placed elements, layout content is created on import.

The behavior of the import policy is beyond the scope of this document.

Snippet examples

Filled-rectangle snippet

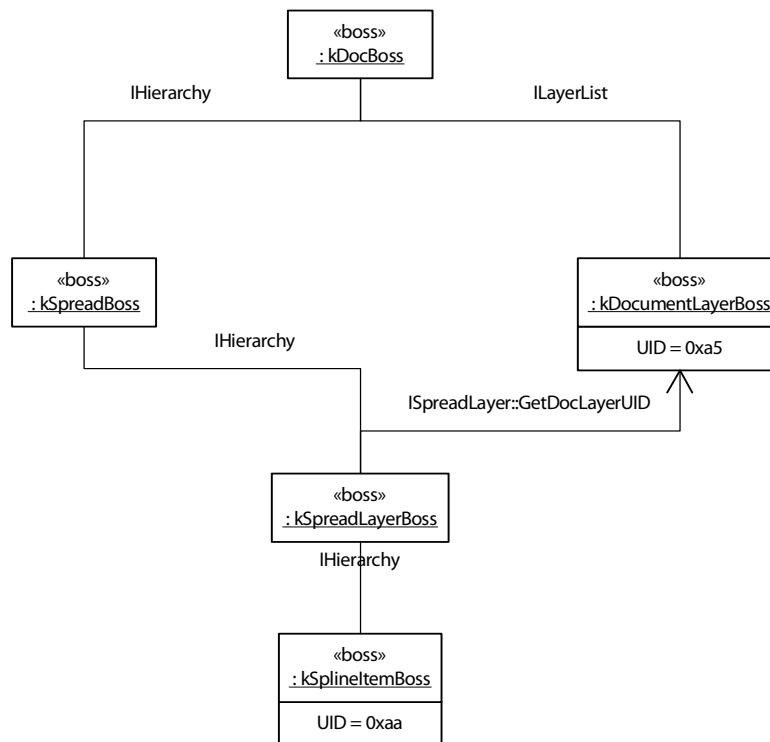
In this scenario, a new document was created, a document layer (red-layer) added, and a single page item created (with the Rectangle tool) on this layer. The rectangle had a swatch applied (C=15, M=100, Y=0, K=0). For information on exporting a page item programmatically, see the “Snippets” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*. Through the InDesign user interface, you can drag a page item to the desktop to create a PageItem snippet.

Boss-level model

We consider the key boss objects that represent this page item, then examine the organization of the snippet that results from exporting the asset. The objects referred to by a page item depend on what the page item is and what relationships it has with other objects in the document at the time of its export.

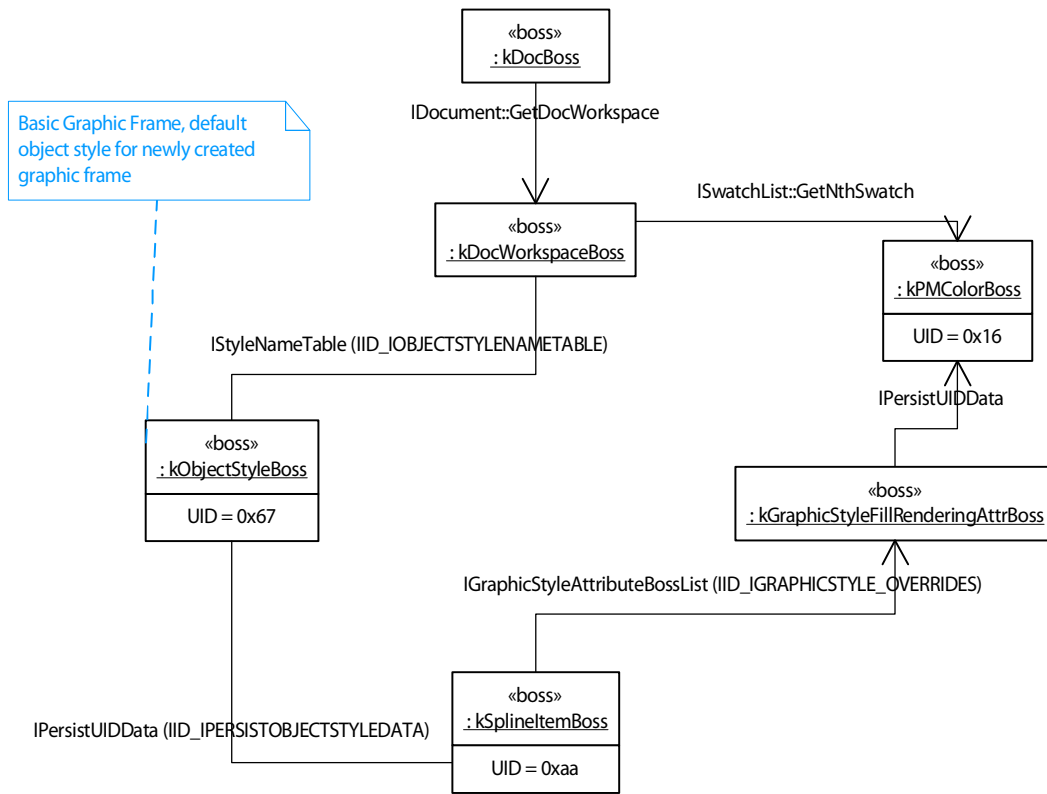
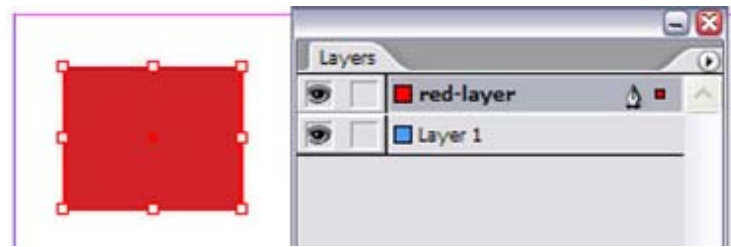
The object diagram in [Figure 263](#) shows some of the objects that represent a rectangle page item. The page item is a top-level item that is a child of a spread layer (kSpreadLayerBoss, with signature ISpreadLayer). The spread layer is a child of a spread (kSpreadBoss). The spread layer class associates with a document layer (kDocumentLayerBoss, with signature IDocumentLayer). The document (kDocBoss, signature IDocument) manages the spreads via ISpreadList and manages the document layers via ILayerList. The UID of the document layer and spline-item boss objects are shown, as these will appear in the snippet as object references.

FIGURE 263 Boss-object diagram for rectangle page item



The UML object diagram in [Figure 264](#) shows relationships between objects that represent the fill color and object style (Basic Graphic Frame) of a rectangle page item.

FIGURE 264 Boss-object diagram for page-item style



Snippet organization

When the filled-rectangle page item is exported as a snippet, a somewhat large XML file is generated. The contents depend on whether it is an IDML or INX snippet. Though this may seem to be a lot of data to specify a red rectangle, consider that the intent of a snippet is to provide a complete, standalone description of a collection of objects that can be imported into any other InDesign document. The first few and last few characters are shown in [Example 93](#) and [Example 94](#). This small percentage of the text shows some differences between the two formats. The IDML-based snippet has a document element called Document, while the INX-based example has a document element of SnippetRoot.

EXAMPLE 93 IDML-based (IDMS) extraction

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<?aid style="50" type="snippet"...?>
<?aid SnippetType="PageItem"?>
<Document DOMVersion="6.0" Self="d">
  <Color ...
</Document>
```

EXAMPLE 94 Snippet-file extract

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<?aid style="33" type="snippet"... ?>
<?aid SnippetType="PageItem"?>
<SnippetRoot>
  <colr ... (other x,000 characters omitted)
</SnippetRoot>
```

Inspecting the raw XML data contained in an INX snippet file is not immediately illuminating (see the XML in [Figure 265](#), for example), so some XSLT transformations have been applied to render the data in a form that is easier to understand. The snippet file creating by exporting a rectangle page item was transformed with XSLT, using information from the ScriptingDefs.h file in the SDK as a translation table, to turn short names like “crec” into long names (Rectangle). The amount of information was reduced by filtering out all but the names of elements and some key attributes. The relationships between elements were represented as a graph of nodes (the elements) and edges (the links between them).

FIGURE 265 Subset of XML from filled-rectangle snippet

```
- <Rectangle AnchoredObjectSettings="ro_uaacAOs1" TextWrap="ro_uactxw1"
  ItemGeometry="x_19_l_1_l_4_l_2_D_-231.5_D_-311.5_l_2_D_-231.5_D_-240.5_l_2_D_-
  144.5_D_-240.5_l_2_D_-144.5_D_-311.5_b_f_D_-231.5_D_-311.5_D_-144.5_D_-
  240.5_D_1_D_0_D_0_D_1_D_293_D_-22" ContentType="e_unas"
  AssociatedXMLElement="ro_n" XPBlendMode="e_norm" XPOpacity="D_100"
  XPKnockoutGroup="b_f" XPisolateBlending="b_f" XPDSMode="e_none"
  XPDSBlendMode="e_xpMb" XPDSOffsetX="U_7" XPDSOffsetY="U_7" XPDSBlurRadius="U_5"
  XPDSColor="o_ub" XPDSOpacity="D_75" XPVGMMode="e_none" XPVGWidth="U_9"
  XPVGCornerType="e_xpCc" XPDSSpread="D_0" XPDSNoise="D_0" XPVGNoise="D_0"
  StoryOffset="ro_n" FillColor="o_u16" FillTint="D_-1" Overprint="b_f" LineWeight="U_1"
  MiterLimit="D_4" EndCap="e_bcap" EndJoin="e_mjon" StrokeType="o_di5a29"
  LeftLineEnd="e_none" RightLineEnd="e_none" LineColor="o_ub" LineTint="D_-1"
  CornerEffect="e_none" CornerRadius="D_12" GradientFillStart="x_2_U_0_U_0"
  GradientFillLength="U_0" GradientFillAngle="D_0" GradientStrokeStart="x_2_U_0_U_0"
  GradientStrokeLength="U_0" GradientStrokeAngle="D_0" StrokeOverprint="b_f" GapColor="o_ue"
  GapTint="D_-1" StrokeAlignment="e_stAC" NonPrinting="b_f" ItemLayer="o_uas" Locked="b_f"
  LocalDisplaySetting="e_Dflt" AppliedObjectStyle="o_u67" Tag="c_" Self="rc_uaa"
  SnippetParent="root">
  <AnchoredObjectSettings Self="rc_uaacAOs1" />
- <TextWrap TextWrapType="e_none" TextWrapInset="e_none" TextWrapInverse="b_f"
  ItemGeometry="x_5_l_0_D_0_D_0_D_0_D_0" ContourOptions="ro_uactxw1ccos1"
  Self="rc_uactxw1">
  <ContourOptions PSPATHNames="rx_0" ACPATHNames="rx_0" Self="rc_uactxw1ccos1" />
  </TextWrap>
</Rectangle>
```

The newer, IDML-based format is more readable. The example in [Figure 266](#) is a similar subset, in actual IDML.

FIGURE 266 IDML filled rectangle

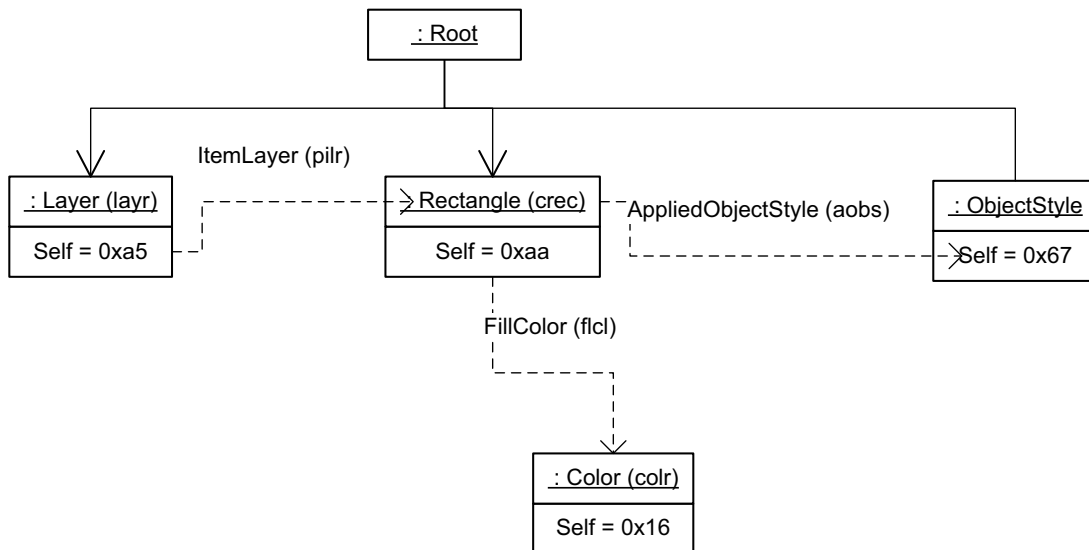
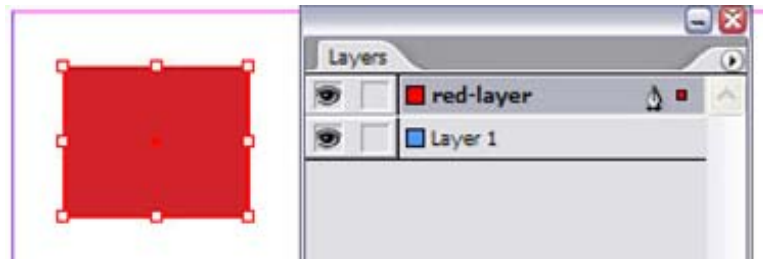
```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<Rectangle Self="ud8" StoryTitle="$ID/" ContentType="Unassigned"
  FillColor="Color/C=15 M=100 Y=100 K=0" GradientFillStart="0 0" GradientFillLength="0"
  GradientFillAngle="0" GradientStrokeStart="0 0" GradientStrokeLength="0"
  GradientStrokeAngle="0"
  ItemLayer="ud3" Locked="false" LocalDisplaySetting="Default" GradientFillHiliteLength="0"
  GradientFillHiliteAngle="0" GradientStrokeHiliteLength="0" GradientStrokeHiliteAngle="0"
  AppliedObjectStyle="ObjectStyle/$ID/[Normal Graphics Frame]" ItemTransform="1 0 0 1 0 0"
  FramelabelString="" FramelabelSize="12" FramelabelVisibility="false"
  FramelabelPosition="FramelabelBottom" BpiData="" >
  <Properties>
    <PathGeometry>
      <GeometryPathType PathOpen="false">
        <PathPointArray>
          <PathPointType Anchor="89.75 -294.35714285714283"
            LeftDirection="89.75 -294.35714285714283"
            RightDirection="89.75 -294.35714285714283"/>
          <PathPointType Anchor="89.75 -189.07142857142856"
            LeftDirection="89.75 -189.07142857142856"
            RightDirection="89.75 -189.07142857142856"/>
          <PathPointType Anchor="188.07142857142858 -189.07142857142856"
            LeftDirection="188.07142857142858 -189.07142857142856"
            RightDirection="188.07142857142858 -189.07142857142856"/>
          <PathPointType Anchor="188.07142857142858 -294.35714285714283"
            LeftDirection="188.07142857142858 -294.35714285714283"
            RightDirection="188.07142857142858 -294.35714285714283"/>
        </PathPointArray>
      </GeometryPathType>
    </PathGeometry>
    <FramelabelFontColor type="enumeration">Pink</FramelabelFontColor>
  </Properties>
  <TextWrapPreference Inverse="false" ApplyToMasterPageOnly="false" TextWrapSide="BothSides"
    TextWrapMode="None">
    <Properties>
      <TextWrapOffset Top="0" Left="0" Bottom="0" Right="0"/>
    </Properties>
  </TextWrapPreference>
  <InCopyExportOption IncludeGraphicProxies="true" IncludeAllResources="false"/>
  <FrameFittingOption LeftCrop="0" TopCrop="0" RightCrop="0" BottomCrop="0"
    FittingOnEmptyFrame="None" FittingAlignment="TopLeftAnchor"/>
  <Transparencyeffectsettings Transparencyeffectmode="false"
    Transparencyeffectoffsetxdirection="0" Transparencyeffectoffsetydirection="0"
    Transparencyeffectuseblackasopaque="false" Transparencyeffectusealpha="false"
    Transparencyeffectuseblur="false"/>
</Rectangle>
```

If we visualize the XML from [Figure 265](#) and [Figure 266](#) as a graph showing a subset of the elements, we arrive at [Figure 267](#). The Rectangle object (kRectangleObjectScriptElement) from the scripting DOM corresponds to kSplineItemBoss in the boss DOM. The Color object (kColorObjectScriptElement) corresponds to kPMColorBoss in the boss DOM. The Layer object (kLayerObjectScriptElement) corresponds to kDocumentLayerBoss (IDocumentLayer) in the boss DOM.

[Figure 267](#) shows a subset of the elements in the snippet file exported from this document asset. The long names for the elements are shown. The Self attribute (shown as e.g. 0xaa rather than rc_uua or u_123) corresponds to the UUIDs for the boss objects shown in [Figure 263](#) and

Figure 264. The snippet (scripting DOM) model is simplified relative to the boss model; there is no graphics-attribute object interposed between the page item and the object representing its color.

FIGURE 267 Relationships between elements in snippet representing rectangle



NOTE: In [Figure 267](#), “Root” can be either Document (for IDML) or SnippetRoot (for INX).

Two different views are shown of the elements and associations in a snippet file. [Figure 267](#) shows the key objects that were explicitly identified by UID in [Figure 263](#) and [Figure 264](#).

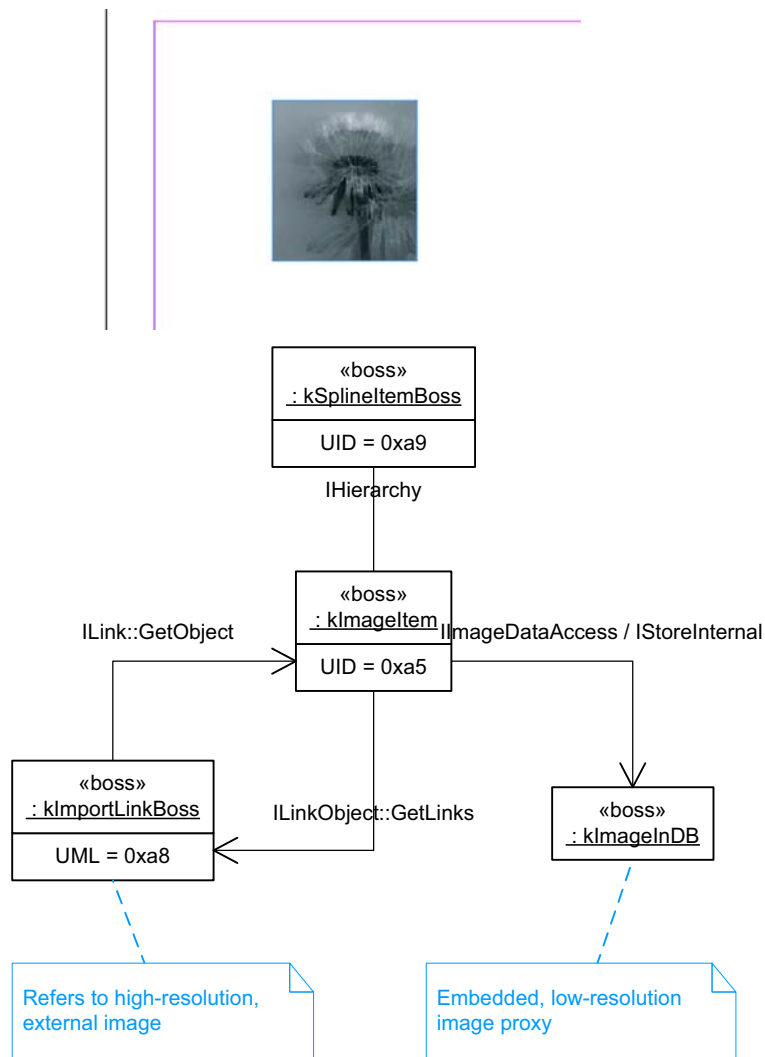
Image-item snippet

A new document was created, and an image was placed in it. A page-item snippet was exported, based on the graphic frame containing the image. We examine both the low-level boss model for this and the organization of the snippet file. To create this through the InDesign user interface, you can select the frame containing the image and just drag the page item from the layout to the desktop. To do this programmatically, see the “Snippets” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Boss-level model

Figure 268 contains an object diagram showing key boss objects that represent a placed (TIFF) image (kImageItem) in a graphic frame (kSplineItemBoss), and links between them (instances of associations between the boss classes). A low-resolution embedded proxy (kImageInDB) is stored in the document. The actual high-resolution image is referenced from a link (kImportLinkBoss). In the interest of clarity, associations with objects of class kSpreadLayerBoss (which would own the kSplineItemBoss if it were a top-level page item) and so on are omitted.

FIGURE 268 Representation of a placed image



A placed image is represented by the boss class (kImageItem), which can be found as a child of a graphic frame (kSplineItemBoss). The image item (kImageItem) refers to both a link (through ILinkObject) and an object that may store a proxy (through IImageDataAccess or IStoreInternal).

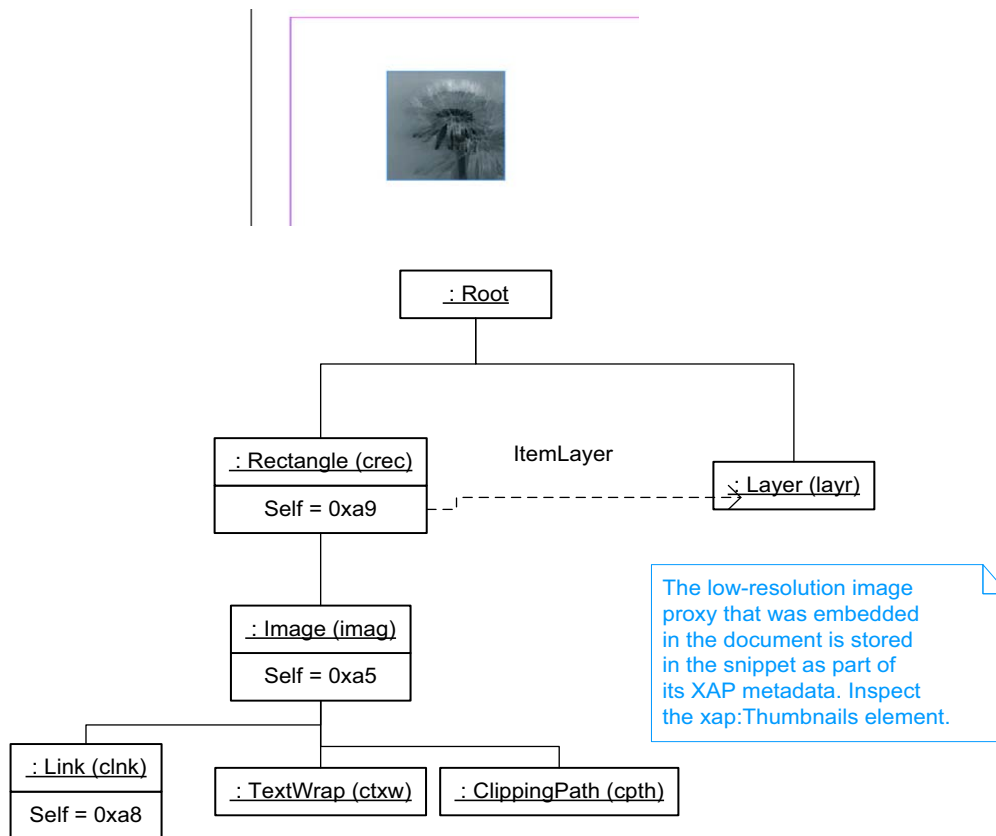
The original high-resolution image placed is referenced by a link (`kImportLinkBoss`), and the low-resolution image proxy may be stored by a boss object (`kImageInDB`). The embedded proxy is referenced either through `IStoreInternal` interface of the `kImageItem` object (for example, for PDF, EPS, and PICT) or by `IImageDataAccess` (as in the TIFF example here and for other formats like JPEG).

Snippet organization

The complete snippet is quite complicated, but we can make sense of the picture by focusing on the objects in the scripting model and considering the relationships to the boss objects we saw in [Figure 268](#).

The frame is represented in the scripting DOM by a `Rectangle` object (`kRectangleObjectScriptElement`), and the image placed by an `Image` object (`kImageObjectScriptElement`). The scripting classes associate to `kSplineItemBoss` and `kImageItem` in the boss DOM. Consequently, when we inspect the snippet, we see a `Rectangle`, with child element `Image`. The link to a high-resolution image external to the InDesign file is maintained in the scripting DOM by a `Link` object (`kLinkObjectScriptElement`), which associates with `kImportLinkBoss` (in the case of a placed image file).

The object diagram in [Figure 269](#) represents elements in the snippet file for a placed image. The `Rectangle` element has a `Self` attribute matching the UID of the `kSplineItemBoss` in [Figure 267](#). The `Image` element has a `Self` attribute equal to the UID of the `kImageItemBoss` object in [Figure 267](#). The `Link` object has a `Self` attribute corresponding to the UID of the link boss object (`kImportLinkBoss`) in [Figure 267](#). The `ClippingPath` and `TextWrap` elements correspond (approximately) to the `IClipSettings` and `IStandOffData` interfaces on `kImageItem`, respectively.

FIGURE 269 Relationships between elements in snippet for a placed image

NOTE: In Figure 269, “Root” can be either Document (for IDML) or SnippetRoot (for INX).

The Image element shown in Figure 268 has a dependent Link element, which maintains a link to the high-resolution image that was placed. This Link element stores approximately the data stored in or obtainable from a link boss object (kImportLinkBoss); it stores a path to the file and other information, like link-import stamp and link-stored state. The snippet also maintains a low-resolution thumbnail of the image, but in the xap:Thumbnail metadata element, intended for consumers of the XMP format.

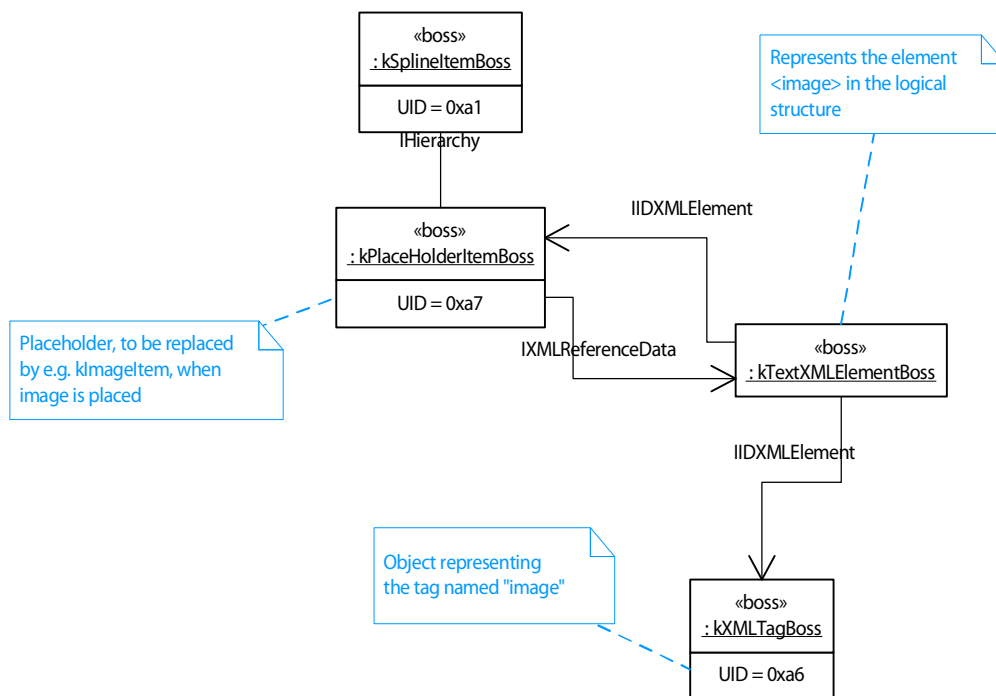
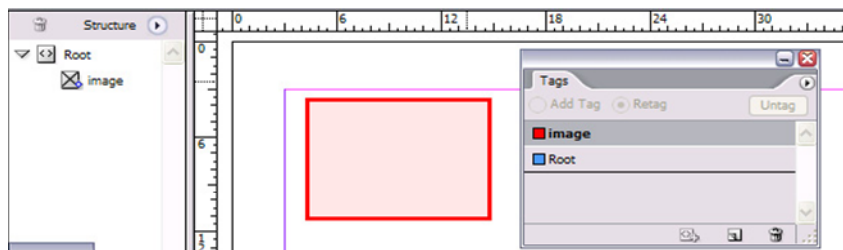
XML element snippet, tagged placeholder

Consider the scenario of creating one element in the logical structure as a tagged placeholder for an image to be placed later. We can examine the organization of a snippet obtained by exporting a placed element from the logical structure.

Boss-level model

This is described in some detail in the “XML Fundamentals” chapter. Briefly, a tagged graphic placeholder is represented by a `kSplineItemBoss`, with a `kPlaceholderItemBoss` child. Associations with XML elements (`IIDXMLElement`) are maintained by the `IXMLReferenceData` on the placeholder (`kPlaceholderItemBoss`). See [Figure 270](#).

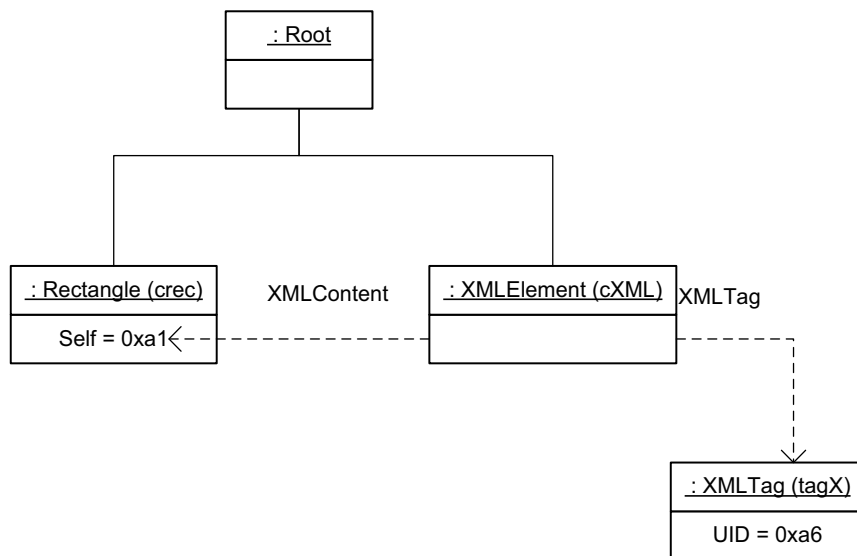
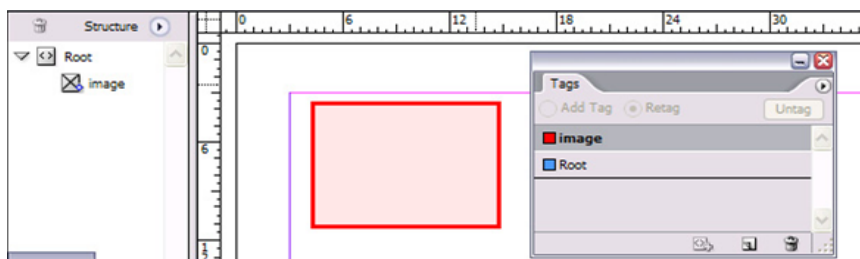
FIGURE 270 Boss-object diagram for XML-tagged placeholder



Snippet organization

An XML-element snippet is the serialized form of an XML element, its tree of elements (IIDXMLElement) it owns, and any placed content that it or any of its dependents refer to, along with dependencies. Because we only one tagged object, there is only one element (XMLElement) in the snippet. Only the tags required for the exported XML elements are contained in the snippet; in this case, we have only one XMLTag element in the snippet. The UIDs of the frame (kSplineItemBoss) and tag (kXMLTagBoss) propagated to the snippet. XML elements are not UID-based, and the Self attributes for the XMLElement elements in the snippet are less easy to relate to the original InDesign document. See [Figure 271](#).

FIGURE 271 Key elements in snippet for tagged placeholder



NOTE: In [Figure 271](#), “Root” can be either Document (for IDML) or SnippetRoot (for INX).

Client API

Suites

To create a snippet based on the current selection, use `ISnippetExportSuite`. `ISnippetExportSuite` lets you export the layout selection or a selection in the structure view as a snippet, and a text selection as an `InCopyInterchange` snippet (INCX or ICML). For more details, see the “Snippets” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Utilities

The following utilities are available:

- `ISnippetExport` — A utility interface on `kUtilsBoss` that exposes the snippet types that can be exported by the application. There are several snippet types you can export with this interface, including text styles, XML tags, swatches, preferences, and `InCopy` stories. You also can export a collection of objects with `IDOMElement` interfaces and specify the export policy. Several methods take an `INXOptions` argument, allowing you to specify whether you want to export INX- or IDML-based snippets. For more detail, see the API reference documentation.
- `ISnippetImport` — A utility interface on `kUtilsBoss`, with a simpler API than the export equivalent. The only requirement on import is that you know where you want to import in the scripting DOM tree. You need an `IDOMElement` interface on a scriptable object. For more detail, see the API reference documentation.

The `ISnippetExportSuite` suite can be used if you create a selection programmatically and are not worried about trampling the user selection. For example, the `ITextSelectionSuite`, `IXMLNodeSelectionSuite` (structure view), and `ILayoutSelectionSuite` interfaces each create selections that can be exported as snippets through `ISnippetExportSuite`. For more information on creating selections programmatically, see the “Selection” chapter.

If you have a non-selectable object you want to export as a snippet, you can use one of two methods on the `ISnippetExport` interface (on the `kUtilsBoss`). `ISnippetExport::ExportAppPrefs` can be used to export various application preferences; for examples, see the `SnShareAppResources` code snippet. You also can use `ISnippetExport::ExportDocumentResource` to export resources of the document; for examples, see the `SnImportExportSnippet` code snippet.

For more information, see the “Snippets” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Importing

On import, the main thing the client must specify is where on the scripting DOM tree the incoming snippet will go. The incoming snippet will have one or more root objects (for example, page items), and the client needs to specify where on the DOM tree they will go. For page items, this typically means specifying the spread. For XML elements, it means specifying an element on the structure tree that will be the parent of the imported element. For many other

snippet types (styles, swatches, etc.) the document is the parent. For more information, see the “Snippets” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Extension patterns

There are no specific extension patterns you can implement relating to snippets; however, if you add persistent data to the low-level document model (e.g., through add-ins of interfaces that have persistent implementations), your plug-in must expose this data to scripting.

Adding persistent data to snippet files

If you add persistent data to the boss DOM—for example, through an add-in to one of the page-item boss classes—then for this data to be round-tripped through snippets, you need to expose your data as properties in the scripting DOM. This also may require you to define new object (classes) in the scripting DOM. For more information, see the “Scriptable Plug-in Fundamentals” chapter.

For example, if your custom data on page items needs to be round-tripped through asset libraries (which depend on the snippet architecture), you need to ensure your persistent data is scriptable. See, for example, the SDK sample CandleChart, which was updated to support round-tripping persistent data through snippets by exposing the persistent data as properties added to the scripting DOM.

Frequently asked questions

What is a snippet, and how do I create one?

A snippet is a logically complete fragment of an InDesign document, saved in the XML-based InDesign Markup (IDMS) or InDesign Interchange (INX) formats. A snippet is created by acquiring references to document objects you want to export (for example, by UID or XML-Reference), then using one of the client APIs like ISnippetExport. Alternately, there is a ISnippetExportSuite suite interface that lets you export based on a selection in the layout or structure view (XML elements) or a text selection, as InCopy Interchange format.

What happens if I export a snippet of a placed image?

See [“Image-item snippet” on page 657](#). A snippet for a placed image maintains a link to the asset within the XML representation. When the snippet is imported into a new document, a link appears in the Links panel as if you had placed the image.

What features are based on snippets?

See [“Features that depend on snippets”](#) on page 644.

How accurately is data round-tripped through snippets?

Maintaining a high-fidelity representation of a document asset was one of the design goals for snippets. However, some limitations were designed in. For example, snippets do not carry document-level preferences with them. If they did, they would create overrides of the existing document-level preferences when imported into a new document, which is desirable.

When importing a new asset, it is reasonable for it to bring new document objects, like swatches on which it depends, but it could have unintended global effects on the target document if it starts to redefine document-level preferences that control typography, for example. Importing a snippet should not alter the properties of other document objects in the document into which you import the snippet.

When do I have to care about snippets?

If you are adding custom data to the document—e.g., to page items in some way—and you want this data to be round-tripped through asset libraries, you must be sure you can get your persistent data into snippet files. This is because asset libraries store their assets as snippets internally, meaning your persistent data must be exported into a snippet. See [“Adding persistent data to snippet files”](#) on page 664 for more discussion, and the “Scriptable Plug-in Fundamentals” chapter for information on how to do this.

Can I export spreads or pages as snippets?

Suppose you have a multipage document, and you want to decompose it into independent pages by exporting each page as individual snippets containing all objects on each page and dependencies. Alternately, you may want to export each spread as a snippet.

This is not possible, as pages are not re-created on snippet import, so you cannot factor a document into individual spreads or pages using the snippet architecture alone.

Should we generate snippet files from scratch?

No. The INX-based snippet format should be regarded as a read-only format. We do not recommend using it to generate snippets from scratch.

We designed IDML-based snippets to facilitate programmatic assembly and disassembly of snippets. You can validate your snippets using a RELAX NG-based schema. The SDK also includes a sample plug-in that logs errors on import and export. Both schema validation and the error-logging plug-in are covered in *Adobe InDesign Markup Language (IDML) Cookbook*.

Can I import a snippet directly into a library?

Although asset libraries (kSnippetBasedCatalogBoss) depend heavily on snippets for their representation of assets, there is no public API to let you import a snippet directly into a library. You must import the snippet into a document, then use the library APIs to add the item to an existing library. See the “Snippets” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Can I import a snippet into the scrap database?

The scrap database (kScrapDocBoss) does not support importing snippets; there is no DOM element hierarchy (IDOMElement) on the scrap, which is required to import snippets.

Can we add our own new snippet types?

You cannot add new snippet types or policies; you are restricted to those identified in [Table 151](#). The existing snippet types, however, cover the range of document content it makes sense to export as self-contained assets. Since you can export an arbitrary collection of root objects (those with IDOMElement interfaces) to a snippet file, you can select what goes into a snippet, at least in terms of root objects. What you cannot do is decide what dependents of those objects to include or leave out when export is taking place. You might have to do some additional work before export, to ensure those dependents were exported as if they were root objects in determining what goes on in the snippet.

Shared Application Resources

Introduction

With InDesign CS4 and a small amount of your own code, you can manage application resources like preferences, text styles, XML tags, and swatches. This chapter describes how to read and write these resources to or from a stream, using InDesign Interchange (INX) snippets.

This chapter does not require a full understanding of XML, INX, snippets, or scripting, nor does it try to teach you those technologies. For background, see the “Scriptable Plug-in Fundamentals” and “Snippet Fundamentals” chapters. Also see *Adobe InDesign CS4 Scripting Guide* and *Adobe InCopy CS4 Scripting Guide*.

NOTE: The shared-application-resources APIs support only INX snippets. IDML-based snippets are not supported.

Terminology

- *Application preferences* are the preferences in the InDesign or InCopy preference panel with no documents open. These are the preferences used when InDesign creates a new document.
- *INX (InDesign Interchange)* is an XML-based format InDesign uses to serialize and deserialize native content. It is based on InDesign’s robust scripting support. An INX file is a script expressed in XML that allows for the recreation of InDesign content and properties.
- *Shared application resources* amounts to saving and refreshing resources like application preferences, defaults, text styles, swatches, and XML tags, while the application is running.
- An *INX snippet* is a logically complete INX fragment that represents pieces of an InDesign document or other native application content such as application preferences. This chapter focuses on using snippets to write out application resources like preferences and styles.

Architecture

InDesign and InCopy provide robust scripting support. It is very simple to change an application preference via scripting. One approach to managing application preferences is to write a script that sets these properties to some predefined state. Due to the large number of preferences in InDesign and InCopy, however, this would be fairly involved.

You could continue along this path, and manage character and paragraph styles, object styles, swatches, and XML tags. This would become very involved, with a great deal of code to maintain. Fortunately, you do not have to write these scripts. Snippets achieve the same result, and most of the work is done for you. You must write only the code that exports and imports the snippet.

How it works

INX is an XML-based equivalent to a script, which recreates native InDesign content. Snippets are INX fragments, which are complete enough to recreate part of an InDesign document or workspace. For example, a snippet may recreate a page item and all the resources on which it depends. This probably is the most common use of snippets to date. The *Snippet Fundamentals* chapter provides details about exporting document content. Although beyond the scope of what is covered in that chapter, snippets can be used to recreate most of the items saved in the application workspace.

Instead of building elaborate scripts that set and reset your application workspace, you can use the application's user interface to set your application preferences and styles as required, then export all or part of the workspace using INX snippets. The snippet then contains all the data needed to recreate all or part of your application workspace via the scripting model.

From an API standpoint, special support was added to the snippet architecture for exporting and importing application preferences and resources. The one caveat to using snippets is that you cannot control which individual properties are exported. The API does not provide this level of granularity; instead, it is based on classes of scriptable objects (for example `c_GeneralPrefs`). All such objects that are marked as preference objects in the scripting model and are children of the Application object can be exported. By default, several other classes also are exported. These classes amount to elements of some style list. For instance, for Paragraph Styles, the `c_ParaStyle` list element is exported. For your reference and use in code, the scripting IDs for these types are in `AppPrefsListElementTypes.h`.

A brief description of all relevant interfaces follows.

ISnippetExport

`ISnippetExport` is the interface used to write snippets to a stream. Most the methods have a specific application (like `ExportInCopyInterchange`, `ExportXMLTags`, and `ExportTextStyles`). There also are generic `Export` methods. It is important to note that these methods can be called only with a predefined snippet export policy. You cannot create your own snippet export policy using the publicly available SDK. Certain interfaces intentionally were left out; calling these items with an invalid policy (`kInvalidClass`) exports invalid XML.

The method used to export application resources is `ExportAppPrefs()`. By default, this method exports all application preference types and all other types specified in `AppPrefsListElementTypes.h`. For the exact content, see the method. It contains a collection of list element types, such as text and object styles.

ExportAppPrefs also takes three optional arguments, which allow you to control exactly what is exported:

- An operation — You can specify one of two values (kInclude or kExclude) from the `ISnippetExport::PreferenceOperation` enumeration. Passing in `kExclude` causes everything to be exported except the items listed in the `K2Vector`. Passing in `kInclude` causes only what is in the vector to be exported.
- A reference to a `K2Vector<ScriptID>`.
- A pointer to an instance of `IAppPrefsExportDelegate`, described in the following section.

IAppPrefsExportDelegate

While you cannot create your own INX export policy, `IAppPrefsExportDelegate` allows for finer control of the application preference export process. It gives the caller final say on exactly what is exported and in what order. This may be important if your plug-in adds scripting support to an object you want to be exported by `ExportAppPrefs()`. You may need a way to reorder the export, putting your item after objects on which it depends.

To add an `IAppPrefsExportDelegate`, create your own instance and pass in a pointer when you call `ExportAppPrefs()`.

ISnippetImport

`ISnippetImport` is the interface used to import snippets from a stream. You can access an instance through `Utils<>` helper.

The methods in this interface are generic. They are not specific to importing application resources, but rather any type of snippets. The difference in the two `ImportFromStream` methods is that one allows you to import a snippet containing multiple root objects. For our purposes, we use the `ImportFromStream` method that specifies a single root object (the application).

Like the generic export methods, `ImportFromStream` also takes an INX import policy. Again, you cannot create this on your own. The argument itself is optional and defaults to `kInvalidClass`. The correct policy to use is `kAppPrefsImportBoss`; if you leave it as `kInvalidClass` (the default value), the method will figure this out from the snippet.

IAppPrefsImportOptions

Two options must be defined when importing. These options are provided by an instance of `IAppPrefsImportOptions` on the application workspace. To set these options, query for that instance of `IAppPrefsImportOptions` and call the appropriate set method. That implementation in turn creates and processes a command to change its own state.

The first option is what to do when list items already in the application match those being imported. For example, suppose you import Paragraph Styles A, B, and C into an application workspace that already has Paragraph Style A. Should the import keep or replace Paragraph Style A? To set the option for this, call `SetHandleListItemsWithMatchingNames` with either

`IAppPrefsImportOptions::kUseExistingListItems` or `IAppPrefsImportOptions::kReplaceListItems`. The default value is `kReplaceListItems`.

The second option is what to do with list items that are not being imported. You can either delete everything not in the imported list or leave existing items alone. For example, suppose you import Paragraph Styles A, B, and C into an application workspace that contains Paragraph Style D. Should the import keep or delete Paragraph Style D? To set this option, call `SetDeleteNonImportedListItems` with `kTrue` or `kFalse`. When called with `kTrue`, items not in the imported list are deleted, which is the default behavior. To retain existing items, return `kFalse`.

To completely restore lists like paragraph styles to exported snippets, set the above two properties to `kReplaceListItems` and `kTrue`, respectively. This replaces any existing list items and deletes list items not in the import. This is the default behavior, but it is up to you to know whether `IAppPrefsImportOptions` was changed.

IAppPrefsImportDelegate

While you cannot create your own INX import policy, `IAppPrefsImportDelegate` allows for finer control of the application preference import process. It gives the plug-in developer final say on exactly what is imported, what is kept and/or deleted, and which property is used to compare list elements. You may never need to use a delegate; however, if you need finer control over the import, you need to provide an instance of `IAppPrefsImportDelegate`. To do this, add your `IAppPrefsImportDelegate` instance to `kAppPrefsImportBoss`. This delegate is a way to influence the import policy even though you cannot create your own policies.

Working with snippet APIs: frequently asked questions

See the “Share App Resources” snippet in `<sdk>/source/sdksamples/codesnippets/SnpShareAppResources.cpp`. This contains the sample code that demonstrates everything covered above except the use of delegates (`IAppPrefsImportDelegate` and `IAppPrefsExportDelegate`).

How do I create streams for reading and writing snippets?

`SnpShareAppResources::CreateStream()` shows how to create file streams. It uses `StreamUtils`, which has other useful methods for reading and writing different kind of streams.

How do I limit my export to those items in the preference panel?

You cannot be that precise, but you can come close. `SnpShareAppResources::ExportPrefsPanel` contains all `ScriptIDs` for the objects that control the preference panels. Some of these objects control other settings, like items on the view menu.

How do I export all text styles, object styles, XML tags, or swatches in the application workspace?

Specify the correct list of ScriptIDs to include. See `ExportTextStyles()`, `ExportObjectStyles()`, `ExportXMLTagsAndPrefs()`, and `ExportSwatches()` in `SnpShareAppResources.cpp`.

How do I import a snippet into the application?

Call `ISnippetImport::ImportFromStream()` with a pointer to the appropriate root object (`IDOMElement`) instance. `SnpShareAppResources::ImportToApp()` shows how to query for the application root and call `ImportFromStream()`.

How do I control whether existing objects like paragraph styles are replaced or deleted on import.

`SnpShareAppResources::ImportToAppWithOptions()` shows how to set the application workspace's `IAppPrefsImportOptions` before importing.

How do I determine the correct ScriptID to use for a preference I'm trying to include or exclude?

This may involve trial and error. While all the native IDs are available in `ScriptingDefs.h`, sometimes it is difficult to find the ID corresponding to a particular user interface feature. Most of the ScriptIDs have meaningful names that map to the user interface or how they appear in the scripting object model. To start, look at `ScriptingDefs`. If you cannot figure it out, an understanding of the scripting object model will help. If you cannot identify the right ID, open a developer support case.

How do I know which list element types will be exported by default?

The list of all such types is in `AppPrefsListElementTypes.h`. In `ScriptingDefs.h`, most list element types have both a singular and plural ID; for example, `c_ObjectStyle` and `c_ObjectStyles`. `AppPrefsListElementTypes.h` uses all singular IDs. In all cases, use the singular ID. The internal snippet code considers these elements on a case-by-case basis. It does not export all object styles if you pass in `c_ObjectStyles`.

User-Interface Fundamentals

This chapter introduces the key concepts in the user-interface architecture, such as type bindings between widget boss classes or interfaces and ODFRez custom resource types. This chapter also describes how the user-interface model is factored, discusses relevant design patterns like the Observer pattern, and provides an overview of common plug-in resources.

The chapter has the following objectives:

- Explain user-interface programming for InDesign.
- Help you create responsive user interfaces for InDesign plug-ins.
- Illustrate key concepts with a concrete example of a user interface.
- Describe the factoring of the user-interface model.
- Discuss design patterns relevant to user-interface programming.
- Describe the role played by persistence in the user-interface model.
- Outline how resources are used in defining user interfaces.

Introduction

Plug-in developers often need to implement a user interface early in their plug-in programming experience. To program user interfaces, a plug-in developer needs to understand concepts like boss classes and interface aggregation, as much of the user interface is specified in resources.

The initial state and properties of a plug-in user interface are specified in a cross-platform resource language, ODFRez (OpenDoc Framework Resource language). Developing responsive user interfaces for InDesign plug-ins requires understanding type binding between boss classes (and persistent API interfaces) and types defined in ODFRez, and how persistent interfaces on widget boss classes read their initial state from the plug-in resources.

One benefit of the ODFRez data format is that it is a cross-platform resource definition language. The initial geometry of widgets can be defined in ODFRez data, as well as other data needed to define the initial state of widgets, like the labels on buttons. It is rare that a platform-specific resource is required; in the SDK samples, this occurs only for image-based buttons.

“[Sample user interface](#)” on [page 679](#) introduces a concrete example of a user interface to explain abstract topics like type binding. “[Factorization of the user-interface model](#)” on [page 683](#) describes the user-interface programming model.

Key concepts

Design objectives for user-interface API

The following are some of the design objectives for the user-interface programming model:

- Enable cross-platform user-interface development.
- Create re-usable user-interface components with rich behaviors.
- Provide a well factored design that separates data and presentation.

To meet these objectives, the design supports re-use, with the possibility of customizing widget behavior and appearance, and it encapsulates of platform dependencies. Support for re-use is established through the use of widget boss classes. Platform independence is achieved by using a cross-platform resource format; widgets are defined in the ODFRez language.

The following are the key responsibilities of a plug-in developer:

- Identify and use existing widgets where possible.
- Define new boss classes, typically subclasses of existing widget boss classes.
- Define ODFRez custom resource types. If widget boss classes are subclassed, the associated ODFRez types also must be subclassed. These also go in the top-level framework resource file.
- Define ODFRez data statements, to specify the geometry and properties of the widgets, as well as for localization.

Client code also may be responsible for the following:

- Navigation between boss objects. An example is finding the panel to which a pop-up menu is attached, then locating a widget belonging to the panel.
- Processing actions when menu items are executed or keyboard shortcuts are executed.
- Handling notifications about changes in widget state sent to interested observers. InDesign client code rarely requires writing event-handling code. Instead, observers process update messages that specify how the state of the subject has changed.

Idioms and naming conventions

This section describes some programming idioms and naming conventions that are strongly recommended when writing plug-in user-interface code. There are two types of conventions:

- Conventions used within the public API.
- Naming conventions used to minimize confusion and uncertainty about code intent.

Control-data interfaces on widget boss classes are predictably named. When working with controls, there are many interfaces named `I<Data-type>ControlData`. Notifications of changes in the data model of a control are performed by the implementations of these interfaces.

It is helpful to be disciplined in defining symbolic constants for identifiers. We strongly recommend you observe the following conventions:

- Ensure constants like boss, implementation, and widget IDs begin with “k.”
- Ensure new interface identifier names begin with “IID_,” are in all uppercase, and are declared in the interface ID namespace.
- Use “k<Name>Boss” to define a new ID in the boss namespace, where ideally <Name> is related to the boss-class intent; e.g., kMyCustomButtonWidgetBoss.
- Use “k<Name>Impl” to define a new ID in the implementation ID namespace.
- Use “k<Name>WidgetID” to define a new ID in the widget ID namespace.
- Use “k<Name>Key” to define a new string key in the global string table.
- Strive for regular relationships between implementation class names and identifiers. For example, kMyPluginObserverImpl is associated with a C++ class MyPluginObserver.
- Make ODFRez custom-resource type names indicative of the boss class they bind to, in as regular a fashion as possible. For example, kMyCustomButtonWidgetBoss is bound to the ODFRez type MyCustomButtonWidget.

Along with following the appropriate naming conventions for the domain, it is essential to define symbolic constants in the correct namespace and make sure there are no constants defined that clash numerically. In addition to the boss class IDs and implementation IDs used throughout the API, there are widget identifiers and string tables consisting of key/value pairs for each locale of interest.

In some cases, the namespaces are global; each plug-in must ensure any identifiers and strings it creates are unique within the application. This applies to string keys; for example. However, widget identifiers need be unique only within the list of descendants of a given widget, so in some circumstances you can re-use a widget identifier (for example, across different dialog boxes or panels you own), as long as you observe this constraint.

Abstractions and re-use

This section highlights the major abstractions in the InDesign API and the main strategy for code re-use within the user-interface API: extending widget boss classes. This section also reviews some of the fundamental material required for InDesign programming.

There is a very high degree of code re-use within the user-interface domain, and the boss class hierarchies are particularly deep in this area compared to other application domains. Re-use within the widget API typically takes the form of re-use of boss classes by inheritance. In some circumstances, implementations from the API of particular interfaces can be re-used.

In general, it is not possible to predict whether an implementation of an interface on an existing boss class can be safely re-used. There might be implementation dependencies, like expecting the container-widget boss object to expose an IBoolData interface. In general, it is not safe to try to re-use just one implementation from a given widget boss class. The recommended re-use policy is to extend an existing widget boss class and override an interface, if required, by extending the implementation present on the parent boss class.

Widget boss classes and the user-interface API can be confusing, because there are widgets defined in ODFRez and widgets in the boss-class space with very similar names. For example, `kButtonWidgetBoss` is a boss class that provides implementations responsible for the behavior of a given widget, and `ButtonWidget` is an ODFRez custom-resource type that specifies data for the initial state and properties of a control.

Another source of confusion is that occasionally there are C++ helper classes and ODFRez custom-resource types with identical names (like `CControlView`) but different responsibilities. To avoid confusing these types, it always is necessary to consider whether entities are from the code domain (C++) or data domain (ODFRez).

Widgets versus platform controls

This section describes the relationship between InDesign widget classes and platform controls. Widget boss classes provide a layer of abstraction over platform-specific controls and provide additional capability beyond what is delivered by the platform controls. The user-interface model extends widgets to the platform-specific control set, providing controls like measure-edit boxes specialized for the domain of print publishing.

A widget boss class potentially encapsulates a platform control and provides additional capabilities like entry validation—a cross-platform API to query and set data values and change notification. This is the principal benefit of the user-interface model: the same code can be written to develop a plug-in user interface for Mac OS and Windows, with little or no attention to platform differences.

A widget boss class can be associated with a platform control, as in the case of an edit box. Some classes, however, have no direct platform equivalent or platform peers; for example, the iconic push buttons are not bound to a platform control. When writing client code, typically it is not necessary to be aware of whether there is a platform peer control for an API widget, and we recommend you manipulate the state of InDesign widgets through the InDesign API and not through platform-specific APIs. In addition, use InDesign API-specific patterns to receive notification about changes in control state (subject/observer).

Widget boss classes provide more capability than platform controls. For example, there is a mechanism for controls to persist their state across instances of the application; this is not default behavior for platform controls. The integer edit-box widget (`kIntEditBoxWidgetBoss`) provides additional validation capability not typically provided by platform controls. Another key point about widget boss classes is that they expose a cross-platform API and a uniform programming model on both Mac OS and Windows. This provides true cross-platform development of user interfaces, although at the cost of some complexity in the architecture.

Commands, model plug-ins, and user-interface plug-ins

This section introduces a common factoring in the InDesign plug-ins, which are decomposed into model plug-ins and user-interface plug-ins. The core capabilities of the InDesign API are delivered by required plug-ins, most of which are model plug-ins. A model plug-in delivers required pieces of architecture every client plug-in needs, or it implements the document-object model at the core of InDesign. Much of the application user interface is delivered by

plug-ins that named `<whatever>UI.apln`, indicating they are user-interface-specific and not required plug-ins, which end in `.rpln`.

A plug-in's user interface can be thought of as a means of parameterizing command sequences that perform functions benefitting an end user, like changing the document object model to be consistent with user intent. For example, the XML required plug-in provides the core cross-media API (for example, `IXMLElementCommands`, a key wrapper interface), and the XMedia user-interface plug-in creates the user interface and drives the commands delivered through the XML required plug-in. Behind most plug-in user interfaces, a command or command sequence is executed when a widget receives the appropriate end-user event.

Commands provide a means to encapsulate change, provide support for undoing commands, and support notification of changes. The command pattern is a well-known design pattern, described in depth in Gamma, Helm, Johnson, and Vlissides, *Design Patterns: Elements of Reusable Object-Oriented Software*, Addison-Wesley, 1995.

Commands also use the messaging framework, which allows observers (`IObserver`) to attach to subjects and receive notification of change to the underlying model. Frequently, notifications about commands are received by observers associated with plug-in user-interface components. For example, the Layers panel receives notifications about documents being opened and closed through the command architecture and updates its views accordingly. It is particularly convenient that the same design pattern (subject/observer) is used within the user-interface programming model, since all widget boss classes expose an `ISubject` interface that can be observed by another boss object that implements `IObserver`.

Previewable dialogs are closely connected with commands. Commands used in previewable dialogs should be *absolute*; that is, do not try to increase or decrease the value of data. With preview off, the dialog is operating in collect mode, queuing up the set of commands that will execute. If preview is turned on, these commands are executed, and further updates are executed immediately. If the user cancels the action or turns preview back off, the database rolls back to the original state. Providing preview capability is an essential requirement in some client code.

Suites and the user interface

Selection suites are a convenient way to package model-manipulation code that makes it almost trivial to write a user interface to drive the code. As described above, you should factor the code such that the suite is delivered by one plug-in, and the client code for your user interface that exercises the methods on the suite is in another plug-in. For a more detailed discussion of suites, see the “Selection” chapter of *Learning the Adobe InDesign CS4 Architecture*.

Suites are particularly appropriate to writing user-interface code because they simplify the process. Whenever an end user is required to manipulate document objects by making active selections, make maximum use of suites.

Finding widgets in the API

There are two main ways to inspect the widget set delivered by the API:

- Look at the boss classes delivered by the Widgets plug-in (see the API reference documentation for `WidgetBinClass`).
- Look at the `ODFRez` counterparts for many of these boss classes, which can be found in the API header file `Widgets.fh`.

For information on why there are widget boss classes and `ODFRez` types with similar names, see [“Type binding” on page 680](#).

Each widget in the API is best understood in terms of the boss class that provides its behavior. Although there is an `ODFRez` type `ButtonWidget`, it really is the boss class `kButtonWidgetBoss` that provides all the significant behavior. For simple widgets, however, you can use just the `ODFRez` type without worrying about the boss class behind it; a static text widget is an example of this.

For example, a button in the InDesign API can be understood mainly by the interfaces aggregated on the button-widget boss classes and the semantics of those interfaces. For example, `kButtonWidgetBoss` exposes the following key interfaces, among others:

- `ITextControlData` represents the label on the button.
- `IControlView` is responsible for the button appearance.
- `IBooleanControlData` stores its state, pressed in or not.
- `ISubject` lets client code attach an observer (`IObserver`) to receive notification about changes in the button state.

Observers (`IObserver`) are notified of changes to an abstract subject (`ISubject`). When a button is pressed by an end user, the button-widget boss object (`kButtonWidgetBoss`) notifies any attached observers about the state change, by sending them a message along `IID_IBOOLEANCONTROLDATA` protocol. The message contains additional information to say whether the button is being pressed in.

Notifications about control events or changes

A change in control state can be caused by many events, such as a button click, a keystroke entered in an edit box, or a selection in a list box. Within the InDesign API, you get notification of changes by providing your own implementation of an observer (`IObserver`) that listens for changes in the state of a subject (`ISubject`). Since all widget boss classes extend `kBaseWidgetBoss`, which aggregates `ISubject`, all widgets are observable by default. The simplest way to get notification about changes in state is to add an `IObserver` interface to the widget boss class in which you are interested, and subclass the corresponding `ODFRez` type. While this pattern has the advantage of simplicity, if you have any elaboration in your user interface, we recommend you have one observer listen for changes in multiple widgets and be aggregated on the parent of all widgets in whose state changes you are interested.

If you are accustomed to programming other user-interface APIs, you may expect to need to extend the event-handler interface. Usually, however, this is not required for the InDesign API,

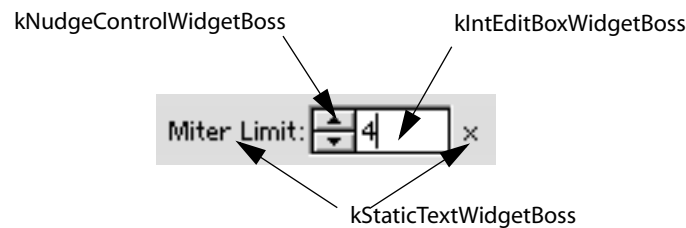
where typically writing an observer (IObserver) implementation is sufficient to be notified about the semantic events associated (e.g., check-box state changed) with the widgets, rather than about the low-level events (left-mouse-button-click) transmitted through the event handler (IEventHandler).

If you use model-view observers to update the user interface, and they update data that does not always need to be synchronized with the model state, you can use lazy notification to improve performance. For more information, see the “Notification” chapter of *Learning the Adobe InDesign CS4 Architecture*.

Sample user interface

The Stroke panel has an assembly of widgets to let an end user vary the miter limit associated with a line (Figure 272). There is a text-edit box (`kIntEditBoxWidgetBoss`), a pair of labels (`kStaticTextWidgetBoss`), and a nudge-control widget (`kNudgeControlWidgetBoss`), which increments or decrements values in the edit control by a specified amount.

FIGURE 272 Widgets from the Stroke panel



The edit-box widget (`kIntEditBoxWidgetBoss`) shown in Figure 272 is specialized for the input of integers; for example, a warning message is generated for any input that is not a valid integer. A widget boss object of type `kIntEditBoxWidgetBoss` encapsulates a standard platform native edit box and adds behavior, like validation logic when accepting updates; for example, when the end user presses Enter with focus in the edit box.

The nudge-control widget (`kNudgeControlWidgetBoss`) collaborates with the integer edit box, allowing increments or decrements of the value in the edit box. A nudge-control widget boss object (`kNudgeControlWidgetBoss`) is not based on any specific platform control. Instead, it consists of two API iconic button-like widgets, although this detail is hidden from developers of client code. This is an instance of the facade design pattern.

The initial state of widget boss objects must be specified through resources, and for each widget boss class, there is an associated ODFRez custom-resource type used to specify initial state for the widget. Table 152 shows the widget boss classes for the example in Figure 272 and associated ODFRez resource types.

TABLE 152 Example widget boss classes and associated ODFRez resource types

API Widget boss class	ODFRez custom-resource type	Displaying
kIntEditBoxWidgetBoss	IntEditBoxWidget	4
kNudgeControlWidgetBoss	NudgeControlWidget	(Nothing)
kStaticTextWidgetBoss	StaticTextWidget	Miter limit
kStaticTextWidgetBoss	StaticTextWidget	x

The key behavior of each control comes from the boss classes shown in the first column. The nudge control and edit box interact in a different way; the nudge control is coupled to the edit box in ODFRez data statements, and you do not need to write any additional C++ code to have an edit box with nudge capability. The code behind the nudge control is delivered by the application's required Widgets plug-in, and it can be safely re-used through the user-interface architecture.

Type binding

This section describes the type bindings that exist between widget boss classes or interfaces and ODFRez custom-resource types, using the example shown in [Figure 272](#). A key aspect of working with plug-in user interfaces is being able to interpret the binding between a widget boss class and an ODFRez custom-resource type or the significance of the binding between an API interface and an ODFRez custom-resource type.

Widget boss classes provide the behavior behind widgets, including the capability to draw and manage internal state and mediate interactions with the end user. Boss classes implement sets of interfaces. The example in [Figure 272](#) uses an integer edit box (kIntEditBoxWidgetBoss), which is a control specialized for the input of integers. The implementation of the IControlView interface on the kIntEditBoxWidgetBoss boss class is responsible for drawing the edit box. The implementation of the ITextDataValidation interface on this boss class validates that the input is an integer.

ODFRez custom-resource types define data to initialize widgets and other elements needed for the interface. For example, the CControlView field in [Example 95](#) specifies the initial location and dimensions of each widget, along with other properties like its widget ID and visibility.

When a panel is shown for the first time, a set of widget boss objects is created by the application framework, and the lifetime of these boss objects is managed by the framework. Each widget boss object is invited to draw itself to the display. A widget boss class provides the capability behind the user-interface element drawn to the screen and implements the user-interface model.

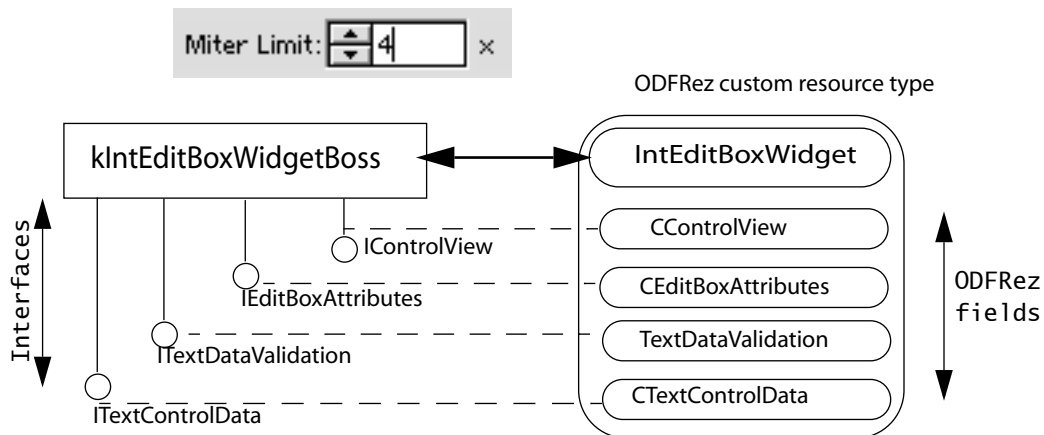
For example, the kStaticTextWidgetBoss boss class is bound to the ODFRez custom-resource type StaticTextWidget. The ODFRez data defines the initial state of a widget the first time it instantiates; thereafter, the state of the widget is restored from a saved data database. This enables widgets to persist their state across instances of the application, which is how end users can save the state of their working areas in terms of the visible panels, their geometries, etc.

A frequently encountered type expression is an ODFRez custom-resource type definition that refers to an interface ID or boss class IDs. An ODFRez expression like `ClassID = xxx` (or `IID = xxx`) establishes a binding between a widget boss class (or interface in the API) and an ODFRez custom-resource type.

For [Example 95](#), some of the type bindings are illustrated in [Figure 273](#), which shows one of the widget boss classes involved, the `kIntEditBoxWidgetBoss` class which provides an API to an integer-specific edit control. Note how the ODFRez is made up of fields, like `CControlView`, that map onto interfaces on the widget boss class. There also are other interfaces on the widget boss class that do not map to fields in ODFRez, like `IEventHandler`. The ODFRez fields specify the appearance of the control; they do not address its behavior, which is done by the widget boss class.

[Figure 273](#) shows the type binding between the `kIntEditBoxWidgetBoss` boss class and the associated ODFRez custom-resource type `IntEditBoxWidget`. It also shows the type bindings for each interface with persistent data exposed by `kIntEditBoxWidgetBoss`. Each persistent interface is bound to an ODFRez custom-resource type that is used to define the initial state stored in the interface by a widget boss object.

FIGURE 273 Binding between classes/interfaces and ODFRez types



The ODFRez fields in `IntEditBoxWidget` define the initial state for the integer edit-box widget, whose behavior is provided by `kIntEditBoxWidgetBoss`. [Example 95](#) shows the ODFRez data statements for the widgets in [Figure 272](#).

EXAMPLE 95 Data statement for widgets in example

```
// Miter Limit
StaticTextWidget
(
  // CControlView fields below
  kMiterStaticTextWidgetId, kPMRsrcID_None, // WidgetId, RsrcId
  kBindNone, // Frame binding
  Frame(0,30,58,47) // Frame
  kTrue, kTrue, // Visible, Enabled,
```

```

    // StaticTextAttributes fields below
    kAlignRight, // Alignment
    kDontEllipsize, // Ellipsize style
    // CTextControlData field below
    "Miter Limit:",
    // AssociatedWidgetAttributes field below
    kMiterTextWidgetId
),

IntEditBoxWidget
(
    // CControlView fields below
    kMiterTextWidgetId, // WidgetId,
    kSysEditBoxRsrcId, kStrokePanelPluginID, // RsrcId
    kBindNone, // Frame binding
    Frame(73,30,111,47) // Frame
    kTrue, kTrue, // Visible, Enabled
    // CEditBoxAttributes fields below
    kMiterNudgeWidgetId, // widget id of nudge button
    1, 10, // small/large nudge amount
    3, // max num chars( 0 = no limit)
    kFalse, // is read only
    kFalse, // should notify each key stroke
    // TextDataValidation fields below
    kTrue, // range checking enabled
    kFalse, // blank entry allowed
    500, 1, // upper/lower bounds
    "4" // initial value
),

NudgeControlWidget
(
    kMiterNudgeWidgetId, kPMRsrcID_None, // WidgetId, RsrcId
    kBindNone, // Frame binding
    Frame(59,30,73,47) // Frame
    kTrue, kTrue, // Visible, Enabled
),

StaticTextWidget
(
    kXTextWidgetId, kPMRsrcID_None, // WidgetId, RsrcId
    kBindNone, // Frame binding
    Frame(115,30,125,47) // Frame
    kTrue, kTrue, kAlignLeft, // Visible, Enabled, Alignment
    kDontEllipsize, // Ellipsize style
    "x",
    kMiterTextWidgetId
),

```

NOTE: Although there are strings like “Miter Limit:” in the ODFRez data, these always are translated for display in the user interface. The strings should be regarded as keys rather than values to be displayed. The SDK string keys are defined with particular care, using a scheme to avoid string-key clashes between plug-ins from different third-party software developers. The approach taken within the application is less structured and not recommended for third-party development.

The main point to note about the ODFRez data statements is that each comprises fields of simpler types. For example, CTextControlData has one field, containing a string key. The contents of this CTextControlData field are used to initialize the contents of the ITextControlData when the widget boss object is created.

Widget boss objects read their initial state from the compiled version of the ODFRez data. They persist their state to a saved-data database and read it back from this if the application starts up with saved data.

Factorization of the user-interface model

Architecture

Often it is tedious and difficult to write a responsive user interface. Also, there are well known differences in the user-interface APIs on Mac OS and Windows. A key design objective for the InDesign user-interface architecture was to provide a cross-platform API and interface-definition format. The result is that the architecture is relatively elaborate; however, it is based on simple and familiar concepts. The user-interface architecture consists of views, data models, event handlers, and observers on the models. There also are attributes associated with the widget boss classes. See [Table 153](#).

TABLE 153 Aspects of the user-interface model

Aspect	Description
Attributes	Represent properties (rather than user data), like the point size a text widget uses to display its label. These are properties that can be defined in ODFRez data statements, although typically they also can be set through interfaces aggregated on the widget boss class providing the widget behavior. See “Attributes” on page 685 .
Control data models	Encapsulate the widget state. Typically, the control-data-model implementation notifies when it changes, so observers on its state can get notified about the changes. See “Control data models” on page 684 .
Control views	Specify the presentation of a widget, like whether it is visible, its widget ID, or whether it is enabled. The particular implementation on a widget boss class determines how the control draws. See “Control views” on page 684 .
Event handlers	Convert events into changes to the data model. See “Event handlers” on page 685 .

The event handlers have code that changes the data models. When the widget data models change, the change manager is notified through the default ISubject implementation. It is the change manager that notifies observers of changes to the data model of interest. This abstraction is described elsewhere, in connection with commands and the notification framework.

Views are connected with the visual appearance of a widget. They can be manipulated to change the visual representation of widgets, like the dimension of the bounding box or the visibility. They also encapsulate the process of rendering a view of the data model.

The only occurrence of an explicit controller abstraction is in the context of dialog boxes. Widget boss classes have no externally visible controller abstraction; code with an equivalent responsibility is encapsulated in the widget event handlers. The MVC pattern is not a complete description of the user-interface architecture.

There also can be other interfaces aggregated on boss classes, often related to details about an implementation of a particular widget.

At its simplest, a widget consists of at least a control view (`IControlView`). If a widget has a state that can be changed, it also has a control data model, like `IBooleanControlData`, `ITriStateControlData`, or `ITextControlData`. If the widget is responsive to end-user events, it aggregates an event handler (`IEventHandler`). It also may have other property-related interfaces.

Depending on the widget type, there can be additional interfaces to manipulate the control or perform operations on data. For example, the combo-box widget boss class `kIntComboBoxWidgetBoss` has additional interfaces, like `IDropDownListController` (to manipulate the list component of the combo box) and `ITextDataValidation` (for performing validation on data entered in the edit-box component of the combo box).

Control views

Control views are responsible for creating the visual representation of a widget boss class. For example, the control-view implementation associated with a palette-panel widget draws a drop shadow. The interface that allows control views to be manipulated is `IControlView`. This interface, for example, can be used to show or hide a widget or to vary other visual properties.

The key method for widget drawing is `IControlView::Draw`. A widget boss class implements this method to provide its default visual appearance. This method is called in response to system paint events or explicit requests to redraw. Any owner draw widgets should override this method to provide a specialized appearance.

Views also can control their own size in response to end-user events. Overriding the `ConstrainDimensions` method on the `IControlView` interface allows a panel to resize to its container palette. For more information, see the API documentation for this interface and [Table 156](#).

Control data models

A control data model represents the state of a widget and is responsible for notifying the application core of changes in its state. For example, an edit box has a data model represented by a `PMString`. Changes in this state are likely to be of interest to client code in a plug-in.

The widget boss classes that control the behavior of radio buttons (`kRadioButtonWidgetBoss`) and check boxes (`kCheckBoxWidgetBoss`) aggregate an `ITriStateControlData` interface. This interface queries and modifies the state of the check box. The possible states are checked, unchecked, or indeterminate (mixed). The event handler interacts with the control data to set

the state. Client code also may have to set and query the control-data-model state and register for notification about changes to the state of the control data model. Typically, observers associated with widgets request notification about changes along a protocol, IID_I<name>CONTROLDATA. This is the standard mechanism for client code to receive messages about changes in the state of a control.

Other APIs require that explicit event handlers be written to process messages from controls. Coding event handlers are used relatively infrequently when programming with the user interface API; the requirement to implement observers is far more common.

Event handlers

The main pattern for processing end-user events is the observer pattern; events are transformed into semantic events by the widget boss class's event-handler code. These semantic events are then transmitted to the observer, as `IObserver::Update` messages with informative parameters. An end user clicking the left mouse button when the pointer is over a button is a low-level event; it becomes a semantic event when interpreted as a button press that takes the control into a button-down state. The semantic event is of more interest to client code than the low-level event, because it provides a useful level of abstraction over the details of how the end user manipulates the state of different types of controls.

Event handlers are responsible for transforming end-user events into changes in the data model. The event handler, therefore, mediates between the end user and the control's internal state.

It is important to be clear about the difference between an event handler and an observer. Event handlers generally are of little interest to client code, except in highly specialized circumstances, when the standard behavior of the control needs to be overridden. There is no need to code an event handler to be notified of events within a widget, like mouse clicks on a button, if the semantic event of interest is the button press.

When an end user clicks in a widget, events are transformed by the application core into cross-platform messages. For example, if an end user clicks on a button, the button-event handler receives an `IEvent::LButtonDn` message. The responsibility of the event handler is to map these events into changes to the state of the control, which it does through interaction with the control's data model. For example, if a check box is selected, the state is represented by the control data interface `ITriStateControlData`. The event handler determines this state and calls `ITriStateControlData::Deselect` when the check box is clicked in the selected state. For more information, see the API documentation for `IEventHandler` and [Table 156](#).

Attributes

An attribute is a property of a control that is not an aspect of the data model but can be used in defining its visual representation, as well as other nonvisual properties. For example, the following are some of the attributes of a multiline text widget:

- The font ID used in rendering text.
- The widget ID of the associated scrollbar.

- Leading between the lines, expressed in pixels.
- An instance of a PMPoint, specifying the inset of the text from its frame.

These attributes are defined in ODFRez data statements. The dimensions of a widget (for example) also can be defined in data statements, but this is a property directly associated with the view. The data model represents the widget state likely to be varied by an end user, like the contents of an edit box.

Relevant design patterns

Design patterns are “simple and elegant solutions to specific problems in object-oriented software design” (Gamma, et al.). The objective of such patterns is to write code with the following characteristics:

- *Flexible* — The code can be reused from many different contexts.
- *Well factored* — Responsibilities of classes are not confused or confounded.
- *Easily comprehensible* — There is a low barrier to understanding by new software developers.
- *Easy to extend and maintain.*

To understand design patterns, you must be aware of how objects in the pattern interact and how responsibilities are distributed between the classes involved. This section introduces some of the design patterns in the API related to the user interface.

These patterns are introduced here to provide a clear outline of the design commitments made in the API. Some of the abstractions may be unfamiliar, but they will be encountered repeatedly in developing plug-ins, so it is important to understand these patterns. Some patterns of relevance and their applicable domain are as follows:

- *Observer* — Event-notification framework. For example, observers are notified of changes in the control data model (the subject). See [“Observer pattern” on page 686](#).
- *Chain of responsibility* — Applicable to the event-handling architecture. The application event handler maintains a stack of event handlers, which are invited in turn to process the current event. If one does not handle the event, the next one down on the stack is invited to handle the event. This is not identical with the pattern described in Gamma et al., but the intent is the same. See [“Chain of responsibility” on page 689](#).
- *Command pattern* — Command processing by the application core is an elaborated implementation of this pattern.

Observer pattern

The observer pattern also is referred to with the term “publish-subscribe.” This pattern is fundamental to the user-interface model. Every widget boss class aggregates an ISubject interface and, therefore, it can be observed.

The observer pattern is appropriate in the following situations:

- When the situation being modeled has two aspects—one dependent on the other—and you want to represent these in separate, lightly-coupled abstractions.
- When change to one object requires change to another, but it is not known beforehand how many other objects need to be changed.
- When one object needs to broadcast a state change to other objects registering an interest.

The abstractions in the pattern are the *observer* and the *subject*. The subject abstraction encapsulates state of potential interest to client code, like the state of a check-box widget.

The observer is interested in changes to the subject. The observing abstraction determines when to register with a particular subject and when to deregister.

The observer registers an interest in being informed when the subject changes. For completeness, the pattern also specifies the ability of the observer to send a message to the subject to state it is no longer interested in being told about changes in the subject.

The observer pattern defines simple abstractions and a straightforward protocol for communication between the subject and observer. The sequence is as follows:

1. The observer sends an attach message to the subject (similar to registering for a mailing list by sending one's e-mail address).
2. A client or owner of the subject sends it a notify message to indicate that any registered observers should be informed of a change.
3. When a change occurs, the subject sends an update message to the observer.
4. The observer queries the subject for details of the subject state in which it is interested.

Changes in the state (data model) of widgets are observed by objects derived from a helper C++ class (CObserver). This allows creation of a listener object that is notified when the data model associated with a widget changes.

Observers are discussed in more detail in the “Notification” chapter of *Learning the Adobe InDesign CS4 Architecture*.

How event handlers implement controllers

Events do not lead directly to observer notifications; there is an intermediate step in the user-interface model. IEvent types, for example, do not convey the appropriate semantics to allow a listener to determine the meaning of an event; a mouse click on a radio button does not tell a listener enough about the action (selection or deselection). The listener would be aware only that a particular mouse event occurred. The missing data is the state of the widget.

The correct process is to attach to the data model of the widget and register for notification on changes in the data model. Rather than each individual observer having to maintain information about the state of the widget, this state is held in the control's data model, and many observers can listen for changes in this model.

For example, if a radio button is selected or deselected, the widget boss object's event handler changes the control data model. This, in turn, generates a call to the Update method in the

observer. At this point, the implementation-specific code determines what operation to perform, based on the current state and the type of event. The parameters of the Update message specify to an observer the new state of the control.

Model-view controller (MVC) is a well-known mutation of the observer pattern. The model plays the role of subject in the observer pattern. The view is equivalent to the observer. The only new abstraction is the controller, which is implicit in the observer pattern; it is the entity that mediates between the end user (an event source) and the data model. The controller causes views to update after the data model is changed. The responsibilities of the elements of the MVC pattern are as follows:

- The controller receives end-user input events, queries or updates the model, and forces the views to refresh with new data.
- The model is a data container. It is protected from the end user by the controller and encapsulates the state of interest to the end user.
- The view consists of renderings of data supplied to it by the controller. Typically, the view cannot actively query the model but passively renders data.

The controller separates the responsibility of dealing with user interaction from the entities responsible for displaying a view of the model or maintaining model state. It becomes particularly useful when not all end users have equal rights to change or query the model, and it mediates between the users and the data (state).

This pattern is especially useful when an application is involved in creating multiple renderings of the same data and keeping these synchronized across updates of the data.

The role of MVC in the user-interface model

Strictly speaking, the application does not implement the pattern from the SmallTalk MVC. There are few explicitly named abstractions in the codebase named `<name>Controller`; for example, the `IDialogController` interface. In SmallTalk, there are classes in the class library named `Model`, `View`, and `Controller`, that are subclassed to build a user interface. There is no direct equivalent in the InDesign API. MVC is an approximation to the architecture and is a reasonable conceptual (high-level) description of the architecture; however, it is not accurate at a more detailed level.

Event handlers are related to controllers, because they act upon and change a model (the widget data model). The code that implements the widget data model in turn sends out notifications via the change manager, when the model is changed.

A widget's event handler changes the data model of a widget boss object directly, without using commands. A command sequence always is needed to change the native document model, which does not involve user-interface widget boss objects. The event handler is in the same role as the controller abstraction in the MVC pattern, because it sits between the data model and the end user, mediates changes in the model initiated by the end user, and indirectly triggers notifications about changes in the data model. In other words, within the InDesign user-interface architecture, the data model actively notifies the change manager about its change in state, rather than being a passive abstraction.

The data model of a widget boss object sends a change message to the change manager through the default ISubject implementation, and attached listeners receive an IObserver::Update message.

This pattern is encountered in the context of creating dialog interfaces by subclassing the partial implementation classes CDialogController and CDialogObserver. In the behavior of most widget boss classes, the notion of an explicit controller is not encountered directly, and you can largely forget about MVC when it comes to writing user-interface plug-ins. Think in terms of the observer pattern, and consider that changes to the control data model (subject, represented by ISubject) of a widget result in change notifications being sent to any registered observers (IObserver) on the abstract subject.

Chain of responsibility

The chain-of-responsibility pattern also is referred to with the term “responder” (see IResponder in the API) or “event handler” (see IEventHandler in the API). Use it in the following situations:

- When multiple objects might be able to handle a single request or event.
- When it is not known beforehand which event handler will be used for a specific event.

The key intent of this pattern is to give multiple objects a chance to handle a request or event. This pattern is useful when writing event handlers for plug-ins, as event handlers are stacked by the application core, and events are chained between the event handlers. If one handler does not signify that an event was handled, the next event handler receives notification of the event. The chaining stops if one handler claims responsibility for having handled the event and no further event propagation would occur.

The user-interface model does not implement the pattern exactly as specified in Gamma et al. In the API, there is an event dispatcher that takes responsibility for propagating the events instead of having each event handler explicitly be aware of the next handler in the chain.

Facade

The intent of the facade pattern (Gamma et al.) is to provide a simplified interface to a complex subsystem. The abstractions in a facade pattern are the facade itself and subsystem classes. The facade knows the subsystem classes to which particular requests should be delegated. The suite architecture uses the facade pattern; suites provide a simplified API for potentially complicated selection format-specific code that has detailed knowledge of model structure.

Within the context of the InDesign selection architecture, the facade is the abstract interface of the suite itself (for example, ITableSuite), and the subsystem classes are those such as <name>ASB and <name>CSB, which add implementations of the suite interface to the abstraction and concrete-selection boss classes, respectively.

In the facade pattern, a client sends requests to the facade, which forwards them to the appropriate object in the subsystem. In the case of suites and the selection architecture, the client is the client code that handled (for example) a menu item. The integrator suite is responsible for

choosing the correct implementation given the selection format and delegating the request to the correct implementation.

There are other examples of the facade pattern in the API, like the nudge-control widget (`kNudgeControlWidgetBoss`) and combo-box widgets (`kComboBoxWidgetBoss`). These are relatively complex widgets that expose a more restricted API to client code, to allow it to manipulate their state and properties.

Command

The intent of the command pattern (Gamma et al.) is to encapsulate a request as an object, allowing clients to parameterize requests, enabling requests to be queued and executed at different times, and supporting an undo protocol. A major benefit of this pattern is that it decouples the object that calls an operation from the object that knows how to perform it.

The key abstraction in the command pattern is the client, which creates a command, a specification of a parameterized operation. The caller executes the command subject to its scheduling preferences. A receiver abstraction knows how to perform the command; for example, an abstraction that can perform a copy on a document page item. The receiver is referenced from the command, to allow the caller to indirectly execute the required operations.

Within the application, client code (often user-interface code) takes on the role of the client; the caller is the command-execution framework of the application core. Client code also may provide the receiver (or delegate to another abstraction within the API). At its most basic, the command abstraction should support an execute method; ideally, it also should support an undo protocol.

Widget-observer pattern

The widget-observer pattern is a specialization of the observer pattern that applies in the following circumstances:

- You have many controls on a panel, and you want to get notifications about changes in their state.
- You do not want to subclass every widget boss class involved, just to aggregate an `IObserver` on each.

Rather than having to subclass all the controls you use on a panel, use one widget observer aggregated on the parent panel boss class. Use the observer implementation to attach to and detach from the `ISubject` interface on the widgets of interest, when this widget observer is sent `IObserver::AutoAttach` and `IObserver::AutoDetach` messages.

There is an extension of this pattern that you can use when you also want to observe changes in the active context. Observing changes in the active context is very common when writing panels that may be constantly present and provide some form of read-out about the application state. This extended pattern for receiving notification about changes in control state on a panel and notification about changes in the active context can be called the “active-selection and widget-observer pattern”; it requires you to aggregate a standard API implementation of `IControlViewObservers` on the panel-widget boss class. The corresponding `ODFRez` data statements

are sufficient to create all wiring for the observer implementations to be auto-attached and detached. In the old InDesign 1.x architecture, there was no way to do this, and it would have been necessary to create a dummy observer that simply called `AutoAttach` on other observers on a given boss object.

IControlViewObserver

Adding a widget observer and active-selection observers to a single-panel boss class and using the `IControlViewObservers` mechanism to wire these in ODFRez data is a very common pattern in the InDesign application codebase. For example, panels—like the Character panel—observe changes in the active context and update states of the widgets, while simultaneously monitoring for changes in the state of many combo-box widgets and so on, using a widget observer and an active-selection observer that are hooked up by `IControlViewObservers`.

For an example of adding a widget observer, an active-context observer, and control-view observers, see the boss-class definition for `kTblAttPanelWidgetBoss` in `{SDK}/source/sdksamples/tableattributes/TblAttr.fr`.

See the `TblAttPanelWidget` type definition, which adds the field to the type statement for the ODFRez panel widget.

Persistence and widgets

Widget boss classes descend from `kBaseWidgetBoss`, which exposes the `IPMPersist` interface. This means a widget boss object can read its initial or stored state for any persistent interfaces exposed by the widget boss class. An interface is persistent if and only if its implementation is declared with the `CREATE_PERSIST_PMINTERFACE` macro, in which case it must implement a `ReadWrite` method.

The initial state of a widget is created by reading data from the plug-in resource in the very first instance. The persistent interfaces on a widget boss class, like `IControlView`, read their initial state from the plug-in resource.

There is a simple rule for understanding which interfaces should be persistent in a widget boss class: at least the interfaces that are bound to ODFRez types should be persistent. If not, there is no way for them to read their initial state from the binary data in the plug-in resource.

Consider the example with the integer edit box and nudge control shown in [Figure 272](#). There are four interfaces bound to ODFRez types (see [Figure 273](#)), and other interfaces on this boss class that are not bound to ODFRez types. [Table 154](#) shows some of the interfaces on the boss class, whether they are persistent, and whether they are bound to an ODFRez type.

TABLE 154 Interfaces, with persistence and binding information

Interface	Implementation ID	Persistent?	Bound to ODFRez type?
IControlView	kNudgeEditBoxViewImpl	Yes	Yes
IEditBoxAttributes	kEditBoxAttributesImpl	Yes	Yes
IEventHandler	kEditBoxEventHandlerImpl	No	No
IObserver	kCNudgeObserverImpl	No	No
ITextControlData	kEditBoxTextControlDataImpl	Yes	Yes
ITextDataValidation	kIntTextValidationImpl	Yes	Yes
ITextValue	kIntTextValueImpl	Yes * (see note below table)	No

NOTE: ITextValue is specified as persistent in the implementation code but is not bound to any specific ODFRez type. This interface provides an API to read and write formatted values, and it cannot be initialized by ODFRez data statements.

In theory, a third-party software developer can create an entirely new widget boss class, deriving from kBaseWidgetBoss and providing the implementation of required interfaces like IControlView and IEventHandler. Extreme care must be taken to ensure that the specification of the fields in the *xxx.fh* file matches the order in which the data is read or written in the ReadWrite method of any persistent interfaces on the new widget boss class. The key point to remember is that a binding between an ODFRez type and an interface ID means the (implementation of) the interface must be persistent.

All widgets have an initial state defined by ODFRez data statements. The ReadWrite method of the persistent interface implementation is called during the initialization of widget boss objects, when an object is created by reading its initial state from a plug-in resource or saved-data database. If there is no saved data, the widget boss object is initialized from the plug-in resource. If there is saved data, any persistent data associated with the widget is read back from the saved data, including parameters like position and size (for resizable elements such as resizable panels).

Resource roadmap

Architecture

A typical plug-in comprises the following:

- Top-level framework resource files (.fr) that contain boss-class definitions, new ODFRez custom-resource type definitions, and other resources, like view definitions and nontranslated string tables.

- Localized framework resource files (the names of which end in something like “_enUS.fr”) that contain the ODFRez data statements required to define the plug-in user interface on a per-locale basis.
- C++ code that implements the interfaces in the boss-class definitions.

The framework resources are compiled using the ODF resource compiler (ODFRC). The C++ code is compiled by the appropriate compiler for the platform. The boss-class definitions are the starting point to understand a new code base; they specify the subclasses for the new boss classes that the plug-in adds to the API, and promise implementations of interfaces.

OpenDoc framework (ODF) resources

The ODF resource language (ODFRez) is a cross-platform solution for defining user-interface resources. ODFRez is based on Rez, the Apple resource utility available with Apple MPW. ODFRez differs from Rez in minor respects; it is intended as an object-oriented, cross-platform, resource-definition format, and it is case-sensitive.

The ODF resource compiler, ODFRC, compiles files written in the ODFRez language. The ODFRez language has a very simple grammar and provides a comprehensive way to define resources, not write programs. There is support for code in other languages that can be embedded, but this capability is limited; only constant C expressions can be embedded in ODFRez files.

ODFRez files contain both type statements (defining new types, or the equivalent of resource classes) and resource-data statements (instances of types). [Example 96](#) shows a separator widget type being defined; that is, definition of the ODFRez custom-resource type `SeparatorWidget`, which extends the ODFRez custom-resource type, `Widget`. A `ClassID` field is initialized to the value of `kSeparatorWidgetBoss`, specifying the class that provides the behavior behind this widget.

EXAMPLE 96 Annotated type definition for separator widget

```
// The ODFRez type expression defining that the SeparatorWidget extends the
// base type, Widget, and has a field of type CControlView.
type SeparatorWidget (kViewRsrcType) :
// note that this is a view-resource type Widget
// superclass for this type - the base ODFRez Widget
  (ClassID = kSeparatorWidgetBoss)
// ClassID is a field of Widget, bound here to a boss class kSeparatorWidgetBoss
{
  CControlView; // field belonging to the SeparatorWidget type
};
```

ODF resources are created in one or more ODF resource-definition files. These files are text files with `.fr` extensions. There also may be platform-specific resources associated with a plug-in, like icons, PICT, or Windows bitmap resources, though plug-ins should be using PNG-based resources wherever possible, because it is a cross-platform format.

Top-level framework resources

PanelList resource

Panels are containers for widgets housed in palettes. They enable panels to be ordered, dragged around, shown, and hidden. An example of a panel contained in a palette is the Stroke panel.

The root panel for a plug-in is defined in a PanelList resource. The ODFRez custom-resource type PanelList specifies what plug-in ID the panels are associated with, a resource ID to use in loading the panels, and how each panel interacts with the menu subsystem.

To understand the PanelList, it is important to be able to distinguish between the ODFRez PanelList type (the template, just like a C++ class declaration) and an ODFRez data statement defining an instance of a PanelList:

- The template for PanelList is prefaced by type; for example: “type PanelList (kPanelListRsrcType).”
- An instance of a PanelList is prefaced by resource; for example: “resource PanelList (kSDK-DefPanelResourceID).”

Nontranslated StringTable resource

There is a StringTable resource where the plug-in developer can place strings that are not to be translated. To minimize the amount of unnecessary duplication of strings across the locale-specific string tables, pay careful attention to localization. For examples of localization, refer to the SDK sample plug-ins.

Localizing framework resources

Strings displayed in the user-interface elements, except the layout widget (the document view), are likely to require localization. From a programming perspective, consider the following entities when localizing:

- *View resources* — The geometry of a panel may change in a language like German, in which, on average, strings are longer than in English.
- *Strings* — The display of strings may change on dialog boxes and panels (as labels), and on menus as the names for menu items.

For each of these entities, there should be an ODFRez LocaleIndex custom resource, which provides the offsets the application framework needs to switch to the localized data for a particular locale. There also should be an appropriate ODFRez StringTable or view resource in the localized framework resource files, to match those promised in the ODFRez LocaleIndex statements.

For most purposes, the recommended string class to use in the API is PMString. The application architecture tries to translate all PMStrings for display in the user interface, unless they are explicitly marked as nontranslatable, either by being included in the nontranslate string table (which, in general, should be very small) or by calling a SetTranslatable(kFalse) on a PMString before it is used. You should provide a translation for every string likely to be displayed in the user interface, in locale-specific string tables.

Localization and LocaleIndex resources

The mechanism of localization is extremely straightforward using the application architecture. The key is to manipulate string keys (keys into the StringTable for a locale) rather than thinking in terms of strings as values.

The LocaleIndex resource is a look-up table that specifies how to locate a particular resource given the locale. A LocaleIndex resource should be declared for each of the following:

- Each view that is to be localized.
- The localized string table.
- The nontranslated string table.

When adding new resource statements for views, a common mistake is to forget the LocaleIndex associated with the view. The type expressions and the data statements for the view may be perfectly formed, but without the LocaleIndex resource telling the localization subsystem which view to choose for which locale, the widgets corresponding to the view resource do not appear. The LocaleIndex type is defined in the SDK header file LocaleIndex.h. The ODFRez LocaleIndex type is a template for defining resources that enables the application core to choose the correct views and strings, given the current locale setting.

Resource compilers

It is important to understand how the files that make up a plug-in project are compiled. [Table 155](#) lists the tools used for compiling resources.

TABLE 155 Tools for compiling user-interface plug-ins

Platform	Tool	Description
Mac OS	ODFRC	Plug-in for Metrowerks CodeWarrior.
Mac OS	Rez	Platform-native compiler which compiles any platform-specific resources, like icons or .rsrs or .r files.
Windows	ODFRC.exe	Windows executable version of the ODF resource compiler that produces Windows binary resources.
Windows	RC.exe	Platform-native resource compiler which compiles the RC file present in a plug-in and any other platform-specific resources, like icon definitions.

The same (header) file may be compiled with the C++ compiler, ODFRC compiler, and platform-native resource compiler; this is achieved by using macros. Some of the key macros can be found in CrossPlatformTypes.h, with core data types defined in CoreResTypes.h.

Customizing a widget

A common reason to add a new interface to an existing widget boss class is to create a new widget boss class that exposes an `IObserver` interface. This is the pattern for obtaining notification about changes to the data model of a particular widget boss object. If you have many widgets on a panel, use the pattern described in “[Widget-observer pattern](#)” on page 690. Otherwise, you risk the unnecessary proliferation of entities that may lead to problems later.

For example, suppose a software developer wrote a new type of panel with a single list box on it. When an end user makes a new selection in the list box, client code receives an update message on the `IObserver` interface. The parameters of the update message specify the type of change that occurred. In this instance, the software developer would subclass the `kWidgetListBoxWidgetNewBoss` boss class and extend the `ODFRez` custom-resource type `WidgetListBoxWidgetN`, binding it to the new boss type.

For controls on dialog boxes, generally there is no need to subclass a widget boss class for each of the controls to get notification about events. There can be one observer for all controls on the dialog box, which can choose to attach to particular controls on the dialog box if notifications about changes in data are required before the dialog box is closed. The helper class `CDialogObserver` (partial implementation of `IObserver`) provides an API that is extremely useful for attaching to and detaching from controls on a dialog box. It also should be used as the basis for an override of the `IObserver` interface on the `kDialogBoss` class. If you use `DollyXs` to generate the boilerplate for a dialog box, by default you already have an implementation of an observer that gets notification about all controls. This actually is an implementation of the widget-observer pattern, which merely generalizes the notion to an arbitrary parent-widget type.

Advanced event handling

Writing a proxy event handler

The way in which the observer design pattern is implemented in the user-interface model means client code can be notified about widget events without an event handler having to be implemented in your plug-in. In general, this is sufficient for client code to be responsive to end-user events. This pattern simplifies client code and avoids client code having to turn low-level events (like a mouse move or button press) into semantic events (like a check-box widget becoming checked). Even notification of single keystrokes can be sent to an observer of a text widget, so the granularity of notification is potentially quite fine.

The event-handler implementations in the `InDesign/InCopy` user interface can have an inheritance hierarchy several levels deep. In most cases, it is not possible to subclass the implementation by straightforward C++ techniques, because most event-handler implementation headers are not exposed to plug-in developers.

There are specialized cases in which some knowledge of the event-handling model is useful and the ability to override the default event handling for a control is essential. An example is

when there is a requirement to specialize the event-handling behavior of a particular control, such as to perform a special function in response to a double click. The challenge is that most of the event-handler implementation classes are not exposed to plug-in developers, because these may involve deep hierarchies of implementation classes that also are not public. It breaks the encapsulation in the user-interface API if client code comes to depend on this code. Fortunately, there is a convenient workaround for this, by using a proxy or delegate pattern.

Watching events

The concept of overriding the default event handler for a control using the proxy technique, which is often all that is appropriate, implies handling many messages. Often, only a few messages are of interest, and you want a technique with more precision. The event-watcher (`IEventWatcher`) abstraction can target specific events, and a particularly useful partial implementation class (`CIdleMouseWatcher`) can provide a convenient source of information about `MouseMove` events, without the need to register every `MouseMove` event associated with a control.

For example, the JPEG Export dialog box has a feature that allows a description of the widget over which the mouse pointer is hovering, based on the `CIdleMouseWatcher` partial implementation. This implementation class can be used to create a mouse event watcher without having to use a proxy event-handler pattern.

Key abstractions in the API

[Table 156](#) shows some of the key interfaces and summarizes their responsibilities. The `kBaseWidgetBoss` boss class is the ancestor for all API widget boss classes. Some of these are found on `kBaseWidgetBoss`. For a complete list of interfaces on `kBaseWidgetBoss`, see the API reference documentation.

TABLE 156 Key widget-related interfaces

Name	Key responsibilities
IControlView	Implements the widget view (the visual representation of a widget) and stores properties like its dimensions or visibility. Every widget boss class provides an implementation of the IControlView interface, and the IControlView::Draw method determines how it renders its appearance. For more detail on owner-draw controls, see the API reference documentation for IControlView and the CustomDataLink and PanelTreeView SDK samples.
ISubject	Makes a widget observable by observers. Exposed by kBaseWidgetBoss, so every widget also is a subject.
IObserver	Provides notification when widgets change. Implements the observer component of the observer design pattern. You add an implementation of IObserver in to a widget boss class to let your code be called when a widget or one of its dependents is changed.
IPanelControlData	Used to traverse the widget tree in the direction of the leaves. Found on container widget boss classes (like panels or dialog boxes).
IWidgetParent	Allows the widget tree to be traversed in the direction of the root. At the root of a typical widget hierarchy (associated with a panel or dialog box) is a window boss object. Given an interface pointer referring to one widget boss object, it is possible to walk up the widget hierarchy, querying for a particular interface, until reaching the root.
IEventHandler	An event-handling API. The event dispatcher in the application core dispatches events to a widget's event handler, according to its own logic. Your client code typically uses the observer pattern only to receive notification about changes in control state and does not need to implement event handlers.
ITip	Allows a tip to be defined in ODFRez data statements.
IPMPersist	Allows the widget to read its state from the plug-in resource's saved data and to write its state back to saved data.

Suppressed User Interface

Introduction

This chapter describes the suppressed user interface feature and how plug-in developers can use it to hide or disable pieces of the InDesign or InCopy user interfaces.

Sometimes it is valuable to remove or disable some functions. For example, system integrators may want to disable particular features or controls. The easiest way to do this is to remove non-required user-interface plug-ins that provide access to the undesirable features. While this works in the simplest of cases, it does not provide the granularity necessary in most cases. Most often, it is desirable to disable parts of a plug-in. Suppressed user interface allows plug-in developers to disable or hide menus, actions, and widgets; and disable drop operations for specific widgets.

In this chapter, *suppress* means hide or disable.

Architecture

The suppressed user-interface architecture is straightforward. An implementation of `ISuppressedUI` was added to `kSessionBoss`. The menu, action, widget and drag-and-drop code calls methods on this interface to determine whether a user-interface element is suppressed. The implementation of `ISuppressedUI` does not track suppressed widgets; instead, it forwards the method calls to the `ISuppressedUI` implementations on `kSuppressedUIService` service provider bosses. These service provider bosses are the extension point for third-party developers.

The minimum requirement for a plug-in to become part of the decision-making process is to provide a service provider like the following:

```
Class
{
    kMySuppressedUIServiceBoss,
    kInvalidClass,
    {
        IID_IK2SERVICEPROVIDER, kSuppressedUIServiceProviderImpl,
        IID_ISUPPRESSEDUI, kMySuppressedUIImpl
    }
}
```

In the above, `kSuppressedUIServiceProviderImpl` is provided by InDesign. It is a pre-made implementation of `IK2ServiceProvider` that identifies this service provider as type `kSuppressedUIService`. The other implementation, `kMySuppressedUIImpl`, is where the interesting work would occur.

For an illustration of how the method calls are forwarded to service providers, consider what happens when an otherwise enabled widget is added to a panel. The widget code calls `IsWidgetDisabled()` on the `ISuppressedUI` implementation aggregated on `kSessionBoss`. This implementation forwards the call to the service providers, by looping through calling `IsWidgetDisabled()` on the `ISuppressedUI` implementation. If one service provider returns `kTrue`, it breaks out of the loop by immediately returning `kTrue`. If all service providers return `kFalse`, the forwarding method also returns `kFalse`. The widget is then enabled or disabled, based on the results of this call.

NOTE: Suppressed user interface is architected for static solutions; i.e., the user-interface configuration does not change during an application instantiation. To show the new state, the user interface that is suppressed needs to be re-drawn. If a suppressed control is on a panel, the control's new state is not drawn until the next update event on the control, which does not happen until events occur like the panel being closed and re-opened. The SDK sample "suppui" uses some of the user interfaces that always are re-drawn before they are displayed, such as menu items; this may lead to confusion about dynamic support for suppressed user interface.

XML-based implementation

Depending on your requirements, you may not need to write your own `ISuppressedUI` implementation. InDesign provides an `ISuppressedUI` implementation (`kSuppressedUIWithXMLFileImpl`) that suppresses user-interface items (menus, actions, widgets, and drop targets) based on the content of a specified XML file. To use this implementation in your service provider boss, use `kSuppressedUIWithXMLFileImpl` as the `ISuppressedUI` implementation. You also will need to provide an `ISysFileData` implementation, which is used to specify the XML file. Your boss will look something like the following:

```
Class
{
    kMySuppressedWithXMLUIServiceBoss,
    kInvalidClass,
    {
        IID_IK2SERVICEPROVIDER, kSuppressedUIServiceProviderImpl,
        IID_ISUPPRESSEDUI, kSuppressedUIWithXMLFileImpl,
        IID_ISYSFILEDATA, kMySuppressedUISysFileImpl,
    }
}
```

When providing an `ISysFile` Implementation, you may provide your own `ISysFileData` implementation, as shown above. Alternately, you can reuse `kSysFileDataImpl` which is provided by InDesign. The difference lies in how the data is initialized. If you provide your own implementation, you can initialize your class to point to a file of your liking. If you reuse `kSysFileDataImpl`, you must set its data before it is used. One way to do that is to provide a start-up service (`IStartupShutdownService`) that sets the `SysFileData` at start-up. Then, at any other time, you could set `ISysFileData` and call `ISuppressedUI::Reset()` to force the `kSuppressedUIWithXMLFileImpl` to read the XML file. To get to the `ISysFileData` interface from your service

boss, you can call `IK2ServiceRegistry::QueryServiceProviderByClassID(kSuppressedUIService,kMySuppressedUIWithXMLUIServiceBoss)`. For an example of how to add your own XML based service, see the SuppUI sample project.

XML file format

The XML file should be well formed, with a single root element of type `SuppressedUI`; for example:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-16" standalone="yes"?>
<SuppressedUI>
  <SuppressedWidget widgetID="8457" ancestorWidgetID="0"
    restrictionType="disable"></SuppressedWidget>
  <SuppressedWidget widgetID="1538" ancestorWidgetID="23506"
    restrictionType="disable"></SuppressedWidget>
  <SuppressedAction actionID="263" restrictionType="disable"></SuppressedAction>
  <SuppressedMenu menuName="Main:&Type:&Font"
    restrictionType="hide"></SuppressedMenu>
  <SuppressedDragDrop widgetID="8455" ancestorWidgetID="0"></SuppressedDragDrop>
  <SuppressedPlatformDialogControl
    PlatformDialogControlIdentifier="AllOpenDocDialogCustomControls">
  </SuppressedPlatformDialogControl >
  <SuppressedPlatformDialogControl
    PlatformDialogControlIdentifier="PlaceFileImportOptionsCheckbox">
  </SuppressedPlatformDialogControl ></SuppressedUI>
```

Any of the following five elements and their attributes can be used:

- `SuppressedWidget`
- `SuppressedAction`
- `SuppressedMenu`
- `SuppressedDragDrop`
- `SuppressPlatformDialogControl`

They are all described below.

SuppressedWidget

The SuppressedWidget element is used to suppress widgets. It should contain the attributes shown in [Table 157](#).

TABLE 157 Attributes of SuppressedWidget

Attribute name	Type	Summary
widgetID	CDATA	This specifies which widget is being disabled or hidden. Provide a WidgetID in decimal format.
ancestorWidgetID	CDATA	In some cases, you may need to qualify a widgetID. For example, suppose you want to disable the OK button in the Style Options dialog. The Widget ID (kOKButtonWidgetID) is shared by many dialogs. Without qualifying it with an ancestorWidgetID, the OK button would be suppressed on all dialogs. To prevent this, you need to specify (in decimal format) the WidgetID of the Style Options dialog, using the ancestorWidgetID attribute. A value of "0" means no ancestor.
restrictionType	CDATA	This specifies how the widget is suppressed. The choices are disable or hide.

SuppressedAction

The SuppressedAction element is used to suppress actions. It should contain the attributes shown in [Table 158](#).

TABLE 158 Attributes of SuppressedAction

Attribute name	Type	Summary
actionID	CDATA	This specifies which action is being disabled or hidden. Provide a ActionID in decimal format.
restrictionType	CDATA	This specifies how the action is suppressed. The choices are disable or hide.

SuppressedMenu

The SuppressedMenu element is used to suppress menus. It should contain the attributes shown in [Table 159](#).

TABLE 159 Attributes of SuppressedMenu

Attribute name	Type	Summary
menuName	CDATA	This specifies a menu name; for example, “Main:&Type:&Font.”
restrictionType	CDATA	This specifies how the action is suppressed. The choices are disable or hide.

SuppressedDragDrop

Description

The SuppressedDragDrop element is used to disable drag and drop operations for particular widgets. It should contain the attributes shown in [Table 160](#).

Attributes

TABLE 160 Attributes of SuppressedDragDrop

Attribute name	Type	Summary
widgetID	CDATA	This specifies a widget. Provide a WidgetID in decimal format.
ancestorWidgetID	CDATA	In some cases, you may need to qualify a widgetID. For example, suppose you want to disable the OK button in the Style Options dialog. The Widget ID (kOKButtonWidgetID) is shared by many dialogs. Without qualifying it with an ancestorWidgetID, the OK button would be suppressed on all dialogs. To prevent this, you must specify (in decimal format) the WidgetID of the Style Options dialog, using the ancestorWidgetID attribute. A value of “0” means no ancestor.

SuppressPlatformDialogControl

Description

Platform dialogs like Place, Open, and Save are provided by the operating system. InDesign uses such dialogs but adds its own custom controls. This element is used to suppress these custom controls on platform dialogs. It should contain the attributes shown in [Table 161](#).

TABLE 161 Attributes of SuppressPlatformDialogControl

Attribute name	Type	Summary
PlatformDialogControlIdentifier	CDATA	This specifies which custom controls to suppress.

SuppressedUI tool

The SuppressedUIPanel plug-in (also known as the SuppressedUI tool) can be used in conjunction with the debug build to discover widget IDs and generate XML files as described above. It is included with the debug builds of InDesign and InCopy (in the “tools” folder), but due to start-up costs and potential confusion, it is not loaded by default. To load the plug-in, you need to manually copy it to the “plug-ins” folder in your debug build. When installed, it is available under the SuppressedUI Tool menu item in the Windows menu.

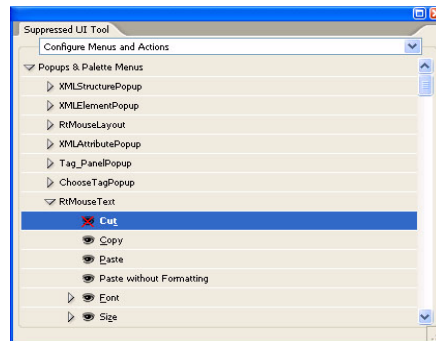
Although the SuppressedUI Tool can be very useful, it has several significant limitations. Before using the tool, be sure to read and understand [“SuppressedUI tool limitations” on page 706](#).

The SuppressedUIPanel plug-in provides a `kSuppressedUIService` service provider boss that uses the XML-based implementation (`kSuppressedUIWithXMLFileImpl`). This means when the plug-in is loaded, the specified widgets are suppressed. This is only for debug purposes. When your plug-in is deployed, you need to provide your own such service provider.

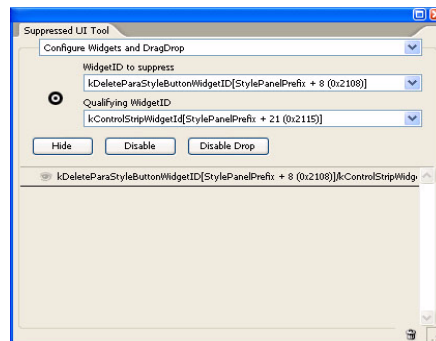
When the SuppressedUIPanel is loaded, it looks for the `SuppressedUI.xml` file in the user's application preferences folder. If the XML file is present, it is parsed, and its data is used to suppress the user interface. If no file is present, it is created with no elements.

The SuppressedUIPanel contains two subpanels.

- “Configure Menus & Actions” can be used to suppress menu items and actions. See [Figure 274](#). It contains a Tree control that has a hierarchical list of menus and actions not contained in menus. An icon button on each element toggles the state of the menu/action among three values: unsuppressed, disabled, and hidden. A black eyeball icon indicates the is unsuppressed; a grey eyeball, is disabled; and an eyeball with a red X, hidden. Top-level menus, like File, Edit, and Object, cannot be suppressed. Palette menus (shown under Pop-ups) may have strange names; because these names normally are not displayed in the user interface, they use names from the code.

FIGURE 274 *SuppressedUI Tool: Configure Menus and Actions subpanel*

- “Configure Widgets and DragDrop” can be used to suppress widgets and disable them from accepting drop operations. See [Figure 275](#). You start by targeting the widget on which you want to operate. In this pane, there is a button with a target icon. To target a widget, click and drag from the button to the widget you want targeted. When you release the mouse, the first drop-down list, “WidgetID to suppress,” contains the ID name of the targeted widget. Next, suppress the item by clicking one of three buttons, Hide, Disable, or Disable Drop. The widget should then appear in the list at the bottom of the panel, which shows suppressed widgets. To unsuppress a widget, select it from the list and click the trash button at the bottom of the panel.

FIGURE 275 *SuppressedUI Tool: Configure Widgets and DragDrop subpanel*

If you open the “WidgetID to suppress” drop-down, you will see the targeted widget at the top of the list. For your convenience, all its ancestors also are added to the list. This is important because it is easy to target the wrong widget. For example, if you try to target the stroke styles drop-down, it may target the widget inside the drop-down that draws the line. This widget contains sub-widgets, which can be targeted. If you disable the sub-widget instead of the drop-down, the drop-down will still function. Instead, you need to select the appropriate ancestor, in this case the `kStrokeTypePopupWidgetID`.

There is another drop-down, “Qualifying WidgetID.” Its purpose is to provide more context when WidgetIDs are shared. For example, many dialogs share the `kOKButtonWidgetID`. To

disable the OK button in a specific dialog, you must specify the button's parent WidgetID in the “Qualifying WidgetID” drop-down. Doing so prevents the OK button from being disabled in all dialogs that share the `kOKButtonWidgetID`. To do this using the tool, you target a widget, then select the ancestor widget you want as your qualifier from the “Qualifying WidgetID” drop-down. Click one of the buttons to add this widget/qualifier combination to the suppressed list.

This tool does not handle platform dialog controls; these must be put in the XML file by hand. For more information, see [“XML file format” on page 701](#).

SuppressedUI tool limitations

Using the SuppressedUI tool on modal dialogs requires special care. For the SuppressedUI tool to work on modal dialogs, it must already be open when the dialog is opened. Furthermore, it must be opened before the dialog is opened for the first time. If you open the dialog before the SuppressedUI tool, you need to quit and delete the `SavedData` file in your preferences folder, to reset the dialog and allow you to use the tool for that dialog.

On Windows, if you have a modal dialog open, you can target a widget with the tool, but you will not be able to click the Hide, Disable, or Disable Drop buttons. Instead, target the widget and then dismiss the dialog. Once the dialog is dismissed, you can click the Hide (or other) button to suppress the widget.

Do not disable the top level widget in a dialog. If you disable the dialog widget, when you dismiss the dialog, the menus remain disabled as they were when the dialog was open.

When browsing the available actions in the SuppressedUI tool, you may see strange actions like “dynamic” or “doesn’t matter.” These actions are present because the tool makes no effort to filter out special-case actions; it simply lists all actions defined. These particular actions exist but are not useful to the user; ignore them.

Working with the *ISuppressedUI* API

The *ISuppressedUI* interface is documented in the SDK API documentation. For a sample implementation, see the `SuppUI` sample project. The interface itself is not complex, but it is challenging to determine the appropriate IDs and menu paths. The best way to get around this is to use the SuppressedUI tool to discover IDs and menu paths, even if ultimately you will not use the XML-based implementation.

Before implementing this interface yourself, read and understand the following additional points:

- The methods of your implementation will be called very often. Performance is an important consideration. Poor implementations can slow down the entire application.
- You can use the `Reset()` method to improve performance. For instance, if your implementation reads data from a file, you should build a cache when `Reset()` is called. Then, anytime

the data file changes, you will need to query for `ISuppressedUI` on your service provider, and call `Reset()` to rebuild the cache.

- Calling `Reset()` on the `gSession ISuppressedUI` implementation forwards the `Reset()` call to all `kSuppressedUIService` service providers. In most cases, this probably is not what you want to do. If you just want to call your service providers `ISuppressedUI::Reset()`, query for it yourself using `IK2ServiceRegistry::QueryServiceProviderByClassID()`.
- `IsWidgetDisabled` and `IsWidgetHidden` take an `IControlView*`. See the `SuppUI` sample for an example of how to extract a `WidgetID` or a parent `WidgetID` from the `IControlView*`.
- When suppressing widgets, the hardest part may be determining the widget’s `WidgetID`. You can learn a lot by opening the `ID.h` file for the feature you care about. This assumes you can identify the `ID.h` file in which the widget is defined. You may run into cases that are not obvious. It is easiest to use the `SuppressedUI` tool to discover `WidgetIDs`.
- `IsDragDropDisabled()` is called with a lot of context. `IDragDropTarget*` and `IDragDropSource*` allow you to extract information on the target and source. `DataObjectIterator*` lets you peak at the flavors on the clipboard.
- To suppress menu items with a corresponding action, implement `IsActionDisabled()` or `IsActionHidden()`. The `IsSubMenuDisabled()` and `IsSubMenuHidden()` methods are used to disable submenus. These are strictly menus and not items with a corresponding action. For example, to disable the entire `Edit` menu, you could use `IsSubMenuDisabled()`.
- Determining a menu path may involve thought or investigation. The path needs to be specified as an untranslated string. Furthermore, each menu has a name, and you may not know the name of the menu you are disabling. It is easiest to use the `SuppressedUI` tool.
- Determining the names of platform dialog custom controls is more straightforward. The available dialogs and controls are listed in `SuppressedUIXMLDefs.h`. For example, `IsPlatformDialogControlSuppressed` specifies all custom controls on the `Place` dialog.

Other user-interface “suppression” mechanisms

The application API supports other mechanisms that allow for customization and suppression of the user interface behavior:

- See `IMenuFilter` in the API documentation. This abstraction allows for configuration of menu items as they are added.
- See `IActionFilter` in the API documentation (and the `CustomActionFilter` SDK sample). This abstraction allows for configuration of actions as they are added.
- See the section on “Working with the Quick Apply Dialog” in the “User Interfaces” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions* for examples of using the `IQuickApplyService` and `IQuickApplyFilterService` extension patterns to control the function available through the quick apply dialog.



Suppressed User Interface

Other user-interface "suppression" mechanisms

Using Adobe File Library

Introduction

This chapter describes the Adobe File Library (AFL) as it applies to developers of plug-ins for InDesign CS4. This library provides utilities for manipulating files, paths, and directories on Windows and Mac OS. The chapter defines terms and explains key concepts related to the Adobe file library, provides detailed descriptions of the design and class hierarchy of the Adobe file library, guides you in porting code that uses SysFile, and answers common questions.

The SysFile container was removed. Any use of SysFile needs to be changed to use IDFile.

Before InDesign CS2, the InDesign code used a loose collection of utility classes and direct system calls to manipulate files and directories. The SysFile container that held a reference to files and directories was defined differently for Windows and Mac OS and was unable to be readily adapted as the operating systems' file APIs evolved. This problem was most prevalent on Mac OS, which has a complex set of APIs for file manipulation and provides many approaches for referencing files.

The Adobe file library was created to solve these problems. It was designed with two goals in mind:

- Provide a unified collection of classes and utilities that can be used to perform all file and directory manipulation.
- Provide a core architecture that can be used by other Adobe applications.

To this end, the design includes a core set of classes and utilities that are independent of InDesign (i.e., they do not rely on the InDesign model). In addition to the core architecture, there are classes and utilities that provide functions specific to InDesign, as well as model-dependent features.

The SysFile container was removed for CS2. Plug-in developers should use the IDFile. IDFile is an InDesign API class used to manipulate a file or directory specified by a path. IDFile has a rich cross-platform method set including, for example, persistence of file and directory paths.

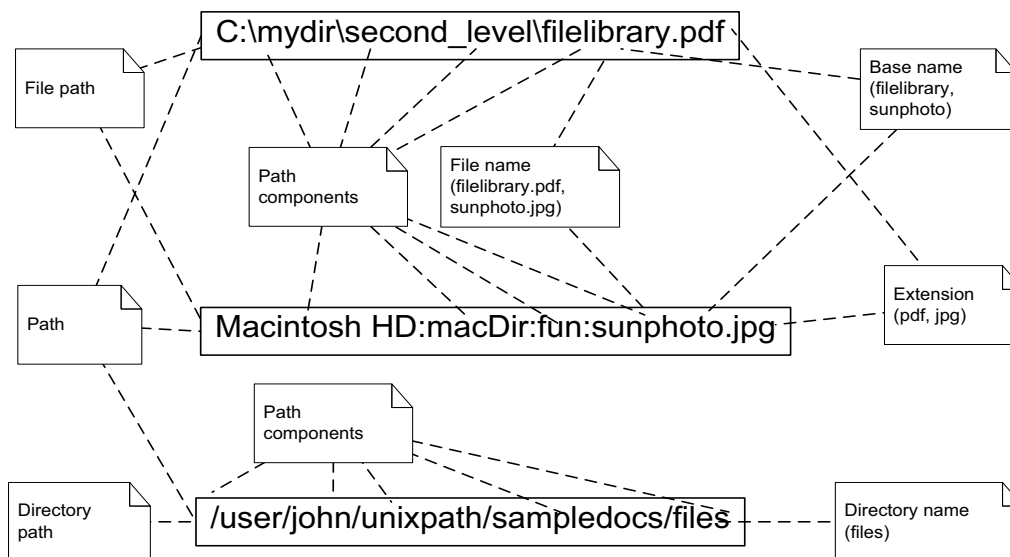
Terminology

The following terms are used throughout this chapter. They are illustrated in [Figure 276](#).

- *Adobe file library (AFL)* — A file library with APIs for file and directory manipulation.
- *Base name* — The portion of a *filename* or *directory name* before the last period.
- *Directory* — A construct provided by the operating system, which contains the names of files, other directories, or both. Directories are identified by *directory paths*.

- *Directory name* — The last path component of a *directory path*.
- *Directory path* — A path whose last component is a *directory name*.
- *Filename* — The last path component of a *file path*.
- *File path* — A path whose last component is a *filename*.
- *Extension* — The portion of a *filename* or *directory name* after the last period.
- *Hierarchical File System (HFS)* — The Mac OS standard file system format. It is used to represent a collection of files as a hierarchy of directories (folders), each of which may contain files or folders themselves.
- *Path* — A sequence of path components. Each element except the last names a directory that contains the next element. The last element may name a directory or a file. The first element is closest to the root of the directory tree; the last element, farthest from the root.
- *Path component* — A name of a volume, directory, or file that is an element of a path, separated by a path separator character (such as \, /, or :).
- *SysFile* — A container class that held a reference to a file or directory in pre-CS2 versions of InDesign and InCopy.

FIGURE 276 File and path concepts



Adobe File Library architecture

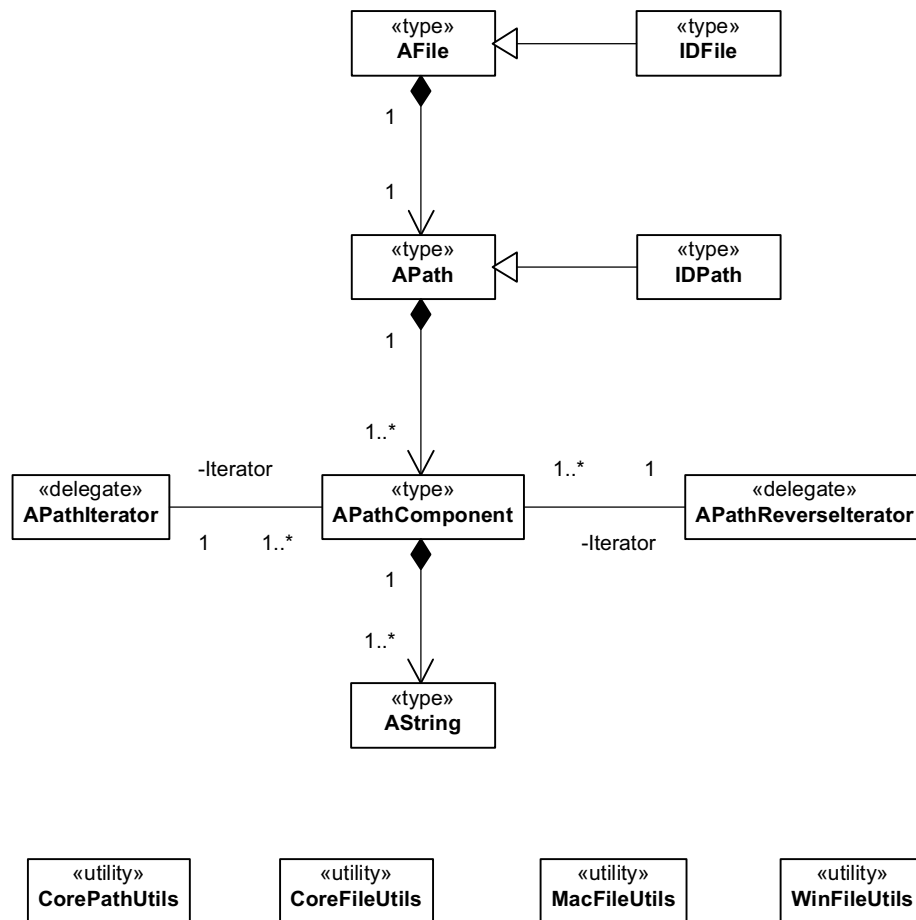
Adobe File Library is a dynamic library. It is in the Windows SDK at {SDK}\external\af\libs\win\{release|debug}\AFL.lib. On Windows, if you have a plug-in project that uses Adobe file library, you need to explicitly link to AFL.lib. On Mac OS, AdobeAFL.framework is included in InDesignModel.framework), a universal binary that can be used on both PPC and i386 systems.

Adobe file library is not based on the InDesign object model and does not use concepts specific to InDesign, like bosses and interface IDs.

Adobe File Library classes and utilities

See [Figure 277](#) for an overview of file library classes and utilities provided by Adobe File Library.

FIGURE 277 File Library Classes and Utilities provided by Adobe File Library



AFile, APath, APathComponent, and AString form a composition chain. An AFile object represents a file or directory; it holds an APath object pointing to the full path of the file or directory. An APath object consists of one or more APathComponent objects; a sequence of path components forms a path. An APathComponent object consists of two AString objects, representing base and extension parts, respectively.

AFile and APath are not pure virtual classes: they have their own implementations that may be used by other Adobe products. IDFile is the InDesign implementation of AFile. IDPath is the InDesign implementation of APath. They extend their parent classes by providing additional methods specific to InDesign and InCopy.

CorePathUtils and CoreFileUtils provide core utilities that apply to both Windows and Mac OS. WinFileUtils provides utilities specific to Windows. MacFileUtils provides utilities specific to Mac OS. FileUtils, which has been in the SDK since InDesign CS/InCopy CS, provides file-manipulation utilities specific to InDesign and InCopy. See [“FileUtils class” on page 715](#).

Common file API

The common file API comprises classes and utilities that can be used in InDesign and InCopy, as well as other Adobe products. For detailed methods and definitions, see the API reference documentation.

AString class

AString is a class used to hold and manipulate a UTF-16 string. AString has general string-manipulation methods, such as Append, Insert, and Length. AString has methods for converting to and from other string types. The common file implementation does not know InDesign types, so AString cannot be constructed from PMString directly.

APathComponent class

APathComponent is a container class used to hold the name of a single component of a path. A path component can be a volume name, directory name, or filename. APathComponent has methods for getting and setting the base, extension, or full name of an APathComponent object as an AString.

APath class

APath is a container class used to hold an absolute or relative path. The individual path elements are stored in a vector of APathComponent objects. Storing the path in a vector allows for quick retrieval, manipulation, and iteration of the path components. APath does not require that the contained path exist on the file system. It has methods for getting path information, setting and changing the path, and begin(), end(), rbegin(), and rend() methods for use with its iterator class APathIterator and APathReverseIterator.

APathIterator class

The APathIterator random access iterator class provides the ability to iterate over the path components contained in an APath object. The class mimics the function provided by STL random access iterators.

APathReverseIterator class

The APathReverseIterator random access reverse iterator class provides the ability to iterate over the path components contained in an APath object in reverse order. The class mimics the function provided by STL random access reverse iterators.

AFile class

The AFile class is used to create and delete files and directories, and to get and set file and directory status and access properties. A file or directory referred to by the class does not need to exist. Methods that require the existence of a file or directory are ignored and fail appropriately when the file does not exist.

CorePathUtils class

CorePathUtils is a utility class that provides additional path function beyond the scope of APathComponent and APath. CorePathUtils includes methods for converting UTF-8 to and

from an `APathComponent` object, getting and setting current working directory, and checking the path type of an `APath` object.

CoreFileUtils class

`CoreFileUtils` is a utility class that provides additional file and file system function. `CoreFileUtils` includes methods for creating temporary files, copying and moving a file, renaming a file, and testing whether a file is on a server.

MacFileUtils class

`MacFileUtils` is a utility class that provides additional file and file system functions specific to Mac OS. Methods are included for getting and setting `VolumeRefNum`, getting and setting the creator and type of a file, converting `AFile` to and from `FSRef`, `SpecInfo`, `FSSpec`, and `CFURLRef`.

WinFileUtils class

`WinFileUtils` is a utility class that provides additional file and file system functions specific to Windows. Methods are included for getting UNC path, local path, and POSIX path.

File API specific to InDesign

IDPath class

`IDPath` is an `InDesign` class used to manipulate a file or directory specified by a path. `IDPath` is a child of `APath`; therefore, it inherits all `APath` methods. `IDPath` can be constructed from an `APathComponent`, an `AString`, or an `InDesign WideString` object.

IDFile class

IDFile is an InDesign class used to manipulate a file or directory. IDFile is a child of AFile; therefore, it inherits all AFile methods. Like IDPath, IDFile can be constructed from an APath, AString, or InDesign WideString. In addition, IDFile defines several methods specific to Windows and Mac OS. IDFile has several deprecated methods that are provided to help the integration of the Adobe file library architecture into InDesign. Do not use these methods when writing new code.

FileUtils class

The FileUtils class has been in existence since InDesign CS. During the integration (porting Adobe code) of Adobe file library, the implementation of FileUtils went through substantial changes; however, the behavior of existing methods in the class did not change. The FixFSSpecInSysFile and FixTrueNameInSysFile methods were removed, because there is no longer any need to correct file components in IDFile. New methods specific to Mac OS were added. [Table 162](#) briefly describes the new methods.

TABLE 162 *New methods in FileUtils (Mac OS only)*

Method	Description
static FILE* OpenFile(const IDFile& file, const char* mode)	Opens the file. This method uses FSOpen, FSRefParentAndFilenameOpen, or FSReffOpen to open the file, depending upon the current state of the file.
static OSerr FSSpecToIDFile(const FSSpec& fsSpec, IDFile& file)	Converts an FSSpec to an IDFile object.
static OSerr SpecInfoToIDFile(FSVolumeRefNum vRefNum, uint32 parId, const PMString& name, IDFile& file)	Converts Mac OS file system specification information to an IDFile object.
static OSerr IDFileToFSSpec(const IDFile& file, FSSpec& fsSpec, PMString* unicodeName = nil, bool16 bCreateLong = kFalse)	Converts an IDFile object to an FSSpec.
static OSerr UnicodeNameToHFSName(const PMString& unicodeName, PMString& hfsName, TextEncoding textEncodingHint = kTextEncodingUnknown);	Converts a Unicode name to an HFS Pascal name.
static OSerr HFSNameToUnicodeName(const PMString& hfsName, PMString& unicodeName, TextEncoding textEncodingHint = kTextEncodingUnknown)	Converts an HFS Pascal name to a Unicode name.

SDKFileHelper

SDKFileHelper is *not* part of Adobe file library. This class is listed here because it is used as a utility class in SDK sample code and, presumably, it is used commonly in code written by third-party plug-in developers. With Adobe file library integration, the implementation of SDKFileHelper also underwent changes. Like FileUtils, the behavior of existing methods in this class did not change; however, two new methods—GetIDFile and setIDFile—replaced GetSysFile and setSysFile.

Debugging IDFile

To help you debug your code containing IDFile objects, the IDFile class has a debug-only data member, `fDebugPath`, that always contains the current path. The path contained by `fDebugPath` matches the path contained by the AFile implementation class, but it is much easier to get from the debugger.

On Windows, `fDebugPath` is defined as a `wchar_t` string that contains a UTF-16 UNC or mapped drive path. On Mac OS, `fDebugPath` is defined as a character string that contains a UTF-8 POSIX path. On both platforms, if the current path is empty, `fDebugPath` is null.

NOTE: *Warning: On Windows, do not use the `fTmpPathStr` data member contained by IDFile objects to obtain the current path. The `fTmpPathStr` member is a temporary path string used as a buffer to return the path as a `PMString`, `CString`, `ConstCString`, `TCHAR` buffer, `WString`, or `UTF16TextChar`. The path contained by `fTmpPathStr` is neither guaranteed nor expected to always match the IDFile object's current path.*

Porting guidelines

Creative Suite 2 porting concerns

For information on porting to Creative Suite 2, see the CS2 version of this chapter.

Creative Suite 3 porting concerns

The Adobe file library API has remained fairly consistent in Creative Suite 3; however, be aware of the following:

- Adobe file library is now a dynamic library. Where previously it was built into Public, your plug-in now needs to explicitly link against the dynamic library.
- The Adobe file library API no longer accepts the `std::string` type. Instead, all methods that used to take `std::strings` now take `AString8` arguments. `AString8` is a typedef of `std::string` that uses a custom memory allocator. Applications that link to Adobe file library can now specify the procedures Adobe file library will use to allocate and free memory.

Frequently asked questions

Why should I use Adobe file library?

Adobe file library provides unified file-manipulation methods, so you no longer need to write platform-specific code for Windows and Mac OS, or even UNIX.

Adobe file library provides classes and utilities that meet most file-manipulation needs, so your code will be shorter, more robust, and easier to maintain.

Adobe file library will evolve with the operating systems, so your code will be easier to port.

Most importantly, InDesign code uses Adobe file library. Future interfaces will continue to be based on Adobe file library.

We highly recommend porting your code now to use Adobe file library classes.

Does Adobe file library support cross-platform path conversion?

No.

However, Adobe file library directly supports POSIX paths on Mac OS. You can use `FileUtils::PMStringToSysFile` to create an `IDFile` object from an HFS path (like Macintosh HD:macfolder:myfile) or Windows file path (like C:\Program Files\Adobe\InDesign)

Should I still use the `ICoreFileName` interface?

Adobe file library does not replace `ICoreFileName`; however, we do not recommend using `ICoreFileName` unless you absolutely have to (for example, when dealing with data links). On Mac OS, the class still depends heavily on `FSSpec` and is not very efficient. Most of the function is provided more efficiently in Adobe file library classes like `CoreFileUtils`, `CorePathUtils`, `MacFileUtils`, `WinFileUtils`, `AFile`, and `FileUtils`.

Why was the `GetSysFile` method renamed `GetIDFile` in `SDKFileHelper`?

The renaming of `GetSysFile` to `GetIDFile` was done to reflect the change in the return type.

Because of this change, any code that uses the old `GetSysFile` method will result in a compiler error, letting you know you need to review your usage of `SysFile`.

How do I navigate between `IDFile` and `IDPath`?

You can round-trip between `IDFile` and `IDPath` as shown in the following sample code:

```
IDFile idFile (existingFile); //assume existingFile already initialized
IDPath idPath = idFile.GetPath();
IDFile newFile(idPath);
```

What are the differences between a file and a directory?

There is no difference between a file and a directory in terms of how they are represented as IDFile objects. The differences are at the operating-system level: a directory has other files or directories as its children, and a file does not.

What are the relationships between IDPath and IDFile?

IDPath and IDFile objects can point to the same file or directory. They differ mainly in concepts: IDPath has methods that apply to a file path, and IDFile has methods that apply to file operations.

Why should IDFile not be treated as PMString?

They are different conceptually. PMString represents a string, used primarily in the user interface. IDFile deals primarily with file manipulation.

Also, not all IDFile objects are represented by a PMString, so treating an IDFile as a string makes your code prone to errors. Mac OS has several ways to represent a file. Windows, UNIX, and file URLs also have different formats.

IDFile does not allow an invalid path, so you may encounter runtime errors or asserts if you assign a PMString to an IDFile with an invalid path. PMString does not validate paths at run time.

How do an invalid path and a nonexistent path differ?

An invalid path is a path with one or more invalid path components in its respective platform. For example, the wildcard *.* does not refer to a file, so any path containing *.* is an invalid path.

A nonexistent path is a path that points to a file that does not exist. IDFile and IDPath fully support nonexistent paths. You can create or delete a file using IDFile methods.

Can I construct an AString from PMString?

Yes and no.

You cannot construct an AString from a PMString, because Adobe file library is not aware of the InDesign type PMString. Since they both use UTF-16, however, you can construct an AString with the following code:

```
String aString(pmString.GrabUTF16Buffer(nil));
```

How can I convert a relative path to an absolute path?

Use `APath::MakeAbsolute`.

Make sure you are converting paths on the same platform. You cannot convert a Windows relative path on Mac OS, or vice versa. Instead, you must manipulate the relative path as a `PMString`, convert it to the platform-specific format, and then convert to an absolute path.

Performance Tuning

This chapter describes how to optimize InDesign plug-ins for peak performance. The InDesign plug-in architecture and object model make it possible for software developers to add powerful features to InDesign; however, the architecture also allows developers to accidentally create very inefficient code.

Use profiling tools

Often, software developers believe they know the cause of a performance problem in their code, only to be surprised by the results of a profile of that code. There are several very good tools for identifying performance problems, and you always should use them before trying to optimize your code manually. This section describe some of these tools.

Windows

There are several tools that can be used to profile your code and identify performance problems on Windows. For example, the InDesign engineering team has had success with GlowCode. GlowCode is a set of analysis tools to profile code and identify memory use problems. GlowCode instruments a user-selected list of plug-ins, allows the user to define a trigger function, and provides accurate timings and function call counts. For more information about GlowCode, including a trial version, see <http://www.glowcode.com>.

Mac OS

Sampler

Sampler is an Apple profiling tool that is part of the Xcode tools package, which comes with Mac OS X. Sampler periodically samples an application to build profile data. Because Sampler is a sampling profiler, it cannot provide accurate function-call counts; however, it provides very good timing data, is very easy to use, and does not require any changes to your code. For Sampler to provide timing information at the function level, you must turn on tracebacks in your project. For more information, see the Apple Web site.

Shark

Shark is an Apple profiling tool that is part of the Xcode tools package, which comes with Mac OS X. Like Sampler, Shark is very easy to use. Shark, however, can be used only with Mach-O applications; therefore, it cannot be used with InDesign CS and earlier. For more information, see the Apple Web site.

CodeWarrior

CodeWarrior probably is the best profiling tool for profiling on Mac OS 9; however, using CodeWarrior requires several changes to your code:

- You must enable Profiler Information in the PPC Processor project settings
- You must include profiler.h in your source files and make calls to ProfilerInit, ProfilerSetStatus, and ProfilerDump to obtain timing information.

After CodeWarrior generates a profile, you must use the separate CodeWarrior Profiler application to view the profile data.

Profiles generated by CodeWarrior 9.2 are useless for Mach-O applications; therefore, they should be avoided in plug-ins for InDesign CS2 and later.

Quartz Debug

Quartz Debug is an Apple tool that helps you to identify redundant drawing to the screen.

Commands

Commands are responsible for encapsulating compound modifications to the object model, supporting the undo/redo protocol, and indicating to the object model when it should notify its state to observers. If not used properly, commands can seriously reduce performance.

Commands should operate on lists of inputs

You can improve performance by reducing the number of commands processed, partly because undo information for each command must be stored on the command history, and partly because each command sends out a notification on completion. One good way to reduce the number of commands processed is to write commands such that each accepts a list of inputs.

For example, a MovePageItem command should either call GetItemList to obtain the command's list of inputs or include a separate data interface in the command's boss. This makes it possible to execute one command for an entire list of page items, instead of executing a separate command for each page item.

Notify on the document subject instead of the page item object

Notifications can decrease performance because observers tend to do some work each time they are notified; therefore, it is desirable to find ways to reduce the total number of notifications. One way, as mentioned above, is to reduce the number of commands executed. Another, is to send one notification on the document subject instead of a separate notification for each page item. This approach requires observers to attach at the document level instead of at the page item level. See the following code:

```
void MyCommand::DoNotify()
{
    const UIDList* itemList = GetItemList();
    InterfacePtr<IDataBase> iDatabase(itemList->GetDataBase(), UseDefaultIID());
    Utils<PageItemUtils>() -> NotifyDocumentObservers(iDatabase, kMyCmdBoss,
    IID_MYIID_IDOCUMENT, this);
}
```

Mark commands that do not require undo support

Some commands do not require undo support. For example, a command to print a document is not undoable. In such cases, the constructor of the command should call `SetUndoability(kUndoNotRequired)`.

Observers

Observers can be attached to and detached from any subject, but be careful to attach observers only to subjects in which you are interested, since each attachment impairs performance. Performance is affected by the level of the subject to which the observer is attached.

Attach to documents, not page items

It is inefficient for an observer to attach and observe at the page-item level. Instead, observers should attach and observe at the document level.

Do work only when the command is done

Many commands notify several times. For example, when a page item moves, a pre-notify and post-notify must occur, so the old and new locations can be invalidated on the screen. Often, an observer can ignore all but the last notification, as follows:

```
void MyObserver::Update(const ClassID& theChange, ISubject* theSubject, const
PMIID& protocol, void* changeBy)
{
    if (protocol == IID_MYIID)
    { if (theChange == kMyCmdBoss)
      { ICommand* cmd = (ICommand*) changeBy;
        ICommand::CommandState cmdState = cmd->GetCommandState();
        if (cmdState == ICommand::kDone)
        { const UIDList* contentList = cmd->GetItemList();
          // do some work here
        }
      }
    }
}
```

Do not update the user interface from an observer

Many panels display information about the current selection, like graphic attributes, character attributes, or information about the selection's geometry. These panels must have an observer, and it is tempting to update the panel from the Update method of the observer; however, in general, updating a panel from an observer is a bad idea. Instead, it is much better to mark the data in the panel as dirty or invalid, generate a screen invalidation for the panel, then update the user interface in the Draw code for the panel.

Watch for lazy notification whenever possible

The application supports two types of notification, regular and lazy. If an observer needs to be called as soon as a subject broadcasts the change message, it should request regular notification. If the observer can afford to wait until idle time before being notified of a change of interest, it can register for lazy notification.

Lazy notification is used when observers do not need to be in tight synchronization with changes being made to the subject objects they observe. Rather than participating in each change that occurs on a subject object, observers using lazy notification are notified after all updates are made and the application is idle.

File input/output

Each operation to access a local disk or server can greatly reduce performance. For this reason, it is very important to reduce the number of disk access operations as much as possible. For example, if you need to parse a file using many very small read operations, consider reading a large block into a memory buffer using one read operation, then operating on the buffer. This kind of optimization is very important when working over a network.

Memory

Use memory caches for items accessed often

If a profile shows your code is spending a lot of time recomputing the same value or repeatedly searching a list for the same element, consider caching the result or element. It is very important to use profiling tools to identify where caches are needed. Unnecessary caches can decrease performance, by forcing the software to keep the cache up to date even when it is not needed.

Avoid allocating too much memory

Allocating memory beyond what is physically available causes InDesign to try to purge its caches and may cause a page fault in the operating system. Purging memory and page faults are very slow; avoid them when possible.

Idle tasks

The InDesign object model is not thread-safe, so it does not use true threads; however, you can use cooperative threads, in the form of idle tasks (IIdleTask). Idle tasks are given a chance to execute when there are no events in the EventQueue for the application to process. Idle tasks are a great way to defer expensive operations and allow the user to continue using the application.

The remainder of this section presents guidelines that should be followed when implementing an idle task.

Honor the RunTask flags

Each idle task has a RunTask method, which is passed a set of flags. These flags can be very important to the application's performance. For example, normally you will not want an idle task to execute when the user is dragging a page item around the layout, and you may not want the idle task to execute when a dialog box is open, because it slows the application's responsiveness. So, a typical idle task starts with the following lines of code:

```
if (flags & IIdleTaskMgr::kMouseTracking || flags & IIdleTaskMgr::kModelDialogUp)
    return (kOnFlagChange);
```

Do a small amount of work during each RunTask call

Idle tasks allow the software to perform computationally expensive operations when the user is idle. The goal is to make the application as responsive as possible, so the user does not have to wait for an expensive operation to complete. For this reason, you do not want one call to RunTask to take a long time. It is better for each call to RunTask to perform some work, then ask for RunTask to be called again. For example, your RunTask method may look like the following:

```
uint32 MyIdleTask::RunTask(uint32 schedulerFlags, uint32 (*timeCheck)())
{
    if (InappropriateState(schedulerFlags))
        return kOnFlagChange;
    DoPeriodicThing();
    return 1000; // Call this task again in 1 second.
}
```


Tools

This chapter describes how tools work and how to implement your own custom tools and add them to the toolbox.

The chapter has the following objectives:

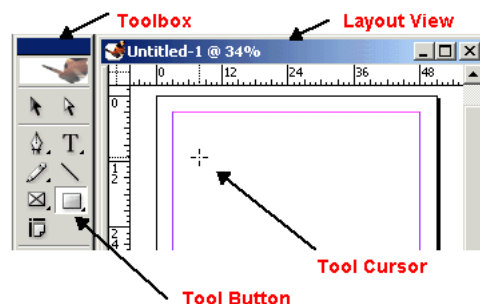
- Define terms related to tools, trackers, and the toolbox.
- Introduce the layout view.
- Explain how tools work.
- Explain how to track the user's mouse actions.
- Explain how to implement a custom tool.
- Describe the extension patterns provided by the API that relate to tools.

Key concepts

The toolbox and the layout view

Tools are presented using the toolbox palette. Document content is presented in the layout view. Tools create and manipulate document objects using keyboard and mouse events in the layout view. This is illustrated in [Figure 278](#).

FIGURE 278 *The Toolbox and the Layout View*

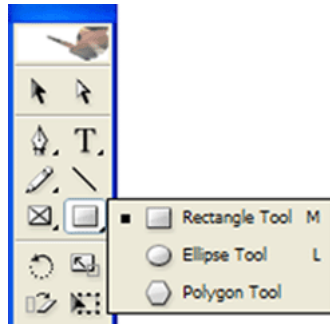


The layout view is a widget in which a document is presented and edited by the user. The layout view is the `IControlView` interface on the `kLayoutWidgetBoss` boss object. For more information on the layout widget, see the “Layout Fundamentals” chapter.

Tools commonly use interfaces on `kLayoutWidgetBoss` to discover the context in which they are working. For example, the spread being manipulated is found using `ILayoutControlData`, and hit testing can be done using `ILayoutControlViewHelper`. The toolbox contains a tool but-

ton icon for each tool and, optionally, a hidden-tools panel containing other tools (see [Figure 279](#)).

FIGURE 279 *Hidden Tools Panel*



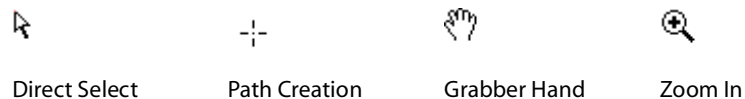
Tools

A tool (ITool interface) has a button icon in the toolbox and, optionally, a keyboard shortcut. A tool also may provide a cursor (pointer) as a visual cue to the user of the active tool and a tool tip to help the user understand the purpose of the tool. To track mouse actions when the tool is being used, the tool provides a tracker (ITracker interface).

Cursors

A cursor (ICursorProvider interface) provides a visual cue to the user of the active tool. Tools that provide their own cursors must implement cursor providers. Cursor providers set the mouse cursor and provide context-sensitive cursors for different areas of the screen. See [Figure 280](#).

FIGURE 280 *Cursors*



Tool tips

A tool tip (ITip interface) displays a string with the name of the tool and its keyboard shortcut, when the pointer is positioned over the tool icon in the toolbox. See [Figure 281](#). The strings displayed are declared as ODFRez string resources in the plug-in's .fr file. The application automatically handles display of tool tips.

FIGURE 281 Tool tip



Trackers

Trackers (ITracker interface) monitor mouse movement while an object is being manipulated by a tool. Trackers can provide visual feedback to the user. Trackers make changes to the objects being manipulated using commands. A tool may have one or more trackers, though only one tracker is active at a time.

Tracker factory, tracking, and event handling

The tracker factory (ITrackerFactory interface) allows you to introduce new trackers by manufacturing the tracker required for a particular context. The ITrackerFactory interface is aggregated on the kSessionBoss boss class. The tracker factory maintains a table associating a tracker with a given widget and tool by ClassID. When the tool is used in the context of the widget, the associated tracker is created and receives control. Trackers for tools that appear in the toolbox register themselves as being associated with the layout widget, kLayoutWidgetBoss. The code in [Example 97](#) adds an entry to the tracker factory.

EXAMPLE 97 Line-tracker registration in the tracker factory

```
void LineTrackerRegister::Register(ITrackerFactory *factory)
{
    factory->InstallTracker(kLayoutWidgetBoss, kLineToolBoss, kLineTrackerBoss);
}
```

The framework maintains an event-handler stack that it uses to dispatch events (mouse, keyboard, and system events). Many event handlers (IEventHandler interface) are associated with a widget. The widget that has the user-interface focus is on top of the stack and receives and processes events.

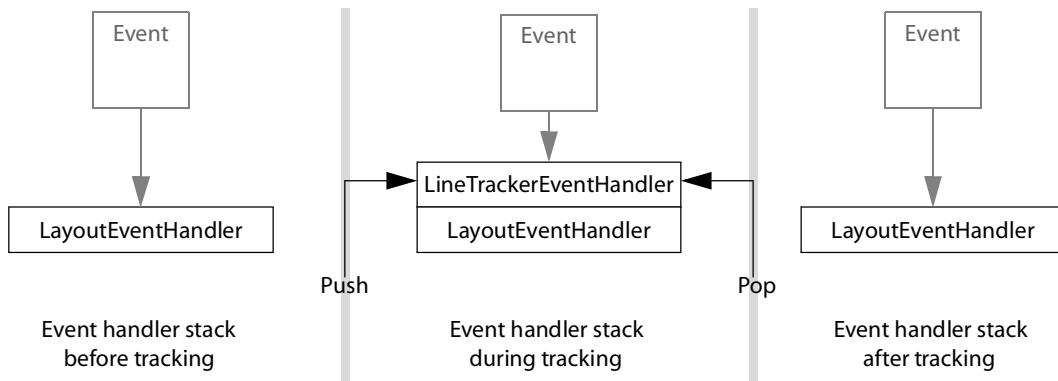
When a mouse-down event occurs in layout view and the active tool is kLineToolBoss, the layout view's event handler asks the tracker factory to manufacture the tracker for this context. It does this by making the following call to create kLineTrackerBoss and return its ITracker interface:

```
ITrackerFactory::QueryTracker(kLayoutWidgetBoss, kLineToolBoss)
```

The tracker is then focused on the layout view and begins tracking.

To follow mouse movement, a tracker must handle events for the duration of the tracking process. To do this, the tracker pushes its event-handler interface onto the stack when tracking begins and pops it off the stack when tracking ends. For example, when the Line tool is used to drag the end points of a line, its tracker pushes and pops its event handler as shown in [Figure 282](#).

FIGURE 282 Event dispatching



All tracker boss classes that want to follow the mouse as it is dragged aggregate an `IEventHandler` interface. When the `LayoutEventHandler` receives a mouse-down event, it calls the tracker's `ITracker::BeginTracking` method, which normally is implemented by `CTracker::BeginTracking`. If the mouse is to be tracked, this method calls `CTracker::EnableTracking`, which calls `CTracker::PushEventHandler` to push the tracker's event handler (interface `IEventHandler`) onto the event-handler stack using `IEventDispatcher::Push`. For more implementation details, see `CTracker.cpp` in the SDK.

Beyond the toolbox

Tools do not have to appear in the toolbox. For example, the Place tool is activated after selecting a file using the `File > Place` menu command. Trackers also are used extensively in mouse-dragging features, like setting the layout zero point and dragging guides from rulers.

Drawing and sprites

To provide visual feedback while an object is undergoing manipulation, a tracker can draw to the screen.

Page items can be hard to draw when they are being changed dynamically. To ensure objects are drawn on the screen smoothly and efficiently without flickering, the application provides a sprite API. A sprite (`ISprite` interface) is a graphic object that can be moved around on screen without causing any disturbance to the background.

Documents, page items, and commands

Tools allow the manipulation of documents and page items by the user. For more information on how documents are organized and page items are arranged, see the “Layout Fundamentals” chapter. Tools use commands to make changes to a document.

Line-tool use scenario

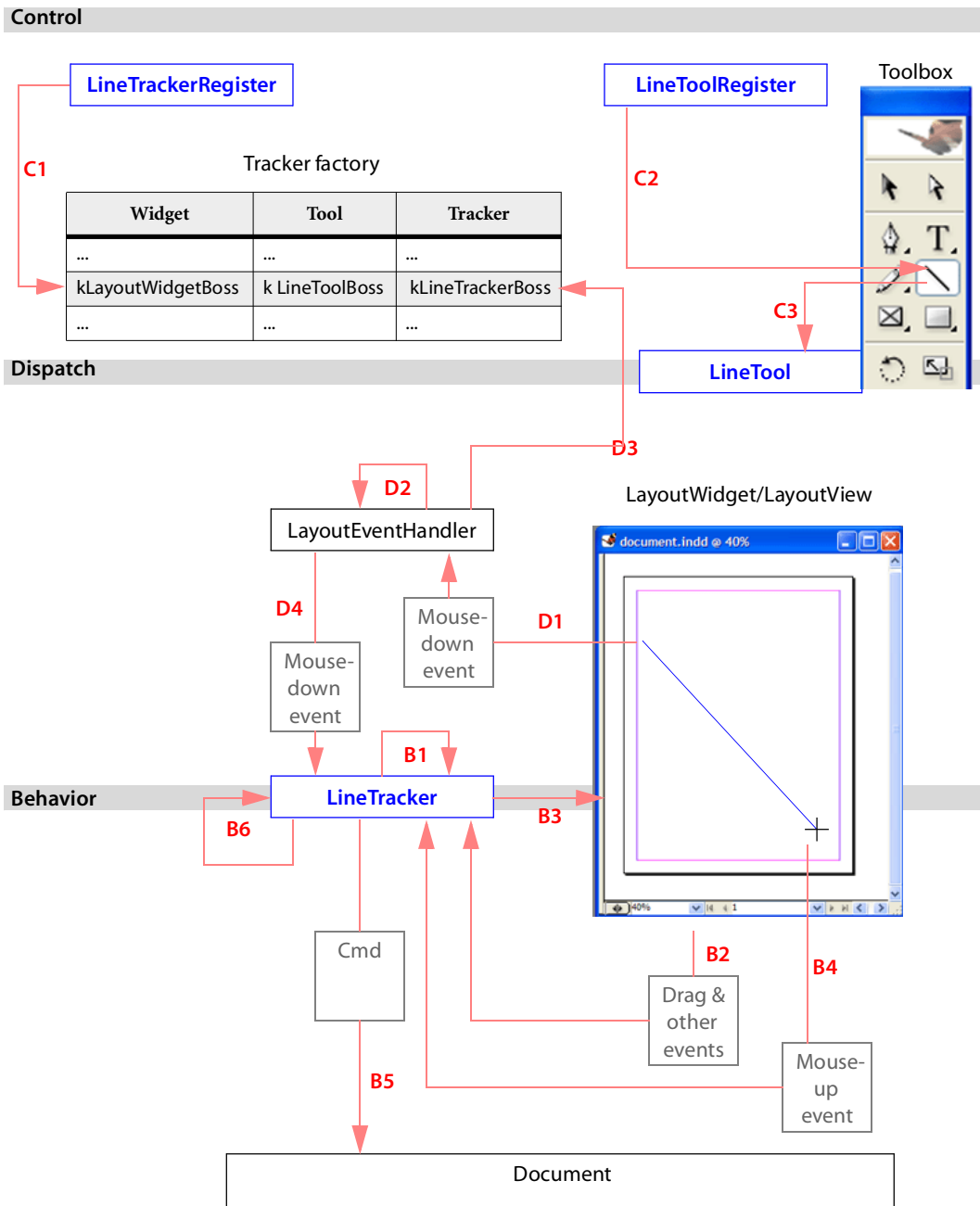
The following scenario describing the Line tool shows how the objects in a tool collaborate.

The scenario is divided into three sections:

- *Control* is concerned with the registration of the tool with the application and the mechanism allowing the user to select the tool
- *Dispatch* is concerned with how the application begins active use of the tool.
- *Behavior* is concerned with what the tool does to create a line.

[Figure 283](#) shows how the Line tool registers with the application and is used to create a line between two points in a document. The tables following the figure define the abbreviations used in the figure.

FIGURE 283 Line-tool scenario



**TABLE 163 Control**

Abbreviation	Description
C1	The tool's tracker is registered with the application's tracker factory.
C2	The tool is registered with the application, and its tool-button icon in the toolbox is initialized.
C3	The user clicks the tool's button icon (kLineToolBoss becomes the active tool).

TABLE 164 Dispatch

Abbreviation	Description
D1	The user clicks in the layout view (a mouse-down event is passed to the LayoutEventHandler).
D2	The LayoutEventHandler looks at the active tool (kLineToolBoss) and the context of the event (mouse-down over an empty page area). The association identifies the tracker that should be created for the context (kLineTrackerBoss).
D3	The appropriate tracker is manufactured by the tracker factory.
D4	The tracker is asked to begin tracking the mouse from the original mouse-down event.

TABLE 165 Behavior

Abbreviation	Description
B1	The tracker pushes its own event handler onto the application's event handler stack, so it can receive events and track the mouse.
B2	The user drags the mouse (events are passed into the tracker).
B3	The tracker provides appropriate dynamic visual feedback to the user of the tool behavior: a line is drawn between the location of the original mouse-down event and the current mouse position.
B4	The user releases the mouse (a mouse-up event is passed into the tracker).
B5	The tracker implements an appropriate action (creation of a page item describing the line between start and end points), using a command.
B6	The tracker pops its event handler from the application's event-handler stack, and tracking is complete.

The scenario shown in [Figure 283](#) is typical of a tool that creates items. The item itself is created by the tracker, using a command after the user releases the mouse button; however, other categories of tools may execute commands dynamically, while tracking the mouse. For example, the Selection tool dynamically executes commands when moving or resizing items.

Trackers with multiple behaviors

If a tracker needs to exhibit multiple behaviors, it can create another tracker that depends on the context. For example, the Selection tool exhibits multiple behaviors. When it is active and a mouse-down event occurs in a layout view, the pointer tracker (`kPointerTrackerBoss`) is created. The pointer tracker considers the context of the click, then creates and dispatches control to another tracker. Once the pointer tracker examines the context and creates an appropriate tracker, its job is done. The trackers used by `kPointerTrackerBoss` to move and resize page items are shown in [Figure 284](#).

FIGURE 284 *Pointer tracker move and resize behavior*

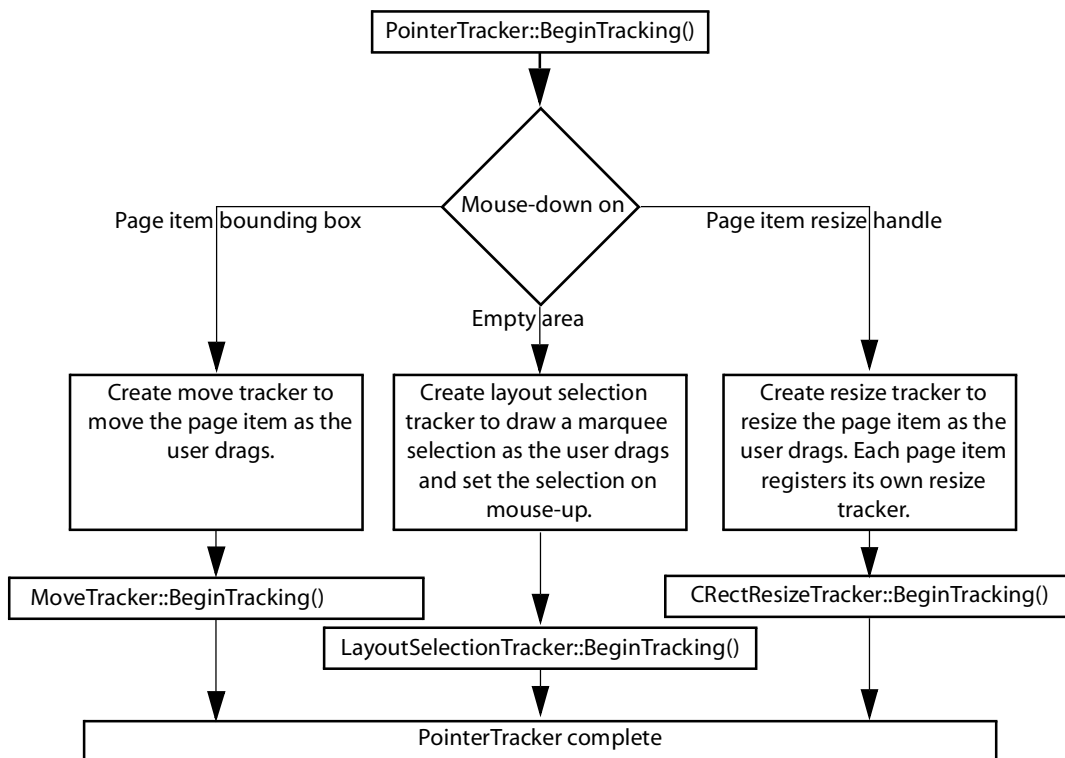


Figure 284 does not show all kPointerTrackerBoss behaviors. For example, the following are not shown in the figure:

- The threading of text frames via in and out port handles by kPrePlaceTrackerBoss.
- The tracking of when the layer on which the item lies is locked (kLockTrackerBoss).
- The tracking of text on a path-handle manipulation (kTOPResizeTrackerBoss and kTOPMoveTrackerBoss).

Each page item can register its own resize tracker, although they all use the same one for resizing.

Tool manager

Tools are managed by the tool manager, kToolManagerBoss. You can navigate to the IToolManager interface as shown in the following code:

```
InterfacePtr<IApplication> app(GetExecutionContextSession()->QueryApplication());  
InterfacePtr<IToolManager> toolMgr(app->QueryToolManager());
```

Toolbox utilities

The IToolBoxUtils interface provides a facade that should, in most situations, save you from having to program to the IToolManager interface. IToolBoxUtils is a utility interface on kUtilsBoss, accessed in the standard way. For example, the following code queries the active tool of type kPointerToolBoss. The tool type in this context identifies a group of tools, of which only one can be active:

```
const ClassID toolType = kPointerToolBoss;  
InterfacePtr<ITool> currentTool(  
    Utils<IToolBoxUtils>()->QueryActiveTool(toolType));
```

Tool type

Tools are categorized as belonging to one or more of the categories given by ITool::ToolType. This identifies what the tool does and how the selection in the layout view reacts when that tool becomes active (IToolChangeSuite interface). Tools identify this type in their CTool constructor by the toolInfo parameter.

ITool::ToolType easily can be confused with the ClassID parameter toolType defined by the tool's ToolDef statement (see “ToolDef ODFRez type” on page 738) and used by ITool::GetToolType and other APIs. This ClassID is used to identify a group of mutually exclusive tools—tools for which only one tool of a given tool type can be selected in the toolbox at any time.

Table 167 illustrates the distinction between these two different tool types and their values.

Custom tools

Architecture

This section describes the boss classes, interfaces, and resources you must implement to add a new tool. The section also describes the APIs you use to build and catalogue custom tools.

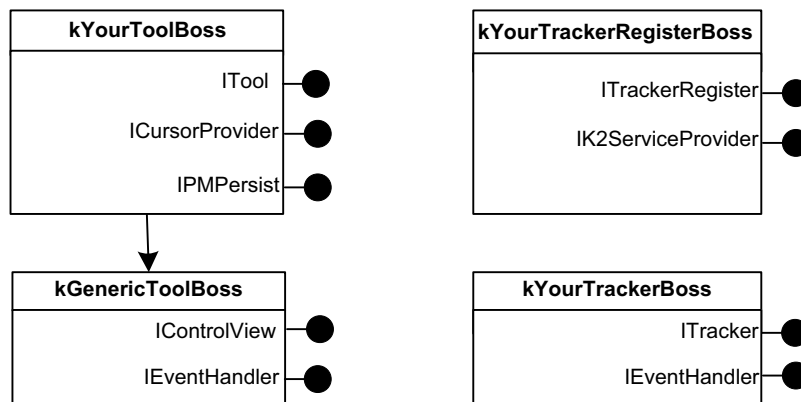
Plug-ins that implement tools typically provide the following:

- A tool-register boss class.
- A tracker-register boss class.
- A tool boss class per tool.
- A tracker boss class per tracker.
- Resources controlling how the tool is displayed.

Class diagram

The classes typically found in a custom tool are shown in [Figure 285](#).

FIGURE 285 Custom-tool class diagram



kYourTrackerRegisterBoss registers the plug-in's trackers with the tracker factory using the **ITrackerRegister** interface.

kYourToolBoss allows the tool manager to control the tool using the **ITool** interface. **kYourToolBoss** specifies information about the tool and gets called when the tool is selected or deselected by the user and when a tool options dialog box should be displayed. **ICursorProvider** allows the tool to customize the cursor when the tool is active. **IPMPersist** allows information like the tool's name and icon to be saved persistently.

kGenericToolBoss is the parent boss class for toolbox tools. The control view it provides displays the tool's buttons, and its event handler handles clicks on the tool's buttons in the toolbox.

kYourTrackerBoss responds to mouse actions in the layout view when your tool is being used. There is at least one tracker boss for each tool in your plug-in. The interfaces on a tracker boss class collaborate to provide the active behavior of the tool. Control is passed to the ITracker interface, so the mouse can be tracked. This interface manages and controls the other interfaces on the boss object.

The tracker pushes its event handler to the top of the event handler stack when tracking begins. During tracking, IEventHandler forwards events into the ITracker interface. When tracking ends, the event handler is popped from the stack, and the tracker is finished. Standard tracker event-handler implementations are provided by the API. It is common for tracker boss classes to have other interfaces particular to their needs. For example, trackers that create splines aggregate ISprite and IPathGeometry. If a tracker needs to handle only one mouse click, however, it does not require an IEventHandler.

Partial implementation classes

The API provides helper classes that partially implement interfaces relevant to building tools. Some relevant classes are shown in [Table 166](#). For more information, see the API reference documentation for each class.

TABLE 166 *Partial implementation classes*

Interface	Class
ICursorProvider	CToolCursorProvider
IEventHandler	CTrackerEventHandler (the C++ source code for this implementation is provided on the SDK)
ITool	CTool
ITracker	CTracker (the C++ source code for this implementation is provided on the SDK)
ITracker	CPathCreationTracker (the C++ source code for this implementation is provided on the SDK)
ITracker	CLayoutTracker (the C++ source code for this implementation is provided on the SDK)
ITracker	CSliderTracker
ITrackerRegister	None

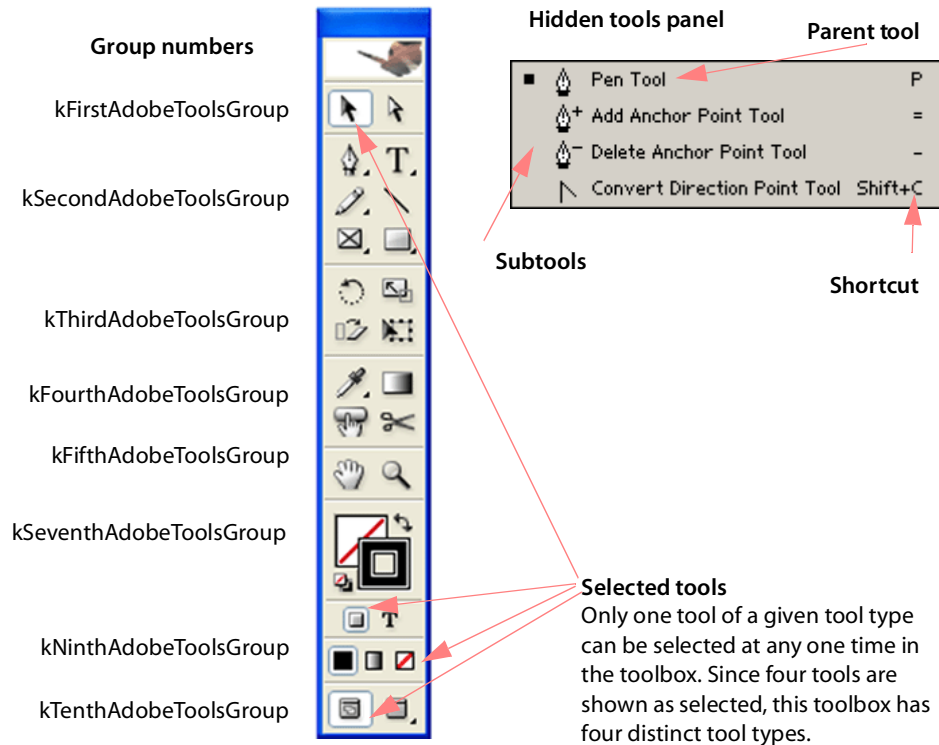
Default implementations

The API provides default implementations that completely implement some of the interfaces involved in building tools. If these meet your needs, you can re-use them in your boss class definition and avoid writing the C++ code. See [Table 168](#) for a list of re-usable implementations in the API.

ToolDef ODFRez type

ODFRez provides a type, ToolDef, that controls how a tool is displayed within the toolbox. This type controls the order in which tools are displayed, the way in which they are grouped, and other properties, as shown in [Figure 286](#).

FIGURE 286 Tool display in the toolbox



ToolDef resources are localizable, so you can define different resources for different locales and have a tool show up in a different place or with a different icon. For example, for a currency stamp tool, a tool icon could be provided for each locale (e.g., dollar and yen) and the icon for the current locale would be shown in the toolbox. To localize your ToolDef resources, add a locale index to your plug-in's .fr file and define a ToolDef resource in the .fr file for each locale.

Icons and cursors

Icons and cursors can be created in their native-platform resource form. InDesign CS and later also support PNG platform-independent files for icons, which is the preferred resource type to use in icon-based widgets. All the application tools' icons use PNG files, so they all have roll-over effect.

To create a PNG-based icon, follow these steps:

1. In your .fr file, where you have the ToolDef, declare the PNG resources. There should be two states for each icon, normal and rollover. For example, the SDK Info button seen in several SDK dialog uses the following PNG resources

```
resource PNGA (kSDKDefIconInfoResourceID) "SDKInfoButton.png"
resource PNGR (kSDKDefIconInfoRolloverResourceID) "SDKInfoButtonRollover.png"
```

2. Two PNG resources are defined in Step 1. The normal state, PNGA, has an ID of kSDKDefIconInfoResourceID and uses the SDKInfoButton.png file. The rollover state, PNGR, has an ID of kSDKDefIconInfoRolloverResourceID and uses the SDKInfoButtonRollover.png file. Both IDs should be defined as the same number; in this case, both are defined as 180 in the SDKDef.h file.
3. Use the normal-state resource ID in your ToolDef definition, where you specify the icon ID for the tool.

Mac OS icons need resources of type icl4, icl8, and ICN#. Cursors need resources of type CURS.

Windows icons need an icon bitmap .ico file and an ICON resource declaration in your plug-in project's .rc file. Cursors need a cursor bitmap .cur file and a CURSOR resource declaration in your plug-in project's .rc file.

Tool-button icons come in two sizes: standard and mini. Normally, you use the standard size, kStandardToolRect. CTool specifies the widget rects involved. In your CTool::Init implementing, you control the size to be used by calling CTool::InitWidget and passing in the tool rects.

InDesign trackers

The API provides many trackers, and you may want to dispatch control to one of them. Generally, these can be divided into trackers used by tools to manipulate document content (see [Table 169](#)) and trackers used by user-interface widgets to manipulate controls (see [Table 170](#)). The ClassID needed by ITrackerFactory to make one of these trackers are listed in these tables.

Since no iterator generates all registered trackers the application supports at run time, two distinct tables are shown: one for tool-related trackers ([Table 169](#)) and another for user-interface widget-related trackers ([Table 170](#)).

Often, the application's existing trackers can be re-used for your custom tools. For example, suppose you implemented a custom tracker, and the application already provides another tracker to which, under certain circumstances, you want to pass control. Suppose you want to pass control to the pointer tracker, kPointerTrackerBoss. You look up the tracker ClassID in the Tracker ClassID column of the following tables and find the relevant widget ClassID and tool ClassID. You then pass these into ITrackerFactory::QueryTracker.

If desired, you can suppress or replace one of the application's trackers. See [Table 169](#) for a list of tool-related trackers.

Working with tools

Catching a mouse click or mouse drag on a document

If you want users to recognize that your tool will handle the event, you want a custom cursor. In this case, you need to implement a custom tool, set your tool as the active tool, and handle the mouse event in your tracker (see [“The toolbox and the layout view” on page 727](#)).

If you do not want users to recognize that your tool will handle the event, you probably want to handle the event without the user receiving any visual cue. In this case, use another stimulus, like a change in selection, to push an event handler onto the event-handler stack. If you are in doubt about what stimulus to choose, use a tool and tracker. This is the recommended way to catch mouse events in a layout view on a document.

Implementing a custom tool

See [“Custom tools” on page 736](#), or refer to one of the sample tool plug-ins and adapt it to your needs.

Displaying a Tool Options dialog box

Specialize the `DisplayOptions` and/or `DisplayAltOptions` methods in your `ITool` implementation. For an example, see `SnapTool::displayOptions` in the Snapshot sample.

Finding the spread nearest the mouse position

When implementing a tracker, you need to handle the fact that the user can click on any spread in a layout view. Your tracker must identify the spread on which the user has clicked. To do this, transform the position from the system-coordinate system to the pasteboard-coordinate system, then use one of the methods in `IPasteboardUtils`.

Changing spreads

When implementing a tracker, you need to handle the fact that the user can click on any spread in a layout view. A layout view caches the current spread in the `ILayoutControlData` interface. Your tracker may need to change this if the spread that was clicked on is different. Process `kSetSpreadCmdBoss` to change to another spread.

Performing a page-item hit test

`ILayoutControlViewHelper` provides page-item hit-testing methods that can be used. For an example of using `ILayoutControlViewHelper`, see `<SDK>/source/sdksamples/codesnippets/SnpHitTestFrame.cpp`.

Setting or getting the active tool

`IToolBoxUtils` provides methods you can use to set or get the active tool. For an example of activating the Text tool, see `<SDK>/source/sdksamples/codesnippets/SnpManipulateTextFrame`.

Observing when the active tool changes

Attach an observer (IObserver interface) to `kToolManagerBoss`. In your Update method, detect the `IID_ITOOLMANAGER` protocol for the change `kSetToolCmdBoss`.

Changing the toolbox appearance from normal to skinny

Use `kSetUserInterfacePrefsToolboxCmdBoss` or `IUserInterfacePreferencesFacade` to change the `IUserInterfacePreferences`.

Using default implementations for trackers

Your tracker can create and dispatch control to a tracker supplied by the application. For example, to perform a marquee selection, you can create and dispatch control to a `kLayoutSelectionTrackerBoss`. For a complete list of all trackers provided by the API, see [Table 169](#).

Suppressing the application's default tracker for a custom toolbox

Suppose you implemented a special text tool on your custom toolbox that is to replace the Adobe standard toolbox. You do not want your text tool to create a text frame and only allow editing of text.

In this case, the frame creation you want to suppress is registered in the tracker factory under `kIBeamToolBoss` and `kFrameToolBoss`. The tracker `ClassID` installed is `kFrameTrackerBoss`. When your custom toolbox is activated, you could save this registered tracker and replace it with your own, using the code in [Example 98](#).

EXAMPLE 98 Suppressing the application default tracker

```
InterfacePtr<ITrackerFactory> factory(GetExecutionContextSession(),
UseDefaultIID());
if (factory)
{
    InterfacePtr<ITracker> registeredTracker(factory->QueryTracker(kIBeamToolBoss,
kFrameToolBoss));
    ClassID savedClassID = ::GetClassID(registeredTracker);
    if (registeredTracker)
    {
        factory->RemoveTracker(kIBeamToolBoss, kFrameToolBoss);
        factory->InstallTracker(kIBeamToolBoss, kFrameToolBoss, kYourTrackerBoss);
    }
}
```

In this case, when the text-tool tracker tries to drag out a new frame, your tracker receives the control. If your `CTracker::DoBeginTracking` method returns `kFalse`, you suppress the frame-creation behavior. When your custom toolbox is deactivated, restore the previously registered tracker.

There is one drawback to this mechanism. If more than one third-party plug-in tries to replace the same tracker, there is the potential for a collision. If you use the activation or deactivation of your toolbox or tool to replace or restore the registered tracker, such collisions can be avoided.

Tool-category information

TABLE 167 Tool categories

Tool	Tool boss	ITool::ToolType	ClassID toolType
Add Anchor Point	kSplineAddPointToolBoss	kLayoutManipulationTool, kPathManipulationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Apply color	kBoss_ApplyCurrentColorTool	kNone	kBoss_ClearFillStrokeTool
Apply gradient	kBoss_ApplyCurrentGradientTool	kNone	kBoss_ClearFillStrokeTool
Apply none	kBoss_ClearFillStrokeTool	kNone	kBoss_ClearFillStrokeTool
Bleed mode	kBleedModeToolBoss	kNone	kNormalViewModeToolBoss
Convert Direction	kSplineDirectionToolBoss	kLayoutManipulationTool, kPathManipulationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Delete Anchor	kSplineRemovePointToolBoss	kLayoutManipulationTool, kPathManipulationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Direct Selection	kDirectSelectToolBoss	kLayoutSelectionTool, kPathManipulationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Erase	kEraseToolBoss	kLayoutCreationTool, kLayoutManipulationTool, kPathManipulationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Eyedropper	private	kLayoutManipulationTool, kTextManipulationTool, kTableManipulationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Fill stroke	kStrokeFillProxyToolBoss	kNone	
Free transform tool	kFreeTransformToolBoss	kLayoutManipulationTool	kPointerToolBoss

Tool	Tool boss	ITool::ToolType	ClassID toolType
Gradient	kGradientToolBoss	kLayoutManipulationTool, kTextManipulationTool, kTableManipulationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Hand	kGrabberHandToolBoss	kViewModificationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Horizontal frame grid (Japanese feature set)	private	kLayoutCreationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Horizontal text on a path	kTOPHorzToolBoss	kTextSelectionTool, kTableSelectionTool, kTextManipulationTool, kTableManipulationTool, kTextCreationTool, kTableCreationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Line	kLineToolBoss	kLayoutCreationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Normal view mode	kNormalViewModeToolBoss	kNone	kNormalViewModeToolBo ss
Oval	kOvalToolBoss	kLayoutCreationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Oval Frame	kOvalFrameToolBoss	kLayoutCreationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Pen	kSplinePenToolBoss	kLayoutCreationTool, kLayoutManipulationTool, kPathManipulationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Pencil	kPencilToolBoss	kLayoutCreationTool, kLayoutManipulationTool, kPathManipulationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Place	kPlaceToolBoss	kNone (The place tool creates page items and is in theory a layout -creation tool, but because it does not appear in the toolbox, it has no category as such.)	not applicable
Preview mode	kPreviewModeToolBoss	kNone	kNormalViewModeToolBo ss
Rectangle	kRectToolBoss	kLayoutCreationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Rectangle Frame	kRectFrameToolBoss	kLayoutCreationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Regular Polygon	kRegPolyToolBoss	kLayoutCreationTool	kPointerToolBoss

Tools

Tool-category information

Tool	Tool boss	ITool::ToolType	ClassID toolType
Regular Polygon Frame	kRegPolyFrameToolBoss	kLayoutCreationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Rotate	kRotateToolBoss	kLayoutSelectionTool, kLayoutManipulationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Scale	kScaleToolBoss	kLayoutSelectionTool, kLayoutManipulationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Scissors	kScissorsToolBoss	kLayoutManipulationTool, kPathManipulationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Selection	kPointerToolBoss	kLayoutSelectionTool	kPointerToolBoss
Shear	kShearToolBoss	kLayoutSelectionTool, kLayoutManipulationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Slug mode	kSlugModeToolBoss	kNone	kNormalViewModeToolBoss
Smooth	kSmoothToolBoss	kLayoutCreationTool, kLayoutManipulationTool, kPathManipulationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Type	kIBeamToolBoss	kTextSelectionTool, kTableSelectionTool, kTextManipulationTool, kTableManipulationTool, kTextCreationTool, kTableCreationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Vertical frame grid (Japanese feature set)	private	kLayoutCreationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Vertical text on a path (Japanese feature set)	kTOPVertToolBoss	kTextSelectionTool, kTableSelectionTool, kTextManipulationTool, kTableManipulationTool, kTextCreationTool, kTableCreationTool	kPointerToolBoss
Zoom	kZoomToolBoss	kViewModificationTool	kPointerToolBoss

Default implementations of tool-related interfaces

TABLE 168 Default implementations

Interface	ImplementationID
IK2ServiceProvider	kCToolRegisterProviderImpl
IK2ServiceProvider	kCTrackerRegisterProviderImpl
IEventHandler	kCTrackerEventHandlerImpl
ICursorProvider	kCreationCursorProviderImpl, kDirectSelectCursorProviderImpl, kRotateCursorProviderImpl, kGrabberHandCursorProviderImpl, kScaleCursorProviderImpl, kShearCursorProviderImpl, kCreationCursorProviderImpl, kSplineAddCursorProviderImpl, kSplineRemoveCursorProviderImpl, kSplineDirectionCursorProviderImpl, kScissorsCursorProviderImpl, kHorizontalIBeamCrsrProviderImpl, kVerticalIBeamCrsrProviderImpl, kZoomToolCursorProviderImpl, kSelectCursorProviderImpl, kPlaceGunCursorProviderImpl, kSplineCreationCursorProviderImpl, kPencilCursorProviderImpl, kSmoothCursorProviderImpl, kEraseCursorProviderImpl, kTOPHorzToolCursorProviderImpl, kTOPVertToolCursorProviderImpl
ISprite	kNoHandleSpriteImpl, kGradientToolSpritekFreeTransformSpriteImpl, kCSpriteImpl, kNoHandleAndCrossSpriteImpl, kLayoutSpriteImpl, kPencilSpriteImpl, kStandOffSpriteImpl, kTableResizeSpriteImpl, kTextOffscreenSpriteImpl
IPathGeometry	kPathGeometryImpl

Tracker listings

TABLE 169 Tool-related trackers

Widget classID	Tool classID	Tracker classID
kDCSItemBoss	kPathResizeToolBoss	kSplinePathResizeTrackerBoss
kDCSItemBoss	kResizeToolBoss	kBBoxResizeTrackerBoss
kDCSItemBoss	kScissorsToolBoss	kSplineScissorsTrackerBoss
kDCSItemBoss	kSplineAddPointToolBoss	kSplineAddPointTrackerBoss
kDCSItemBoss	kSplineDirectionToolBoss	kSplineDirectionTrackerBoss
kDCSItemBoss	kSplineRemovePointToolBoss	kSplineRemovePointTrackerBoss
kEPSItem	kPathResizeToolBoss	kSplinePathResizeTrackerBoss
kEPSItem	kResizeToolBoss	kBBoxResizeTrackerBoss
kEPSItem	kScissorsToolBoss	kSplineScissorsTrackerBoss
kEPSItem	kSplineAddPointToolBoss	kSplineAddPointTrackerBoss
kEPSItem	kSplineDirectionToolBoss	kSplineDirectionTrackerBoss
kEPSItem	kSplineRemovePointToolBoss	kSplineRemovePointTrackerBoss
kEPSTextItemBoss	kResizeToolBoss	kBBoxResizeTrackerBoss
kFrameItemBoss	kILGMoveToolImpl	kILGMoveTrackerBoss
kFrameItemBoss	kILGRotateToolImpl	kILGRotateTrackerBoss
kFrameItemBoss	kTextFrameILGMoveTrackerImpl	kTextFrameILGMoveTrackerBoss
kGenericToolBoss	kPrePlaceToolBoss	kPrePlaceTrackerBoss
kGroupItemBoss	kResizeToolBoss	kTextBBoxResizeTrackerBoss
kGuideItemBoss	kMoveToolBoss	kGuideMoveTrackerBoss
kIBeamToolBoss	kFrameToolBoss	kFrameTrackerBoss
kIBeamToolBoss	kTextSelectionToolBoss	kTextSelectionTrackerBoss
kIBeamToolBoss	kVerticalTextToolBoss	kVerticalFrameTrackerBoss
kImageItem	kPathResizeToolBoss	kSplinePathResizeTrackerBoss
kImageItem	kResizeToolBoss	kBBoxResizeTrackerBoss
kImageItem	kScissorsToolBoss	kSplineScissorsTrackerBoss
kImageItem	kSplineAddPointToolBoss	kSplineAddPointTrackerBoss

Widget classID	Tool classID	Tracker classID
kImageItem	kSplineDirectionToolBoss	kSplineDirectionTrackerBoss
kImageItem	kSplineRemovePointToolBoss	kSplineRemovePointTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kDirectSelectToolBoss	kDirectSelectTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kEraseToolBoss	kEraseTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kFreeTransformMoveToolBoss	kFreeTransformMoveTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kFreeTransformRotateToolBoss	kFreeTransformRotateTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kFreeTransformScaleToolBoss	kFreeTransformScaleTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kFreeTransformToolBoss	kFreeTransformTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kGrabberHandToolBoss	kGrabberHandTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kGradientToolBoss	kGradientToolTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kGroupSelectToolImpl	kGroupSelectTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kIBeamToolBoss	kIBeamTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kLayoutLockToolImpl	kLockTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kLayoutSelectionToolImpl	kLayoutSelectionTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kLineToolBoss	kLineTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kOvalFrameToolBoss	kOvalFrameTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kOvalToolBoss	kOvalTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kPencilToolBoss	kPencilCreationTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kPlaceToolBoss	kPlaceTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kPointerToolBoss	kPointerTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kRectFrameToolBoss	kRectangleFrameTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kRectToolBoss	kRectangleTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kReferencePointToolImpl	kReferencePointTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kRegPolyFrameToolBoss	kRegPolyFrameTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kRegPolyToolBoss	kRegPolyTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kRotateToolBoss	kRotateTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kScaleToolBoss	kScaleTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kScissorsToolBoss	kScissorsTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kShearToolBoss	kShearTrackerBoss

Widget classID	Tool classID	Tracker classID
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kSmoothToolBoss	kSmoothTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kSplineAddPointToolBoss	kAddPointTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kSplineDirectionToolBoss	kConvertDirectionTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kSplinePenToolBoss	kSplineCreationTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kSplineRemovePointToolBoss	kRemovePointTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kTOPHorzToolBoss	kTOPHorzToolTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kTOPVertToolBoss	kTOPVertToolTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kVerticalTextToolBoss	kVerticalTextTrackerBoss
kLayoutWidgetBoss	kZoomToolBoss	kZoomToolTrackerBoss
kMultiColumnItemBoss	kPlaceToolBoss	kPlacePITrackerBoss
kPageBoss	kMoveToolBoss	kColumnGuideTrackerBoss
kPageItemBoss	kMoveToolBoss	kMoveTrackerBoss
kPageItemBoss	kPlaceToolBoss	kPlacePITrackerBoss
kPICTItem	kPathResizeToolBoss	kSplinePathResizeTrackerBoss
kPICTItem	kResizeToolBoss	kBBoxResizeTrackerBoss
kPICTItem	kScissorsToolBoss	kSplineScissorsTrackerBoss
kPICTItem	kSplineAddPointToolBoss	kSplineAddPointTrackerBoss
kPICTItem	kSplineDirectionToolBoss	kSplineDirectionTrackerBoss
kPICTItem	kSplineRemovePointToolBoss	kSplineRemovePointTrackerBoss
kPlacedPDFItemBoss	kPathResizeToolBoss	kSplinePathResizeTrackerBoss
kPlacedPDFItemBoss	kResizeToolBoss	kBBoxResizeTrackerBoss
kPlacedPDFItemBoss	kScissorsToolBoss	kSplineScissorsTrackerBoss
kPlacedPDFItemBoss	kSplineAddPointToolBoss	kSplineAddPointTrackerBoss
kPlacedPDFItemBoss	kSplineDirectionToolBoss	kSplineDirectionTrackerBoss
kPlacedPDFItemBoss	kSplineRemovePointToolBoss	kSplineRemovePointTrackerBoss
kSplineItemBoss	kPathResizeToolBoss	kSplinePathResizeTrackerBoss
kSplineItemBoss	kResizeToolBoss	kTextBBoxResizeTrackerBoss
kSplineItemBoss	kScissorsToolBoss	kSplineScissorsTrackerBoss
kSplineItemBoss	kSplineAddPointToolBoss	kSplineAddPointTrackerBoss

Widget classID	Tool classID	Tracker classID
kSplineItemBoss	kSplineDirectionToolBoss	kSplineDirectionTrackerBoss
kSplineItemBoss	kSplineRemovePointToolBoss	kSplineRemovePointTrackerBoss
kSplitterWidgetBoss	kSplitterWidgetBoss	kSplitterTrackerBossMessage
kStandOffPageItemBoss	kMoveToolBoss	kStandOffMoveTrackerBoss
kStandOffPageItemBoss	kPathResizeToolBoss	kStandOffResizeTrackerBoss
kStandOffPageItemBoss	kResizeToolBoss	kStandOffResizeTrackerBoss
kStandOffPageItemBoss	kSplineAddPointToolBoss	kStandOffAddPointTrackerBoss
kStandOffPageItemBoss	kSplineDirectionToolBoss	kStandOffDirectionTrackerBoss
kStandOffPageItemBoss	kSplineRemovePointToolBoss	kStandOffRemovePointTrackerBoss
kTOPSplineItemBoss	kTOPMoveToolBoss	kTOPMoveTrackerBoss
kTOPSplineItemBoss	kTOPResizeToolBoss	kTOPResizeTrackerBoss
kWMFItem	kPathResizeToolBoss	kSplinePathResizeTrackerBoss
kWMFItem	kResizeToolBoss	kBBoxResizeTrackerBoss
kWMFItem	kScissorsToolBoss	kSplineScissorsTrackerBoss
kWMFItem	kSplineAddPointToolBoss	kSplineAddPointTrackerBoss
kWMFItem	kSplineDirectionToolBoss	kSplineDirectionTrackerBoss
kWMFItem	kSplineRemovePointToolBoss	kSplineRemovePointTrackerBoss

TABLE 170 User-interface widget-related trackers

Widget classID	Tool classID	Tracker classID
kCmykColorSliderWidgetBoss	kCmykColorSliderWidgetBoss	kCmykColorSliderTrackerBoss
kColorSliderWidgetBoss	kColorSliderWidgetBoss	kColorSliderTrackerBoss
kGradientSliderWidgetBoss	kGradientSliderWidgetBoss	kGradientSliderTrackerBoss
kGroupItemBoss	kResizeToolBoss	kTextBBoxResizeTrackerBoss
kGuideItemBoss	kMoveToolBoss	kGuideMoveTrackerBoss
kHorzRulerWidgetBoss	kGuideToolImpl	kGuideCreationTrackerBoss
kHorzTabRulerBoss	kTabCreationToolImpl	kTabCreationTrackerBoss
kHorzTabRulerBoss	kTabMoveToolImpl	kTabMoveTrackerBoss
kHorzTextDocRulerBoss	kTabCreationToolImpl	kDocRulerTrackerBoss

Tools

Tracker listings

Widget classID	Tool classID	Tracker classID
kLabColorSliderWidgetBoss	kLabColorSliderWidgetBoss	kLabColorSliderTrackerBoss
kPencilFidelitySliderWidgetBoss	kPencilFidelitySliderWidgetBoss	kPencilSliderTrackerBoss
kPencilSmoothnessSliderWidgetBoss	kPencilSmoothnessSliderWidgetBoss	kPencilSliderTrackerBoss
kPencilWithinSliderWidgetBoss	kPencilWithinSliderWidgetBoss	kPencilSliderTrackerBoss
kRasterSliderCntrlViewBoss	kRasterSliderCntrlViewBoss	kRasterSliderTrackerBoss
kRgbColorSliderWidgetBoss	kRgbColorSliderWidgetBoss	kColorSliderTrackerBoss
kSpectrumWidgetBoss	kSpectrumWidgetBoss	kSpectrumTrackerBoss
kSplitterWidgetBoss	kSplitterWidgetBoss	kSplitterTrackerBossMessage
kStructureSplitterWidgetBoss	kStructureSplitterWidgetBoss	kXorSplitterTrackerBoss
kThresholdSliderWidgetBoss	kThresholdSliderWidgetBoss	kThresholdSliderTrackerBoss
kTintSliderWidgetBoss	kTintSliderWidgetBoss	kColorSliderTrackerBoss
kToleranceSliderWidgetBoss	kToleranceSliderWidgetBoss	kThresholdSliderTrackerBoss
kTransparencySliderCntrlViewBoss	kTransparencySliderCntrlViewBoss	kXPSliderTrackerBoss
kVectorSliderCntrlViewBoss	kVectorSliderCntrlViewBoss	kVectorSliderTrackerBoss
kVertRulerWidgetBoss	kGuideToolImpl	kGuideCreationTrackerBoss
kVertTabRulerBoss	kTabCreationToolImpl	kTabCreationTrackerBoss
kVertTabRulerBoss	kTabMoveToolImpl	kTabMoveTrackerBoss
kVertTextDocRulerBoss	kTabCreationToolImpl	kDocRulerTrackerBoss
kZeroPointWidgetBoss	kGuideToolImpl	kGuideCreationTrackerBoss
kZeroPointWidgetBoss	kZeroPointToolImpl	kZeroPointTrackerBoss

Diagnostics

Introduction

This chapter describes how you can use the diagnostics plug-in when developing plug-ins for InDesign, InCopy, and InDesign Server. The Diagnostics plug-in provides a detailed look at the internal operations of command processing; the organization of document content inside spreads, layers and page items; INX DTD generation; and object model IDs and UIDs. Note, the newer IDML file format supports schema generation and validation. For information on IDML and RelaxNG schema validation see *Adobe InDesign Markup Language (IDML) Cookbook*.

The diagnostics plug-in can help you find answers to questions like the following:

- Which commands is the application using to manipulate content?
- What is exposed in the scripting Document Object Model (DOM)?
- What types of page items are used to store content?
- How are page items organized inside spreads and layers?
- What is the symbolic name (e.g., kSessionBoss) that corresponds to a numeric object model ID (e.g., 0x101)?
- What type of boss class does a given UID refer to?

Using the diagnostics plug-in

The diagnostics plug-ins (Diagnostics.apln and DiagnosticsUI.apln) are found on Windows in `<SDK>\build\win\debug\testing` and on Mac OS in `<SDK>/build/mac/debug/package-folder/contents/macos/testing`.

This chapter describes the use of the Diagnostics plug-in through the application user interface and scripting.

To use the plug-in with the debug build of InDesign or InCopy, select one of the Test > Diagnostics menu items. To use the plug-in with the release build of InDesign or InCopy or with InDesign Server, you must use a script. See [“Diagnostics > Scripting DOM menu” on page 756](#).

You can use the diagnostics plug-in to generate traces, which provide an equivalent of printf debug messages to a log. You can filter messages by category. To see the trace, use the Test > TRACE menu to enable the logs you want use. If you do not see any traces when you use the plug-in’s menus, make sure the Diagnostics category is checked on the Test > TRACE menu. Unchecking these categories filters the trace produced by the plug-in. If you do not see a Test >

TRACE > Diagnostics menu, select Test > Diagnostics > ObjectModel > TraceID. Some trace output must be written before the Test > TRACE menu shows the category.

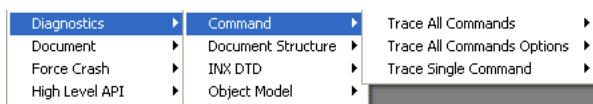
Diagnostics menu

Plug-in options are not persistent; that is, settings you make to control the level of reporting must be applied for each session.

Diagnostics > Command menu

This menu contains items to trace one or more commands. See [Figure 287](#).

FIGURE 287 Diagnostics > Command menu



The three commands in the menu are described below.

Trace All Commands — This traces all commands being processed by the application. Use this to discover the command being used to manipulate content in response to a user action. For example, this trace is created in response to grouping a set of page items:

```
kMoveReferencePointCmdBoss Diagnostics::ProcessCommand()
kSetDefaultRefPointPositionCmdBoss Diagnostics::ProcessCommand()
kSetAttributeTargetCommandBoss Diagnostics::ProcessCommand()
kGroupCmdBoss Diagnostics::ProcessCommand()
kNewPageItemCmdBoss Diagnostics::ProcessCommand()
kApplyObjectStyleCmdBoss Diagnostics::ProcessCommand()
kBPISetDataCmdBoss Diagnostics::ProcessCommand()
kMoveReferencePointCmdBoss Diagnostics::ProcessCommand()
kSetDefaultRefPointPositionCmdBoss Diagnostics::ProcessCommand()
kSetAttributeTargetCommandBoss Diagnostics::ProcessCommand()
kCheckExportSettingsCmdBoss Diagnostics::ScheduleCommand()
kCheckColorSettingsCmdBoss Diagnostics::ScheduleCommand()
kCheckExportSettingsCmdBoss Diagnostics::ProcessCommand()
kCheckColorSettingsCmdBoss Diagnostics::ProcessCommand()
```

Trace All Commands Options — Several options are available to control the detail of the information reported by Trace All Commands:

- Data Interfaces — Turn this on to trace the data interfaces (e.g., IID_BOOLDATA) aggregated by each command for parameter passing.
- ItemList UIDs — Turn this on to trace the UIDs of objects in each command's item list.
- ItemList ClassIDs — Turn this on to trace the ClassID values of objects in each command's item list. Use this to find the type of object (e.g., kSplineItemBoss) a command manipulates.
- Dynamic Commands — Turn this on to trace dynamic command processing (e.g., the commands processed by a tracker when a page item is moved using the mouse).

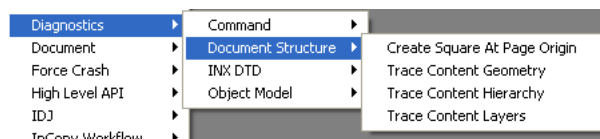
Trace Single Command — Once you know the command of interest (e.g., `kGroupCmdBoss`), you can use Trace Single Command to examine its processing in more detail. Use this when you know the ClassID of the command about which you want to know more. The trace is indented to show the commands used by the command of interest. For example:

```
Begin cmd no. 0 'kGroupCmdBoss' (class id 0x405)
  Begin cmd no. 1 'kNewPageItemCmdBoss' (class id 0x2c01)
    ## Begin Sequence
    Begin cmd no. 2 'kGfxApplyMultAttributesCmdBoss'
      ## Begin Sequence
      ## End Sequence
    End cmd 'kGfxApplyMultAttributesCmdBoss' (class id 0x6e4d)
    ## End Sequence
  End cmd 'kNewPageItemCmdBoss' (class id 0x2c01)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 125)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 136)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 136)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 140)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 136)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 136)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 136)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 125)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 137)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 137)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 140)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 137)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 137)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 125)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 140)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 140)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 140)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 137)
  >> Direct Change: SetDirty (id: 136)
  // Direct Changes are Done
  // Root Command is Done
End cmd 'kGroupCmdBoss' (class id 0x405)
```

Diagnostics > Document Structure menu

The menu contains items to report information on the spreads, pages, and page items in the front document. See [Figure 288](#).

FIGURE 288 *Diagnostics > Document Structure Menu*



The four commands in the menu are described below.

Create Square At Page Origin — This creates a 100pt-by-100pt square spline at the origin of the current page in the front-most document and traces the geometry of the object and its parent spread as it does so.

Trace Content Geometry — This traces the geometry of spreads and page items in their inner coordinates, relative to their parent object and the pasteboard.

Trace Content Hierarchy — This traces the content of each spread, by the spread layer by which the content is owned. For example:

```
TraceContentHierarchy() *****Begin
kDocBoss, uid 0x1
Untitled-2
  kSpreadBoss, uid 0x7a
  Spread 1 content by hierarchy...
    kSpreadLayerBoss, uid 0x7b
    kPageBoss, uid 0x7f
    kSpreadLayerBoss, uid 0x7c
    kSpreadLayerBoss, uid 0x7d
    kSplineItemBoss, uid 0x8c
    kImageItem, uid 0x88
    kSpreadLayerBoss, uid 0x7e
    kMasterPagesBoss, uid 0x81
    A-Master master spread content by hierarchy...
    kSpreadLayerBoss, uid 0x82
    kPageBoss, uid 0x86
    kPageBoss, uid 0x87
    kSpreadLayerBoss, uid 0x83
    kSpreadLayerBoss, uid 0x84
    kSpreadLayerBoss, uid 0x85
TraceContentHierarchy() *****End
```

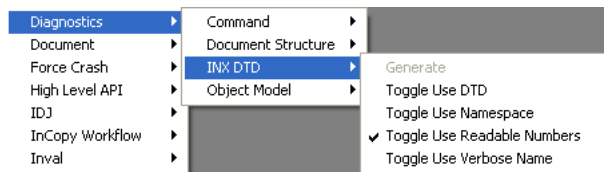
Trace Content Layers — This traces the content of each spread, by the document layer on which the content is displayed.

Diagnostics > INX DTD menu

This menu contains items related to INX DTD generation. InDesign Interchange (INX) format is an XML-based format used to serialize and deserialize the InDesign scripting DOM. The API supports several options for export to INX file format, and this menu item demonstrates generating DTDs that correspond to these options. See [Figure 289](#).

NOTE: The application itself does not provide these options during export.

FIGURE 289 *Diagnostics > INX DTD menu*



The five commands in the menu are described below.

Generate — This generates a DTD according to the current scripting model at run time. This means if your newly developed plug-in supports scripting, the generated DTD covers that. The menu command is disabled if no document is open. The generated DTD is saved to the same directory as InDesign recovery and named INXFile.DTD.

Toggle Use DTD — This toggles use of the DTD. The default setting for INX export is false.

Toggle Use Namespace — This toggles use of the namespace. The default setting for INX export is false.

Toggle Use Readable Numbers — This toggles use of readable numbers. The default setting for INX export is true. When true, the real number in exported INX is represented as human-readable text; otherwise, binary.

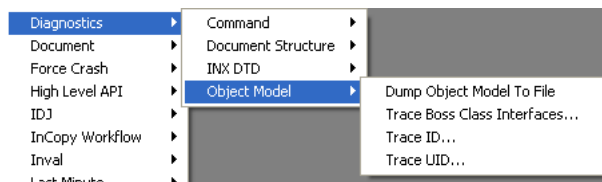
Toggle Use Verbose Name — This toggles use of verbose names. The default setting for INX export is false. When true, the verbose name is used to represent element and attribute name instead of the four-character value (e.g., “document” instead of “docu”).

NOTE: InDesign supports RelaxNG schema validation of IDML. It does not, and will not, support DTD validation of INX files. We recommend IDML to assemble and disassemble content outside of InDesign. For details about schema validation with IDML, see *Adobe InDesign Markup Language (IDML) Cookbook*.

Diagnostics > Object Model menu

See [Figure 290](#) for this menu.

FIGURE 290 *Diagnostics > Object Model menu*



The four commands in the menu are described below.

Dump Object Model To File — This exports the object model to a tab-separated file in the folder where the application is installed. A record is produced for each interface on each boss class. The output file is IObjectModel_RomanFS.txt if the application is running with the Roman feature set and IObjectModel_JapaneseFS.txt if the application is running with the Japanese feature set. These reports are suitable for import into a spreadsheet or database application. You can then do filtered searches to get answers to question like “Which boss classes aggregate IID_IATTRREPORT?”

Trace Boss Class Interfaces — This traces the interfaces aggregated by a given boss class.

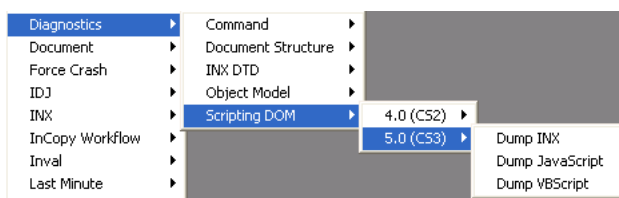
Trace ID — This traces the symbolic name of a given numeric ID in each ID space.

Trace UID — This traces the ClassID of a given UID, by instantiating an object of that UID in the front document and examining its associated boss class. If no documents are open, the InDesign Defaults database is used.

Diagnostics > Scripting DOM menu

See [Figure 291](#) for this menu.

FIGURE 291 *Diagnostics > Scripting DOM menu*



The Scripting DOM menu can be used to dump a language-specific scripting DOM to an XML file. It contains submenus that allow you to specify the product version, followed by the language to dump. IDML, INX, and JavaScript DOMs are available on both Windows and Mac OS. Also, Visual Basic is available on Windows, and AppleScript is available on Mac OS.

These XML files can be transformed into two useful HTML representations, using an XSLT processor and the style sheets included at `<sdk>/docs/references/`. The `scripting-dom-to-html.xsl` file produces an HTML representation of the entire DOM. The `scripting-dom-idname-table.xsl` file produces a simple table that maps scriptIDs to names. See the comments at the top of the style sheets for detailed use instructions.

Running the Diagnostics plug-in in indesign/incopy with a script

You may run the Diagnostics plug-in with a script. The following examples demonstrate how to do so using JavaScript.

The following Windows example dumps the object model to `c:\dump.txt`:

```
var myDiagnostics = app.diagnostics;
myDiagnostics.dumpObjectModel("c:\\dump.txt");
// Note: the path separator is \\ and not a single \.
```

The following Windows example produces `c:\vbDOM-5.xml`, a Visual Basic DOM for InDesign 5.0 or InCopy 5.0:

```
var myDiagnostics = app.diagnostics;
myDiagnostics.dumpScriptingDOM(ScriptingDOMLanguage.visualBasic, "5.0", "c:\\vbDOM-5.xml");
```


The following Mac OS example dumps the object model to dump.txt on the disk gokkyo:

```
var myDiagnostics = app.diagnostics;  
myDiagnostics.dumpObjectModel("gokkyu:dump.txt");  
// Note: posix paths are not supported, use old style for now.
```

The following Mac OS example produces appleScriptDOM-5.xml, an AppleScript DOM for InDesign 5.0 or InCopy 5.0:

```
var myDiagnostics = app.diagnostics;  
myDiagnostics.dumpScriptingDOM(ScriptingDOMLanguage.applescriptLanguage, "5.0",  
"gokkyu:appleScriptDOM-5.xml");
```

Once you save a script on your hard drive, you can run it using the Scripts panel. To open the Scripts panel, select Window > Automation > Scripts. Open the scripts folder, add a shortcut to your script, and run the script.

Running the Diagnostics plug-in in InDesign Server on Windows with a script

To run the above scripts with InDesign Server on Windows, open a command window, locate InDesign Server CS4 through Windows Explorer, drag it to the command prompt, and append the port on which you want it to listen. For example:

```
<path>\InDesignServer.com -port 12345
```

Open another command window. Locate sampleclient through Windows Explorer, drag it to the command prompt, and append the host to which you want it to send. For example:

```
<path>\sampleclient.exe <path>\MyScript.js -host localhost:12345
```

Before running InDesign Server, make sure the TCP/IP port (from which InDesign Server is listening for SOAP messages) is open (especially if you have a firewall set up).

Running the Diagnostics plug-in in InDesign Server on Mac OS with a script

To run the above scripts with InDesign Server on Mac OS, open a terminal window, locate InDesign Server CS4 through the Finder, drag it to the terminal window, and append the port on which you want it to listen. For example:

```
<path>/InDesignServer -port 12345
```

Open another terminal window. Locate sampleclient using the Finder and drag it to the terminal window. Append the host to which you want it to send. For example:

```
<path>/sampleclient <path>/MyScript.js -host localhost:12345
```

Before running InDesign Server, make sure the TCP/IP port (from which InDesign Server is listening for SOAP messages) is open (especially if you have a firewall set up).

Frequently asked questions

Where is the Diagnostics panel?

In InDesign CS4, the user interface for the features provided by the Diagnostics plug-in is in the Test > Diagnostics menu. The panel used by previous versions of this plug-in is no longer needed.

What is trace?

A trace provides a printf style of debug log. Traces are available with the debug build of the application. Trace output under the release build is not supported.

Why don't I get trace messages?

Make sure you checked one of the available logs presented on the Test > TRACE menu and Test > TRACE > Diagnostics is selected. If you do not see a Test > TRACE > Diagnostics menu, use Test > Diagnostics > ObjectModel > TraceID first. (Some trace output must be written to the category before the Test > TRACE menu shows it.)

InCopy: Getting Started

This chapter introduces InCopy as a programming platform. Because the SDK is unified for InDesign CS and InCopy CS and later, information specific to InCopy is a relatively small portion of this document.

This chapter has the following objectives:

- Acquaint you with elements of the programming environment specific to InCopy.
- Direct you to documentation that expands on topics mentioned briefly here.

About InCopy

InCopy is a collaborative, text-editing application developed for integrated use with InDesign. InCopy enables you to track changes, add editorial notes, and fit copy tightly into the space designed for it. InCopy uses the same text-composition engine as InDesign, so InCopy fits copy within a layout with identical composition.

InCopy is for the editorial environment; it allows editorial workflow participants to collaborate on magazines, newspapers, and corporate publishing, enabling concurrent text and layout editing. Its users are editors, writers, proofreaders, copy editors, and copy processors.

InCopy shares many panels and palettes with InDesign but also provides its own user-interface items.

Developing for InCopy

Previous releases of InCopy focused on large installations and were available for purchase only through system integrators, so system integrators were the primary group developing for InCopy. Several software developers also wrote plug-ins targeted for magazine and newspaper use.

With the current release, smaller developers have additional opportunities to write plug-ins targeted at magazines, newspapers, corporate publishing, and other collaborative users.

Using the combined InDesign/InCopy SDK

This section looks at the SDK from an InCopy perspective. InDesign and InCopy share an SDK.

In the great majority of cases, when you write code in the InDesign source base, you also are writing code for InCopy. Statistically speaking, the programs are nearly identical; nevertheless,

you will need to keep InCopy in mind when working with files, links, text and page items, as there are behaviors that can be broken easily.

InDesign, InDesign Server, and InCopy all run the same code. This means any specific behaviors must be implemented at run time, not at compile time. The only uniquely built portions of the program are the application shells for each version. All other plug-ins can be loaded into any of the applications, although a plug-in also has a resource in its class file that lists which variants should load it.

The InCopy API

Since InCopy does not support the entire InDesign API, it is important to know which APIs are available for use with InCopy. To determine whether a particular API is appropriate for InCopy, consult the API reference documentation for boss classes; for each interface exposed by a given boss class, you can see in which application(s) the interface can be found.

Compiler settings

Compiler settings do not differ between InDesign and InCopy plug-ins. For details on plug-in development environments, see the “Development Environment” section of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Porting Guide*.

Resources

InCopy and InDesign plug-ins are compiled from the same code base; therefore, the information on whether a plug-in is intended for InDesign or InCopy is built into the PluginVersion resource found in a plug-in's.fr file, using the kInDesignProduct and kInCopyProduct identifiers. When both identifiers are used in the resource definition, the plug-in is intended for use in both InDesign and InCopy.

Additional feature-set IDs exist that may be applicable to your InCopy plug-in. For information on additional feature-set IDs, see FeatureSets.h.

Synchronization of design and architecture

Important areas of integration between InDesign and InCopy are described below:

- *Extended InCopy file format* — The InCopy file format supports persistent features from InDesign, like table headers and footers, as well as Japanese-specific features.
- *Assignment files* — Users can group related document constituents (like headline, byline, copy, graphics, and captions) into meaningful elements that can be worked on as a group. InDesign and InCopy support the creation of such groupings. For details, see the “InCopy: Assignments” chapter.

- *Auto undo/redo* — The Auto undo/redo architecture in the core code makes implementing and maintaining commands much easier. This change affects change-tracking, notes and the story editor.
- *Scripting architecture* — InCopy plug-ins use the scripting architecture.
- *Document actions* — File actions between the two applications are consistent.
- *Symbol glyph-font resolution* — The story editor uses a default display font to show text. Where a glyph is used that is not native to the default display font, another font capable of correctly displaying the glyph is searched for and used instead.
- *Unified text navigation* — Text-navigation behavior within layout, story, and galley views is identical.

File relationships

This section describes relationships between InDesign and InCopy files. These relationships are important because of the division of labor in a publication workflow that occurs when much of the same material is opened and modified in both applications.

There are two common scenarios for exporting from InCopy:

- You can export an (IDML-based) ICML file.
- You can export an (INX-based) INCX file.

There are two common scenarios for exporting from InDesign that involve InCopy in some way:

- Stories exported from InDesign as InCopy files are XML files or streams; the InCopyExport and InCopyWorkflow plug-ins loaded into InDesign provide this function. Some of the practical implications of this approach for InCopy files are that they are much smaller, they are faster over the network, they do not contain any page geometry, and data within the XML file or stream is available outside InDesign/InCopy (for search engines, database tools, etc.).
- Groupings within an article (like a headline, byline, copy, graphics, and captions) also can be exported. InDesign and InCopy support the creation of groupings with assignment files, which handle file management by adding an additional file that tracks the other files. In essence, an assignment is a set of files whose contents are assigned to one person for some work to be done (e.g., copy edit, layout, and/or writing). Any stories in an assignment are exported as InCopy files. Geometry information and the relationship of the files are held in the assignment file. InDesign allows the user to export a given set of stories by exporting into an assignment. InCopy opens all stories that are in an assignment together (as one unit). For details, see the “InCopy: Assignments” chapter.

Stories

Each InCopy file represents one story. An InDesign document containing several stories can be modularized to the same number of InCopy documents, through export. Those exported InDesign stories contain a link, which may be viewed in the Links panel (InDesign) or the Story List palette as assignment files (InCopy).

InCopy does not maintain a link to the InDesign document it is associated with (if one exists). InDesign maintains any links with InCopy files as bi-directional links (kBidirectionalLink-Boss).

Stories can be structured in XML. This means XML data can be contained within XML data. This feature can be used to design a data structure in which the raw text of a story is contained within an outer structure that contains data specific to InCopy (like styles).

Within InCopy, content can be saved in an ICML/INCX format or, if there is structure in the story, the logical structure can be exported in XML.

An ICML or INCX file can contain both InCopy data and marked-up text. If the file is exported as XML data, the data specific to InCopy is stripped out, leaving the marked-up content minus the information about how it is to be styled.

Page geometry

InCopy files do not contain page geometry. When geometry is needed, it must be obtained from the InDesign document. InCopy can open InDesign documents and extract design information and links to the exported stories where needed. When page geometry is desired from within InCopy, assignment files can be supplied with it.

Metadata

The Adobe Extensible Metadata Platform (XMP) provides a practical method for creating, interchanging, and managing metadata. InCopy files support XMP.

Just as InDesign provides the File > File Info menu command to view XMP data, InCopy provides the File > Story Info menu command. The ability for that data to be retained or stripped out during export is provided to systems integrators.

Metadata added to stories by third-party software developers is preserved when incorporated into InDesign documents. Added metadata can be viewed within InDesign from the File Info dialog box, available from the Links panel menu, as well as viewed within InCopy. Further, third-party software developers can add function to InDesign to view that metadata in a custom user interface.

An extensibility point exists for service providers to add metadata content to InCopy files. For further information on the metadata API, see `MetaDataID.h`. Also, the XMP SDK provides documentation, tools, and sample code to help you build support for XMP metadata.

The document model

InDesign documents are the basis for all content in InDesign. InCopy also uses InDesign documents, but they are not the default document type. Symbolic constants are used to identify document types: InDesign documents are identified with `kInDesignFileTypeInfoID`, whereas InCopy documents are identified with `kInCopyFileTypeInfoID`. There also is a constant that means “this program's document,” `kPublicationFileTypeInfoID`. There also is a corresponding template ID, `kTemplateFileTypeInfoID`.

In both InDesign and InCopy, the basic document always is a database based on `IDocument`; in InCopy, however, this document may be an incomplete document. In InDesign, the main document typically is an opened InDesign file, but it also can be an opened INX or IDML file, which typically appears to be an unsaved InDesign document.

InCopy has a few other permutations. There is the basic InDesign file, as well as a new document with an InCopy story (or plain or RTF text) imported into it; this is known as a stand-alone document and can be identified by the `IStandAloneDoc` interface on the `kDocBoss`. Also, there are IDML- and INX-based assignment files, which has some part of an InDesign file stored in an XML file. The InDesign/InCopy document model corresponds to the base required model plug-in set, versioned against changes over time. It is important that all IDML/INX scripting work in both InDesign and InCopy, so documents can be moved with high fidelity between the applications.

User-interface differences

InDesign and InCopy share most of their panels, but InCopy has a smaller set and several additional toolbars along the top, left, and bottom screen borders. Most InCopy panels also can be docked on these bars, providing a smaller but always-visible view of the panel. Modifications made to these panels in InDesign also may need to modify their alternate view in InCopy. InCopy support for alternate panel layouts (kits) involves `KitList` resources.

InCopy also has a custom window layout with multiple views, in a main window with three tabs: Galley view, Story view, and Layout view. Layout view is the InDesign window view. Galley and story views are simply the story-editor view, with and without accurate line endings, respectively.

Checking the feature set

The most popular practice is checking for the proper feature set with the `LocaleID` utility. The most important thing to remember about this is that there are three products: InDesign, InDesign Server, and InCopy. As a result, you should almost never check for the InDesign feature set. Instead, check for InCopy or InDesignServer as needed:

```
bool16 isInCopy = LocaleSetting::GetLocale().IsProductFS(kInCopyProductFS);  
bool16 isServer = LocaleSetting::GetLocale().IsProductFS(kInDesignServerProductFS);
```

Also, because InCopy is now localized for Japanese, checking for the Japanese-language feature set should no longer include product information:

```
bool16 isJapanese = LocaleSetting::GetLocale().IsLanguageFS(kJapaneseLanguageFS);
```

Workflow

The InCopy workflow interface is an extensibility layer available to all third-party software developers and system integrators. The major pieces of this workflow are the following:

- An internal interface (IInCopyWorkflow) that provides core functions and guarantees compatibility.
- A set of three general action categories—Import, Export, and FileActions—that are supplied as plug-ins in source code form. These plug-ins are intended to be modified by software developers and system integrators to meet their own unique workflow needs.
- InDesign (with InCopyBridge) and InCopy inline, editorial-notes features let you add comments, annotations, or notes directly to the text without affecting the flow of the story. The notes features are designed to be used in a workgroup environment, so the notes can be color-coded and turned on or off based on certain criteria. For more information, see the “InCopy: Notes” chapter.
- The InCopy Track Changes features give editors and writers the ability to track edits as a document moves through the writing and editing system. They need to be able to selectively track, show, hide, accept, and reject changes. For more information, see the “InCopy: Track Changes” chapter.
- New InCopyBridge plug-ins (InCopyBridge and InCopyBridgeUI) are supplied as out-of-the-box workflow solutions.

Design and architecture

Story/file relationship

ICML is an IDML-based representation of an InCopy story. It represents the future direction of InDesign/InCopy and is an especially good choice if you need to edit a file outside of InDesign.

ICML format

Each InCopy file or stream is in XML. One of the advantages of this is that InCopy files can be parsed easily and opened by any text editor.

INCX format

INCX is an INX-based representation of an InCopy story. This format is not as readable as ICML, but it is still available to support INCX-based workflows.

Document operations

InCopy provides default implementations of document operations (file actions) like New, Save, Save As, Save A Copy, Open, Close, Revert, and Update Design. All these InCopy file actions are in one plug-in (InCopyFileActions) in source-code form that software developers or system integrators are expected to replace with their own implementations, to customize the interaction for their workflow system.

Using service providers for document interchange

InCopy uses the service-provider architecture for import and export. The InCopy Import and Export provider plug-ins function in both InDesign and InCopy applications. It is expected that system integrators will replace these default service providers with their own, to customize the interaction for their workflow system.

- *From InDesign, InCopy import provider* — With the appropriate InCopy plug-ins installed into InDesign, the user can place an InCopy document into the InDesign document. The Place mechanism is the same as for any other kind of text file.
- *From InDesign, InCopy export provider* — With the appropriate InCopy plug-ins installed into InDesign, the user can export a story to an InCopy document by choosing the Export menu item and selecting the InCopy file format. Behind the scenes, this export process creates a link pointing to the resulting InCopy file and associates the link with the story. The InCopy document does not have any geometry information associated with it.
- *From InCopy, InCopy import provider* — The Place mechanism is the same as for any other kind of text file.
- *From InCopy, InCopy export provider* — The user can export a story to PDF or one of several text documents, by choosing the Export menu item and selecting the desired file format.

Using XMP metadata

The user can enter and edit metadata by choosing File > Story Info. Panels are supplied for General, Keywords, and Summary data. This metadata is saved in the InCopy file. Software developers and system integrators can create and store their own metadata using the XMP SDK.

Locked page items

One of the most common problems is making changes to locked page items. All page items have an `IItemLockData` interface on them, and this interface controls whether the page item is locked. Stories and images that are managed (i.e., exported to InCopy) get locked, so unintended changes cannot be made. All tools in InDesign need to check and respect this interface, as there is no magical bottleneck that can prevent changes from occurring. Always check this interface before making changes to page items.

There are two properties of `IItemLockData`, `InsertLock` and `AttributeLock`. Only `InsertLock` is used, for both content and attribute changes. The rule is simple: if `InsertLock` is set, you cannot make any changes to the contents of the frame.

Plug-in availability

InCopy has all InDesign model plug-ins but a substantially different set of user-interface plug-ins. It is essential that you check for nil on any interfaces that may not be present in one or more products. The most notorious interfaces that go missing in these cases are utility interfaces provided by plug-ins that are not required. It is almost never safe to assume an interface will be available, although plug-in dependencies can be specified that prevent your plug-in from loading if a requisite plug-in is unavailable. Because interfaces can move between plug-ins between versions, however, it is best to always check for nil.

InCopyBridge plug-in

The InCopyBridge plug-in is intended for small publishing workgroups—like corporate publishing, a newspaper, or a magazine—with an editorial and production staff of 2–10 people.

The InCopyBridge plug-in enables the user to manage InCopy files through a regular file system. This is done by writing out lock files. When a lock file exists for an InCopy file, the InCopy file is locked, so no other user can check it out. When the user submits changes, the lock file goes away, and the InCopy file is available for someone else to check out. The lock file holds the name of the user currently using the file, as well as the application; this way, when people users try to edit a locked file, they are told who has it checked out. This works for both InDesign and InCopy.

The new InCopyBridge plug-ins provide a ready-to-use alternative to the InCopyFileActions plug-in, which is supplied as source code in the SDK. These two plug-ins (InCopyBridge and InCopyBridgeUI) are supplied as out-of-the-box workflow solutions. The older InCopyFileActions plug-in continues to be supplied as a foundation for third-party solutions.

The InCopyBridge plug-ins provide a file-based system for preventing simultaneous editing of InCopy stories by multiple InCopy and InDesign users that is based on a shared file-system (file-server) workflow. InCopyBridge is designed for explicitly checking in and out InCopy stories. This user model restricts access to InCopy stories that are being edited by other users.

NOTE: This user model is different from the workflow user model, which offers implicit check-out and explicit check-in and in which the user is warned of conflicts during check-out. The user can make changes, and changes are resolved on synchronize or save operations.

InCopyBridge

This plug-in provides the core function but no user interface. This plug-in can run in an environment without any user interface, such as an InDesign server process. This plug-in also provides code for scripting and testing InCopyBridge core function.

InCopyBridgeUI

This plug-in provides the user interface for InCopyBridge. InCopyBridgeUI implements warning dialog boxes for handling check-in and check-out conflicts. InCopy adds Bridge menu items to its File menu and Story list, whereas InDesign adds them to its Edit menu and the Links panel. While the InCopyBridge plug-in has implications for many menu items, the menu items most involved with the InCopyBridge plug-in are the following:

- *Edit Story In InDesign* — Checks out a linked InCopy story, locking it for use by the current InDesign user. If the InCopy story changed since the InDesign version was updated, an alert appears, prompting the user for action.
- *Submit Story* — Saves the latest changes in the current story to its storage location on disk and makes them available for others to check out and edit. Releases editing control of the checked-out story.
- *Submit All Stories* — Saves the latest changes to all checked-out stories to their respective locations on disk and makes them available for others to check out and edit. Releases editing control of all checked-out stories.
- *Revert Story Changes* — Discards changes made since the last time the user used the Save Story or Save command, and restores the content from the storage location on disk.
- *User* — Displays the User dialog box for entering a name by which InCopyBridge processes identify who has control of a document at a given time. Invoking an InCopyBridge-related action without having entered a user name brings up a prompt asking for this information.

InCopy: Notes

This chapter describes the inline, editorial notes features of InDesign and InCopy for software developers.

The chapter has the following objectives:

- Describe the notes environment.
- Describe the capabilities of notes.
- Show the data model for notes.
- Describe the essential API for notes.

For use cases, see [“Working with notes” on page 786](#).

Concepts

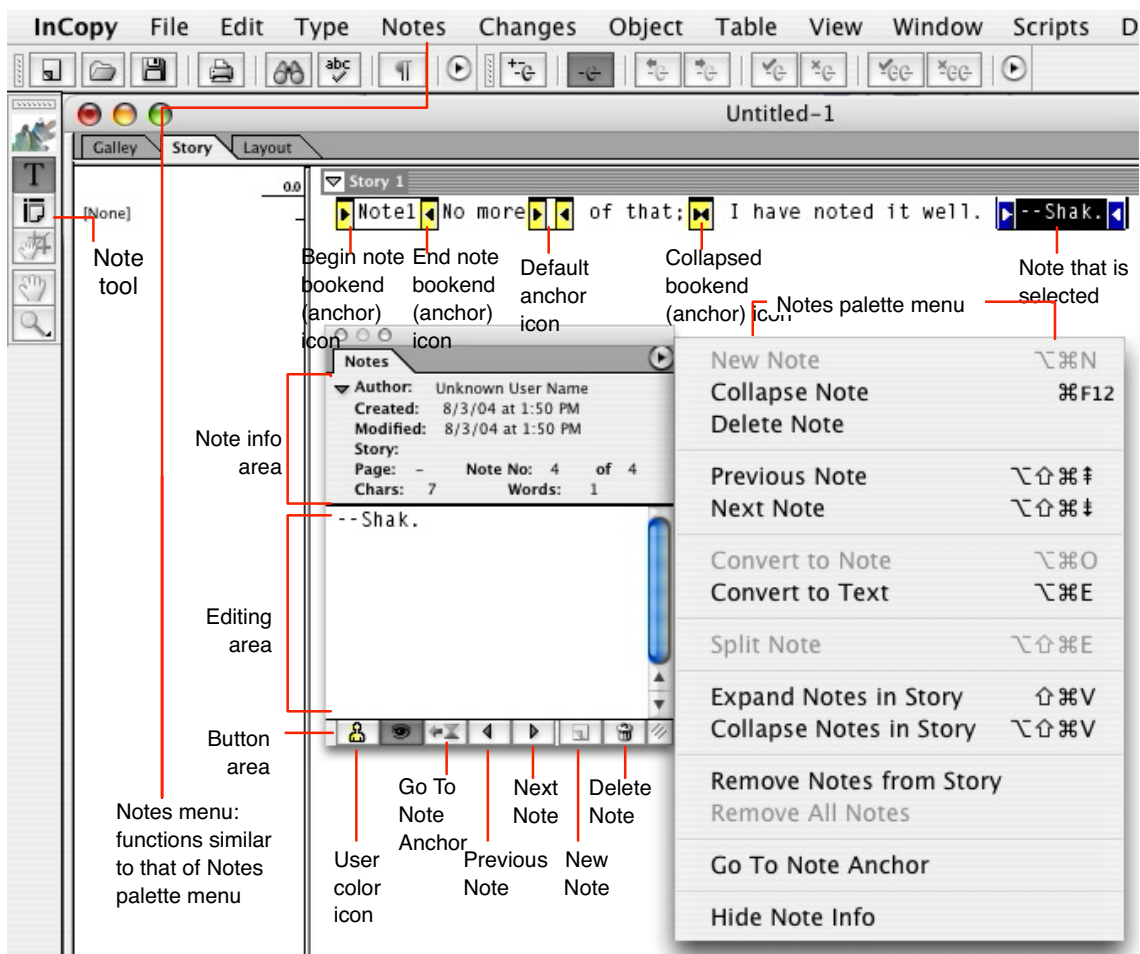
With the InDesign and InCopy inline, editorial notes features, you can add comments and annotations as notes directly to text without affecting the flow of a story. Notes features are designed to be used in a workgroup environment, so the notes can be color coded or turned on or off based on certain criteria.

End-user requirements

Unlike in Acrobat or Photoshop—in which sticky notes float on top of document content—each InDesign/InCopy note is anchored to a specific location in the text. This is necessary because notes are intended to be used as annotations to text, rather than to a layout element or the document as a whole. Notes can be created using the Note tool in the toolbox, the Notes > New Note command, or the New Note icon on the Notes palette.

[Figure 292](#) shows most of the user interface related to notes. The notes features are context-sensitive; an action is available to the end user only when the context is appropriate for that action. Some of the menu items in [Figure 292](#) are disabled, because their function does not apply at the current location of the text-insertion point.

FIGURE 292 Notes user interface in InCopy story view



Note anchors

Each notes is associated with a specific location in the text, indicated by a note-anchor icon. [Figure 292](#) shows examples of note anchors in different states. Content is visible only within a note container:

- In layout view, the container for note content is the Notes palette.
- In story and galley views, the container for note content is an inline note container within the document text, between the two bookend icons that make up the note-anchor icon. In story and galley views, note content also can be seen in the Notes palette.

The content of a note is the same, regardless of the note container or view used. Anchors can be placed anywhere within text in layout or galley view, including the beginning or end of a word, within a word, and between a word and a punctuation mark; however, only one note anchor can occupy a single location within text. Users can create notes only in the text flow. If the user

moves the Note tool pointer over an area that does not contain an open story, the pointer changes to the No Drop pointer, and clicking does not create a new note.

Note anchors perform multiple functions:

- Note anchors indicate the location of the note. When the text reflows, the anchor moves as part of the text.
- Note anchors offer a clickable screen element, so the user can open, move, edit, or delete the note or its contents.

In galley or story view, each inline note icon has an anchor icon consisting of a start-note bookend icon and an end-note bookend icon. When the note is expanded, the content of the note appears between these bookends. New inline notes have a thin, empty, inline note container, with an insertion point ready for note-text entry. When the user begins typing the note text, the bookend icons move apart to accommodate the added text.

Editing text containing note anchors

The note anchor is an access point for opening and editing notes. Selected note anchors can be cut, copied, deleted, and moved by dragging. Selecting text also selects all note anchors within that text. Cutting, copying, or pasting text cuts, copies, or pastes all note anchors in the selected text, with the following exceptions:

- No note anchors can be created or placed within other notes.
- If text containing note anchors is pasted into a note, only the selected surrounding text is copied to the note, not the anchors or note contents.

When text containing a note anchor is deleted, cut, copied, or pasted, whatever happens to the enclosing text happens to the note whose anchor is contained within. This includes notes that are hidden.

Although note content always is drawn in plain text (i.e., with no styles, color, size, or other text-formatting attributes shown), any text copied or pasted to a note retains all formatting information it had, even though that formatting is not shown when the text is part of a note. Text with formatting may be copied and pasted to a note, and at a later time that text may be copied and pasted to non-note text; when the text is placed as regular (non-note) text, any formatting information it contains is rendered (shown) once again.

Capabilities

Adding a note

You can add notes to a story using the Note tool in the toolbox, the Notes > New Note command, or the New Note icon on the Notes palette. You also can create a note from an existing story, by converting or copying the text into a new note. In galley or story view, type your note between the note bookends. In layout view, type your note in the Notes palette.

Converting text to a note

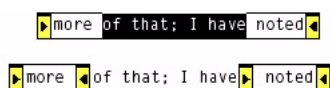
The Convert To Note command converts the selected text to a note; a new note is created, and selected text is removed and copied into the new note. In galley and story views, the container

of the new note is expanded, and the text focus is at the beginning of the new note. The note contents appear in the Notes palette. The note anchor is located where the end of the text selection range was before the Convert To Note operation.

Converting a note to text

The Convert To Text command converts the selected note or selected text in a note container into regular text. Depending on the selection of the note, this command removes the selected text from the note and pastes the text into the document text in the location where the insertion point was before the Convert To Text operation. If the entire note is selected or the insertion point is inside the note container with no text selected, the entire note contents are converted to text. If only part of the content of a note is selected, only the selection is converted, while the remaining content stays in the note—or in two notes, if the selection does not include the beginning or end of the note content. [Figure 293](#) shows the case in which the selection is in the middle of the note content, resulting in two notes after conversion.

FIGURE 293 Conversion of note content to text results in splitting the note



Navigating among notes

The Next Note and Previous Note commands enable navigation among notes. These commands select the next or previous note anchor in the text flow. If the current note is the final or first note in the text, the first or last note is selected, respectively.

Splitting a note

The Split Note command breaks a note into two notes at the insertion point. After a note is split, the insertion point moves to the story text, between the two notes produced by the split.

Deleting a note

The Delete Note command deletes the selected note. The command is available if a note anchor is selected, the current insertion point is within an inline note, or the current insertion point is within the text editing area of the Notes palette. The Remove Notes From Story command deletes all notes from the current story, whereas the Remove All Notes command deletes all notes from the document.

Expanding and collapsing notes

The Expand Note or Collapse Note command expands or collapses the selected note. Only one of these commands is visible at a time, depending on the state of the selected note. Alternately, in story or galley view, click on a note's bookend icon to expand or collapse the note. You can expand all collapsed inline notes in the current document with the Expand All Notes command. You can collapse all inline notes in the current document with the Collapse All Notes command.

The View > Hide Notes and View > Show Notes commands hide and show notes. Which of these commands is available depends on the current state of the notes.

Setting notes preferences

You can customize the appearance and behavior of notes using the Preferences settings, by choosing Edit > Preferences > Notes (Windows) or InCopy > Preferences > Notes (Mac OS).

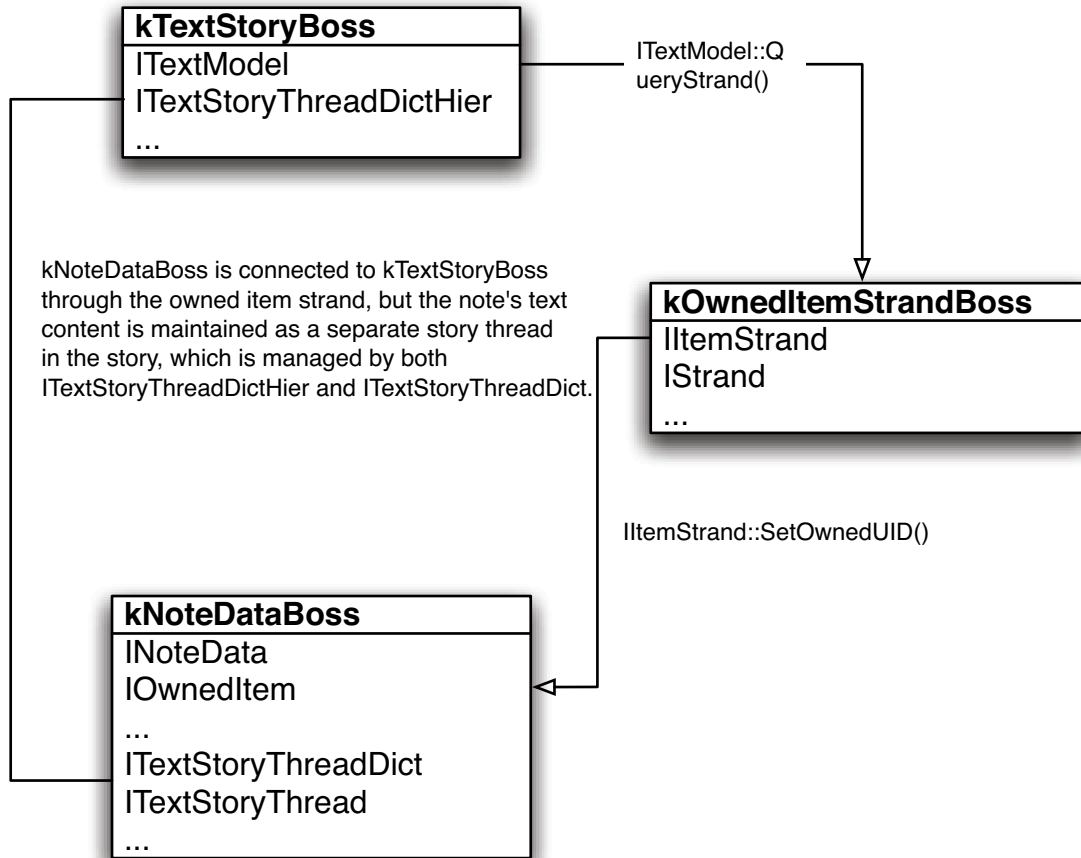
Data model for notes

How notes are connected to text

When a note is added, through either the menu or the Notes palette, `INoteSuite::DoAddNote` is called. You can add a note only when the text tool is active but no text is selected; i.e., there is a blinking insertion point somewhere in the story. If a range of text is selected, you can convert the text to a note. The `DoAddNote` method first checks the `INoteSettings` on the `kWorkspaceBoss`, to determine the note's global visibility state. If the note is hidden, the `kSetHideNoteStateCmdBoss` is used to turn on the note's visibility. Next, `INoteDataUtils::NewNote` is used to make the new note by processing a `kCreateNoteCmdBoss` command.

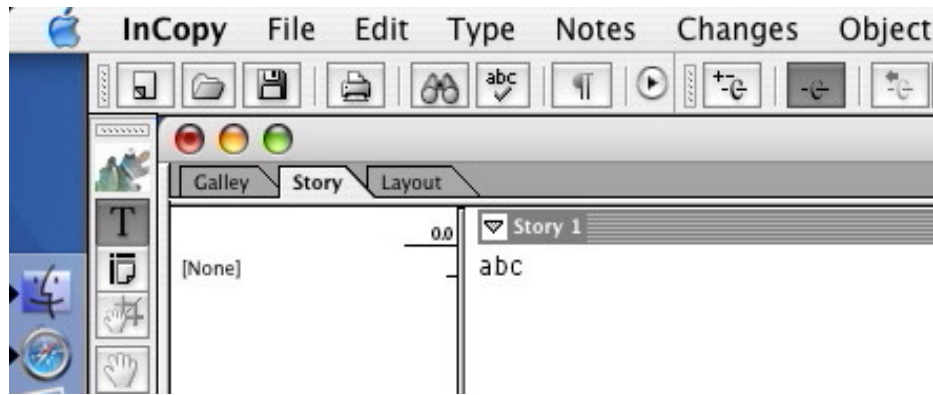
Although the note seems to be embedded in the text, it actually is maintained in the text system as an owned item. A special anchor character (`kTextChar_ZeroSpaceNoBreak`) is inserted in the primary story thread of the text model, at the position where the note is to be placed. Then, an instance of `kNoteDataBoss` is instantiated to hold the note data; this object is anchored in the text model by associating the owned-item strand of the text model with the `kNoteDataBoss` object. This is done by the `kCreateNoteCmdBoss`, which sets the class of the owned-item strand at the offset to `kNoteDataBoss` with the UID of the `kNoteDataBoss` object. In the primary story thread, the note is represented by the special character `kTextChar_ZeroSpaceNoBreak`. The real note text is stored in a separate story thread. `kNoteDataBoss` implements `ITextStoryThreadDict` and `ITextStoryThread`, to maintain its story thread. For more information on the story thread dictionaries, see the “Text Fundamentals” chapter. The `kNoteDataBoss` object's `INoteData` holds information like note author and note creation time. It is important to understand that `INoteData` does not contain the note's text content; the note content is held by a separate story thread, accessible through the `kNoteDataBoss` object's `ITextStoryThreadDict` interface. See [Figure 294](#).

FIGURE 294 Relationship between a note and its parent story



Using the SnippetRunner `InspectTextModel` snippet, we can inspect how the story threads are changed when a note is being added. Assume you have a text story with the text “abc.” There are three characters, plus the carriage return at the end, so the primary story thread’s character count is four, as shown in [Figure 295](#).

FIGURE 295 Text story containing only regular text



Text model representation

Text Index	kTextDataStrandBoss ITextStrand	kStoryThreadStrandBoss IStoryThreadStrand	kOwnedItemStrandBoss IItemStrand
0	a	Primary Story thread, story thread [0]	kInvalidUID
1	b		kInvalidUID
2	c		kInvalidUID
3	kTextChar_CR		kInvalidUID

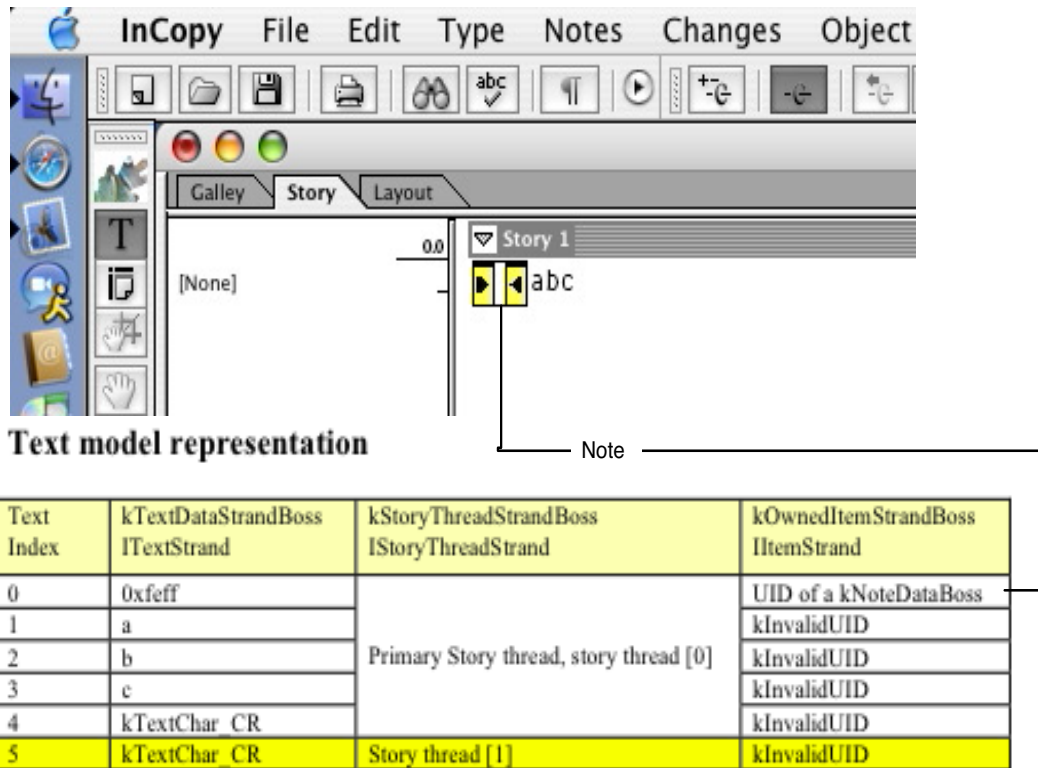
ITextModel::TotalLength = 4

ITextModel::GetPrimaryStoryThreadSpan = Story thread[0] length = 4

TextRange for the model: start = 0, end = 4, length = 4

If you insert an empty note at the beginning, InDesign adds an owned-item strand to the text model, and this strand is represented by `kTextChar_ZeroSpaceNoBreak` (0xfeff). Also, a story thread is created to represent the note's content. When there is no initial text in the note, the thread is initialized to `kTextChar_CR`, which makes the note's story thread length 1. Thus, the text model's length is increased to 6 from the original 4, because of the added `kTextChar_ZeroSpaceNoBreak` for the owned item and `kTextChar_CR` for the note's initial data. In the output of `InspectTextModel`, the carriage return is not reported; but if you read `ITextStoryThread[0]`, its length is reported as 5, which is equal to the `PrimaryStoryThreadSpan`. TextIndex 4 is for the carriage return. [Figure 296](#) illustrates the text model when an empty note is inserted into a story.

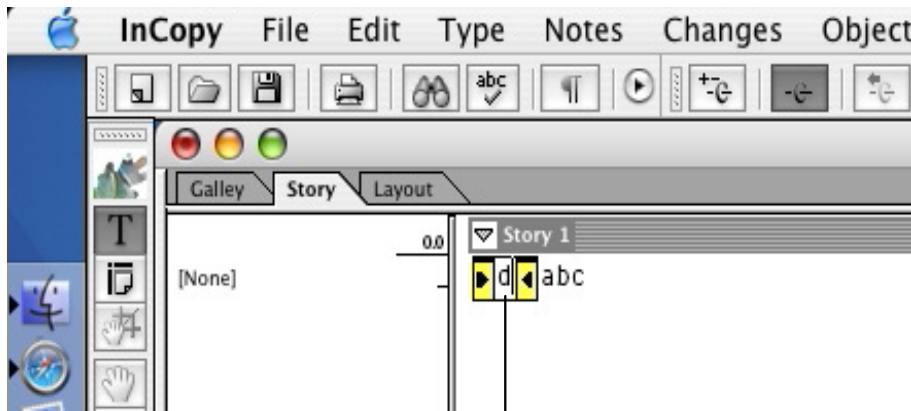
FIGURE 296 Text story with an empty note anchored



ITextModel::TotalLength = 6
 ITextModel::GetPrimaryStoryThreadSpan = Story thread[0] length = 5
 Story thread[1] length = 1
 TextRange for the model: start = 0, end = 6, length = 6

If you type something into the note—for example, type “d” in the note, so you see “<d> abc”—you can see the text model has seven characters, which is one character more than the version with empty note. Note, however, that the primary story thread looks the same as before. The new text is added into the thread that represents the note’s text, which now has a length of 2 (for the “d” character plus the default carriage-return character). See [Figure 297](#).

FIGURE 297 Text story with a one-character note



Text model representation

Text Index	kTextDataStrandBoss ITextStrand	kStoryThreadStrandBoss IStoryThreadStrand	kOwnedItemStrandBoss ItemStrand
0	0xfeff	Primary Story thread, story thread [0]	UID of a kNoteDataBoss
1	a		kInvalidUID
2	b		kInvalidUID
3	c		kInvalidUID
4	kTextChar_CR		kInvalidUID
5	d	Story thread [1]	kInvalidUID
6	kTextChar_CR		kInvalidUID

ITextModel::TotalLength = 7
 ITextModel::GetPrimaryStoryThreadSpan = Story thread[0] length = 5
 Story thread[1] length = 2
 TextRange for the model: start = 0, end = 7, length = 7

Notes suite and utilities

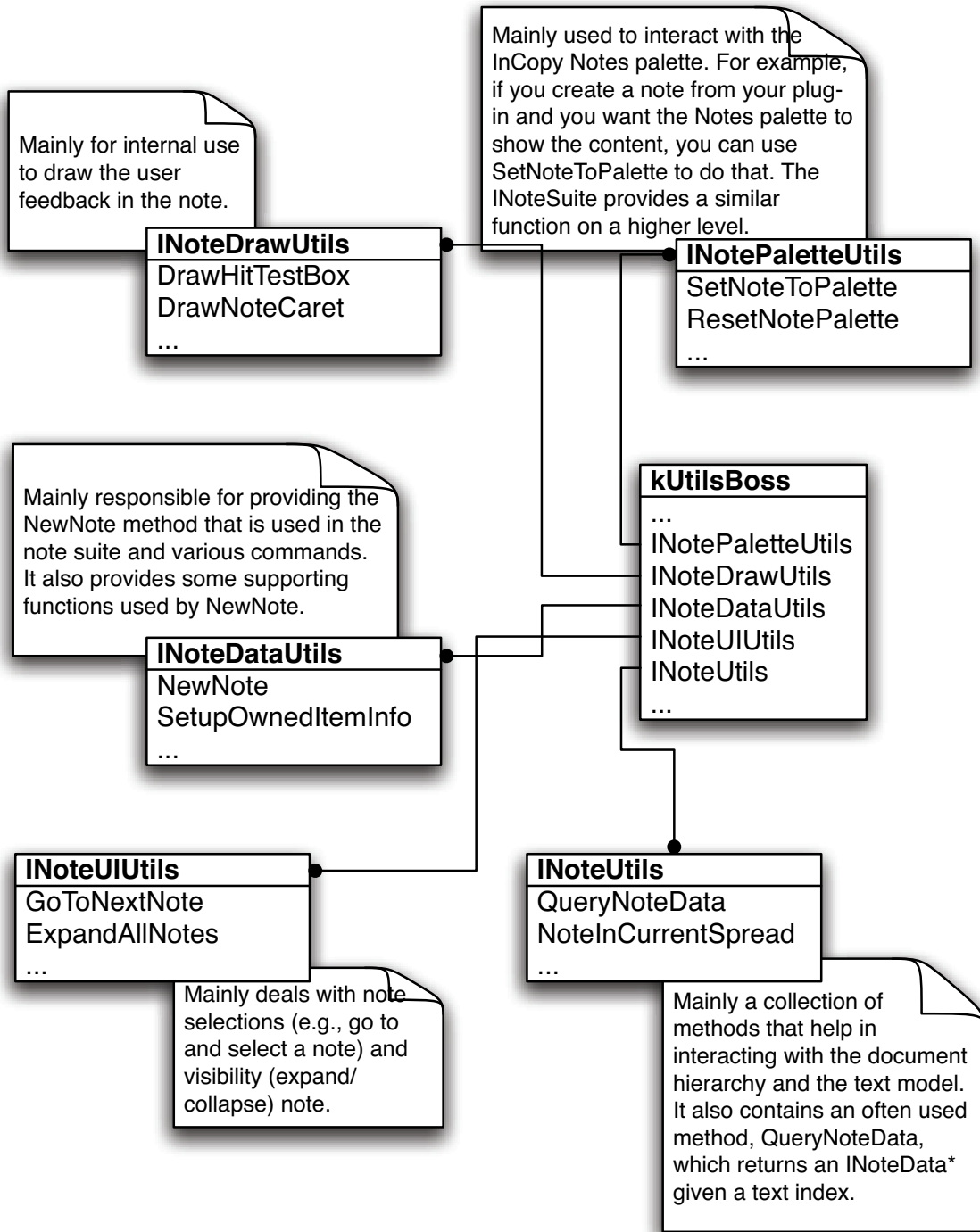
Much of the capability required for client code to work with notes is provided in a high-level suite interface, `INoteSuite` (with the ID `IID_INOTESUITE` interface), which is available through a reference to a selection (`kIntegratorSuiteBoss`). This interface is described in detail in “[INoteSuite](#)” on page 779.

This interface encapsulates the details of interacting with the note model and hides details about the selection format that is active, providing a capability-driven API that can be used to do things like add, delete, and convert notes.

Most of the note suite methods do not interact directly with model; instead, a few utility classes were added to `kUtilsBoss`. These utilities are used in most of the suite implementations. We highly recommend you use the suite functions when possible. If the suite does not meet your needs, look into the utilities before using a command directly.

See [Figure 298](#) for an overview of notes utility classes.

FIGURE 298 Notes utility classes



Notes preferences

An `INotePref` interface (with the ID `IID_INOTEPREFERENCE` interface) is added to the `kWorkspaceBoss`. This interface is responsible for maintaining note settings in the Preferences panel, like note color. To access this interface, do the following:

```
InterfacePtr<INotePref> notePref
  ((INotePref*)::QuerySessionPreferences (IID_INOTEPREFERENCES));
if (notePref != nil)
{
  // Do something with the preference.
}
```

There also is an `INoteSettings` interface (with the ID `IID_INOTESETTINGS` interface) added to `kWorkspaceBoss`. This interface's sole responsibility is to maintain the visibility state of the note. Users typically show and hide notes with the `View > Show Notes` and `View > Hide Notes` menu commands. To access this interface, do the following:

```
InterfacePtr<IWorkspace> sessionWorkSpace (GetExecutionContextSession() -
>QueryWorkspace());
InterfacePtr<INoteSettings> noteSettings (sessionWorkSpace, UseDefaultIID());
```

Essential APIs

INoteSuite

The `INoteSuite` suite interface is a key API for manipulating notes in client code. Most of a note's user-interface functions are provided through this interface. This interface provides much of the required capability for plug-ins.

The `INoteSuite` interface is aggregated on the integrator-suite boss class (`kIntegratorSuiteBoss`), which makes this interface available through the abstract selection. Implementations of this interface are provided on various concrete-selection boss classes, like `kGalleyTextSuiteBoss` and `kNoteTextSuiteBoss`, which are hidden from client code through the facade of the abstract selection. To obtain `INoteSuite`, client code should query the selection manager (`ISelectionManager`) for the interface, as shown below:

```
// Many functions are passed in an IActiveContext as a parameter.
// It should be used whenever possible.
InterfacePtr<IActiveContext> activeContext (GetExecutionContextSession() -
>GetActiveContext(), UseDefaultIID());
if (!activeContext)
  return;
ISelectionManager *selectionManager = activeContext->GetContextSelection();
InterfacePtr<INoteSuite> noteSuite (selectionManager, UseDefaultIID());
```

Generally speaking, the `INoteSuite` interface is active when the text-insertion point is active in the layout, story, galley, or Notes palette editing area. The suite interfaces typically use this pattern of checking for a service or capability and, if the abstract selection supports this capability, the method can be called. For example, the `INoteSuite` interface exposes a method that allows you to delete a selected note. To use this method, do the following:

```
bool16 canDeleteNote = iNoteSuite->CanDeleteNote(ac->GetContextView(), docView);
if (canDeleteNote )
{
    iNoteSuite->DeleteNote(ac->GetContextView(), docView);
}
```

See [Table 171](#) for a list of INoteSuite methods.

TABLE 171 INoteSuite Can[DoSomething] – [DoSomething] look-up table

CanDoSomething method	DoSomething method
CanAddNote	DoAddNote
CanConvertToNote	DoConvertToNote
CanOpenNote	DoOpenNote
CanDeleteNote	DoDeleteNote
CanConvertToText	DoConvertToText
CanScrollToNote	DoScrollToNote
CanNavigateNote	DoNavigateNote
CanRemoveAllNotes	DoRemoveAllNotes
CanRemoveStoryNotes	DoRemoveStoryNotes
CanSplitNote	DoSplitNote
CanShowHideNote	DoShowHideNote
CanExpandAllNotes	DoExpandAllNotes
CanCollapseAllNotes	DoCollapseAllNotes

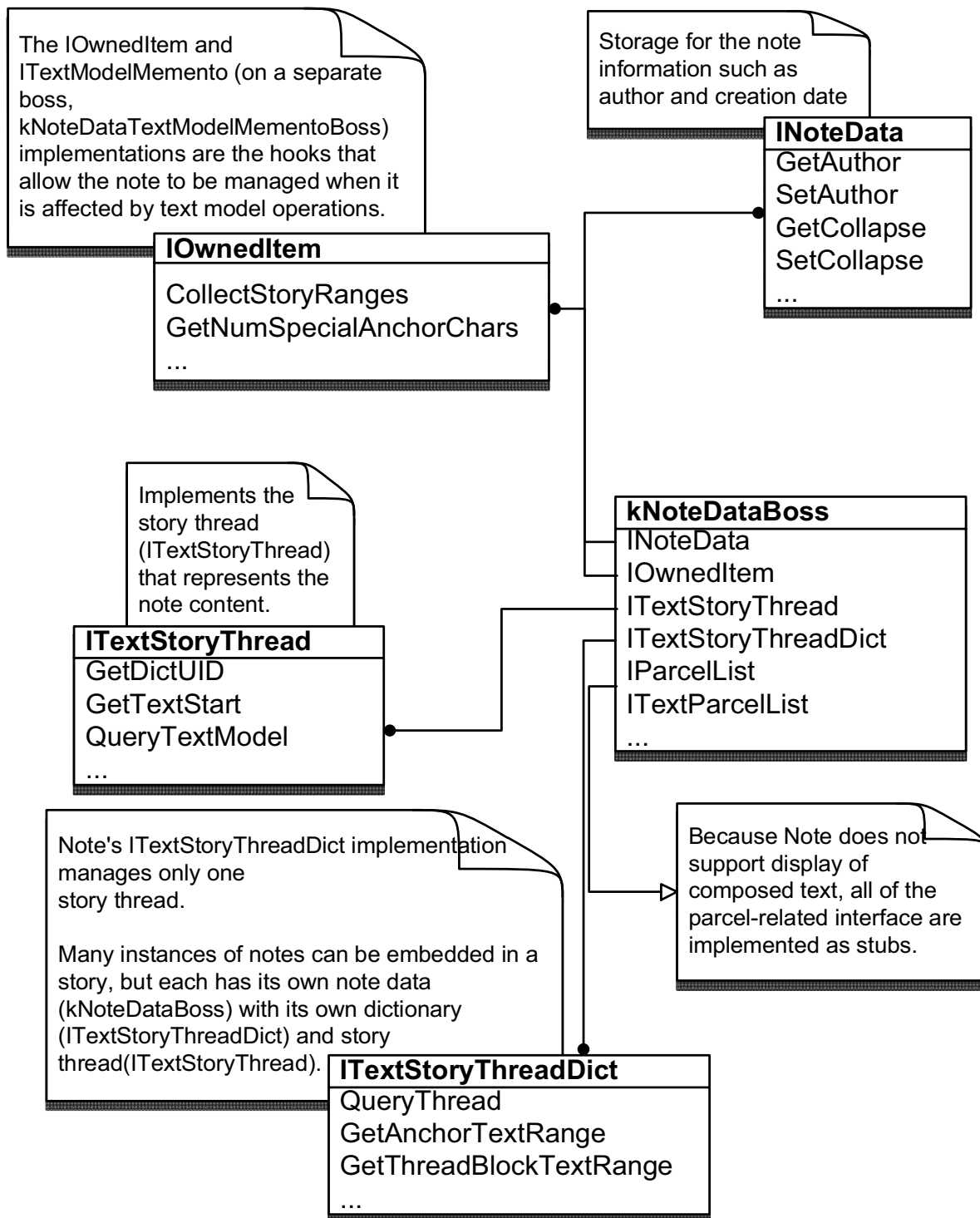
kNoteDataBoss

kNoteDataBoss is anchored as an owned item in the text story. The following code snippet shows one way to get the kNoteDataBoss from the story:

```
// Find notes in current storyRef.
InterfacePtr<ITextModel> textModel(storyRef, UseDefaultIID());
InterfacePtr<IItemStrand> itemStrand((IItemStrand*)textModel
  ->QueryStrand(kOwnedItemStrandBoss, IID_IITEMSTRAND));
int32 mainStoryLength =
textModel->GetPrimaryStoryThreadSpan() - 1;
// Collect owned item from the story.
Text::CollectOwnedItems(textModel, 0, mainStoryLength, &ownedItemList);
if (ownedItemList.Length() > 0)
{
  // Remove non-note items.
  for (i = ownedItemList.Length()-1; i>=0; i--)
  {
    if (!Utils<INoteDataUtils>()->IsNoteOwnedItem(ownedItemList[i].fClassID))
      ownedItemList.Remove(i);
  }
}
```

See [Figure 299](#) for the key interfaces of kNoteDataBoss.

FIGURE 299 *kNoteDataBoss* and its key interfaces



Useful commands and associated notification protocols

This section summarizes some of the most common commands related to notes, the critical data interfaces that users of the commands must supply, and the notification protocols associated with the commands so an observer who wants to observe certain commands can know what protocols to listen to.

kCollapseStateCmdBoss

Description

Sets the `INoteData` collapsed state according to the command's `IBoolData`. Used to expand (open) or collapse (close) a note.

Item list

The UID of the text story that contains the note to be expanded or collapsed.

Data interface

- *IBoolData* — Whether the note should be collapsed (true for collapsed, false for expanded).
- *IIntData* — The `TextIndex` at which the note of interest is anchored in the text story.

Notification

- Notify `kTextStoryBoss` with the `IID_INOTEDATA` protocol.
- Notify `kDocBoss` with the `IID_COLLAPSESTATE_DOCUMENT` protocol.

kCreateNoteCmdBoss

Description

Creates a new note in a text story at the location specified by a text index.

Item list

The UID of the text story that contains the note to be created.

Data interface

- *IIntData* — The `TextIndex` where the new note is to be created. A note is *not* allowed in another note, so make sure the index is not in an existing note's story range.
- *ICreateNoteCmdData* — This data interface is optional. You can set note class using `SetNoteClass` to `kNoteDataBoss`. Set the note content's range using `SetNoteContentRange(createAt, createAt)`, if the note is to be initialized to an empty note; `createAt` is the `TextIndex` where the new note anchor will be. You also should use the `Set` method to set the author and collapsed state. You do not need to set the marker range, because it is for an unsupported feature.

Notification

- Notify `kTextStoryBoss` with the `IID_INOTEDATA` protocol.
- Notify `kDocBoss` with the `IID_INOTEDATA` protocol.

kConvertToNoteCmdBoss**Description**

Converts a range of text into a note.

Item list

The UID of the text story that contains the text to be converted.

data interface

Data should be set up as for `kCreateNoteCmdBoss`:

- *IIntData* — The start text index of the text range to be converted.
- *ICreateNoteCmdData* — The note's content range should be set from the start index to the end index of the text to be converted, using the `SetNoteContentRange` method.

Notification

- Notify `kTextStoryBoss` with the `IID_INOTEDATA` protocol. When the notification is broadcast, the command boss's `IIntData` is set to the note's content-range start index.
- Notify `kDocBoss` with the `IID_INOTEDATA` protocol.

kConvertNoteToTextCmdBoss**Description**

Converts a whole note or part of the note content into regular text. When the note content to be converted is between another note text in the same note, the portion of the note that is not converted is split into two notes, one on each side of the converted text.

Item list

The command needs two items: the UID of the story that contains the note to be converted, and the UID of the `kNoteDataBoss` of the note to be converted. When the text focus is in the note-content area, `ITextModel::QueryStoryThread` can be used to find out the note's story thread, from which you can get to the corresponding `kNoteDataBoss`. When the text focus is on the anchor, use `INoteUtils::QueryNoteData` to get to the `INoteData`, from which you can reach the `kNoteDataBoss`.

data interface

- *IIntData with interface ID IID_ISTARTFOCUSINTDATA* — The start-text index of the range of note content to be converted to text. This range should be in the note's story thread. If the range is in the note's anchor range, you should find out the text range that covers the note content.
- *IIntData with interface ID IID_IENDFOCUSINTDATA* — The end-text index of the range of note content to be converted to text. This range should be in the note's story thread. If the range is in the note's anchor range, you should find out the text range that covers the real note content.
- *IBoolData* — Was used to restore text focus in an undo operation. With the introduction of automatic undo in InCopy CS4, this has no effect.
- *IConvertNoteToTextCmdData* — Required to suspend galley drawing while converting to text. Pass in the UIDRef of the *IControlView** returned by *INoteSuiteUtils::GetDocControlView*.

Notification

Generally, the broadcast is based on how the note is converted.

If the entire note is converted:

- Notify the *kDocBoss* with the *kNoteRemovedMsg* message along with the *IID_ICONVERTNOTETOTEXTCMD* protocol.

If the note is spit into two notes after the conversion:

- Notify the *kDocBoss* with the *kConvertNoteToTextMsg* message along with the *IID_ICONVERTNOTETOTEXTCMD* protocol.
- Notify the *kTextStoryBoss* with the *kConvertNoteToTextMsg* message along with the *IID_ICONVERTNOTETOTEXTCMD* protocol.

If the converted text is to the left or right of the original note:

- Notify the *kDocBoss* with the *kMoveNoteToTextMsg* message along with the *IID_ICONVERTNOTETOTEXTCMD* protocol.
- Notify the *kTextStoryBoss* with the *kMoveNoteToTextMsg* message along with the *IID_ICONVERTNOTETOTEXTCMD* protocol.

kSplitNoteCmdBoss

Description

Splits a note into two notes at the text-index location specified by the data interface.

Item list

The command needs two items: the UID of the story that contains the note to be split, and the UID of the *kNoteDataBoss* of the note to be split. This is similar to the *kConvertNoteToTextCmdBoss*. For more details on how to get to the *kNoteDataBoss* from a text location, see [“kNoteDataBoss” on page 781](#).

Data interface

- *IIntData* with interface ID `IID_ISTARTFOCUSINTDATA` —The text index of the location where you want to split the note. The index should be in the note's story thread.
- *IConvertNoteToTextCmdData* — Required to suspend galley drawing while converting to text. Pass in the `UIDRef` of the `IControlView*` returned by `INoteSuiteUtils::GetDocControlView`.

Notification

- Notify the `kTextStoryBoss` with the `kSplitNoteMsg` message along with the `IID_ISPLITNOTECMD` protocol.
- Notify the `kDocBoss` with the `kSplitNoteMsg` message along with the `IID_ISPLITNOTECMD` protocol.

kNotePrefCmdBoss

Description

Modifies the notes preference as seen in the application's Notes Preferences panel.

Item list

The item needed is the application's workspace UID.

Data interface

INotePrefCmdData — Use its `Set` method to set the preference.

Notification

Notify the `kWorkspaceBoss` with the `IID_INOTEPREFERENCES` protocol.

Working with notes

Adding a note at the current insertion-point position

When proper context is available, use `INoteSuite::DoAddNote` to add a new note. For an example, see the `SnperformNoteFunction` snippet.

When the `INoteSuite` interface is not available, first process a `kSetHideNoteStateCmdBoss` command, to make sure the note's visibility is on. Next, use `kCreateNoteCmdBoss` to create the note. A note is not allowed inside another note, but a note is allowed in deleted text (you can use `ITrackChangeUtils::DeletedTextToPrimaryIndex` to check if it is in deleted text), so you should make sure the text index for the note anchor is in either the primary story thread span or deleted text but not in an existing note's story thread range.

Inserting text into a note

Use `ITextModelCmds::InsertCmd` to insert text into note. This is just like a regular text insertion operation. For an example, see the `SnperformNoteFunction` snippet.

Converting text to a new note

When proper context is available, use `INoteSuite::DoConvertToNote` to convert selected text to a note. For an example, see the `SnperformNoteFunction` snippet.

When the `INoteSuite` interface is not available, check whether the text for conversion contains any XML tags. Normally, if there is a tag in the text range, you should abort the operation. Use `INoteSuiteUtils::CheckRemoveXML` to check for XML tags. If a tag is found in the selected text, this method causes an alert to pop up, asking whether the user wants to remove the XML tag. Proceed with the conversion only when the function returns a true value; then use the `kSetHideNoteStateCmdBoss` command to make sure the note's visibility is turned on. Use `kConvertToNoteCmdBoss` to convert the text.

Converting note content to text

When proper context is available, use `INoteSuite::DoConvertToText` to convert selected note content to text. For an example, see the `SnperformNoteFunction` snippet.

When the `INoteSuite` interface is not available, use `kConvertNoteToTextCmdBoss` to convert note content to regular text. If text focus is in the note content area and no text is selected, or if the note anchor is selected, the whole note is converted. If only part of the note content is selected, only that portion is converted to regular text.

Pay special attention to the text range to be converted. Consider the sample story “<Convert Me> Please,” where “<Convert Me>” is a note and “<” and “>” are the bookends. If the whole note is selected, the current selection range is `[0, 1]`, because the selection is on the anchor character. If the selection is in the note content area—for example, the whole ‘Convert Me’—the selection range is `[9, 19]`, because the selection is in the note's story thread, not in the primary story thread. The command's focus-start and focus-end data (`IIntData` with the interface IDs `IID_ISTARTFOCUSINTDATA` and `IID_IENDFOCUSINTDATA`) need to be the indices in the note's story thread. So, if the selection is the note anchor (where the selection range is `[0,1]`), find out where that note's story thread is, and pass in the corresponding text index to the data interface. Use `INoteUIUtils::TextFocusInNote` to check whether the focus is in the note's content area. Also, the following snippet shows how to find the whole note's range; after `indexStart` and `indexEnd` are found, they can be passed into the command's data interface:

```

//Note anchor is selected.
InterfacePtr<INoteData> noteData(Utils<INoteUtils>()->QueryNoteData(textModel,
indexStart));
if (!noteDataOnLeft)
    return; // no note

noteDataRef = ::GetUIDRef(noteDataOnLeft);
if(textModel->FindStoryThread(noteDataRef.GetUID(), 0, &threadStart,
&threadLength))
{
    // Range is a whole note.
    indexStart = threadStart;
    indexEnd = threadStart+threadLength-1;//no carriage return
}

```

The item list in this command needs both the UID of the `kTextStoryBoss` that contains the note and the `kNoteDataBoss` of the note.

Navigating among notes

When proper context is available, use `INoteSuite::DoNavigateNote` to go to the next or previous note. For an example, see the `SnperformNoteFunction` snippet.

Navigating the notes without `INoteSuite` is very difficult, because there are so many factors to consider. You must collect all the notes by yourself, and you must consider the situation in which the insertion point is in a different context (e.g., table or deleted text), and there is no command to do it. The closest thing is the `INoteSuiteUtils::NavigateNote`, which also involves the selection subsystem. Therefore, we highly recommend you do the navigation through the `INoteSuite` interface. In general, if you have a text story in the document, with a visible note anchored somewhere in the story, the `INoteSuite::CanNavigateNote` returns true, and you can navigate the notes with much greater ease.

Splitting a note

When proper context is available, use `INoteSuite::DoSplitNote` to split a note. For an example, see the `SnperformNoteFunction` snippet.

When the `INoteSuite` interface is not available, use `kSplitNoteCmdBoss` to split the note at the position indicated by the `text-index` argument. As with `kConvertNoteToTextCmdBoss`, you must make sure the text index where you want to split is inside the note's content area; i.e., the text index needs to be in the note's story-thread range. By default, notes are not splittable in layout view.

Expanding and collapsing notes

When proper context is available, use `INoteSuite::DoOpenNote` to expand or collapse one note, use `INoteSuite::DoExpandAllNotes` to expand all notes in the document, and use `INoteSuite::DoCollapseAllNotes` to collapse all notes in the document.

If the `INoteSuite` interface is not available, use `kCollapseStateCmdBoss`, supplying a valid `TextIndex` that points to a note anchor. Given a text-index location, use `INoteUIUtils::TextFocusInNote` to check whether that location is in the note contents area. If it is not, also check whether the location is on the note anchor. Both situations should be allowed to expand/collapse a note. After the command is processed, a text selection may need to be set to have a text focus in a desired location. `INoteData` in the `kNoteDataBoss` stores the current collapsed state data on the note. Normally, you toggle between the two states when processing the `kCollapseStateCmdBoss`.

Normally, if there are notes in the story and they are not already all expanded or all collapsed, `INoteSuite::CanCollapseAllNotes` or `INoteSuite::CanExpandAllNotes` returns true, so you should be able to use these suite methods when you need to expand or collapse all notes.

By default, layout view does not support the expand note and collapse note features.

Selecting a note

Whenever possible, use `INoteSuite::DoNavigateNote`, as shown in the SDK snippet `SnppPerformNoteFunction::NavigateNote`. When you do not have a proper selection context to work with, however, you can use the following low level-method.

Assuming you know the UID of the note's `kNoteDataBoss` and the UID of the `kTextStoryBoss` that contains the note, do the following to select that note in galley view:

```
// Assume storyRef is the story and noteDataRef is the note.
InterfacePtr<ITextModel> textModel(storyRef, UseDefaultIID());
InterfacePtr<IItemStrand> itemStrand(
    (IItemStrand*)textModel->QueryStrand(kOwnedItemStrandBoss, IID_IITEMSTRAND));
InterfacePtr<IOwnedItem> ownedItem(noteDataRef, UseDefaultIID());
TextIndex noteDataPos = itemStrand->GetOwnedItemIndex(ownedItem);
ASSERT(noteDataPos != kInvalidTextIndex);
InterfacePtr<ISelectionManager> viewSelMgr (docView, UseDefaultIID());
Utils<ISelectUtils>()->GoToTextWithMarker( storyRef, noteDataPos, 1);
```

In layout view, instead of using `ISelectUtils::GoToTextWithMarker`, use the following to select the note anchor:

```
// docView is the document window's IControlView*
Utils<ISelectUtils>()->ProcessSelectText( ::GetUIDRef(textModel),
    RangeData(noteDataPos, RangeData::kLeanForward),
    Selection::kScrollIntoView, nil, viewSelMgr, docView);
```

Getting `kNoteDataBoss`, given a text index whose position is anchored to note

Use `INoteUtils::QueryNoteData` to get to the `kNoteDataBoss`. For an example, see [“Converting note content to text” on page 787](#).

Deleting notes

When proper context is available, use `INoteSuite::DoDeleteNote` to delete a note, use `INoteSuite::DoRemoveStoryNotes` to delete all notes from a story, and use `INoteSuite::DoRemoveAllNotes` to delete all notes from a document.

When the `INoteSuite` interface is not available, delete the note by simply removing the note-anchor character, which subsequently asks the note owned item to handle the rest of the data removal:

```
// Assume textModelCmds is the ITextModelCmds from the kTextStoryBoss.
// Assume noteAnchorPos is the note anchor position.
InterfacePtr<ICommand> typeCmd(textModelCmds->
    TypeTextCmd(noteAnchorPos, noteAnchorPos + 1, WideString::kNil_shared_ptr));
PMString newName = "Delete Note";
typeCmd->SetName(newName);
CmdUtils::ProcessCommand(typeCmd);
```

To remove all stories when the `INoteSuite` interface is not available, use `INoteUtils::ClearAllNotes`.

Changing notes-palette content to reflect particular note data

Use `INotePaletteUtils>()->SetNoteToPalette` to bring up the note data in the Notes palette.

Checking note spelling

`INotePref::SetSpellCheckContent` lets you turn on spell checking in the note content, but you cannot change the behavior of how the note interacts with the text's spell-checking engine.

Observing a note that is being modified

Many note commands notify with the `IID_INOTEDATA` protocol along with its command ID, so attach an observer and listen to that protocol on an appropriate subject. The following code attaches an observer for `IID_INOTEDATA` broadcast to a document subject:

```
InterfacePtr<IDocument> document(Utils<ILayoutUIUtils>()->GetFrontDocument(),
    IID_IDOCUMENT);
InterfacePtr<ISubject> docSubject(document, IID_ISUBJECT);
if (docSubject && !docSubject->IsAttached(this, IID_INOTEDATA))
    docSubject->AttachObserver(this, IID_INOTEDATA);
```

Using notes in InDesign

InCopy Workflow plug-ins install the InCopy Notes and Track Changes features in InDesign for use in the InCopyBridge workflow. These features use InCopyBridge user names to identify the author of a note.

When you add editorial notes to a managed story in InDesign, these notes become available to others in the workflow.

InCopy: Track Changes

This chapter describes the change-tracking features of InDesign and InCopy for software developers.

The chapter has the following objectives:

- Explain how change tracking fits into the application architecture.
- Show the relationship between a story and the tracked changes it contains.
- Describe important APIs for tracking changes.
- List common commands and the notification protocols associated with them.

For use cases, see [“Working with Track Changes” on page 821](#).

Concepts

User interface for Track Changes feature

Editors and writers need the ability to selectively track, show, hide, accept, and reject changes as a document moves through the writing and editing process. The Track Changes features of InDesign and InCopy address these needs.

Changes are tracked in both InDesign and InCopy, and the API is available in both applications; however, the user interface is available only in InCopy. In galley view or story view, the user can choose to see changes; tracked changes are not visible in layout view.

[Figure 300](#) shows the Track Changes toolbar, which provides most of the relevant user interface. The same functions can be found in the Track Changes menu, shown in [Figure 301](#).

FIGURE 300 Track Changes toolbar

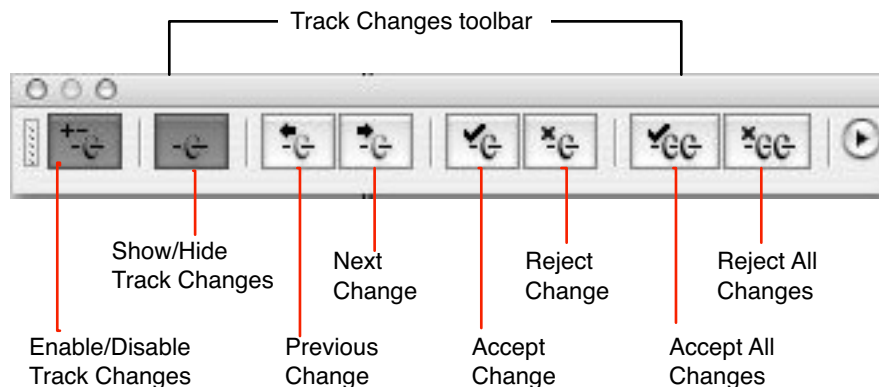
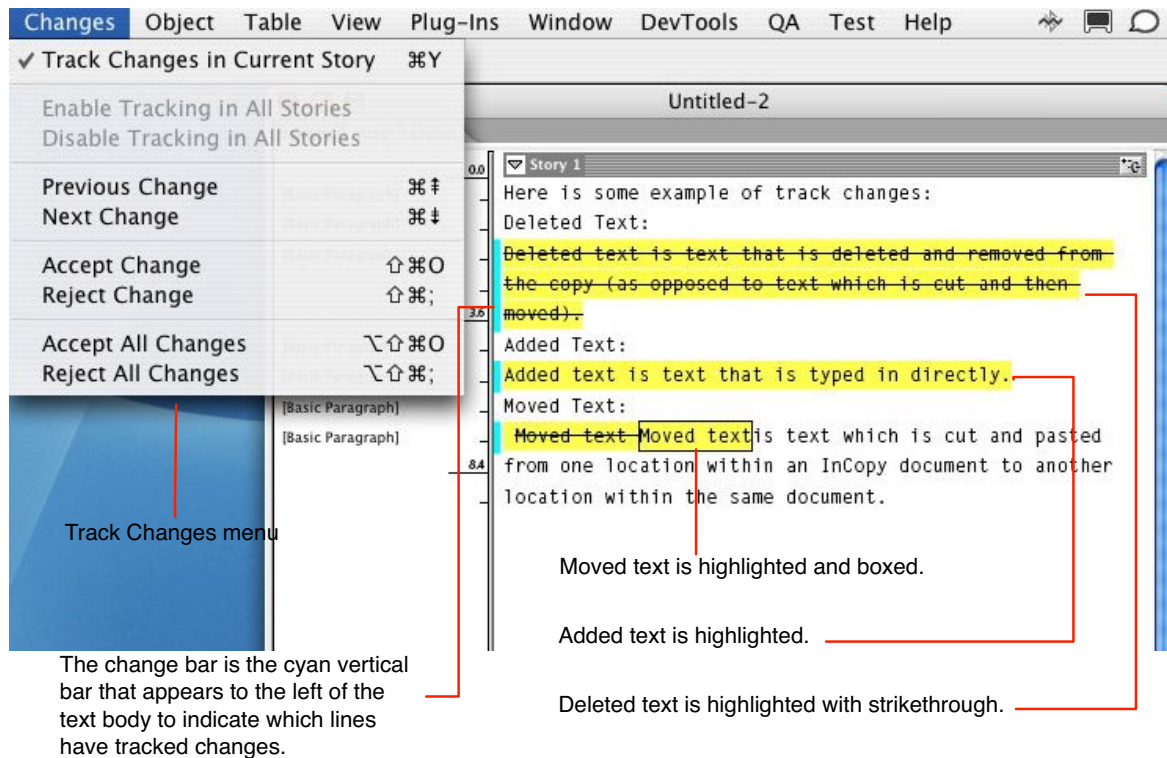
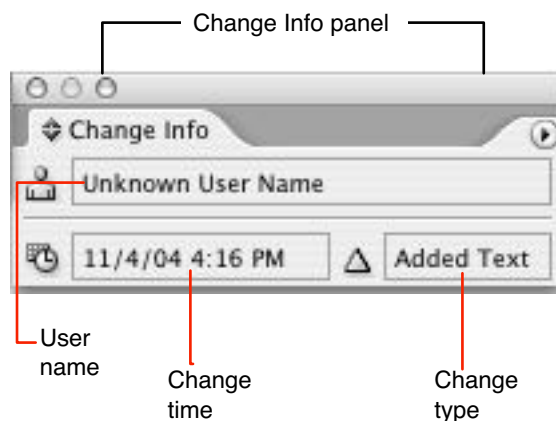


FIGURE 301 Track Changes user interface



To turn Track Changes on or off, choose Changes > Track Changes. When Track Changes is turned on, changes to text are tracked. When changes are shown, tracked changes in text are highlighted with the color assigned to the user who made the change. An optional change bar may appear to the left of the body of the text, to indicate which lines contain tracked changes. The Change Info panel displays information about the change at the insertion point, as shown in Figure 302. See InCopy Help for more information about the user interface.

FIGURE 302 Change Info panel

There are three types of tracked changes, each indicated in a manner chosen in the Track Changes Preferences panel:

- *Added text* — Text typed in directly; text pasted from within the same InCopy document, from which the text was copied (not cut); and text pasted from another document.
- *Deleted text* — Text that is deleted or cut. Deleted text appears in its original position when tracked changes are shown.
- *Moved text* — Text pasted from another location in the same InCopy document, from which the text was cut (not copied). Moved text is shown highlighted and boxed, to differentiate it from added text.

Showing and hiding changes

In galley view or story view, choose View > Show Changes or View > Hide Changes to show or hide changes. For more information, see InCopy Help.

Navigating tracked changes

If the story contains a record of tracked changes, the user can navigate sequentially through tracked changes. Navigating to a change selects the change.

- To navigate to the change following the insertion point, choose Changes > Next Change.
- To navigate to the change before the insertion point, choose Changes > Previous Change.

Accepting and rejecting tracked changes

The user can accept and reject changes—added, deleted, or moved text—made by any user. For more information, see InCopy Help.

Partially accepting or rejecting tracked changes often results in replacing one tracked change with multiple tracked changes, and vice versa. When an operation results in multiple tracked changes in contiguous text, any adjacent tracked changes are concatenated into one contiguous

tracked change. Conversely, accepting or rejecting part of a tracked change may result in multiple, discontinuous tracked changes with non-tracked (normal) text between them.

Copy, cut, and paste behavior

When copying, cutting, or pasting text that includes tracked changes, it is the text itself that is copied, cut, or pasted—not the tracked change that was applied to the text in its previous location. In other words, when you copy something out of a tracked change, you copy the text content, not the type of tracked change. Copying or cutting text from a tracked deletion does not affect the tracked deletion; pasting this text is treated the same way as adding new text.

Track Changes preferences

The Track Changes panel in the Preferences dialog box contains user settings for tracking changes, like which types of changes to show and the color of the highlight that indicates a change.

Data model for Track Changes

Redline strand

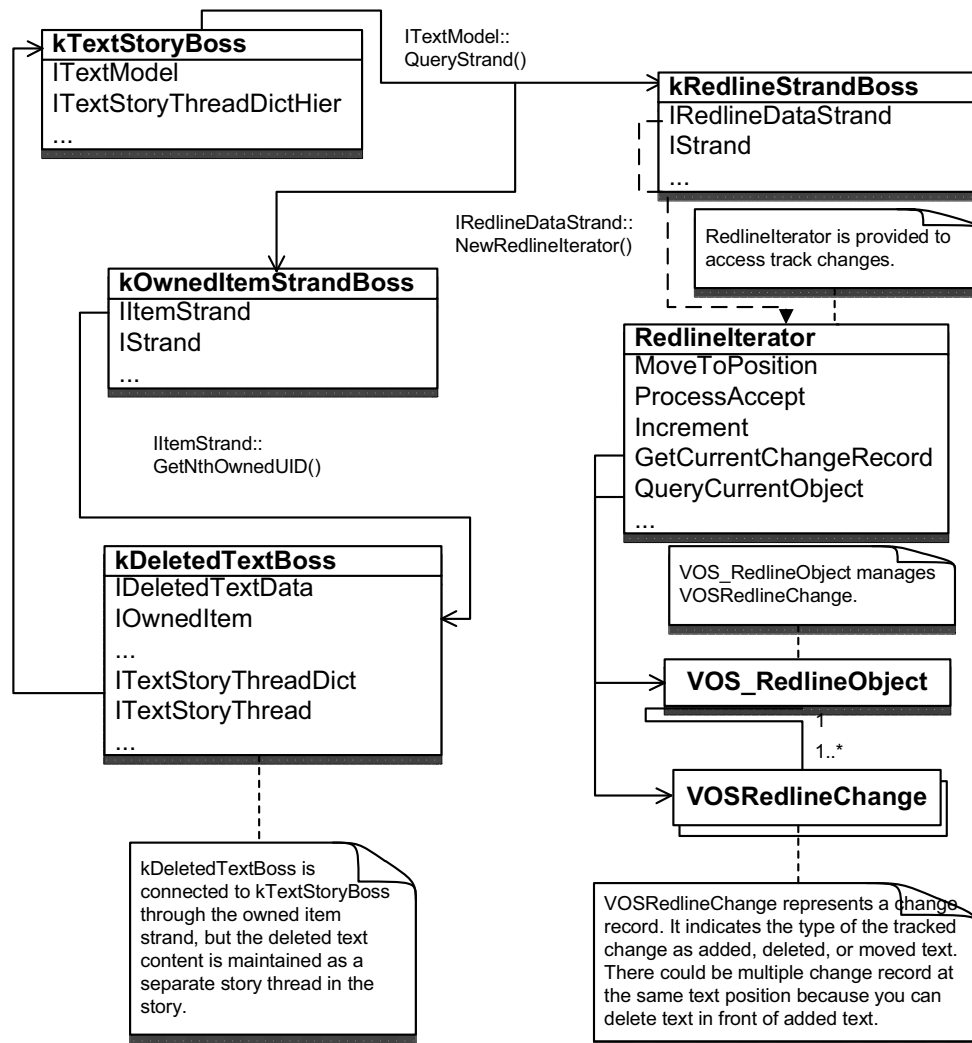
Tracked changes are recorded in a story (`kTextStoryBoss`) on the redline strand (`kRedlineStrandBoss`). They are accessed through an iterator, `RedlineIterator`.

[Figure 303](#) illustrates the relationship between a story and its tracked changes. Track Changes implements `kRedlineNewStoryResponderBoss`. When a new story is created—for example, using `kNewStoryCmdBoss`—the Track Changes plug-in is notified to create and initialize a new text strand, `kRedlineStrandBoss`, which is responsible for maintaining the Track Changes information. During the initialization of the `kRedlineStrandBoss`, the story's Track Changes state (`ITrackChangeStorySettings` from `kTextStoryBoss`) is set to the state from the session (`ITrackChangeAppSettings`) using the `kSetRedlineTrackingCmdBoss`.

During a normal text operation performed by a text command—like Insert or Delete—each strand (including `kRedlineStrandBoss`) on the text story gets a chance to react to the operation. This results in the `IRedlineStrand` methods—like Insert or Cut—being called to manage the corresponding change record before the text is inserted into or cut from the text model.

`kRedlineStrandBoss` uses a virtual object store (VOS) to store and manage the Track Changes records. Each change record is represented by the `VOSRedlineChange` class. In the redline strand, one or more `VOS_RedlineObject` objects manage the `VOSRedlineChange`. We strongly discourage direct access to the VOS object; instead, the `IRedlineDataStrand` interface in `kRedlineStrandBoss` provides `RedlineIterator` to access the strand and let you examine and manipulate the change record. You should view `RedlineIterator` as the primary access to tracked changes.

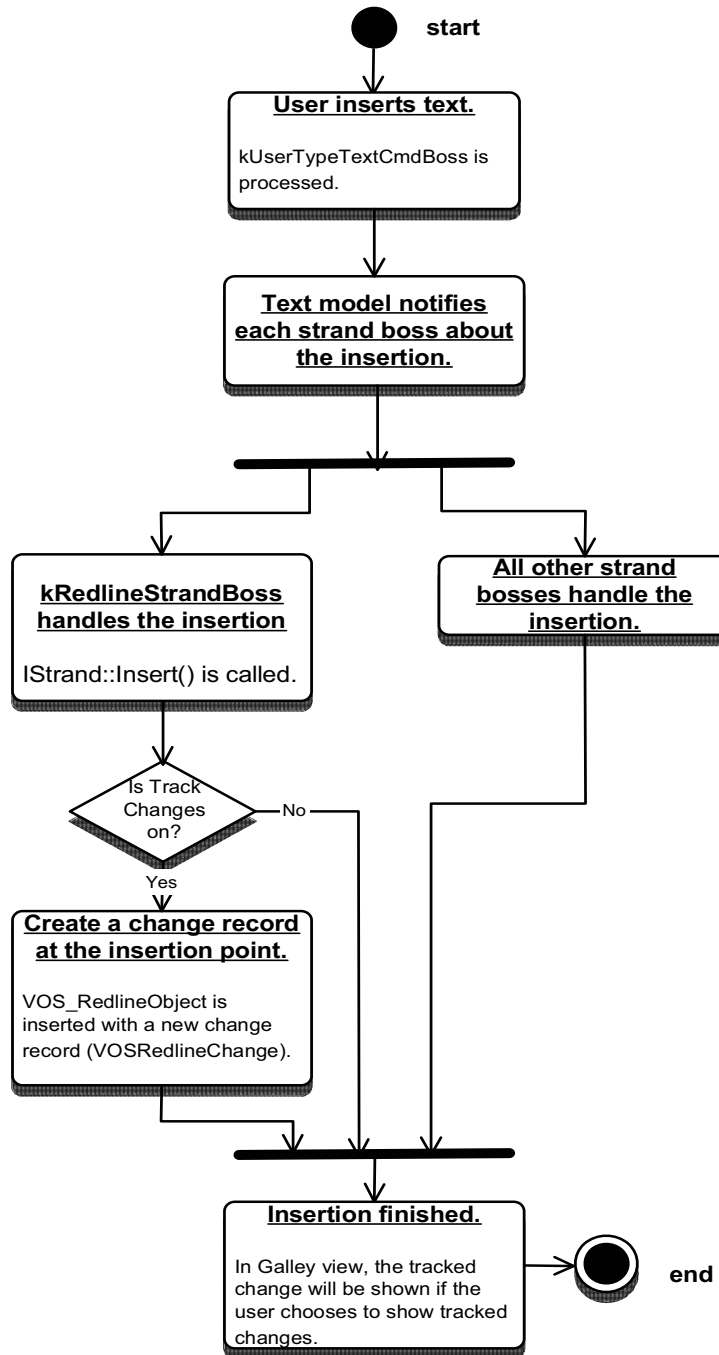
FIGURE 303 Relationship between a story and the tracked changes it contains



Tracking text insertion and deletion

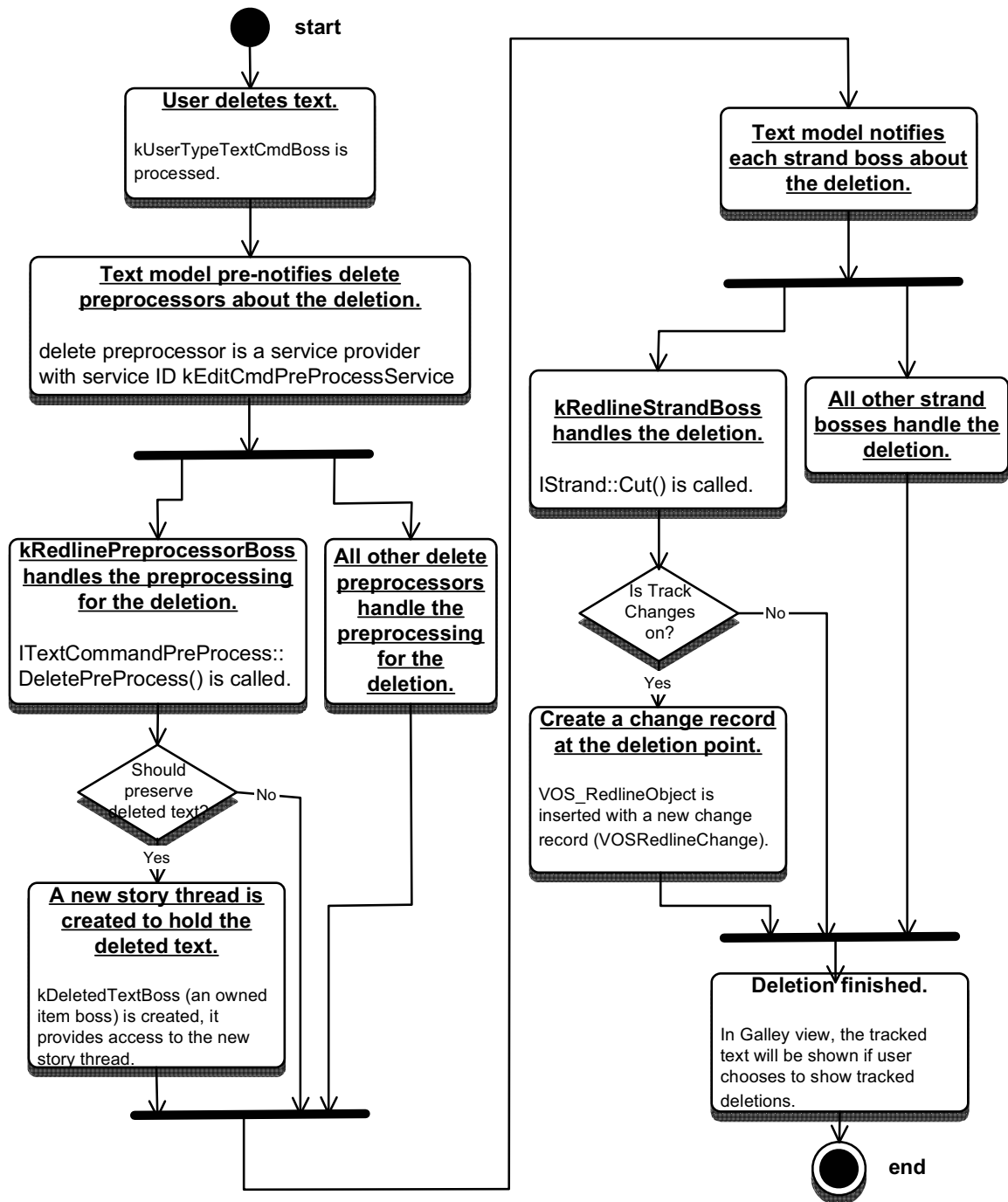
When text is inserted, `IStrand::Insert` from `kRedlineStrandBoss` places a change record (`VOSRedlineChange`) on a VOS redline object (`VOS_RedlineObject`); length is the number of characters inserted. When a new story is created, a carriage-return character is inserted at the end of the story. This means `IStrand::Insert` from `kRedlineStrandBoss` is called during the execution of `kNewStoryCmdBoss`. Figure 304 shows the activities in `kRedlineStrandBoss` when text is inserted into a story.

FIGURE 304 *kRedlineStrandBoss* Activity on text insertion



When text is deleted, a change record (VOSRedlineChange) is placed on a VOS redline object (VOS_RedlineObject), on the character following the deleted text. Also, the text is copied to a story thread, so the deleted text can be retrieved and displayed in story view or galley view. To preserve the deleted text before it is deleted, Track Changes implements a kRedlinePreprocessorBoss service provider, which enables Track Changes to participate in a pre-processing text event, like deletion, so it can preserve the soon-to-be-deleted text. During deletion, if Track Changes is turned on, and (private) IRedlineUtils>()->ShouldStoreDelete returns true, RedlinePreProcessor::StoreDeletedText gets called. The deleted text is represented by an owned item accessed through the kOwnedItemStrandBoss on the text story, with an owned-item boss (kDeletedTextBoss) anchored in the deleted position. A new story thread is created to hold the deleted text content, and the owned item's class ID is set to the kDeletedTextBoss. [Figure 305](#) shows the activities in kRedlineStrandBoss when text is deleted from a story.

FIGURE 305 *kRedlineStrandBoss* Activity on text deletion

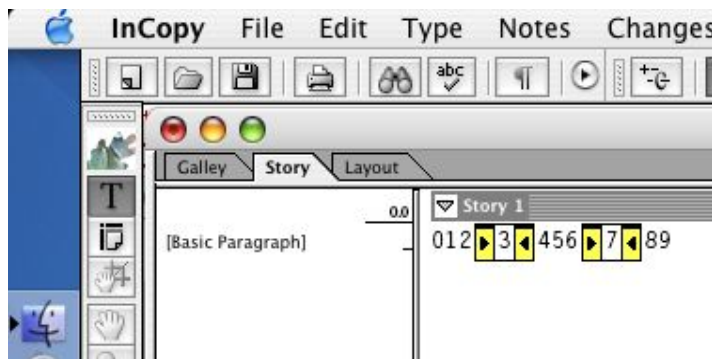


In some situations, there can be multiple `VOSRedlineChanges` for one text position. The most likely scenario is one in which the character following the deleted text is an insertion change; then the insertion change is nested. In this case, it is possible to iterate through changes and have the current text position be the same, even though the iterator was incremented or decremented (through `RedlineIterator::Increment` or `RedlineIterator::Decrement`). Calling the accessor methods returns the appropriate change-record information given the state of an internal flag, or the `useUI` flag if passed when the iterator was constructed with `NewRedlineIterator`. Accepting a nested insertion does not affect the deletion; however, rejecting a nested insertion rejects the deletion.

Example: Track Changes in action

Consider the example of the story “0123456789,” with “3” and “7” converted to notes, as shown in the InCopy story view in [Figure 306](#). This story, with embedded owned items—the notes—demonstrates what happens in a text story when deletion and insertion are performed while Track Changes is turned on. Below the story view in [Figure 306](#) is a table showing the fundamental text model data, with which you can understand the basics of change tracking.

FIGURE 306 Track Changes action 1: before Track Changes is turned on



Text model representation

Text Index	kTextDataStrandBoss ITextStrand	kStoryThreadStrandBoss IStoryThreadStrand	kOwnedItemStrandBoss IItemStrand	kRedlineStrandBoss IRedlineDataStrand
0	0	Primary Story thread, story thread [0]	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
1	1		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
2	2		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
3	0xfeff		UID of a kNoteDataBoss ¹	No Change Record
4	4		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
5	5		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
6	6		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
7	0xfeff		UID of a kNoteDataBoss ²	No Change Record
8	8		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
9	9		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
10	kTextChar_CR	Story thread [1]	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
11	3		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
12	kTextChar_CR	Story thread [2] ²	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
13	7		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
14	kTextChar_CR		kInvalidUID	No Change Record

¹ Story thread [1] represents the note text at index 3; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 3.

² Story thread [2] represents the note text at index 7; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 7.

NOTE: The complete text data model is more complex than that depicted in this table. For more information on the text model, see the “Text Fundamentals” chapter.

In the table, the columns are interpreted as follows:

- The first column represents the text index in the text model.
- The second column represents the text data stored in the kTextDataStrandBoss object. The visual story representation you see in the InDesign or InCopy document window does not necessarily represent the sequence in which the data is stored in the text model. For example, although the note with content “3” is located between characters “2” and “4,” the real note-text content is stored in a different story thread in text index 11. Between characters “2” and “4,” the text data is inserted with a note anchor.

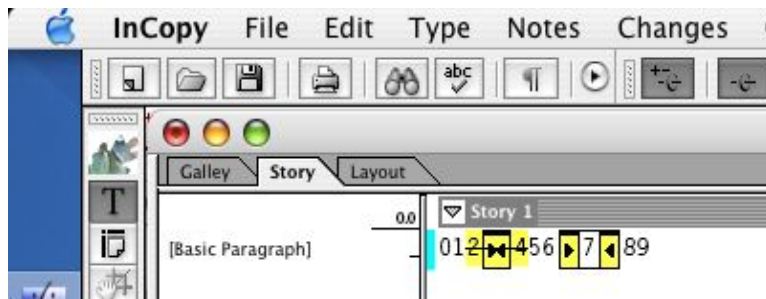
- The third column from the left shows the text-story threads. The InDesign text engine uses an owned item strand (kOwnedItemStrandBoss) to figure out where to find the corresponding text when the engine comes to compose the text.
- The fourth column shows the owned-item strand data.
- The fifth column shows tracked-change data; the information is obtained from RedlineIterator.

Looking at the text model representation in [Figure 306](#), see in the kTextDataStrandBoss that each note is anchored at the note's visual location (text index 3 and text index 7) with a special anchor character, 0xfeff. At the same position, the UID of the note's kNoteDataBoss is stored through the IItemStrand interface on the kOwnedItemStrandBoss. The kNoteDataBoss also aggregates the interfaces to access the story threads that store the note contents. To find the text content of a note, you can go through the kOwnedItemStrandBoss to find its corresponding story thread. Because the story was entered with Track Changes off, the kRedlineStrandBoss does not contain any tracked-change information at this point.

Using the SnippetRunner SnpInspectTextModel snippet, you can inspect the text model while Track Changes is turned on. Some methods in SnpInspectTextModel were used to produce the results you see in [Figure 306](#). The SnpInspectTextModel::InspectTrackChange method uses the RedlineIterator to examine the change record under each text index in the story. The SnpInspectTextModel::InspectStoryThreads and SnpInspectTextModel::CountStoryOwnedItems methods were used to examine the story threads, owned item, and text data.

Next, turn on Track Changes, select the text “234,” and delete the selected text. The result is shown in [Figure 307](#).

FIGURE 307 Track Changes action 2: delete one block of text



Text model representation

Text Index	kTextDataStrandBoss ITextStrand	kStoryThreadStrandBoss IStoryThreadStrand	kOwnedItemStrandBoss IItemStrand	kRedlineStrandBoss IRedlineDataStrand
0	0	Primary Story thread, story thread [0]	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
1	1		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
2	5		UID of a kDeletedTextBoss ¹	kDelete
3	6		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
4	0xfeff		UID of a kNoteDataBoss ³	No Change Record
5	8		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
6	9		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
7	kTextChar_CR		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
8	2	Story thread [1] ¹	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
9	0xfeff		UID of a kNoteDataBoss ²	No Change Record
10	4		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
11	kTextChar_CR	Story thread [2] ²	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
12	3		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
13	kTextChar_CR	Story thread [3] ³	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
14	7		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
15	kTextChar_CR		kInvalidUID	No Change Record

¹ Story thread [1] represents the deleted text at text index 2; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 2. The deleted text includes a note at index 9, which is represented by another owned item.

² Story thread [2] represents the note text in the deleted text in story thread [1]; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 9.

³ Story thread [3] represents the note text at index 4; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 4.

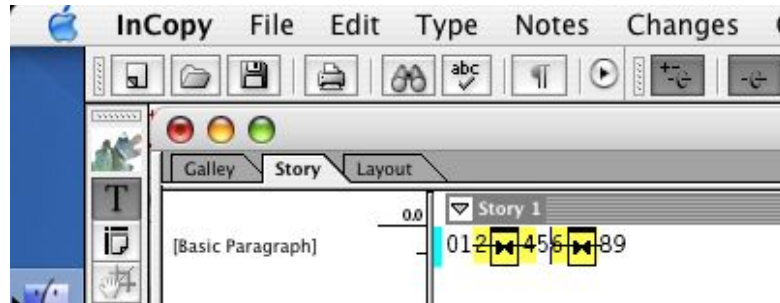
Unlike the note—which uses a kTextChar_ZeroSpaceNoBreak character to anchor the note—Track Changes does not insert anchor characters for deleted text in text position 2 in the kTextDataStrandBoss; that position is occupied by the character “5” after the deletion. The text model uses kRedlineStrandBoss to maintain tracked-change information. In text index 2 of the kRedlineStrandBoss, there is a change record with the type kDelete stored in that location, which tells the text model that at least one character was deleted at that location. Similar to the inline note, the tracked change stores the deleted text in an owned-item boss, kDeletedTextBoss. In text index 2, where the text was deleted, the kOwnedItemStrandBoss stores the UID of the kDeletedTextBoss. The kDeletedTextBoss aggregates ITextStoryThread and ITextStoryTh-

readDict, as shown in [Figure 303](#), which points back to the text-story thread, represented by the `kStoryThreadStrandBoss` of the text model. The result of `SnpInspectTextModel.cpp` can show you the UID stored in the `kOwnedItemStrandBoss` and the UID of the associated story thread, so you can make the connection. For simplicity, the UIDs are omitted from the table in [Figure 307](#).

Notice how embedded content is being stored in the event, such as deletion, and how it is tracked. The deleted text includes a note. The UID of the `kDeletedTextBoss` in position 2 leads to story thread [1] in [Figure 307](#). By examining this thread's corresponding `kTextdataStrandBoss` and `kOwnedItemStrandBoss`, you can see that all attributes in the pre-deletion indices 2–4 are preserved in indices 8–9, including the deleted note's information. The `kRedlineStrandBoss` does not keep any change record in the position under the deleted text-story thread, though. In the `SnpInspectTextModel::InspectTrackChange`, when in the deleted text thread, the text index is not used to create a `RedlineIterator`. Instead, the corresponding deleted text position is found, and that position is used in the primary story thread to check its corresponding change record. To find the deleted note's text content, go to the story thread [1], which represents the deleted text. From there, find the UID of the deleted note's `kNoteDataBoss`, which leads to the thread [2]. Note that the text content of the inline note in text index 7 is now the text thread [3], because a new story thread was created and inserted to hold the deleted text.

Next, select and delete the text “678.” The result is shown in [Figure 308](#). Since both notes are deleted, you will not see any UIDs of `kNoteDataBoss` if you examine the `kOwnedItemStrandBoss` in the primary story-thread range; they are all preserved in the deleted text's threads, which can be reached through the UIDs of the `kDeletedTextBoss` at indices 2 and 3. Also, the `kRedlineStrandBoss` data shows there are `kDelete` items at both index 2 and index 3, which is consistent with what you see in story view, in which the deleted text is displayed immediately before the character “5” (at index 2) and immediately before the character “8” (at index 3).

FIGURE 308 Track Changes action 3: delete two blocks of text



Text model representation

Text Index	kTextDataStrandBoss ITextStrand	kStoryThreadStrandBoss IStoryThreadStrand	kOwnedItemStrandBoss IItemStrand	kRedlineStrandBoss IRedlineDataStrand
0	0	Primary Story thread, story thread [0]	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
1	1		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
2	5		UID of a kDeletedTextBoss ¹	kDelete
3	8		UID of a kDeletedTextBoss ³	kDelete
4	9		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
5	kTextChar_CR	Story thread [1] ¹	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
6	2		UID of a kNoteDataBoss ²	No Change Record
7	0xfeff		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
8	4		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
9	kTextChar_CR	Story thread [2] ²	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
10	3		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
11	kTextChar_CR	Story thread [3] ³	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
12	6		UID of a kNoteDataBoss ⁴	No Change Record
13	0xfeff		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
14	kTextChar_CR	Story thread [4] ⁴	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
15	7		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
16	kTextChar_CR		kInvalidUID	No Change Record

¹ Story thread [1] represents the deleted text at text index 2; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 2. The deleted text includes a note at index 7, which is represented by another owned item.

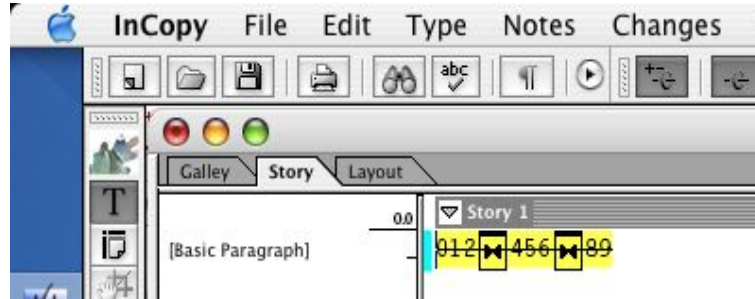
² Story thread [2] represents the note text in the deleted text in story thread [1]; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 7.

³ Story thread [3] represents the deleted text at text index 3; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 3. The deleted text includes a note at index 13, which is represented by another owned item.

⁴ Story thread [4] represents the note text in the deleted text in story thread [3]; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 13.

Next, select and delete all text. The result is shown in [Figure 309](#). The deleted text contains all original text and notes. Only one `kDeletedTextBoss` is needed to maintain the deleted text.

FIGURE 309 Track Changes action 4: delete all text



Text model representation

Text Index	kTextDataStrandBoss ITextStrand	kStoryThreadStrandBoss IStoryThreadStrand	kOwnedItemStrandBoss IItemStrand	kRedlineStrandBoss IRedlineDataStrand
0	kTextChar_CR	Primary Story thread, story thread [0]	UID of a kDeletedTextBoss ¹	kDelete
1	0	Story thread [1] ¹	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
2	1		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
3	2		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
4	0xfeff		UID of a kNoteDataBoss ²	No Change Record
5	4		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
6	5		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
7	6		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
8	0xfeff		UID of a kNoteDataBoss ³	No Change Record
9	8		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
10	9		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
11	kTextChar_CR	Story thread [2] ²	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
12	3		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
13	kTextChar_CR		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
14	7	Story thread [3] ³	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
15	kTextChar_CR		kInvalidUID	No Change Record

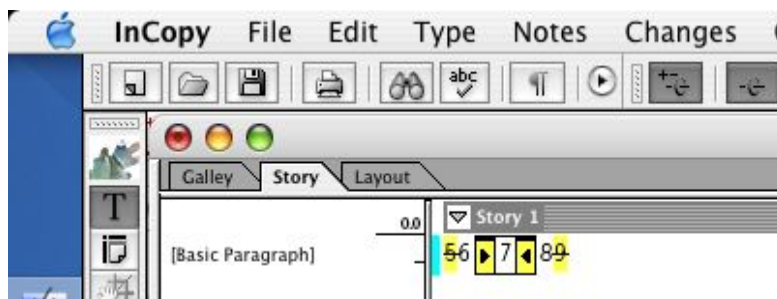
¹ Story thread [1] represents the deleted text at text index 0; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 0. The deleted text includes 2 notes at index 4 and 8, which are represented by other owned items.

² Story thread [2] represents the note text at text index 4 in the deleted text in story thread [1]; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 4.

³ Story thread [3] represents the note text at text index 8 in the deleted text in story thread [1]; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 8.

Next, select “01234” and accept the change, then select “678” and reject the change. The result is shown in Figure 310. When you accept the deletion, the tracked change no longer tracks that portion of deleted text; therefore, the tracked text “01234” is removed from the story view, and the corresponding kDeletedTextBoss is purged. The only way to get the deleted text back is through the undo operation. Because you rejected the change partially (“6[7]8” out of the tracked “56[7]89,” where “[7]” is a note), the tracked text is not in a contiguous block; therefore, two separate kDeletedTextBoss objects are needed, one to track “5” and one to track “9.”

FIGURE 310 Track Changes action 5: partially accept and partially reject a change



Text model representation

Text Index	kTextDataStrandBoss ITextStrand	kStoryThreadStrandBoss IStoryThreadStrand	kOwnedItemStrandBoss IItemStrand	kRedlineStrandBoss IRedlineDataStrand
0	6	Primary Story thread, story thread [0]	UID of a kDeletedTextBoss ¹	kDelete
1	0xfeff		UID of a kNoteDataBoss ²	No Change Record
2	8		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
3	kTextChar_CR	Story thread [1] ¹	UID of a kDeletedTextBoss ³	kDelete
4	5		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
5	kTextChar_CR	Story thread [2] ²	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
6	7		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
7	kTextChar_CR	Story thread [3] ³	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
8	9		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
9	kTextChar_CR		kInvalidUID	No Change Record

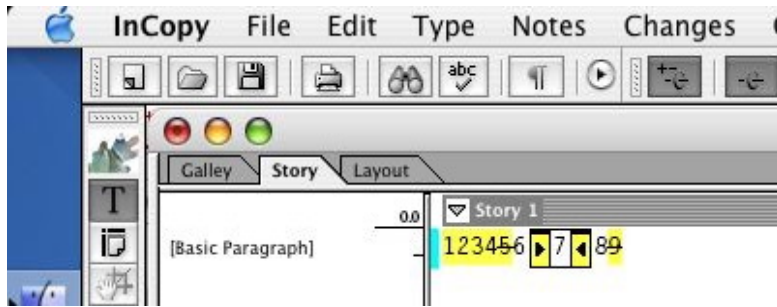
¹ Story thread [1] represents the deleted text at text index 0; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 0.

² Story thread [2] represents the note text at text index 1 in the primary story thread [0]; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 1.

³ Story thread [3] represents the deleted text at text index 3; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 3.

Next, insert “1234” before the deleted “5.” Because Track Changes is still turned on, the new insertion is tracked, as shown in Figure 311. In this case, the inserted text is simply added into the text model as normal: the data is added into kTextDataStrandBoss at a normal text index, and no owned item boss needs to be created. The corresponding position in the kRedlineStrandBoss is marked as kInsert. With this one flag, the text model can hide, show, accept, or reject a tracked change when user chooses to do so.

FIGURE 311 Track Changes action 6: insert a block of text



Text model representation

Text Index	kTextDataStrandBoss ITextStrand	kStoryThreadStrandBoss IStoryThreadStrand	kOwnedItemStrandBoss IItemStrand	kRedlineStrandBoss IRedlineDataStrand
0	1	Primary Story thread, story thread [0]	kInvalidUID	kInsert
1	2		kInvalidUID	kInsert
2	3		kInvalidUID	kInsert
3	4		kInvalidUID	kInsert
4	6		UID of a kDeletedTextBoss ¹	kDelete
5	0xfeff		UID of a kNoteDataBoss ²	No Change Record
6	8		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
7	kTextChar_CR	UID of a kDeletedTextBoss ³	kDelete	
8	5	Story thread [1] ¹	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
9	kTextChar_CR	kInvalidUID	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
10	7	Story thread [2] ²	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
11	kTextChar_CR	kInvalidUID	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
12	9	Story thread [3] ³	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
13	kTextChar_CR	kInvalidUID	kInvalidUID	No Change Record

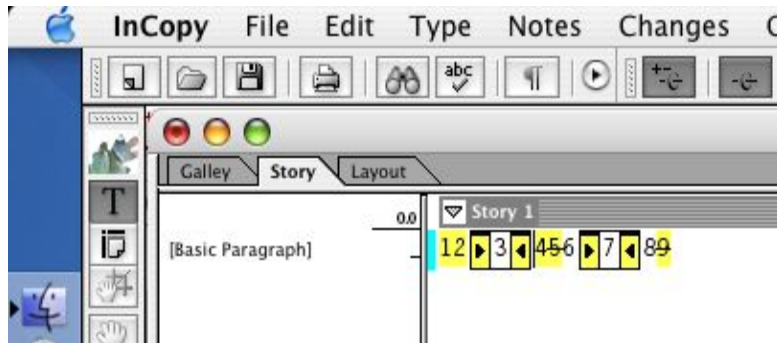
¹ Story thread [1] represents the deleted text at text index 4; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 4.

² Story thread [2] represents the note text at text index 5 in the primary story thread [0]; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 5.

³ Story thread [3] represents the deleted text at text index 7; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 7.

Next, select the text “3” and convert it to a note. The result is shown in Figure 312. The note is created in text index 2 and tracked as inserted text in that position. The tracked text’s change information in the kRedlineStrandBoss will not change until the user accepts or rejects the change or the text is cut. So, if you highlight the note in index 2 and accept the change, you will see the kRedlineStrandBoss change the change data from kInsert to none.

FIGURE 312 Track Changes action 7: convert tracked text to a note



Text model representation

Text Index	kTextDataStrandBoss ITextStrand	kStoryThreadStrandBoss IStoryThreadStrand	kOwnedItemStrandBoss IItemStrand	kRedlineStrandBoss IRedlineDataStrand
0	1	Primary Story thread, story thread [0]	kInvalidUID	kInsert
1	2		kInvalidUID	kInsert
2	0xfeff		UID of a kNoteDataBoss ¹	kInsert ⁵
3	4		kInvalidUID	kInsert
4	6		UID of a kDeletedTextBoss ²	kDelete
5	0xfeff		UID of a kNoteDataBoss ³	No Change Record
6	8		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
7	kTextChar_CR		UID of a kDeletedTextBoss ⁴	kDelete
8	3	Story thread [1] ¹	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
9	kTextChar_CR		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
10	5	Story thread [2] ²	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
11	kTextChar_CR		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
12	7	Story thread [3] ³	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
13	kTextChar_CR		kInvalidUID	No Change Record
14	9	Story thread [4] ⁴	kInvalidUID	No Change Record
15	kTextChar_CR		kInvalidUID	No Change Record

¹ Story thread [1] represents the note text at text index 2 in the primary story thread [0]; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 2.

² Story thread [2] represents the deleted text at text index 4 in the primary story thread [0]; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 4.

³ Story thread [3] represents the note text at text index 5 in the primary story thread [0]; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 5.

⁴ Story thread [4] represents the deleted text at text index 7 in the primary story thread [0]; its UID is the owned item UID at text index 7.

⁵ The note is converted from the tracked text, so it is continuously tracked as inserted text. If the user selects this note and accept the change, then the kInsert status on the kRedlineStrandBoss changes to the status indicating that there is no tracked change.

Track Changes preferences

An `ITrackChangeAppSettings` interface is added to the `kWorkspaceBoss`. This interface is responsible for maintaining the Track Changes settings in the Preferences panel. To access this interface, you can do the following:

```
InterfacePtr<IWorkspace> workspace(GetExecutionContextSession()->QueryWorkspace());
InterfacePtr<ITrackChangeAppSettings> tcAppSettings(
    (ITrackChangeAppSettings*)workspace->
    QueryInterface(IID_ITRACKCHANGEAPPSETTINGS));
```

```
if (tcAppSettings != nil)
{
    // Do something with the preference.
}
```

The `ITrackChangeStorySettings` interface (`IID_ITRACKCHANGESTORYSETTINGS`) is added to the `kTextStoryBoss`. This interface's responsibility is to maintain story-level settings, like whether Track Changes is turned on for the story. To access this interface, you can do the following:

```
// Assume textModel is a valid ITextModel interface pointer.
InterfacePtr<ITrackChangeStorySettings>
    trackSetting(textModel, IID_ITRACKCHANGESTORYSETTINGS);
if (trackSetting && trackSetting->GetIsTracking())
{
    // Track Changes is on for this story. Do something.
}
```

Key client APIs

Track Changes utilities

`ITrackChangeUtils`, added to the `kUtilsBoss`, provides convenient methods for a client to access some Track Changes features. For more information, see `ITrackChangeUtils.h`.

Suite interfaces

Much of the capability required for client code to work with Track Changes is provided in a high-level suite interface, `ITrackChangeSuite`, which is available through a reference to a selection. To obtain the interface, query a selection manager (`ISelectionManager`) for the `ITrackChangeSuite` interface. For information on obtaining a reference to the selection manager, see the “Selection” chapter of *Learning the Adobe InDesign CS4 Architecture*. `ITrackChangeSuite` encapsulates the details of interacting with the Track Changes model and hides details about the selection format that is active, providing a capability-driven API that can be used to accept and reject tracked change. Other suites for accessing Track Changes are discussed in this section.

ITrackChangeSuite

ITrackChangeSuite is a key API for manipulating Track Changes in client code; most Track Changes user-interface functions are provided through this interface. It provides much of the required capability for plug-ins.

The ITrackChangeSuite interface is aggregated on the integrator-suite boss class (kIntegratorSuiteBoss), which makes it available through the abstract selection. Implementations of this interface are provided on concrete-selection boss classes kGalleyTextSuiteBoss and kTextSuiteBoss, which are hidden from client code through the facade of the abstract selection. To obtain ITrackChangeSuite, client code should query the selection manager (ISelectionManager) for the interface, as shown below:

```
InterfacePtr<ITrackChangeSuite> iTCSuite
(ac->GetContextSelection(), IID_ITRACKCHANGESUITE);
if (iTCSuite)
// Do something with Track Changes through the suite.
```

Generally, ITrackChangeSuite is active when the text cursor is active in story view or galley view. Suite interfaces typically use this pattern of checking for a service or capability, and if the abstract selection supports this capability, the method can be called; however, ITrackChangeSuite does not follow this pattern. The ITrackChangeSuite::CanAccept and ITrackChangeSuite::CanReject methods check only whether the workspace preference ITrackChangeAppSettings::GetUserCanAcceptRejectChanges method returns true. If true—and the story is not locked—the CanAccept and CanReject methods always return true.

IChangesReviewSuite

Because ITrackChangeSuite does not provide meaningful CanDo-types of methods (see ITrackChangeSuite), another suite interface, IChangesReviewSuite, is provided for determining whether a tracked change is available in the current text position. The application uses this suite to decide whether the user interface related to Track Changes—like the menu and the Track Changes toolbar buttons—should be enabled or disabled when the text selection changes. For example, to determine whether the current cursor position has a change record the user can accept, call IChangesReviewSuite::IsAcceptChangeEnabled.

ITrackChangeSettingsSuite

IChangesReviewSuite is mainly responsible for getting and setting a story's change-tracking state. You also can apply the state to multiple stories at the same time with one call.

IChangeInfoSuite

IChangeInfoSuite provides one method to get the current tracked-change information, based on the current text selection. IChangeInfoSuite returns the information in a public ChangeInfo class, which stores three pieces of information: story user, date of change, and change type. This suite is used by the application for the Change Info panel.

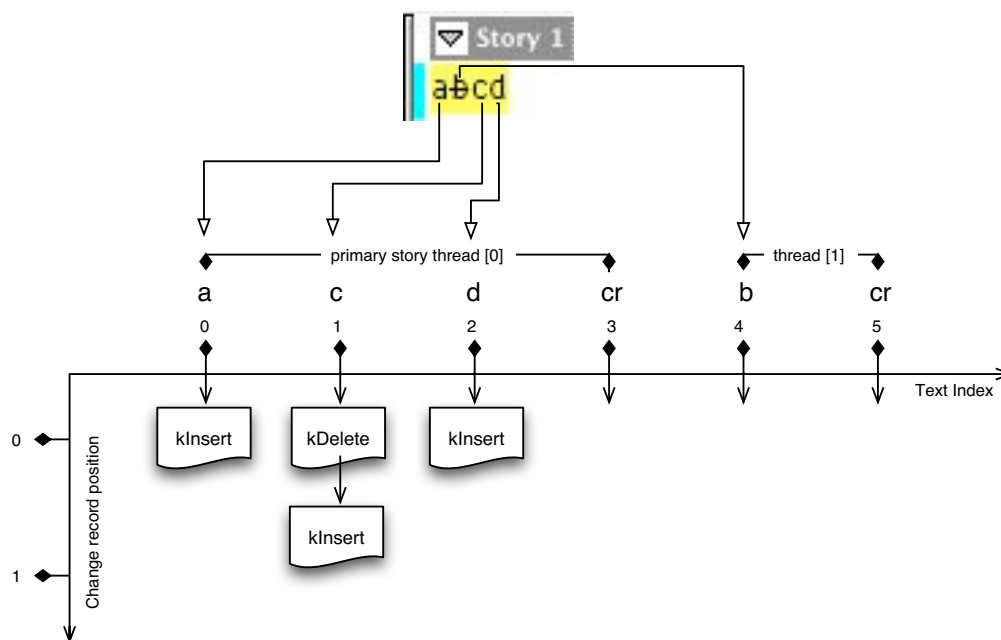
RedlineIterator

RedlineIterator is the primary access to the tracked change object; it also provides for processing acceptance and rejection of tracked changes. Create a new iterator using IRedlineDataStrand::NewRedlineIterator as shown below; the caller is responsible for destroying the iterator.

```
// Assume textModel is a valid ITextModel interface pointer.
InterfacePtr<IRedlineDataStrand> redline((IRedlineDataStrand*)textModel
->QueryStrand(kRedlineStrandBoss, IRedlineDataStrand::kDefaultIID));
if (redline)
{
    RedlineIterator *redIterator = redline->NewRedlineIterator(0L);
    if (redIterator)
    {
        // Use the iterator to access the Track Changes.
        // When done with the iterator, delete it!
        delete redIterator;
    }
}
```

As discussed in “[Example: Track Changes in action](#)” on page 799, there may be more than one change record under each text index. Currently, the only situation that results in multiple change records under one text index is the deletion of text that results in a deleted text record in front of added text, which causes a deletion record and an insertion record at the same text position. The records are managed so the deletion always is at change position 0. The underlying change record can be viewed as being laid out in a two-dimensional map, as shown in [Figure 313](#).

FIGURE 313 Conceptual change record structure map



The `RedlineIterator::MoveToPosition` method provides the means to move in this two-dimensional space:

```
virtual bool16 MoveToPosition(TextIndex t, int32 c = -1) = 0;
```

The first parameter lets you go horizontally (i.e., navigate by the text), and the second parameter lets you go vertically (i.e., navigate among change records at the same text index).

You also can use `RedlineIterator::Increment` or `RedlineIterator::Decrement` to access the change record. When you use `Increment`, it first goes down to the next change record on the same text index, then moves to the next text index that has a change record, and then goes downward from the first record in that index before moving to the next index again. `SnpInspectTextModel::InspectTrackChange` uses this method to iterate through all change records in a story.

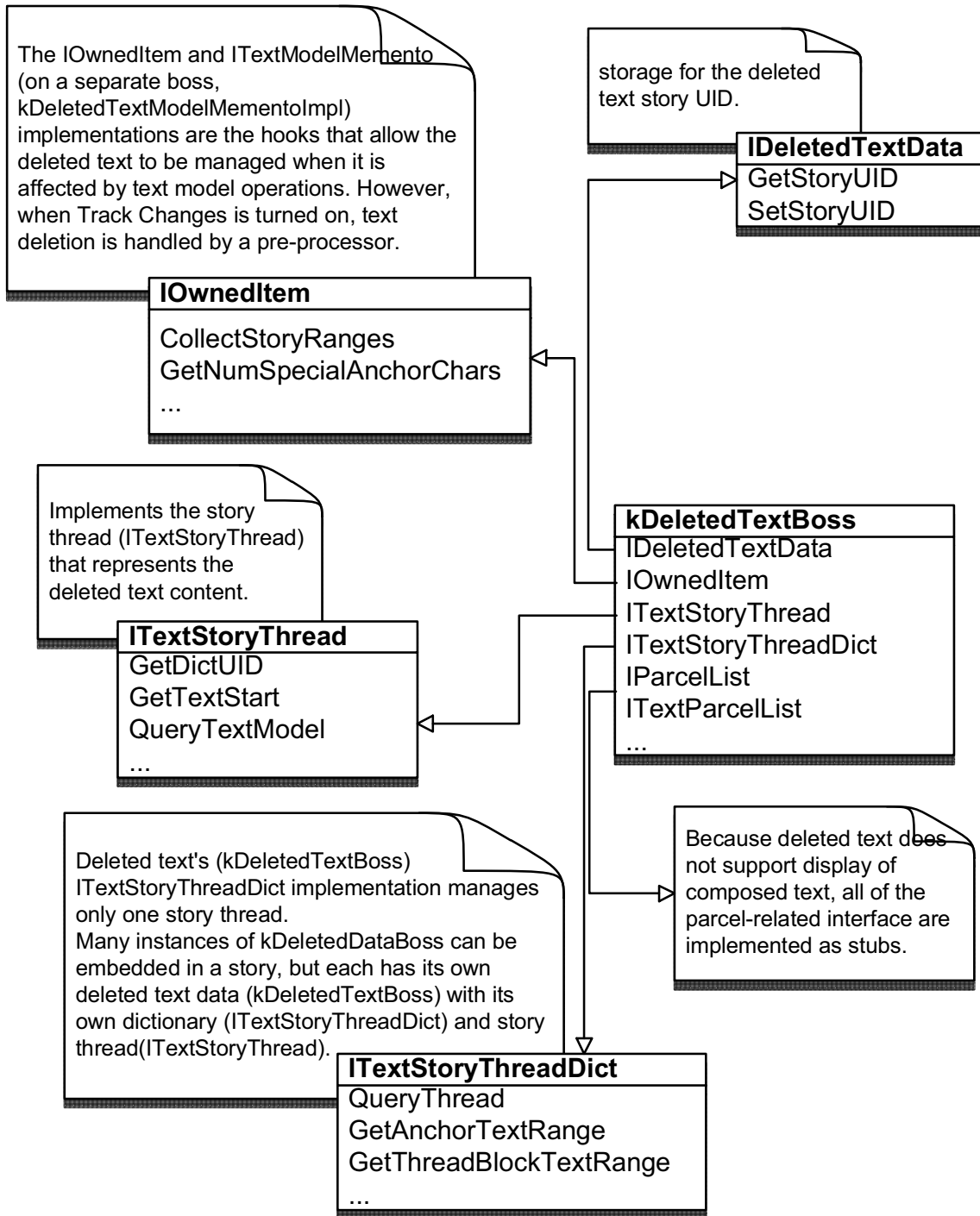
kDeletedTextBoss

`kDeletedTextBoss` is anchored as an owned item in the text story. The following code snippet shows one way to get to the `kDeletedTextBoss` from the story. After you gain access to the owned item, you have access to the whole `kDeletedTextBoss`, and you can use it to find the primary story thread index where the owned item is anchored.

```
// Find deleted text owned item in current storyRef.
InterfacePtr<ITextModel> textModel(storyRef, UseDefaultIID());
InterfacePtr<IItemStrand> itemStrand((IItemStrand*)textModel
    ->QueryStrand(kOwnedItemStrandBoss, IItemStrand::kDefaultIID));
int32 mainStoryLength = textModel->GetPrimaryStoryThreadSpan() - 1;
// Collect owned item from the story.
Text::CollectOwnedItems(textModel, 0, mainStoryLength, &ownedItemList);
if (ownedItemList.Length() > 0)
{
    // Remove non-deleted text items.
    for (i = ownedItemList.Length()-1; i>=0; i--)
    {
        if (ownedItemList[i].fClassID != kDeletedTextBoss)
            ownedItemList.Remove(i);
    }
}
```

See [Figure 314](#) for an illustration of `kDeletedTextBoss` and its key interfaces.

FIGURE 314 *kDeletedTextBoss and its key interfaces*



Useful commands and associated notification protocols

This section summarizes some of the most common commands related to Track Changes. Critical data interfaces that users of the command must supply are explained, and the notification protocol associated with the command is listed.

kSetRedlineTrackingCmdBoss

Description

Sets the tracking flag for the story or workspace (whichever is specified in the command's item list) to the specified boolean setting. Changes remain tracked, but no new changes are tracked.

Item list

UIDList that contains either the workspace pointer (from `GetExecutionContextSession()->QueryWorspace()`) or UIDs of the text stories for the setting change.

Data interface

IBoolData, to turn Track Changes on or off for the target.

kSetTrackChangesPrefsCmdBoss

Description

Sets the session preference `ITrackChangeAppSettings` to the settings specified in the data interface.

Item list

UIDList that contains the workspace pointer (from `GetExecutionContextSession()->QueryWorspace()`).

Data interface

`ITrackChangesPrefsCmdData` can be changed to the user's preference. [Table 172](#) shows the default values in `ITrackChangesPrefsCmdData`. A Set method changes all preference data, and individual Get or Set methods modify individual attributes.

TABLE 172 Default Track Changes preferences

Attribute	Default value
Added Text Background Color Choice	ITrackChangeAppSettings::kUseUserColorBG
Added Text Background Color Index	2 (InCopyUIColors => yellow)
Added Text Color Choice	ITrackChangeAppSettings::kUseGalleyColor
Added Text Color Index	1 (InCopyUIColors => black)
Added Text Marking	0 (ITrackChangeAppSettings::kNone)
Change Bar Color Index	18 (InCopyUIColors => cyan)
Change Bar Location	0 (ITrackChangeAppSettings::kLeftMargin)
Deleted Text Background Color Choice	ITrackChangeAppSettings::kUseUserColorBG
Deleted Text Background Color Index	2 (InCopyUIColors => yellow)
Deleted Text Color Index	1 (InCopyUIColors => black)
Deleted Text Marking	1 (ITrackChangeAppSettings::kStrikethrough)
Deleted TextColor Choice	ITrackChangeAppSettings::kUseGalleyColor
Moved Text Background Color Choice	ITrackChangeAppSettings::kUseUserColorBG
Moved Text Background Color Index	2 (InCopyUIColors => yellow)
Moved Text Color Choice	ITrackChangeAppSettings::kUseGalleyColor
Moved Text Color Index	1 (InCopyUIColors => black)
Moved Text Marking	3 (ITrackChangeAppSettings::kOutline)
Show Added Text	kTrue
Show Change Bar	kTrue
Show Deleted Text	kTrue
Show Moved Text	kTrue
Spellcheck Deleted Text	kTrue

Notification

Notify `kSessionBoss` with `kSetTrackChangesPrefsCmdBoss` message along with the `IID_ITRACKCHANGEAPPSETTINGS` protocol.

kActivateRedlineCmdBoss

Description

Create the kRedlineStrandBoss, and attach it to the story. It synchronizes the redline strand to the story to which it is attached. Usually, the kRedlineStrandBoss is created when a new story is created. If the redline strand cannot be found, this command can be processed to get the strand back. The following is one way to check whether a redline strand is available in a story:

```
InterfacePtr<IRedlineDataStrand> redlineStrand  
  ((IRedlineDataStrand*) textModel->QueryStrand(  
    kRedlineStrandBoss,  
    IRedlineDataStrand::kDefaultIID));
```

If QueryStrand returns a valid IRedlineDataStrand interface pointer, a redline strand is connected to the story.

Item List

UIDList that contains the UID of the text story to which the redline is supposed to be connected.

kDeactivateRedlineCmdBoss

Description

This is the reverse of kActivateRedlineCmdBoss. To delete the kRedlineStrandBoss associated with a story, this command purges the strand from the associated VOS disk page, deregisters the redline strand from the text model, and removes the UID of the kRedlineStrandBoss from the database. This command accepts all changes before it deletes the strand.

Item list

UIDList that contains the UID of the text story from which the redline is supposed to be disconnected.

kRejectAllRedlineCmdBoss

Description

Rejects all tracked change (redline) data in a story.

Item list

UIDList that contains the UID of the text story for which the redline data is supposed to be rejected.

Data interface

IBoolData with interface ID IID_IRESTORESELECTIONDATA. This interface defaults to false. Set to true to restore the selection.

Notification

Notify `kTextStoryBoss` with the `kRejectAllRedlineCmdBoss` message and `IID_ITEXTMODEL` protocol. Notify `kDocBoss` with the `kRejectAllRedlineCmdBoss` message and `IID_REJECTALLREDLINE_DOCUMENT` protocol.

`kRejectRangeRedlineCmdBoss`

Description

Rejects changes in the specified range. If the range's start index or end index corresponds to a deletion, this deletion is not rejected; such deletions should be detected and rejected individually if desired.

Item list

UIDList containing UID of the text story for which the redline data is supposed to be rejected.

Data interface

- `IRedlineChangeData` — Not needed. The command finds the change record based on the text index on which it is working. This interface is a placeholder for original change data, so it can be preserved.
- `IRangeData` with `IID_IRANGEDATA` — The range of text for which you want to reject the change records.
- `IBoolData` with `IID_IBOOLDATA` — Not needed.
- `IBoolData` with `IID_IRESTORESELECTIONDATA` — The default is false; true restores the selection.

Notification

- Notify `kTextStoryBoss` with the `kRejectRangeRedlineCmdBoss` message and `IID_ITEXTMODEL` protocol.
- Notify `kDocBoss` with the `kRejectRangeRedlineCmdBoss` message and `IID_REJECTRANGEREDLINE_DOCUMENT` protocol.

`kRejectRedlineCmdBoss`

Description

Rejects the change record at the text index specified by the user.

Item list

UIDList containing the UID of the text story for which the redline data is to be rejected.

Data interface

- IRedlineChangeData with IID_IREDLINECHANGEDATA — Set this data interface to a VOSRedlineChange pointer returned from the RedlineIterator::GetCurrentChangeRecord. The GetCurrentChangeRecord takes a TextIndex and returns the current track change record for that index.
- IRangeData with IID_IRANGEDATA — The text index of the change record to be rejected should be used as the range start and range end.
- IBoolData with IID_IBOOLDATA — Set to false to prevent notification if rejection is within reject-all context.
- IBoolData with IID_IRESTORESELECTIONDATA — This interface defaults to false. Set to true to restore selection.

Notification

The command notifies only when the IBoolData (with IID_IBOOLDATA) is set to false.

- Notify kTextStoryBoss with the kRejectRedlineCmdBoss message and IID_ITEXTMODEL protocol.
- Notify kDocBoss with the kRejectRedlineCmdBoss message and IID_REJECTREDLINE_DOCUMENT protocol.

kAcceptAllRedlineCmdBoss

Description

Accepts all tracked change (redline records) in a story.

Item list

UIDList containing the UID of the text story for which the changes are to be accepted.

Data interface

IBoolData with IID_IRESTORESELECTIONDATA — The default is false. True restores selection.

Notification

- Notify kTextStoryBoss with the kAcceptAllRedlineCmdBoss message and IID_ITEXTMODEL protocol.
- Notify kDocBoss with the kAcceptAllRedlineCmdBoss message and IID_ACCEPTREDLINE_DOCUMENT protocol.

kAcceptRangeRedlineCmdBoss

Description

Accepts changes in the specified range. If the range start index or end index corresponds to a deletion, it is not accepted. Such deletions should be detected and accepted individually if desired.

Item list

UIDList containing the UID of the text story for which the changes are to be accepted.

Data interface

- IRedlineChangeData — Not needed. The command finds the change record based on the text index on which it is working. This interface is a placeholder for the original change data, so it can be preserved.
- IRangeData with IID_IRANGEDATA — This is the range of text for which you want to accept the change record.
- IBoolData with IID_IBOOLDATA — Not needed.
- IBoolData with IID_IRESTORESELECTIONDATA — The default is false; true restores selection.

Notification

- Notify kTextStoryBoss with the kAcceptRangeRedlineCmdBoss message and IID_ITEXTMODEL protocol.
- Notify kDocBoss with the kAcceptRangeRedlineCmdBoss message and IID_ACCEPTRANGEREDLINE_DOCUMENT protocol.

kAcceptRedlineCmdBoss

Description

Accepts the change record at the text index specified by the user

Item list

UIDList containing the UID of the text story for which the change is to be accepted.

Data interface

- IRedlineChangeData IID_IREDLINECHANGEDATA — Set this data interface to a VOSRedlineChange pointer returned from RedlineIterator::GetCurrentChangeRecord, which takes a TextIndex and returns the current track change record for that index.
- IRangeData with IID_IRANGEDATA — The text index of the change record to be accepted should be used to as the range start and range end.

- IBoolData with IID_IBOOLDATA — Set to false to prevent notification if acceptance is within accept-all context.
- IBoolData with IID_IRESTORESELECTIONDATA — The default is false; true restores the selection.

Notification

The command notifies only when the IBoolData (with IID_IBOOLDATA) is set to false.

Notify kTextStoryBoss with the kAcceptRedlineCmdBoss message and IID_ITEXTMODEL protocol.

kMoveRedlineChangeCmdBoss

Description

Moves a tracked-change (redline) record from one (source) location to another (destination) location within the same story.

Item list

UIDList containing the UID of the text story for which a change is to be moved.

Data interface

- IRedlineChangeData with IID_IREDLINECHANGEDATA — Set this data interface to a VOSRedlineChange pointer returned from RedlineIterator::GetCurrentChangeRecord. The RedlineIterator should be based on the source location.
- IRangeData with IID_IRANGEDATA — The text index of the source change record should be used to as the range start, and the text index of the destination change record should be used to as the range end.
- IBoolData with IID_IRESTORESELECTIONDATA — The default is false; true restores selection.

Notification

The command notifies only when the IBoolData (with IID_IRESTORESELECTIONDATA) is set to true.

Notify kTextStoryBoss with the kMoveRedlineChangeCmdBoss message and IID_ITEXTMODEL protocol.

kRedlinePreserveDeletionCmdBoss

Description

Copies a deletion record from one location to another. This works across stories.

Item list

When copying within the same story: a UIDList that contains the UID of the text story for which the deletion record is supposed to be copied.

When copying across stories: a UIDList with the first item (index 0 in the list) the UID of the source text story from which the deletion record is supposed to be copied, and the second item (index 1 in the list) the destination text story to which the deletion record is supposed to be copied.

Data interface

- IIntData with IID_ISRCDELDATA — Set this data interface to the source text index where the deletion record is anchored.
- IIntData with IID_IDESTDELDATA — Set this data interface to the destination text index where the deletion record is to be anchored.

Commands that should not be called directly

DeletedTextEditCmds methods provide the function to split deleted text into two deletions, to allow text to be inserted into the main story while the selection is in deleted text. Use these methods. Do not use kDeletedTextDeleteCmdBoss, kDeletedTextTypeCmdBoss, kDeletedTextPasteCmdBoss, or kDeletedTextInsertCmdBoss directly.

Working with Track Changes

Navigating tracked changes

Whenever possible, use ITrackChangeSuite::GotoNextChange and ITrackChangeSuite::GotoPreviousChange. ITrackChangeSuite should be available as long as Track Changes is turned on. Alternately, you can access each change record using RedlineIterator.

Accepting and rejecting tracked changes

Use the ITrackChangeSuite::Accept and ITrackChangeSuite::Reject methods whenever possible. Alternately, use RedlineIterator::ProcessAccept and RedlineIterator::ProcessReject. In general, low-level commands should be used only when the problem cannot be solved by RedlineIterator or the suite.

Understanding multiple change records in one location

When multiple change records in one location occur, the Track Changes subsystem manages them so the deletion record is at index 0 and the insertion record is at index 1. Use this information to get to the desired change record, as illustrated in the `InspectTrackChange` method in `<SDK>/source/sdksamples/codesnippets/SnpInspectTextModel.cpp`. This sample shows how to reach the insertion record when there are multiple change records in one location.

Avoid insignificant tracked changes

Use the redline phase, documented in the `IRedlineDataStrand.h`, to modify the redline strand decision of whether to track an edit. For example, there probably is no need to track the insertion and deletion of carriage returns during paste operations, or the removal and insertion of XML tag characters.

Undoing accepted deleted text

Redlining can use the auto-undo architecture implemented for InDesign. Since accept and reject actions cause model changes, and the redline strand is on the model, accept and reject actions can be converted to auto-undo commands.

Basically, a snapshot is taken of the model during Do, which is restored during Undo. Accepting a deletion removes the change record; but since the redline strand is on the model, it also is part of the snapshot restored on Undo. This is what brings back the change record.

Determining whether a location in a story is in deleted text

Use `IRedlineUtils::DetectDeletedText` to determine whether a location is in deleted text.

Alternately, see the `InspectTrackChange` method in `<SDK>/source/sdksamples/codesnippets/SnpInspectTextModel.cpp`, which provides a way to achieve the same result.

Determining whether a primary story-thread location is at a deleted-text anchor

Use the following:

```
InterfacePtr<IItemStrand> itemStrand((IItemStrand*)textModel->
    QueryStrand(kOwnedItemStrandBoss, IID_IITEMSTRAND));
UID ownedUID = itemStrand->GetOwnedUID(withinPrimaryIndex, kDeletedTextBoss);
if (ownedUID != kInvalidUID)
{
    // if you find a kDeletedTextBoss owned item in this index,
    // it is a deleted text anchor
}
```

Alternatively, you can use `ITrackChangeUtils::PrimaryIndexToDeletedText`, which returns true if deleted text is anchored at a specified primary index. This method also returns the deleted thread start and thread span.

Getting kDeletedTextBoss, given a text index having deleted text

The following snippet shows one way to get kDeletedTextBoss if you know the position has deleted text:

```
InterfacePtr<IItemStrand> itemStrand((IItemStrand*)model
->QueryStrand(kOwnedItemStrandBoss, IID_IITEMSTRAND));
if (itemStrand)
{
    UID deletedTextUID = itemStrand->GetOwnedUID(position, kDeletedTextBoss);
    // deletedTextUID is the UID of the kDeletedTextBoss
}
```

Even better, use ITrackChangeUtils::GetDeletedText to get the same UID plus the deleted text stored in a WideString or PMString of your choice.

Removing deleted text

Accepting a deletion removes the associated kDeletedTextBoss from the text model and makes the deletion permanent (unless you undo the accept operation). There are many ways to accept a deletion, as described in [“Accepting and rejecting tracked changes” on page 821](#). If you know the UID of the kDeletedTextBoss, you can use IRedlineUtils::RemoveDeletion, which calls RedlineIterator::ProcessAccept to remove the deleted-text owned item.

Moving a change record from one story to another

Moving a change record from one story to another is not always straightforward; it depends on what kind of change record you want to move. kRedlinePreserveDeletionCmdBoss is a command for preserving deletions that works across stories. There are methods on the IRedlineDataStrand to remove and apply insertions that could be used across stories similar to kMoveRedlineChangeCmdBoss, which does not work across stories.

Maintaining kRedlineStrandBoss text-run information

Text-run information cannot be maintained. The redline strand has a similar concept to text run, but its objects are divided on change boundaries rather than attributes, and they are not really considered runs but, rather, objects that may or may not have a change record. Use the RedlineIterator to find the tracked changes.

InCopy: Assignments

This chapter provides information about InCopy assignment files. To understand this chapter, you should have a basic understanding of XML and have a basic knowledge of the InDesign/InCopy workflow.

This chapter has the following objectives:

- Provide key concepts of assignments and assignment files.
- Give a detailed illustration of the assignment data model and assignment file structure.
- Describe how to work with the assignment API.

For common use cases, see the “InCopy: Assignments” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.

Concepts

Assignment-file features address the following user needs:

- Versions of InDesign prior to InDesign CS2 exported one story, all stories on a layer, or all stories in a publication. An InCopy user, however, might want to export a few related stories (headline, byline, copy), and therefore needs more convenient export options for many common workflows.
- An InCopy user might want to open several exported stories as one file. Having to open separate files (e.g., heading, story, caption) is counterintuitive for many customers who may see these files as a logical whole.
- An InCopy user might want to see how stories fit into an InDesign layout without opening the entire InDesign document. (Opening a large InDesign document can be very time-consuming, especially if it is located on another computer across a network.)

Users want to be able to group related document constituents—not just stories, but graphics as well—into meaningful elements that can be worked on as a group. For example, users might want to group a headline, byline, copy, graphics, and captions into a group; if a company has dedicated headline writers or editors, they may want to group all headlines into a meaningful unit.

InDesign and InCopy support the creation of such groupings with assignment files. Assignment files solve the file-management issue by adding an additional file that tracks the other files. In essence, an assignment is a set of files, the contents of which are assigned to one person for some work to be done (e.g., copy-editing, layout, and writing). Stories in an assignment are exported as InCopy files. Geometry information and the relationships between the files are held in the assignment file. InDesign allows the user to export a given set of stories by exporting into an assignment. InCopy open all the stories in an assignment together, as a single unit.

Assignment files have the following attributes:

- Users can create and name assignments, including any set of elements of one document.
- When exporting a group of items from InDesign, an additional file—the assignment file—is created. It contains links or pointers to the grouped page elements and any transforms on those elements. This lets the user open one file in InCopy and have editorial access to multiple stories. Assignment files also include page geometry, so InCopy users can see the layout of the frame for the content they are editing, without the slowdown of opening the entire InDesign file. Optionally, users can see the context of their editing (other items on the same page) by exporting entire spreads on which one or more assigned frames lie. For details, see [“Assignment-export options” on page 826](#).
- Users can see the contents of an assignment in two ways: a list of contents (in the Assignments palette) and by special highlighting or color coding of frames in a single assignment (in the document window). Even after the assignment grouping is created, users can add items to and remove items from the group.

With the introduction of IDML in CS4, assignments are saved in one of two file formats, IDML-based IMCA files or INX-based INCA files. Assignment files group content into chunks smaller than a complete publication that InDesign understands and manages. Assignment files provide the basis for asset control on a scale smaller than an entire publication.

Assignment workflow

Here is a common workflow for users collaborating by means of assignment files:

- A layout designer designs the framework of a document layout and assigns contents (i.e., stories and images) to different users, by creating an assignment file for each user.
- Content contributors or editors check out the assigned stories and images, do their editing, and check in finished content.
- The layout designer receives notification by an indicator in the Assignments palette that a document is out of synchronization. The layout designer can then update the document.

For more information on the use of assignment files, see InCopy Help or InDesign Help.

Assignment-export options

To give users control over how much geometry information an assignment file contains, InDesign allows users to choose assignment-export options. These options determine what content the user can see in InCopy when opening the assignment file. InDesign provides three such options:

- *Placeholder frames* — Lets the InCopy user see the text and frames in the assignment, as well as boxes or other shapes representing all other frames on the InDesign pages that contain frames in the assignment. All frames and placeholders accurately reflect the size, shape, and location of the InDesign originals. Note, however, that placeholders are empty shapes and do not show any of the content in the InDesign file. These shapes, which are visible in InCopy layout view, are gray, so the user can distinguish them from empty frames that may be part of the assignment. This option provides the minimum information to the InCopy user; anything less would remove possible text wraps that affect copy fitting.
- *Assigned spreads* — Lets the InCopy user see everything described in the Placeholder Frames option, as well as showing the entire contents of any spreads that happen to intersect with the assignment (i.e., spreads that contain at least one frame in the assignment). This non-editable content is visible in InCopy layout view.
- *All spreads* — Shows the entire InDesign file of which the assignment is a part. The difference between using this option and opening an actual InDesign file is that a user who opens an assignment file with this option can see the design and layout of every page but can edit (after checking out) only those frames in the current assignment.

Assignment

The primary tool for working with assignments is the Assignment palette. Through the palette's interface, users can create, delete, add, and remove content of any assignment, as well as check out and check in InCopy stories and change assignment options.

The content of a document could be any of the following:

- *Assigned content* — Content belonging to an assignment.
- *Unassigned InCopy content* — Content exported as InCopy stories, but not belonging to any assignment.
- *Unassigned content* — Content that was never exported as stories or page items.

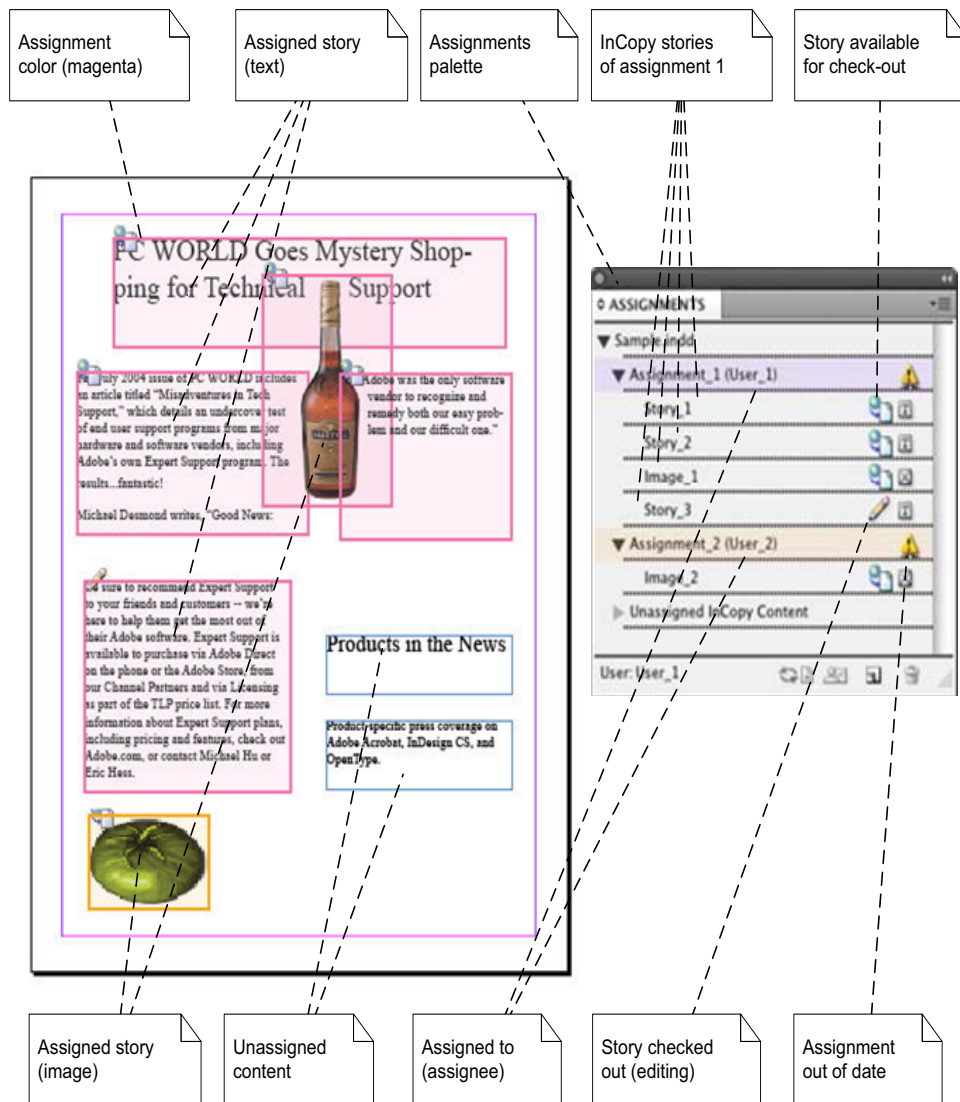
An assignment may become out of date when there is a change to the InDesign document after the assignment is exported. Saving an InDesign document does not clear the state; the user must choose Update Selected Assignment or Update All Assignments to re-export the assignment.

In the screenshot in [Figure 315](#), two text frames in the lower-right part of the page are unassigned contents. The remaining content is part of Assignment 1 (magenta border) or Assignment 2 (gold border).

In the figure, there are several ways to distinguish an assignment: the assignment name (assignment_1, assignment_2), the user to whom it is assigned (user_1, user_2), and the color of the assignment (magenta, gold). The image on the lower-left part of the page is colored gold because it belongs to assignment_2. The magenta frames belong to assignment_1.

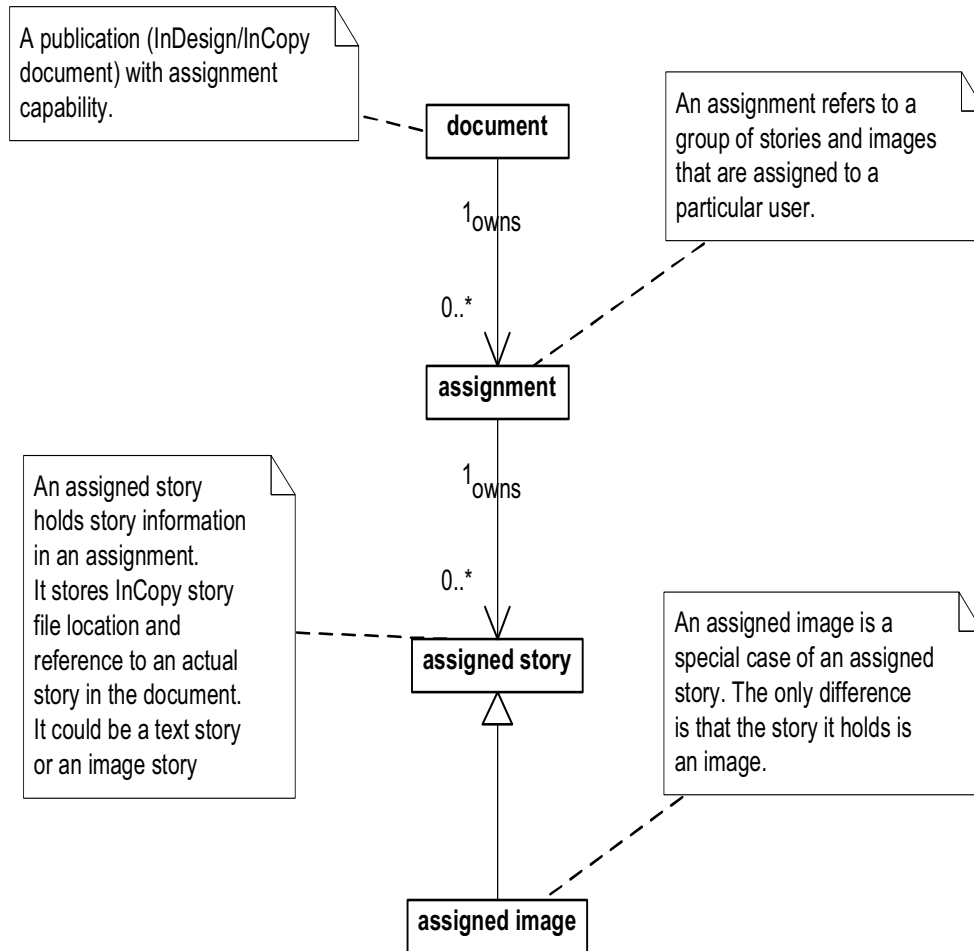
Contents of an assignment are listed in the Assignments palette as children of the assignment. The palette shows the assigned story name as well as the status of the story file; e.g., whether it is checked out by another InCopy user.

FIGURE 315 Assignment concepts



In Figure 316, an assignment belongs to a publication (document) and is made up of several assigned stories. An assigned story holds text or an image. An assigned story holding an image is an assigned image.

FIGURE 316 Assignment structure



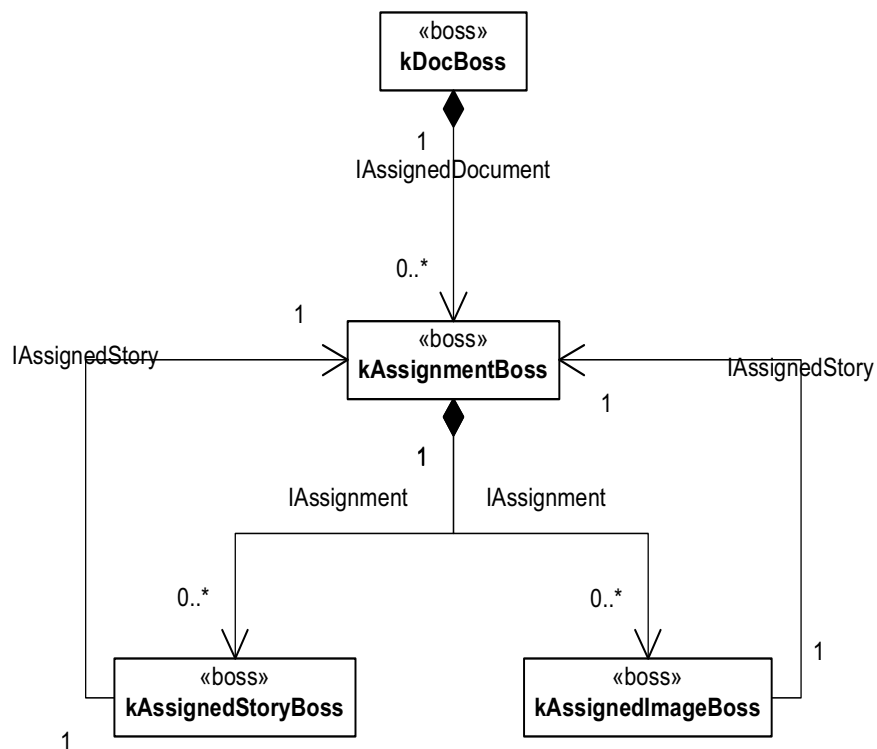
Assignment data model

Assignment hierarchy

In the terms of the document object model (DOM), an assignment is a child of the document. Assignment-related boss class objects form a hierarchical tree.

In [Figure 317](#), IAssignedDocument stores a list of assignments for a document, each described by a kAssignmentBoss. An assignment consists of a number of assigned stories, each either a text story (kAssignedStoryBoss) or an image story (kAssignedImageBoss). Assigned stories have references back to the assignment.

FIGURE 317 Assignment class diagram



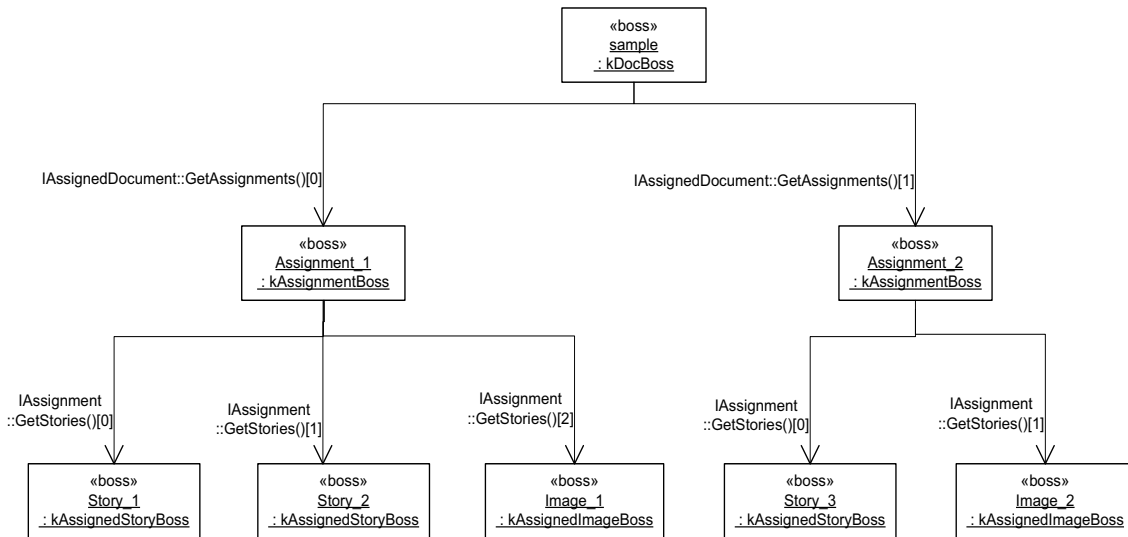
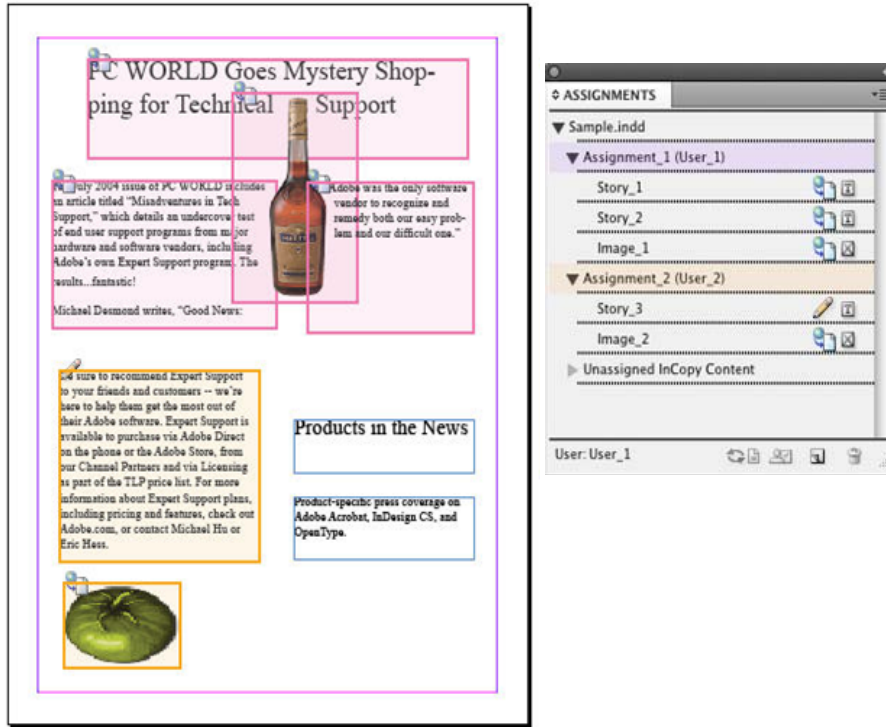
Object structure of an assignment

The object structure of an assignment is constructed dynamically, as a user creates assignments and adds contents to assignments.

The sample document in [Figure 318](#) contains two assignments (**kAssignmentBoss**):

- **Assignment_1** has three assigned stories, two of which are text stories (**kAssignedStoryBoss**), and one of which is an image story (**kAssignedImageBoss**). The stories are **Story_1**, **Story_2**, and **Image_1**, respectively.
- **Assignment_2** has two assigned stories, one of which is a text story (**Story_3**) and one of which is an image story (**Image_2**).

FIGURE 318 Assignment object model for two assignments and their assigned stories



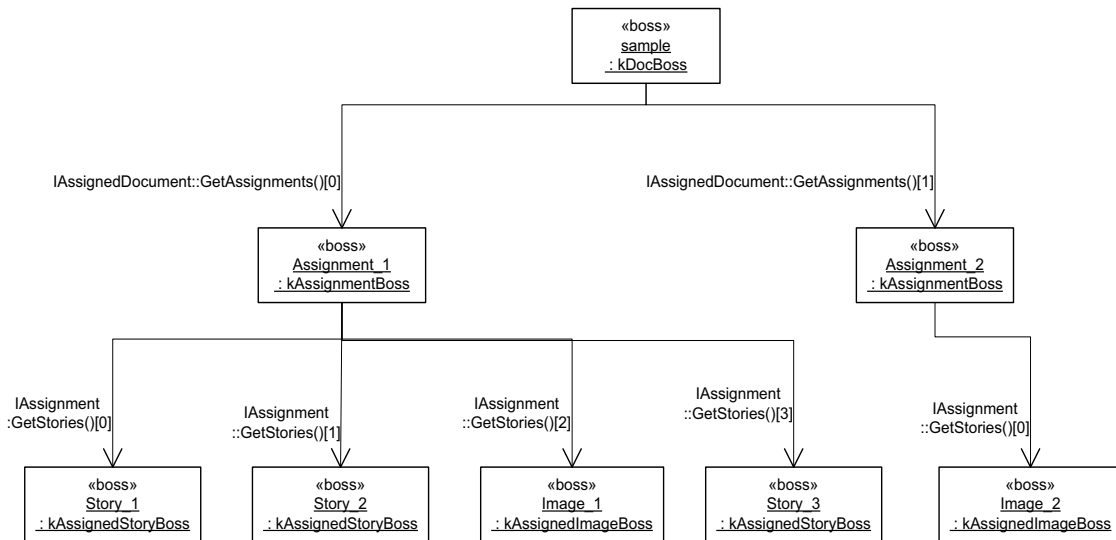
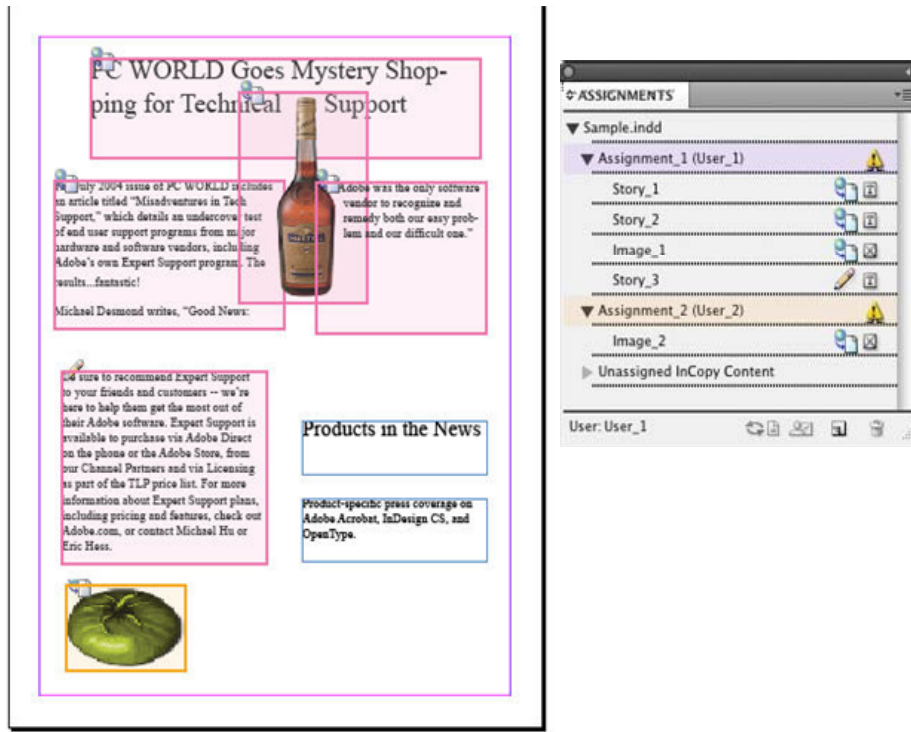
Moving assignment content

Text frames and images in an InDesign document can never have been assigned, or they can have been assigned or exported and, therefore, can be moved among different assignments and unassigned InCopy content. When adding content to an assignment, the following is true:

- If the selected text or text frame is within a story with multiple text frames, the story becomes an assigned story, and all text frames of the story are assigned.
- If the selected content already belongs to another assignment, the content is removed automatically from that assignment.

[Figure 319](#) shows the new screenshot and object diagram of the document shown in [Figure 318](#), after reassigning the lower-left text frame from Assignment_2 to Assignment_1. Assignment_1 has four assigned stories (three text stories and one image story). Assignment_2 has only one assigned story (an image story).

FIGURE 319 Assignment object diagram after reassignment



After the reassignment operation, the following is true:

- In the object model, Story_3 is removed from Assignment_2 and added to Assignment_1.
- In the document window, the color of the text frame changes from gold (the color of Assignment_2) to magenta (the color of Assignment_1).
- In the Assignments palette, Story_3.incx becomes part of Assignment_1.

Assignment files and links

The assignment feature relies on links to track the status of assignments and stories. Assignment files do not appear in the Links palette, but they work the same way as links:

- If the assignment file is moved to another location, the application reports a missing file and prompts the user to find the file.
- The user can find the missing file during document opening or relink the assignment file later from Assignments palette.
- When the files are changed outside the application, the application prompts for an update.

Assignment files

Assignment files are stored as separate entities using the designated storage medium (e.g., hard disk or network resource). Assignment files use the .inca or .icma filename extensions.

Assignment files store the following information:

- Reference to the InDesign document (file path, in case the user wants to open the document with the stories).
- Assignee, the user responsible for the content in the assignment.
- A list of references or links to the stories and graphics in the assignment.
- Character and paragraph styles and swatch information used in the document. The assignment file contains the style and swatch information for the entire document, whereas each story contains only the style and swatch information applicable to that story.
- XML tags maintaining the assignment file structure.
- Frame geometry; i.e., coordinates and dimensions of each frame in the assignment, along with its page location and any transforms users have done to the frames.

Comparing assignment files to InDesign and InCopy files

The assignment-files feature requires collaborative work with InDesign and InCopy files. Only InDesign writes to assignment files; InCopy cannot create an assignment. InCopy can only open an assignment file and work on its contained stories. The following sections summarize how assignment-related information is stored in the InCopy file and the InDesign file.

InCopy file (*.incx or *.icml)

An InCopy file holds InCopy story contents—frame information and all relevant transform information for graphics; style, swatch, and tag definitions used in the story; user names associated with the story (e.g., in notes, tracked changes); and story XMP data.

InDesign file (*.indd)

An InDesign file contains a list of references to the assignment files that contain elements from the document. InDesign needs to locate these files when moving the document from one machine to another. InDesign needs to open and potentially update these assignment files when the InDesign document is saved.

Assignment-file format

InDesign and InCopy support two assignment-file formats. The original, INX-based format is supported; it uses the .inca file extension. A newer, IDML-based format also is included; it uses the .icma file extension. The user interface provides a Compatibility option for assignment creation. The INX-based format is listed as “Compatible with CS3,” while the IDML-based format is listed as “Optimized for CS4.” While INX-based support is available in CS4, you should consider it to be deprecated.

Consider examples of INCA (INX-based) and ICMA (IDML-based) assignment files.

INCA assignment file

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<?aid style="1" type="assignment" DOMVersion="4.0" buildNumber="214"
  featureSet="257" longNames="false" ?>
<AssignmentRoot>
<docu InLi="x_0" zero="x_2_U_0_U_0" ptag="c_" DCcp="c_U.S. Web Coated (SWOP) v2"
  DCrp="c_Adobe RGB (1998)" DCci="e_RIcs" DCbi="e_RIcs" DCii="e_RIcs"
  CSrp="e_CPpp" CScp="e_CPpp" DCsa="b_f" enUn="s_1" Self="rc_d">
<colr clmd="e_prss" clsp="e_CMYK" clvl="x_4_D_0_D_0_D_0_D_100" ovrD="e_eOvB"
  clbs="o_n" pnam="c_Black" edbl="b_f" rdbl="b_f" pvis="b_t" ptag="c_"
  Self="rc_ub"/>
```

```

...
Omitted content
...

<AsMt hDPT="rf_C:\Examples\Sample.indd" pnam="c_Assignment~sep~1"
path="c_C:\Examples\Assignment~sep~1.inca" UsrN="c_User~sep~1" AFCl="e_iMgn"
Self="rc_di13f">
<AsSt pnam="c_Story~sep~1.incx" path="c_C:\Examples\Story~sep~1.incx"
pStR="o_ub9" Self="rc_di13fi143"/>
<AsSt pnam="c_Story~sep~2.incx" path="c_C:\Examples\Story~sep~2.incx"
pStR="o_ucf" Self="rc_di13fi146"/>
<AsSt pnam="c_Image~sep~1.incx" path="c_C:\Examples\Image~sep~1.incx"
pStR="o_u132" Self="rc_di13fi148"/>
<AsSt pnam="c_Story~sep~3.incx" path="c_C:\Examples\Story~sep~3.incx"
pStR="o_ue8" Self="rc_di13fi14c"/>
</AsMt>
<cXML STof="o_u6fcins1" Xcnt="o_u6fcins1:u6fcins2" strp="ro_n" XMLt="o_u7e"
Self="rc_dii12"/>
</docu>
</AssignmentRoot>

```

When comparing the assignment file with the INX file exported from InDesign, Note the following:

- Line 2 of the assignment file is type = “assignment.” In an INX file, you would see type = “document.”
- There is an AssignmentRoot as the outermost XML element encapsulating the docu (document) element.
- Some assignment-related elements, like AsMt (Assignment) exist in both INX and INCA files, but they do not exist in INX files exported from InDesign documents without assignments created.
- An assignment file has only one instance of AsMt (Assignment) referring to itself, whereas an INX file contains instances of AsMt for each assignment in a pub.
- There are some elements and attributes that assignment files do not include, like metadata. For a complete list of elements and attributes that are left out of the assignment file, see the “InCopy: Assignments” chapter of *Adobe InDesign CS4 Solutions*.
- Not all spreads of the document are included in the assignment file, depending on the export option chosen for assignment. For details, see [“Assignment-export options” on page 826](#).
- An assignment file usually is smaller than an INX file.

The detailed information about assignment-specific scripting IDs (i.e., element and attribute names) can be found in InDesign Scripting Reference. Search for “AsMt” or “Assignment,” then look for its properties and children.

ICMA assignment file

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes"?>
<?aid style="50" type="assignment" readerVersion="6.0" featureSet="257"
product="6.0(338)" ?>
<Document DOMVersion="6.0" Self="d" ZeroPoint="0 0" CMYKProfile="U.S. Web Coated
(SWOP) v2"
  RGBProfile="sRGB IEC61966-2.1" SolidColorIntent="UseColorSettings"
  AfterBlendingIntent="UseColorSettings" DefaultImageIntent="UseColorSettings"
  RGBPolicy="PreserveEmbeddedProfiles"
  CMYKPolicy="CombinationOfPreserveAndSafeCmyk"
  AccurateLABSpots="false">
  <Language Self="Language/$ID/English%3a USA" Name="$ID/English: USA"
SingleQuotes=""
  DoubleQuotes="" PrimaryLanguageName="$ID/English"
SublanguageName="$ID/USA" Id="269"
  HyphenationVendor="Proximity" SpellingVendor="Proximity"/>
  <Color Self="Color/Black" Model="Process" Space="CMYK" ColorValue="0 0 0 100"
  ColorOverride="Specialblack" AlternateSpace="NoAlternateColor"
AlternateColorValue=""
  Name="Black" ColorEditable="false" ColorRemovable="false" Visible="true"
  SwatchCreatorID="7937"/>

  <!--... Omitted Content ...!-->
  <Assignment Self="u102" Name="Assignment 1" UserName="hlynn"
ExportOptions="AssignedSpreads"
  IncludeLinksWhenPackage="true"
  FilePath="C:\Examples\Assignments\Assignment 1.icma">
  <Properties>
    <FrameColor type="enumeration">LightBlue</FrameColor>
  </Properties>
  <AssignedStory Self="u107" Name="myDoc.icml" StoryReference="uea"
  FilePath="C:\Examples\Assignments\content\myDoc.icml"/>
  <AssignedStory Self="u10d" Name="story-1.icml" StoryReference="ud3"
  FilePath="C:\Examples\Assignments\content\story-1.icml"
  />
  </Assignment>
</Document>
```

Notes:

- ICMA- (or IDML-based) assignments also use the “assignment” type in a Processing Instruction on line 2 of the file.
- <Document> is the outermost element (or document element) of an ICMA assignment file.
- ICMA uses robust (descriptive) scripting names similar to JavaScript; for example, an assignment is contained in the Assignment element. Like INX, assignment-related elements exist in both IDML (if assignments are created) and ICMA files.
- An assignment file has only one Assignment element referring to itself, whereas an IDML file contains an Assignment element for each assignment in the document.
- There are some elements and attributes that assignment files do not include.

- Not all spreads of the document are included in the assignment file, depending on the export option chosen for assignment. For details, see [“Assignment-export options” on page 826](#).
- An assignment file usually is smaller than an IDML file.
- Assignment files can be validated with the single file format of the RelaxNG schema. For information on schema validation, see *Adobe InDesign Markup Language (IDML) Cookbook*.

The assignment API

IAssignmentMgr

IAssignmentMgr is aggregated into kSessionBoss. IAssignmentMgr serves as a manager for assignment file function, so it has the broadest scope, serving all assignments in all documents. IAssignmentMgr also has the broadest range of methods, including manipulation methods like open, save, export, and import assignment; create, add, and remove content of an assignment; and general management methods like finding out whether a page item is assigned and checking whether an assigned story is a text story.

IAssignedDocument

Aggregated into kDocBoss, IAssignedDocument serves all assignments in one document, so its methods are designed to work for managing assignments in a document. IAssignedDocument has methods for adding assignments, removing assignments, and getting the list of all assignments for a document.

IAssignment

IAssignment represents an individual assignment; therefore, it is a typical entry point for accessing an assignment. IAssignment has get and set methods to access assignment information, like assignment name, location of the assignment file, and export options for the assignment. IAssignment also has methods to access its assigned content and add, remove, and delete assigned stories.

IAssignedStory

IAssignedStory represents an assigned story. IAssignedStory has two different implementations: kAssignedStoryImpl and kAssignedImageImpl, representing text story and image story, respectively. Despite the difference in implementation, text story and image story share the same interface. IAssignedStory has access methods to get and set assigned story name, file location of the story, UIDRef of the story in the InDesign document to which it refers, and the assignment to which it belongs.

IAssignmentSelectionSuite

IAssignmentSelectionSuite is a typical selection-suite interface that has CanAssign and Assign methods to add the current selection to an assignment.

IAssignmentUtils

IAssignmentUtils is aggregated into kUtilsBoss. IAssignmentUtils has useful methods for assignment scripting.

IAssignmentUIUtils

IAssignmentUIUtils is aggregated into kUtilsBoss. IAssignmentUIUtils has very useful utility functions for assignment user-interface control. IAssignmentUIUtils has methods that check front document, current layout selection, and Assignments palette selection, to determine what type of operation might apply and execute it, such as create, delete an assignment, add content to an assignment, remove content from an assignment, update, relink assignment, check out, submit changes, and revert changes to the assignment.

IAssignmentPreferences

IAssignmentPreferences controls how assignment contents are drawn in the document window. If Show Assigned Frame is set, InDesign draws a colored frame for the assigned story; otherwise, InDesign draws a normal frame.

Common commands

Commands are the only recommended way to change the model. [Table 173](#) lists commands used to manipulate assignments and their contents.

TABLE 173 *Assignment command list*

Command name	Command data	Description
kAssignDocCmdBoss	IID_IASSIGNSETPROPSCMDDATA	Creates a new assignment. The UIDRef of the document is passed as the command's ItemList. Other information (assignment name, assignment file path, assignee, color, assignment export options, etc.) is passed as command-data interface IID_IASSIGNSETPROPSCMDDATA. After execution, the new assignment is stored in the command's ItemList.
kAssignSetPropsCmdBoss	IID_IASSIGNSETPROPSCMDDATA	Sets assignment properties. The ItemList of the command is the assignment UIDRef, and the command shares the same command data as kAssignDocCmdBoss.

Command name	Command data	Description
kUnassignDocCmdBoss	IID_ISTRINGDATA	Deletes an assignment. The command's ItemList is the UIDRef of the assigned document, and the command data IID_ISTRINGDATA passes in the assignment's file path.
kAddToAssignmentCmdBoss	None	Adds content to an existing assignment. The content to be added and the assignment are passed as the first and second items of the command's ItemList, respectively.
kAssignStorySetPropsCmdBoss	IID_IASSIGNSTORY SETPROPSCMDDATA	Sets assigned story properties. The ItemList of the command is the UIDRef of the assigned story. Its command data IID_IASSIGNSTORYSETPROPSCMDDATA stores UIDRef of the story that the assigned story points to, the filename of the story in the disk, and the assigned story name.
kAssignmentSetColorCmdBoss	IID_IUIDDATA	Sets assignment color. The command's ItemList stores the UIDRef of stories. Its command data IID_IUIDDATA stores the UID of the color the client wants to set.
kRemoveAssignedStoryCmdBoss	None	Removes the assigned story from any assignment. The UIDRef of the assigned story to be removed is passed to the command as ItemList.
kRemoveAssignedFrameCmdBoss	None	Keeps assignment up to date when a frame is deleted in the document. Removes the assigned story from an assignment if the deleted frame is the only frame an assigned story has. UIDRef of the deleted frame is passed to the command as ItemList.
kMoveAssignedStoryCmdBoss	None	Moves an assigned story within an assignment. Moves the assigned story referenced by the first item of ItemList before the assigned story referenced by the second item of ItemList.
kShowAssignedFramesCmdBoss	IID_IBOOLDATA	Sets show or hide assigned frame preference of IAssignmentPreferences.

Glossary

Text in [brackets] following a definition is the chapter where the term is used primarily.

- *Absolute command* — A command that modifies the model, specified as an absolute new value the model is to take.
- *Abstract selection* — The layer that allows client code to access and change attributes of selected objects. The abstract selection decouples client code from the need to know where or how these attributes are stored in the underlying model.
- *Abstract-selection boss (ASB)* — A class that represents the abstract selection and lets client code use suites to access or change selection attributes. If you add an interface to the abstract-selection boss class (through an add-in to `kIntegratorSuiteBoss` class), user-interface code can query for this interface on the active selection and call methods to manipulate the selection target; for example, to change the attributes of a table or filter or sort its data.
- *ACE* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — Adobe Color Engine. Responsibilities include conversion between different color spaces.
- *Acquirer; acquirer filter* [“XML Fundamentals”]— Responsible for translating an XML source into an XML stream.
- *Action* — A piece of functionality that can be called through a menu component or keyboard shortcut. Plug-ins can implement actions that execute in response to an `IActionComponent::DoAction` message from the application framework.
- *Active context* — The context the user has chosen to work with. There can be several views open, each with its own selection subsystem; however, only one view is active at any time. The active context is represented by the `IActiveContext` interface and gives access to the key constructs, like the document, view, workspace, and selection manager.
- *Active layer* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The layer targeted for edit operations. New objects are assigned to the active layer.
- *Add-in* — An `ODFRez` type expression with keyword `AddIn` that defines one or more interfaces (and their implementations) to be added to an existing boss class. An add-in lets you add functionality to an existing class; it allows you to extend the type system without defining a new class. Add-ins and boss classes are the two primary mechanisms for an extender of the application. Normally, implementing building blocks requires defining new add-ins and/or boss classes.
- *Aggregated interfaces; exposed interfaces* — The set of interface/implementation pairs that compose a distinct boss class. A boss class aggregates (exposes) a set of interfaces; the exact behavior depends on the implementations of these interfaces. The API reference documentation shows the complete set of interfaces each boss class exposes. Some (or even all) of the exposed interfaces on a boss class can come from add-ins, whereas others can be declared in the boss-class definition. A boss class aggregates an interface if it provides an implementation of that interface. A boss class exposes an interface of a specific type. `InDesign/InCopy` interfaces are descendants of the type `IPMUnknown`. There are some abstract classes in the API that do not descend from `IPMUnknown`, like `IEvent`, and these cannot be reference-counted.

- *AGM* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — Adobe Graphics Manager. This is the core API used to draw vector graphics, perform rasterization, work with device-independent descriptions of graphics, and so on. AGM should be used for drawing anything that is to be printed or exported to a format that may later be printed, like PDF.
- *Anchor* — The top-left element of a cell. An anchor is a location in the underlying grid and, therefore, it is represented by a `GridAddress`.
- *API* — Application programming interface. Sometimes used as a shorthand for *InDesign API*.
- *Application* — Executable program that loads plug-ins; a plug-in host. The program could be a product in the InDesign family: InDesign, InCopy or InDesign Server.
- *Application core* — Software that performs functions like inviting plug-in panels to register, sending `IObserver::Update` messages to registered observers, and sending `IActionComponent::DoAction` messages when a particular action component is activated by a shortcut or menu item.
- *Application database, database* — Where InDesign documents are stored. This is a fundamental provider of persistence to the application. It is a lightweight, object-oriented database that stores a tree of persistent boss objects. Each object in the database (except the root object) has another object (a parent object) that refers to it by UID and “owns” it, and has zero or more objects that simply reference it without any ownership. See `IDataBase` in the API reference documentation.
- *Application object model* — Responsible (among other things) for loading and unloading plug-ins and managing the lifetimes of boss objects.
- *Applications* — Executable programs that support the InDesign API.
- *ASB* — See *abstract-selection boss*.
- *Automatic undo and redo* — a change to the application architecture introduced in InDesign CS4, which takes over responsibility reverting and restoring the state of objects in the model at undo and redo.
- *Backdrop* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — One of the inputs used to calculate resultant colors for transparent objects. The object being blended with the backdrop conventionally is referred to as the source object. By convention, the backdrop is 100% white and 100% opaque.
- *Backing store* [“XML Fundamentals”] — Storage for unpolished content and other key objects like the document element and root element. It can contain a DTD element, objects representing processing instructions and comments that are peers of the root element, and unplaced elements.
- *Binary plug-in* — The result of compiling and linking the source for a plug-in; a shared library (DLL/framework) that supports a protocol allowing it to be loaded by the application.
- *Bitmap image* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — An image composed of small squares (pixels) on a grid. Each pixel defines its own color and is independent. Paint programs manipulate bitmap images. Same as raster image.

- *Blend* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — A mixing of colors to produce interesting visual effects. Although blending can produce results similar to physical transparency, blending is not an attempt to model translucent materials directly.
- *Blending mode* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — Specifies how a transparent source object combines with other objects and the backdrop. For example, the normal blend specifies that the resultant backdrop color is simply the color of the corresponding point in the source object.
- *Blending space* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — The color space (user-specified) in which the colors are blended. Document RGB and document CMYK are the available choices.
- *Boss class* — A class in the InDesign type system. Boss classes are the fundamental building blocks of the application object model. A boss class is a compound ODFRez type expression consisting of a set of interfaces and their implementations, some or all of which can come from add-ins. Boss classes support inheritance of implementation from a single superclass. Boss classes represent objects in the application domain and provide their behavior; for example, a spread (kSpreadBoss) or page (kPageBoss). The term “boss” was coined for an entity that manages, or bosses, a collection of interfaces.
- *Boss-class definition* — An ODFRez type expression with the keyword Class. There may be a superclass (or kInvalidClass if none) and a list of interface/implementation (PMIID/ImplementationID) pairs. Some or all of the interface/implementation pairs that compose a boss can come from add-ins. The boss-class definition is a single place where the core interfaces that compose a boss are declared, without considering add-ins.
- *Boss class factory, class factory* — A method used by the application core to construct an instance of a *boss class*. CREATE_PMINTERFACE is where these methods are defined.
- *Boss DOM* — Document object model specified in terms of boss classes and associations between them. The boss DOM contrasts with the scripting DOM, which is a somewhat more abstract model of the document.
- *Boss leak* — The state in which a boss object’s reference count is nonzero when the application quits. A boss leak usually is caused by mismatched AddRef-with-Release calls and/or unmatched QueryInterface/ Instantiate/ CreateObject-with-Release calls. A boss leak results in a memory leak. See also *UID leak*.
- *Boss-leak tracking* — A debugging aid built into the applications to help find boss leaks.
- *Boss object* — An instance of a boss class. At its lowest level, an InDesign document is structured as a graph of persistent boss objects, with relationships between them; for example, spreads (kSpreadBoss) and pages (kPageBoss). There also are boss objects that exist only in memory. For more information on how boss objects represent documents, see the “Layout Fundamentals” chapter.
- *Boss-object hierarchy; hierarchy* — A tree-structured organization of boss objects in parent-child relationships with one another. The API has several different types of hierarchy; each with its own characteristic interface to allow it to be traversed. The hierarchies commonly encountered the spread hierarchy traversed by IHierarchy, the XML-element hierarchy traversed by IIDXMLElement, and the scripting-DOM hierarchy traversed by IDOMEElement.
- *Bounding box* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The smallest rectangle (PMRect) that encloses a geometric page item.

- *Cell* — Visual containers for content that appear to end users as the components of a table. A cell consists of one or more elements; each cell has an anchor. A cell corresponds to a <TD> (table data) item in the HTML 4 table model.
- *Cell attribute* — A boss class that represents an aspect specific to one or more cells.
- *Character-attributes strand* — A strand that maintains formatting information for ranges of characters.
- *Child* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — A page item contained within a parent. For example, a graphic page item is contained in a frame and is said to be a child of the frame.
- *CIE* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — Commission Internationale de l’Eclairage (International Commission on Illumination). CIE has a technical committee, Vision and Color, which plays a leading role in colorimetry and defining color standards.
- *Class factory* — See *boss-class factory*.
- *Client* — Any code that interacts with the selection; typically, user-interface code. This includes widgets in palettes, menu items, actions, and tools. The interaction can include reflecting the value of a selection attribute, changing the attribute, or both.
- *Client code* — Code written by a third-party plug-in developer that uses the InDesign/InCopy API to use the services of the application. Client code typically drives suites, processing commands or wrapper interfaces that in turn process commands, like ITableCommands and IXMLElementCommands.
- *Code-based converter* — A conversion provider that converts persistent data from one format to another, based on specific coded instructions. Generally, this is implemented as a subclass of CConversionProvider, which inherits from IConversionProvider and provides several housekeeping methods.
- *Color component* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — A coordinate in a given color space. A ColorArray item is used to represent the color components in the implementations of IColorData interface. Colors defined in different color spaces may have different number of components; for example, four components in CMYK and three components in RGB.
- *Color model* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — The dimensional coordinate system used to numerically describe colors. Some models are RGB (red, green, blue), CMYK (cyan, magenta, yellow, black), HLS (hue, lightness, saturation), and L*a*b* (lightness, a, b). Color space also can refer to the range of colors in a particular color model. Also known as gamut.
- *Color space* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — Same as color model.
- *Command* — Transactions that change the data model must be implemented as commands. A command in the API is a boss class with an ICommand implementation and optional data interfaces. A custom command is an extension pattern you can implement to change aspects of the data model you may have contributed yourself. For example, if you add your own persistent interfaces somewhere in the boss document object model, you would implement custom commands to change these.
- *Comment, XML* [“XML Fundamentals”] — A comment valid within an XML document (kXMLCommentBoss).

- *Composite font* — An extension of the basic PostScript font mechanism that enables the encoding of very large character sets and handles non-horizontal writing modes. You can create a composite font that contains any number of base fonts.
- *Compound path* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — Two or more simple paths that interact with or intercept each other.
- *Compound shape* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — Two or more paths, compound paths, groups, blends, text outlines, text frames, or other shapes that interact with and intercept one another to create new, editable shapes.
- *Concrete selection* — The layer underlying abstract selection that knows which objects are selected and how to access and change their attributes in the underlying model. Comprises one or more CSBs. See also *CSB* (concrete selection boss).
- *Container (structural) element* [“XML Fundamentals”] — An XML element that does not itself have an associated content item but is intended to be an ancestor for other content items.
- *Container-managed persistent-boss object* — An object stored in an application database, whose storage is managed by another UID-based persistent boss object. Examples are text attributes, graphic attributes, XML elements. None of these is associated with UIDs.
- *Content handler* [“XML Fundamentals”] — Responsible for reading XML content from an input stream.
- *Content item* [“XML Fundamentals”] — An object in a document that can be tagged. An object in the native document model that can be associated with an element in the logical structure. A content item is represented by boss classes with *IXMLReferenceData*. Examples include placeholder items (*kPlaceholderItemBoss*), images (*kImageItem*), and stories (*kTextStoryBoss*). A text range within a story (*kTextStoryBoss*) also is a content item, since it can be tagged.
- *Content page item* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — A frame, path, group, or page item that represents another type of content that can be placed on a spread.
- *Content manager* — The component that manages plug-ins that add content to documents (i.e., any plug-in with persistent data that is saved to a document). The content manager (identified by the *IContentMgr* interface) works with the conversion manager to determine whether data conversion is needed.
- *Control-data model* — An aspect of a widget boss class that represents the data associated with a widget's state. The control-data model typically can be changed by an end user or through the API. The control-data model is associated with an interface named *I<data-type>ControlData*. For example, there is an *ITextControlData* interface associated with text-edit boxes, the internal state of which is represented by a *PMString*.
- *Control view* — An aspect of a widget boss class that represents the appearance of a widget. It is associated with the *IControlView* interface, which also can be used to change the visual representation of a given widget. For example, use this interface to vary the resources used in representing the states of an iconic button or to show/hide a widget.

- *Conversion manager* — The component that manages persistent-data conversions between different versions of plug-ins. By comparing format numbers both in the persistent data and the currently loaded plug-in, the conversion manager finds the appropriate conversion provider, which determines whether conversion is needed and, if necessary, converts the data. This component is identified by the `IConversionMgr` interface.
- *Conversion provider* — A service provider that determines whether a data conversion needs to be performed and performs the appropriate conversions. This component is identified by the `IConversionProvider` interface. There are two types of conversion providers: schema-based and code-based.
- *CSB (concrete selection boss)* — A class that encapsulates a selection format and supports access, change, and observation of the selected objects in its underlying model.
- *CSB suite* — The suite implementation for a selection format that understands how to access and change some attributes of the selected objects in the underlying model.
- *Current spread* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The spread targeted for edit operations. New objects created by the user interface are contained in the current spread.
- *Data conversion* — The process of converting persistent data in a database from one format to another.
- *Data flavor* — Describes the data involved in data exchange, like cut-and-paste and drag-and-drop operations. Internal types are represented by `PMFlavor`; external types, `ExternalPMFlavor`. For a list of built-in types, see `source/public/includes/PMFlavorTypes.h`.
- *Database* — See *application database*.
- *Detail control* — The process of varying the resolution of a user interface by varying the composition of the widget set or the size of elements in the interface. This capability is represented by `IPanelDetailController`.
- *Developer prefix; plug-in prefix* — Identifier defining the range of 256 values in which you can define the unique identifiers in any ID space (e.g., `kClassIDSpace`, `kInterfaceIDSpace`, and `kImplementationIDSpace`) required for your contributions to the object model. The prefix must be obtained from Adobe Developer Support before you can release your product, to ensure your plug-ins do not conflict with other plug-ins.
- *Dialog protocol* — Message sequencing for dialog boss objects (`kDialogBoss` and descendants). This protocol consists of messages delivered in this sequence: `IDialogController::InitializeDialogFields`, `ValidateDialogFields`, and `ApplyDialogFields`. A `ResetDialogFields` also may be sent, but only if the dialog is enabled to do so.
- *Direct model change* — A call to a mutator method on a persistent interface.
- *DLL (dynamic-link library)* — A library linked in at run time or load time, not at build time. Normally this is associated with the Windows operating system.
- *Document* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — An InDesign document, unless otherwise stated. A publication that stores layout data. The content is organized in a set of spreads. Each spread has one or more pages on which page items are arranged. Page items are assigned to layers, which control whether the content is displayed or editable.

- *Document element* [“XML Fundamentals”] — Element in the logical structure associated with the document (kDocBoss), represented by kXMLDocumentBoss. A singleton instance of this class is present in the document’s backing store. Be aware this is defined differently than “document element” in the XML 1.0 specification (<http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml>), which is equivalent to “root element in the InDesign XML API.
- *Document layer* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The objects shown in the Layers panel that, together with their corresponding spread layers in each spread, represent the layers in a document.
- *Document object model (DOM)* — A specification for how objects in a document are presented. For example, the InDesign scripting DOM refers to sets of objects and properties that make up an InDesign document, including page items in the document hierarchy and various document preferences.
- *Document Type Declaration (DTD)* [“XML Fundamentals”] — Defines the grammar for a class of documents. This is represented by kXMLDTDBoss.
- *DollyXs* — A plug-in developer productivity tool, written entirely in Java™, which uses XSL templates to generate fundamental plug-in projects. Details on its use can be found in `<SDK>/devtools/sdktools/dollyxs/Readme.txt`.
- *DOM* — See *document object model*.
- *DTD* — See *Document Type Declaration*.
- *Element* — A unit item on the underlying grid of a table. An element may or may not have an anchor. Elements always have the unit (trivial) GridSpan(1,1). There is no corresponding entity in the HTML 4 table model.
- *Entity* [“XML Fundamentals”] — Container for content in an XML document.
- *Event handler* — Handler responsible for processing events and changing the data model of a widget. An event handler is equivalent to a controller. Unlike other APIs, in which you must extend an event handler to receive notification about control changes, there are very few circumstances in the InDesign/InCopy API in which overriding a widget event handler is required. Notifications about changes in control state are sent as `IObserver::Update` messages, because InDesign/InCopy update for every keystroke for edit boxes, if they are configured correctly in the ODFRez data statements.
- *Exposed interfaces* — See *aggregated interfaces*.
- *Extending* — Subclassing. Boss classes and ODFRez types can be extended (subclassed).
- *Extension pattern* — A software pattern that fits into an extension point for the application. It is associated with a well-defined purpose; for instance, to signal that a document was opened. Every plug-in should implement one or more extension patterns to do something useful. A common extension pattern is the service provider.
- *Extension point* — A hook in the application for a plug-in developer, where you can plug an extension pattern so your implementation code gets called. For example, if you implement a specific extension pattern (Open-doc Responder), you can be called when documents are opened. The extension point in this example is in the code that opens documents. Extension points know about the extension patterns that plug into them.

- *Facing pages* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — Used for publications like magazines, books, and newspapers that have both left-hand (verso) and right-hand (recto) pages.
- *Family name* — The name of a font family; for example, Times, Courier, or Times New Roman. The group name and the family name always are the same.
- *Feather (vignette)* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — A transparency effect that ships with InDesign, that allows designers to create smooth, diffuse edges on frames.
- *Fill* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — Color or gradient applied to area inside a path.
- *Flatten* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — To remove the transparency information from the representation of what is to be drawn, leaving only a representation of the resulting color information at each point once blending is computed. Typically this is implemented by factoring the area to be printed into a set of atomic regions that can be printed with opaque inks.
- *Font* — A collection of glyphs designed together and intended to be used together. See the IPMFont interface.
- *Font family* — A font group used within a document. See the IFontFamily interface.
- *Font group* — A collection of fonts designed together and intended to be used together. Font groups describe all fonts available to the application. Within a group, there might be several different stylistic variants. See the IFontGroup interface.
- *Font group name* — The name of a font group; for example, Times, Courier, or Times New Roman.
- *Format number* — A tuple, defined in the PluginVersion ODFRez resource, that identifies the version of a persistent data format for a particular plug-in. The format number is different from the application version or a plug-in version number. Format numbers are incremented when changes to persistent data formats occur.
- *Frame* [“Layout Fundamentals” and “Graphics Fundamentals”] — The page item (kSplineItemBoss) that acts as a container or placeholder for a graphic page item, text page item, or page item that represents content of another format. This is defined by one or more paths.
- *Frame content* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — Text or graphic object inside a frame. Fill is not frame content.
- *Frame list* — Lists the text frames that are displayed.
- *Framework* — See *resources*.
- *Front document* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The document displayed in the layout presentation the user is using to edit and view a publication.
- *Front view* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The layout view the user is using to edit and view a publication.
- *Generic identifier* [“XML Fundamentals”] — Name of an element in an XML document, which corresponds to the tag name.
- *Geometric page item* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — A page item with IGeometry and ITransform interfaces that define its coordinate space.

- *Glyph* — A shape used to represent a character code on screen or in print.
- *Gradient* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — Continuous, smooth, color transitions along a vector from one color (a gradient stop) to another (another gradient stop). The colors are defined only at the stops and interpolated elsewhere. A gradient may have two or more gradient stops.
- *Gradient stop* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — One of the points of a range over which a gradient is defined.
- *Graphic frame* [“Layout Fundamentals” and “Graphics Fundamentals”] — A frame that contains or is designated to contain a graphic page item. A placeholder for graphic content. The spline item wrapping a graphic or image. In the API, boss classes (e.g., `kSplineItemBoss`) that represent the behavior of graphic frames have the signature interface `IGraphicFrameData`.
- *Graphic page item* [“Layout Fundamentals” and “Graphic Fundamentals”] — A page item that represents a picture of one format or another (e.g., `kImageItem`). A page item that contains graphics. A graphic page item is the content of a graphics frame.
- *Group* [“Layout Fundamentals” and “Graphics Fundamentals”] — A collection of two or more page items, which can be manipulated as a single entity. A transparency group is a group with at least one transparency-related attribute.
- *Group blending mode* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — The blending mode applied to blend a group of objects. This is independent of the blending modes of the group members.
- *Group opacity* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — An opacity attribute applied to a group of transparent objects. Grouping is performed with the rule that an object can belong to only one immediate group, although groups can contain other groups. The group opacity is independent of individual object opacities.
- *Guide* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — An object used to help align and position other objects.
- *Headless document* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — A document (`kDocBoss`) that has no layout presentation. Headless documents can be edited programmatically.
- *Heap corruption; memory trampling* — When code illegally accesses memory. InDesign gives you some help in detecting this. All new memory in debug mode allocated with `global new` is cleared to `0xFBFB`. If you see this as a value of a memory block (instance variable, etc.), this is a sign it was not initialized properly. All de-allocated memory in debug mode is cleared to `0xEAEA`. If you see this value in a memory block, you are using it after it was deleted. When a boss object is destroyed in debug mode, the application object model deletes each interface and sets the pointer to the interface to have the value `0xDEADBEEF`. If you see `0xDEADBEEF` as the value of a pointer, you have queried for an interface on a boss object that was in the process of being destroyed. When allocating memory with `global new` in debug mode, the actual memory allocated is bracketed by an extra head and a tail. Look at the ASCII value of memory, and search for “Chck” and “Blck” to see the block header and trailer.

- *Helper class* — Partial implementation class; a C++ class in the API that provides most or all of the code required to implement a particular interface, like `IObserver`. A helper class may leave key method implementations to be filled in by the plug-in developer. For example, `CObserver` provides a basic implementation of `IObserver`. `CActiveSelectionObserver` provides a richer implementation for client code to observe changes in the active context.
- *Hierarchy* — See *boss-object hierarchy*.
- *High-level API* — An API based on the scripting DOM. Classes in the high-level API are prefixed by `hla_` and reside in the C++ namespace `hla`.
- *Host* — Application in which a client plug-in is loaded. Plug-ins can choose the hosts that should load them. For example, a plug-in may specify that it should load within both `InDesign` and `InCopy`.
- *Hybrid selection* — The ability to select objects of differing selection formats simultaneously. An example of hybrid selection is selecting a frame containing a picture (a layout selection), adding a range of text (a text selection) to that selection, and then changing the color of both the frame and the text with one action. Hybrid selection is not yet supported, but the new selection architecture was implemented to accommodate it in the future by means of integrator suites.
- *ICC* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — International Color Consortium. Most notable for their characterization of the properties of hardware represented in ICC device profiles. For the specification of the ICC file format, see their Web site at <http://www.color.org>.
- *ID space* — A set of numeric values in which an identifier (e.g., `ClassID` or `ImplementationID`) is defined. For example, `kClassIDSpace` identifies the set of numbers in which a `ClassID` can be defined; the values that can be used run from `0x0` to `0xFFFF`. Likewise, an `ImplementationID` is defined in `kImplementationIDSpace`. The ID spaces are disjoint, so you can have the same number in two or more different spaces without a clash. You do need to ensure that identifiers you define are unique within the given ID space; obtain a developer prefix to achieve this.
- *IDE* (*integrated development environment*) — An application or set of applications used to develop other computer applications. At the minimum, IDEs include a text editor, a compiler, a linker, and a debugger.
- *Idle task* — One way to perform a background task within the application. An idle task is a function point that can be called when the application is waiting to receive user events. Idle tasks are used to spread the load of CPU-bound tasks. For example, text composition is performed by an idle task, allowing the application to remain responsive to the user as text is being composed. See the `IIdleTask` interface.
- *Implementation* — A C++ class that implements an interface. An implementation can either extend a partial implementation class or be based on `CPMUnknown`.
- *IDML* — InDesign Markup Language file format. Based on serializing objects defined in a scripting DOM tree to an XML-based format.
- *Implementation identifier* — An identifier for a C++ implementation.
- *INCX* — InCopy Interchange file format. An INCX file is a snippet file containing an InCopy story.

- *InDesign API* — API for the InDesign platform, consisting of InDesign and related products.
- *Ink* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — Foundation colors that can make a color; for example, cyan, magenta, yellow, black, and spot inks.
- *Integrator suite* — Suite implementation on an ASB called by client code to access or change attributes of the selection. An integrator suite forwards any member function call to its corresponding CSB suite on one or more CSBs.
- *Interface* — An abstract C++ class in the API that extends IPMUnknown. Interfaces are aggregated by boss classes and represent the capability or services a boss class provides to client code. (Exception: There are a handful of abstract C++ classes named IXXX that do not derive from IPMUnknown; IDataBase is a frequently encountered example.)
- *Invariant data* — A data format that does not vary based on what is contained within. For example, if a data structure contains a field that identifies whether the next field is a string or an integer, that data structure is variant; otherwise, it is invariant.
- *INX* — InDesign Interchange file format. Based on serializing objects defined in a scripting DOM tree to an XML-based format.
- *Isolated blending* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — A boolean property of a group. An isolated group does not blend with the backdrop as individual elements, but rather blends as a group object. This is independent of knockout; a group can have both knockout and isolation-group properties.
- *Knockout group* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — A boolean property of a group. Objects in a knockout group of transparent objects do not interact transparently with each other in calculating the blend color, but they do interact transparently with the backdrop. This is used in creating effects where the group as a whole is composited onto the background rather than mistakenly compositing elements onto each other.
- *Layer* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — Either document (user-interface) layer or spread (content) layer. This is the abstraction that controls whether objects in a document are displayed and printed and whether they can be edited. A layer can be shown or hidden, locked or unlocked, arranged in front-to-back drawing order, etc. A page item is assigned to a layer. If a layer is shown, its associated page items are drawn; if a layer is hidden, its associated page items are not drawn. Layers affect an entire document: if you alter a layer, the change applies across all spreads. See IDocumentLayer and ISpreadLayer in the API reference documentation.
- *Layers panel* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The user interface for creating, deleting, and arranging layers.
- *Layout* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The spreads in a document that store the page items in a publication.
- *Layout hierarchy* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The hierarchy under each spread in a document, which controls how page items are stored and displayed.
- *Layout item; layout object* — Page item.
- *Layout view* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The part of the layout presentation that presents the layout of a document. (This also is known as the layout widget.)

- *Layout presentation* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The user-interface window in which the layout of a document is presented for viewing and editing. The layout presentation contains the layout view and other widgets that control the presentation of the document within the view.
- *Lazy notification* — A new notification mechanism. An observer can opt to observe a subject in the model lazily and get notified once per step. The notification is lazy in the sense that the observer gets notified after all commands in the step are processed. See `IObserver::LazyUpdate`.
- *Link* — An explicit relationship between a document object or part thereof and another entity (e.g., external content, like an image or a hyperlink destination that is a text frame in another document). Links (represented by the type `ILink`) can represent the path to a placed image; they also are used by the hyperlink subsystem and the book subsystem.
- *Logical structure* [“XML Fundamentals”] — A tree of elements that represents the logical relationships between content items. The elements are represented by boss classes with the `IIDXMLElement` interface, which maintains the logical structure and allows it to be traversed. The logical structure also can contain a DTD element, processing instructions, and comments.
- *Low-level API* — The API at the level of boss classes, interfaces, and partial-implementation classes.
- *Low-level event* — Something like a window system occurrence or low-level input, like one keystroke.
- *Mask* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — A raster version of the outline of an object.
- *Master page* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — A page that provides background content for another page. When a page is based on a master page, the page items that lie on the master page also appear on the page. A master page eliminates the need for repetitive page formatting and typically contains page numbers, headers and footers, and background pictures.
- *Master spread* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — A special kind of spread that contains a set of master pages.
- *Matrix* — See *transformation matrix*.
- *Memory trampling* — See *heap corruption*.
- *Message protocol* — The IID sent with the `IObserver::Update` message. An observer listens along a particular protocol; it is merely a way of establishing a filter on the semantic events about which an observer might be informed.
- *Messaging architecture* — How client code can be written to receive notifications from the application core when widget data models change. The main architecture of interest uses the observer pattern.
- *Mixed ink* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — An ink defined as a mixture of process-color inks and spot-color inks.

- *Model* — Persistent boss objects and persistent interfaces that represent a feature and are stored in a database that supports undo. Also, from the perspective of selection, the commands that mutate this data are part of the model. There may be several distinct yet related models in a document. For example, the layout model represents layout and stories, their text models represent text and tables, and their table model represents tables and so on. A selection format sits atop each distinct model that contains selectable objects.
- *Model notification* — Indicates to observers that one or more objects in the model have changed.
- *Native document model* — Specifies how end-user documents are represented within the InDesign API. It consists of a hierarchy of persistent boss objects, with a root node of class `kDocBoss`.
- *Nesting* — The containing of one object within another object. Three kinds of nesting are common: paths inside frames, frames inside frames, and groups inside groups. You can also use combinations of paths, frames, and groups to build hierarchies of nested objects.
- *Object model* — Model responsible for (among other things) loading and unloading plug-ins and managing the lifetimes of boss objects.
- *Observer* — An abstraction (represented by the `IObserver` interface) that listens for changes in a subject. Typically, implementations use `CObserver` or one of its subclasses to implement an `IObserver` interface, which can listen for changes in the control-data model of a subject (`ISubject`) and respond appropriately. The observer pattern is central to the messaging architecture.
- *ODF* — OpenDoc Framework, a cross-platform software effort initiated by Apple and IBM that defined an object-oriented extension of the Apple Rez language to specify user-interface resources.
- *ODFRC* — OpenDoc Framework Resource Compiler, the SDK-supplied compiler for framework resource (`.fr`) files.
- *ODFRez* — OpenDoc Framework Resource Language, which allows cross-platform resources to be defined for plug-ins. Boss classes and add-ins must be defined in `ODFRez`, along with data statements defining scripting entities, menu elements, user-interface widgets, and so on. The SDK tool `DollyXs` can generate `ODFRez`.
- *ODFRez custom-resource type* — The type defined in the top-level framework resource file and typically populated in data statements in the localized framework resource files.
- *ODFRez data statement* — An expression in `ODFRez` other than a type expression. It can define the properties of a given widget or a key/value pair in a string table.
- *Opacity* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — Defined as (1-transparency), in a continuous range [0,1], with 0 being entirely opaque and 1 entirely transparent.
- *Owned-item strand* — A strand that maintains information on objects inserted into the text flow, like inline frames.
- *Ownership relation* — Parent-child relationship between two classes. For example, spreads (`kSpreadBoss`) own spread layers (`kSpreadLayerBoss`).
- *Page* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The object in a spread on which page items are arranged.

- *Page item* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — An object that can participate in a layout; for example, a graphic frame or text frame. This represents content the user creates and edits on a spread, like a path, a group, or a frame and its content.
- *Pages layer* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The layer to which pages (kPageBoss) are assigned.
- *Pages panel* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The user interface for creating, deleting, and arranging pages and masters.
- *Palette* — A floating window that is a container for one or more panels. A palette can be dragged around, and its children can be re-ordered.
- *Panel* — A container for widgets. The Layers panel is an example. Panels can reside in tabbed palettes.
- *Paragraph-attributes strand* — A strand that stores paragraph boundaries and formatting information for ranges of paragraphs.
- *Parcel* — A lightweight container associated with at most one text frame, into which text can be flowed for layout purposes. A parcel can be considered a lightweight text frame; however, a parcel has geometry information, so it is not a page item, nor is it UID-based.
- *Parcel list* — A list of the parcels associated with a story thread.
- *Parent* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — A page item that contains other page items. For example, a frame that contains a graphic page item is the parent of that graphic page item.
- *Parent widget* — A container widget; a widget that contains another widget. The parent widget can determine when the children draw and which of the children receive events.
- *Pasteboard* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The area that surrounds the pages of a spread. Page items can be positioned on the pasteboard for temporary storage.
- *Path* [“Layout Fundamentals” and “Graphics Fundamentals”] — A set of straight and/or curved segments. These segments can connect to one another at anchor points (to form closed shapes like rectangles, ellipses, or polygons) or be disconnected. A path comprises one or more segments, each of which may be straight or curved. A path can be open or closed.
- *Path page item* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — A page item that defines its paths. The most common path page item is the spline item, which represents such path types as lines, curves, and polygons.
- *Persistence* — This is defined by Wiktionary as: “Property of some data to continue existing after the execution of the program.” See *database*.
- *Persistent boss object* — A boss object that saves its state between sessions. Persistent boss objects store their state to an application database through persistent interfaces.
- *Persistent data* — Data stored in a database and retained between sessions. InDesign publication files are referred to as databases. Types of persistent data include preferences, page item, and text data, as well as user-interface states.
- *Persistent interface* — A boss class aggregates interfaces, some of which may be persistent. An interface is persistent to the application object model when CREATE_PERSIST_PMINTERFACE is used in the implementation code when defining it. It must call PreDirty before it changes a persistent member, and it must implement a Read-

Write() method to deserialize and serialize an instance of the class. For example, the IControlView interface on widget boss objects always is persistent. This is why every widget has at least one CControlView field in the ODFRez data—to set up its initial state, such as widget ID, whether it is enabled, or whether it is visible (properties common to all widgets).

- *Placed element; placed content* [“XML Fundamentals”] — An element associated with document content; i.e., with a content item in the layout. There is a small visual indicator in the Structure view that indicates whether an element is associated with a placed-content item. In terms of the model, this means the IIDXMLElement::GetContentItem returns something other than kInvalidUID. This is contrasted with unplaced element.
- *Placeholder* [“XML Fundamentals”] — A target for XML import. It can be a graphic frame that has a tag applied to identify it as a target for content from an XML import. If a text container is marked up, the placeholder is the story (kTextStoryBoss) rather than the containing frame.
- *Plug-in* — A library that extends or changes the behavior of the application and follows the rules for extending the application. On Windows, a plug-in is a DLL; on Mac OS, a framework. Plug-ins are loaded and managed by the application object model.
- *Plug-in prefix* — See *developer prefix*.
- *PostScript points* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The standard internal measurement unit, equal to 1/72 inch. All measurements stored in databases are stored using PostScript points as the unit.
- *Pre-dirty* — Indicates to the application object model that persistent data is about to change. As of Creative Suite 3, a mutator method on a persistent interface just call PreDirty() before changing any persistent data.
- *Primary-story thread* — The main flow of text that is not for table cells or other features that store text in the story.
- *Process color* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — (i) A scheme used to print full-color images, typically with four passes through the printing press, one for each ink color. (ii) A single color within the CMYK system; for example, cyan. The term is used within the user interface as a shorthand for a color intended to be printed with process color as in definition (i).
- *Processing instruction (PI)* [“XML Fundamentals”] — Instruction for an application. PIs take the form `<?application-name ... ?>`.
- *Proxy image* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — A screen-resolution bitmap image with which the end user can view designs on the screen faster than with the original image.
- *Pseudo-buttons* — Items that have a button-like facility, like being responsive to mouse clicks, but that are intended as image-based buttons rather than text-labeled buttons.
- *Publication* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — A document that stores layout data. The page items are organized in a set of spreads. Each spread has one or more pages on which content is arranged. Page items are assigned to layers that control whether the content is displayed or editable.
- *Raster image* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — See *bitmap image*.

- *Regular notification* — Notification broadcast immediately after the model is modified by a command. After the command's Do() method returns, its DoNotify() method is called. This method initiates the broadcast and observers are called. See IObserver::Update().
- *Relative command* — A command that modifies data in the model by some delta; for example, a command that increased the point size of text by 1.
- *Rendering intent* ["Graphics Fundamentals"] — Methods or rules for converting from one color space to another. Examples of rendering intent include perceptual, saturation, relative colorimetric, and absolute colorimetric.
- *Repeating element* ["XML Fundamentals"] — An element with the same tag name as its previous sibling.
- *Resources; framework* — Initializes widgets, and are held in files written in ODFRez. These files also contains locale-specific information that allows user interfaces to be localized. Platform-specific resources (defined in an .rc, .r, or .rsrc file) play a very small role in InDesign plug-ins and typically are used only for icons or images in image-based widgets.
- *Revision history* — Records the state required for undo and redo of changes made to objects in a database that supports undo. Includes snapshots of the persistent interfaces modified by commands during a step. The database and its revision history are associated but distinct states
- *Root element* ["XML Fundamentals"] — Top-level XML element in the logical structure of a document. This is a child of the document element.
- *Ruler guide* ["Layout Fundamentals"] — A horizontal or vertical guide line used to align or position objects on a spread.
- *Run* — Strands are subdivided into runs. Run lengths differ depending on the strand. For example, a text-data strand uses runs to split character data into manageable chunks, and a character-attribute strand uses runs to indicate formatting changes.
- *SBOS (small boss object store)* ["XML Fundamentals"] — Where the objects representing XML elements are held. It is an example of container-managed persistence.
- *Schema* — An ODFRez resource that contains metadata about a persistent data format. There are various kinds of resources.
- *Schema-based converter* — A conversion provider that converts persistent-data formats from one format to another based on format numbers in a document and plug-ins, along with instructions given in schema resources.
- *Script ID value* — A concise identifier for an element from the DOM. This is a four-character value (32-bit integer), like "docu" or "colr."
- *Script ID name* — A verbose identifier for an element from the DOM. This is the full name of the element, like "document" or "color."
- *Scripting DOM* — View of the document-object model seen through the scripting subsystem (IDOMEElement).
- *Scripting DOM tree* — An instance of a document, described from the scripting subsystem's perspective. At its root is the document object (kDocBoss, with the IDOMEElement interface), which has element name "docu" in the scripting DOM.

- *SDK* — The combined software development kit for InDesign and related products.
- *Section* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — A range of pages with a defined set of properties that control how the pages within that section are numbered. For example, a section can have its own starting page number and numbering style such as Roman or Arabic.
- *Segment* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — A curve or line connecting two path points.
- *Selection attribute* — A property of a selectable object, like stroke color, height, or opacity.
- *Selection extension* — An extension that can be made to a suite implementation when advanced features are needed.
- *Selection format* — The model format of a selectable object. Examples of selection formats are layout (page items), text, table cells, and XML structure.
- *Selection manager* — The abstraction `ISelectionManager` that manages a selection subsystem.
- *Selection notification* — Indicates that either the set of objects selected by the user changed (e.g., a frame was selected or deselected) or a property of these objects changed (e.g. the stroke color of selected frames changed). See `ActiveSelectionObserver()`.
- *Selection observer* — The abstraction `ActiveSelectionObserver` that allows client code to be notified when the selection changes.
- *Selection subsystem* — The abstraction responsible for managing selection in a particular view.
- *Selection target* — The means by which a selection format identifies the set of objects that are selected.
- *Semantic event* — Directly corresponds to high-level user interactions with a user-interface component. Clicking a button is an example of a semantic event. These events are communicated to client code through `IObserver::Update` messages with various protocols, like `IID_IBOOLEANCONTROLDATA` for a button click, and other message parameters.
- *Service provider* — A class that provides a service identified by a specific `ServiceID`. It aggregates an implementation of the `IK2ServiceProvider` interface and a second provided interface. For example, an export-provider service provides the `IExportProvider` interface.
- *Session* — Depending on context, this can mean the period of use of the application between starting up and shutting down or the session boss object (instance of `kSessionBoss`), referred to through global variable `gSession` of type `ISession*`.
- *Smart pointer* — A construct that automatically manages the lifetime of the object it encapsulates. At a minimum, it should provide an implementation of the `->` operator that can be used as a pointer. It also can provide an implementation of the `*` (de-reference) operator. In the context of the InDesign API, smart pointers, like `InterfacePtr<T>`, implement the necessary reference-counting behavior to avoid memory leaks and controlled access to memory. There also are other smart pointers in the InDesign API, like `TreeNodePtr` and `K2::scoped_ptr`.
- *Snapshot* — A copy of the state of an interface at a particular time. Snapshots of interfaces are kept in the revision history for the database, to support undo and redo.

- *Snippet, XML snippet* — XML-based file containing a definition of one or more objects in an InDesign document. Snippet files are standalone assets that can range from defining a spot-color swatch to a group of page items or an InCopy story (ICML) file. For more information, see the “Snippet Fundamentals” chapter.
- *Spot color* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — A color intended to be printed with its own individual ink.
- *Spread* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The primary container for layout data; a collection of pages that belong together in a document. A spread contains a set of pages on which page items that represent pictures, text, and other content are arranged. The pages can be kept together to form an island spread, a layout that spans multiple pages.
- *Spread layer* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The object (kSpreadLayerBoss) in a spread used to realize layers.
- *Standard buttons* — Buttons that descend from kButtonWidgetBoss.
- *Story* — A piece of textual content.
- *Story thread* — A range of text in the text model that represents a flow of text content. There can be multiple flows of text content stored in the text model—the main flow and one flow per table cell for the tables embedded in the story.
- *Story-thread strand* — A strand that stores the content boundaries of story threads within a story.
- *Strand* — Parallel sets of information that, when combined, provided a complete description of the text content in a story.
- *String table* — A collection consisting of key/value pairs for a specific locale, which contain the strings that may be displayed in the user interface by the plug-in and are candidates for localization. A string table is represented in a plug-in by an instance of the ODFRez custom-resource type StringTable.
- *Stroke* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — The outline of a path, with characteristics like color, weight, and stroke type, that affect the visual presentation of the path.
- *Style* — A collection of text attributes. There are paragraph styles and character styles. Styles are defined in a hierarchy. The root style contains a value for all attributes. Leaf styles define differences from their parent.
- *Style name* — The name of a stylistic variant. Typically, the Roman—also called Plain or Regular—member of a font group is the base font; the name varies from group to group. The group might include variants like Bold, Semibold, Italic, and Bold Italic.
- *Stylistic variant* — A difference in the appearance—other than size—of a font in a font group.
- *Subject* — An abstraction that is the target for the attention of observers. In the user-interface API, widget boss objects are the typical subjects.
- *Subject identifier* — A means of uniquely identifying the selected objects for a selection format. For example, layout page items have a subject identifier similar to a UIDList, and text uses a story UID and a text range. All boss classes, interfaces, and relationships that contrib-

ute to the functioning of a selectable object also are part of that selectable object's selection format. This also includes commands and observers.

- *Suite* — A suite interface is an interface that lets you manipulate the properties of an abstract selection. See the interfaces aggregated on `kIntegratorSuiteBoss`. Suite interfaces represent a level of abstraction between the low-level API and the high-level (scripting DOM-based) API. Implement a custom suite if you need to interact with the model behind a selection.
- *Suite boss class* — Boss classes to which suite interfaces get added. These extend the set of attributes of selected objects that can be accessed and changed.
- *Swatch* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — A representation of color-related objects that end users manipulate. A swatch can represent a process color, spot color, gradient, tint, or mixed ink.
- *Table attribute* — A boss class that represents an attribute for an entire table.
- *Table frame* — A composed piece of the table that exists in a parcel or text column. In general, header and footer rows repeat in all table frames with at least one body row.
- *Table iterator* — An abstraction that allows sequential access to the cells in a table. Table iterators return references to `GridAddress` objects for anchor cells. There are forward and reverse variants that can be used to traverse a table from beginning to end or from end to beginning, both using the same increment operator (`++`). These are STL-like iterators.
- *Table layout* — Represents the composed state of the table. The composer creates layout rows as rows are composed. One model row can map to one or more layout rows.
- *Tag* [“XML Fundamentals”] — Stores tag names of elements and the color in which they appear in the user interface (see `kXMLTagBoss`).
- *Tag collection; tag list* [“XML Fundamentals”] — The set of tags that can participate in the logical structure of a document. Represented in the API by `IXMLTagList`, stored in a workspace (e.g., `kDocWorkspaceBoss`).
- *Tagged content item* [“XML Fundamentals”] — An instance of a content item that has been subject to tagging. In terms of the model, this means `IXMLReferenceData::GetReference` would return a valid `XMLReference`.
- *Tagging* [“XML Fundamentals”] — The process of applying mark-up to content items. This has no connection with tagged text, a format not based on XML that the applications use to import and export styled text. Content items that can be tagged aggregate the `IXMLReferenceData` interface.
- *Text attribute* — A property of text, like point size, font, color, or left indent. Identified by a `ClassID`, such as `kTextAttrPointSizeBoss`.
- *Text composition* — Flows textual content in story threads into a layout, which is represented by parcels in a parcel list, creating the wax as output.
- *Text-data strand* — A strand that stores characters in Unicode encoding.
- *Text frame* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — A frame that displays or is designated to display text.

- *Text page item* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — The page item that represents a visual container that displays text.
- *Text model* — Holds the textual content of a story (character codes, their formatting, and other associated data) as separate but related strands.
- *Tint* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — A percentage of a color. Tint also can be defined over an already-tinted color.
- *Tool* — Abstraction an end user experiences in the toolbox window of the user interface; represented in the API by `ITool`. For example, the Text tool can be used to create text frames. You can add custom tools to extend the applications that have a user interface. For more information, see the “Tools” chapter.
- *Top-level FR file* — The file that is included in the compilation as a custom build element. In SDK samples, these are called `<plug-in-short-name>.fr`; for example, `BscMnu.fr`.
- *Transform* — For a page item, the `ITransform` interface stores mapping between inner coordinates of the page item and its parent in the spread hierarchy. See the “Layout Fundamentals” chapter. See also `ITransform` and `PMMatrix`.
- *Transformation matrix; matrix* [“Layout Fundamentals”] — A matrix that specifies the relationship between two coordinate spaces, giving a linear mapping of one coordinate space to another coordinate space (`PMMatrix`).
- *Type binding* — An association between a widget boss class and an `ODFRez` custom-resource type. Alternately, interfaces can be bound to `ODFRez` custom-resource types (by the identifier `IID_<whatever>`) that compose more complex types. This type binding occurs in the context of an `ODFRez` type expression. For example, the type expression defining the `ODFRez` type `ButtonWidget` binds it to `kButtonWidgetBoss` (see the API header file `Widgets.fh` for many examples of this). The `ODFRez` type delineates how the data is laid out in a binary resource for the widget boss class to deserialize itself. That is, the `ButtonWidget` type specifies the layout for data that allows an instance of `kButtonWidgetBoss` to read its initial state from the binary resource. When an interface is bound to an `ODFRez` custom-resource type, it is expected that the implementation in the boss class reads its initial state from the fields defined in the `ODFRez` custom-resource type. When the plug-in resource is being parsed for the first time, the type information represented in the binary resource provides sufficient information for the application core to make an instance of the correct type of widget and give it the intended widget ID. By reading the data in the resource, that is effectively a serialized form of the widget boss object.
- *UID* — Unique identifier; an identifier for a persistent boss object that is unique within a given InDesign document, equivalent to a record number within the document’s database. Not all persistent boss objects have a UID—only those that expose `IPMPersist`. Other persistent boss objects may be managed by a UID-based object; for example, XML elements (see `IIDXMLElement`).
- *UID leak* — The state in which a boss object has been orphaned from the boss object that owns it, which may have been deleted. A UID leak is a potentially serious condition, because it means the underlying document in which the object is stored can become corrupt. See also *boss leak*.

- *UIDRef* — Reference to a persistent boss object, composed of a reference to an application database (IDatabase) and UID. See the API reference documentation for UIDRef. A UIDRef works only for UID-based persistent boss objects; how you refer to container-managed persistent boss objects depends on the container.
- *Underlying grid* — The coarsest grid that can contain all cell edges for a given table, with the constraint that each cell in the underlying grid has trivial GridSpan(1,1).
- *Unplaced element; unplaced content* [“XML Fundamentals”] — An element in the logical structure with no associated content item. These are associated with text or reference images but are not in the document layout and are not linked to items in the native document model.
- *Utils boss* — The kUtilsBoss boss class, which exposes utility interfaces that span the application domain. There is a smart pointer class, Utils, that makes it easier to access interfaces on this boss class. Along with the suite interfaces, you should look first at the utility interfaces when looking for a particular capability.
- *Value-name look-up table* — A table that takes the Script ID value as input and returns the Script ID name. Specifically, this refers to ScriptingDefs.h or Scripting Reference and the INX-specific script ID names and values.
- *Vector graphics* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — Graphic objects made up of lines and curves defined mathematically. These objects are not converted to pixels until they are displayed or printed. Drawing programs enable you to create and manipulate vector graphics.
- *Vignette* [“Graphics Fundamentals”] — See *feather*.)
- *Wax* — The output of text composition that draws text.
- *Wax strand* — A strand that stores the composed representation of text that can be drawn and selected. The wax strand is the result of composition.
- *Widget* — This term is particularly prone to confusion and is qualified in this document to make its meaning clear. For example, “static text widget” is highly ambiguous and could refer to one of at least four things: the boss class that provides the behavior (kStaticTextWidgetBoss), an instance of this boss class, the ODFRez custom-resource type StaticTextWidget, or an instance of this ODFRez type used to specify initial state and properties of a kStaticTextWidgetBoss object.
- *Widget boss class* — Boss classes that derive from the kBaseWidgetBoss. They are typically, but not invariably, named k<Widgetname>WidgetBoss. The only difference between a widget boss class and a normal boss class is that a widget boss class can be associated with an ODFRez custom-resource type through an associating or type binding. The ODFRez type is concerned with the layout of plug-in resource data, so a widget boss object can be correctly instantiated and initialized by the application framework. The ODFRez type defines the data required to correctly deserialize a particular widget boss object from the plug-in resource.
- *Widget boss object* — An instantiated widget boss class. Because it is aggregated on any widget boss object that has a visual representation, the most common way to manipulate widget boss objects from client code is through an IControlView pointer.

- *Widget notification* — Indicates that a user-interface object, like a button or check box, has changed state.
- *Window-paning* — X-join of stripes where the stripes do not overlap in the intersection; i.e., the middle stripes meet in an X, and the outer stripes meet the adjoining outer stripes, so no stripes draw over each other.
- *Workflow user model* — Web-based Distributed Authoring and Versioning (WebDAV), which is a set of extensions to the HTTP protocol that allows users to collaboratively edit and manage files on remote web servers.
- *XML (Extensible Markup Language)* ["XML Fundamentals"] — A meta-language for defining mark-up languages. The specification for current version is defined as the W3C Recommendation (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml>).
- *XML data* ["XML Fundamentals"] — Content defined in an XML-based language
- *XML element* ["XML Fundamentals"] — A node in the logical structure of a document. XML elements are represented by boss classes with the signature interface IIDXMLElement).
- *XML element, existing* ["XML Fundamentals"] — An element in an XML template (an InDesign document), which may receive content as a result of import or be deleted subject to import options.
- *XML element, incoming* ["XML Fundamentals"] — An element in the input XML, which may replace content of an existing element in the XML template or be deleted subject to import options.
- *XML snippet* ["XML Fundamentals"] — See *snippet*.
- *XML template* ["XML Fundamentals"] — An InDesign document with tagged *placeholders* into which XML data can be flowed. Using XML templates avoids end users having to manually place content or mark up content manually once it is imported.
- *XMP SDK* — Extensible Metadata Platform software development kit, a facility for software developers to create and store their own metadata.
- *XP* ["Graphics Fundamentals"] — Refers to transparency boss classes and interface names. This not be confused with other potential meanings, such as cross-platform or Windows XP.
- *XSLT (Extensible Stylesheet Language Transformations)* ["XML Fundamentals"] — The specification for the current version is defined as the W3C Recommendation (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/xslt>).
- *Z-order* ["Layout Fundamentals"] — The order in which objects are drawn, which determines which object is in the foreground when objects are stacked.